Advances in
BIOPRESERVATION

Edited by

JOHN G. BAUST

Institute of Biomedical Technology
State University of New York
Binghamton, New York

JOHN M. BAUST

Cell Preservation Services, Inc.
Owego, New York

Visit the Taylor & Francis Web site at
http://www.taylorandfrancis.com

and the CRC Press Web site at
http://www.crcpress.com

Preface

Sixty-five years have passed since the publication of Basil Luyet's *Life and Death at Low Temperature*, the first organized attempt to summarize past observations of freezing injury in living organisms and to infer from them the mechanisms of injury. Not surprisingly, attention at that time was focused primarily on mechanical damage from ice, although, as evidence of the immaturity of the science, Luyet considered five other possible mechanisms: the withdrawal of energy, attainment of a minimal temperature, too-rapid thawing, dehydration, and "various physiological, physical, or chemical alterations."

One might have expected that the subsequent years would have led to a clear and functional understanding of freezing injury and, as a result, have enabled efficient cryopreservation of almost anything. But it wasn't that easy. Looking back at some of the hypotheses that emerged — salt concentration (Lovelock), disulfide binding (Levitt), the two factor hypothesis (Mazur), minimum volume (Meryman), membrane depletion (Williams, Steponkus) — one can see that, in retrospect, each in a very general sense was correct, but none provided sufficient insight to lift applied cryopreservation very far from the empirical. In fact, even after those sixty-plus years, our insight is still pretty much limited to the recognition that intracellular ice is generally lethal, that ice nuclei are rare or absent within cells, that extracellular ice concentrates the extracellular solution and the cells lose water osmotically and shrink. However, the precise nature of the lethal event for each cell type continues to be debatable, whether from the seeding of extracellular ice through membrane pores, from membrane stresses leading to the loss of membrane material, from temperature- and concentration-related denaturation or precipitation, or from some as-yet ill-defined phenomenon. The role of cold denaturation of proteins has been largely ignored.

Fortunately — or, some might argue, unfortunately — the advent of penetrating cryoprotectants, primarily glycerol and DMSO, has enabled empirical cryopreservation to leapfrog basic research. Topics that were central to cryobiology research in the 1950s and 1960s have been overshadowed by demonstrations of empirical success. Cryopreservation is increasingly being undertaken by specialists in the subject tissue rather than by cryobiologists, and the practicalities of grant and contract support tend to perpetuate this trend.

However, although the effectiveness of the penetrating cryoprotectants has made many basic questions moot, the challenges are still far from resolved. The cryoprotectants themselves are now the obstacles to easy success. Glycerol penetrates cells slowly and some cells not at all, creating major osmotic problems. But glycerol has the great advantage of being a nontoxic macromolecular stabilizer. DMSO, despite its reputation, does not cross membranes instantly; in fact, at temperatures below 10°C, it enters cells relatively slowly — at least this is true for red cells. And it is a macromolecular destabilizer with demonstrated toxicity.

From the purely practical aspect, it is better cryoprotectants that are needed. Polymers have their own shortcomings and, with some exceptions, enable long-term, low-temperature storage only in the presence of associated penetrating agents. Complete vitrification is a promising approach, but there are still formidable obstacles to be surmounted. For an ideal penetrating agent, there are only two criteria. Such an agent must cross cell membranes readily and rapidly and must be nontoxic at elevated concentrations. Obvious candidates are low-molecular weight organic compounds or cations such as ammonium compounds that are partially dissociated and enter the cell in the uncharged form. However, there are a limited number of low-molecular weight compounds and even the two simple criteria cited above may be too demanding.

This timely and impressive volume shows just how far cryobiology has come in providing frozen preservation for a variety of cells and tissues and also how much dedicated effort it has taken to get this far. It is also apparent that each individual cell type requires an individually crafted cryoprotective regimen that may still achieve only limited recovery, and that the ultimate goals of applied cryobiology have yet to be achieved. It is likely that the limitations of cryopreservation apparent today will not be resolved just by more tinkering, but will require a return to the basic questions that drove cryobiology during its earlier years. In the pharmaceutical industry, examples abound of successful new therapeutics made possible only by an accurate understanding of the process to be addressed. For cryopreservation, the easy answers are not good enough. The time is ripe for more basic science.

Harold T. Meryman

Editors

John G. Baust, Ph.D., holds an appointment as a lead professor in the Departments of Biological Sciences and Bioengineering, and is the Director of the Institute of Biomedical Technology at the State University of New York at Binghamton. Dr. Baust directs multidisciplinary research programs in cell/tissue cryopreservation, hypothermic organ preservation, tissue engineering, and cancer therapy. He serves on several advisory and editorial boards of various biotech corporations and journals including serving as Editor-in-Chief for *Cell Preservation Technology* and board member for the *International Society for Cryobiology*. He has authored and co-authored hundreds of papers, reviews, and abstracts and holds over 50 U.S. and international patents in the area of the low-temperature sciences. Dr. Baust has founded, co-founded, or served on the advisory board of numerous companies, including Mariseed, Inc., LifeCell,, Inc., Cryomedical Sciences, Inc., and Cryocath Technologies, Ltd. He presently serves as President and CEO of BioLife Solutions, Inc.

John M. Baust, Ph.D., serves as the President and CEO of Cell Preservation Services, Inc. (CPSI) and is a research assistant professor in the Departments of Bioengineering and Biology at the State University of New York at Binghamton. Prior to founding CPSI, Dr. Baust served as Director of Research for BioLife Solutions, Inc., following completion of a postdoctoral research fellowship at the Center for Engineering in Medicine at Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital. Dr. Baust, who received his Ph.D. in cell and molecular biology from the State University of New York, directs multidisciplinary research programs in cell/tissue cryopreservation, hypothermic organ preservation, tissue engineering and cancer therapy. He serves on several advisory and editorial boards of various biotech corporations and journals including the journal *Cell Preservation Technology*. He also serves on the Board of Governors of the Society for Cryobiology. He has authored and co-authored numerous papers, reviews, abstracts, and patents in the area of the low-temperature biology and has been instrumental in the advancement of the field of cryobiology into the molecular biological era, focusing in the areas of signal transduction and apoptosis.

Contributors

Jason P. Acker
Department of Laboratory Medicine & Pathology
University of Alberta
Edmonton, AB

Joong-Hyuck Auh
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Rachna Bali
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Mitali Banerjee
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

John G. Baust
Institute of Biomedical Technology
SUNY Binghamton
Binghamton, NY

John M. Baust
Cell Preservation Services, Inc.
Owego, NY

Kelvin G. M. Brockbank
Cell and Tissue Systems, Inc.
Charleston, SC

Robert G. Van Buskirk
Department of Biological Sciences
SUNY Binghamton
Binghamton, NY

Dana Clutter
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

John H. Crowe
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Lois M. Crowe
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Denis Dwyre
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Erika Fisk
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Barry Fuller
University Department of Surgery
Royal Free & University College Medical School
London, UK

Andrew A. Gage
Roswell Park Memorial Institute
SUNY Buffalo
Buffalo, NY

Dayong Gao
Department of Mechanical Engineering
University of Kentucky, College of Engineering
Lexington, KY

Karlis Gross
Department of Mechanical & Manufacturing
  Engineering
University of Melbourne
Melbourne, Australia

Tariq Hafez
University Department of Surgery
Royal Free & University College Medical
  School
London, UK

Allison Hubel
Department of Mechanical Engineering
University of Minnesota
Minneapolis, MN

Kamran Jamil
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Azadeh Kheirolomoom
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Chad Leidy
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Roger A. Leopold
USDA/ARS Biosciences Research Laboratory
Fargo, ND

Stephen Livesey
Chief Scientific Officer
Australian Stem Cell Center, Ltd.
Melbourne, Australia

Sheri Looper
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Dawei Luo
Department of Mechanical Engineering
University of Kentucky, College of Engineering
Lexington, KY

Xiaocui Ma
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Jeffrey Norris
Department of Cell Biology, Physiology, and
  Anatomy
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Ann E. Oliver
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Yoed Rabin
Department of Mechanical Engineering
Carnegie Mellon University
Pittsburgh, PA

Resmi Ravindran
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Josette Ricker
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Joe Russell
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Gyana Satpathy
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Kristi Snyder
Cell Preservation Services
Owego, NY

Paul S. Steif
Department of Mechanical Engineering
Carnegie Mellon University
Pittsburgh, PA

Fern Tablin
Department of Cell Biology, Physiology, and
  Anatomy
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Minke Tang
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Michael J. Taylor
Cell and Tissue Systems, Inc.
Charleston, SC

Zsolt Torok
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Kathy Traianedes
Australian Stem Cell Center, Ltd.
Monash University,
Clayton, Australia

Nelly M. Tsvetkova
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Naomi Walker
Department of Cell Biology, Physiology, and
  Anatomy
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Willem Wolkers
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Jianping Yu
Department of Mechanical Engineering
University of Kentucky, College of Engineering
Lexington, KY

Shijun Zhu
Molecular and Cellular Biology
Center for Biostabilization
University of California
Davis, CA

Table of Contents

1 Concepts in Biopreservation

John G. Baust

CONTENTS

> The nature of medicine [science] is seeking, finding, testing, retesting, debunking, and being utterly surprised at how often established dogma crumbles.
>
> **Bernadine Healy, M.D.**

There is a growing interest in and demand for improved methods of cell and cellular-construct preservation with the requirement for rapid return to prepreservation, normophysiological function. Implicit in this need is the development of methodologies that protect the genome and proteome thereby avoiding stress-related genetic selectivity.[1] Unfortunately, a growing body of evidence suggests that the multiplicity of stresses attendant to many preservation protocols fails to meet these requirements. In addition, the use of animal-derived products, as common components of cell storage processes, raises concern over system contamination with nonnative protein-derived materials (i.e., prions, etc.).[2]

Interdisciplinary efforts to advance the effectiveness of long-tried "successful methods" of cell, tissue, and organ preservation have now led to the development of a new scientific specialty — *biopreservation.* From a historic perspective, efforts to sustain living biologics in a dormant state supportive of "on-demand" reanimation have centered primarily on either hypothermic (refrigerated) storage or preservation under the comparatively extreme conditions associated with freezing.[3] **Hypothermic storage** typically includes maintenance at temperatures above 0°C but below a normothermic range (32–37°C) of mammalian species. The principles that have governed advances within the hypothermic storage research focus have depended primarily on improvements in tissue and organ preservation in support of transplantation; namely, factors related to ion balance, buffering capacity, free radical scavenging, oncotic support, and the provision of nutrients.[4–6] **Cryopreservation** is defined as the maintenance of biologics at temperatures below –80°C and typically below –140°C (below the reported range of the nominal glass transition temperatures of pure water). Methodological developments defined under the cryopreservation mantra are linked to the principles that emerged from Mazur's "Two-Factor Hypothesis,"[7] which relates survival of cells in solution to a dependence on the rate of cooling of the vessel (i.e., vial, straw, etc.) containing the preserved

1

biologic. Suboptimal cooling rates in the presence of molar levels of cryoprotective agents such as dimethyl sulfoxide and glycerol cause cells to experience prolonged periods of exposure to toxic levels of these agents. The resulting "solution effects" are *a priori* evidence of lethal conditions, a supposition gleaned from Lovelock's classic demonstration of the relationship between survival and sodium chloride content in human RBCs.[8] Cooling at supra-optimal rates would not afford cells the opportunity to dehydrate (reduce the levels of freezable water) such that intracellular water compartments would maintain a chemical equilibrium with the extracellular ice leading to the probability of lethal intracellular ice formation.[9,10]

What is striking about the parallel developments within these research theaters is the relative isolation of the cryopreservation thought processes from the cellular fundamentals that grew from organ-based hypothermic storage research. That is, cryopreservation has focused nearly exclusively on the physical parameters associated with the water-to-ice phase change (i.e., water flux) during the preservation process at the expense of understanding that a *chill–freeze continuum* exists and that the resulting *hypothermic continuum* will impact survival.[11] This failure to factor in the impact of the hypothermic continuum as a perturbing (stressful) condition during the application of a cryopreservation protocol has contributed to the limitations faced in today's efforts to recover normally functioning cells upon removal from cryogenic storage. It is essential, if not critical, to recognize that despite the presence of extracellular ice, cells that are *structurally preserved* (avoid intracellular ice formation) remain in a state of deepening hypothermia until reaching the vitrification state (Tg) of the preservation medium. Importantly, during this thermal excursion, solute levels continue to elevate due to freeze concentration.[9] Cell function, while suppressed, does not cease until the intracellular glass transition (Tg) temperature is reached.[12]

This segregation of low-temperature-directed research, when coupled with the compartmentalization of anhydrobiosis or the dry-state preservation sciences, has created a series *subdisciplinary cul-de-sacs* from which new advances have been slow to emerge.[13] Accordingly, **biopreservation** as an integrative specialty can be defined to include those sets of processes that suppress biological aging in a manner supportive of postpreservation restoration of function and maintenance of structure. Biopreservation incorporates relevant engineering principles with developments in cellular and molecular biology including cell signaling, genomics, proteomics, metabolomics, systems biology, and computer sciences, with a strong underpinning in the fundamental principles derived from studies in anhydrobiosis and cryobiology. Importantly, biopreservation represents the simultaneous application and management of numerous — often poorly defined and not fully recognized — lethal conditions with the expectation of normal recovery. In practice, the success of this field is critical to cell-based research, related therapies, reproductive management (animal and human), banking of biologics (clinical and environmental), drug discovery, organ preservation, pest control, and other diverse applications.[14]

1.1   THE HYPOTHERMIC CONTINUUM

For mammalian systems, nearly all biopreservation stratagems begin with a reduction in temperature from 37°C to the 20–25°C range, but most commonly to 0–10°C. A maintenance target of 4°C is common and less related to any known biological rationale than to the fact that liquid water reaches its maximum density at this temperature. Cooling represents a change in the energy state of a biologic due to heat flow to the environment. In effect, the kinetic energy necessary to support the chemical reactions that define the metabolome is reduced, resulting in the uncoupling and re-coupling (shunting) of biochemical reactions.[15] These biochemical imbalances cause the depletion of adenylates due to the failure of aerobic production of ATP, which in turn disrupts membrane-mediated transport. With the progressive drop in temperature, cells experience rapid gains in calcium,[16,17] the loss of intracellular potassium and gain of sodium,[17,18] and intracellular acidosis with pH approaching four.

In addition to metabolic imbalances, there are measurable changes in cell and organelle membrane characteristics reported as phase changes in the lipid domains and indicated by discontinuities in the Arrhenius plots.[19–22] These membrane transitions represent a structural change in the membrane from the liquid-crystalline state to the solid gel state.[21,22] As a result, membranes become "leaky," thereby contributing to transmembrane ionic imbalances. Concomitantly, there is an increase in the activation energy of membrane-bound enzymes, which compounds the problems associated with ionic imbalance, activation, and leakage of lysosomal and lipoprotein hydrolases,[23,24] activation of calcium-dependent phosolipases, [25–27] and the release of free fatty acids.[28] There are also mitochondrial-related events including reduction in the bcl2-bax (anti- and pro-apoptotic proteins) ratio leading to cytochrome c release and activation of the apoptotic cascade, which if not inhibited will lead to cell death.[29–33] Simultaneous with these disruptive events is further physical compromise of the intracellular milieux characterized by the disruption of the cytoskeletal matrix.[34–36]

These potentially detrimental events occur with "minor" changes in the kinetic energy levels (a decrease of 10°C equals a 3% decrease in available thermal energy). One simple measure that represents an average of the "total" change in metabolism is Q_{10}, which in mammalian systems calculates to an approximate 50% decrease in oxygen consumption (metabolism) for each 10°C reduction in temperature[37–39] (refer to Chapter 2 for a detailed analysis). Accordingly, the oxygen consumption of a cell at 5°C is approximately 6% when compared to 37°C.[40–42] Q_{10} represents a simplification as it does not reflect individual reactions but a differential or average of regulatory and nonregulatory enzymatic processes and hence the net of uncoupling/recoupling and shifts in metabolic pathways.[19–22] Q_{10} has been observed to increase dramatically with the onset of freezing.[43]

Accordingly, hypothermia impacts innumerable components of the cellular machinery including energy status, macromolecular reactivity and stability, adenylate levels and availability, and biological reducing power.[44] When considered within the full context of the oxidative stressors presented to a mammalian cell in the cold, along with the generation of free radicals, hypothermia provides multiple routes to the initiation of apoptosis or gene-regulated cell death. While select mammalian species have evolved a mechanism supportive of chronic whole-body hypothermia (i.e., hibernators)[45,46] or seasonally adaptive regional heterothermy,[47,48] few human cells *in vivo* exhibit a genetic propensity supportive of low-temperature survival beyond a few hours.

Cooling does provide short-term *in vitro* survival primarily through the decrease in metabolism and the reduction in oxygen and nutrient demand, which work to conserve chemical energy. These processes only conserve to a point, though. Hypothermia represents far more than the apparent effects associated with the "single variable" of reduced temperature. Little is known about the survival-related stress responses of mammalian cells other than reports of the production of heat shock (stress) proteins (HSP), which putatively act to chaperone proteins to prevent cold-induced denaturation.[49–52] Hypothermia without manipulative intervention sets the stage for progressive cell injury during each of its three phases (cooling, maintenance in the cold, and rewarming). Rewarming-related injury will be discussed in detail in Chapter 2.

1.2 CRYOPRESERVATION

Cryopreservation protocols begin with hypothermic exposures, extend through the *hypothermic continuum*, and reach equilibrium in the glassy, or vitrified, state. These steps are "reversed" during the thawing process. The addition of cryoprotective compounds represents the next step in the preservation process. These cryoprotective agents include a diversity of penetrating (membrane permeable) and nonpenetrating agents typically contained within an isotonic cell culture or buffered electrolyte media.[53] The duration of the incubation period is determined empirically but commonly lasts from 10 to 30 minutes. As temperature is lowered below the equilibrium freezing point of the preservation medium following the addition of penetrating cryoprotective compounds, nominal cooling rates are applied over user-varied subfreezing temperatures (–40 to –80°C). Following this

is the transfer to ultralow temperature storage, i.e., liquid nitrogen immersion, liquid nitrogen vapor phase, or <–135°C mechanical storage. This temperature range is ideal; partly due to the ready availability of liquid nitrogen, a nonflamable cryogen, and the fact that this temperature range falls below the reported glass transition temperatures (Tg) of pure water.[54] The glass transition temperatures for cryoprotective mixtures are reported to be in the –115 to –90°C range. Below the glass transition temperature, the viscosity of the medium increases exponentially so that all measurable molecular translational motion is lost. While molecules retain rotational and vibrational movement, the moment of diffusion (distance equivalent to one molecular diameter) of a given molecular species increases from fractions of a millisecond to decades. Hence the presumption that molecular interactions (i.e., metabolism) are impossible during the preservation storage interval.[55] It should be noted that the *hypothermic continuum* ends with the glass transition state. Prior to reaching the Tg, chemical reactivity is maintained, albeit at reduced rates, yielding the potential for sustained free-radical damage. It is for this reason that long-term storage at –80°C is ill advised even for a cellular biologics such as serum, macromolecules, etc.

Following the addition of and incubation in the cryoprotective cocktail, cooling is extended at a nominal ("optimal") cooling rate (1°C·min^{-1} is common with many mammalian cells). A "seeding" step (ice nucleation) is included in the –2 to –6°C range to prevent excessive undercooling ("supercooling") of the cell and its bathing medium. It is advantageous to initiate the extracellular freezing process close to the equilibrium freezing point of the cryoprotective medium. Seeding supports the comparatively gradual growth of extracellular ice, which allows for the osmotic efflux of water from the cell resulting in cell shrinkage and the equilibrium freeze concentration of solutes across the cell membrane.[56] Freeze concentration reduces the availability of freezable water in the cell while driving up the intracellular viscosity toward Tg. If cooling rates are too rapid, adequate cellular dehydration will not occur and the probability of lethal intracellular ice formation will increase. The consequences of supraoptimal cooling are recognized upon thawing as cell rupture and early stage (0 to 6 hours post-thaw) cellular necrosis.[57–60] If cooling rates are too slow, it is believed that the extensive exposure to the freeze concentrated solutes (now multimolar levels) will result in toxic "solution effects."[7,61,62] One facet of the manifestation of "solution effect" toxicity is the initiation of postpreservation necrosis peaking from 6 to 12 post-thaw hours, followed by a second peak in post-thaw apoptosis from 12 to 36 post-thaw hours (cell-type dependent)[58–60] followed by a secondary peak in necrosis related to the interplay between apoptosis and secondary necrosis. This complex post-thaw survival profile, defined as Delayed Onset Cell Death (DOCD),[60] poses significant challenges to post-preservation utilization of thawed cells (refer to Chapter 3).

Two of the more common methods of controlled rate cooling (CRC) include both microprocessor-controlled injection of the gaseous phase of boiling liquid nitrogen (active controlled rate cooling), and passive methods that employ insulated alcohol baths placed in –80°C mechanical freezers. Active CRC devices monitor a representative sample vial, straw, or bag, and adjust the inflow of cryogen to maintain a preset cooling profile. Profiles are set to maintain a standard rate of cooling over a prescribed temperature range, to "seed" (nucleate) the sample with a thermal shock administered by a surge in cryogen, and to "flatten" the temperature rebound that occurs upon the initiation of ice growth due to released latent heat of fusion of water. Active CRC also provides records of the cooling profiles. Passive CRC devices (i.e., "Mr. Frosty" by Nalgene, Inc.) contain the sample in a central cavity surrounded by — but isolated from — an alcohol layer. When placed in a –80°C freezer, a curvilinear rate of approximately 1°C min^{-1} is obtained. Seeding is accomplished by mechanical agitation at a prescribed time (user determined) during the cooling period. No provision is made for managing the temperature rise in the sample due to the release of the latent heat.

Both approaches to controlled rate cooling provide satisfactory results despite the variability in cooling profiles. One is left to conclude that the resulting rate variations are tolerable depending on cell type (within certain constraints) and that attention to the elevation in temperature that occurs

during the ice crystal growth due to the release of the latent heat is not a primary consideration.[62] Others have demonstrated that optimal cooling rates are dependent on the initial levels of cryoprotective agent.[63] Upon completion of the CRC step in the cryopreservation process, the sample is placed into long-term storage. Independent of the method of cooling, the cell is maintained in a vitreous state, provided that temperature does not fluctuate above the T_g of the solution. The cell will also be surrounded by a thin layer of vitrified cryoprotectant encased in the mass of extracellular ice.

Cells may be cryopreserved in an "ice-free" state by incorporating high molar concentrations of cryoprotectant mixtures added stepwise during the cooling interval. This approach to vitrification eliminates most ice from the preservation environments and may offer benefit when attempting to cryopreserve complex tissues and organs.[64–67] A detailed discussion of the vitrification option utilizing high concentrations of cryoprotective agents is found in Chapter 8. High solute-dependent vitrification procedures do, however, expose the cells to equivalent "solution effects," thereby exacerbating stress factors associated with the *hypothermic continuum*.

Rapid thawing of a cryopreserved sample is preferred. It is attained by placing the sample in a 37–40°C bath, agitating until most of the ice melts, and then eluting the cryoprotectant cocktail with cell culture media in a single step. A stepwise dilution process alternatively may be used when high levels of cryoprotectant (above 10%) were used during the initial cooling. Stepwise elution minimizes the volume excursions of the cell, thereby preventing mechanical damage and rupture of the cell membrane. Mazur [9] has provided elegant descriptions of the breadth of physicochemical changes that occur during cryopreservation.

Despite intensive research focused on improving cell preservation spanning more than a half century, the field continues to face many challenges. The following are excerpts from from *Life in the Frozen State*, a text from 2004 that details the contemporary state of the cryopreservation sciences. Lane,[13] in a chapter projecting the future of cryopreservation, states "few scientific problems have proved as intractable as cryopreservation … cryobiology has been straitjacketed by its need to conform to the intractable laws of biophysics. For all its successes, cryobiology has been stuck in a rut." Mazur,[9] in his introductory chapter in the same text, concludes, "the problem today is that applying basic principles of biophysics simply cannot solve many of the remaining challenges in cryobiology." Others have commented similarly. Fahy [67] suggests that "the detrimental effects of cryoprotectants are almost as relevant to cryobiology as are their cryoprotective effects," while Fuller [68] laments that "a unifying concept for cryoprotective agent chemical toxicity in cells remains beyond our grasp." Parks,[69] on the other hand, writes, "the interaction observed between cooling and cryoprotective agents on cytological damage … supports the notion that detrimental changes … are compounded by other requisite steps in a cryopreservation protocol." Gao et al.,[70] through a specific example, emphasize this concern when they suggest, "the empirical methods of cryopreservation developed in the 1950s are still used today. The motility of post-thaw cryopreserved sperm (bovine) is usually 50% or less that of prefreeze motility and exhibits wide variability among individuals." They go on to write, however, that "the use of similar cryopreservation procedures…are much less effective…" in other species, and "the success of using cryopreserved sperm is still so low that it is not economically feasible to…use this approach."

While argumentative within traditional cryobiology, the message is gaining clarity. Studies focused on the biophysical basis of cryopreservation have yielded successful methods that prevent the formation of destructive intracellular ice. However, these emergent processes induce detrimental post-thaw effects and fail to account for the biology attendant to the cellular stress responses.

With the first reports of glycerol serving as a protective solute in a naturally freeze-tolerant organism and the simultaneous application of this discovery to avian spermatozoa[71] and human erythrocytes (RBC),[72] mammalian cryopreservation research began a decade of advancements that include the addition of DMSO to the preservation cocktail mix.[73] By focusing preservation attention on two highly differentiated cellular "products" (RBC and spermatozoa) with fixed postdifferentiation lifespans, the full spectrum of the impacts of preservation stress on the complex biology of

TABLE 1.1
Putative Stress Factors Characteristic of the *Hypothermic Continuum*

Hypothermia	Known Initiators of Apoptosis
Metabolic Uncoupling/Shunting	Biochemical Alterations/Inhibitions
Energy Deprivation	Energy Deprivation
Ionic Imbalances	Ionic Imbalances
Cellular Acidosis	Cellular Acidosis
Protease Activation	Protease (Caspases) Activation
Membrane Phase Transitions	Membrane Alterations
Free Radical Production	Free Radical Accumulation
Cytoskeletal Disassembly	

Freezing	
Water Solidification (Solute Concentration)	Ionic Imbalances
Cell Volume Excursions	Membrane Alterations
Hyperosomolality	Ionic Imbalances
Protein Denaturation	Biochemical Alterations

normal functioning cells was obscured. In effect, these models have provided an effective "cloak" that has obscured the full spectrum of events associated with post-thaw, cryopreservation-induced, delayed-onset cell death.

As methodological developments proceeded with nonterminally differentiated mammalian cells, many cell types proved refractory to cryopreservation. Even those cells that are "successfully preserved" often demonstrate significant post-thaw death (30–70%) within 24 to 48 hours.[60] Structural preservation is afforded to these cells, but a clear inability to manage the preservation-induced stresses is apparent.

Table 1.1 lists select stress factors encountered by a cell during the hypothermic continuum along with the known inducers of apoptosis. In addition, any of the stress factors that result in even partial physical damage can also initiate the launch of the necrotic cell death cascade or "cross talk" between the apoptotic and necrotic cascades followed by secondary necrosis. Energy deprivation, whether driven by metabolic uncoupling or by hypoxia, can initiate apoptosis. If energy deprivation is severe, however, a transition from initial apoptosis to secondary necrosis will result (refer to Chapter 3 for detailed discussion).

This listing of factors creates a relatively clear picture of the critical involvement played by the cell's "biology" in responding to a cryopreservation regime. Accordingly, a second-generation preservation paradigm must be developed to improve preservation outcomes.

1.3 BEYOND THE RED CELL PARADIGM: HYPOTHESES GUIDING PRESERVATION SOLUTION DEVELOPMENT

The generic listing of stress factors in Table 1.1 may serve as a template to guide the design of improved preservation methods, assuming adequate "structural preservation." There are well-noted differences in the sensitivity of various cell-types to preservation processes. Van Buskirk et al.[74] reported on these variations in three cell types, indicating a possible need for "cell-matched" preservation solutions. The basis for there being differing kinds of cellular survival was linked to the manner in which caspase-3, an apoptotic executioner enzyme, was inhibited. This study provided the basis for the *multisolution hypothesis*, which suggests that distinct cell types manage their cell

death pathways through differing molecular pathways. Hence, the requirement for unique management strategies may necessitate individualized preservation media.

The new challenge facing biopreservation is the need to adopt a molecular-based logic to develop the optimal preservation solution(s) necessary to support a cell's round-trip excursion through the *hypothermic continuum*. The earliest attempts at intelligent design of a preservation medium were made by the Belzer and Southard team[5] when they developed ViaSpan® (the University of Wisconsin solution) to support the transport of organs (pancreas, kidney, and liver) in anticipation of transplantation. ViaSpan®, formulated exclusively for short-term hypothermic storage, was the first solution designed to manage select putative stress factors (Table 1.1) and became the first intracellular-like preservation medium. In the decade that followed, additional organ preservation solutions were commercially developed (i.e., Celsior, HTK-Custodiol, and others).

1.3.1 EXTRACELLULAR- VS. INTRACELLULAR-LIKE PRESERVATION MEDIA

More recently, the issue of preservation solution design has moved beyond the simple addition of a penetrating cryoprotective agent (5–15%) to cell culture media, buffered saline, or mixtures including serum or a protein component. While these "historic designs" provide apparent structural preservation, they are often severely limiting in supporting cellular function. These limitations are apparent when assessing post-thaw survival and specific cell functions. Figure 1.1 schematically represents the survival-time course following the established "optimal preservation protocol" (figure modified from Baust et al.[33]). Little cell death is noted within one hour post-thaw. However, over the next 24 hours in culture, nearly 70% of the cells succumb to cryopreservation-induced delayed-onset cell death that is unrelated to physical damage. With this "optimized protocol," greater than 90% of the cells avoided ice-related damage.[60] Cryopreservation in extracellular-like media not only affects survival but also compromises cellular function including both the genome and proteome. Primary hepatocytes preserved in 10% DMSO effectively lose the ability to maintain normal
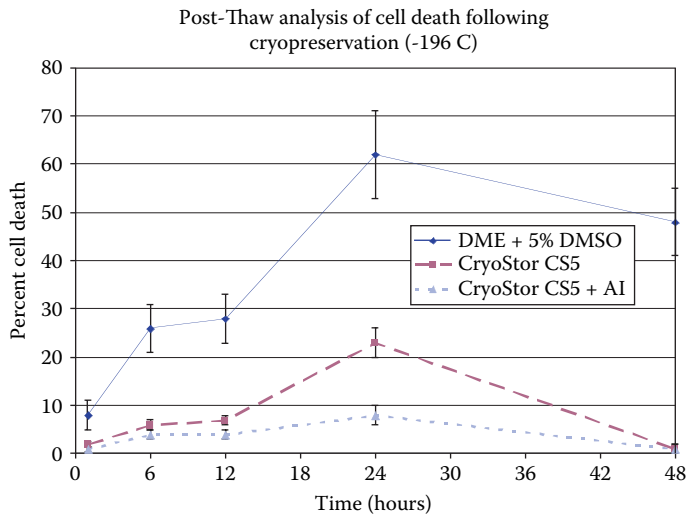
FIGURE 1.1 Time course analysis of post-thaw survival of MDCK (Madin-Darby Canine Kidney) cells following cryopreservation at −196°C in cell culture media plus DMSO (DME + 5% DMSO), an extracellular-like preservation solution and in two intracellular-like solutions: CryoStor CS5 contains 5% DMSO while CryoStor CS5 + AI contains 5% DMSO plus a caspase pan-inhibitor. The decline in cell death following 24 hours is attributed to cell culture repopulation. Percent Survival data were obtained using the alamarBlue® fluorescent probe. Values are +/− Standard Deviation of the Mean.

Post-Thaw survival of cryopreserved
human fibroblast (NHDF) cells
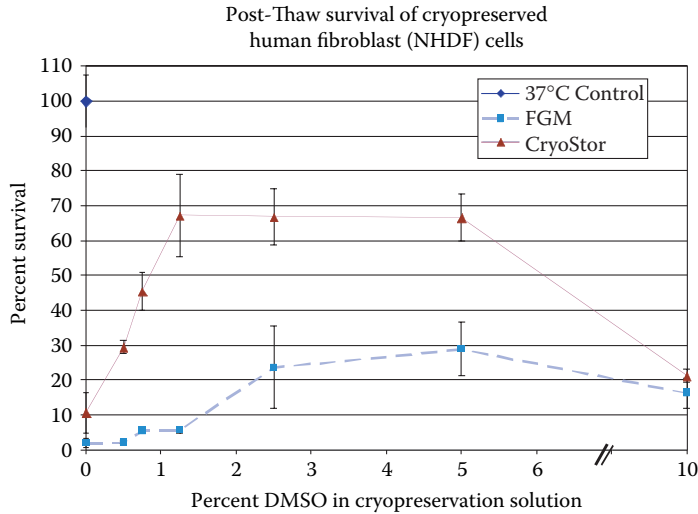
FIGURE 1.2 Human Dermal Fibroblasts (NHDF) were cryopreserved in an extracellular-like solution (FGM: Fibroblast Growth Media) or an intracellular-like solution (CryoStor) both containing 0–10% DMSO. Percent Survival data were obtained using the alamarBlue® fluorescent probe at 24 hours post-thaw. Values are +/– Standard Deviation of the Mean.

proteomic function. In studies by Sosef et al.[75] and Sugimachi et al.,[76] surviving hepatocytes failed to recover complete protein synthetic capabilities even fourteen days post-thaw.

The examples above reveal the dichotomy that exists in interpreting post-thaw "survival."[77] The cause of these response differentials is not related to cryoprotectant concentration. Figure 1.2 illustrates the 24-hour postpreservation outcome obtained with human dermal fibroblasts preserved in fibroblast growth media (FGM), an extracellular-like buffered electrolyte solution, and DMSO-free CryoStor™ base, an intracellular-like buffered electrolyte.[53] To each basal media DMSO was titrated to concentrations of 0.5 to 10%. Fibroblasts were cryopreserved in these media at –196°C and post-thaw survival measured. The classic "cryopreservation cap" is apparent as survival increased with DMSO levels to a putative "optimum" followed by a decline in survival at higher DMSO levels. Four significant observations may be drawn from these data. First, "optimal survival" is confirmed in the FBM™ –5% DMSO, extracellular-like media. Second, with a simple change in cryoprotectant carrier media from the extracellular-like formulation, post-thaw survival in CryoStor™ with 5% DMSO yielded an approximate doubling in survival. Third, fibroblast survival is maintained at supraoptimal levels in the Cryostor™ base even when DMSO levels are decreased fourfold to 1.25%. Fourth, equivalent levels of survival are obtained in FGM™ –5% DMSO and CryoStor™ +0.5% DMSO, which represents a tenfold decrease in penetrating cryoprotectant levels. This patterned response has been observed in many of the analyzed cell systems and exposes a limitation of the two-factor hypothesis.[7,9]

The principal difference in the approaches to cryopreservation and the resultant outcomes presented in Figure 1.2 are dependent on carrier solution composition. Essentially, through the integration of an intracellular-type solution with an understanding of the molecular responses of the cell at low temperature, one is able to significantly improve cryopreservation outcome.[33,53] Critical to an understanding of the success of these intracellular-like solutions is an in-depth knowledge of the cell death pathways activated as a result of cryopreservation-induced oxidative stresses. In Chapter 3 the processes and pathways associated with the induction of apoptosis and necrosis are reviewed along with a discussion of the current state of knowledge with regard to the extent and activation sites of these molecular-based events. While a detailed understanding of these

processes remains, in its infancy, the literature base detailing this paradigm shift has rapidly expanded over the last five years.

1.3.2 ADVANCES IN HYPOTHERMIC STORAGE SOLUTIONS

As detailed in Chapter 2, the development and formulation of hypothermic storage solutions involves addressing a complex array of factors. Many of these principles were applied in the development of the first intracellular-like preservation media ViaSpan® (University of Wisconsin Solution), by Southard and Belzer.[5] Through solution design that addressed the complexity of factors influencing cell viability, as understood in the 1980s, ViaSpan® proved successful at short-term cell, tissue, and organ storage. The development of this single solution was essential to the application, success, and expansion of the field of organ transplantation over the last few decades. However, current day demands for hypothermic storage of cells, tissues, and organs challenge the capabilities of ViaSpan®.

While few of the new solutions have overcome the many regulatory hurdles commonplace to clinical settings, several solutions have been developed that show the promise of improved poststorage quality based on *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies. In 1995, Taylor et al.[78] published on the development of a new generation hypothermic storage solution termed HypoThermosol®. Throughout the 1990s, studies of this solution focused on its utilization as a whole-body perfusate in support of ultra profound hypothermic surgery in canine, rabbit, porcine, and nonhuman primate models. Based upon the success of these studies, utilization was extended into cell and tissue systems *in vitro* in the late 1990s. With successful translation *in vitro*, a series of studies were launched to look at the comparative differences in solution composition effects at the cellular and molecular level.[79] Studies focusing on the effects of divalent cation disregulation, ion alternatives, free radical damage, protease activation, etc. have appeared and helped to guide the development of hypothermic storage solutions. Of these new directions in solution design based on cellular response processes, the control of free radical accumulation during the preservation process has proven most beneficial to date. Several recent reports by Mathew et al.[14,79] have detailed the benefits of including specific free radical scavengers in hypothermic preservation solutions. These studies, built on the solution design approaches put forth by Southard et al.,[5] and later refined by Taylor et al.[78] demonstrated that one could significantly improve hypothermic preservation efficacy as well as extend the preservation window (cold storage time). More recently, Snyder et al.[80] demonstrated that through utilization of the hypothermic storage approach (solution) developed by Taylor et al.[78] and modified by Mathew et al.,[79] one could also maintain cellular function at high levels. The resultant solution HypoThermosol®-FRS was able to preserve cardiomyocytes *in vitro* for three days at 4°C while maintaining cell viability and contractile function near nonpreserved control levels.

1.3.3 NEXT GENERATION CRYOPRESERVATION SOLUTION DESIGN

With cryopreservation advancement more dependent on mitigation of the molecular-based responses to low-temperature exposure and storage, there is a growing recognition that cryopreservation solution formulation requires attention to both physical and cellular related events.[33,53] The underlying principles now recognized as essential to optimization of cryopreservation processes include but are not limited to maintaining proper cold-dependent ionic ratios, control of pH at lowered temperatures, prevention of the formation of free radicals and avoidance of their detrimental effects, oncontic balance, the supply of energy substitutes, etc.[6,33,53] In fact, the first attempt at addressing these issues was through the simple addition of cryoprotective agents such as DMSO to hypothermic storage solutions including ViaSpan® (University of Wisconsin solution).[81–83] These studies showed marginal improvement in cryopreservation outcome over classical approaches. In 1998 the first report on the use of a newly designed hypothermic storage solution supplemented with DMSO was shown to markedly increase cell survival in comparison to both classical approaches as well as the

use of ViaSpan® + DMSO.[84] Subsequent studies utilizing this platform solution[59,85] and molecular-based approach[33,58,60] resulted in the development of the first intracellular-like cryopreservation solution, CryoStor™. This approach has led to the paradigm shift related to the control of stress response of cells during the preservation process in an effort to reduce the levels of post-thaw apoptosis and necrosis. The combination of molecular control and classical cryopreservation principles and the resultant technologies has proven to be extremely successful in improving preservation efficacy in many cellular and tissue systems.

1.4   CLOSING THOUGHTS

It is now essential that we begin to integrate the disciplines of cellular biology, molecular biology, cryobiology, etc. to effect improvement in preservation outcome. Many cell-based applications in cell therapy, regenerative and reparative medicine, biobanking, tissue engineering, and drug discovery require normal, predictable, and timely return to function of cellular systems following preservation, which is often not the case with today's standard technologies and approaches. Furthermore, with the growing body of evidence suggesting that the often utilized, elevated levels of cryoprotective agents, such as DMSO, impact and alter the cellular proteome, genome, and fragmentome — in addition to cellular structures such as the mitochondria, cell membrane, and nucleus — it is now becoming more imperative for the development of new approaches to afford successful preservation.

The first generation of cryopreservation developments focused on structural preservation of cells through the inclusion of penetrating cryoprotectants and the resultant management of ice and chemosmotic perturbations. Second-generation strategies integrated with and improved upon preservation outcome through preservation solution designs that mitigated the detrimental effects of preservation-induced oxidative stresses that directly contributed to the post-thaw launch of apoptotic and necrotic cell death cascades (Delayed Onset Cell Death).[33,53] The next generation of improved preservation technologies will be linked to "management" of gene-regulated, stress-dependent effects on the proteome and genome, which will likely require a near-team reassessment of the inclusion of toxic/mutanagenic agents, such as DMSO, in preservation media.

The literature base utilizing the integrated approach to understanding and developing new approaches for preservation continues to grow slowly. However, this growth is still significantly outpaced by reports dedicated to methodological improvements focusing on more precise modeling and analysis of physical parameters and volume shifts of cells undergoing preservation. While this was the case in the past and still is today, it will mostly likely be a union between the optimized structural preservation approaches and the cell-molecular-based approaches to preservation that will ultimately yield true improvements in postpreservation outcome.

REFERENCES

1. Snyder, K.K., Van Buskirk, R.G., Baust, J.M., Mathew, A.J., and Baust, J.G., Biological packaging for the global cell and tissue therapy markets, *BioProcessing J.,* May/June, 1–7, 2004.
2. Dimond, P.F., Prion disease mechanisms and activation, *Genet. Eng. News*, 25, 16–22, 2005.
3. Gao, D., Mazur, P., and Critser, J.K., Fundamentals of mammalian spermatozoa, in *Reproductive Tissue Banking: Scientific Principle*, Karow, A.M., and Critser, J.K., Eds., Academic Press, San Diego, 1997, pp. 251–257.
4. Southard, J.H., Van Gulik, T.M., Ametani, M.S., Vreugdenhil, P.K., Lindell, S.C., Diemaar, B.L., and Belzar, F.O., Important components of UW solution, *Transplantation,* 49, 251–257, 1990.
5. Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Organ preservation, *Annu. Rev. Med.*, 46, 235–247, 1990.
6. Taylor, M.J., Campbell, L.H., Rutledge, R.N., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Comparison of Unisol with EuroCollins solution as a vehicle solution for cryoprotectants, *Transplant P.,* 33, 677–679, 2002.

7. Mazur, P., The role of intracellular freezing in the death of cells cooled at supraoptimal rates, *Cryobiology,* 14, 251–272, 1977.

8. Lovelock, J.E., The haemolysis of red blood cells by freezing and thawing, *Biochem. Biophys. Acta.,* 10, 414–426, 1953.

9. Mazur, P., Principles of cryobiology, in *Life in the Frozen State,* Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E.E., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, pp. 3–65.

10. Coger, R. and Toner, M., Preservation techniques for biomaterials, in *The Biomedical Engineering Handbook,* Brunzino, J.D., Ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1995, pp. 1567–1579.

11. Van Buskirk, R.G., Baust, J.M., Snyder, K.K., Mathew, A.J., and Baust, J.G., Hypothermic storage and cryopreservation: The issues of successful short-term and long-term preservation of cells and tissues, *Bioprocess Int.,* 2(10), 42–49.

12. Taylor, M.J., Song, Y.C., and Brockbank, K.G.M.,Vitrification in tissue preservation, in *Life in the Frozen State*, Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E.E., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, pp. 603–692.

13. Lane, N., The future of cryobiology, in *Life in the Frozen State*, Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E.E., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, pp. 645–657.

14. Mathew, A.J., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Cell preservation in reparative and regenerative medicine: Evolution of individualized solution composition, *Tissue Engr.*, 10, 1662–1671, 2004.

15. Huang, J.S., Downes, G.L., Childress, G.L., Felts, J.M., and Belzer, F.O., Oxidation of ^{14}C-labelled substrates by dog kidney cortex at 10 and 38°C, *Cryobiology*, 11, 387–394, 1974.

16. Tani, M. and Neely, J.R., Roles of intracellular Na+ in Ca^{2}+ overload and depressed recovery of ventricular function of reperfused ischemic rat hearts: Possible involvement of H+ -Na+ and Na+ - Ca^{2}+ exchange, *Circ. Res.*, 65, 1045–1056, 1989.

17. Renlund, D.G., Gerstenblith, G., Lakatta, E.G., Jacobus, W.E., Kallman, C.H., and Weisfeldt, M.L., Perfusate sodium during ischemia modifies postischemic functional and metabolic recovery in the rabbit heart, *J. Mol. & Cell. Cardiol.*, 16, 795–801, 1984.

18. Neely, J.R. and Grotyohann, L.W., Role of glycolytic products in damage to ischemic myocardium: Dissociation of adenosine triphosphate levels and recovery of function of reperfused ischemic hearts, *Circ. Res.*, 55, 816–824, 1984.

19. Southard, J.H., van der Laan, N. Chr., Lutz, M., Pavlock, G.S., Belzer, J.P., and Belzer, F.O., Comparison of the effect of temperature on kidney cortex mitochondria from rabbit, dog, pig, and human: Arrehenius plots of ADP-stimulated respiration, *Cryobiology,* 20, 395–400, 1983.

20. Wilson, J.M. and McMurdo, A.C., Chilling injury in plants, in *Effects of Low Temperatures on Biological Membranes*, Morris, G.J. and Clarke, A. Eds., Academic Press, London, 1981, pp. 146–172.

21. Lyons, J.M.J. and Raison, J.K., A temperature-induced transition in mitochondrial oxidation: Contrast between cold and warm-blooded animals, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.*, 37, 405–411, 1970.

22. Raison, J.K., The influence of temperature-induced phase changes on the kinetics of respiratory and other membrane-associated enzyme systems, *Bioenergetics*, 4, 285–309, 1973.

23. Ricciutti, M.A., Lysosomes and myocardial cellular injury, *Am. J. Cardiol.*, 30, 498–502, 1972.

24. Weglicki, W.B., Owens, K., Ruth, R.C., and Sonnenblick, E.H., Activity of endogenous myocardial lipases during incubation at acid pH, *Cardiovasc. Res.*, 8, 237–242, 1974.

25. Liu, X., Engelman, R.M., Rousou, J.A., and Das, D.K., Myocardial reperfusion injury during adult cardiac surgery, in *Pathophysiology of Reperfusion Injury,* Das, D.K., Ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1993, pp. 263–293.

26. de Jong, J.W., Cardioplegia and calcium antagonists: A review, *Ann. of Thorac. Surg.,* 42, 593–598, 1986.

27. Schwertz, D.W., Halverson, J., Isaacson, T., Feinberg, H., and Palmer, J.W., Alterations in phospholipids metabolism in the globally ischemic rat heart: Emphasis on phosphoinositide specific phopholipase, *J. Mol. & Cell. Cardiol.*, 19(7), 685–697, 1987.

28. White, B.C., Wiegenstein, J.G., and Winegar, C.D., Brain ischemic anoxia: Mechanisms of injury, *JAMA*, 251(12), 1586–1590, 1984.

29. Jennings, R.B. and Ganote, C.E., Mitochondrial structure and function in acute myocardial ischemic injury, *Circ. Res.,* 38, 5 (Suppl. I), I-80–I-91, 1976.

30. Jennings, R.B. and Ganote, C.E., Structural changes in myocardium during acute ischemia, *Circ. Res.,* 34, 35 (Suppl. III), 156–172, 1974.

31. Clarke, D., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Addition of anticancer agents enhances freezing-induced prostate cancer cell death: Implications of mitochondrial involvement, *Cryobiology,* 49(1), 45–61, 2004.

32. Baust, J.G. and Gage, A.A., The molecular basis of cryosurgery, *Br. J. Urology*, 1(95), 1187–1191, 2005.

33. Baust, J.M., Molecular mechanisms of cellular demise associated with cryopreservation failure*, Cell Preservation Technol.,* 1, 17–31, 2002.

34. Russotti, G., Brieva, T.A., Toner, M., and Yarmush, M.L., Induction of tolerance to hypothermia by previous heat shock using human fibroblasts in culture, *Cryobiology*, 33, 567–580, 1996.

35. Brinkley, B. and Cartwright, J., Cold labile and cold stable microtubules in the mitotic spindle of mammalian cells, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 253, 428, 1975.

36. Stefanovich, P., Ezzell, R.M., Sheehan, S.J., Tompkins, R.G., Yarmush, M.L., and Toner, M., Effects of hypothermia on the function, membrane integrity, and cytoskeletal structure of hepatocytes, *Cryobiology*, 32, 398–403, 1995.

37. Fuhram, G.J. and Fuhram, F.A., Oxygen consumption of animals and tissues as a function of temperature, *J. Gen. Physiol.*, 42, 215, 1959.

38. Raison, J.K., The influence of temperature-induced phase changes on the kinetics of respiratory and other membrane-associated enzyme systems, *Bioenergetics*, 4, 285–309, 1973.

39. van't Hoff, *Etudes sur la Dynamique Chimique,* Muller, Amsterdam, 1884.

40. Lanir, A., Clouse, M.E., and Lee, R.G., Liver preservation for transplant: Evaluation of hepatic energy metabolism by 31P NMR, *Transplantation*, 43(6), 786–790, 1987.

41. Fuller, B.J., Gower, J.D., and Green, C.J., Free radical damage and organ preservation: Fact or fiction? A review of the interrelationship between oxidative stress and physiological ion disbalance, *Cryobiology*, 25(5), 377–393, 1988.

42. Stubenitsky, B.M., Ametani, M., Danielewicz, R., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Regeneration of ATP in kidney slices after warm ischemia and hypothermic preservation, *Transplant Int*., 8(4), 293–297, 1995.

43. Scholander, P.P., Flaff, W., Waters, V., and Irving, L., Climatic adaptations in arctic and tropical poikilotherma, *Physiological Zoology*, 26, 67–92, 1953.

44. Storey, K.B., and Storey, J.M., Facultative metabolism rate depression: Molecular regulation and biochemical adaptation in anaerobiosis, hibernation and estivation, *Quart. Rev. Biol.,* 65, 145–174, 1990.

45. Galletti, G., Hypothermia and hibernation, in *Organ Preservation for Transplantation,* Karow, Jr. A.M. and Pegg, D., Eds., Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1984, pp. 101–111.

46. Nedergaard, J. and Cannon, B., Mammalian hibernation, *Philos. T. Roy. Soc. B.,* 326, 669–686, 1990.

47. Brown, R. and Baust, J.G., Time course of peripheral heterothermy in a homeotherm, *Amer. J. Physiol*., 9, R126–R129, 1980.

48. Baust, J.G. and Brown, R., Adaptative heterothermy in the arctic ground squirrel, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol*., 67A(3), 447–452, 1980.

49. Kondo, K., Dowalski, L.R.Z., and Inouye, M., Cold shock induction of yeast NSRI protein and its role in pre-rRna processing, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 267(23), 16259–16265, 1992.

50. Holland, D.B., Roberts, S.G., Wood, E.J., and Cunliffe, W.J., Cold shock induces the synthesis of stress proteins in human keratinocytes, *J. Invest. Dermatol*., 101, 196–199, 1993.

51. Laios E., Rebeyka, I.M., and Prody, C.A., Characterization of cold-induced heat shock protein expression in neonatal rat cardiomyocytes, *Mol. Cell. Biochem*., 173(1—2), 153–159, 1997.

52. Ebrel, T., Amberger, A., Herold, M., Hengster, P., Steurer, W., Hochleitner, B.W., Gnaiger, E., and Margreiter, R., Expression of stress proteins, adhesion molecules, and interleukin-8 endothelial cells after preservation and reoxygenation, *Cryobiology*, 38, 106–118, 1999.

53. Baust, J.M., Advances in media for cryopreservation and hypothermic storage, *BioProcess Int*., June, 46–56, 2005.

54. Franks, F., The properties of aqueous solutions at sub-zero temperature, in *Biophysics of Water,* Franks, F. and Mathias S., Eds, Wiley & Sons, Hoboken, NJ, 1982, 279–294.

55. Rall, W.F., Mazur, P., and McGrath, J.J., Depression of the ice nucleation temperature of rapidly cooled mouse embryos by glycerol and dimethyl sulfoxide, *Biophys. J.,* 41, 1–12, 1983.
56. Mazur, P. and Cole, K.W., Influence of cell concentration on the contribution of unfrozen fraction and salt concentration to the survival of slowly frozen human erythrocytes, *Cryobiology*, 22, 509–536, 1985.
57. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Cryopreservation of an engineered skin equivalent: The apoptosis paradigm, *Adv. Heat Mass Trans. in Biotech.*, HTD 363/BED 44, 71–76, 1999.
58. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., Genetic activation of the apoptotic caspase cascade following cryogenic storage, *Cell Preservation Technologies*, 1(1), 63–80, 2002.
59. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Cell viability improves following inhibition of cryopreservation-induced apoptosis, *In Vitro Cellular and Developmental Biology*, 36, 262–270, 2000.
60. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., A molecular basis of cryopreservation failure and its modulation to improve cell survival, *Cell Transpl.*, 10(7), 561–571, 2001.
61. Mazur, P., Leibo, S.P., and Chu, E.H.Y., A two-factor hypothesis of freezing injury: Evidence from Chinese hamster tissue culture cells, *Exp. Cell. Res.*, 71, 345–355, 1972.
62. Rhoads, L.S., Zlobinsky, Y., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Patterns of latent heat liberation during controlled rate cooling: Absence of effects on the survival of cryopreserved cells, *Cryo-Lett.*, 12, 329–338, 1991.
63. Souzu, H. and Mazur, P., Temperature dependence of the survival of human erythrocytes frozen slowly in various concentrations of glycerol, *Biophys. J.*, 23, 89–100, 1978.
64. Fahy, G.M., MacFarlane, D.R., Angell, C.A., and Meryman, H.T., Vitrification as an approach to cryopreservation, *Cryobiology,* 21, 407–426, 1984.
65. Rall, W.F. and Fahy, G.M., Ice-free cryopreservation of mouse embryos at –196°C by vitrification, *Nature*, 24, 407–426, 1985.
66. Taylor, M.J., Song, Y.C., Khirabadi, K.S., Lightfoot, F.G., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Vitrification fulfills its promise as an approach to reducing freeze-induced injury in multi-cellular tissue, *Adv. Heat Mass Transfer Biotechnol.*, 44, 93–102, 1999.
67. Fahy, G.M., The relevance of cryoprotectant cryobiology "toxicity" to cryobiology, *Cryobiology*, 23, 1–13, 1986.
68. Fuller, B.J., Cryoprotectants: The essential antifreezes to protect life in the frozen state, *Cryoletters*, 25, 375–388, 2004.
69. Parks, J.E., Hypothermia and mammalian gametes, in *Reproductive Tissue Banking Scientific Principle*, Karon, A.M. and Critser, J.K., Eds., Academic Press, San Diego, 1997, pp. 229–262.
70. Gao, D., Mazur, P., and Critser, J.K., Fundamental cryobiology of mammalian spermatozoa, in *Reproductive Tissue Banking Scientific Principle*, Academic Press, San Diego, 1997, pp. 263–328.
71. Polge, C., Smith, A.U., and Parkes, A.S., Revival of spermatozoa after vitrification and dehydration at low temperatures, *Nature,* 164, 666, 1949.
72. Smith, A.U., Prevention of hemolysis during freezing and thawing of red blood cells, *Lancet*, 259, 910–911, 1950.
73. Lovelock, J.E. and Bishop, M.W.F., Prevention of freezing damage to living cells by dimethyl sulfoxide, *Nature*, 183, 1394, 1959.
74. Van Buskirk, R.G., Baust, J.M., Snyder, K.K., Mathew, A.J., and Baust, J.G., Hypothermic storage and cryopreservation: The issues of successful short-term and long-term preservation of cells and tissues, *Bioprocess Int.*, 2, 42–49, 2004.
75. Sosef, M.N., Baust, J.M., Sugimachi, K., Fowler, A., Tompkins, R.G., and Toner, M., Cryopreservation of isolated primary rat hepatocytes: Enhanced survival and long-term hepatospecific functions, *Ann. Surg.*, 24, 125–133, 2005.
76. Sugimachi, K., Sosef, M.N., Baust, J.M., Fowler, A., Tompkins, R.G., and Toner, M., Long-term function of cryopreserved rat hepatocytes in a coculture system, *Cell Transplant.*, 13, 187–195, 2004.
77. Van Buskirk, R.G., Baust, J.M., Snyder, K.K., Hollister, W.R., Clarke, D.M., Mathew, A.J., and Baust, J.G., Cryopreservation: It's not just about cell yield, *BioProcess Int.*, 3, 64–74, 2005.
78. Taylor, M.J., Bailes, A., Elrifai, A., Shih, S., Teeple, E., Leavitt, M., Baust, J., and Maroon, J., A new solution for life without blood: Asanguinous low perfusion of a whole-body perfusate during three-hours of cardiac arrest and profound hypothermia, *Circulation,* 92(2), 432–444, 1995.

79. Mathew, A.J., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Improved hypothermic preservation of renal cells through suppression of both apoptosis and necrosis, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 1, 239–254, 2003.
80. Snyder, K.K., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Enhanced hypothermic storage of neonatal cardiomyocytes, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 3, 61–64, 2005.
81. Fisher, R.L., Hasal, S.J., Sanuik, J.T., Hasal, K.S., Gandolfi, A.J., and Brendel, K., Cold- and cryo-preservation of dog liver and kidney slices, *Cryobiology*, 33(1), 163–171, 1996.
82. Corominola, H., Mendola, J., Esmatjes, E., Saenz, A., Fernandez-Cruz, L., and Gomis, R., Cryopreser-vation of pancreatic islets prior to transplantation: A comparison between UW solution and RPMI culture medium, *Cryobiology,* 37(2), 110–118, 1998.
83. Martin, H., Bournique, B., Sarsat, J.P., Albaladejo, V., and Lerche-Langrand, C., Cryopreserved rat liver slices: A critical evaluation of cell viability, histological integrity, and drug-metabolizing enzymes, *Cryobiology,* 41(2), 135–144, 2000.
84. Baust, J.M., Baust, J.G., and Van Buskirk, R., Cryopreservation outcome is enhanced by intracellular-type medium and inhibition of apoptosis, *Cryobiology*, 37(4), 410–411, 1998.
85. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., Modulation of the cryopreservation "Cap": Elevated survival with reduced dimethyl sulfoxide concentration*, Cryobiology*, 45(2), 97–108, 2002.

2 Biology of Cell Survival in the Cold: The Basis for Biopreservation of Tissues and Organs

Michael J. Taylor

CONTENTS

15

2.1 INTRODUCTION

Transplantation science calls for effective methods of preservation since it is unavoidable that donor cells, tissues, and organs are required to withstand a period of ischemia and hypoxia as part of any transplantation protocol. Historically, interest in isolated organ preservation was recorded at the beginning of the present century when Carrel was the first to explore techniques for preserving tissues for the purposes of transplantation.[1–3] Carrel was awarded the Nobel Prize in 1912[4] and in subsequent studies in the 1930s investigating normothermic organ perfusion with serum or synthetic perfusates, he laid down the basic requirements for artificial perfusion technology relating to organ preservation and cardiopulmonary bypass.[5] It was recognized at that time that the viability of perfused tissues depends on a variety of factors that remain pertinent today. These included the need for the perfusion fluid (blood or synthetic solutions) to be free of emboli (gaseous or particulate), including agglutinated corpuscles if blood was used. Physical and chemical characteristics of the perfusion medium were also recognized to be of crucial importance. These include temperature, osmotic pressure, pH, oxygenation, and chemical composition.[5]

During the next two decades perfusion techniques were improved and invariably combined with hypothermia for effective preservation.[4] While the protective effects of low temperatures have been known and explored by mankind since the dawn of civilization and began to be documented as early as the seventeenth century,[6] the scientific basis for cell death following ischemia and its amelioration by hypothermia has only begun to be understood during the past fifty years. The modern era of low temperature cell preservation, which began in the 1950s, involves both hypothermic preservation at temperatures above 0°C and also cryopreservation at subzero temperatures utilizing freezing or vitrification techniques. The fundamental basis of low-temperature preservation is to use cold as a physical means of depressing function in a reversible way, i.e., to achieve a state of "suspended animation." The principles and mechanistic basis of cryopreservation that currently permit a wide variety of single cells and some simple tissues to be stored indefinitely at deep subzero temperatures will be discussed in other chapters. At present, most complex multicellular tissues and organs cannot be cryopreserved without incurring intolerable levels of cryoinjury (see References 7–9) and effective methods of preservation rely upon hypothermic storage at temperatures above the freezing point. The purpose of this chapter is to summarize the basic principles upon which mammalian cells can be safely held in suspended animation in the cold.

The cells of poikilothermic animals have adapted through evolutionary processes to survival in the cold,[10] but for the cells of euthermic animals, including man, cold is a stress that may be tolerated depending upon the degree and duration.[11] Some mammals have adapted to these cold stresses through the process of hibernation, and emerging clues for the mechanisms involved may, in the future, provide benefits for interventional strategies of hypothermic preservation of tissues harvested from nonhibernators.[12–14] What then is the scientific basis for the longstanding use of hypothermia as the cornerstone of virtually all effective methods of multicellular tissue and organ preservation? In this chapter, I will outline the basis for cell survival in the cold by considering the cell in relation to its environment, the known effects of ischemia and anoxia, the influence of hypothermia on ischemic events, and, finally, the strategies of interventional control of the extracellular environment to optimize preservation.

2.2   THE CELL IN RELATION TO ITS ENVIRONMENT

2.2.1   DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE EXTRACELLULAR ENVIRONMENT AND THE INTRACELLULAR MILIEU, AND THEIR CONTROL

A cell is defined morphologically by its limiting envelope, the plasma membrane, which separates it from its neighbors in a tissue or from its fluid environment. Within the body, the extracellular fluid bathing cells is maintained within closely regulated limits by a variety of control mechanisms and cells maintain a different, but even more constant intracellular milieu. Figure 2.1 shows schematically the contrasting balance of ions between the intracellular and extracellular spaces of a typical mammalian cell, with the extracellular complement of ions representing the typical composition of a balanced salt solution such as Ringer's or Krebs' etc. buffer solutions for *in vitro* cell maintenance.

Cells are able to maintain a stable internal environment very different from that which surrounds them by means of their membrane pumps, and principally by the sodium pump mediated by Na^+-K^+ ATPase. As illustrated in Figure 2.1, this is an energy-consuming process that extrudes sodium and accumulates potassium in the ratio of 3:2 (i.e., the pump is electrogenic and contributes to the cell membrane electrical potential). Each ion tends to diffuse back down its concentration gradient, but because potassium diffuses out more rapidly than sodium can diffuse in, the net loss of cations from the cell charges the cell membrane (negative internally). The voltage gradient also influences the distribution of anions, and Cl^-, which diffuses freely in response to the membrane potential, is excluded. Therefore, the sodium pump in effect extrudes NaCl and, because the membrane is highly permeable to water, an osmotic quota of water (180 molecules/solute molecule) leaves the cell with the Na^+ and Cl^-. Thus, the sodium pump controls cell volume as well as ion distribution and the maintenance of the intracellular environment is dependent upon metabolic generation of high-energy phosphates.
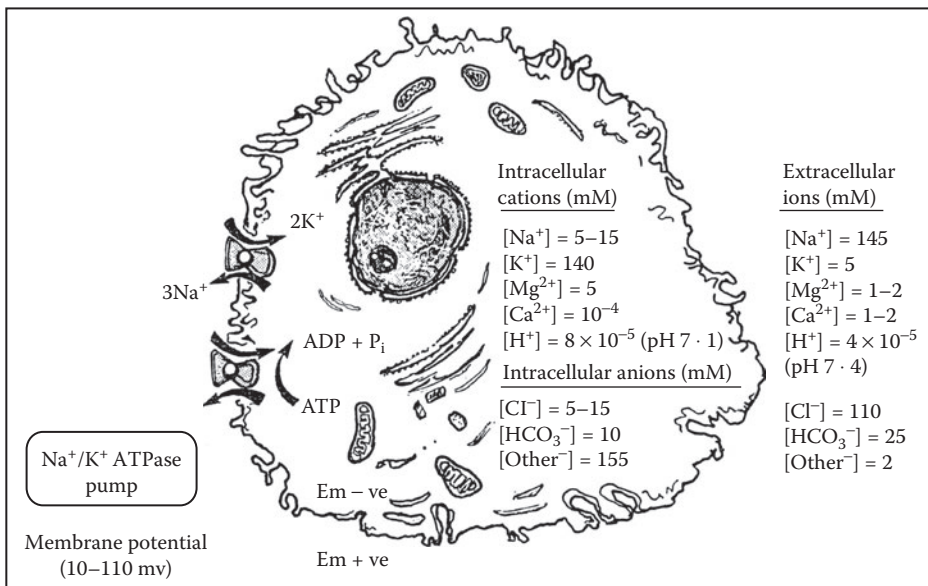
FIGURE 2.1 Schematic diagram of a typical mammalian cell showing the contrasting balance of ions between the intracellular and extracellular compartments. The cell expends energy in the form of ATP to fuel the membrane pumps that maintain the ionic gradients as an integral component of cell homeostasis. (See text for details).

A. Sources of osmolality

B. Control osmotic swelling
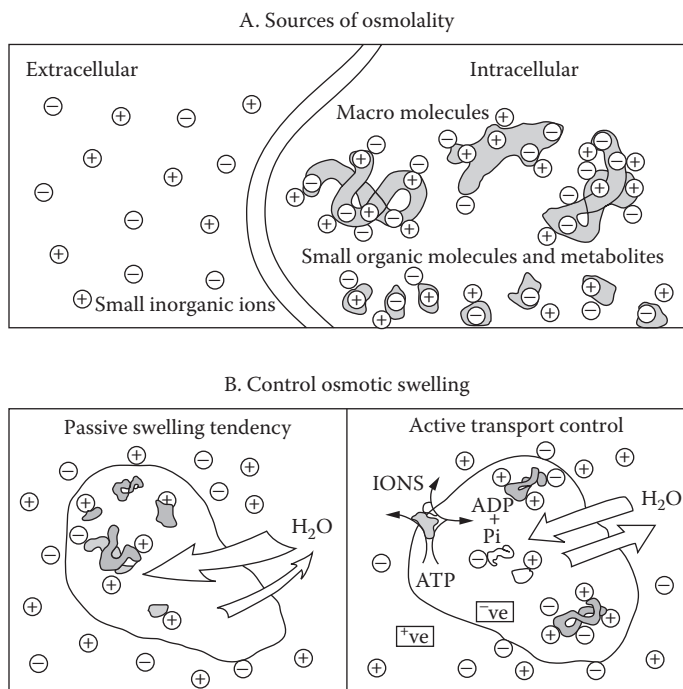
FIGURE 2.2 The cell in relation to its environment: schematic representation of the sources of osmolality inside and outside of cells and the role of active transport processes in controlling cellular hydration and cell volume. (See text for details).

Apart from small inorganic ions, the cell contains a variety of small organic molecules and metabolites as well as macromolecules that, unlike the inorganic ions, are not free to traverse the cell membrane, but are confined within the intracellular compartment. This has important implications for the control of cellular hydration and volume, as depicted in Figure 2.2. Osmolality is a colligative property and as such, depends upon the actual number of particles present in solution rather than on the size or nature of the molecules.[15] Hence, intracellular macromolecules themselves contribute very little to the osmolality of the cell interior since they are present in relatively small numbers compared with the number of small molecules and ions. However, macromolecules are invariably highly charged, attracting a large number of small counter-ions that contribute significantly to intracellular osmolality. In addition, a cell contains a high concentration of small organic molecules as products of metabolic processes and these impermeable metabolites are also associated with a complement of counter-ions (Figure 2.2). In contrast, the osmolality of the extracellular fluid is due principally to small inorganic ions that leak slowly across the plasma membrane. The distribution of these ions is governed both by the presence of the impermeant charged molecules inside the cell and by the active ion pumps associated with the plasma membrane.

These factors give rise to a greater concentration of inorganic ions inside the cell than outside at equilibrium, a phenomenon known as the Donnan effect.[16] Details of these essential cellular processes can be found in any standard physiology textbook[17] and have been discussed in relation to reduced hypothermic preservation by Pegg.[18,19]

2.2.1.1 Osmotic Cell Swelling

In essence, if the active ion transport processes are inhibited as a consequence of either energy deprivation and/or temperature reduction, then the impermeant solutes and colloidal material inside the cell give rise to water uptake. This in turn reduces the concentration of salt below that of the

extracellular fluid and more salt penetrates making the cell hyperosmolar, thus inducing more and more water uptake until the cell eventually bursts, an event known as membrane rupture. This colloid osmotic swelling is a very significant factor in the cell's relationship to its environment since the semipermeability of cell membranes vis-à-vis ions is only effectively maintained by metabolic processes that pump ions in or out of the cell. Where these processes fail the effective semipermeability is lost and the result is colloid osmotic swelling and lysis. Obviously, this is a very important phenomenon that has to be taken into consideration when designing methods of hypothermic cell preservation as discussed below.

Similar considerations apply to the composition of interstitial fluid surrounding cells and the plasma within capillaries. Because of the low permeability of capillaries to proteins, the interstitial fluid normally has a low concentration of these plasma constituents, which are predominantly serum albumin (67%; MW = 61,000) and serum globulins (30%) with much higher molecular mass (~100,000 Daltons). The interstitial fluid can be considered as an ultrafiltrate of plasma with the Gibbs-Donnan equilibrium applying to the distribution of ions.[17] The circulation is therefore responsible for maintaining a remarkably constant composition of the extracellular fluid with the osmolality being controlled at about 300 m osmol/kg to equate with that of the cytosol within cells as described above: cells will tolerate a perturbation of osmolality of only 10% without harm.

2.2.2 Essential Maintenance Processes

Under normothermic physiological conditions, control of a cell's peculiar internal environment with respect to its surroundings is a function of both the properties of the plasma membrane and of the cell's energy processes within the cell. The membranes are bilayer lipid-rich structures with associated embedded proteins that invariably function as transmembrane transporters of ions and small molecules, e.g., via specific channels. It is mentioned above that the plasma membrane provides a selective barrier to the diffusion of ions and other solutes, the distribution of which is regulated by active metabolic pumps that require a constant supply of energy. Adenosine triphosphate is the principal molecular store of chemical energy in the cell, and the biochemical pathways involved in the catabolism of nutrient substrates into a form of energy useful for driving biosynthetic reactions and other energy-requiring processes — such as control of the intracellular milieu — are well known and described in any standard biochemistry text.

Figure 2.3 shows a simplified outline of the three principal stages of catabolism that lead from basic nutrients through progressive oxidations to waste products with the yield of large quantities of ATP. The three major pathways involved in the oxidation of glucose are glycolysis, the citric acid cycle (Krebs cycle) and the electron transport chain. The glycolytic pathway is the only process by which cells can obtain energy in the absence of oxygen (anaerobically) and although of limited capacity this pathway is important for helping to sustain homeostasis in ischemic/anoxic cells.

2.2.3 Essential Role of the Circulation

In summarizing the fundamental processes of normal cellular function and homeostasis as a prelude to discussing the nature of ischemic injury and its prevention, it is important to emphasize the essential role of the circulation. The foregoing discussion has outlined in elementary terms the well-known basics of how a cell is sustained for normal function and the composition of the regulation of the interstitial fluid is an important function of the circulation. Other essential functions include the provision of an internal heat transfer system that closely regulates the temperature of tissues and organs. The circulation transports metabolites of which the fuels for respiration (glucose, fatty acids, and ketone bodies) are most important in the short term. For most tissues, respiration is predominantly aerobic with high demands for oxygen (e.g., 300 mL O_2/min/g dry weight of kidney renal cortex). The solubility of oxygen in tissue fluid is only about 24 mL/kg such that inhibition of aerobic energy production is very rapid following the onset of ischemia. Other
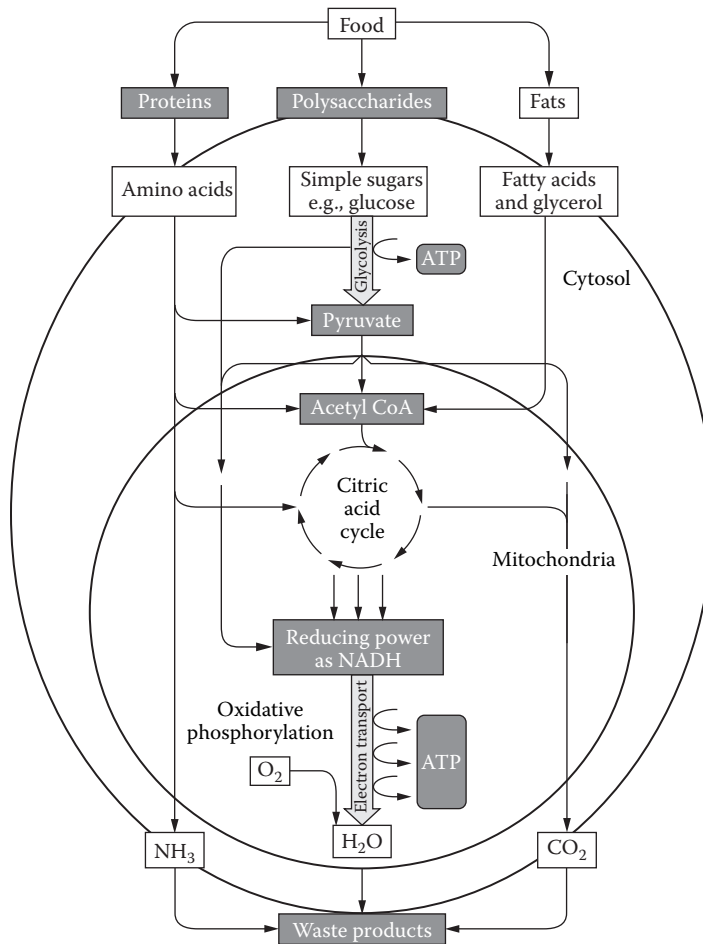
FIGURE 2.3 A simplified diagram showing the principal stages of catabolism that produces ATP used to drive biosynthetic reactions and other energy-requiring processes in the cell such as control of the intracellular milieu. Under hypoxic or hypothermic conditions, glycolysis is the only process by which cells can generate energy in an attempt to sustain homeostasis during ischemia (adapted from [235]).

necessary metabolites, besides those required for energy production, including amino acids, vitamins, glutathione, coenzymes, and many other factors, are also supplied to cells via the circulation. The catabolic products of cellular metabolism are removed by the vascular system. In light of the crucial role of the circulation in sustaining the normal environment and metabolic needs of cells, it is possible to appreciate the devastating consequences of a disruption to the vascular supply of a tissue or organ. A brief consideration will now be given to the effects of ischemia as a preface to a discussion of the positive and negative aspects of hypothermia as a protective modality against ischemic injury.

2.3 A SYNOPSIS OF ISCHEMIC AND HYPOXIC INJURY

Interest in the pathophysiology of ischemia is not limited to just the transplantation community, since an understanding of the detrimental effects of a reduced blood supply to tissues is also of crucial importance in the treatment of cardiovascular diseases and neuropathological complications of acute cerebral vascular occlusions, clinically considered stroke. Consequently, there now exists a vast literature on the subject of ischemia and reperfusion injury and, although not yet complete,

a considerable understanding of the nature of ischemic injury has emerged. This can only be outlined here in basic terms, but more complete accounts of the phenomena and mechanisms of ischemic injury in relation to the isolation of organs for transplantation have been published in the past, and a selection is cited here for reference.[18–20] More recent accounts that focus on cellular and molecular mechanisms are to be found in the literature relating to ischemia/reperfusion injury in the heart and tissues of the central nervous system that are most sensitive to an ischemic insult.[21–26]

2.3.1 THE ISCHEMIC CASCADE

Excision of a tissue for transplantation means that ischemia is total and inevitable even though the period may be brief. An immediate consequence of cessation of blood supply to an organ is deprivation of the supply of oxygen to the tissues, but anoxia (total deprivation) or hypoxia (partial deprivation) is only one of the many consequences of a lack of blood supply. A scheme for the multifactorial cascade of events that ensue following the initiation of ischemia is depicted in Figure 2.4. The pivotal event is ATP depletion, which occurs within the first few minutes of oxygen deprivation. This early event leads immediately to a shift from aerobic to anaerobic metabolism (Pasteur effect), which very quickly becomes self-limiting with the production of lactate and protons. Cell depolarization also occurs very early in the cascade leading to a breakdown of ion homeostasis and a concatenation of other intracellular and membrane-associated events that eventually culminate in necrosis and cell death. A rise in the intracellular concentration of protons and calcium is at the center of many of the mechanisms now recognized to be contributory to cell death as a result of ischemia.[23,27]
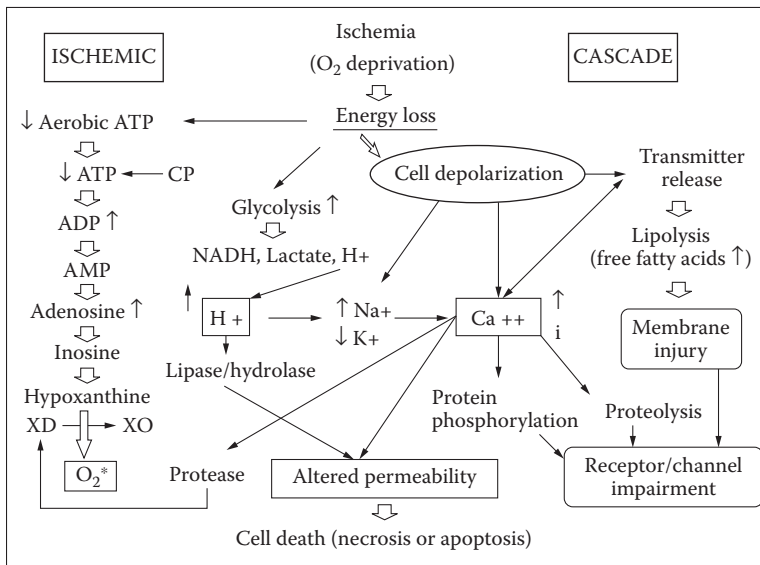
FIGURE 2.4 A scheme for the principal metabolic and ionic changes that proceed after the initiation of ischemia. The pivotal event is ATP depletion, which occurs within 1–2 minutes of oxygen deprivation. This early event leads immediately to a shift from aerobic to anaerobic metabolism, which very quickly becomes self-limiting with the production of lactate and H^+. Cell depolarization also occurs very early in the cascade leading to a breakdown of ion homeostasis and a concatenation of other intracellular and membrane-associated events that eventually culminate in cell death. A rise in the intracellular concentration of protons and calcium is at the center of many of the mechanisms now recognized to be contributory to cell injury as a result of ischemia.

It is well known that different cells have different susceptibilities to ischemic injury and this is due largely to a higher metabolic activity in the more sensitive tissues requiring a greater ongoing production of ATP. The progression from early onset reversible changes to subsequent irreversible injury is both time and temperature dependent. Moreover, a precise distinction between reversible and irreversible injury is difficult to specify. While some intermediate events such as ionic shifts may or may not be readily reversible, structural alterations in organelles, especially the mitochondria, are generally regarded as early signs of irreversible damage and the rupture of cell membranes is unequivocally fatal for the cell. Reduced temperatures can delay the progression towards a state beyond which cells are unable to recover normal function, and this is the basis of hypothermic preservation as discussed below. Under warm ischemic conditions, the time available during which cells will sustain only reversible changes is very restrictive for clinical procedures. For example, those tissues most sensitive to ischemia (e.g., heart and brain) are irreversibly damaged within a few minutes such that hypothermia is often needed as an adjunct to protect these organs *in vivo* during complex surgeries requiring lengthy periods of circulatory arrest.[28] The ischemic tolerance of the brain is known to be only 6 minutes at 37°C, but is extended to nearly 60 minutes when body temperature is reduced to 17°C (see Reference 28). During global warm cerebral ischemia, the high-energy phosphate stores of creatine phosphate are depleted within one minute; glucose and glycogen stores within 4 minutes; and ATP reserves within 5 to 7 minutes.[29] In contrast, some transplantable visceral organs such as the kidneys are able to tolerate much longer periods of warm ischemia. Detrimental changes occur first and become most severe in the proximal convoluted tubules. Gross ischemic changes in some tubules are observed after 30 minutes, with total necrosis of the majority of tubules after 60 minutes. Nevertheless, 90% of experimental animals survived with kidneys that suffered 30 minutes of warm ischemia and 75% survived after 60 minutes of ischemia, showing that much of the damage is recoverable despite evidence of permanent histological injury.[30]

The heart is highly intolerant of ischemia and continues to challenge researchers to devise ways of extending and improving methods of myocardial preservation. The heart is an obligate aerobic organ and the myocardium is exquisitely sensitive and dependent upon a continuous and adequate supply of oxygen for maintenance of normal contractile function. For the purposes of this discussion, it is appropriate to focus on the heart to summarize the effects of ischemia (depicted schematically in Figure 2.4), which must be alleviated in order to prolong preservation.

Under aerobic conditions, mitochondrial oxidative phosphorylation provides the primary energy source for the myocardium, which is able to use a variety of substrates such as glucose, free fatty acids, lactate, pyruvate, acetate, ketone bodies, and amino acids.[31] Myocardial oxygen reserve is exhausted within 8 seconds following the onset of global ischemia, and aerobic production of ATP ceases as the tissue oxygen tension falls below 5 torr.[32] During the first phase of ischemia, the myocardium depends upon energy production from glycogenolysis and anaerobic glycolysis. However, this pathway is an intrinsically inefficient way of maintaining myocardial ATP and is ultimately inhibited during prolonged ischemia by the accumulation of glycolytic metabolic degradation products (NADH, lactate and H^+).[33] ATP stores are temporarily buffered by the pool of creatine phosphate (CP), but this declines rapidly and is essentially depleted within 20 minutes of the onset of global ischemia.[34] During the initial 5–10 minutes of ischemia, ATP levels do not drop significantly, but decline to 50–60% of pre-ischemic levels during 30 minutes of interrupted coronary circulation.[34]

An important consequence of the increased glycolysis and ATP hydrolysis is the accumulation of protons in the cytoplasm, giving rise to a progressive development of intracellular acidosis.[35,36] Apart from contributing to metabolic block of the residual glycolytic energy production by inhibiting key enzymes (e.g., phosphofructokinase), protons also contribute to the activation of lysosomal hydrolases[37] and lipoprotein lipase.[38] This, coupled with proton-induced Ca^{2+} shifts and pH-induced membrane conformational changes, contributes significantly to increased membrane permeability.

As ischemia progresses, transmembrane ionic gradients are dissipated resulting in the loss of intracellular K^+ and accumulation of Na^+ and Cl^- due to the metabolic inhibition of Na^+-K^+ATPase.[33] It is described in detail above that this in turn leads to osmotic cell swelling.[39] A decrease in intracellular pH also facilitates Na^+-K^+ exchange, exacerbating intracellular Na^+ overload.[40] This in turn contributes to an increase in cytosolic-free Ca^{2+} by facilitating extracellular Ca^{2+} uptake via the Na^+-Ca^{2+} exchange mechanism.[40,41] Other mechanisms, including inhibition of the energy-dependent sarcoplasm reticulum uptake of Ca^{2+} in myocardium[42] and excitatory amino acid stimulation of neurotransmitter receptors/channels in neuronal tissue,[27] further contribute to a massive rise in intracellular Ca^{2+}. The rise of $[Ca^{2+}]_i$ is further known to activate Ca-dependent phospholipases, phospholipase A_2, and phospholipase C,[43–45] as well as proteolytic enzymes, which are also responsible for membrane injury. These enzymes do not require oxygen or energy and so may function during or after ischemia. Hydrolysis of the membrane phospholipids releases free fatty acids (FFAs), which have detergent properties that can destroy the lipid portions of all membranes. The major FFA is arachidonic acid, which can be metabolized to free radicals, prostaglandins, and leukotrienes, which can produce further changes in membrane permeability and ion distribution.[46] It is further indicated in Figure 2.4 that increasing concentrations of intracellular calcium also activate enzymes that can convert xanthine dehydrogenase to xanthine oxidase, which is known to enhance superoxide formation from hypoxanthine, especially during reperfusion.[47]

It is now understood that calcium serves as a key messenger and modulator of intracellular signaling reactions, which affect certain enzymes, the membrane permeability, and transmitter release. Cells maintain an enormous gradient of calcium concentration across the plasma membrane (10,000:1) and the influx potential is controlled by both voltage-sensitive channels and receptor-controlled channels. Calcium efflux is via a Ca^{2+} translocase and a Na^+-Ca^{2+} exchange mechanism, both of which require energy. Also, calcium uptake into cellular organelles is energy dependent. During ischemia, Ca^{2+} enters the cell through both types of channels and, coupled with a reduced uptake by organelles, accumulates in the cytosol. This intracellular overload appears to be one of the common pathways leading to irreversible cell damage by the mechanisms summarized above.[27]

2.3.2 STRUCTURAL CHANGES

As mitochondrial oxidative phosphorylation is the first casualty of ischemia, it is not surprising that structured alterations in the mitochondrion are regarded as early and sensitive indicators of ischemia and have been the subject of extensive study.[48] Detectable changes do not occur immediately, and first changes, manifest by disappearance of glycogen granules, lysis of cristae, and swelling, have been demonstrated after 30 to 40 minutes of ischemia in the human myocardium during cardiac surgery. At the later stages of ischemia, severe ultrastructural damage becomes evident and is characterized by extensive mitochondrial damage, pyknotic nuclei, cellular swelling, myofibrillar disruption, and the appearance of contracture bands.[49] After 40 minutes of normothermic ischemia, irreversible changes take place and reperfusion at this stage leads to explosive cell swelling, deposition of calcium phosphate, and intense ischemic contracture resembling rigor mortis.

2.3.3 VASCULAR INJURY DURING AND SUBSEQUENT TO ISCHEMIA

In addition to the injury sustained by parenchymal cells, it is now well established that ischemic organs are subject to further modes of injury relating to vascular effects. These are collectively referred to as the "no-reflow" phenomenon and "reperfusion injury," which has itself been shown to be a distinct phenomenon characterized by ultrastructural, functional, and metabolic alterations.

2.3.4 No-Reflow

A well established concern in isolated organ preservation for transplantation is that blood flow can fail to return in an organ that has suffered a period of ischemia.[50] Clearly, this is of great importance in determining the fate of the transplanted organ, the health and viability of which depends critically upon the patency of its vascular network. Various mechanisms have been proposed to account for this phenomenon, which is also of crucial importance for the outcome of hypothermically stored organs. Contributory factors include ischemically induced vascular collapse; osmotic swelling of vascular endothelium leading to increased vascular resistance and vessel occlusion; and erythrocyte clumping producing blockage of capillaries and the formation of infarcts. The increased rigidity of red cells due to ATP depletion is considered to be a principal cause of reduced deformability and the most significant component of the no-reflow phenomenon. Weed et al. proposed that ATP normally chelates intracellular calcium and, when ATP is no longer available, calcium binds to membrane proteins, rendering the membrane more rigid.[51] Additionally, it is known that the capillaries become increasingly leaky to protein after more than 30 minutes of ischemia, which would lead to loss of the oncotic pressure that retains fluid in the capillaries, and, hence, to an increase in the hematocrit within the vessels. This, in turn, would increase viscosity dramatically and lead to stagnation.[52] No reflow during rewarming and reintroduction of blood into cold ischemic organs is now known to involve a network of complex interactions between vascular endothelium, blood components, and free radicals that is referred to as reperfusion injury (see References 23, 53, 54).

2.3.5 Reperfusion Injury

The concept of reperfusion injury comes from the well-known fact that making a tissue hypoxic does not necessarily produce injury, but after reperfusion such tissues show marked and occasionally severe damage. Several possible interacting mechanisms of reperfusion injury are often described and include the following:[23,53,54]

1. Cell-derived free radicals (the oxygen paradox)
2. Actions and products of inflammatory cells in the blood, especially neutrophils and platelets
3. Effects of intracellular calcium accumulation (the calcium paradox)
4. Loss of membrane phospholipids

A complete understanding of the various proposed mechanisms of reperfusion injury is far from clear and remains under intensive investigation. While a detailed discussion of the various, seemingly disjointed hypotheses is beyond the scope of this article, it is appropriate for subsequent discussion of the effects of hypothermia to include a few salient comments regarding the role of free radicals.

During the past decade, oxygen-derived free radicals (ODFR) have been the focus of attention as mediators of various tissue injuries and particularly microvascular injury.[23,25] A free radical is a molecule with an odd, unpaired electron in its outer shell (denoted by a dot, thus R$^{\bullet}$), and this chemically "unsatisfied" electron renders the molecule highly unstable and reactive. Free radicals are inherently damaging since this high reactivity can precipitate chain reactions that produce increasingly reactive and toxic free radicals. Reactive species derived from oxygen are generated because oxygen normally undergoes tetravalent reduction to water by accepting four electrons simultaneously in the mitochondrial cytochrome oxidase system. However, as much as 2% of cellular oxygen undergoes univalent reduction, accepting one electron at a time and creating a superoxide anion ($O_2^{-\bullet}$), hydrogen peroxide, and eventually a hydroxyl free radical (OH$^{\bullet}$), thus the following equation:

$$O_2 \xrightarrow{e^-} O_2^{-\bullet} \xrightarrow{e^- + 2H^+} H_2O_2 \xrightarrow{e^- + 2H^+} H_2O + OH^{\bullet}$$
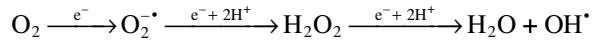
The hydroxyl free radical is the most reactive of all and will oxidize any organic molecule almost instantaneously. The small quantities of free oxygen radicals produced during a cell's normal metabolism are detoxified by the enzyme superoxide dismutase (SOD):

$$O_2^{-\bullet} + O_2^{-\bullet} + 2H^+ \xrightarrow{SOD} H_2O_2 + O_2$$
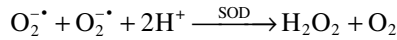
This protective enzyme occurs in all aerobic tissue but is found in substantial quantities only inside the cell. ODFRs are also detoxified by the naturally occurring enzymes catalase and peroxidase. During ischemia, the production of hypoxanthine is greatly increased as a result of the catabolism of ATP as shown on the left of Figure 2.4. In the absence of oxygen, the enzyme xanthine dehydrogenase (type XD) is converted to xanthine oxidase (type XO), which converts hypoxanthine to xanthine and this reaction also involves calcium. During reperfusion when the ischemic tissue is again exposed to oxygen, xanthine oxidase catalyzes the generation of superoxide radicals in the following reaction:

$$\text{xanthine} + H_2O + 2O_2 \xrightarrow{XO} \text{uric acid} + 2O_2^{-\bullet} + 2H^+$$
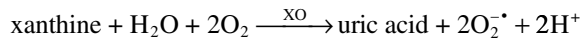
In tissues such as the myocardium, defense mechanisms against superoxide-mediated ischemic injury are well developed in the form of scavenging enzymes. These may be antioxidants, such as glutathione peroxidase and catalase, or chain breaking antioxidants, such as SOD, ascorbate (vitamin C), and α-tocopherol (from vitamin E). The emerging role of ODFR in ischemic injury has raised the question as to whether or not injury ascribed to ischemia is in fact reperfusion injury that is initiated by ischemia, but precipitated by reperfusion. This has led to the concept of scavenging free radicals during both ischemia and reperfusion. The role of drugs like allopurinol, which inhibits xanthine-oxidase in preventing superoxide-mediated injury, is therefore readily apparent. Also, compounds that chelate those transition metals like iron — which are known to catalyze the formation of free radicals and thereby contribute to tissue injury by initiating and propagating lipid peroxidation — have been shown to ameliorate tissue damage.[55] For example, desferroxamine inhibits the Haber-Weiss reaction or more efficient Fenton reaction in which highly reactive hydroxyl radicals are generated when H_2O_2 accepts an electron from a reduced metal ion such as Fe^{2+}.[25]

The end result of prolonged ischemia is cell death mediated by the mechanisms outlined above, which characterize the process of necrosis, or pathological cell death. An alternative mode of cell death involving a programmed or regulated process involving *de novo* gene transcription, and referred to as apoptosis, is discussed briefly below in the context of hypothermic preservation.

The culmination of the cascade of interactive ischemic events is a tissue that is unable to resume its normal function upon restoration of its blood supply. The sequence of injurious processes advances at such a rate that irreversible damage is sustained by most organs within one hour of ischemia at 37°C, and at much shorter times in highly metabolic tissues such as cardiac muscle. The role of low temperatures in protecting against ischemic injury and providing a means for preserving tissues will be considered in the remainder of this chapter.

2.4 HYPOTHERMIA IN RELATION TO ISCHEMIC EVENTS

Cooling cells to varying degrees has proved to be the foundation of nearly all effective methods of viable tissue preservation. However, the consequences of cooling are not exclusively beneficial

in combating the effects of ischemia, and hypothermic protection is a compromise of the benefits and detriments of cooling as outlined in the ensuing discussion.

2.4.1 General Suppression of Reaction Rates

The fundamental basis of all biologic and chemical processes is molecular activity and mobility, which are governed by thermal energy. This means that as temperature is lowered molecular motion is slowed.[15] The removal of heat from a system slows down both physical and chemical processes in proportion to the loss of heat and therefore to the fall in temperature. Physical phenomena such as osmotic pressure depend solely on the rate of molecular motion so that the decrease in the rate of the process is proportional to the fractional change in absolute temperature. Many chemical reactions, however, depend upon an energy of activation, which is the minimum energy required for molecules to react. This results in a special relationship between the rate of reaction and temperature described originally by Arrhenius and outlined below (see[15]). Since the processes of deterioration associated with ischemia and anoxia are mediated by chemical reactions, it has proved well founded to attempt to prevent or attenuate these changes by cooling. Biochemical processes involve molecular interactions that are invariably catalyzed by enzymes in reactions that require energy input from cellular stores such at ATP or creatine phosphate. Cooling can affect all components of these reactions including the energy status of the substrate molecules, the stability of the enzyme protein, and the capacity of the cell to supply biological energy. The rate of biophysical processes such as diffusion of ions and osmosis declines linearly with temperature by approximately 3% per 10°C. It is apparent, therefore, that biophysical events are relatively only slightly affected by the comparatively modest temperature changes imposed during hypothermic storage of tissues for transplantation. It is only at much lower temperatures that the rate of biophysical processes becomes significantly important, especially at subzero temperatures when phase changes lead to both ice formation and solute concentration changes.[7,9,15]

By comparison, the rate of chemical reactions, including the biochemical processes that constitute metabolic activity, is slowed significantly more by a given degree of hypothermic exposure. It is well established that within the temperature range 0–42°C oxygen consumption in tissues such as kidney, liver, and heart decreases by at least 50% for each 10°C fall in temperature.[18,56] Oxygen consumption (VO_2) is a reasonable measure of metabolic activity since for practical purposes, tissue and cellular stores of oxygen do not exist and cells rely upon the circulation to deliver oxygen in quantities determined by the rate of O_2 consumption. The magnitude of decrease of VO_2 by cold storage is therefore regarded as an index of the degree of reduction of metabolic activity. For tissues having a high rate of metabolism, such as the brain VO_2 at 5°C has been estimated to be 6% of the normothermic rate.[28,57] The quantitative relationship between energy requirements for biochemical processes and temperature changes have been expressed mathematically in different ways:

1. The Arrhenius Relationship: Biochemical processes, in common with all chemical reactions, occur only between activated molecules the proportion of which in a given system is given by the Boltzman expression exp (-E/RT) where E is the activation energy, R is the gas constant, and T is the absolute temperature. According to the Arrhenius relationship, the logarithm of the reaction rate (k), is inversely proportional to the reciprocal of the absolute temperature:

$$-\log k = A(-E/2.3 \ RT)$$

A graphical plot of log k against 1/T will yield a straight line with a slope of E/2.3R if the relationship represents a single rate-limiting step. However, many examples in the literature demonstrate discrete "breaks" in the linearity of Arrhenius plots as illustrated in Figure 2.5 and discussed below.[58,59]
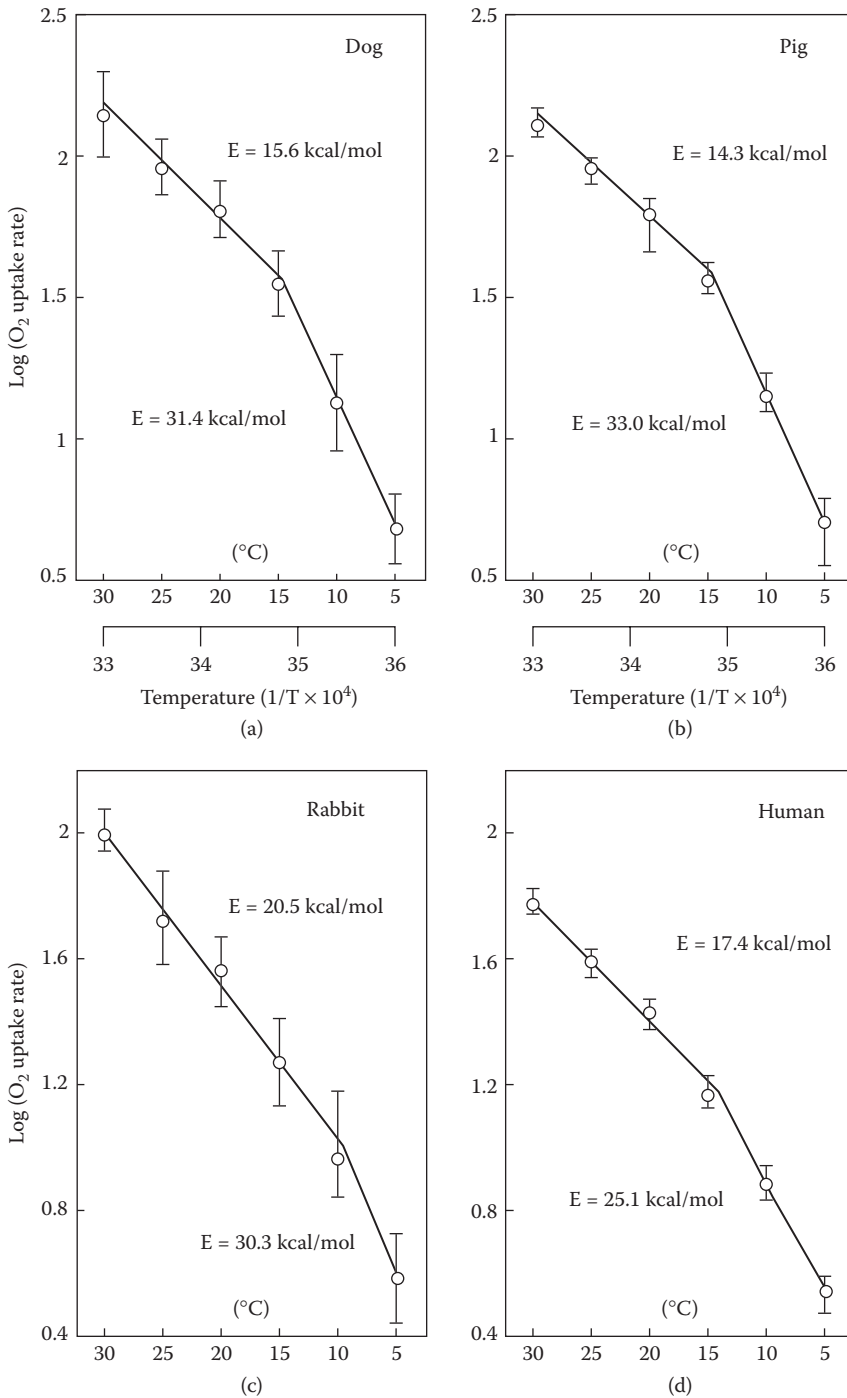
FIGURE 2.5 Arrhenius plots depicting the effect of temperature on ADP-stimulated respiration in mitochondria from four different species. (Adapted from Southard et al.[59]).

2. Van't Hoff Rule[60] relates the logarithm of a chemical reaction rate directly to temperature and is commonly expressed in the form of the respiratory quotient or temperature coefficient, Q_{10}, where Q_{10} is the ratio of reaction rates at two temperatures separated by 10°C. Accordingly,

$$Q_{10} = (K_2/K_1)\ 10^{(T2-T1)}.$$

For most reactions of biological interest Q_{10} has a value between 2 and 3, but some complex, energy-dependent reactions have a Q_{10} between 4 and 6, and are more likely to stop completely at low temperatures.[61] Both Q_{10} and Arrhenius plots have been used to quantitate changes in metabolic processes occurring in biologic systems, whether they are enzyme reactions in single cells or the oxygen consumption of the entire human body. The Q_{10} for whole-body oxygen consumption is approximately 2, indicating that, in general, metabolic rate is halved for each 10°C drop in temperature.[28] Some individual tissues, however, have been shown to exhibit a Q_{10} as high as 5 to 8, demonstrating the profound effect cooling can have on retarding reaction rates.[58]

The impact this cooling effect has on ischemic tolerance is amply illustrated by data from hypothermic preservation of mammalian kidneys. It is explained above that kidneys can tolerate only about 45 minutes of warm ischemia before incurring irreversible injury. However, tolerance is extended to 2 hours at 15 to 25°C,[62] 6 to 7 hours at 5 to 15°C[63] and 12 hours at 0°C without serious injury.[64] The same holds true for tissues that are exquisitely sensitive to ischemic injury such as the myocardium and neuronal tissue.[28,65] For example, based upon the estimate that VO_2 for the brain is 6% of the normothermic rate at 5°C, Bering postulated that the brain may tolerate ischemic periods for up to 3 hours at temperatures below 5°C.[57] This has proven to be consistent with our own recent demonstration of hypothermic protection of the heart, brain, and visceral organs during $3^1/_2$ hours of cardiac arrest and whole-body asanguineous perfusion at 7°C.[28,66,67] Importantly, it should be pointed out here that the ischemic tolerance of organs both *in situ* and *ex vivo* is not only a function of temperature reduction *per se*, but is also maximized by manipulation of the extracellular environment of the component cells in terms of the chemical composition of the perfusate. I will return to this important consideration in subsequent discussions below.

2.4.1.1 Metabolic Uncoupling

While it is clear that cooling has a profound effect upon biochemical reaction rates and that this in turn can slow degradative processes and reduce the rate of substrate and energy depletion, it is important to realize that not all reaction rates are affected to the same degree, or even in the same manner, by cooling. For example, Southard et al. studied the comparative effect of temperature on the rate of a membrane-bound enzyme catalyzed reaction and ADP stimulation of respiration in mitochondria isolated from the kidney cortex of four species commonly used for transplantation studies, including human.[59] Their findings are summarized in Figure 2.5, which shows that the Arrhenius plots appear discontinuous with "break" points at 15°C or higher for dog, pig, and human and at 10°C for rabbit. Dog and pig mitochondria showed the greatest increase in activation energy at temperatures below the break point. In general, an Arrhenius plot with a distinct "break" has been taken to indicate that the rate-limiting step has changed but the Arrhenius Law still holds true on either side of the break. Although the interpretation of discrete changes in the slope of Arrhenius plots has been contentious, the Lyons-Raison phase change hypothesis of chilling injury has received much attention and general acclaim.[68] This hypothesis states that at a certain critical temperature within the chilling injury range, the membrane lipids undergo a transition from a liquid-crystalline to a solid gel state.[69,70] As illustrated in Figure 2.5, the same phenomenon has been demonstrated in the cells of mammalian organs,[58,59] and the two main consequences of the transition thought to eventually result in cell injury are an increase in membrane permeability (discussed further in a subsequent section), and an increase in the activation energy of membrane-bound enzymes. While an increase in E in itself may not be damaging to a cell, it has been proposed that the damage is

probably responsible for the different behavior of soluble enzyme systems and membrane-associated enzyme systems. Thus, the result would be the accumulation or depletion of metabolites at the point of entry into mitochondria. Hence, the membrane phase transitions in subcellular membranes could cause metabolic imbalance and provide one component of injury sustained by homeothermic cells during cold exposure.

One interpretation of cold resistance in various cold-adapted species is that their cell membranes maintain a greater degree of fluidity at low temperatures compared to most normothermic, non-cold adapted species. Although the role of membrane fluidity and phase transitions in cold adaptation has not been accepted unequivocally, it has been demonstrated in mitochondria from a warm-blooded species (dog) that low levels of membrane lipid perturbers such as adamantine (cyclodecane) can abolish the discontinuity in the Arrhenius plot, suggesting that membrane fluidity had been increased during cold exposure.[59] Other lipid perturbers (e.g., Butylated hydroxytoluene) have been shown to protect homeothermic cells against cold shock, which occurs during rapid cooling from normal temperatures to 0°C.[71] Nevertheless, this potential mode of protection for mammalian organs during cold storage has not yet been widely investigated as an interventional strategy.

The data of Southard et al., illustrated in Figure 2.5, also emphasize that caution should be exercised when comparisons of cellular responses to cold are made between species. It can further be appreciated that if a single biochemical process — in this case ADP-stimulated mitochondrial respiration in the kidneys from four different euthermic species — is affected differently by cooling, that it is also likely that the different biochemical reactions within a given cell will not be affected to the same extent, or in the same way, by a reduction in temperature. Figure 2.6 shows schematically the large number of different, integrated chemical reactions that constitute common metabolic pathways within a cell. Each of these reactions will be affected in a different manner and to a different degree by cooling, and so the possibility exists for uncoupling reaction pathways and producing harmful consequences. This type of metabolic perturbation is largely beyond the influence of investigator intervention since it is not possible to select which processes will be depressed by cooling. It is nevertheless important for optimal preservation that any cold-induced dislocation of interconnected pathways is fully reversible or recoverable upon rewarming and reperfusion.

2.4.1.2 Optimum Temperature for Hypothermic Storage

Cooling prolongs *in vitro* survival because it slows metabolism, reduces the demand for oxygen and other metabolites, and conserves chemical energy. However, it does not affect all reactions to the same extent, and the net result of cooling on integrated metabolizing systems is complex, not entirely predictable, and not completely understood. The application of mathematical relationships such as the Arrhenius and the Van't Hoff rules to help quantitate, predict, and understand the mechanisms of hypothermic preservation are somewhat simplistic since they relate to temperature change as the only variable. Nevertheless, this has proved useful in practice because the complexities of cooling integrated tissues and organs do not permit convenient separation of the interacting variables that affect the outcome of hypothermic preservation. Moreover, the effect of hypothermia *per se* on transplanted tissues and organs is confounded by the effects of prior warm ischemia and hypoxia that will undoubtedly influence the susceptibility and response of component cells to cooling.

Using tissue culture cells as an experimental model, Kruuv et al. have examined the effects of *pure hypothermia* on cell viability in the absence of any prior hypoxia.[72,73] They showed that the Arrhenius plot of inactivation (killing) rates of cells exposed to reduced temperatures changes slope at approximately 7 to 8°C, implying that there are distinct mechanisms of hypothermic inactivation above and below this transition temperature. In the range of 8 to 25°C, the activation energy from the Arrhenius plot for control cells is about 15 kcal/mol, which falls within the range of temperature
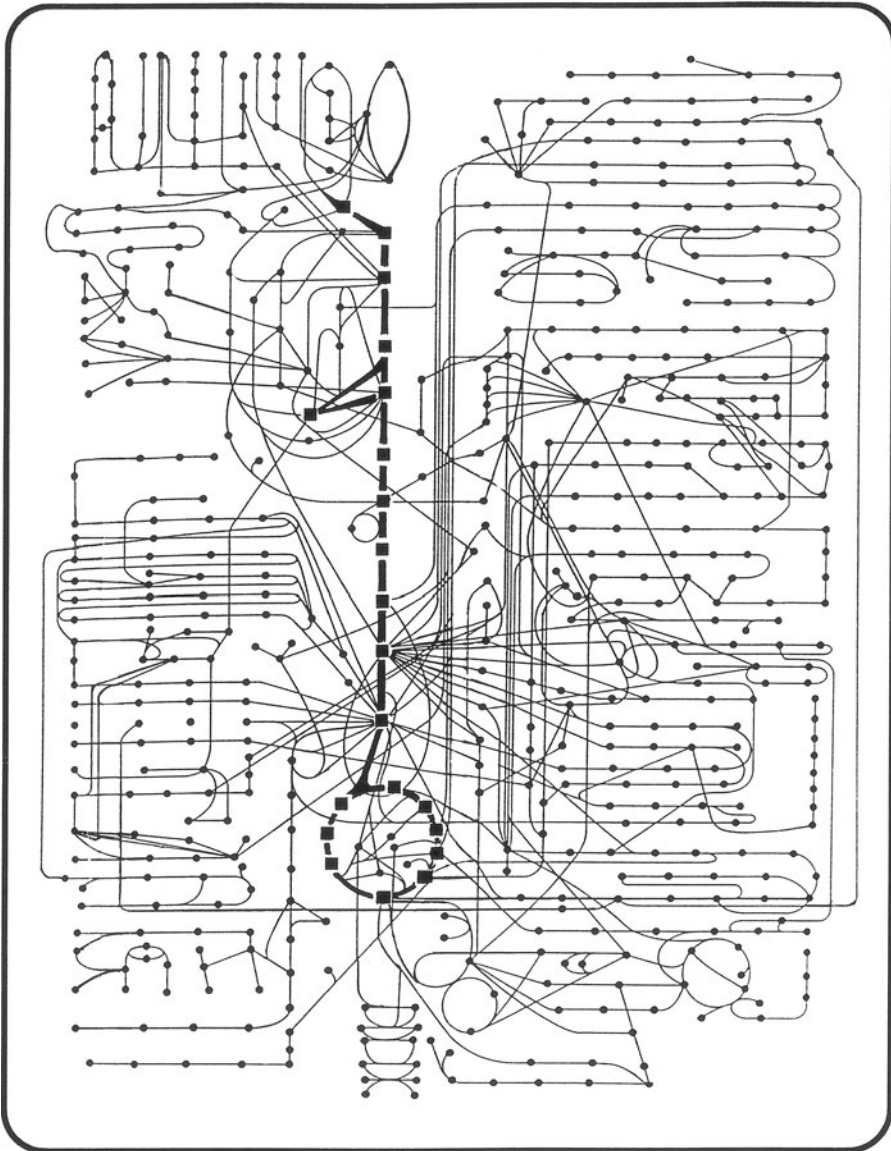
FIGURE 2.6 Schematic diagram illustrating the complexity of integrated biochemical pathways in a typical cell. About 500 common metabolic reactions are shown with each metabolite represented as a filled circle. The centrally placed reactions of the glycolytic pathway and TCA cycle are shown as bold. A typical mammalian cell synthesizes more than 10,000 different proteins, a major proportion of which are enzymes. (Adapted from Alberts et al.[235]).

coefficients of metabolic processes (10–30 kcal/mol) and much lower than that for protein denaturation. Below 8°C, the magnitude of the apparent activation energy is large (–61 kcal/mol). These values have been interpreted to suggest that unbalanced metabolism is probably the rate-limiting step for hypothermic inactivation in the higher temperature range, and membrane lipid phase transition or cold denaturation of a critical protein is likely to be responsible for the strong temperature dependence in the lower range. It is apparent, therefore, that the optimum temperature for hypothermic storage will depend upon a variety of factors involving the interaction of hypothermia, the nature of the cell, and the chemical composition of its environment. This is well illustrated

by reference to the voluminous literature relating to the role of hypothermia in protecting the ischemic heart and the associated design of cardioplegic solution. Although the ability of hypothermia to reduce myocardial energy demand is well established, the importance of its contribution, the optimum temperature, and the possibility that some cellular injury may be induced by the cooling have been debated and widely reported (for example, see citation 74). A summary statement will suffice for the purpose of the present discussion.

The first point is that because electromechanical work accounts for approximately 85% of the oxygen demand of the myocardium, chemical arrest of the heart in diastole, with agents such as potassium or magnesium, is an important addition to hypothermia to achieve optimum preservation. Although hypothermia can abolish organized myocardial contractions, energy-consuming ventricular fibrillation can persist even at low temperatures. It is well established that irrespective of the temperature, the myocardium is best preserved during global ischemia by the combination of chemical and hypothermic arrest. With respect to temperature, the general consensus from a variety of experimental and clinical observations is that maximal myocardial preservation during ischemic arrest is best achieved in the range of 10 to 20°C. For example, Tyers et al. showed that metabolic recovery was best when the myocardium was kept at 10 to 15°C with rapid reperfusion recovery of high energy phosphates and glycogen, compared with metabolic deterioration at 4°C.[75] Shragge et al.[76] progressively lowered the myocardial temperature *in vitro* to 0.5°C and found no significant decrease in the concentration of ATP or the glycogen stores in the nonanoxic hearts. These findings, confirmed by others, led to the conclusion that hypothermia in the absence of ischemia is not harmful to the myocardium. Such conclusions do not, however, account for the rate of cooling that in other cellular systems is known to influence cold-induced injury by way of an ill-defined mechanism termed "thermal shock" (see below).

The second point to note is that it has been suggested that the safe period of ischemia can be increased by adding oxygen to the cardioplegic medium in order to satisfy the small but continued metabolic demands of the cold arrested heart.[77] The oxygen consumption of the ischemic myocardium at 15°C is 0.27 mL O_2/min/100g tissue. Nonoxygenated crystalloid (asanguineous salt solution) cardioplegic solution administered at 10°C contains 0.86 ml O_2/100 ml of solution,[78] and so a prohibitively large volume of cardioplegic solution would have to be injected into the coronary circulation to avoid a myocardial oxygen debt occurring within a few minutes. Moreover, it has been shown that enhanced myocardial protection can be achieved by using oxygenated media in the form of either sanguineous or asanguineous solutions.[79,80] In principle, the advantage of delivering oxygen (and possibly other crucial metabolites) to the arrested heart is the maintenance of cell respiration and oxidative phosphorylation during global ischemia at temperatures that permit significant metabolism to proceed (10–20°C). This is in contrast to the strategy of tissue-suspended animation at lower temperatures (ice storage 0–4°C) where the objective is to reversibly inhibit all cellular function. The former strategy of metabolic support during hypothermic storage at ~10°C may demand continuous perfusion to supply essential substrates and remove toxic catabolic products. The practical implications of this are discussed below and elsewhere in this book (see Chapter 9).

Although tissue energy requirements are minimal at deep hypothermic temperatures, there are suggestions that constant supply of oxygen along with adenosine as a precursor to the ATP will result in superior ATP levels[81–86] and minimum oxidative and metabolic stress in preserved tissues. However, there is no clear consensus among the research community about the need for oxygen supply during hypothermia. It has been assumed that low concentrations of molecular oxygen, such as that dissolved in organ preservation solutions, is sufficient to support the generation of free radicals during prolonged storage.[87,88] Therefore, it is recognized that hypothermia may set the stage for a progressive development of tissue injury as a result of reactions and processes that occur during hypothermia, but that fuel changes that proceed for a considerable time after normal conditions of temperature and oxygen tension are resumed. Others have shown that a moderated oxygen tension is beneficial during hypothermic preservation, which suggests that oxidative stress

can lead to adaptation in tissues and increased production of antioxidants. It has been shown in experimentation that rats that were gradually exposed to oxygen increased their production of antioxidants in lungs.[89] Nevertheless, numerous investigations have suggested that oxygen supply is essential during hypothermic preservation of livers.[90–92] Recent studies on survival transplantation[93] of rat livers from donors with nonbeating hearts suggest that the saturation of UW solution with atmospheric air is a primary requirement for the preservation and restoration of ATP levels and mitochondrial functions.[94,95] Previous studies by Stubenitsky et al. have also shown that the oxygenated hypothermic preservation of warm ischemic kidney slices can restore normal tissue ATP levels.[96] More investigation is required to arrive at a consensus on optimum oxygen tension requirements that can provide superior graft function and prevent oxidative damage.

There is strong evidence, therefore, that optimum preservation of tissues and organs by using low temperatures requires careful consideration of the storage temperature in relation to other important factors including the characteristics of the cell, its environment, and the strategy adopted to effect maximum protection. The effect of hypothermic storage temperature *per se* has not been studied extensively in a wide variety of systems but the available evidence to verify this as a general effect extends beyond tissue culture cells and heart preservation outlined above. For example, in kidney preservation studies, Hardie et al. found 5°C to be superior to storage at 0.5°C and Pegg et al. showed significantly better preservation at 10°C compared with storage at 5°C.[97] Even in whole-body protection during hypothermia, we have demonstrated improved outcome in a canine model when the nadir temperature during several hours of hypothermic cardiac arrest was 7°C compared with 1.5°C.[28]

2.4.2 Effect upon Energy Metabolism

Under normal circumstances the supply of energy-rich compounds to fuel a cell's requirement for homeostatic control is continuously replenished by oxidative phosphorylation in the mitochondria. During cooling, however, there is a progressive exhaustion of chemical energy reserves in a cell despite the general suppressive effect of cooling on metabolism. Studies that clearly demonstrate the rapid depletion of adenine nucleotides during cold storage of organs at 0 to 2°C are suggestive that mitochondrial function is severely impaired by hypothermia.[98] However, it has been demonstrated in the liver, for example, that the same tissues stored at 8 to 10°C can reestablish ATP reserves if an adequate supply of oxygen is maintained by continuous perfusion as discussed above.[94,95,99] Moreover, it has also been established during hypothermic kidney preservation that the balance between glycolysis and complete oxidation of fatty acids at l0°C is controlled by the oxygen tension. Pegg et al. showed that glycolysis provided the principal source of energy at l0°C when the pO_2 =150 mm Hg, but that oxidation of caprylic acid provided the main fuel when pO_2 was raised to 650 mm Hg.[88] Furthermore, it had previously been demonstrated by Huang et al. using well-oxygenated kidney cortex slices that the preferred substrate for energy metabolism was also markedly influenced by temperature. Under normothermic conditions glucose, amino acids, ketone bodies, and fatty acids were all utilized, but only short-chain fatty acids and ketone bodies were consumed at 10°C.[100] Clearly, the effect of cooling on metabolism is complex and should not be regarded as causing a simple uniform retardation of all biochemical reactions.

The effects of cooling on mitochondrial processes are especially important for the outcome of cell preservation since it is essential for cell viability that the energy status is either maintained during storage or readily reestablished during rewarming. The crucial importance of this is readily appreciated in regard to the hypothermic storage of myocardial tissue, which is widely recognized to have special demands for its preservation compared with other organs.[101] One fundamental difference between the heart and other transplanted organs that is reflected in the tolerance to cold ischemia is that the heart, as a contractile organ, must be able to sustain 90% of its function very soon after rewarming and reperfusion in order to be life sustaining. The heart, therefore, has much greater energy demands upon reperfusion for immediate mechanical work and adequate contractile

function. The myocardium is known to be predisposed to ischemic contracture during prolonged cold storage: this is a progressive increase in myocardial stiffness with concomitant reduction of compliance and ventricular volume. The depletion of high-energy phosphate reserves causes the actin and myosin to interact, resulting in a progressive and eventually irreversible contracture of the heart. So, the basis of the problem is energy deprivation and dysregulation of intracellular homeostasis such that the onset of contracture occurs when ATP falls to less than 80% of normal values. In the early stages contracture does not necessarily imply a dead myocardium and strategies to delay the onset of ischemic contracture and promote the retention and repletion of high-energy phosphates are crucial for adequate methods of prolonged myocardial preservation.[101]

The suppression of oxidative phosphorylation at low temperatures is indicative of a mitochondrial defect. As illustrated in Figure 2.5, oxygen consumption by isolated mitochondria decreases with falling temperature, usually with a change in the rate at about 15°C.[59] More specifically, research has indicated that the enzymes responsible for translocating adenine nucleotides (AN translocase) across the mitochondrial membrane become ineffective at temperatures below the transition point of the Arrhenius plot. Also, the enzymes responsible for transporting NADH across the mitochondrial membrane via the malate-aspartate shuttle are ineffective at low temperatures. For example, it is known that the adenine nucleotide translocase of rat liver demonstrates an abrupt decrease in activity at 18°C, and although it is not rate-limiting at 37°C it could be limiting at low temperatures.[102] It is now believed that the failure of aerobic metabolism during hypothermia is principally due to the inactivation of mitochondrial transport enzymes, despite the fact that it has also been demonstrated in some tissues that adenine nucleotides can be synthesized at the temperatures used for hypothermic storage, providing the appropriate substrates are present. Therefore, it is clear that the once-believed notion that it is the absolute concentrations of residual high energy phosphates that might dictate survival, and that their complete exhaustion results in loss of viability, is not tenable. A great deal of evidence has now established the importance of the ability of hypothermically-stored cells to resynthesize energy-rich compounds during rewarming, which will be dependent upon the status of the adenine nucleotide pool remaining at the end of storage. As ATP and adenosine diphosphate (ADP) reserves are depleted during ischemia, the accumulating adenosine monophosphate (AMP) is dephosphorylated by 5'-nucleotidase enzymes to adenosine and other freely diffusable metabolites. Hence, these nucleosides are readily lost from the cell and no longer available for resynthesis of ATP. Moreover, as explained above, the synthesis of ATP depends upon active translocating processes from the cytosol into the mitochondria and vice versa, involving highly temperature-dependent enzymes.[102] The extent of degradation of ATP (and CP) to the diffusable breakdown products shown in Figure 2.4 is also important for another reason besides the depletion of ATP precursors that are crucial for subsequent immediate repletion of high-energy compounds. The second important aspect of this deamination pathway relates to the probable exacerbation of reperfusion injury by the generation of free radicals during and after cold storage as described above.

The complexity of low-temperature effects on mitochondrial respiration is not limited to the impairment of translocase enzymes. Recent studies have shown that other enzymes that control reactions of the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle and the electron transport chain are affected differently by cold storage. In mitochondria isolated from hearts stored at 4°C for 12 and 24 hours, the rate-limiting enzyme in the TCA cycle, citrate synthetase, has been shown to be more susceptible to cold storage than the rate-limiting enzyme in the electron transport chain, cytochrome c oxidase.[103] Such observations highlight the multifactorial nature of mitochondrial dysfunction after prolonged hypothermic storage.

It is clear from the foregoing discussion that the best methods of hypothermic preservation might depend upon the maintenance of high energy reserves, the prevention of ATP precursor depletion, and some level of continued metabolism, which, in turn, will be dependent upon the oxygen tension and storage temperature. Such considerations have led Pegg to suggest that future advances in organ preservation might be achieved by studying higher temperatures where

translocase enzymes are more active and to use higher oxygen tensions.[97] Also, the provision of purine or nucleoside precursors for adenine nucleotide repletion, and the use of pharmacological inhibitors of 5'-nucleotidase, such as allopurinol, are regarded as important components of modern-day preservation solutions and may prove to be advantageous for strategies designed to avert an energy crisis in hypothermically stored cells.[97,104,105]

2.4.3 Effect upon Ion Transport and Cell Swelling

We were reminded earlier that intracellular ionic composition and volume regulation of a cell is maintained by a "pump-leak" mechanism in which membrane-bound enzymes transport various ions and solutes to counter the passive diffusion driven by chemical potential gradients. These active pumps are inhibited by hypothermia both by its direct effect on enzyme activity and by the depletion of high energy reserves as mitochondrial energy transduction fails. The effect of applied hypothermia is therefore similar to that produced by anoxia, but the mechanism is different. This has important implications for its reversibility: even if an adequate reserve of ATP is maintained, the membrane pumps are unable to utilize ATP at low temperatures. When the temperature returns to normal the pumps are again able to use ATP and quickly restore the cell's ionic gradients. In the temperature range commonly used for preservation (0°–10°C) the activity of Na^+K^+-ATPase is essentially abolished; for example it is documented that for many cells the activity of Na^+-K^+-ATPase at 5°C is only about 1% of its normal level at physiological temperature.[106]

The resultant passive redistribution of ions and water across the cell membrane and the concomitant change in the membrane potential has been demonstrated to be rapidly and fully reversible in the short term.[107] The ready reversibility of all parameters upon rewarming was due to the retention of the necessary substrates and high energy compounds during hypothermic preservation so that the activity of the ATPase enzymes was quickly restored. While these radical changes in ion and water fluxes as a result of cooling are reversible in the short term, a gradual accumulation of detrimental effects eventually become irreversible in a way similar to the progression of warm ischemic events. Changes in the distributions of sodium and potassium may not cause irreversible alterations, but perturbation of normal transmembrane sodium gradients can adversely affect many secondary transport systems, such as those for glucose and amino acids as well as electrical events in excitable tissues. The various cation transport systems in cells are interrelated and energy dependent, such that all are influenced by temperature changes.[106]

However, cation fluxes are not all affected in the same way during cooling; for example, a disparate effect of temperature on the permeability of dog erythrocytes to cations has been reported.[108] Sodium flux was shown to increase during cooling from 37°C to 20°C and then decrease during subsequent cooling. Also, potassium flux exhibited a minimum at 12°C and then increased during further cooling, whereas water transport decreased in accordance with a typical Arrhenius relationship. This suggests that sodium, potassium, and water are transported across the red cell membrane by independent mechanisms that are affected differently by temperature changes, thus providing further illustration of the complexity of interdependence between homeostatic processes in cooled cells.

2.4.3.1 Divalent Cation Transport

Cells are known to have interrelated cation transport systems depending on energy supply, and are thereby affected by reduced temperatures. Moreover, it is recognized that changes in the distribution of divalent cations (Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}) as a consequence of ischemia, hypoxia, and even cooling are especially important in cellular injury. The belief that calcium, in particular, is a mediator of cell death is based upon accumulated evidence over several decades from observations in a wide variety of tissues and pertains to cell death from a variety of causes. During the past decade, the recognition of the central role of calcium-mediated effects in the death of cells of ischemically-sensitive tissues

such as heart and brain has led to intense scrutiny of the effects of perturbations in divalent cation homeostasis.[27,109] With the advent of the excitotoxic hypothesis of neuronal cell death, emphasis has shifted away from the traditional ideas of Ca-mediated injury being caused by influx of calcium into energy-compromised cells via voltage-sensitive channels, toward mechanisms involving agonist-operated calcium channels gated by excitatory amino acid receptors.[21,27,109,110]

As shown in Figure 2.1, cytosolic calcium concentration is 10,000-fold lower than extracellular concentrations, and it is now postulated that enhanced or unbalanced calcium influx across the plasma membrane represents a final common pathway in cell death mediated by various conditions that share the tendency to induce an abnormal membrane permeability for calcium. For example, excessive intracellular accumulation of calcium has been implicated as playing a pivotal role in ischemia-induced neuronal death and the evolving knowledge of the mechanisms involved include the following: alteration of electron transport in the respiratory chain, which leads to swelling and destruction of mitochondria; the release of additional excitotoxic neurotransmitters; activation of deleterious intracellular enzymes such as lipases and proteases, which break down cellular protein and lipid structures; and the formation of potentially harmful oxygen and hydroxyl free radicals and cellular depolarization.[109] Massive calcium accumulations also occur as a result of the so-called calcium paradox induced in cardiac cells when hearts are perfused successively with a calcium-free medium followed by a solution containing calcium. Calcium loading ensues because the calcium free perfusion dramatically increases membrane permeability to calcium. Calcium functions as a second messenger in the regulation of numerous biochemical and physiological processes, often by activating regulatory proteins such as Calmodulin, which, in turn, can activate many intracellular enzymes including protein kinases.[109] It has been proposed that the significant protective effect of mild hypothermia against ischemic brain injury might be mediated in part by inhibition of calcium-induced effects and the prevention of inactivation of important Ca-dependent enzyme systems such as the kinases.[109,110] However, it is generally recognized that cooling has no beneficial effect in preventing inhibition of the $(Ca^{2+} Mg^{2+})$-ATPase pump mechanism (and may even accentuate it), which is generally the most important factor in controlling intracellular Ca^{2+} concentrations. The effects of cooling on calcium homeostasis results not only from the inhibition of transmembrane pumping, but also from the inhibition of calcium sequestration by endoplasmic reticulum and mitochondria. All three pathways are involved in control of free calcium-ion concentrations, and all are sensitive to ATP depletion. Thus a reduced supply of ATP in cells stored hypothermically can result in increasing intracellular free calcium concentrations via redistribution from internal compartments, even if the external calcium concentration is lowered by perfusing with a low-calcium solution or calcium-channel-blocking drugs are added to the extracellular medium.

Calcium antagonists acting at the site of the plasma membrane will presumably be ineffective at preventing increased concentration of ionic calcium mobilized from intracellular stores. It has been discovered that the rapid influx of calcium responsible for the calcium paradox occurs via channels that are not affected by slow channel blockers, and at temperatures below 27°C changes in the cell membrane decrease slow channel currents, obviating the need for calcium channel blockers.[111]

2.4.3.2 Proton Activity Changes

The scheme depicted in Figure 2.4 for the principal events of the ischemic cascade shows that elevation of the concentration of protons — i.e., increasing acidity — is regarded as a contributory central event in the process of cellular injury ensuing from O_2 deprivation and energy depletion. Moreover, reduced temperatures are also known to influence pH regulation, which is another important homeostatic mechanism for cell survival. It has frequently been reported that hydrogen ion concentration increases in a variety of mammalian cells during hypothermic storage such that tissue pH has been recorded to fall to 6.5 to 6.8 within a few hours of cold storage.[112,113] Acidity is widely recognized as a hazard for cells with the accumulation of protons contributing to a variety

of deleterious processes including metabolic block of glycolysis and structural damage. Destabilization of lysozomes releasing harmful proteases and catalysis of oxidative stress by mobilization of free heavy metals have been implicated as mechanisms of cellular tissue injury during acidosis.

Figure 2.1 depicts that under physiological conditions (37°C) cells actively regulate pH within narrow limits with intracellular pH being maintained at a lower value (pH = 7.0 ± 0.3)[114] than the extracellular fluid (pH = 7.4). The structure/function relationships of biomacromolecules, especially proteins, are governed by their tertiary and quaternary structure, which, in turn, rely upon the maintenance of charged moieties within the molecule. Pertubation of pH homeostasis in conjunction with the altered ionic environment during hypothermia can serve to markedly alter the structure/activity relationship of molecules such as enzymes that rely on electrochemical neutrality to maintain their net charged state, relative to the neutral point of water.[115] In aqueous solutions such as the intracellular fluid, the concentrations of protons (H^+) and hydroxyl ions (OH^-) are determined by the ionization constant of water (pKw), which increases as temperature decreases (see Figure 2.7). Intracellular electrochemical neutrality (equal concentrates of H^+ and OH^-) is therefore maintained at reduced temperatures only if pH rises in concert with pKw to maintain a constant OH^-/H^+ ratio, i.e., the quantity of protons needed for neutrality falls as temperature decreases. It is important to understand that a given pH value is not a measure of electrochemical neutrality unless it is related to a specific temperature, because neutrality is also dependent upon the concentration of hydroxyl ions. Hence it is only at 37°C that an extracellular pH of 7.4 yields a "neutral" intracellular pH that is optimal for physiological function. In other words, if pH does not rise as temperature is lowered there will be a relative excess of protons despite an apparently "normal" pH value. The disturbance of intracellular neutrality by the accumulation of H^+ during hypothermic ischemia not only has a profound effect upon macromolecular structure and poisons the active sites of enzymes, but also causes metabolites to lose their charged state, and therefore are able to diffuse down concentration gradients as nonionized lipophilic molecules. The depletion of important metabolites for the regeneration of high-energy phosphates during reperfusion is therefore exacerbated by relative acidity. The Donnan equilibrium responsible for maintenance of transcellular ion gradients and cellular water content is also dependent upon electrochemical neutrality within the cell.

At the systemic level, a failure to understand that it is the OH^-/H^+ ratio that is the critical determinant of protein structure and enzyme function, rather than the pH value *per se*, has been responsible for much misunderstanding and controversy about acid-base management during hypothermia.[116,117]

2.4.4 ACID-BASE REGULATION DURING HYPOTHERMIA

It has been established in ectothermic (cold-blooded animals), and in the blood of warm-blooded animals cooled in a closed system that does not permit gas exchange, that pH rises in parallel with the neutral point of water (pN) during cooling in the range 0°C to 40°C (the Rosenthal relationship[118]). Figure 2.7 shows that the rate of change of pH with temperature is –0.0157 pH units/C° and is referred to as alpha-stat pH regulation in recognition of the fact that both intracellular pH and blood pH buffering is dominated by the degree of ionization (α) of the imidazole moieties of proteins (See References 117, 119).

On the basis of both *in vitro* and *in vivo* experiments it has been generally accepted that acid-base regulations in nearly all vertebrates are consistent with primary regulation of α-imidazole resulting in a stable OH^-/H^+ ratio and the observed change in blood pH with temperature (Figure 2.7). Figure 2.7 also shows that intracellular pH is close to neutrality and closely parallels the rise in pN, whereas in ectotherms and mammalian blood *in vivo*, body fluid pH is maintained at higher levels, i.e., it is more alkaline, than intracellular pH. The purpose of maintaining an alkalotic extracellular milieu may be to provide the cell with a proton-sink for the acidic products of its metabolism. Although this pH management strategy is the most prevalent in the animal kingdom,[120] an alternative process has evolved in hibernating mammals: their metabolism and metabolic function
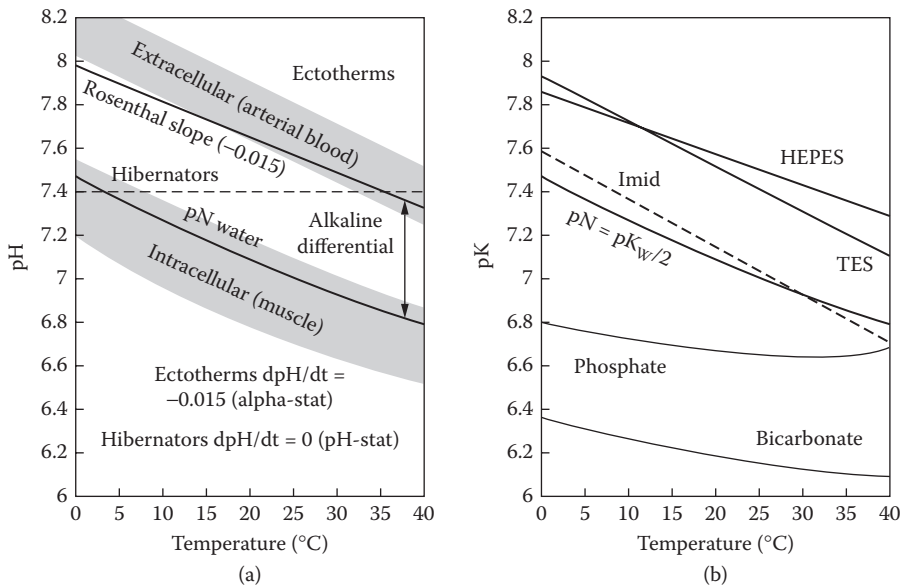
FIGURE 2.7 The relationships between pH and pK as a function of temperature relative to acid-base control in biological systems during hypothermia. Shaded areas show the range of pH values reported for both the blood and intracellular fluid of ectotherms (cold-blooded animals) as a function of body temperature. The blood of warm-blooded mammals including man falls within this range when cooled without gas exchange. The pH change of blood during cooling parallels that of the neutral point of water (pN) and the temperature coefficient is given by the Rosenthal slope. In contrast, hibernators do not maintain a constant degree of alkalinity between the extracellular and intracellular compartments, but instead maintain a constant pH of 7.4 (pH-stat versus α-stat regulation). The importance of buffer capacity relative to preserving electrochemical neutrality during cooling is discussed in the text. In contrast to the physiological buffers — phosphate and bicarbonate that do not retain their relative buffer capacity during cooling — the imidazole (Imid) group of histidine and synthetic buffers, such as HEPES[*] and TES,[**] are effective buffers over the entire temperature range due to the fact that their temperature coefficients (dpK/dt) parallel that of water (pK_w = dissociation constant of water). (Adapted and extended from various sources including References 119, 236.) *Note:* [*]N-2(Hydroxyethylpiperazine)N-2-ethane-sulfonic acid [**]N-Tris(hydroxymethyl)methyl-2-aminoethanesulfonic acid.

continue at a body temperature as low as 5°C and they maintain arterial pH at 7.4, irrespective of systemic temperature (pH stat regulation).

A detailed discussion of these pH-regulatory phenomena is beyond the scope of this chapter, but the implications of the choice of strategy that will deliver optimum protection during clinical hypothermia — or hypothermic preservation of isolated organs for transplantation — has been addressed in numerous publications over the past few decades (for examples, see References 117, 120–123). Although these considerations have sometimes led to a controversial debate, there are persuasive arguments with supporting evidence in favor of the alpha-stat strategy. Again, examples from studies on exquisitely sensitive ischemic tissues such as heart and brain are of particular interest. It has been shown in numerous studies that the electrical stability, contractility, and hemodynamics of the heart is better preserved during hypothermia when the α-stat scheme is adopted, as opposed to constraining pH to 7.4.[117,123,124] Concerns for brain protection during hypo-thermic cardiopulmonary bypass have led to studies of the effect of pH and temperature on cerebral metabolism and cerebral blood flow with the latter being appropriately maintained during α-stat management.[125] In a direct comparison of the α-stat versus pH-stat management of dogs subjected to 60 minutes of cold (17°C) ischemic circulatory arrest, it was demonstrated that the α-stat strategy resulted in better protection of ischemic tissues than in those animals whose pH was maintained at 7.4 throughout. Improved protection was manifest as a better cardiac output, twice the cerebral

blood flow, lower peripheral resistance, and a significantly better postischemic ventricular performance on rewarming.[126]

Strategies of pH management for optimum hypothermic preservation of isolated organs have not yet been studied extensively, but if α-stat regulation proves to be generally beneficial to maintain a constant degree of alkalinity between the extracellular and intracellular compartments to preserve electrochemical neutrality during cooling, the question of appropriate pH buffers needs to be carefully considered. Figure 2.7 illustrates that the intrinsic physiological buffers phosphate and bicarbonate do not retain their relative buffering capacity during cooling, due to the temperature coefficients of their dissociation constants (dpK/dt). In sharp contrast, the imidazole group of the amino acid histidine retains effective buffer capacity over the entire temperature range because its dpK/dt is closely aligned with that of water. In synthetic systems such as manmade organ preservation media, or hypothermic blood substitutes, other buffers are available with equivalent or greater temperature coefficients to that of the pK_w for water. For example, the aminosulfonic acid buffers introduced by Good et al.[127] have been shown to possess superior buffer capacity and temperature coefficients for applications involving hypothermia.[127–130] For example, the zwitterionic aminosulfonic acid compound HEPES* has found widespread *in vitro* use as a biocompatible buffer and the close match of its pKa/dt with that of water and imidazole is illustrated in Figure 2.7. Moreover, the aminosulphonic acid buffers may be a better choice than imidazole/histidine for preservation solutions since imidazole has been criticized as being too reactive and unstable to be a satisfactory biological buffer and has been shown to uncouple electron transport from phosphorylation.[131] Moreover, we have recently shown unequivocally that the ampholyte HEPES provides superior buffering capacity and efficiency compared with histidine for pH regulation in the critical range of pH 7.0–7.8.[128] The efficacy of improved buffering capacity using aminosulfonic acid buffers such as Bicine and Tricine as additives to UW organ preservation solution has also been demonstrated to improve the metabolic status of hypothermically stored livers.[132] In this study Bicine and Tricine provided a higher buffer capacity and greater protection than histidine.[132] HEPES has been documented to be highly effective in combating the alterations in acid-base homeostasis of ischemic hearts.[133,134] We have demonstrated the effectiveness of a variety of these sulfonic acid buffers in cryobiological applications[130,135–137] and consideration of their use *in vivo* has recently been advocated.[67,138–140]

Control of acidosis in the cells of preserved organs will be impacted by the exchange of protons and buffer species between the intracellular and extracellular compartments. With respect to external buffering power and intracellular pH, Garlick et al. addressed the question of whether protons produced within ischemic cells are transported to the extracellular space. Such an export process would slow down as extracellular pH decreased. They hypothesized that if the external pH was maintained by increasing external buffering, the proton export could continue longer, thereby reducing the fall in pH_i. They provided some support for this hypothesis using hearts perfused with Krebs-Henseleit supplemented with HEPES.[134] Clearly, intracellular pH (pH_i) can be influenced by external buffers if there is exchange of intracellular buffer species such as phosphate and/or protons. Moreover, there is the possibility that external buffers can permeate into the intracellular space and thereby directly act as pH_i buffers. As far as I am aware, there have been very few specific studies to examine the permeation of buffer species into cells. However, relatively small organic compounds such as histidine (155 daltons) and the aminosulphonic acid buffers (approximately 160 to 230 daltons; e.g., BICINE = 163 daltons and HEPES = 238 daltons) might be expected to permeate during prolonged hypothermic exposure. There is recent evidence that much larger molecules such as the disaccharide trehalose (342 daltons) can permeate into cells as a result of hypothermia-induced phase changes in the plasma membrane.[141]

Many of the reported studies purporting to examine changes in pH_i have relied upon NMR, but Lareau et al. have cautioned about the interpretation of intracellular pH changes based upon

---

* N-2(Hydroxyethylpiperazine)N-2-ethanesulfonic acid

[32]P NMR spectroscopy because inorganic phosphate leaks from cells during prolonged hypothermic storage. For this reason, it is not always possible to follow the time course of pH_i from the chemical shift of the Pi peak.[142]

2.4.5 EFFECT OF HYPOTHERMIA ON THE GENERATION OF FREE RADICALS

The emerging role of oxygen derived free radicals (ODFR) in tissue injury and its participation in reperfusion injury is mentioned above. Important questions that arise in the context of cold storage of tissues and organs include whether free-radical–mediated tissue injury proceeds during cold ischemia, and what effect temperature reduction has on the processes of free radical generation and the mechanisms of tissue injury. Fuller and Green and their colleagues have considered these questions; their work provides a basis for the summarizing statements recorded here.[143]

In essence, it is recognized that cooling increases the susceptibility of cells to produce free radicals and attenuates the natural defense mechanisms by which cells normally deal with the low-level free radical production in metabolism. Due to a lower activation energy, free radical reactions are depressed less by temperature reduction than by the enzymatic processes used to scavenge them. As outlined above, the highly reactive radicals can react in a nonenzymatic way with a variety of biomolecules, including membrane lipids, proteins, and nucleic acids in order to become energetically more stable species and, in the process, generate other radicals at the site of attack. A chain of such reactions can be established, especially when catalysts are present in the form of species capable of redox cycling, i.e., shuttling between oxidation states by accepting and donating electrons. Transition metals such as copper and iron — which are fundamentally important in cell metabolism as intrinsic components of enzyme systems like the cytochromes of the mitochondrial electron transport chain — are effective catalysts of such radical chain reactions. Loss of homeostatic control of transition metals during cold ischemia is therefore a potential hazard to cells because of the promotion of free radical production and subsequent tissue injury during either cold storage or reperfusion. It is the balance between production and removal of free radicals that is crucial to the cell such that a combination of excessive radical generation and hindrance of normal defense mechanisms can redirect the processes in favor of injury. There is evidence that some of the natural defense mechanisms against free radicals become depleted during cold storage, and that the addition of natural pharmacological scavengers including SOD, catalase, or mannitol to cold storage media may improve the viability of hypothermically stored organs.[143,144]

Although it is possible for the production of injurious free radicals to be enhanced during cold storage, it is important to appreciate that the resultant cell damage may not occur entirely at the low temperature. On the contrary, there is a growing body of evidence that reintroduction of oxygenation via a regular blood supply upon rewarming and reperfusion provides a powerful impetus for further oxidative stress. A principal pathway is the stimulation of enzymically driven radical reactions such as the xanthine/xanthine oxidase system involving the interaction of ATP catabolic products with molecular oxygen as discussed in an earlier section and depicted in Figure 2.4. Vascular endothelial cells are thought to be particularly vulnerable to the type of injury mediated by free radical generation due to this so called "respiratory burst" mechanism. Nevertheless, it is known that low concentrations of molecular oxygen such as what is dissolved in organ preservation solutions is sufficient to support the generation of free radicals during prolonged storage.[143] Therefore, it is recognized that cold exposure may set the stage for a progressive development of tissue injury as a result of reactions and processes that occur during hypothermia, but which fuel changes that proceed for considerable time after normal conditions of temperature and oxygen tension are resumed.

Unrestricted bursts of free radical activity are known to cause membrane damage to a variety of cellular components due to the hazards of lipid peroxidation. While cells employ a number of repair mechanisms to recover from this type of injury, cell survival depends upon whether slavage pathways are overwhelmed or whether a point of irreversible damage is reached during the

storage/reactivation process so that cell death becomes inevitable. During the transition from reversible cell injury to irreversible cell death, calcium is strongly implicated as an important link between free-radical-mediated changes and eventual cell necrosis. It is clear from the foregoing discussions that in tissues exposed to cold there is potential for unbalanced free radical reactivity and elevated intracellular free calcium levels, and subsequent warming and reperfusion is likely to greatly potentiate these adverse events.

Evidence linking cold ischemic damage and oxidative stress has come from studies involving a variety of tissues, most notably the heart, kidney, and liver.[143] In recent years, strategies aimed at circumventing oxidative stress and reperfusion injury under both hypothermic and normothermic conditions have understandably been focused upon the roles of antioxidants and calcium channel blockers. An example in which this approach has been adopted is the development of the "Carolina Rinse Solution" designed specifically to improve the preservation of cold-stored livers by protecting against reperfusion injury.[145,146] Other studies have indicated that antioxidant supplementation of existing cold storage media such as UW solution may be advantageous in preserving organs with increased oxidation stresses sustained from suboptimal donors in clinical practice.[147–149] Nevertheless, a clear picture for unequivocal benefits of using agents such as antioxidants and calcium channel blockers in a clinical setting has yet to be established. Some insights into the cellular and molecular mechanisms of cold storage injury with an emphasis on oxidative stress have recently been reviewed by Rauen and DeGroot.[150]

2.4.6 STRUCTURAL CHANGES

The interrelationship between structure and function is fundamentally important for cellular homeostasis, which is governed by an intricate array of biochemical, physiological, and biophysical processes. Moreover, these processes are compartmentalized within the cell such that the structure of biological membranes and the cytoskeleton are integral components of cell viability and vitality.

The sensitivity of biological structures to temperature change is well known and the thermal denaturation of proteins in particular is well documented. Thus, most proteins, as well as nucleic acids and many polysaccharides, are able to exist in their biologically active states only within a limited temperature range that is characteristic of the macromolecule and its environmental conditions such as ionic strength and pH. While a great deal more is known about heat denaturation of proteins at elevated temperatures, there are well described examples of cold denaturation involving the spontaneous unfolding of proteins or dissociation of the multi-subunit structure into biologically inactive species, which may or may not reassemble on rewarming to normal temperatures.[151,152]

It was mentioned earlier in the discussion of metabolic uncoupling that membrane components are also affected by cooling, such that membrane properties relating to both the selective diffusion barrier to solutes and active regulation involving membrane-associated proteins (e.g., ion transporters) are altered by cooling. The effect of cooling on the thermophysical properties of membrane lipids is generally regarded as the fundamental basis of temperature effects upon membrane structure-function relationships.

In essence, it is well established that it is the fluid mobile lipid phase of membranes that supports their functional orientation and conformational movements, including that of integral or transmembrane proteins. During cooling, individual phospholipids undergo an abrupt change from a disordered fluid, or liquid crystalline state, to a highly ordered hexagonal lattice (gel state) at a specific transition temperature. Biological membranes comprise complex mixtures of lipids such that sharp transitions between the liquid crystalline and gel phase do not occur, but rather the membrane exhibits a phase transition temperature range. Moreover, compositional characteristics such as the cholesterol:phospholipid ratio in the membrane can serve to broaden or "smooth out" the phase transitions. In a past review of the effects of cooling on mammalian cells, Fuller provided a concise yet informative synopsis of these membrane-orientated effects of reduced temperatures.[153] It has been postulated on the basis of measurements in both model systems and intact cells that a phase

separation occurs within the plane of the membrane as cooling proceeds. Such cold-induced changes in the degree of membrane fluidity render it thermodynamically unfavorable for membrane proteins to remain in the gel phase, such that they may be redistributed laterally into regions of low-melting-point lipids that remain in the liquid crystalline phase. This process is thought to result in packing faults due to the development of lipid-rich and protein-rich microdomains in a membrane undergoing phase transitions. One consequence of this could be a change in membrane permeability and alteration in the solute barrier function of the membrane.[154] Phase separation of mammalian membranes have been demonstrated at temperatures in the region of 10°C and below,[155] and this correlates with the trend towards increased permeabilities to both ions and even large molecules such as proteins during cooling.[156] In addition to phase separations another form of cold-induced membrane damage includes the actual loss of membrane phospholipids, which is intuitively more deleterious than phase changes that may largely be reversible.

2.4.6.1 Thermal Shock

It has been discovered in some cells that the rate of cooling is also a determinant of injury. The phenomenon, which is not well understood, is referred to either as thermal shock, cold shock, or chilling injury. The phenomenon is distinct from the well-characterized effects of cooling rate in frozen cells (see Chapter 8). The pure effects of cooling, in the absence of solute concentration changes or ice formation, are thought to be related to the thermotropic properties of cell membranes involving phase transitions as discussed earlier.[157] It has been proposed that rapid cooling in the absence of freezing can cause mechanical stresses on membranes induced by differential thermal contraction.[18]

2.4.6.2 Stress Proteins

The change in the structure of a protein is a common response to stress. Cells accumulate incorrectly folded proteins as a consequence of stresses such as hypoxia or temperature change. Proteins that experience unfolding or conformational changes do not remain soluble and are transformed into denatured proteins. It is now well established that one of the defense mechanisms adopted by cells to counteract such effects of stress is to synthesize new proteins commonly referred to as "stress proteins" or "heat shock proteins" (HSP) because of their increased synthesis by many cell types after exposure to elevated temperatures.[158] The general role of this group of highly conserved stress proteins is believed to be homeostatic in that they protect the cell against the harmful consequences of traumas and help promote a quick return to normal cellular activities once the stress has terminated. The principal mammalian HSPs are classified into families on the basis of their molecular weights and sequence homologies, and include the 8 kD protein ubiquitin, small HSPs (20–28KD); HSP 60; HSP 70; and HSP 90.[159] The HSP 70 family is the most widely studied. These proteins appear to bind to denatured and unfolded proteins and prevent further aggregation and precipitation. Some HSP 70 proteins are always present in cells and have been assigned a role as "molecular chaperones" because they mediate the correct assembly and folding of proteins. The general protective function of "stress" proteins is also thought to be mediated by their chaperone-like ability to associate with other proteins in the cell and modify their function and fate.[160]

The induction of stress proteins in response to cold (cold shock proteins) has been identified in invertebrate species such as bacteria and yeast.[161,162] Until recently it was unknown whether similar families of cold shock proteins are induced in mammalian cells. However, the contention by some that "recovery of cells from cold temperatures does not result in synthesis of specific shock proteins"[153] will clearly need to be reevaluated in the light of recent evidence demonstrating that cold shock induces the synthesis of stress proteins in a variety of mammalian cells[163–165] and organs.[166] Moreover, the natural response to heat stress by synthesis of "shock proteins," a phenomenon referred to as thermotolerance, has been explored as a potential interventional strategy

to protect against induced ischemia and reperfusion injury. The idea is to precondition cells to better withstand hypothermia by previous exposure to a less severe stress, or sublethal dose of the same stress. It has been demonstrated in both cells and organ systems that "stress conditioning" can induce cold tolerance in mammalian systems.[167–169] Cytoprotection is achieved by way of a complex adaptation in cellular metabolism analogous to that seen in natural thermotolerance. A dominant metabolic change associated with hyperthermia-induced cytoprotection is the increased expression of heat-shock genes. Recent studies have confirmed in diverse animal models that the levels of heat shock proteins are increased manyfold in heat-shocked animals,[168,169] and that the stress conditioning led to significantly improved functional recovery and decreased cell death in various tissues after subsequent cold ischemia. It is particularly noteworthy that in each of these mammalian models a positive temporal association was demonstrated between the functional protection of stress conditioning and enhanced expression of inducible heat-shock proteins.

2.4.6.3 Cytoskeleton

Cold induced changes of cellular structural proteins that constitute cytoskeletal components such as microtubules have been known since the mid 1970s. This cold sensitivity appears to be mediated by depolymerization of component polypeptide units[170] and, in general, is readily reversible upon rewarming.[171] Nevertheless, the possibility exists for reassembly of the microtubules in a way that results in cellular abnormalities.[172]

2.4.6.4 Apoptosis vs. Necrosis in Cold-Induced Cell Death

Injured or dying cells exhibit characteristic changes in cell morphology and, as described above, the culmination of the deleterious events comprising the ischemic cascade is characterized by marked structural changes in cells and eventual cell death. It is now known that there are two distinct ways in which cells may die: necrosis — caused by a general failure of cellular homeostatic regulation following injury induced by a variety of deleterious stimuli including hypoxia, toxins, radiation, and temperature changes — and apoptosis, or "programmed cell death," which is a regulated process distinguishable from necrosis by numerous morphological biochemical and physiological features.[173,174] In regard to structural changes, apoptosis involves distinct morphologic features including blebbing of the plasma membrane (but not loss of integrity), cell shrinkage with the formation of apoptotic bodies, chromatin condensation, and internucleosomal DNA fragmentation in a specific nonrandom pattern. These characteristics are distinguishable from necrotic changes that involve degenerative processes such as cell and organelle swelling, rupture of plasma and lysosomal membranes, and a random pattern of DNA degradation.

While many of the diverse stresses known to cause necrotic cell death have also been reported to induce apoptosis in a variety of cells, the role of low temperatures as a possible stimulus of programmed cell death has only recently begun to emerge.[175] The earliest reports appeared in 1990 when it was shown that cultured mammalian fibroblast cells at the transition from logarithmic to stationary growth were killed by brief exposures to 0°C and rewarming at 37°C.[176] The observed cell killing required only a few minutes of hypothermic exposure and the affected cells exhibited characteristics of apoptosis. Moreover, the kinetics of cell death served to distinguish cold-induced apoptosis from the lethal effects of longer-term cold storage (hours or day), and also showed characteristics inconsistent with direct chilling injury, or cold shock.[176] Most recently, we have reported that apoptosis can be detected in a significant proportion of both vascular smooth muscle and endothelial cells subjected to brief (30 to 120 seconds) cooling.[177] As shown in Figure 2.8 for both cell types, apoptosis was not found after exposure to hypothermia in the range +5 to 0°C, but was induced at lower temperatures with a maximum response occurring at –10°C.[177]

There is increasing evidence, therefore, that apoptosis may represent another manifestation of cold injury. However, it is clear that all cells cannot be as susceptible as those used in Nagle's
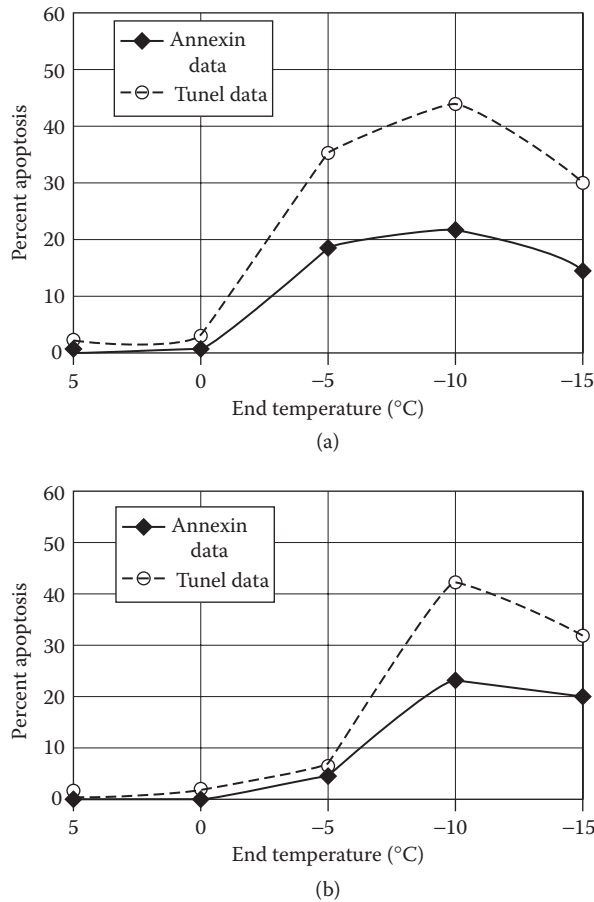
FIGURE 2.8 Extent of apoptosis detected in human coronary artery endothelial cells (a) and arterial smooth muscle cells (b) as a function of exposure temperature. (Data from Tatsutani et al.[177])

study or hypothermic preservation for practical lengths of time would not be possible, which is not the case. Susceptibility to cold-induced apoptosis is likely to depend critically upon the cell growth cycle as demonstrated in Nagle's study, and the temperature of exposure as demonstrated by Tatsutani's study. Recent studies in cultured hepatocytes and liver endothelial cells have indicated that reactive oxygen species might play a key role in mediating cold-induced apoptosis.[178]

It is becoming increasingly more evident that apoptosis plays an integral role in cell death induced by the rigors of both hypothermia and cryopreservation.[175,176,179–181] More specifically, apoptosis has been identified to be directly associated with delayed-onset cell death (DOCD). This is defined as death associated with cold exposure that is not apparent immediately upon rewarming, but extending over the postexposure recovery period.[181] Recent research into the causative apoptotic and necrotic pathways responsible for low-temperature-induced DOCD has identified the contribution of multiple apoptotic pathways, including receptor- and mitochondrial-induced apoptosis.[180,182] Investigations into these pathways, their progression, and their induction stressors has begun to facilitate new methods for improving preservation efficacy through the modulation of the cellular and molecular responses of a cell undergoing preservation (both hypothermic and cryopreservation).[28,67,137,175,180,183,184]

Incorporation of specific apoptotic protease inhibitors in preservation media has now been reported to markedly improve the survival of a variety of cells and tissues.[182,183,185,186] Furthermore, investigation into the modification of the carrier medium from that of standard

extracellular-type culture media — with or without cryoprotectants — to that of specifically designed intracellular-type preservation solutions, such as Hypothermosol[28,67,187,188] and Unisol,[189,190] have led to studies showing significant improvement in preservation efficacy.[181,189,191–196] In a series of independent studies based upon the HypoThermosol formulation, the hypothesis that cell preservation in "Intracellular-type" solution experience reduced hypothermic stress during cryopreservation was tested and yielded higher cell survivals.[181] Moreover, the new generation of solutions has been shown to provide better long-term hypothermic preservation compared to the industry standard (UW-ViaSpan). For example, human liver cells after just three days storage in UW at 4°C die within three days of return to physiological conditions. In marked contrast, cells stored in HypoThermosol solutions survive and propagate from three to five days later. We have demonstrated similar comparisons with a variety of other tissues and cell types stored in Unisol at 4°C.[189,190] Moreover, when experimental inhibitors of apoptosis were added to HypoThermosol, human liver cell lines survived up to eight days at 4°C, compared to only 24 hours for cells stored in ViaSpan.[197]

These and several ensuing studies have provided strong evidence in support of this concept, which has now opened the door to a new approach to modulating preservation injury by focusing on molecular mechanisms associated with cold-induced cell death. Even before this latest flurry of studies that elucidate the molecular mechanisms of cellular demise — and thereby identify ways of circumventing the problems — some of the principles were embodied in the rational design of the baseline media. More specifically, the designs of hypothermic blood substitutes such as Hypo-Thermosol, and the newer formulation Unisol, both incorporate some components that possess recognized antioxidant activities and hence implied anti-apoptotic activity.[28,67,187,188] For example, reduced glutathione is a component of both formulations as a multifaceted molecule that is also known to fulfill a natural role in the regulation of apoptosis.[198]

Since apoptosis is proving to be a distinct and significant factor in limiting hypothermic storage of cells and organs, strategies aimed at preventing apoptotic cell death should be pursued. Adding anti-apoptotic compounds, such as LXR-015, to hypothermic storage media has been reported to improve hypothermic preservation of rat liver in EuroCollins solution.[199] A variety of low-molecular-weight compounds have now been identified and used to either enhance or inhibit programmed cell death such that apoptosis is now amenable to pharmacological intervention.[200]

Once a cell has been exposed to a death stimulus one of two main pathways becomes activated: the intrinsic mitochondrial pathway or the extrinsic death receptor pathway.[201] The progression of apoptosis can be halted at numerous checkpoints along the apoptotic pathways. Two key areas of research that have proven successful in extending the life of cells in culture involve the inhibition of mitochondrial dysfunction and the inhibition of caspases. Apoptosis may be inhibited through the genetic engineering of mammalian cells to over-express an anti-apoptotic gene (such as the Bcl-2 gene[202,203]), or through the addition of a chemical inhibitor to the environmental medium — whether it be a culture medium or a preservation solution. As an alternative to pharmacological intervention, it has been suggested that gene therapy could provide the means to modify grafts such that they become less susceptible to preservation injury associated with apoptosis.[202] This novel approach involves transfecting murine livers with a recombinant adenovirus vector encoding the Bcl-2 gene to reduce apoptosis during the preservation time (the Bcl-2 gene product has been shown to promote cell survival by inhibiting the process of apoptosis[203]). Grafts expressing Bcl-2 showed significant reduction of enzymes associated with liver damage compared with control grafts.[202] However, the genetic engineering approach is less amenable to practical intervention for the purpose of improving biopreservation.

2.5 INTERVENTIONAL CONTROL OF THE EXTRACELLULAR ENVIRONMENT TO OPTIMIZE PRESERVATION

This section outlines the cellular effects of hypothermia in relation to an ischemic or hypoxic insult. Hypothermia is the bedrock of all useful methods of preservation and this has proven to be most effectively applied by controlling the extracellular environment of cells directly — and the intracellular environment indirectly — during cold exposure. It is beyond the scope of this chapter to deal with the strategies that have been adopted to maximize the benefits of cooling for tissue and organ preservation, but some salient points will be offered as a prelude to discussion in ensuring chapters. Moreover, other authors have reviewed in detail the approaches that have been taken to design interventional techniques for hypothermic preservation.[20,204–206]

It is mentioned above that control of the extracellular environment of cells to optimize preservation may be based on one of two strategies: static cold storage, or flush preservation, and low-temperature continuous perfusion. A third technique, involving gaseous perfusion (retrograde oxygen persufflation), also exists, but it remains largely experimental.[204,206]

2.5.1 FLUSH COLD STORAGE

It will be apparent from the foregoing discussion that these different strategies call for different approaches to interventional control of the extracellular environment in order to optimize preservation. In principle, flush preservation is based on the premise that reducing temperature so that it is near — but not below — the ice point (0°C) precludes the need to support metabolism to any significant extent, and that the correct distribution of water and ions between the intracellular and extracellular compartments can be maintained by physical rather than metabolic means. Since during the period that metabolic pumps are inactivated the driving force for transmembrane ion flux is the difference in ionic balance between intracellular and extracellular fluid, and driving force for water uptake (cell swelling) is the impermeant intracellular anions, these changes can be prevented or restricted by manipulating the extracellular environment to abolish the chemical potential gradients. On this basis a variety of flush, or organ wash-out solutions, have been devised and evaluated for cold storage; these are often referred to as "intracellular-type" solutions due to their resemblance *in some respects* to intracellular fluid.[20,204,206]

The principal design elements of the intracellular-type flush solutions have been to adjust the ionic balance (notably of the monovalent cations) and to raise the osmolality by including an impermeant solute to balance the intracellular osmotic pressure responsible for water uptake. However, the most important factor for the efficacy of cold flush solutions appears to be the prevention of cellular edema by inclusion of impermeant solutes since it has been established that ionic imbalances, especially potassium depletion, are readily and rapidly reversible.[207]

Attention to the biophysical properties of intracellular-type flush solutions to restrict passive diffusional processes has unquestionably led to the development of techniques during the past few decades that have provided the basis of clinical organ preservation. Nevertheless, it is recognized that further optimization of cold flush solutions can be achieved by inclusion of biochemical and pharmacological components that will be effective in counteracting the deleterious effects of ischemia and reperfusion injury. To some extent, this approach has been incorporated in the design of the University of Wisconsin organ preservation solution (UW solution marketed as "ViaSpan"; Barr Labs) which has become the most widely used solution for cold flush preservation of kidneys, livers, and pancreata.[104,105,208] (See Chapter 8 for additional discussion on the rational design of hypothermic blood substitutes and storage media).

With due consideration for the effects of ischemia, hypoxia, hypothermia, and reperfusion injury on cells, coupled with the proven efficacy of various existing organ preservation solutions, a general consensus of the most important characteristics in the design of hypothermic storage

---

TABLE 2.1
Desirable Properties of a Hypothermic Preservation Solution or Blood Substitute

1. Minimizes hypothermically-induced cell swelling
2. Prevents expansion of the interstitial space (especially important during perfusion)
3. Restricts ionic imbalances
4. Prevents intracellular acidosis
5. Prevents injury from free radicals
6. Provides substrates for regeneration of high energy phosphate compounds during reperfusion

Based on Belzer and Southard[104]

---

solutions has emerged. These are summarized in Table 2.1 based upon the exposition of Belzer and Southard.[104]

2.5.2 CONTINUOUS HYPOTHERMIA PERFUSION PRESERVATION

The desirable properties of hypothermic solutions outlined in Table 2.1 are also applicable to controlling the extracellular environment by way of continuous perfusion techniques. In contrast to static cold storage, continuous perfusion is usually controlled at around 10°C and is based upon a different principle: it is generally assumed that a moderate degree of cooling will reduce metabolic needs but that continuous perfusion is required to support the suppressed metabolism and remove catabolic products. Because it is assumed that sufficient metabolic activity remains to actively regulate a near-normal cell volume and ionic gradients, the perfusates are generally acellular, isotonic, well-oxygenated solutions, having a composition that more closely resembles plasma than intracellular fluid. Such perfusates are therefore designated as "extracellular-type" solutions. They are perfused through the vascular bed of an organ at a pressure sufficient (typically 40 to 60 mm Hg) to achieve uniform tissue distribution. To balance this applied hydrostatic pressure and prevent interstitial edema, oncotic agents such as albumin or synthetic macromolecular colloids are incorporated into the perusates.[204] Substrate support of the remaining metabolism at ~10°C is also an important consideration and it has been shown in several organs that high energy adenine nucleotides can be synthesized during either hypothermic perfusion preservation,[20,95,206] or oxygenated hypothermic reperfusion[209] as discussed in an earlier section above.

In addition to the principal objective of supporting metabolism, continuous perfusion also provides other advantages over flush preservation. These include the washing out of accumulated lactate and protons, which removes the metabolic block on glycolysis. This is thought to be especially beneficial for organs that have suffered prior warm ischemia. Perfusion also facilitates the removal of erythrocytes from the microcirculation and helps to maintain vascular patency during prolonged storage. Continuous perfusion has been shown to provide the best means of achieving prolonged hypothermic preservation (e.g., 3 to 7 days for kidneys[208]), but concerns for damage to the vascular endothelium during prolonged perfusion may be a limiting factor.[210] Despite the apparent advantages of continuous perfusion over the flush techniques, static cold storage remains the method of choice at most clinical transplant centers. This is largely because of its simplicity and convenience over the complexity, expense, and risks of vascular damage associated with prolonged continuous perfusion technology. Nevertheless, in the context of utilizing expanded criteria donor organs to make available more organs for transplantation, machine perfusion technology is considered essential and there is currently a resurgence of clinical interest in these techniques.[211–213] Further discussion of the relative merits of continuous perfusion versus static cold storage is beyond the scope of this chapter but is addressed further in Chapter 9).

2.5.3   APPROACHES TOWARD UNIVERSAL TISSUE PRESERVATION

Although it has been experimentally verified that cell metabolism continues at temperatures as low as 10°C and that adenine nucleotides can be resynthesized during hypothermic preservation if appropriate substrates are provided, it is considered unlikely that this level of metabolism can prevent transmembrane ion and water movements: this is due principally to the temperature sensitivity of the active pumps. Hence, some advocates of continuous perfusion have modified the perfusate accordingly by increasing both the K^+ concentration and the osmolality (see Reference 206) Similarly, modification of cold flush solutions can be considered to circumvent some of the identified limitations of that approach. For example, it is described earlier that the lack of support of metabolism during ice-storage can be addressed by raising the temperature of storage, and by incorporating biochemical substrates and raising the oxygen tension to promote adenine nucleotide repletion. Also, the use of pharmacological agents such as inhibitors of 5'-nucleotidase (e.g., allopurinol) has been advocated as a means of averting adenine nucleotide depletion.

Therefore it is apparent that optimum control of the intracellular and extracellular environment of cells during hypothermia depends upon the interaction of a variety of factors that include temperature, oxygen tension, acidity, osmotic pressure, and chemical composition of the perfusion fluid or wash-out solution.

As transplantation science progresses and the demand for effective methods of preservation of an increasing variety of tissues and organs escalates, so the search for a "universal" scheme of cold storage has become an important goal. The modern history of organ preservation since the early work of Belzer's group and Collins's group in the 1960s has shown that the original solutions devised for kidney preservation are ineffective for other visceral organs, such as liver and pancreas.[104,208] The introduction of the UW solution in the 1980s, which has proven to be universally effective for the intra-abdominal organs, has been heralded by its inventors as approaching a general organ preservation solution.[104] Moreover, the improvements of UW solution over other organ storage solutions, notably Collins's solution or its variants, have been ascribed to organ-specific differences that demand careful consideration of the choice of components selected to fulfill the objectives summarized in Table 2.1.[104] Nevertheless, UW solution has not proven to be as effective for the intrathoracic organs, heart, and lung as it has for intra-abdominal organs. This is due largely to special demands of highly metabolic tissues such as the myocardium as discussed above.[101]

It is now recognized that the successive phases of the transplantation procedure involving organ procurement, storage, transportation, reimplantation, and reperfusion may impose different requirements for optimum preservation at the different stages. This is illustrated by evidence that heart preservation with the intracellular-type solution, EuroCollins, was enhanced when the heart was initially arrested and subsequently flushed prior to reperfusion, with an extracellular-like cardioplegic solution.[214,215] It is clear, therefore, that any single formulation of preservation solution is unlikely to provide optimum protection during all the processing stages of a transplantation procedure or the interventional stages of complex surgeries, so a combination of appropriately designed solutions may prove necessary. In addition to the basic elements in the design of cold-storage solutions described above, it has been anticipated that inclusion of additional biochemical and pharmacological agents that might counteract the deleterious effects of cold ischemia and reperfusion injury would enhance the cytoprotection properties of preservation media. This strategy has been explored using either newly designed media that incorporate a cocktail of cytoprotective additives such as Carolina Rinse solution,[145,146] or by using existing preservation solutions such as UW, or EuroCollins solution, as a vehicle for the pharmacological additives. For example, the addition of aprotinin to UW and EuroCollins solutions has been shown to increase endothelial cell viability in hypoxic cold storage conditions and led to improved lung preservation.[216] The rationale for such studies was based upon the fact that endothelial cell damage, destabilization of mitochondria and cell membranes, and the release of proteolytic enzymes are known to be associated with organ preservation injury, and aprotinin has anti-proteolytic and membrane stabilizing properties.

TABLE 2.2
Biochemical and Pharmacological Additives* for Preservation Media

Classification	Examples
Anti-platelet aggregation/vasoactive agents	Prostacyclin, PGE1, Mg $^{2+}$
Calmodulin inhibitors	Chlorpromazine (CPZ), trifluoperazine
Calcium Channel Blockers	Nicardipine, nifedipine, verapamil, CPZ
Protease and phospholipase inhibitors	CPZ, verapamil, calpain antagonists (e.g.AK275)
Anti-oxidants/free radical scavengers	Glutathione, catalase, SOD, allopurinol, dimethylthiourea, vitamin-E (or Trolox), Tempol, magnesium ascorbyl phosphate, Lazaroids
Anti-apoptotic agents	LXR-015, cycloheximide, Z-VAD-FMK, Q-VD-OPH
Iron chelators	Desferroxamine
Membrane Stabilizers	CPZ, Dexamethosone, trehalose
"Cytoprotective" agents	PGE1, glycine
Metabolic Substrates:	
Sugars	glucose, fructose, ribose
Nucleotide precursors (HEP enhancers)	Adenine, Adenosine, Fructose diphosphate, Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate
Oxygen-carriers	Perfluorocarbons, PEG-hemoglobin
Trophic Factors	Growth factors, nucleic acid derivatives, ribonucleotides, glycosaminoglycans

* Illustrative examples not intended to be a comprehensive list of potentially efficacious additives for preservation solutions.

A wide variety of classes of drugs and biochemical agents have been advocated as potential supplements for improved organ preservation such that complex cocktails of additives might be conceived for optimum organ preservation. Although far from exhaustive, Table 2.2 illustrates the variety of additives that have been suggested to be potential supplements for preservation solutions but it is outside the scope of this chapter to attempt a discussion or review of these strategies. Nevertheless, one important cautionary point that should be emphasized is the potential interaction of components that might be detrimental, rather than beneficial, to outcome. For example, it has been reported that allopurinol and trifluoperazine (see Table 2.2) improve the function of canine kidneys harvested from non-heart-beating donors when used independently as supplements for Belzer's Machine Preservation Medium. However, when used in combination, these additives unexpectedly proved to be detrimental to preservation outcome and are not recommended for combined use in machine perfusion preservation.[217] Optimization strategies for the design of preservation cocktails must not only take account of the possible interactions of additive components, but also their differential effectiveness at various stages of the procurement, preservation, reperfusion, and reimplantation paradigm. Some studies have indicated that drug administration during hypothermic storage has therapeutic benefits for resuscitating tissues after warm ischemia and is more effective than the same drug given *only* during reperfusion.[218] Yet other reports indicate that some drugs, particularly antioxidants, are effective only when present in the reperfusion buffer medium, not in the cold-storage solution.[219] Clearly, an unequivocal strategy for hypothermic solution design has not yet emerged and remains a complex issue impacted by many factors including organ-type, condition, pretreatment, storage interval, temperature, and reperfusion conditions.

2.5.4 MULTI-ORGAN PROTECTION AND TOTAL BODY COOLING

Interest in general or universal tissue-preservation techniques is exemplified by the need for methods of protecting multiple vital organs, and even the whole body, for applications in modern-day surgery.

Multiple-organ harvesting for transplantation can be optimized by hypothermic perfusion of the whole cadaver, or donor organ blocks comprising several organs (see reference 220), to minimize warm ischemic injury. The ultimate challenge is perhaps protection of the entire body against the effects of global ischemia during periods of circulatory and/or cardiac arrest for "bloodless" surgery.[28,67,139,140]

Surgeons have developed skills that allow very complex, corrective, and life-saving operations to be performed, notably on the heart and brain. As we have reviewed previously,[28] many of these complicated, time-consuming procedures have the inherent need for temporary cessation of blood flow and demand protection of the patient against the deleterious effects of ischemia and anoxia. Although hypothermia is routinely used as an adjunctive protective modality for surgical procedures that require a period of cardiac arrest, there are restrictive time constraints (less than one hour at temperatures usually not lower than 18°C) on the interval of cold ischemia if neurological sequelae are to be avoided. It is well recognized that the window of opportunity for safe surgical intervention could be extended by using greater degrees of hypothermic metabolic suppression, but this becomes unacceptably dangerous, due principally to the effects of profound hypothermia on the blood leading to coagulopathies and irreversible microvascular blockage as discussed above and elsewhere.[28]

The experimental approach we have explored to avoid these complications is to employ a technique of asanguineous blood substitution using acellular synthetic solutions designed to protect the heart, brain, and visceral organs during several hours of bloodless perfusion. The concept of using ultraprofound hypothermia (<10°C) and complete blood replacement is appealing because deeper hypothermia can provide more effective suppression of metabolism, thereby extending the tolerance to ischemia and minimizing the demand for oxygen to levels that can be adequately supplied in a cold aqueous solution without the need for special oxygen-carrying molecules. Complete exsanguination ameliorates the complications associated with increased viscosity, coagulopathies, and erythrocyte clumping of cooled blood. Moreover, vascular purging can remove harmful catabolic products and formed elements that might participate in the ischemia and reperfusion injury cascades. Total exsanguination provides the opportunity to control directly the vascular and extracellular compartments with fluids designed to be protective under the conditions of ultraprofound hypothermia. Solutes can be added to maintain ionic and osmotic balance at the cellular and tissue levels; biochemical and pharmacological additives can help sustain tissue integrity in a variety of ways including efficient vascular flushing, membrane stabilization, free-radical scavenging, and providing substrates for the regeneration of high-energy compounds during rewarming and reperfusion. In essence, these are the principles that are embodied to a greater or lesser extent in the design of various solutions used for *ex vivo* organ preservation and we have adopted similar principles in the design of new hypothermic blood substitutes (HBS).

Our working hypothesis has been *that acellular solutions can be designed to act as universal tissue-preservation solutions during several hours of hypothermic whole-body washout involving cardiac arrest, with or without circulatory arrest.* On this basis, we have formulated and evaluated two new types of solutions designated "Purge" and "Maintenance" HBS that fulfill separate requirements during the asanguineous procedure.[28,66,67,139,140] The principal solution (e.g., HTS/M or Unisol-I in Table 2.3) is a hyperkalemic intracellular-type solution specifically designed to maintain cellular integrity during the hypothermic interval at the lowest temperature. The second solution (e.g., HTS/P or Unisol-E in Table 2.3) is designed to interface between the blood and the maintenance solution during both cooling and warming. This companion solution is therefore an extracellular-type flush solution designed to aid in purging the circulation of blood during cooling since the removal of erythrocytes from the microvasculature is an important objective during ultraprofound hypothermia. The "purge" solution is also designed to flush the system (vasculature and CPB circuit) of the hyperkalemic maintenance solution during warming and possibly help to flush out accumulated toxins and metabolic by-products that might promote oxidative stress and free radical injury upon reperfusion.

TABLE 2.3
Composition of New Hypothermic Blood Substitutes Compared with
"Gold Standard" Organ Preservation Solutions

Components (mM 1^{-1})	BMPS	UW	HTS/M	HTS/P	Unisol-I	Unisol-E
Ionic						
Na+	100.0	30.0	100.0	141.2	62.5	141.2
K+	25.0	125.0	42.5	3.0	70.0	6.0
Ca++	0.5	–	0.05	1.5	0.05	1.5
Mg++	5.0	5.0	5.0	1.0	15.0	5
Cl–	1.0	–	17.1	111.0	30.1	122.0
SO_4-	–	5.0	–	1.0	–	1.0
pH Buffers						
H_2PO_4-	25.0	25.0	10.0	1.2	2.5	1.2
$HPO_4$2-	–	–	–	–	–	–
HCO_3-	–	–	5.0	25.0	5.0	25.0
HEPES	10.0	–	25.0	25.0	35.0	25.0
Impermeants						
Lactobionate-	–	100.0	100.0	–	30.0	–
Raffinose	–	30.0	–	–	–	–
Sucrose	–	–	20.0	–	15.0	–
Mannitol	30.0	–	20.0	–	25.0	–
Glucose	10.0	–	5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0
Gluconate	85.0	–	–	–	70.0	–
Ribose	0.5	–	–	–	–	–
Colloids						
HES	5%	5%	–	–	–	–
Dextran 40	–	–	6%	6%	6%	6%
Pharmacologics						
Adenosine	–	5.0	2.0	1.0	2.0	1.0
Glutathione	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0
Allopurinol	1.0	7.4	–	–	–	–
Dexamethasone*	–	8.0	–	–	–	–
Adenine	5.0	–	–	–	–	–
Insulin**	40.0	100.0	–	–	–	–
Osmolality (mOsm/Kg)	–	320	360	305	350	315#
pH (t°C)	–	7.4	7.6@	7.6@	7.6	7.5
[K+] [Cl-]	25	0	727	684	2100	732

BMPS: Belzer Machine Perfusion Solution (KPS1 from Organ Recovery Systems). **UW:** University of Wisconsin solution (ViaSpan from Barr Laboratories). **HTS/M:** HypoThermosol/Maintenance (BioLife Solutions). **HTS/P:** HypoThermosol-Purge (BioLife Solutions). **Unisol-I:** Unisol-Intracellular Base (Organ Recovery Systems). **Unisol-E:** Unisol-Extracellular base (Organ Recovery Systems). * = mg/l. ** = U/l. @ = at 25°C. $ = at 0°C

Based upon the principles that have emerged from isolated organ preservation studies, an attempt was made to incorporate the important characteristics in the formulation of the hypothermic blood substitute solutions, and components that might fulfill multiple roles were selected wherever possible. Conceptually, this strategy would maximize the intrinsic qualities of the solutions that, by design as universal tissue-preservation solutions, would inevitably be a hybrid of other hypothermic perfusates and storage-media.

The composition of the new hypothermic blood substitutes is listed in Table 2.3 and the rationale for their formulation is described in Chapter 8 and elsewhere.[28,67,190,221] These solutions have been shown to protect the brain, heart, and visceral organs during 3.5 hours of cardiac arrest and global ischemia in an asanguineous canine model during controlled profound hypothermia at less than 10°C.[28,66,67] More recently, this approach has been applied experimentally to animal models (porcine and canine) of hemorrhagic shock.[139,140,222–224,225] This novel approach to clinical suspended animation (or *corporoplegia,* meaning literally "body paralysis"[226]) has been explored for resuscitation after traumatic hemorrhagic shock in preclinical models relevant to both civilian and military applications.[225,139,222,223] In exsanguinating cardiac arrest (CA) conventional resuscitation attempts are futile and result in 100% mortality.

In prior research studies our collaborators at the University of Pittsburgh introduced the use of cold aortic saline flush at the start of CA to rapidly induce protective hypothermia during prolonged CA (120 min) for hemostasis followed by resuscitation.[222,223] Using a canine model, they showed that a saline flush to a brain temperature of 10°C resulted in normal survival after 90 minutes, but not consistently after CA = 120 minutes. However, an additional study in which Unisol plus the antioxidant Tempol was evaluated as a comparative "optimized flush" showed a markedly improved outcome in regards to physiology, neurology, and brain histology after 120 minutes CA compared with the saline flush.

In separate studies, our collaborators at the Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences have developed a porcine model of uncontrolled lethal hemorrhage in which a combination of the *Maintenance* and *Purge* solutions were used in a cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) technique to effect profound hypothermia and prolonged cardiac arrest (60 minutes) with resuscitation after surgical repair of the vascular deficit induced to effect exsanguinations.[139,140] In the most recent study, after rewarming and discontinuation of CPB, pigs were recovered and monitored for 6 weeks for neurological deficits, cognitive function (learning new skills), and organ dysfunction. Detailed examination of brains was performed at 6 weeks. All the normothermic control animals died, whereas 90% of the HBS animals survived and were neurologically intact, displayed normal learning and memory capability, and had no long-term organ dysfunction. Profound hypothermia markedly diminished total body metabolic activity as evidenced by significantly lower buildup of lactic acid during the periods of hypothermia and rewarming. Histologic examination of brains from the HBS survivors after 6 weeks revealed no ischemic damage in any of the animals, in marked contrast to the brains from control animals, which all showed diffuse ischemic damage.[225]

Successful application of this technique to man would provide a greater than threefold extension of the current limits of less than one hour for "safe" arrest without a high risk of neurological complications. This novel approach to bloodless surgery would significantly broaden the window of opportunity for surgical intervention in a variety of currently inoperable cases, principally in the areas of cardiovascular surgery, neurosurgery, and emergency trauma surgery. This provides further evidence for the protective properties of solutions such as Unisol used for global tissue preservation during whole-body perfusion in which the microvasculature of the heart and brain are especially vulnerable to ischemic injury.[28] Moreover, the application of solution design for clinical suspended animation under conditions of ultraprofound hypothermia places the HBS solutions HypoThermosol and Unisol in a unique category as universal preservation media for all tissues in the body. In contrast, all other preservation media, including the most widely used commercial solutions such as UW-ViaSpan are established for specific organs, or groups of organs (e.g., UW for abdominal organs and Celsior, Cardiosol, or Custodiol for thoracic organs).[128,204] Moreover, the demonstrated efficacy of these synthetic, acellular, hypothermic blood-substitute solutions justifies their consideration for multiple organ harvesting from cadaveric and heart-beating donors.[227]

2.6 CONCLUDING COMMENTS

Biopreservation employing hypothermic temperatures and appropriately designed solutions has become a critical component of organ transplant therapy during the era of transplantation science. Hypothermic storage of organs is based upon reductions in metabolic demands and oxygen requirements as temperature is reduced. Four levels of hypothermia have been defined in the medical literature as mild (32° to 35°C), moderate (27° to 32°C), deep or profound (10° to 27°C), and ultraprofound (<10°C).[228] Profound hypothermia has been the most common hypothermic temperature range applied for tissue and organ preservation. Initially, hypothermia is usually applied by flushing organs with cold solution either just prior to removal from the donor or immediately after removal from the donor. The solution is left in the organ vasculature and surrounds the organ during hypothermic storage and transportation to the recipient. In some cases, the solution bathes the exterior of the organ and is actively perfused through the organ's vasculature during hypothermic storage and transport. Traditionally, different solutions are used for flushing and *static* hypothermic storage of organs than are used for *perfusion* hypothermic storage of organs as outlined above and discussed in Chapter 9.

For cell and tissue preservation the history of preservation strategies, particularly with regard to appropriate solution design, is not so well established. There have been very few studies aimed at optimizing solution design specifically for isolated cells, tissues, or engineered tissue constructs. In some cases hypothermic organ preservation solutions have been used, but in general biologists have tended to stick with what they know and have used tissue culture media, even for low-temperature exposure. For the reasons expounded in this chapter this is inappropriate and it is preferable to focus on the formulation of new solutions designed to protect cells and tissues during hypothermic exposure. Similarly for cryopreservation the role of the vehicle solution for cryoprotective additives (CPAs) as a determinant of cell survival has often been overlooked, or trivialized, by assuming that regular tissue culture medium will suffice. There is now substantial evidence that this is not the case and a strategy to design new solutions that take account of the biology of cell survival in the cold clearly leads to improved methods of biopreservation.[136,181,182,187–190,195,196,229–234,9,226]

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

REFERENCES

1. Carrel, A., Transplantation in mass of the kidneys, *J. Exp. Med.*, 10, 98–143, 1908.
2. Carrel, A., Calcification of the arterial system in a cat with transplanted kidneys, *J. Exp. Med.*, 10, 276–282, 1908.
3. Carrel, A., On the permanent life of tissues outside of the organism, *J. Exp. Med.*, 15, 516–528, 1912.
4. Humphries, A.L. and Dennis, A.J., Historical developments in preservation, in *Basic Concepts of Organ Procurement, Perfusion, and Preservation for Transplantation*, Toledo-Pereyra, L.H., Ed., Academic Press, Inc., New York, 1–30, 1982.
5. Carrel, A., Perfusing media, in *The Culture of Organs*, Carrel, A. and Lindbergh, C.A., Eds., Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., New York, 1938, pp. 55–74.
6. Boyle, R., *New Experiments and Observations Touching Cold*, R. Davis, London, 1683.

7. Taylor, M.J., Sub-zero preservation and the prospect of long-term storage of multicellular tissues and organs, in *Transplantation Immunology: Clinical and Experimental*, Calne, R.Y., Ed., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York, Tokyo, 1984, pp. 360–390.
8. Fahy, G.M., DaMouta, C., Tsonev, L., Khirabadi, B.J., Mehl, P., and Meryman, H.T., Cellular injury associated with organ cryopreservation: chemical toxicity and cooling injury, in *Cell Biology of Trauma*, Lemasters, J.J. and Oliver, C., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1995, pp. 333–356.
9. Taylor, M.J., Song, Y.C., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Vitrification in tissue preservation: New developments, in *Life in the Frozen State*, Benson, E., Fuller, B.J., and Lane, N., Eds., CRC Press, London, 2004, pp. 603–641.
10. Hochachka, P.W., Defense strategies against hypoxia and hypothermia, *Science*, 231, 234–241, 1986.
11. Taylor, M.J., Hunt, C.J., and Madden, P.W., Hypothermic preservation of corneas in a hyperkalaemic solution (CPTES), I, Short-term storage in the absence of colloid osmotic agents, *Br. J. Opthalmol.*, 73, 781–791, 1989.
12. Galletti, G., Hypothermia and hibernation, in *Organ Preservation for Transplantation*, Karow, A.M., Jr. and Pegg, D., Eds., Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1984, pp. 101–111.
13. Nedergaard, J. and Cannon, B., Mammalian hibernation, *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B.*, 326, 669–686, 1990.
14. Chien, S. and Oeltgen, P.R., *Hibernation Induction Trigger for Organ Preservation*, R.G. Landes Co., Austin, 1993.
15. Taylor, M.J., Physico-chemical principles in low temperature biology, in *The Effects of Low Temperatures on Biological Systems*, Grout, B.W.W. and Morris, G.J., Eds., Edward Arnold, London, 1987, pp. 3–71.
16. Dick, D.A.T., Relation between water and solutes: Theory of osmotic pressure, in *Cell Water*, Bittar, E.E., Ed., Butterworths, London, 1966, pp. 15–43.
17. Guyton, A.C., Capillary dynamics, and exchange of fluid between the blood and interstitial fluid, in *Textbook of Medical Physiology,* 7th ed., W.B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, 1986, pp. 348–360.
18. Pegg, D.E., The biology of cell survival in vitro, in *Organ Preservation for Transplantation*, Karow, A.M., Jr. and Pegg, D.E., Eds., Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, Basel, 1981, pp. 31–52.
19. Pegg, D.E., Principles of tissue preservation, in *Progress in Transplantation*, Morris, P.J. and Tilney, N.L., Eds., Churchill Livingston, Edinburgh, 1985, pp. 69–105.
20. Fuller, B.J., Storage of cells and tissues at hypothermia for clinical use, in *Temperature and Animal Cells*, Bowler, K. and Fuller, B.J., Eds., Society for Exp. Biol., Cambridge, 1987, pp. 341–362.
21. Bengtosson, F. and Siesjo, B.K., Cell damage in cerebral ischemia: Physiological, biochemical, and structural aspects, in *Cerebral Ischemia and Resuscitation*, Schurr, A. and Rigor, B.M., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1990, pp. 215–234.
22. Qayumi, A.K. and Jamieson, W.R.E., Pathophysiology of reperfusion injury in organ transplantation, in *Pathophysiology of Reperfusion Injury*, Das, D.K., Ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1993, pp. 325–362.
23. Das, D.K., *Pathophysiology of Reperfusion Injury*, Das, D.K., Ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1993.
24. Liu, X., Engelman, R.M., Rousou, J.A., and Das, D.K., Myocardial reperfusion injury during adult cardiac surgery, in *Pathophysiology of Reperfusion Injury*, Das, D.K., Ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1993, pp. 263–293.
25. Kukreja, R.C. and Hess, M.L., Free Radicals: *Cardiovascular Dysfunction and Protection Strategies*, Kerkaporta, C., Ed., R.G. Landes Company, Austin, 1994.
26. Lemasters, J.J. and Oliver, C., *Cell Biology of Trauma,* Lemasters, J.J. and Oliver, C., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1995.
27. Siesjo, B.K., The role of calcium in cell death, in *Neurodegenerative Disorders: Mechanisms and Prospects for Therapy*, Price, D.L., Thoenen, H., and Aguayo, A.J., Eds., John Wiley & Sons Ltd., Chichester, 1991, pp. 35–59.
28. Taylor, M.J., Elrifai, A.M., and Bailes, J.E., Hypothermia in relation to the acceptable limits of ischemia for bloodless surgery, in *Advances in Low Temperature Biology*, Steponkus, P.L., Ed., JAI Press, London, UK, Greenwich,CT, 1996, pp. 1–64.
29. Siesjo, B.K., Cerebral circulation and metabolism, *J. Neurosurg.*, 60(5), 883–908, 1984.
30. Andrews, P.M. and Coffey, A.K., Factors that improve the preservation of nephron morphology during cold storage, *Lab. Invest.*, 46(1), 100–120, 1982.

31. Myears, D.W., Sobel, B.E., and Bergmann, S.R., Substrate use in ischemic and reperfused canine myocardium: Quantitative considerations, *Am. J. Physiol.*, 253(Heart Circ Physio 22), H107–H114, 1987.

32. Buckberg, G.D., A proposed "solution" to the cardioplegic controversy, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 77(6), 803–815, 1979.

33. Neely, J.R. and Grotyohann, L.W., Role of glycolytic products in damage to ischemic myocardium: Dissociation of adenosine triphosphate levels and recovery of function of reperfused ischemic hearts, *Circ. Res.*, 55, 816–824, 1984.

34. Silverman, N.A., Del Nido, P., Kruekenkamp, I., and Levitsky, S., Biologic rationale for formulation of antegrade cardioplegic solutions, *Cardiac Surg.: State Art Reviews*, 2(2), 181–218, 1988.

35. Opie, L.H., Effects of regional ischemia on metabolism of glucose and fatty acids. Relative rates of aerobic and anaerobic energy production during mycardial infarction and comparison with effects of anoxia, *Circ. Res.*, 38(5, Suppl. 1), I-52–I-74, 1976.

36. Gevers, W., Generation of protons by metabolic processes in heart cells, *J. Mol. & Cell. Cardiol.*, 9(11), 867–874, 1977.

37. Ricciutti, M.A., Lysosomes and myocardial cellular injury, *Am. J. Cardiol.*, 30, 498–502, 1972.

38. Weglicki, W.B., Owens, K., Ruth, R.C., and Sonnenblick, E.H., Activity of endogenous myocardial lipases during incubation at acid pH, *Cardiovasc. Res.*, 8, 237–242, 1974.

39. Leaf, A., Cell swelling, a factor in ischemic tissue injury, *Circulation*, 48(3), 455–458, 1973.

40. Tani, M. and Neely, J.R., Role of intracellular Na^+ in Ca^{2+} overload and depressed recovery of ventricular function of reperfused ischemic rat hearts: Possible involvement of H^+-Na^+ and Na^+-Ca^{2+} exchange, *Circ. Res.*, 65, 1045–1056, 1989.

41. Renlund, D.G., Gerstenblith, G., Lakatta, E.G., Jacobus, W.E., Kallman, C.H., and Weisfeldt, M.L., Perfusate sodium during ischemia modifies postischemic functional and metabolic recovery in the rabbit heart, *J. Mol. & Cell. Cardiol.*, 16, 795–801, 1984.

42. Krause, S. and Hess, M.L., Characterization of cardiac sarcoplasmic reticulum dysfunction during short-term, normothermic, global ischemia, *Circ. Res.*, 55, 176–184, 1984.

43. Prasad, M.R., Popescu, L.M., Moraru, I.I., Liu, X., Maity, S., Engelman, R.M., and Das, D.K., Role of phospholipases A_2 and C in myocardial ischemic reperfusion injury, *Am. J. Physiol.*, 260(Heart Circ Physio 29), H877–H883, 1991.

44. de Jong, J.W., Cardioplegia and calcium antagonists: A review, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 42, 593–598, 1986.

45. Schwertz, D.W., Halverson, J., Isaacson, T., Feinberg, H., and Palmer, J.W., Alterations in phospholipid metabolism in the globally ischemic rat heart: Emphasis on phosphoinositide specific phopholipase, *J. Mol. & Cell. Cardiol.*, 19(7), 685–697, 1987.

46. White, B.C., Wiegenstein, J.G., and Winegar, C.D., Brain ischemic anoxia: Mechanisms of injury, *JAMA*, 251(12), 1586–1590, 1984.

47. McCord, J.M., Oxygen-derived free radicals in postischemic tissue injury, *New Eng. J. Med.*, 312(3), 159–163, 1985.

48. Jennings, R.B. and Ganote, C.E., Mitochondrial structure and function in acute myocardial ischemic injury, *Circ. Res.*, 38(5, Supp. I), I-80–I-91, 1976.

49. Jennings, R.B. and Ganote, C.E., Structural changes in myocardium during acute ischemia, *Circ. Res.*, 34, 35 (Suppl. III), 156–172, 1974.

50. Sheehan, H.L. and Davis, J.C., Renal ischaemia with failed reflow, *J. Pathol. & Bacteriol.*, 78, 105–120, 1959.

51. Weed, R.I., La Celle, P.L., and Merrill, E.W., Metabolic dependence of red cell deformability, *J. Clinical Invest.*, 48, 795–809, 1969.

52. Pegg, D.E., Organ preservation, in *The Surgical Clinics of North America,* Roberts, A.J. and Painvin, G.A., Eds., W.B. Saunders Company, Philadelphia, London, 1986, pp. 617–632.

53. Hallenbeck, J.M. and Dutka, A.J., Background review and current concepts of reperfusion injury, *Arch. Neurology*, 47, 1245–1254, 1990.

54. Grace, P.A., Ischaemia: Reperfusion injury, *Br. J. Surg.*, 81, 637–647, 1994.

55. Smith, D.S., Free radical scavengers and protection against ischemic brain damage, in *Cerebral Ischemia and Resuscitation,* Schurr, A. and Rigor, B.M., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1990, pp. 373–388.

56. Fuhram, G.J. and Fuhram, F.A., Oxygen consumption of animals and tissues as a function of temperature, *J. Gen. Physiol.*, 42, 215, 1959.

57. Bering, E.A., Effects of profound hypothermia and circulatory arrest on cerebral oxygen metabolism and cerebrospinal fluid electrolyte composition in dogs, *J. Neurosurg.*, 39, 199–205, 1974.

58. Zimmermann, F.A., Dietz, H.G., Kilian, K.N., Kosterhon, J., and Scholz, R., Effects of hypothermia on anabolic and catabolic processes and on oxygen consumption in perfused rat livers, in *Organ Preservation: Basic and Applied Aspects,* Pegg, D.E., Jacobsen, I.A., and Halasz, N.A., Eds., MTP Press Limited, Lancaster, 1982, pp.121–126.

59. Southard, J.H., van der Laan, N. Chr., Lutz, M., Pavlock, G.S., Belzer, J.P., and Belzer, F.O., Comparison of the effect of temperature on kidney cortex mitochondria from rabbit, dog, pig, and human: Arrhenius plots of ADP-stimulated respiration, *Cryobiology*, 20, 395–400, 1983.

60. van't Hoff, *Etudes sur la Dynamique Chimique*, Muller, Amsterdam, 1884.

61. Hearse, D.J., Braimbridge, M.V., and Jynge, P., *Protection of the Ischemic Myocardium: Cardioplegia*, Hearse, D.J., Braimbridge, M.V., and Jynge, P., Eds., Raven Press, New York, 1981.

62. Bogardus, G.M. and Schlosser, R.J., The influence of temperature upon renal ischemic damage, *Surgery*, 39, 970, 1956.

63. Birkeland, S., Vogt, A., Drog, J., and Semb, C., Renal circulatoryocclusion and local cooling, *J. Appl.Physiol.*, 14, 227, 1959.

64. Calne, R.Y., Pegg, D.E., Pryse-Davies, J., and Leigh-Brown, F., Renal preservation by ice cooling, *Br. Med. J.*, ii, 651, 1963.

65. Ikonomovic, M., Kelly, K.M., Hentosz, T.M., Shih, S.R., Armstrong, D.M., and Taylor, M.J., Ultra-profound cerebral hypothermia and blood substitution with an acellular synthetic solution maintains neuronal viability in rat hippocampus, *Cryo-Lett.*, 22, 19–26, 2001.

66. Taylor, M.J., Bailes, J.E., Elrifai, A.M., Shih, T.S., Teeple, E., Leavitt, M.L., Baust, J.G., and Maroon, J.C., Asanguineous whole body perfusion with a new intracellular acellular solution and ultraprofound hypothermia provides cellular protection during 3.5 hours of cardiac arrest in a canine model, *ASAIO J.*, 40(3), M351–M358, 1994.

67. Taylor, M.J., Bailes, J.E., Elrifai, A.M., Shih, S.-R., Teeple, E., Leavitt, M.L., Baust, J.G., and Maroon, J.C., A new solution for life without blood: Asanguineous low-flow perfusion of a whole-body perfusate during 3 hours of cardiac arrest and profound hypothermia, *Circulation*, 91(2), 431–444, 1995.

68. Wilson, J.M. and McMurdo, A.C., Chilling injury in plants, in *Effects of Low Temperatures on Biological Membranes,* Morris, G.J. and Clarke, A., Eds., Academic Press, London, 1981, pp.146–172.

69. Lyons, J.M. and Raison, J.K., A temperature-induced transition in mitochondrial oxidation: Contrast between cold and warm-blooded animals, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.*, 37, 405–411, 1970.

70. Raison, J.K., The influence of temperature-induced phase changes on the kinetics of respiratory and other membrane-associated enzyme systems, *Bioenergetics*, 4, 285–309, 1973.

71. Rule, G.S., Frim, J., Thompson, J.E., Lepock, J.R., and Kruuv, J., The effect of membrane lipid perturbers on survival of mammalian cells to cold, *Cryobiology*, 15, 408–414, 1978.

72. Kruuv, J., Glofcheski, D.J., and Lepock, J.R., Evidence for two modes of hypothermia damage in five cell lines, *Cryobiology*, 32, 182–190, 1995.

73. Kruuv, J. and Lepock, J.R., Factors influencing survival of mammalian cells exposed to hypothermia: VI effects of prehypothermic hypoxia followed by aerobic or hypoxic storage at various hypothermic temperatures, *Cryobiology*, 32, 191–198, 1995.

74. Balderman, S.C., The most appropriate temperature for myocardial preservation, in *Cardiothorac. Surg.,* Roberts, A.J., Ed., Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1987, pp. 303–320.

75. Tyers, G.F.O., Williams, G.H., Hughes Jr., H.C., and Waldhausen, J.A., Optimal myocardial hypothermia at 10–15 C, *Surg. Forum*, 27(62), 233–234, 1976.

76. Shragge, B.W., Digerness, S.B., and Blackstone, E.H., Complete recovery of myocardial function following cold exposure, *Circulation*, 56 (Suppl. II), II-97, 1978.

77. Follette, D.M., Mulder, D.G., Maloney Jr., J.V., and Buckberg, G.D., Advantages of blood cardioplegia over continuous coronary perfusion or intermittent ischemia, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 76(5), 604–619, 1978.

78. Digerness, S.B., Vanini, V., and Wideman, F.E., *In vitro* comparison of oxygen availability from asanguineous and sanguineous cardioplegia media, *Circulation*, 64 (Suppl. II), II-80–II-83, 1981.

79. Takamoto, S., Levine, F.H., LaRaia, P.J., Adziek, N.S., Fallon, J.T., Austen, W.G., and Buckley, M.J., Comparison of single-dose and multiple-dose crystalloid and blood potassium cardioplegia during prolonged hypothermic aortic occlusion, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 79, 19–28, 1980.

80. Catinella, F.P., Cunningham Jr., J.N., Adams, P.X., Snively, S.L., Gross, R.I., and Spencer, F.C., Myocardial protection with cold blood potassium cardioplegia during prolonged aortic cross-clamping, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 33(3), 228–233, 1982.

81. Lockett, C.J., Fuller, B.J., Busza, A.L., and Proctor, E., Hypothermic perfusion preservation of liver: The role of phosphate in stimulating ATP synthesis studied by 31P NMR, *Transpl. Int.*, 8, 440–445, 1995.

82. So, P.W. and Fuller, B.J., A comparison of the metabolic effects of continuous hypothermic perfusion or oxygenated persufflation during hypothermic storage of rat liver, *Cryobiology*, 43(3), 238–247, 2001.

83. Kim, J.S., Boudjema, K., D'Alessandro, A., and Southard, J.H., Machine perfusion of the liver: Maintenance of mitochondrial function after 48-hour preservation, *Transpl. Proc.*, 29, 3452–3454, 1997.

84. Lanir, A., Clouse, M.E., and Lee, R.G., Liver preservation for transplant. Evaluation of hepatic energy metabolism by 31P NMR, *Transplantation*, 43(6), 786–790, 1987.

85. Pienaar, B.H., Lindell, S.L., Van Gulik, T., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Seventy-two-hour preservation of the canine liver by machine perfusion, *Transplantation*, 49(2), 258–260, 1990.

86. Dutkowski, P., Odermatt, B., Heinrich, T., Schonfeld, S., Watzka, M., Winkelbach, V., Krysiak, M., and Junginger, T., Hypothermic oscillating liver perfusion stimulates ATP synthesis prior to transplantation, *J. Surg. Res.*, 80(2), 365–372, 1998.

87. Fuller, B.J., Gower, J.D., and Green, C.J., Free radical damage and organ preservation: Fact or fiction? A review of the interrelationship between oxidative stress and physiological ion disbalance, *Cryobiology*, 25(5), 377–393, 1988.

88. Pegg, D.E., Wusteman, M.C., and Foreman, J., Metabolism of normal and ischemically injured rabbit kidneys during perfusion for 48 hours at 10 C, *Transplantation*, 32(5), 437–443, 1981.

89. Halliwell, B., Free radicals and human disease: Trick or treat? in *Oxygen Radicals and the Disease Process,* Thomas, C.E. and Kalyanaraman, B., Eds., Harwood Academic Publishers, Amsterdam, 1997, pp. 1–14.

90. Minor, T., Vollmar, B., Klauke, H., Isselhard, W., and Menger, M.D., Differential effect of preservative solutions (UW vs HTK) on mitochondrial redox status and energy metabolism during liver ischemia with oxygen persufflation, *Langenbecks Arch. Chir. Suppl. Kongressbd.*, 15 (Suppl I), 377–381, 1998.

91. van der, Plaats A., 't Hart, N.A., Verkerke, G.J., Leuvenink, H.G., Ploeg, R.J., and Rakhorst, G., Hypothermic machine preservation in liver transplantation revisited: Concepts and criteria in the new millennium, *Ann. Biomed. Eng.*, 32(4), 623–631, 2004.

92. Lauschke, H., Olschewski, P., Tolba, R., Schulz, S., and Minor, T., Oxygenated machine perfusion mitigates surface antigen expression and improves preservation of predamaged donor livers, *Cryobiology*, 46(1), 53–60, 2003.

93. Lee, C.Y., Jain, S., Duncan, H.M., Zhang, J.X., Jones Jr., J.W., Southard, J.H., and Clemens, M.G., Survival transplantation of preserved non-heart-beating donor rat livers: Preservation by hypothermic machine perfusion, *Transplantation*, 76(10), 1432–1436, 2003.

94. Duncan, H.M., Jain, S., Zhang, J.X., Jones, J.W., Southard, J.H., Clemens, M.G., and Lee, C.Y., Recovery of energy stores and mitochondrial function of non-heart-beating donor rat livers preserved by hypothermic machine perfusion, *Transpl. Int.*, 2003 [in press].

95. Lee, C.Y., Duncan, H.M., Jain, S., Jones, J., Zhang, J.X., Jones, J.W., and Clemens, M.G., Recovery of energy stores of non-heart-beating donor livers following preservation by hypothermic machine perfusion, proceedings of the 2003 International Mechanical Engineering Congress and Exposition, Washington, D.C., 2003.

96. Stubenitsky, B.M., Ametani, M., Danielewicz, R., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Regeneration of ATP in kidney slices after warm ischemia and hypothermic preservation, *Transpl. Int.*, 8(4), 293–297, 1995.

97. Pegg, D.E., The future of organ preservation, *Transpl. Proc.*, 16(1), 147–152, 1984.

98. Busza, A.L., Fuller, B.J., Proctor, E., and Gadian, D.G., The time course of changes in liver phosphorus metabolites during hypothermic preservation measured by 31 phosphorus nuclear magnetic resonance, *Cryo-Lett.*, 9(3), 202–211, 1988.

 99. Fuller, B.J., Busza, A.L., and Proctor, E., Possible resuscitation of liver function by reperfusion in vitro after prolonged (24 hours) cold preservation: A ^{31}P NMR study, *Transplantation*, 50, 511–513, 1990.

100. Huang, J.S., Downes, G.L., Childress, G.L., Felts, J.M., and Belzer, F.O., Oxidation of ^{14}C-labelled substrates by dog kidney cortex at 10 and 38°C, *Cryobiology*, 11(5), 387–394, 1974.

101. Stringham, J.C., Southard, J.H., Hegge, J., Triemstra, L., Fields, B.L., and Belzer, F.O., Limitations of heart preservation by cold storage, *Transplantation*, 53(2), 287–294, 1992.

102. Feinberg, H., Energetics and mitochondria, in *Organ Preservation: Basic and Applied Concepts,* Pegg, D.E., Jacobsen, I.A., and Halasz, N.A., Eds., MTP Press Limited, Lancaster, 1982, pp. 3–15.

103. See, Y.P., Weisel, R.D., Mickle, D.A.G., Teoh, K.H., Wilson, G.J., Tumiati, L.C., Mohabeer, M.K., Madonik, M.M., Axford-Gatley, R.A., and Salter, D.R., Prolonged hypothermic cardiac storage for transplantation, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 104(3), 817–824, 1992.

104. Belzer, F.O. and Southard, J.H., Principles of solid-organ preservation by cold storage, *Transplantation*, 45(4), 673–676, 1988.

105. Southard, J.H., van Gulik, T.M., Ametani, M.S., Vreugdenhil, P.K., Lindell, S.L., Pienaar, B.L., and Belzer, F.O., Important components of the UW solution, *Transplantation*, 49(2), 251–257, 1990.

106. Ellory, J.C. and Willis, J.S., Phasing out the sodium pump, in *Effects of Low Temperatures on Biological Membranes,* Morris, G.J. and Clarke, A., Eds., Academic Press, London, 1981, pp. 107–120.

107. Berthon, B., Claret, M., Mazet, J.L., and Poggioli, J., Volume- and temperature-dependent permeabilities in isolated rat liver cells, *J. Physiol.*, 305, 267–277, 1980.

108. Elford, B.C. and Solomon, A.K., Temperature dependence of cation permeability of dog red cells, *Nature*, 248, 522–524, 1974.

109. Maher, J. and Hachinski, V., Hypothermia as a potential treatment for cerebral ischemia, *Cerebrovascular and Brain Metabolism Reviews*, 5(4), 277–300, 1993.

110. Maier, C.M. and Steinberg, G.K., *Hypothermia and Cerebral Ischemia: Mechanisms and Clinical Applications*, Maier, C.M. and Steinberg, G.K., Eds., Humana Press, Totowa, NJ, 2004.

111. Marrin, C.A.S. and Nugent, W.C., Myocardial preservation, in *Cardiopulmonary Bypass: Physiology, Related Complications, and Pharmacology,* Casthely, P.A. and Bregman, D., Eds., Futura Publishing Co., Inc., Mt. Kisco, 1991, pp. 141–177.

112. Chan, L., Bore, P., and Ross, B.D., Possible new approaches to organ preservation, in *Renal Preservation*, Margberger, M. and Dreikorn, K., Eds., Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore, 1983, pp. 323–337.

113. Fuller, B.J., Busza, A.L., Proctor, E., Myles, M., Gadian, D.G., and Hobbs, K.E.F., Control of pH during hypothermic liver storage, *Transplantation*, 45(1), 239–241, 1988.

114. Swan, H., The hydroxyl-hydrogen ion concentration ratio during hypothermia, *Surg., Gynecol. & Obstet.*, 155, 897–912, 1982.

115. Somero, G.N., Protons, osmolytes, and fitness of internal milieu for protein function, *Am. J. Physiol.*, 251, R197–R213, 1986.

116. Hickey, P.R. and Andersen, N.P., Deep hypothermic circulatory arrest: A review of pathophysiology and clinical experience as a basis for anesthetic management, *J. Cardiothorac. Anesthesia*, 1(2), 137–155, 1987.

117. Swain, J.A., Hypothermia and blood pH: A review, *Arch. Intern. Med.*, 148, 1643–1646, 1988.

118. Rosenthal, T.B., The effect of temperature on the pH of blood and plasma in vitro, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 173, 25–30, 1948.

119. Rahn, H. and Prakash, O., Eds., *Acid-Base Regulation and Body Temperature*, Martinus Nijhoff Publishers, Boston, 1985.

120. White, F.N., A comparative physiological approach to hypothermia, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 82(6), 821–831, 1981.

121. Hering, J.P., Schroder, T., Singer, D., and Hellige, G., Influence of pH management on hemodynamics and metabolism in moderate hypothermia, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 104(5), 1388–1395, 1992.

122. Halasz, N.A., Collins, G.M., and White, F.M., The right pH for preservation, in *Organ Preservation II,* Pegg, D.E. and Jacobsen, I.A., Eds., Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh, 1979, pp. 259–266.

123. Swan, H., The importance of acid-base management for cardiac and cerebral preservation during open heart operations. *Surg., Gynecol. & Obstet.*, 158, 391–414, 1984.
124. Vander Woude, J.C., Christlieb, I.Y., Sicard, G.A., and Clark, R.E., Imidazole-buffered cardioplegic solution, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 90(2), 225–234, 1985.
125. Henriksen, L., Brain luxury perfusion during cardiopulmonary bypass in humans: A study of the cerebral blood flow response to changes in CO_2, O_2 and blood pressure, *J. Cereb. Blood Flow & Metab.*, 6, 366–378, 1986.
126. Becker, H., Vinten-Johansen, J., Buckberg, G.D., Robertson, J.M., Leaf, J.D., Lazar, H.L., and Manganaro, A.J., Myocardial damage caused by keeping pH 7.40 during systemic deep hypothermia, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 82(6), 810–820, 1981.
127. Good, N.E., Winget, G.D., Winter, W., Connolly, T.N., Izawa, S., and Singh, R.M.M., Hydrogen ion buffers for biological research, *Biochemistry*, 5(2), 467–477, 1966.
128. Baicu, S. and Taylor, M.J., Acid-base buffering in organ preservation solutions as a function of temperature: New parameters for comparing buffer capacity and efficiency, *Cryobiology*, 45, 33–48, 2002.
129. Ferguson, W.J., Braunschweiger, K.I., Braunschweiger, W.R., Smith, J.R., McCormick, J.J., Wasmann, C.C., Jarvis, N.P., Bell, D.H., and Good, N.E., Hydrogen ion buffers for biological research, *Anal. Biochem.*, 104, 300–310, 1980.
130. Taylor, M.J. and Pignat, Y., Practical acid dissociation constants, temperature coefficients and buffer capacities for some biological buffers in solutions containing dimethyl sulfoxide between 25 and −12°C, *Cryobiology*, 19, 99–109, 1982.
131. Good, N.E. and Izawa, S., Hydrogen ion buffers, *Methods Enzymol.*, 24 (Part B), 53–68, 1968.
132. Churchill, T.A. and Kneteman, N.M. Investigation of a primary requirement of organ preservation solutions: Supplemental buffering agents improve hepatic energy production during cold storage, *Transplantation*, 65(4), 551–559, 1998.
133. Swan, H., Cowan, M., Tornabene, M., and Owens, L., Aminosulfonic acid buffer preserves myocardium during prolonged ischemia, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 57, 1590–1596, 1994.
134. Garlick, P.B., Radda, G.K., and Seeley, P.J., Studies of acidosis in the ischaemic heart by phosphorus nuclear magnetic resonance, *Biochem. J.*, 184, 547–554, 1979.
135. Taylor, M.J., The role of pH* and buffer capacity in the recovery of function of smooth muscle cooled to −13°C in unfrozen media, *Cryobiology*, 19, 585–601, 1982.
136. Taylor, M.J., Hunt, C.J., and Madden, P.W., Hypothermic preservation of corneas in a hyperkalaemic solution (CPTES): II. Extended storage in the presence of chondroitin sulphate, *Br. J. Ophthalmol.*, 73, 792–802, 1989.
137. Taylor, M.J. and Hunt, C.J., A new preservation solution for storage of corneas at low temperatures, *Current Eye Res.*, 4(9), 963–973, 1985.
138. Swan, H., New synthetic buffer compositions need evaluation, *J. Am. Coll. Surgeons*, 179, 118–126, 1994.
139. Alam, H.B., Bowyer, M.W., Koustova, E., Gushchin, V., Anderson, D., Stanton, K., Kreishman, P., Cryer, C.M.T., Hancock, T., and Rhee, P., Learning and memory is preserved after induced asanguineous hyperkalemic hypothermic arrest in a swine model of traumatic exsanguination, *Surgery*, 132(2), 278–288, 2002.
140. Rhee, P., Talon, E., Eifert, S., Anderson, D., Stanton, K., Koustova, E., Ling, G., Burris, D., Kaufmann, C., Mongan, P., Rich, N.M., and Taylor, M.J., Induced hypothermia during emergency department thoractomy: An animal model, *J. Trauma*, 48, 439–447, 2000.
141. Beattie, G.M., Crowe, J.H., Lopez, A.D., Cirulli, V., Ricordi, C., and Hayek, A., Trehalose: A cryoprotectant that enhances recovery and preserves function of human pancreatic islets after long-term storage, *Diabetes*, 46, 519–523, 1997.
142. Lareau, S., Keon, W.J., Wallace, J.C., Whitehead, K., Mainwood, G.W., and Deslauriers, R., Cardiac hypothermia: ^{31}P and ^1H NMR spectroscopic studies of the effect of buffer on preservation of human heart atrial appendages, *Can. J. Physiol. Pharmacol.*, 69, 1726–1732, 1991.
143. Fuller, B.J., Gower, J.D., and Green, C.J., Free radical damage and organ preservation: Fact or fiction? *Cryobiology*, 25, 377–393, 1988.
144. Green, C.J., Healing, G., Simpkin, S., Fuller, B.J., and Lunec, J., Reduced susceptibility to lipid peroxidation in cold ischemic rabbit kidneys after addition of desferrioxamine, mannitol or uric acid to the flush solution, *Cryobiology*, 23(4), 358–365, 1986.

145. Thurman, R.G., Gao, W., Connor, H.D., Bachmann, S., Currin, R.T., Mason, R.P., and Lemasters, J.J., Hypoxia, free radicals and reperfusion injury following cold storage and reperfusion of livers for transplantation, in *Cell Biology of Trauma,* Lemasters, J.J. and Oliver, C., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1995, pp. 299–331.
146. Gao, W., Takei, Y., Marzi, I., Lindert, K.A., Caldwell-Kenkel, J.C., Currin, R.T., Tanaka, Y., Lemasters, J.J., and Thurman, R.G., Carolina rinse solution: A new strategy to increase survival time after orthotopic liver transplantation in the rat, *Transplantation*, 52(3), 417–424, 1991.
147. McAnulty, J.F. and Huang, X.Q., The effect of simple hypothermic preservation with trolox and ascorbate on lipid peroxidation in dog kidneys, *Cryobiology*, 33(2), 217–225, 1996.
148. Baker, C.J., Longoria, J., Gade, P.V., Starnes, V.A., and Barr, M.L., Addition of a water-soluble alpha-tocopherol analogue to University of Wisconsin solution improves endothelial viability and decreases lung reperfusion injury, *J. Surg. Res.*, 86(1), 145–149, 1999.
149. Yagmurdur, M.C., Ozdemir, A., Ozenc, A., and Kilinc, K., The effects of alpha-tocopherol and verapamil on mucosal functions after gut ischemia/reperfusion, *Turk. J. Gastroenterol.*, 14(1), 26–32, 2003.
150. Rauen, U. and De Groot, H., New insights into the cellular and molecular mechanisms of cold storage injury, *J. Invest. Med.*, 52(5), 299–309, 2004.
151. Brandts, J.F., Fu, J., and Nordin, J.H., The low temperature denaturation of chymotrypsinogen in aqueous solutions and in frozen aqueous solutions, in *The Frozen Cell,* Wolstenholme, G.E.W. and O'Connor, M., Eds., Churchill, London, 1970, pp. 189–212.
152. Dixon, W.L., Franks, F., and Rees, T., Cold-lability of phosphofructokinase from potato tubers, *Phytochemistry*, 20, 969–972, 1981.
153. Fuller, B.J., The effects of cooling on mammalian cells, in *Clinical Applications of Cryobiology,* Fuller, B.J. and Grout, B.W.W., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1991, pp. 1–21.
154. Quinn, P.J., A lipid-phase separation model of low-temperature damage to biological membranes, *Cryobiology*, 22(2), 128–146, 1985.
155. Hochli, M. and Hackenbrock, C., Fluidity in mitochondrial membranes: Thermotropic lateral translation motion of intramembrane particles, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 73, 1636–1640, 1976.
156. Fuller, B.J. and Attenburrow, V.D., Experimental studies on hypothermic storage of liver in rat, *Les Colloques de l' INSERM,* 62, 393–398, 1976.
157. Hazel, J.R., The role of cell membranes in acute chilling injury, *Cryobiology* 32(6), 552, 1995.
158. Kukreja, R.C., Heat shock proteins and myocardial protection, in *Free Radicals, Cardiovascular Dysfunction and Protection Strategies,* Kukreja, R.C. and Hess, M.L., Eds., R.G. Landes Company, Austin, 1994, pp. 77–108.
159. Lindquist, S. and Craig, E.A., The heat shock proteins, *Annu. Rev. Genet.*, 22, 631–677, 1988.
160. Ellis, J., Proteins as molecular chaperones, *Nature*, 328, 378–379, 1987.
161. Goldstein, J., Politt, N.S., and Inouye, M., Major cold shock protein of E.coli, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 87, 283, 1990.
162. Kondo, K., Kowalski, L.R.Z., and Inouye, M., Cold shock induction of yeast NSR1 protein and its role in pre-rRna processing, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 267(23), 16529–16265, 1992.
163. Holland, D.B., Roberts, S.G., Wood, E.J., and Cunliffe, W.J., Cold shock induces the synthesis of stress proteins in human keratinocytes, *J. Invest. Dermatol.*, 101, 196–199, 1993.
164. Laios, E., Rebeyka, I.M., and Prody, C.A., Characterization of cold-induced heat shock protein expression in neonatal rat cardiomyocytes, *Mol. Cell. Biochem.*, 173(1–2), 153–159, 1997.
165. Eberl, T., Amberger, A., Herold, M., Hengster, P., Steurer, W., Hochleitner, B.W., Gnaiger, E., and Margreiter, R., Expression of stress proteins, adhesion molecules, and interleukin-8 in endothelial cells after preservation and reoxygenation, *Cryobiology*, 38, 106–118, 1999.
166. Cullen, K.E. and Sarge, K.D., Characterization of hypothermia-induced cellular stress response in mouse tissues, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 272(3), 1742–1746, 1997.
167. Russotti, G., Brieva, T.A., Toner, M, and Yarmush, M.L., Induction of tolerance to hypothermia by previous heat shock using human fibroblasts in culture, *Cryobiology*, 33, 567–580, 1996.
168. Perdrizet, G.A., *Heat Shock and Organ Preservation: Models of Stress Conditioning*, R.G. Landes Co., Georgetown, TX, 1997.

169. Gowda, A., Yang, C., Asimakis, G.K., Rastegar, S., and Motamedi, M., Heat shock improves recovery and provides protection against global ischemia after hypothermic storage, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 66(6), 1991–1997, 1998.

170. Brinkley, B. and Cartwright, J., Cold labile and cold stable microtubules in the mitotic spindle of mammalian cells, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 253, 428, 1975.

171. Stefanovich, P., Ezzell, R.M., Sheehan, S.J., Tompkins, R.G., Yarmush, M.L., and Toner, M., Effects of hypothermia on the function, membrane integrity, and cytoskeletal structure of hepatocytes, *Cryobiology*, 32, 389–403, 1995.

172. Sathanathan, H., Trounson, A., Freeman, F., and Brady, T., The effects of cooling human oocytes, *Hum. Reprod.*, 3, 968, 1988.

173. Evans, R.B. and Cidlowski, J.A., Apoptosis: Cellular signaling and molecular mechanisms, in *Cell Biology of Trauma,* Lemasters, J.J. and Oliver, C., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1995, pp. 25–47.

174. Leach, A.P., Apoptosis: molecular mechanism for physiological cell death, *Clin, Lab, Sci,*, 11, (6):346–349. 1998.

175. Baust, J.M., Molecular mechanisms of cellular demise associated with cryopreservation failure, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 1(1), 17–32, 2002.

176. Nagle, W.A., Soloff, B.L., Moss, A.J., Jr. and Henle, K.J., Cultured Chinese hamster cells undergo apoptosis after exposure to cold but nonfreezing temperatures, *Cryobiology*, 27(4), 439–451, 1990.

177. Tatsutani, K., Joye, J.D., Virmani, R., and Taylor, M.J., *In vitro* evaluation of vascular endothelial and smooth muscle cell survival and apoptosis in response to hypothermia and freezing, *Cryo-Letters*, 26(1), 55–64, 2005.

178. Rauen, U., Polzar, B., Stephan, H., Mannherz, H.G., and De Groot, H., Cold-induced apoptosis in cultured hepatocytes and liver endothelial cells: Mediation by reactive oxygen species, *FASEB J.*, 13(1), 155–168, 1999.

179. Hollister, W.R., Mathew, A.J., Baust, J.G., and Van Buskirk, R.G., The effects of freezing on cell viability and mechanisms of cell death in an *in vitro* human prostate cancer cell line, *Mol. Urol.*, 2(1), 13–18, 1998.

180. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., Genetic activation of the apoptotic caspase cascade following cryogenic storage, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 1(1), 63–80, 2002.

181. Baust, J.M., Vogel, M.J., van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., A molecular basis of cryopreservation failure and its modulation to improve cell survival, *Cell Transpl.*, 10(7), 561–571, 2001.

182. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., Cryopreservation of an engineered skin equivalent: The apoptosis paradigm, *Advances in Heat and Mass Transfer in Biotechnology*, HTD-Vol. 363/BED-Vol. 44, 71–76, 1999.

183. Yagi, T., Hardin, J.A., Valenzuela, Y.M., Miyoshi, H., Gores, G.J., and Nygerg, S.L., Caspase inhibition reduces apoptotic death of cryopreserved porcine hepatocytes, *Hepatology*, 33, 1432–1440, 2001.

184. Mathew, A.J., Hollister, W.R., Addona, T., Baust, J.G., and Van Buskirk, R.G., Vitamin E and EDTA improve the efficacy of hypothermosol-implication of apoptosis, *In Vitro Mol. Toxicol.*, 12, 163–172, 1999.

185. Schmidt-Mende, J., Hellstrom-Lindberg, E., Joseph, B., and Zhivotovsky, B., Freezing induces artificial cleavage of apoptosis-related proteins in human bone marrow cells, *J. Immunol. Meth.*, 245, 91–94, 2000.

186. Vogel, M.J., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., Apoptotic caspases are activated following cryopreservation, *Cryobiology*, 41, 390, 2000.

187. Taylor, M.J., Solutions for tissue preservation and bloodless surgery and methods using same. Application 092456. Patent 5,405,742, Cryomedical Sciences, Inc., 1995.

188. Taylor, M.J., Solutions for tissue preservation and bloodless surgery and methods using same, Application 328,020, Patent 5,514,536, Cryomedical Sciences, Inc., 1996.

189. Taylor, M.J., Song, Y.C., Chen, Z.Z., Lee, F.S., and Brockbank, K.G., Interactive determinants for stabilization of autologous vascular grafts during surgery, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 2(3), 198–208, 2004.

190. Taylor, M.J., System for organ and tissue preservation and hypothermic blood substitution, Application 09/628, 311, U.S. Patent 6,492,103, Organ Recovery Systems, Inc., 2002.

191. Martin, H., Bournique, B., Sarsat, J.P., Albaladego, V., and Lerche-Langrand, C., Cryopreserved rat liver slices: A critical evaluation of cell viability, histological integrity, and drug-metabolizing enzymes, *Cryobiology*, 41, 135–144, 2000.

192. Baust, J.M., van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Cell Viability improves following inhibition of cryopreservation-induced apoptosis, *In Vitro Cell & Devel. Biol.*, 36(4), 262–270, 2000.
193. Fu, T., Guo, D., Huang, X., O'Gorman, M.R., Huang, L., Crawford, S.E., and Soriano, H.E., Apoptosis occurs in isolated and banked primary mouse hepatocytes, *Cell Transpl.*, 10, 59–66, 2001.
194. Lakey, J.R.T., Rajotte, R.V., Fedorow, C.A., and Taylor, M.J., Islet cryopreservation using intracellular preservation solutions, *Cell Transpl.*, 10, 583–589, 2001.
195. Taylor, M.J., Campbell, L.H., Rutledge, R.N., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Comparison of unisol with eurocollins solution as a vehicle solution for cryoprotectants, *Transpl. Proc.*, 33, 677–679, 2001.
196. Taylor, M.J., Song, Y.C., Chen, Z.Z., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Time, temperature, and solution formulation as interactive determinants for optimized hypothermic storage of vascular grafts, *Cryobiology,* 43(4), 358, 2001.
197. Potera, C., Biolife solutions offers preservation platforms: A molecular approach to cell preservation, *Genet. Eng. News*, 22(5), 2002.
198. Hall, A.G., The role of glutathione in the regulation of apoptosis, *Eur. J. Clin. Invest.*, 29, 238–245, 1999.
199. Wu, G., Tomei, L.D., Bathurst, I.C., Zhang, F., Hong, C.B., Issel, C.J., Columbano, A., Salley, R.K., and Chien, S., Antiapoptotic compound to enhance hypothermic liver preservation, *Transplantation*, 63(6), 803–809, 1997.
200. Kinloch, R.A., Treherne, J.M., Furness, L.M., and Hajimohamadreza, I., The pharmacology of apoptosis, *Trends Pharmacol. Sci.*, 20(1), 35–42, 1999.
201. Sauerwald, T.M. and Betenbaugh, M.J., Apoptosis in biotechnology: Its role in mammalian cell culture and methods of inhibition, *BioProcessing*, Summer 2002, 61–68, 2002.
202. Bilbao, G., Contreras, J.L., Gomez-Navarro, J., Eckhoff, D.E., Mikheeva, G., Krasnykh, V., Hynes, T., Thomas, F.T., and Curiel, D.T., Genetic modification of liver grafts with an adenoviral vector encoding the Bcl-2 gene improves organ preservation, *Transplantation*, 67(6), 775–783, 1999.
203. Vaux, D.L., Cory, S., and Adams, J.M., Bcl-2 gene promotes haemopoietic cell survival and cooperates with -myc to immortalize pre-B cells, *Nature*, 335, 440–442, 1988.
204. De Loecker, W., Hypothermia and preservation of organs in the liquid state, in *Clinical Applications of Cryobiology,* Fuller, B.J. and Grout, B.W.W., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1991, pp. 46–79.
205. Southard, J.H. and Belzer, F.O., Organ transplantation, in *Principles of Organ Transplantation,* Flye, M.W. Eds., W.B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, 1989, pp. 194–215.
206. Pegg, D.E., Organ preservation at temperatures above 0°C, in *Transplantation Immunology: Clinical and Experimental,* Calne, R.Y., Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1984, pp. 349–359.
207. States, B., Holtzapple, P., Rosenhagen, M., and Segal, S., Effect of storage of kidney slices on membrane ATPases and electrolyte transport, *Kidney Int.*, 2, 17–21, 1972.
208. Southard, J.H. and Belzer, F.O., Organ preservation, *Annu. Rev. Med.*, 46, 235–247, 1995.
209. Changani, K.K., Fuller, B.J., Bell, J.D., Bryant, D.J., Moore, D.P., Taylor-Robinson, S.D., and Davidson, B.R., Hepatic nucleotide triphosphate regeneration after hypothermic reperfusion in the pig model: An *in vitro* P-NMR study, *Transplantation*, 62(6), 787–793, 1996.
210. Cerra, F.B., Raza, S., Andres, G.A., and Siegal, J.H., The endothelial damage of pulsatile renal preservation and its relationship to perfusion pressure and colloid osmotic pressure, *Surgery*, 81, 534, 1977.
211. Polyak, M.M.R., Arrington, M.O., Stubenbord, W.T., Boykin, J., Brown, T., Jean-Jacques, M.A., Estevez, J., Kapur, S., and Kinkhabwala, M., Influence of pulsatile preservation on renal transplantation in the 1990's, *Transplantation*, 69(2), 249–258, 2000.
212. Polyak, M.M.R., Arrington, M.O., Stubenbord, W.T., Kapur, S., and Kinkhabwala, M., Prostaglandin E1 influences pulsatile preservation characteristics and early graft function in the expanded criteria donor kidneys, *J. Surg. Res.*, 85, 17–25, 1999.
213. Brook, N.R., Waller, J.R., and Nicholson, M.L., Non-heart beating kidney donation: Current practice and future developments, *Kidney Int.*, 63, 1516–1529. 2003.
214. Kohno, H., Shiki, K., Ueno, Y., and Tokunaga, K., Cold storage of the rat heart for transplantation, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 93(1), 86–94, 1987.
215. Toshima, Y., Kohno, H., Matsuzaki, K., Mitani, A., Mayumi, H., Yasui, H., and Tokunaga, K., Collins' solution for cold storage of the heart for transplantation must be reversed with cardioplegic solution before reperfusion, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 104(6), 1572–1581, 1992.

216. Roberts, R.F., Nishanian, G.P., Carey, J.N., Darbinian, S.H., Kim, J.D., Sakamaki, Y., Chang, J.Y., Starnes, V.A., and Barr, M.L., Addition of aprotinin to organ preservation solutions decreases lung reperfusion injury, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 66(1), 225–230, 1998.

217. Hernandez, A., Light, J.A., Barhyte, D.Y., Mabudian, M., and Gage, F., Ablating the ischemia-reperfusion injury in non-heart-beating donor kidneys, *Transplantation*, 67(2), 200–206, 1999.

218. McAnulty, J.F. and Huang, X.Q., The effects of administering quinacrine during ultraprofound hypothermia on warm ischemic kidney cortex tissue, *J. Pharmacol. and Exp. Ther.*, 277(2), 691–699, 1996.

219. Vreugdenhil, P.K., Rankin, M.A., and Southard, J.H., Cold storage sensitizes hepatocytes to oxidative stress injury, *Transpl. Int.*, 10(5), 379–385, 1997.

220. Chien, S. and Oeltgen, P.R., Technique for harvesting and preserving a multiorgan block preparation, in *Hibernation Induction Trigger for Organ Preservation,* Chien, S. and Oeltgen, P.R., Eds., R.G. Landes Co., Austin, 1993, pp. 44–61.

221. Dahdah, N.S., Taylor, M.J., Russo, P., and Wagerle, L.C., Effects of hypothermosol, an experimental acellular solution for tissue preservation and cardiopulmonary bypass, on isolated newborn lamb coronary vessels subjected to ultra profound hypothermia and anoxia, *Cryobiology*, 39, 58–68, 1999.

222. Behringer, W., Safar, P., Nozari, A., Wu, X., Kentner, R., Tisherman, S.A., Radovsky, A., and Taylor, M.J., Intact survival of 120 min cardiac arrest at 10°C in dogs: Cerebral preservation by cold aortic flush (and novel solutions), *Crit. Care Med.*, 29(12), 225, 2001.

223. Behringer, W., Safar, P., Kentner, R., Wu, X., Radovsky, A., Tisherman, S.A., and Taylor, M.J., Novel solutions for intra-ischemic aortic cold flush for preservation during 30 min cardiac arrest in dogs, *Crit. Care Med.*, 29(12), 226, 2001.

224. Simon, D., Taylor, M.J., Elrifai, A.M., Shih, S.-H., Bailes, J.E., Davis, D., Kluger, Y., Diamond, D.L., and Maroon, J.C., Hypothermic blood substitution enables resuscitation after hemorrhagic shock and 2 hours of cardiac arrest, *ASAIO J.*, 41(3), M297–M300, 1995.

225. Alam, H.B., Chen, Z., Honma, K., Koustova, E., Querol, R., Jaskille, A., Inocencio, R., Ariaban, N., Toruno, K., and Rhee, P., The rate of induction of hypothermic arrest determines the outcome in a swine model of lethal hemorrhage, *J. Trauma*, 57(5), 961–969, 2004.

226. Taylor, M.J. and Brockbank, K.G.M., Frontiers in biopreservation technology: Challenges for the storage of living tissues and engineered constructs, in *Anti-Aging Medical Therapeutics,* Klatz, R. and Goldman, R., Eds., A4M Publications, Chicago, 2003, pp. 515–526.

227. Taylor, M.J., Rhee, P., and Alam, H.B., Design of preservation solutions for universal tissue preservation *in vivo*: Demonstration of efficacy in pre-clinical models of profound hypothermic cardiac arrest, *Transpl. Proc.*, 37, 303–307, 2005.

228. Taylor, M.J., Hypothermia, in *Encyclopedia of Stress,* Fink, G., Ed., Academic Press, SanDiego; London, 2000, pp. 484–496.

229. Lakey, J.R.T., Rajotte, R.V., Fedorow, C.A., and Taylor, M.J., Islet cryopreservation using intracellular preservation solutions, *Cell Transpl.*, 10, 583–589, 2001.

230. Taylor, M.J. and Brockbank, K.G.M., Rational design of solutions for the preservation, storage, and shipping of engineered tissues, *Cryobiology,* 43(4), 349, 2001.

231. van Buskirk, R.G., Taylor, M.J., Shien, R., Tang, W., Mathew, A., and Baust, J.G., Optimization of Hypothermosol using cultured cardiomyocytes and the fluorescent multiple endpoint assay, *Cryobiology,* 32(6), 590–591, 1995.

232. van Buskirk, R.G., Taylor, M.J., Rauch, J., Robert, S., and Baust, J.G., Preservation of synthetic human skin in hypothermosol, *Cryobiology*, 32(6), 591, 1995.

233. van Buskirk, R.G., Rauch, J., Robert, S., Taylor, M.J., and Baust, J., Assessment of hypothermic storage of normal human epidermal keratinocytes (NHEK) using Alamar blue, *In Vitro Toxicology*, 9(3), 297–303, 1996.

234. Cook, J.R., Eichelberger, H., Robert, S., Rauch, J., Baust, J., Taylor, M.J., and van Buskirk, R.G., Cold-storage of synthetic human epidermis, *Hypothermosol. Tissue Engineering*, 1(4), 361–377, 1995.

235. Alberts, B., Bray, D., Lewis, J., Raff, M., Roberts, K., and Watson, J.D., *Molecular Biology of the Cell,* Garland Publishing, New York, 1994.

236. Rahn, H., Reeves, R.B., and Howell, B.J., Hydrogen ion regulation, temperature, and evolution, *Amer. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 112, 165–172, 1975.

3 Properties of Cells and Tissues Influencing Preservation Outcome: Molecular Basis of Preservation-Induced Cell Death

John M. Baust

CONTENTS

63

3.1 INTRODUCTION

As described in the introductory chapter of this text, the field of *biopreservation* is experiencing rapid expansion.[1] This is due in part to the growing interest and success in the areas of personalized medicine and drug discovery. With expanded applications, new demands have been placed on the preservation sciences to provide methodologies that facilitate retention of high degrees of cell viability and function in complex and sensitive systems such as stem cells, cord blood, engineered cells and tissues, etc. In many ways, these demands have pushed the preservation sciences to a limit based on the traditional approaches and parameters guiding the discipline.[2] As a result, the preservation sciences have been forced to morph their focus into the disciplines of cell and molecular biology in search of the next level of answers to drive continued scientific, technological, and methodological development necessary to yield improved outcomes.[3] These efforts have led to a series of recent discoveries related to the molecular response of cells during and following the preservation processes, along with the control of these processes. With these discoveries, we note a paradigm shift leading to new approaches designed to improve preservation. The impact of this paradigm change has had a ripple effect on the discipline of cryobiology as illustrated in the chapter by Gage et al.,[4] where these molecular discoveries promise to directly impact one area of cryo-medicine.

The underlying phenomenon leading to this paradigm shift has been the discovery of the activation of apoptosis during and following preservation.[5] In 1998 Baust et al.[6] first reported the involvement of apoptosis as one of three distinct mechanisms of cell death contributing to cryopreservation failure: ice rupture, necrosis, and apoptosis. Since that time, a number of studies have been published on cryopreservation-induced apoptosis and molecular-based cell death following cryopreservation.[7–18] These events identify the putative courses of *cryopreservation-induced delayed-onset cell death* (CIDOD).[9,15]

This chapter is focused on the discussion of the molecular-based modes, activation sites, and pathways of cryopreservation failure. In addition, the chapter discusses how controlling these factors has and will continue to lead to improved cryopreservation and hypothermic storage outcomes.

3.2 MODES OF CELL DEATH

It is now recognized that there are multiple modes of cell death associated with cryopreservation failure and that the cell death processes continue many hours to days following thawing (Figure 3.1).[15,16] Detailed descriptions of the preservation process (both hypothermic and cryopreservation) have been provided in the preceding chapters, which mention the importance of understanding a cell's response to the cold in developing the most effective strategy for preservation.[1,19] The control of a cell's response to low temperature entails a reduction in the stress levels experienced by a cell during the process. In general, increased stress response leads to increased cell death through the activation of apoptotic and necrotic cascades. In cryopreservation control of ice formation and osmotic flux/mechanical response of cells during the freezing process are also important factors.[20–30] Management of these three modes of cell death (ice rupture, necrosis, and apoptosis) is now believed to play a critical role in preservation efficacy.

3.2.1 Physical Events Related Cell Death

When one thinks of cell death and cryopreservation, failure due to ice-related cell destruction comes to the forefront (Figure 3.1A). The discipline of cryobiology has been dedicated to the understanding, control, and preservation of ice-related cell rupture since the late 1940s when Polge et al.[31] published on the use of glycerol as a cryoprotective agent (CPA) for the successful cryopreservation of avian and bovine spermatozoa. Following this early report, a plethora of studies have been dedicated to preventing intracellular ice formation thereby providing for successful cryopreservation
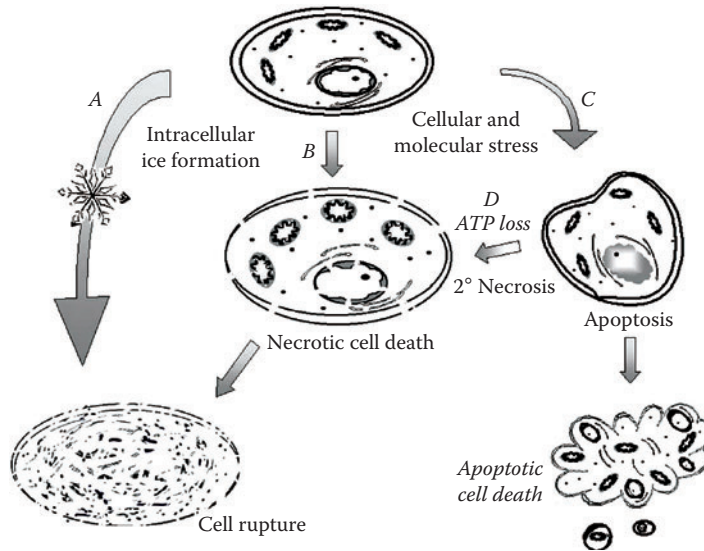
FIGURE 3.1 Modes of cell death associated with cryopreservation failure. Schematic diagram of the modes of cell death associated with cryopreservation failure: Physical Ice Rupture (A), Necrotic Cell Death (B), Apoptotic Cell Death (C) or Secondary Necrosis (D). (Adapted from Baust, 2002.)

outcome.[9,22,32–37] Numerous mechanistic studies on compounds, which influence ice formation/growth through the "binding of free water" (freezable) within a cell, continue to aid our understanding of the cryopreservation process. The process, which depends on the use of agents such as glycerol, dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), propanediol, etc., has provided for the effective control and prevention of intracellular ice formation.[22,24,26,38–43] This focus has played a critical role in advancement of cryopreservation over the past 50 years.

3.2.2 PATHOLOGICAL CELL DEATH (NECROSIS)

While ice-related rupture has received the most research focus, necrotic cell death has been cited in numerous cases of cryopreservation failure.[5,44,45] Traditionally, *necrosis* is defined as pathological cell death, a term used essentially to define "cellular murder."[46,47] Necrotic cell death can be defined as an energy-independent form of cell death characterized by cellular and organelle swelling, loss of membrane integrity, rupture of lysosomes, and random DNA degradation by endonucleases resulting in cell lysis (Figure 3.1B).[47–49] As a result of the loss of cell membrane integrity, cells lyse, release cytokines, and typically activate immune and inflammatory responses *in vivo*.[46,47,49] The initiation and temporal progression of necrotic cell death is often rapid (minutes to hours). Induction of necrosis is typically seen in a response to severe cellular stress and results in a cascade of detrimental intracellular signals resulting in cell death. Necrotic cell death has been shown to be activated by stressors such as ischemia, osmotic shock, sever thermal stress, ionic disregulation, toxic agents, etc. Interestingly, many of these necrotic activating stressors are also involved in the complex of stressor responses associated with preservation: hypothermic and cryopreservation.

3.2.3 GENE REGULATED CELL DEATH

Programmed cell death, or apoptosis, is integral in the homeostatic maintenance of cell number and tissue size in complex organisms.[51] During development, apoptotic cell death plays a role in neuronal innervation of muscles and the deletion of excess cells, such as the webbing between a human's fingers and toes, etc.[50–52] Apoptotic processes are also a critical line of defense in complex organisms facilitating the daily deletion of damaged cells throughout an organism's

lifetime. Kerr et al.[48] first used the term apoptosis (from the Greek meaning "separation of leaves") in 1972 to describe cells going through death by what he could only describe as shrinking necrosis. Kerr described apoptosis as a normal physiological process. Following this first report, a distinct field of research devoted to describing, characterizing, and unraveling the associated processes (genes, proteins, cascades, time course, and salient morphological characteristics) has emerged.[51–58] These studies have led to the characterization of apoptosis as a highly conserved evolutionary process among complex organisms ranging from nematodes to primates.[60–63] Apoptosis is an energy-dependent form of cell death (requires ATP), which follows a structural route of execution characterized by the activation of specific intracellular proteases, cellular shrinking, maintenance of an intact cell membrane, phospholipid inversion, nonrandom cleavage of DNA into 180 kDa fragments, and formation of membrane blebs (apoptotic bodies) (Figure 3.1C). Apoptosis differs significantly from necrosis in that there is no recruitment of a systematic immune response, therefore, no *in vivo* inflammation.

Our knowledge regarding the genetics of apoptosis stems from initial studies conducted on the nematode *C. elegans*. Studies in the area of developmental biology by Horvitz et al. identified the systematic deletion of 131 specific cells during development in *C. elegans* through the activation of specific genes ced-3 and ced-4.[59,63] Further, Hengartner et al.[63] showed that through the action of the gene ced-9, programmed cell death could be prevented. Following the identification of these genes and their processes in the nematode, multiple homologs to the ced-3, 4, and 9 genes were found in higher eukaryotes including mice, rates, and humans.[54,60,65,66] The cell death gene ced-3 was found to be homologous to interleukin IB converting enzyme (ICE). ICE, a cysteine protease, is common to many organisms and is therefore indicative of a conserved programmed cell death mechanism throughout the animal kingdom. Further, investigations have shown that in mammalian systems, a series of ICE like cysteine proteases, termed caspases (cysteinyl aspartate-specific proteases), plays a role in apoptotic cell death (ICE = caspase 3).[54,61,66]

Apoptotic cell death is characterized by three stages: initiation, execution, and termination. During each stage, a series of specific events is activated as part of a complex and elegantly choreographed cascade leading to cell death. Progression of the cascade through each stage, as well as through the substages, requires energy input (ATP) at checkpoints throughout the process. During the progression of apoptosis, if energy (ATP) is unavailable, cells shunt to a necrotic cell death pathway.[67] This shunting has been termed *secondary necrosis*[16,68] and is discussed in the transitional cell death section of this chapter (Figure 3.1D). Apoptosis has been shown to be initiated by a series of stresses including, but not limited to, radiation, cytotoxic agents, nutrient deprivation, anoxia, growth factor withdrawal, temperature, excess or diminished gene products (apoptotic and homeostatic), etc.[5,9,12,57,69–73] Following induction at any number of organelles (discussed below), apoptosis proceeds through a cascade of events including, but not limited to, caspase activation, mitochondrial release of cytochrome C, cell cycle arrest, externalization of membranous phosphatidyl serine, alterations in gene expression, etc.[51,56,74–77] This sequence of events leads the cell through the execution stage into the termination stage where DNA is cleaved by exonucleases into ordered fragments, membrane blebs and apoptotic bodies form and the complete systematic disassembly of the cell is accomplished.

3.3 TIME TO DIE

As discussed, apoptosis is an intricate part of the everyday life of an organism. During development, the apoptotic process helps to "mold" organisms in many differing ways—from the simple tissue level, to organs, to the entire appearance of the organism.[78] As previously mentioned, in *C. elegans* 131 cells die at programmed intervals in order to "mold" the organism.[59] At the mammalian level, apoptosis too plays an equivalent role in the maintenance and control of both life and death of the organism through the targeted removal of "unnecessary" cells. For example, it is well documented that during natal human development, the fetus possesses webbing between its digits. However,

upon birth, in most cases, the webbing is absent. The selective removal of this webbing prior to birth can be attributed to selective, developmental programmed cell death. The same can be said for the observed removal of fetal tail buds. Developmental apoptosis does not simply involve the elimination of vestigial features of a fetus, but also is an intricate process in the development of the human nervous system, playing a role in brain cortical development and neuronal innervation of tissues and organs.[79,80] Following fetal developmental cessation and birth, apoptosis continues to play a role in human survival. The apoptotic processes are responsible for the continual maintenance of the cellular components of all tissues and organ systems within the body. Within organ systems such as the skin or liver, apoptosis plays a daily role in the turnover and regeneration processes necessary to maintain viable and functional organ systems.[81–84] With apoptosis playing such a predominant yet selective role in organismal homeostasis, the questions of "when cells know it is time to die and how these processes are initiated within the cell" have become central to shaping today's research in this area.

A definitive answer to the question of "when to die" is proving difficult to obtain. The induction of the apoptotic processes by selective cells within organ systems can be mediated by a number of differing stimuli ranging from cellular "old age" to lethal genomic DNA errors to cellular stresses (e.g., hypothermia, hypoxia hypersensitivity, nutrient deprivation, exposure to toxins, etc.). These death-initiating stimuli experienced by a single cell or group of cells within an organism may result in the induction of the apoptotic process through a number of differing pathways.[85–89] How exactly an individual cell processes the information on "when to die" is actively being researched. With new information, one common theme seems to resonate throughout the field of apoptotic research: cells do die and we are still not sure why.

3.4 INDUCTION OF APOPTOSIS

The induction of apoptosis can result from a number of different stress factors experienced by a cell. Initiation of apoptotic cascades occurs at one of three primary locations within a cell: the cell membrane, the mitochondria, or the nucleus.[4,6,12,62,75,90] Each of the initiation points results in the activation and progression of cell death through a distinct pathway. Despite activation of a distinct pathway by the initiating organelle, once activated there is a series of feedback, amplification, and cross-talk biochemical signaling loops, which are subsequently activated and result in the potentiation of the apoptotic signal.[72,91] This cross-talk and amplification is believed to have evolved as a redundant biochemical system to help assure ordered cell death following the initiation of apoptosis. As will be discussed in the Targeted Apoptotic Control (TAC)[16] section, it is this feature that makes apoptotic control in cryopreservation difficult.

There is a wealth of knowledge surrounding the signal transduction cascades associated with the progression of apoptosis from all three initiating organelles. Researchers have shown that there is a distinct set of signaling proteins associated with apoptotic initiation from each organelle, all of which typically feed into the proteolytic caspase cascade leading to cell death.[54,65,92,93]

3.4.1 MEMBRANE RECEPTOR MEDIATED APOPTOSIS

One common location for the initiation of apoptosis is that of the cell membrane.[85] Every cell has a series of protein receptors on its surface designed to initiate the apoptotic cascade. These receptors include several members of the TNF superfamily including FAS, TNF1 and 2, TRAIL, TRANCE, etc.[75,94] These surface receptors have been shown to be pleiotropic mediators of an immune response as well as apoptotic program initiators through ligand binding.[95,96]

Activation of one of the TNF superfamily surface-receptor proteins leads to the activation of a series of downstream signal transduction (protein) messages.[94,97] One such receptor, TNF1,[98] when activated, results in the recruitment of the intracellular protein TRADD. TRADD binds to the activated TNF1 complex on the intracellular side of the plasma membrane. Once bound and

activated, TRADD acts as a signal and recruitment adaptor molecule for the protein FADD (Fas activated death domain), which in turn acts as a recruitment signal and adaptor protein for pro-caspase 8 (inactive caspase 8).

Following binding to FADD, procaspase 8 undergoes proteolytic processing, resulting in the activation and release of active caspase 8.[99,100] Once activated, caspase 8, through a specific pathway, activates caspase 3, 6, and 7. Caspase 7 in turn acts as a signal amplification molecule to recruit and activate additional pathways, and results in cleavage of cellular DNA followed by cell death.[101–103]

3.4.2 MITOCHONDRIAL INDUCED APOPTOSIS

As much as any other organelle, the mitochondrion plays a critical role in both cell survival and death. The mitochondria within a cell are responsible for generation of most of a cell's energy through oxidative respiration. While critical to cell survival, the mitochondrion also serve as a primary activation site for apoptotic cell death.[88,90,103] Accordingly, there are several genes and proteins associated with the mitochondria that regulate its functional status of a life sustainer or terminator. The mitochondria are now recognized as key to both necrosis and apoptosis.[104,105] The decision by a cell to launch apoptosis can be, in part, dictated by the cytoplasmic ratio of the anti-apoptotic to pro-apoptotic proteins.[105,106] Most of the known anti-apoptotic and pro-apoptotic proteins are directly related to the mitochondrial Bcl-2 family. Bcl-2 was originally found at the chromosomal translocation in follicular lymphomas and subsequently determined to inhibit apoptosis. Experiments in the nematode *C. elegans* determined that the apoptosis-inhibiting gene, ced-9, was homologous to Bcl-2 and served a similar function, suggesting that apoptosis prevention may be of universal importance.[63,107]

The family of proteins most commonly associated with the mitochondria is the Bcl-2 family, which consists of both pro- and anti-apoptotic members. The mechanisms by which these pro- and anti-apoptotic proteins work are still not fully understood. The anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family members may work through dimerization with other Bcl-2 family members, inhibition of caspase cleavage (activation), or phosphorylation of selected proteins.[108,109] Bcl-2 may also work by blocking the mitochondrial permeability transition pore that is thought to initiate apoptosis triggered by the release of cytochrome C through voltage-dependent anion channel (VDAC).[88,90,109,110] Cytochrome C, in turn, may activate procaspases, leading to the demise of the cell.[61,77] The proteins comprising the VDAC are thought to work together to permit the increase in permeability of the mitochondrial inner membrane to solutes with a molecular mass below 1500 Da that include superoxide anions that leak to the cytosol.[110] An inward flux of these molecules through the VDAC results in the loss of proton motive force in the mictohondria, triggering apoptosis and/or necrosis.[105]

Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L family members are anti-apoptotic while Bax, Bad, and Bid are pro-apoptotic. These proteins act by regulating (or deregulating in the case of pro-apoptosis) the mitochondrial permeability transition pore (mPTP), mitochondrial transmembrane potential, and the subsequent release of cytochrome C from the inner mitochondrial space. When opening the mPTP the result is a decrease/loss in the mitochondrial transmembrane potential and release of cytochrome C into the cytosol where it binds (heterodimerizes) with the molecule APAF-1.[77] This heterodimerization results in the recruitment of procaspase 9, forming a complex known as the apoptosome, resulting in the activation and release of caspase 9. Following activation, caspase 9 (an upstream caspase) acts as an activator of downstream execution caspases (caspases 3, 6, 7), as well as a feedback-signaling molecule causing the release of additional cytochrome C and transcriptional up-regulation of procaspase 9 mRNA.[61] As described in membrane-mediated apoptosis, activation of caspase 3, 6, and 7 results in a series of degradation events for target molecules such as PARP (poly- ADP ribose- polymerase), DNA, ICAD, etc., leading to cell death.[103,111]

3.4.3 NUCLEAR-INDUCED APOPTOSIS

Another primary site of apoptotic induction is that of a cell's nucleus. Cell stressors that act on nuclear targets often result in the initiation of an apoptotic response. Stress factors such as UV radiation (direct DNA damage), growth factor deprivation, deregulation of cell cycle processes (DNA synthesis, alterations in cell cycle regulation, and at protein levels, disruption of cytoskeletal protein arrangement, etc.), oxygen free radicals, toxins, steroids, etc. have all been shown to initiate a nuclear-mediated apoptotic response.[56,57,112–114] Most, if not all, of the nuclear-mediated apoptotic response stressors result in some form of DNA damage (breaks, nucleotide misincorporation, genetic recombination). Alterations in DNA integrity typically result in the activation of p53 (a DNA proofreading protein), which in turn signals cell cycle arrest and initiates a series of signaling cascades leading to either DNA repair or apoptosis.[113,115] The decision between activation of repair processes vs. cell death progression is complex and involves a host of signal-mediating proteins related to the intensity of the stress, extent of DNA damage, and the availability of ATP to effect repair.[58] In extreme cases of DNA damage, the signaling pathway initiated by p53 has also been shown to shunt the cell from apoptotic to necrotic cell death when energy levels are low.[113]

3.5 TRANSITIONAL CELL DEATH

Historically, molecular-based cell death has been thought to proceed through either an apoptotic or necrotic path. Apoptosis has been viewed as "more of a molecular response" with necrosis considered "less molecular" at the intracellular signaling level. However, our view of the molecular cell death landscape has evolved substantially over the past few years to suggest that apoptosis and necrosis represent more of extremes on a continuum of molecular-based cell death. Apoptosis is now viewed as a mode of cell death that can present itself in many forms. For instance, Bras et al.[116] have suggested that three types of apoptosis occur. Type I is the conventional view of apoptosis that does not involve lysosomes but does rely on caspase activation. Presently, over a dozen caspases are recognized, many of which are linked together.[103,111] Type II, by contrast, is characterized by lysosomal-linked autophagocytosis. Type III is lysosomal-independent, necrosis-like apoptosis marked by swelling of intracellular organelles. These three types may be linked by the mitochondria and the critical role this organelle may play in switching between all three death modes.[116] Many of the caspases are linked to the mitochondria and appear to play roles both in apoptosis and necrosis.[61] Essentially, it is now believed that in many cases when a cell commits to death, an apoptotic response is activated and proceeds to the point of cellular execution (classical apoptosis) or to a point where the stress becomes too great or energy reserves (ATP levels) too low for continuation of apoptosis. At this point the cell has committed to death and shunts from apoptosis to necrosis for the completion of the cell death process (secondary necrosis) (Figure 3.1D).[68,118,119] The ability of cells to switch from apoptotic to necrotic cell death and even back again was first demonstrated in 1997 by Liest et al.[67] In this study, Jurkat cells were enticed into apoptosis, and then depleted of energy, which led to a shift in cell death characteristics from apoptotic to necrotic. Interestingly, when energy substrates were added back to the system, cell death characteristics reverted back to apoptotic. However, there was a point at which this reversal was no longer possible. This transitional cell death has been demonstrated in a number of subsequent studies and has provided a basis for the cell death continuum concept emphasized in this chapter. Common stressors such as nutrient deprivation, DNA damage, cytokine exposure, cytotoxic agents, oxygen deprivation, ionic imbalance, etc. have all been shown to result in the activation of both apoptosis and also necrosis in a multiplicity of cell systems based on the relative degree of the stress experienced by the cell. Another situation where observations of transitional cell death have been noted is that of genomic and proteomic alterations in cell death pathways.[120–122] There are many examples of gene mutations—alterations in expression or deletion—resulting in the inability of a cell to progress properly through classical apoptotic cascades, thereby switching to necrosis. One such example of

"atypical" apoptosis is observed in the human prostate cancer cell line PC-3. PC-3 cells are deficient in the DNA proofreading, apoptotic initiator protein p53. This mutation results in a reduction in the ability of this cell type to undergo apoptosis. Despite this mutation, PC-3 cells can progress through both apoptotic and necrotic pathways, which would typically involve p53[123] by recruiting additional apoptotic and necrotic response elements to continue cell death. Other examples are seen when there is an inhibition of caspase activity in cells undergoing apoptosis.[124] In many cases these cells simply shift from apoptotic to necrotic cell death when the necessary caspase becomes unavailable.[100,125,126]

The transitional nature of cell death pathways in response to similar stressors makes for an extremely complex environment to characterize when it comes to situations where multiple stressors are involved, such as cryopreservation and hypothermic preservation.

3.6 CRYOPRESERVATION-INDUCED, MOLECULAR-BASED CELL DEATH

It has only recently been discovered that cell death following cryopreservation is linked with apoptotic and secondary necrotic mechanisms.[3] Upon reflection and consideration of the stresses associated with cryopreservation, it now seems intuitive that apoptotic processes should be involved with cryopreservation failure. In 1995, Jurisicova, et al.[127] reported on observations of apoptosis contributing to cellular demise following cryopreservation in pre-implanted human embryos. The authors identified programmed cell death (PCD) as a contributor to postcryopreservation embryo demise and hypothesized that "the PCD was due to either natural incidence of lethal chromosomes in the human population or due to the *in vitro* fertilization and culture conditions." Later, Borderie et al.[128] reported on the observation of a discrepancy (20–54%) in cell survival following frozen storage (–80°C) of human keratinocytes. The discrepancy was noted when results were obtained through assessment of viability using trypan blue and flow cytometry. The authors also noted the presence of apoptotic cells within the culture following a 24-hour recovery period. Additionally, the presence of apoptotic cells following transplantation (2–14 days) of cryopreserved allograft heart valves has also been reported.[129] Despite these observations, it was not until 1998 that a first report directly linking apoptosis to cell death following cryopreservation was published.[6] The discovery of apoptotic involvement was found through electrophoretic analysis of DNA from cell populations one to two days post-thaw. These DNA gels demonstrated that apoptosis was occurring as a result of cryopreservation through the appearance of the hallmark 180–200bp DNA fragment bands. Interestingly, it was seen that the hallmark DNA characteristics of apoptotic (DNA banding or ladder) and necrotic (DNA smear) cell death were not detectable until many hours to days post-thaw, revealing a significant temporal component to cell death following cryopreservation. Since this report, there have been numerous studies looking to identify apoptotic involvement in cryopreservation failure.[5,8,9,11,15,18,130–134] With this increase in activity, there have been numerous reports showing apoptotic involvement as well as a handful claiming the contrary (not finding apoptosis) in their respective systems.[135–137]

3.6.1 Apoptosis in Cryopreservation

Apoptosis has now been documented in a wide variety of cellular systems following cryopreservation. Since 1998, studies identifying post-thaw apoptosis have begun to appear from numerous systems including renal cells, fibroblasts, hepatocytes, peripheral blood mononuclear cells, cord blood, spermatozoa, oocytes, ovarian tissue, vascular tissue, etc.[7,9,10,13,16,18,133,136,138]

In 2000, Fowke et al.[44] and Baust et al.[5] separately reported on apoptosis following cryopreservation in PBMC and renal cells, respectively. In the following year Fu et al.[7] and Yagi et al.[8] reported on the involvement of apoptosis following cryopreservation in mouse and porcine hepatocytes, respectively. Additionally, Schuurhuis et al.[138] and Lund et al.[139] documented apoptosis in PBMCs

following thawing. Further reports in the gamete cryopreservation area have documented the presence of apoptotic cells following thawing in sperm, oocytes, and ovarian tissue.[18,132,133,136,142] The presence and contribution of apoptosis has also now been reported in red blood cells,[143] cornea,[144] stem cells,[10] cord blood,[13] lymphocytes, and oocytes.[133] These reports as well as others continue to solidify the foundation of molecular-based cell death following cryopreservation as a universal phenomenon influencing cryopreservation outcome.

3.6.2 CRYOPRESERVATION-INDUCED, DELAYED-ONSET CELL DEATH

From a review of the literature on the type, time course, and extent of cell death associated with cryopreservation, one can now conclude that molecular-based cell death (apoptosis) plays a critical role in the outcome of many, if not all, cellular systems. One critical point underlying this statement (and interpretation of the literature base) is that of the temporal component of post-cryopreservation cell death and the assay system used for evaluation[3] (see Chapter 6). Simply stated, evaluation of cell populations within a few hours post-thaw does not allow for the identification of the full extent of apoptosis or necrosis due to the time course of the cell death machinery regardless of the assay system utilized. The manifestation of molecular-based cell death may take many hours to days to occur following thawing. It is this temporal component that continues to elude many investigators seeking to identify and characterize molecular cell death following preservation. In 2001, a report detailed the timing of cell death following cryopreservation, terming the phenomena *Cryopreservation-Induced, Delayed-Onset Cell Death* (CIDOCD) (Figure 3.2).[9] This study showed that following thawing there was a delay in the peak of necrotic activity until 6 hours post-thaw with a subsequent peak in apoptosis at 12 hours post-thaw. The measurements of apoptotic and necrotic
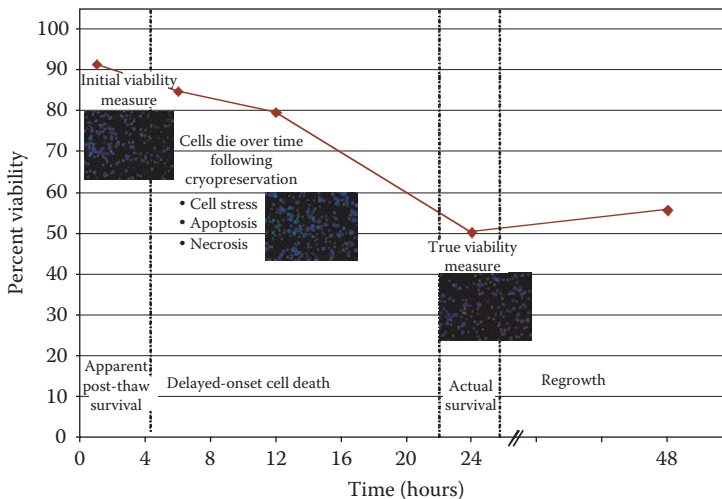
FIGURE 3.2 Effect of cryopreservation-induced, delayed-onset cell death on cell survival following thawing. Representative graphic of the timing of cell death resultant from molecular-based cellular events activated during and following the cryopreservation process. Typically samples demonstrate a high degree of viability immediately post-thaw, but during the initial "recovery" period a significant level of cell death occurs, resulting in a much lower level of actual survival. Fluorescent probing of peripheral blood mononuclear cells for early stage necrotic (red), apoptotic (green), and living (blue) cell populations visually illustrates this phenomenon (micrograph inserts). Temporal assessment of cell populations during initial post-thaw recovery clearly demonstrates that the appearance and progression of molecular-based cell death occurs and continues from many hours to days following thawing.

activity were based on early stage event indicators, thereby identifying cells that were indistinguishable from living cells based upon typical viability indicators (i.e., trypan blue). With the progression of the cell death cascades, it was not until 24 hours post-thaw that a nadir in cell survival was observed. From this study, it was documented that the timing of analysis for assessment of cryopreservation failure is critical. With the identification of the temporal component of cryopreservation failure, a series of investigations were launched to uncover the path of molecular cell death progression. In 2002, Baust et al.[15] reported on a genomic response within human fibroblasts following cryopreservation contributing to this temporal component. This study reported that following thawing there was an increase in transcriptional activity of key apoptotic enzymes (caspase 3, 8, 9) in a delayed manner with a peak in transcriptional activity of caspase 8 and 9 at 12 hours post-thaw and caspase 3 at 18 hours post-thaw. Further analysis of caspase 3-proteolytic activity revealed an extended plateau in activity 21 to 36 hours post-thaw. This gene-mediated response resulted in an observed nadir in cell survival at 24 hours post-thaw with continued cell death out to 48 hours post-thaw. Concurrent with this study in fibroblasts, Vogel et al.[145] reported on the proteolytic activation of caspase 3 following cryopreservation in a renal model. This study demonstrated substantial alterations in the cellular-outcome proteolytic activity immediately post-thaw (6 hours) followed by a subsequent increase in activity over 12 to 18 hours post-thaw with a return to a basal level by 24 to 36 hours. Schmidt-Mende et al.[130] independently substantiated the observation of post-thaw protease activation in a bone marrow cells model. They reported on a high level of intrinsic proteolytic activity following preservation leading to the cleavage of various apoptotic-signaling proteins. These studies further demonstrated that protease activity was blocked by the inclusion of a protease inhibitor in the freeze medium. These studies demonstrated that improved cryopreservation outcome was possible through the modulation of the apoptotic process via caspase inhibition during and following the cryopreservation interval. To further implicate caspase activation following cryopreservation, Paasch et al.[132] reported on the activation of caspase in human spermatozoa and Yagi et al.[8] did so following thawing in a porcine hepatocytes model. Based upon the reports of specific protein upregulation, Vogel, et al.,[146] more recently reported on an increase in proteolytic activity of numerous proteins following cryopreservation in a human fibroblast model.

3.6.3 Effects of Cryopreservation on Cell Function

While a substantial literature base exists detailing the effects of post-cryopreservation apoptosis, there are, nonetheless, recent reports refuting these claims. In 2002, Ricco et al.[135] reported that cryopreservation of PBMC did not result in increased levels of apoptosis 24 hours post-thaw. These findings are in contrast to the previously cited studies. Further, in a recent study by Baust et al.,[136] it was reported that both apoptosis and necrosis play a significant role in cell death following cryopreservation. Comparison of the two studies revealed that the temporal component of PBMC death played a critical role in guiding the interpretation of results (no finding of apoptosis). In the Ricco et al.[135] study, PBMC analysis was conducted immediately post-thaw and 24 hours later. In the Baust et al.[136] study, PBMC necrosis and apoptosis was found to peak at 4 to 8 hours, respectively, with minimal levels of either form of cell death noted at 24 hours (Figure 3.2, micrographs). Comparison of these two studies serves as an example of the influence that the temporal components and cell type specificity can have on interpretation of results. Subsequent studies have shown that the delayed molecular effects following thawing extend beyond that of cell death but impact function as well. Overall function of cellular systems following cryopreservation had been an issue often neglected in the past. The literature contains numerous reports citing high retention of cell viability and function post-thaw. However, in-depth examination of the literature reveals that there is a substantial reduction in function of many cells post-thaw. This effect has been documented in hepatocytes,[147,148] pancreatic islets,[149] cardiac cells,[150] blood cells,[151] and stem cells,[152] to name but a few. In 2000, Fowke et al.[44] described the use of early apoptotic events

as a means of assessing sample quality in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC). Abrahamsen et al.[11] applied a similar approach by using flow cytometry to assess apoptosis and necrosis levels in PBMC samples following cryopreservation as a means of determining cell concentration and dosing parameters in cancer patients. These authors also reported that cryopreservation affected the level of CD34+ expressing cells in PBMC samples. Later de Boer et al.[10] showed that cryopreservation resulted in an impairment of function in CD34+ cells reducing their effectiveness in stem cell grafts. Reports in the area of gamete cryopreservation have also described decreased function.[142,153] Studies in cryopreservation of sperm now link cryopreservation and molecular responses along with a loss of acrosomal and motility functions. More recently, studies have begun to detail the effects of cryopreservation on the biochemical functionality of cell systems such as hepatocytes[14,154] and cardiomyocytes[150] as well as the improvement in cell function through newly developed approaches to cryopreservation. Baust et al.[155] in an analysis of the impact of cryopreservation on the cellular proteome found that there is an effect on a cell's phenotypic fingerprint many hours to days post-thaw. Van Buskirk et al.[68] also recently discussed this effect on the cellular proteome. These examples provide a mere sampling of the downstream effects cryopreservation may have on cellular function.

3.7 INITIATION OF CRYOPRESERVATION-INDUCED MOLECULAR DEATH

Much attention has been paid to identifying and quantifying molecular cell death following cryopreservation, but few detailed investigations into the initiating stresses have been conducted. Inherent in the process of cryopreservation is the exposure of cells to stressors, many of which can initiate a molecular death response in conjunction with one another. Many of these factors were recently reviewed[15,16] and include metabolic uncoupling, production of free radicals, alterations in cell membrane structure and fluidity, deregulation of cellular ionic balances, release of calcium from intracellular stores, osmotic fluxes, and cryoprotective agent exposure. This list of stresses associated with cryopreservation is by no means complete but serves as a guide to the complexity of stressors, stress response mechanisms, and influence on cellular initiation sites. In many cases, the accumulation of numerous sublethal stressors during the preservation process results in activation of apoptosis followed by a shift to secondary necrosis due to a lack of energy and continual "build up" of stressors within the cell. In an attempt to gain insight into the effect of the various stressors associated with cryopreservation, recent studies have focused on the various initiation sites of apoptosis. These studies shed light onto the pathways of molecular cell death associated with cryopreservation.

3.7.1 MEMBRANE EVENTS

The effect of the freezing process on the cell membrane has been studied extensively from the ultrastructural prospective. Studies detailing the increase in viscosity of the cell membrane in response to low temperature are common.[152,156,157] Further studies have shown that the membrane becomes more permeable at low temperatures due to channel formation in the lipid bilayer. Steponkus et al.[29] reported on the aggregation of proteins and the formation of circular lipid rings within the lipid bilayer of the cell resulting in irreversible damage and subsequent cell death.

Recently, studies have turned toward the analysis of molecular-induced events associated with the cell membrane following cryopreservation. As a result, there is now a growing yet limited base of knowledge in membrane-mediated responses. We first implicated the involvement of the cell membrane in cryopreservation-induced apoptosis in a 2002 study, which found that during post-thaw recovery there was a transcriptional upregulation of caspase 8.[15] Further studies have shown that following thawing there is an alteration in the protein levels of Fas and FADD along with the

activation of caspase 8 (Baust et al., unpublished data). Additionally, studies from the field of cryomedicine have shown the activation of TNF and TRAIL pathways in response to freezing.[158–160] Most recently, our group has noted that the inhibition of FAS activation during cryopreservation results in an increase in cell survival (Baust et al., unpublished data). In contrast, Bischof's group has shown that through the activation of the TNF receptor, the efficacy of cryodestruction can be increased.[161] These studies, taken together, argue for a strong involvement of the activation of membrane-induced molecular cell death signaling following low-temperature exposure.

3.7.2 MITOCHONDRIAL RESPONSE TO LOW TEMPERATURE

As described earlier, the mitochondrion plays a pivotal role in the control and initiation of apoptosis. In the area of low-temperature stress/response, several studies have now linked the mitochondria to the initiation of apoptosis following preservation. In 2001 our group reported on the transcriptional activation of caspase 9 following cryopreservation.[15] Ahn et al.[162] extended these studies by reporting on mitochondrial dysfunction in two-cell mouse embryos following cryopreservation. Subsequent to this report, a series of studies appeared investigating mitochondrial involvement in both cryopreservation and hypothermic storage cell death. Vogel et al.[163] showed that there was an alteration in the Bcl-2 and Bax levels following cryopreservation resulting in a shift toward intracellular pro-death cell death signaling in a human fibroblast model. Clarke et al.[164] reported a similar finding in prostate cancer cells in response to freezing. Lastly, Anderson et al.[165] published on the translocation of Bax from the cytosol to the mitochondria following low-temperature exposure in a hypothermia model. Investigations into mitochondrial involvement have now shown that following low-temperature storage there is a loss of mitochondrial transmembrane potential as well as a release of cytochrome C, the activation of caspase 9, and subsequent apoptosis.[166] A number of additional studies exist on mitochondrial involvement (especially in the area of hypothermic storage), but from the above studies it is clear that the mitochondria play a crucial role in activation of molecular-based cell death following preservation.

3.7.3 NUCLEAR INITIATION OF APOPTOSIS

While a literature base exists for the mitochondrial and membrane-induced apoptosis associated with cryopreservation, there is a much smaller body of information detailing nuclear involvement. To date, most investigations have focused on examination of nuclear events as an identification of molecular cell death utilizing assay systems such as TUNNEL, DNA gel electrophoresis, comet assay, and western blotting of nuclear proteins.[5,13,140,167,168] These studies have shown a disruption in DNA integrity, cleavage of nuclear proteins such as PARP, increase in xIAP, CAD activation, etc. All of these events have been studied in the context of downstream effects of the apoptotic process activated following cryopreservation. Specific studies on actual nuclear events that lead to the activation of apoptosis are limited. With that said, there are studies demonstrating DNA damage in spermatozoa following thawing and subsequent cell death.[140,167,168] Further, a recent study by Clarke et al.[159] utilizing cDNA microarray analysis in a cryotherapy model showed a significant genetic response to freezing within a few hours post-thaw. While this study did not focus specifically on the nucleus as an initiation site, it nonetheless demonstrated a large nuclear-based response to freezing leading to a number of cascade activations including those of nuclear-initiated apoptosis. With the explosion of microarray analysis and the plethora of gene activation data, it is only a matter of time before a more in-depth understanding of nuclear-initiated apoptosis in cryopreservation failure will be described.

3.8 CONTROL OF CRYOPRESERVATION-INDUCED MOLECULAR RESPONSE

With the discovery of molecular responses in cells to the preservation process, there have been numerous attempts to control these events in an effort to improve preservation outcome. These approaches vary from alteration in solution (cryoprotectant carrier media) design to addition of protective agents for targeted control of apoptosis. Of these attempts the alteration in preservation solution design has proven most beneficial.
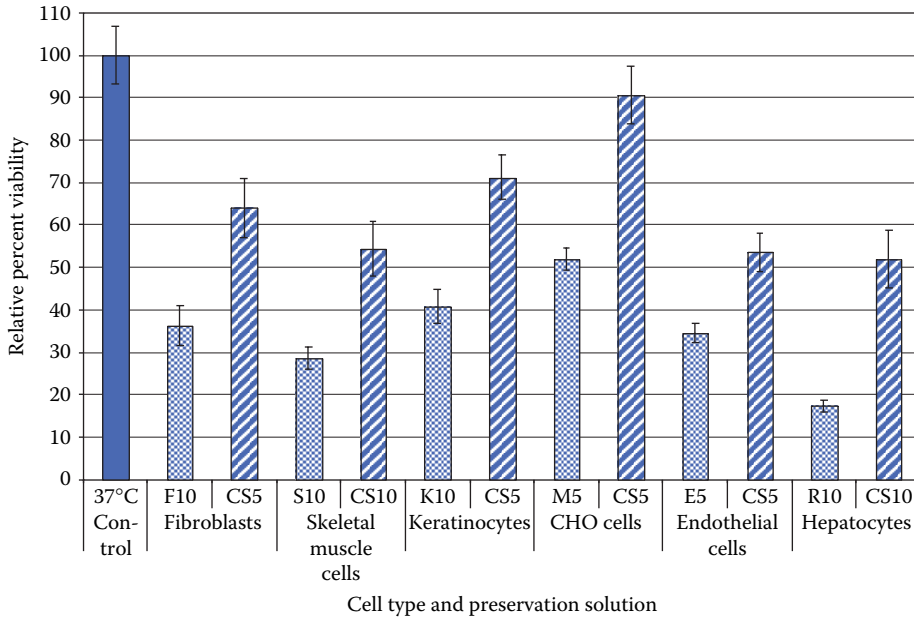
3.8.1 Next-Generation Cryopreservation Solutions

The most significant shift in the approach to improve cryopreservation methodologies in recent years is that of carrier media design. Traditional cryopreservation media formulations consist of a basal culture media with serum protein and DMSO supplementation. While providing for physical protection through the DMSO and proteins components, the basal solutions do not provide for control/modulation of the molecular response of cells to preservation stresses. These solutions fall short by failing to control alterations in solution pH, cellular generation of free radicals, energy deprivation, etc. Further, culture media based solutions fail to provide the appropriate ionic environment necessary for cell survival and reduction of cellular stress during preservation.[169] These media are historically, exclusively "extracellular-like" with regard to ionic concentrations (high Na^+, low K^+). These properties of the preservation solution do not adequately protect at a cellular and molecular level, thereby exacerbating cell death.[16]

In contrast to traditional carrier media, a new generation of cryopreservation solutions is designed around the concept of an "intracellular-type carrier media" (low Na^+, high K^+).[5,169] Additionally, these solutions contain buffers, which have an extended dynamic thermal range of activity, supplemental free-radical scavengers, energy substrates, etc.[16] In fact, the formulation of these cryopreservation solutions has taken the lead from the field of hypothermic storage solutions (see Chapter 2) to provide for more effective cryopreservation. Successes with this approach have been detailed in a series of reports in cellular systems such as hepatocytes,[154] cord blood,[170] stem cells, PBMC's,[136] fibroblasts,[9] keratinocytes,[15] blood vessels,[171] engineered tissue,[172] etc. (Figure 3.3). In most of these studies evaluation of the cryopreservation media CryoStor™ was conducted, which yielded significant improvement in cell survival, function, and growth. In many cases a doubling of cell number was noted at the nadir of cell survival when contrasted with DMSO plus cell culture media. Interestingly, in most of these studies, the improvement in viability and sample quality was not noted immediately post-thaw. It was not until the molecular-based events fully manifested that the significant improvement was observed. Studies have shown that the basis of the observed improvement in cell survival and function was due to a direct reduction in the level of both apoptosis and necrosis during post-thaw recovery.[9,15] This relationship has been demonstrated in a number of studies, which have detailed a direct reduction in apoptotic and necrotic cell number, transcriptional upregulation of caspases, shift in Bcl-2/Bax ratio, and the extent of DNA damage.[15,16,145] These studies have all shown that the use of new-generation cryopreservation solutions is significantly changing cryopreservation outcomes (Figure 3.3).

3.8.2 Targeted Apoptotic Control

While next-generation solutions have provided for marked overall improvement in cryopreservation outcome, another area of interest is that of Targeted Apoptotic Control (TAC).[16] The identification of the involvement of apoptosis in cryopreservation failure has led to numerous studies investigating the feasibility and effectiveness of TAC. In 2000 our group first reported on the attempt to control the activation of apoptosis following cryopreservation through caspase inhibition in a renal cell model.[5] This study reported that TAC, in combination with CryoStor™ solutions, could markedly improve cell survival. A subsequent study demonstrated that through TAC both the levels of

FIGURE 3.3 Comparison of the effect of extracellular vs. intracellular-like cryopreservation solutions on 24-hour post-thaw viability in model cell systems. Cryopreservation of cellular systems in new-generation intracellular-type carrier solutions results in a significant improvement in post-thaw cell survival. Interestingly, the improvements are not typically seen immediately post-thaw, but it is not until the molecular-based cell death events manifest that the difference is seen. The protective benefits of these intracellular-like solutions is seen across many cellular and tissue systems. Data from several model systems are illustrated above in comparison to their respective prefreeze controls. Solution Key: *Extracellular-Like*: F10 = fibroblast growth media + 10% DMSO; S10 = skeletal muscle growth media + 10% DMSO; K10 = keratinocyte growth media + 10% DMSO; M10 = F12K + 10% DMSO; E10 = endothelial growth media + 5% DMSO; R10 = RPMI + 10% DMSO (Note all extracellular-like solutions contained 10% serum); *Intracellular-Like*: CS5 = CryoStor CS5 (5% DMSO); CS10 = CryoStor CS10 (10% DMSO).

post-thaw apoptosis and necrosis could be significantly reduced.[9] These findings provided a basis for a hypothesis detailing transitional cell death playing a role in cryopreservation failure. Yagi et al.[8] have reported on the benefit of TAC in improving hepatocyte cryopreservation, a significant investigative milestone. Following this study, a number of additional reports have been published on the incorporation of caspase inhibitors into cryopreservation media to effect improved cell survival via TAC.[16] Recently, Robilotto et al.[173] described the benefit of calpain inhibitors during cryopreservation to improve cell survival. While a number of studies have been reported, to date none have proven practical for broad-based application in the cryopreservation sciences.

3.9 ENABLING TISSUE CRYOPRESERVATION

Generally speaking, the emphasis in the cryopreservation sciences has been on cellular systems both at the physical as well as molecular levels. Translation of these approaches into the area of tissue cryopreservation has been formidable.[174–177] This area includes both tissue freezing and vitrification. Brockbank and Taylor provide a more in-depth discussion on tissue preservation in Chapter 8. Here, we choose to focus on tissue freezing and studies involving molecular findings related to cell death and function. The challenges faced in the cryopreservation of cells translate directly into tissue systems compounded by the existence of cell-to-cell interactions, diffusion and permeability limits, nonuniform heat transfer (both during cooling and warming), etc. These factors

may add to the stress levels experienced by a cell and result in even greater cell death following cryopreservation. At the molecular level it is believed that sheer stress and strain experienced by cells due to volumetric changes and ice formation, coupled with a cell's anchoring to the extracellular matrix, result in the activation of a stress response pathway leading to apoptosis. Additionally, it has been hypothesized that due to cell-to-cell connections in tissues, the transmission of cell stress and death signals can "flow" more freely between cells, thereby leading to increased cell death through signal amplification. It is believed that these physical and molecular signals/events work directly in concert with one another, making tissue cryopreservation difficult.

Currently, there are a number of tissues being cryopreserved to meet clinical and research needs. Systems routinely cryopreserved include liver slices,[178,179] heart valves,[180] blood vessels,[171,181,182] cartilage,[50] skin,[183] and numerous engineered tissues.[172] Despite the "routine" freezing of these systems, tissue quality is quite poor. The process of tissue cryopreservation differs little from that of cell cryopreservation except for the extension of the initial 4°C incubation interval. These approaches typically result in "viable tissue" (maintenance of tissue integrity) used in applications such as heart valve transplant, vascular replacement therapy, etc., in which the tissue primarily provides a "living" scaffold that cells from other parts of the body can infiltrate over time.

A number of studies have also reported on molecular events associated with cryopreservation of tissue. Liu et al.[184] reported that cryopreservation had only minor effects on mouse ovarian tissue including *in vitro* follicular maturation and gene expression. This study documented that those follicles survived the preservation process and were able to mature in a normal fashion. They also showed little effect on gene expression after recovery. Matsushita et al.[14] reported on the translation of molecular studies of hepatocyte cryopreservation on the development of bio-artificial liver assist devices and reported on the role of apoptosis and the cryopreservation process and overall device function. Villalba et al.[131] and Pascual et al.[185] described the effects of cryopreservation in vascular tissue models (heart valves and arteries, respectively), implicating delayed cell death (apoptosis and necrosis) as playing a role in tissue destruction following cryopreservation.

More recently, a series of studies that revolve around the development of new, molecular-driven approaches to the cryopreservation of tissues has emerged.

Snyder et al.[171] recently reported on the application of molecular approaches in the cryopreservation of rat aorta. This study showed that cryopreservation of aortic segments utilizing traditional approaches resulted in a structurally intact nonviable tissue. However, when utilizing an intracellular-like preservation solution, tissue cryopreservation outcome was markedly improved. Specifically, aortic segments preserved in CryoStor CS 5 or CS 10 resulted in a marked increase in viable cell number along with additional cell growth. The appearance of organized cellular outgrowth was only observed in the new-generation solutions. The ability to further increase tissue cryopreservation efficacy using new approaches has also been detailed in a tissue-engineered skin equivalent model.[172] This study reported on the benefits of altered solution design in combination with TAC focusing on either membrane-mediated and mitochondrial-mediated apoptotic events. The data revealed a marked increase in tissue viability and integrity compared to traditional media + serum + DMSO approaches.

While the area of molecular-based tissue cryopreservation remains in the early stages, the studies to date have provided a solid platform for continued experimentation. Coupled with the abundance of data available on the hypothermic storage of tissues and organs, it is clear that advances in the cryopreservation of tissues and possibly organs will continue to progress in the coming years.

3.10 MOLECULAR RESPONSE TO HYPOTHERMIC STORAGE

This chapter has focused primarily on the discipline of cryopreservation with reference to hypothermic storage throughout. Chapter 2 provides an in-depth discussion on the fundamentals of hypothermic storage, with an emphasis on preservation solution design. Many of the topics

discussed within that chapter have had direct implications on cryopreservation. As such, many of the principles of molecular-based cell death discussed within the context of cryopreservation also apply directly into hypothermic storage. In fact, studies into molecular-based apoptotic and necrotic cell death in hypothermia are more advanced than in cryopreservation. Studies by Mathew et al.,[186,187] Rauen et al.,[188,189] Ohno et al.,[190] Rugo et al.,[191] Huet et al.,[192] and Hansen et al.,[193,194] to name a few, have detailed the activation and effects of stress-induced apoptosis and necrosis following cell, tissue, and organ hypothermic preservation. These studies have encompassed a variety of systems, including corneal and renal cells, hepatocytes, keratinocytes, liver tissue, and vascular cells and tissue. Many of these reports have also described the development of next-generation hypothermic storage media, leading to improved cell storage in terms of both storage time and cell and tissue quality. Snyder et al.[195] recently described the result of molecular investigations utilizing these new solutions in the preservation of cardiomyocytes. In this study, a triad of assessment regimes was employed to determine the preservation efficacy of several media including culture media, ViaSpan®, and HypoThermosol®-FRS. The study reported that through development of technologies based on the principles discussed by Taylor (Chapter 2), as well as those of molecular control, cardiomyocyte hypothermic storage could be extended from one day at 4°C in media or ViaSpan to three days in HypoThermosol-FRS. Not only was cell viability maintained, but also mitochondrial activity and spontaneous contractile function of the cardiomyocytes was at levels near those of untreated controls. Further, Mathew et al.[196] recently detailed the combination of next-generation preservation solutions with TAC to effect even greater protection in liver and endothelial cells. Takesu et al.[197] described the improved protection of hepatocytes by the addition of ascorbic acid-2 glucoside to ViaSpan. Numerous other studies have reported on the benefits of attempts to control stress, and therefore molecular responses, during hypothermic storage in fibroblasts, hepatocytes, and endothelial and corneal cells. These reports have shown that through molecular control of a cell's stress response to low temperature, preservation efficacy can be increased. However, as with cryopreservation, it has been shown that alterations in the preservation media formulation have had the most profound and beneficial effect on hypothermic storage efficacy.

3.11 CONCLUSION

From the discussion presented in this chapter it is clear that there has been a significant level of activity in the preservation sciences over the last several years aimed at molecular-based controls. With the identification of apoptosis and a cellular, molecular-based response to cryopreservation, our approaches to cryopreservation have changed significantly. No longer are researchers limited to preservation processes that primarily provide structural support following thawing. We have to look no further than stem cell research to see why this is such a critical and monumental milestone for the cryopreservation sciences. With molecular findings and the resulting technologies, systems that were thought to be "uncryopreservable" from a practical application prospective—such as cardiomyocytes, neurons, and neural progenitor cells, engineered cells and tissues, cell therapy products, etc.—can now be cryopreserved successfully. Even in primary cell systems such as hepatocytes, successful cryopreservation has become a more attainable and acceptable option for cell storage due to the advances in the maintenance of cellular function following cryopreservation. This in itself is valuable, in that cryopreserved hepatocytes can now be more effectively utilized in basic science and drug discovery applications. With increases in post-thaw hepatocyte (as well as other cells) function and viability to levels near those of untreated controls, one can now avoid the necessity of "dual criteria" and "abstract" correlations of data sets as nonspecific evaluative tools.

Without a doubt, molecular-based study has propelled the cryobiological sciences to the forefront of scientific discovery. As our understanding continues to grow, advancements will continue to push the present-day limits of successful preservation. As such, given the current direction of the cryopreservation science, it appears that the future lies in the combination of next-generation

solution-specific strategies TAC or GASP (Genetically Activated Survival Programs) to improve post-thaw survival and failure.

REFERENCES

1. Baust, J.G., in *Advances in Biopreservation*, Baust, J.G. and Baust, J.M., Eds., Boca Raton, Taylor & Francis, 2007.
2. Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E.E., *Life in the Frozen State*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004.
3. Baust, J.M., Molecular mechanisms of cellular demise associated with cryopreservation failure, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 1, 17, 2002.
4. Gage, A., in *Advances in Biopreservation*, Baust, J.G. and Baust, J.M., Eds., Boca Raton, Taylor & Francis, 2007.
5. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Cell viability improves following inhibition of cryopreservation-induced apoptosis, *In Vitro Cell. Dev. Bio.–An.*, 36(4), 262–270, 2000.
6. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., Cryopreservation outcome is enhanced by intracellular-type medium and inhibition of apoptosis, *Cryobiology*, 37(4), 410–411, 1998.
7. Fu, T., Guo, D., Huang, X., O'Gorman, M.R., Huang, L., Crawford, S.E., and Soriano, H.E., Apoptosis occurs in isolated and banked primary mouse hepatocytes, *Cell Transplant.*, 10(1), 59–66, 2001.
8. Yagi, T., Hardin, J.A., Valenzuela, Y.M., Miyoshi, H., Gores, G.J., and Nyberg, S.L., Caspase inhibition reduces apoptotic death of cryopreserved porcine hepatocytes, *Hepatology*, 33(6), 1432–1440, 2001.
9. Baust, J.M., Vogel, M.J., Van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., A molecular basis of cryopreservation failure and its modulation to improve cell survival, *Cell Transplant.*, 10(7), 561–571, 2001.
10. deBoer, F., Grager, A.M., Pinedo, H.M., Kessler, F.L., van der Wall, E., Jonkhoff, A.R., van der Lelie, J., Huijgens, P.C., Ossenkoppele, G.J., and Schuurhuis, G.J., Extensive early apoptosis in frozen-thaws CD34-positive stem cells decreases threshold doses for haematological recovery after autologous peripheral blood progenitor cell transplantation, *Bone Marrow Transplant*, 29(3), 249–255, 2002.
11. Abrahamsen, J.F., Bakken, A.M., Bruserud O., and Gjertsen, B.T., Flow cytometric measurement of apoptosis and necrosis in cryopreserved PBPC concentrates from patients with malignant diseases, *Bone Marrow Transplant,* 29(2), 165–171, 2002.
12. Peter, M.E., Heufelder, A.E., and Hengartner, M.O., Advances in apoptosis research, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci,*. 94(24), 12736–12737, 1997.
13. Xiao, M. and Dooley, D.C., Assessment of cell viability and apoptosis in human umbilical cord blood following storage, *J. Hematother. Stem Cell Res.,* 12(1), 115–122, 2003.
14. Matsushita, T., Yagi, T., Hardin, J.A., Cragun, J.D., Crow, F.W., Bergen, H.R., III, Gores, G.J., and Nyberg, S.L., Apoptotic cell death and function of cryopreserved porcine hepatocytes in a bioartificial liver, *Cell Transplant.*, 12(2), 109–121, 2003.
15. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust J.G., Gene activation of the apoptotic caspase cascade following cryogenic storage, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 1, 63, 2002.
16. Baust, J.M., Advances in media for cryopreservation and storage, *Bioprocessing Int.*, 3(3), 46–56, 2005.
17. Martin, G., Sabido, O., Durand, P., and Levy, R., Cryopreservation induces an apoptosis-like mechanism in bull sperm, *Biol. Reprod.*, 17(1), 28–37, 2004.
18. Paasch, U., Grunewald, S., Agarwal, A., and Glandera, H.J., Activation pattern of caspases in human spermatozoa, *Fertil. Steril.*, 8(1), 802–9, 2004.
19. Taylor, M., in *Advances in Biopreservation*, Baust, J.G. and Baust, J.M., Eds., Boca Raton, Taylor & Francis, 2007.
20. Farrant, J., Mechanisms of injury and protection in living cells and tissues at low temperatures, in *Current Trends in Cryobiology*, Smith, A.U., Ed., 1970, 139–152, Plenum Press.
21. Farrant, J., Water transport and cell survival in cryobiological procedures, *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. London*, 278, 294–306, 1977.
22. Lovelock, J.E. and Bishop, M.W.H., Prevention of freezing damage to living cells by dimethyl sulphoxide, *Nature*, 183, 1394, 1959.
23. Mazur, P. and Schmidt, J.J., Interactions of cooling velocity, temperature, and warming velocity on the survival of frozen and thawed yeast, *Cryobiology*, 5(1), 1–17, 1968.

24. Mazur, P., Freezing and low temperature storage of freezing of living cells: Mechanisms and implications, *Amer. J. Physiol.*, 247(16), C125–C142, 1984.

25. Mazur, P., Equilibrium, quasi-equilibrium, and nonequilibrium freezing of mammalian embryos, *Cell BioPhys.*, 17:53–92, 1990.

26. Meryman, H.T., The exceeding of a minimum tolerable cell volume in hypertonic suspension as a cause of freezing injury, in *The Frozen Cell*, Wolstenholme, G.E.W. and O'Connor, M., Eds., Ciba Foundation Symposium, London, Churchill, 1970, 51–64.

27. Toner, M., Cravalho, E., and Karel, M., Cellular response of mouse oocytes to freezing stress: prediction of intracellular ice formation, *J. Biomech. Eng.*, 115, 169–174, 1990.

28. Leibo, S.P., Farrant, J., Mazur, P., Hanna, M.G., and Smith, L.H., Effects of freezing on marrow stem cell suspensions: Interactions of cooling and warming rates in the presence of PVP, sucrose, or glycerol, *Cryobiology*, 6, 315–332, 1970.

29. Steponkus, P.L. and Wiest, S.C., Freeze-thaw induced lesions in the plasma membrane, low temperature stress, in *Crop Plants: The Role of the Membrane*, Lyons, J.M., Graham, D.G., and Raison, J.K., Eds., New York, Academic Press, 1979, pp. 231–253.

30. Critzer, J.K., Arneson, B.W., Aaker, D.V., Huse-Benda, A.R., and Ball, G.D., Factors affecting the survival of mouse two-cell embryos, *J. Reprod. Fertil.*, 82, 27–33, 1988.

31. Polge, C., Smith, A.U., and Parkes, A.S., Retrieval of spermatozoa after vitrification and dehydration at low temperatures, *Nature*, 164, 666–667, 1949.

32. Borderie, V.M., Lopez, M., Lombet, A., Carvajal-Gonzalez, S., Cywiner, C., and Laroche, L., Cryopreservation and culture of human corneal keratocytes, *Invest. Ophthalmol. Vis. Sci.*, 39(8), 1511–1519, 1998.

33. Donaldson, C., Armitage, W.J., and Denning-Kendall, P.A., et al., Optimal cryopreservation of human umbilical cord blood, *Bone Marrow Transplant*, 18(4), 725–731, 1996.

34. Frim, J., Snyder, R.A., McGann, L.E., and Kruuv, J., Growth kinetics of cells following freezing in liquid nitrogen, *Cryobiology*, 15(5), 502–516, 1978.

35. Zambelli, A., Poggi, G., Da Prada, G., Pedrazzoli, P., Cuomo, A., Miotti, D., Perotti, C., Preti, P., and Robustelli della Cuna, G., Clinical toxicity of cryopreserved circulating progenitor cells infusion, *Anticancer Res.*, 18(6B), 4705–4708, 1998.

36. Williams, R.J., The mechanisms of cryoprotection in the intertidal mollusk mytilus, *Cryobiology*, 4, 250–255, 1979.

37. Loecke, P.D., Fuller, B.J., Koptelov, V.A., Grischenko, V.I., and Loecker, W.D., Cryopreservation of isolated rat hepatocytes: Effects of iron-mediated oxidative stress on metabolic activity, *Cryobiology*, 34(2), 150–156, 1997.

38. Pegg, D.E. and Diaper, M.P., The mechanism of injury to slowly-frozen erythrocytes, *Biophys.*, 54, 471–488, 1988.

39. Paynter, S.J., Fuller, B.J., McGrath, J.J., and Shaw, R.W., The effects of cryoprotectant permeability on mouse oocytes, *Cryo-Lett.*, 16, 321–324, 1995.

40. Coger, R. and Toner, M., Preservation techniques for biomaterials, *The Biomedical Engineering Handbook*, chapter 105, 1567–1578, 1995.

41. Morris, C.B., Cryopreservation of animal and human cell lines, *Methods Mol. Biol.*, 38, 179–87, 1995.

42. Eroglu, A., Russo, M.J., Bieganski, R., Fowler, A., Cheley, S., Bayley, H., and Toner, M., Intracellular trehalose improves the survival of cryopreserved mammalian cells, *Nature Biotechnol.*, 18(2), 163–7, 2000.

43. Loretz, L.J., Li, A.P., Flye, M.W., and Wilson, A.G., Optimization of cryopreservation procedures for rat and human hepatocytes, *Xenobiotica*, 19(5), 489–498, 1989.

44. Fowke, K.R., Behnke, J., Hanson, C., Shea, K., and Cosentino, L.M., Apoptosis: a method for evaluating the cryopreservation of whole blood and peripheral blood mononuclear cells, *J. Immunol. Methods*, 20, 244(1–2), 139–1344, 2000.

45. Martin H., Bournique B., Sarsat J.P., Albaladejo V., and Lerche-Langrand C., Cryopreserved rat liver slices: a critical evaluation of cell viability, histological integrity, and drug-metabolizing enzymes, *Cryobiology*, 41(2), 135–144, 2000.

46. Searle, J., Kerr, J.F., and Bishop, C.J., Necrosis and apoptosis: distinct modes of cell death with fundamentally different significance, *Pathol. Annu.*, 2, 229–259, 1982.

47. Walker, N.I., Harmon, B.V., Gobe, G.C., and Kerr, J.F., Patterns of cell death, *Methods Achiev. Exp. Pathol.*, 13, 18–54, 1988.
48. Kerr, J.F., Shrinkage necrosis of adrenal cortical cells, *J. Pathol.*, 107(3), 217–219, 1972.
49. Columbano, A., Cell death: Current difficulties in discriminating apoptosis from necrosis in the context of pathological processes, In Vivo. *J. Cellular Biochem.*, 58, 181–190, 1995.
50. Peters G. and Wirth, C.J., The current state of meniscal allograft transplantation and replacement, *Knee*, 10(1), 19–31, 2003.
51. Habibovic S., Hrgovic Z., Bukvic I., and Hrgovic I., Molecular mechanisms in apoptosis, *Med. Arh.*, 54(1), 33–40, 2000.
52. Wyllie A.H., Kerr J.F., and Currie A.R., Cell death: The significance of apoptosis, *Int. Rev. Cytol.*, 68, 251–306, 1980.
53. Alnemri, E.S., Mammalian cell death proteases: A family of highly conserved aspartate specific cysteine proteases, *J. Cell Biochem.*, 64(1), 33–42, 1997.
54. Cohen, G.M., Caspases: The executioners of apoptosis, *Biochem. J.*, 326(1), 1–16, 1997.
55. Kanzler, S. and Galle, P.R., Apoptosis and the liver, *Semin. Cancer Biol.*, 10(3), 173–184, 2000.
56. Sheikh, M.S. and Fornace, A.J., Death and decoy receptors and p53-mediated apoptosis, *Leukemia*, 14(8), 1509–1513, 2000.
57. Gewirtz, D.A., Growth arrest and cell death in the breast tumor cell in response to ionizing radiation and chemotherapeutic agents which induce DNA damage, *Breast Cancer Res. Treat.*, 62(3), 223–235, 2000.
58. Nicotera, P., Liset, M., Fava, E., Berliocchi, L., and Volbracht, C., Energy requirement for caspase activation and neuronal cell death, *Brain Pathol.*, 10, 276–282, 2000.
59. Horvitz, H.R., Shaham, S., and Hengartner, M.O., The genetics of programmed cell death in the nematode caenorhabditis elegans, *J. Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol.*, 59, 377–385, 1994.
60. Xue, D., Shaham, S., and Horvitz, H.R., The caenorhabditis elegans cell-death protein CED-3 is a cysteine protease with substrate specificities similar to those of the human CPP32 protease, *Genes Dev.*, 10(9), 1073–1083, 1996.
61. Slee, E.A., Harte, M.T., Kluck, R.M., Wolf, B.B., Casiano, C.A., Newmeyer, D.D., Wang, H.G., Reed, J.C., Nicholson, D.W., Alnemri, E.S., Green, D.R., and Martin, S.J., Ordering the cytochrome c-initiated caspase cascade: Hierarchical activation of caspases-2, -3, -6, -7, -8, and -10 in a caspase-9-dependent manner, *J. Cell Biol.*, 144(2), 281–292, 1999.
62. Yin, X.M., Signal transduction mediated by bid, a pro-death Bcl-2 family proteins, connects the death receptor and mitochondria apoptosis pathways, *Cell Res.*, 10(3), 161–167, 2000.
63. Hengartner, M.O. and Horvitz, H.R., C. elegans cell survival gene ced-9 encodes a functional homolog of the mammalian proto-oncogene bcl-2, *Cell*, 76(4), 665–676, 1994.
64. King, K. and Cidlowski, J.A., Cell cycle and apoptosis: Common pathways to life and death, *J. Cellular Biochem.*, 58, 175–180, 1995.
65. Nunez, G., Benedict, M.A., Hu, Y., and Inohara, N., Caspases: The proteases of the apoptotic pathway, *Oncogene*, 17, 3237–3245, 1998.
66. Fernandes-Alnemri, T., Litwack, G., and Alnemri, E.S., CPP32, a novel human apoptotic protein with homology to caenorhabditis elegans cell death protein ced-3 and mammalian interleukin-1 beta-converting enzyme, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 269(49), 30761–30764, 1994.
67. Leist, M., Single, B., Castoldi, A.F., Kuhnle, S., and Nicotera, P., Intracellular adenosine triphosphate (ATP) concentration: A switch in the decision between apoptosis and necrosis, *J. Exp. Med.*, 185(8), 1481–1486, 1997.
68. Van Buskirk, R.G., Baust, J.M., Snyder, K.K., Mathew, A.J., and Baust, J.G., Hypothermic storage and cryopreservation: The issues of successful short-term and long-term preservation of cells and tissues, *Bioprocessing Int.*, 42–48, 2004.
69. Fink, K.B., Andrews, L.J., Butler, W.E., and Ona, V.O., Li, M., Bogdanov, M., Endres, M., Khan, S.Q., Namura, S., Stieg, P.E., Beal, M.F., Moskowitz, M.A., Yuan, J., and Friedlander, R.M., Reduction of post-traumatic brain injury and free radical production by inhibition of the caspase-1 cascade, *Neuroscience*, 94(4), 1213–1218, 1999.
70. Emery, E., Aldana, P., Bunge, M.B., Puckett, W., Srinivasan, A., Keane, R.W., Bethea, J., and Levi, A.D., Apoptosis after traumatic human spinal cord injury, *J. Neurosurg*, 89(6), 911–920, 1998.

71. Elsasser, A., Suzuki, K., and Schaper, J., Unresolved issues regarding the role of apoptosis in the pathogenesis of ischemic injury and heart failure, *J. Mol. Cell Cardiol.,* 32(5), 711–724, 2000.

72. Brune, B., von Knethen, A., and Sandua, K.B., Nitric oxide and its role in apoptosis, *Euro. J. of Pharm.*, 351, 261–272, 1998.

73. Sakimur, P., Dong, Z., Weinberg, J.M., and Venkatachalam, M.A., Mechanisms of cell death in hypoxia/reoxygenation injury, *Oncogene*, 17, 3341–3349, 1998.

74. Reutelingsperger, C.P.M., van Heerde, W.L., Annexin V: The regulator of phosphatidylserine-catalyzed inflammation and coagulation during apoptosis, *Cell Mol. Life Sci.*, 53, 524–532, 1997.

75. Condo, I. and Testi, R., Intracellular mediators of programmed cell death initiated at the cell surface receptor, *Fas. Transpl. Int.*, 13(1), S3-6, 2000.

76. Blankenberg, F.G., Katsikis, P.D., Tait, J.F., Davis, J.F., Naumovski, L., Ohtsuki, K.O., Kopiwoda, S., Abrams, M.J., Darkes, M., Robbins, R.C., Maecker, H.T., and Strauss, H.W., *In vivo* detection and imaging of phoshatidylserine expression during programmed cell death, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*, 95, 6349–6354, 1998.

77. Li, P., Nijhawan, D., Budihardjo, I., Srinivasula, S.M., Ahmad, M., Alnemri, E.S., and Wang, X., Cytochrome c and dATP-dependent formation of apaf-1/caspase-9 complex initiates an apoptotic protease cascade, *Cell*, 91(4), 479–489, 1997.

78. Evan, G. and Littlewood, T., A matter of life and cell death, *Science*, 281, 1317–1321, 1998.

79. Twomey, C. and McCarthy, J.V., Pathways of apoptosis and importance in development, *J. Cell Mol. Med.*, 9(2), 345–359, 2005.

80. Burke, R.E. and Kholodilov, N.G., Programmed cell death: Does it play a role in Parkinson's disease? *Ann. Neurol.*, 44(1), S126–133, 1998.

81. Davis, M.A. and Ryan, D.H., Apoptosis in the kidney, *Toxicol. Pathol.*, 26(6), 810–825, 1998.

82. Gustafsson, A.B. and Gottlieb, R.A., Mechanisms of apoptosis in the heart, *J. Clin. Immunol.*, 23(6), 447–459, 2003.

83. Noble, B., Bone microdamage and cell apoptosis, *Eur. Cell Mater.*, 6(55), 46–55, 2003.

84. Fadeel, B., Programmed cell clearance, *Cell. Mol. Life Sci.*, 60(12), 2575–2585, 2003.

85. Ashkenazi, A. and Dixit, V.M., Death receptors: signaling and modulation, *Science*, 281, 1305–1308, 1998.

86. Adams, J.M. and Cory, S., The bcl-2 protein family: arbiters of cell survival, *Science*, 281, 1322–1326, 1998.

87. Dragovich, T., Rudin, C.M., and Thompson, C.B., Signal transduction pathways that regulate cell survival and cell death, *Oncogene*, 17(25), 3207–3213, 1998.

88. Green, D.R. and Reed, J.C., Mitochondria and apoptosis, *Science*, 281, 1309–1312, 1998.

89. Hetts, S.W., To die or not to die: An overview of apoptosis and its role in disease, *JAMA*, 279 (4), 300–307, 1998.

90. Kroemer, G., Dallaportam, B., and Resche-Rigon, M., The mitochondria death/life regulators in apoptosis and necrosis, *Annu. Rev. Physiol.*, 60, 619–642, 1998.

91. Bratton, S.B. and Cohen, G.M., Caspase cascades in chemically-induced apoptosis, *Adv. Exp. Med. Biol.*, 500, 407–420, 2001.

92. Salvesen, G.S., Programmed cell death and the caspases, *APMIS*, 107, 73–79, 1999.

93. Cryns V. and Yuan, J., The cutting edge: Caspases in apoptosis and disease, in *When Cells Die*, Lockshin, R., Zakeri, Z., and Tilly, J., Eds., Wiley-Liss, Inc., 177–210, 1998.

94. Idriss, H.T. and Naismith, J.H., TNF alpha and the TNF receptor superfamily: Structure-function relationship(s), *Microsc. Res. Tech.*, 50(3), 184–195, 2000.

95. Lens, S.M., den Drijver, B.F., Potgens, A.J., Tesselaar, K., van Oers, M.H., and van Lier, R.A., Dissection of pathways leading to antigen receptor-induced and Fas/CD95-induced apoptosis in human B cells, *Immunol.*, 160(12), 6083–6092, 1998.

96. Ricci-Vitiani, L., Conticello, C., Zeuner, A., and De Maria, R., CD95/CD95L interactions and their role in autoimmunity, *Apoptosis*, 5(5), 419–424, 2000.

97. Abe, K., Kurakin, A., Mohseni-Maybodi, M., Kay, B., and Khosravi-Far, R., The complexity of TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand, *Ann. NY Acad. Sci. Rev.*, 926, 52–63, 2000.

98. Chen, G., Goeddel, D.V., TNF-R1 signaling: A beautiful pathway, *Science Review*, 296(5573), 1634–1635, 2002.

99. Kruidering, M., and Evan, G.I., Caspase-8 in apoptosis: The beginning of "the end"? *IUBMB Life*, 50(2), 85–90, 2000.

100. Denecker, G., Vercammen, D., Declercq, W., and Vandenabeele, P., Apoptotic and necrotic cell death induced by death domain receptors, *Cell. Mol. Life Sci.,* 58(3), 356–370, 2001.

101. Jones, R.A., Johnson,V.L., Buck, N.R., Dobrota, M., Hinton, R.H., Chow, S.C., and Kass, G.E., Fas-mediated apoptosis in mouse hepatocytes involves the processing and activation of caspases, *Hepatology*, 27(6), 1632–1642, 1998.

102. Schlegel, J., Peters, I., Orrenius, S., Miller, D.K., Thornberry, N.A., Yamin, T.T., and Nicholson, D.W., CPP32/apopain is a key interleukin 1 beta converting enzyme-like protease involved in Fas-mediated apoptosis, *J. Biol Chem.*, 271(4), 1841–1844, 1996.

103. Zimmermann, K.C. and Green, D.R., How cells die: Apoptosis pathways, *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.,* 108(4), S99–103, 2001.

104. Duchen, M.R., Role of mitochondria in health and disease, *Diabetes*, 53, S96, 2004.

105. Kim, J.-S., He, L., and Lemasters, J.J., Mitochondrial permeability transition: A common pathway to necrosis and apoptosis, *Biochem. Biophy. Res. Comm.*, 304, 463, 2003.

106. Cepero, E., Johnson, B.W., and Boise, L.H., Cloning and analysis of Bcl-2 family genes, *Methods Cell Biol.*, 66, 29, 2001.

107. Horvitz, H.R., Genetic control of programmed cell death in the nematode caenorhabditis elegans, *Cancer Res.*, 59(7), 1701s–1706s, 1999.

108. Newmeyer, D.D., Mitochondria: Releasing power for life and unleasing the machineries of death, *Cell*, 112, 481, 2003.

109. Tsujimoto, Y., Bcl-2 family of proteins: Life-or-death switch in mitochondria, *Bioscience Rep.*, 22, 47, 2002.

110. Han, D., Antunes, F., Canali, R., Rettori, D., and Cadenas, E., Voltage-dependent anion channels control the release of the superoxide anion from mitochondria to cytosol, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 278, 5557, 2003.

111. Thornberry, N.A. and Lazebnik, Y., Caspases: Enemies within, *Science*, 281, 1312–1316, 1998.

112. Kulms, D. and Schwarz, T., Molecular mechanisms involved in UV-induced apoptotic cell death, *Skin Pharmacol Appl. Skin Physiol. Review*, 15(5), 342–347, 2002.

113. Smith, M.L. and Seo, Y.R., p53 regulation of DNA excision repair pathways, *Mutagenesis*, 17(2), 149–156, 2002.

114. Arii, S., Teramoto, K., and Kawamura, T., Current progress in the understanding of and therapeutic strategies for ischemia and reperfusion injury of the liver, *J. Hepatobiliary Pancreat. Surg. Rev.*, 10(3), 189–194, 2003.

115. Colman, M.S., Afshari, C.A., and Barrett, J.C., Regulation of p53 stability and activity in response to genotoxic stress, *Mutat. Res. Rev.*, 462(2–3), 179–188, 2000.

116. Bras, M., Queenan, B., and Susin, S.A., Programmed cell death via mitochondria: Different modes of dying, *Biochemistry*, 70, 231, 2005.

117. LeBlanc, A.C., Natural cellular inhibitors of caspases, *Prog. Neuro-Psychopharmacol. Biol. Psych.*, 27, 215, 2003.

118. Liu, C.Y., Liu, Y.H., Lin, S.M., Yu, C.T., Wang, C.H., Lin, H.C., Lin, C.H., and Kuo, H.P., Apoptotic neutrophils undergoing secondary necrosis induce human lung epithelial cell detachment, *J. Biomed. Sci.,* 10(6 Pt. 2), 746–756, 2003.

119. Jaeschke, H. and Lemasters, J.J., Apoptosis versus oncotic necrosis in hepatic ischemia/reperfusion injury, *Gastroenterol. Rev.*, 125(4), 1246–1257, 2003.

120. Chavez-Reyes, A., Parant, J.M., Amelse, L.L., de Oca Luna, R.M., Korsmeyer, S.J., and Lozano, G., Switching mechanisms of cell death in mdm2- and mdm4-null mice by deletion of p53 downstream targets, *Cancer Res.*, 63(24), 8664–8669, 2003.

121. Kuhtreiber, W.M., Hayashi, T., Dale, E.A., and Faustman, D.L., Central role of defective apoptosis in autoimmunity, *J. Mol. Endocrinol.*, 31(3), 373–399, 2003.

122. Claveria, C., Martinez, A.C., and Torres, M.A., Bax/Bak-independent mitochondrial death pathway triggered by Drosophila Grim GH3 domain in mammalian cells, *J. Biol. Chem.,* 279(2), 1368–1375, 2004.

123. Fisher, D.E., The p53 tumor suppressor: Critical regulator of life and death in cancer, *Apoptosis*, 6(1–2), 7–15, 2001.

124. Howell, S.B., Resistance to apoptosis in prostate cancer cells, *Mol. Urol.*, 4(3), 225–229, 2000.
125. Higuchi, S., Tamura, T., and Oda, T., Cross-talk between the pathways leading to the induction of apoptosis and the secretion of tumor necrosis factor-alpha in ricin-treated RAW 264.7 cells, *J. Biochem.*, 134(6), 927–933, 2003.
126. Terminella, C., Tollefson, K., Kroczynski, J., Pelli, J., and Cutaia, M., Inhibition of apoptosis in pulmonary endothelial cells by altered pH, mitochondrial function, and ATP supply, *Am. J. Physiol. Lung Cell. Mol. Physiol.*, 283(6), L1291–1302, 2002.
127. Jurisicova, A., Varmuza, S., and Casper, R.F., Involvement of programmed cell death in pre-implantation embryo demise, *Hum. Reprod. Update*, 1(6), 558–566, 1995.
128. Borderie, V.M. and Laroche, L., Ultrastructure of cultured and cryopreserved human corneal keratocytes, *Cornea*, 18(5), 589–594, 1999.
129. Hilbert, S.L., Luna, R.E., Zhang, J., Wang, Y., Hopkins, R.A., Yu, Z.X., and Ferrans, V.J., Allograft heart valves: The role of apoptosis-mediated cell loss, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 117(3), 454–462, 1999.
130. Schmidt-Mende, J., Hellstrom-Lindberg, E., Joseph, B., and Zhivotovsky, B., Freezing induces artificial cleavage of apoptosis-related proteins in human bone marrow cells, *J. Immunol. Methods*, 245(1–2), 91–94, 2000.
131. Villalba, R., Pena, J., Luque, E., Villalba, J.M., and Gomez-Villagran, J.L., Keratocyte injury in human corneas cryopreserved under standard conditions, *Cell Tissue Bank*, 5(4), 201–204, 2004.
132. Paasch, U., Sharma, R.K., Grupta, A.K., Grunewald, S., Mascha, E.J., Thomas, A.R., Jr., Glander, H.J., and Agarwal, A., Cryopreservation and thawing is associated with varying extent of activation of apoptotic machinery in subsets of ejaculated human spermatozoa, *Biol. Reprod.*, 71(6), 1828–1837, 2004.
133. Men, H., Monson, R.L., Parrish, J.J., and Rutledge, J.J., Degeneration of cryopreserved bovine oocytes via apoptosis during subsequent culture, *Cryobiology*, 47(1), 73–81, 2003.
134. Sarkar, S., Kalia, V., and Montelaro, R.C., Caspase-mediated apoptosis and cell death of rhesus macaque CD4+ T-cells due to cryopreservation of peripheral blood monoculcear cells can be rescued by cytokine treatment after thawing, *Cryobiology*, 47(1), 44–58, 2003.
135. Ricco, E.K., Neves, I., Banic, D.M., Corte-Real, S., Alecrim, M.G., Morgado, M., Daniel-Ribeiro, C.T., and Ferreira-da-Cruz, M.F., Cryopreservation of peripheral blood mononuclear cells does not significantly affect the levels of spontaneous apoptosis after 24-h culture, *Cryobiology*, 45(2), 127–134, 2002.
136. Baust, J.M., Cosentino, M., Meeks, E., Baer, J., van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Apoptotic cell death contributes significantly to peripheral blood mononuclear cells cryopreservation failure, *Cryobiology*, 151(4), 354, 2005.
137. Duru, N.K., Morshedi, M.S., Schuffner, A., and Oehninger, S., Cryopreservation-thawing of fractionated human spermatozoa is associated with membrane phosphatidylserine externalization and not DNA fragmentation, *J. Androl.*, 22(4), 646–651, 2001.
138. Schuurhuis, G.J., Muijen, M.M., Oberink, J.W., de Boer, F., Ossenkopprlr, G.J., and Broxterman, H.J., Large populations of non-clonogenic early apoptotic CD34-positive cells are present in frozen-thawed peripheral blood stem cell transplants, *Bone Marrow Transplant*, 27(5), 487–498, 2001.
139. Lund, P.K., Westvik, A.B., Joo, G.B., Ovstebo, R., Haug, K.B., and Kierulf, P., Flow cytometric evaluation of apoptosis, necrosis and recovery when culturing monocytes, *J. Immumol. Methods*, 252(1–2), 45–55, 2001.
140. Marquez-Alvarado, Y.C., Galina, C.S., Castilla, B., Leon, H., Moreno-Mendoza, N., Evidence of damage in cryopreserved and fresh bovine embryos using the tunnel technique. *Reprod. Domest. Anim.*, 39(3), 141–145, 2004.
141. Demirci, B., Salle, B., Frappart L., Franck, M., Guerin, J.F., and Lornage, J., Morphological alterations and DNA fragmentation in oocytes from primordial and primary follicles after freezing-thawing of ovarian cortex in sheep, *Fertil. Steril.*, 77(3), 595–600, 2002.
142. Anzar, M., He, L., Buhr, M.M., Krietsch, T.G., and Pauls, K.P., Sperm apoptosis in fresh and cryopreserved bull semen detected by flow cytometry and its relationship with fertility, *Biol. Reprod.*, 66(2), 354–360, 2002.
143. Bontadini, A., Taxxari, P.L., Manfroi, S., Tassi, C., and Conte, R., Apoptosis in leucodepleted packed red blood cells, *Vox. Sang.* 83(1), 35–41, 2002.

144. Ohno, K., Nelson, L.R., Mitooka, K., and Bourne, W.M., Transplantation of cryopreserved human corneas in a xenograft model, *Cryobiology*, 44(2), 142–149, 2002.

145. Vogel, M.J., Baust, J.M., van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., Apoptotic caspases are activated following cryopreservation, *Cryobiology*, 41(4), 390, 2000.

146. Vogel, M.J., Baust, J.M., van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Proteomic profiling following cryopreservation: Evidence of a complex set of biomolecular events influencing cell survival, *Cryobiology*, 47(3), 259, 2003.

147. Li, A.P., Gorycki, P.D., Hengstler, J.G., Kedderis, G.L., Koebe, H.G., Rahmani, R., de Sousas, G., Silva, J.M., and Skett, P., Present status of the application of cryopreserved hepatocytes in the evaluation of xenobiotics: Consensus of an international expert panel, *Chem. Biol. Interact. Review*, 121(1), 117–123, 1999.

148. Guillouzo, A., Rialland, L., Fautrel, A., Guyomard, C., Survival and function of isolated hepatocytes after cryopreservation, *Chem. Biol. Interact. Review*, 121(1), 7–16, 1999.

149. Rajotte, R., Cryopreservation of pancreatic islets, *Transplant Proc. Review*, 26(2), 395–396, 1994.

150. Yokomuro, H., Mickle, D.A., Weisel, R.D., and Li, R.K., Optimal conditions for heart cell cryopreservation for transplantation, *Mol. Cell. Biochem.*, 242(1–2), 109–114, 2003.

151. Dannie, E., Peripheral blood stem cell transplantation, part 1, *Nurs. Stand.,* 11(10), 43–45, 1996.

152. Hubel, A., Parameters of cell freezing: Implications for the cryopreservation of, stem cells, *Transfus. Med. Rev.*, 11(3), 224–233, 1997.

153. Duru, N.K., Morshedi, M., Schuffner, A., and Oehninger, S., Semen treatment with progesterone and/or acetyle-L-carnitine does not improve sperm motality or membrane damage after cryopreservation-thawing, *Fertil. Steril.*, 74(4), 715–720, 2000.

154. Sosef, M., Baust, J.M., Fowler, A., and Toner, M., Cryopreservation of isolated primary rat hepaotcytes: Elevated survival and enhanced long-term function, *Ann. Surgery*, 241(1), 123–133, 2005.

155. Baust, J.M., Kulkarni, H., Vogel, M.J., van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Cellular proteomic alterations following cryopreservation influence cell survival, *Cryobiology*, 51(4), 406, 2005.

156. Crowe, J.H., Tablin, F., Tsvetkova, N., Oliver, A.E., Walker, N., and Crowe, L.M., Are lipid phase transitions responsible for chilling damage in human platelets? *Cryobiology*, 38(3), 180–191, 1999.

157. Kleinhans, F.W., Membrane permeability modeling: Kedem-Katchalsky vs. a two-parameter formalism, *Cryobiol. Rev..,* 37(4), 271–289, 1998.

158. Iftekhan, M.A. and Bischof, J.C., Characterization of the use of TNF-alpha to augment cryoinjury: An in vitro study in the isolated cells of prostate tumors, *Cryobiology*, 51(4), 2005.

159. Clarke, D.M., Gage, A.A., van Buskirk, R.G., Baust, J.G., and Baust, J.M., Continued understanding of the molecular mechanisms involved in freezing-induced apoptosis, *Cryobiology*, 51(4), 366, 2005.

160. Han, B., Iftekhar, A., and Bischof, J.C., Improved cryosurgery by use of thermophysical and inflammatory adjuvants, *Technol. Cancer Res. Treat*, 3(2), 103–111, 2004.

161. Chao, B.H., He, X., and Bischof, J.C., Pre-treatment inflammation induced by TNF-alpha augments cryosurgical injury on human prostate cancer, *Cryobiology*, 49(1), 10–27, 2004.

162. Ahn, H.J., Sohn, I.P., Kwon, H.C., Jo do, H., Park, Y.D., and Min, C.K., Characteristics of the cell membrane fluidity, actin fibers, and mitochondrial dysfunctions of frozen-thawed two-cell mouse embryos, *Mol. Reprod. Dev.*, 61(4), 466–476, 2002.

163. Vogel, M.J., Baust, J.M., van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Involvement of mitochondrial-associated pathway of apoptosis in cryopreservation of normal human dermal fibroblasts, *Cryobiology*, 47(3), 284, 2003.

164. Clarke, D., Baust, J.M., van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., Addition of anticancer agents enhances freezing-induced prostate cancer cell death: Implications of Bcl-2 and Bax involvement, *Cryobiology*, 49(1), 45–61, 2004.

165. Anderson, C.D., Belous, A., Pierce, J., Nicoud, I.B., Knox, C., Wakata, A., Pinson, C.W., and Chari, R.S., Mitochondrial calcium uptake regulates cold preservation-induced Bax translocation and early reperfusion apoptosis, *Am. J. Transplant.*, 4(3), 352–362, 2004.

166. Kuznetsov, A.V., Schneeberger, S., Seiler, R., Brandacher, G., Mark, W., Steurer, W., Skas, V., Usson, Y., Margreiter, R., and Gnaiger, E., Mitochondrial defects and heterogeneous cytochrome c release after cardiac cold ischemia and reperfusion, Am. J. Physiol. Heart Circ. Physiol286(5), H1633–1641, 2003.

167. Zilli, L., Schiavone, R., Zonno, V., Storelli, C., and Vilella, S., Evaluation of DNA damage in dicentratchus labrax sperm following cryopreservation, *Cryobiology*, 47(3), 227–235, 2003.

168. Thompson-Cree, M.E., McClure, N., Donnelly, E.T., Steele, K.E., and Lewis, S.E., Effects of cryopreservation on testicular sperm nuclear DNA fragmentation and its relationship with assisted conception outcome following ICSI with testicular spermatozoa, *Reprod. Biomed. Online*, 7(4), 449–455, 2003.

169. Taylor, M.J., Bailes, J.E., and Elrifai, A.M., A new solution for life without blood: Asanguineous low-flow perfusion of a whole-body perfusate during 3-hour cardiac arrest and prolonged hypothermia, *Circulation*, 91(2), 431–444, 1995.

170. Stylianou, J., Vowels, M., and Hadfield, K., CryoStor™ significantly improves cryopreservation of haematopetic stem cells (HSC) cytotherapy, 7(1), 117, 2005.

171. Snyder, K.K., Baust, J.M., van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Improved cryopreservation of vascular tissue, *Cryobiology*, 51(4), 357, 2005.

172. Baust, J.M., van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Cryopreservation of an engineered skin equivalent: The apoptosis paradigm, *Adv. Heat Mass Trans. Biotech*, HTD-Vol. 363/BED-(44), 71–76, 1999.

173. Robilotto, A.T., Baust J.M., van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Calpain activation influences cryopreservation outcome, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 41(1), 17–30, 2006.

174. Karlsson, J.O.M. and Toner, M., Long-term storage of tissue by cryopreservation: Critical issues, *Biomaterials*, 17, 243–256, 1996.

175. Naughton, G.K., From lab bench to market: Critical issues in tissue engineering. *Ann. NY Acad. Sci.*, 961, 372–385, 2002.

176. Brockbank, in *Advances in Biopreservation*, Baust, J.G. and Baust, J.M., Eds., Boca Raton, Taylor & Francis, 2007.

177. Woods, E.J., Benson, J.D., Agca, Y., and Critser, J.K., Fundamental cryobiology of reproductive cells and tissues, *Cryobiology*, 48(2), 146–156, 2004.

178. Glockner, R., Steinmetzer, P., Drobner, C., and Muller, D., Application of cryopreserved precision-cut liver slices in pharmacotoxicology: Principles, literature data and own investigations with special reference to CYP1A1-mRNA induction, *Exp. Toxicol. Pathol.*, 50(4–6), 440–449, 1998.

179. Maas, W.J., Leeman, W.R., Groten, J.P., and van de Sandt, J.J., Cryopreservation of precision-cut rat liver slices using a computer-controlled freezer, *Toxicol. In Vitro.*, 14(6), 523–530, 2000.

180. Reardon, M.J. and Oury, J.H., Evolving experience with cryopreserved mitral valve allografts, *Curr. Opin. Cardiol Review*, 13(2), 85–90, 1998.

181. Brockbank, K.G., Effects of cryopreservation upon vein function in vivo, *Cryobiology*, 31(1), 71–81, 1994.

182. Farber, A. and Major, K., Cryopreserved saphenous vein allografts in infrainguinal arterial reconstruction, *J. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 45(3), 213–216, 2004.

183. Trent, J.F. and Kirsner, R.S., Tissue engineered skin: Apligraf, a bi-layered living skin, *Int. J. Clin. Pract.*, 52(6), 408–413, 1998.

184. Liu, H.C., He, Z., and Rosenwaks, Z., Mouse ovarian tissue cryopreservation has only a minor effect on in vitro follicular maturation and gene expression, *J. Assist. Reprod. Gen.*, 20(10), 421–431, 2003.

185. Pascual, G., Garcia-Honduvilla, N., Rodriquez, M., Turegano, F., and Bellon, J.M., Effect of the thawing process on cryopreserved arteries, *Cryobiology*, 15(6), 619–627, 2001.

186. Mathew, A.J., Hollister, W.R., Addona, T., Baust, J.G., and van Buskirk, R.G., Vitamin E and EDTA improve the efficacy of hypothermosol-implication of apoptosis, *In Vitro Mol. Toxicol.*, 12(3), 163–172, 1999.

187. Mathew, A.J., Baust, J.G., and van Buskirk, R.G., Improved hypothermic preservation of human renal cells through suppression of both apoptosis and necrosis, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 1, 239, 2003.

188. Rauen, U., Elling, B., Gizewski, E.R., Korth, H.G., Sustmann, R., and de Groot, H., Involvement of reactive oxygen species in the preservation injury to cultured liver endothelial cells, *Free Radical Biol. Med.*, 22(1–2), 17–24, 1997.

189. Rauen, U. and de Groot, H., New insights into the cellular and molecular mechanisms of cold storage injury, *J. Investig. Med.*, 52(5), 299–309, 2004.

190. Ohno, K., Mitooka, K., Nelson, L.R., Hodge, D.O., and Bourne, W.M., Keratocyte activation and apoptosis in transplanted human corneas in a xenograft model, *Invest. Ophthalmol. Vis. Sci.* 43(4), 1025–1031, 2002.

191. Ryugo, M., Sawa, Y., Ono, M., Fukushima, N., Aleshin, A.N., Mizuno, S., Nakamura, T., and Matsuda, H., Myocardial protective effect of human recombinant hepatocytes growth factor for prolonged heart graft preservation in rats, *Transplantation*, 78(8), 1153–1158, 2004.
192. Huet, P.M., Nagaoka, M.R., Desbiens, G., Tarrab, E., Brault, A., Bralet, M.P., and Bilodeau, M., Sinusoidal endothelial cell and hepatocytes death following cold ischemia–warm reperfusion of the rat liver, *Hepatology*, 39(4), 1110–1119, 2004.
193. Hansen, T.N., Wang H., and Southard, J.H., Mitochondrial injury limits salvaging marginal livers by machine perfusion, *Transplant Proc.*, 33(1–2), 954–955, 2001.
194. Hansen, T.N., Haworth, R.A., and Southard, J.H., Warm and cold ischemia result in different mechanisms of injury to the coronary vasculature during reperfusion of rat hearts, *Transplant Proc.*, 32(1), 15–18, 2000.
195. Snyder K.K., Baust, J.M., VanBuskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Enhanced hypothermic storage of neonatal cardiomyocytes, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 3(1), 61–74, 2005.
196. Mathew, A.J., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Cell preservation in reparative and regenerative medicine: Evolution of individualized solution composition, *Tissue Eng.*, 10 (11–12), 1662, 2004.
197. Takesu, M., Maruyama, M., Shibata, N., Kunieda, T., Okitsu, T., Sakaguchi, M., Totsugawa, T., Kosaka, Y., Arata, A., Ikeda, H., Matsuoka, J., Oyama, T., Kodama, M., Ohmoto, K., Yamamoto, S., Kurabayashi, Y., Yamamoto, I., Tanaka, N., and Kobayashi, N., Maintenance of cold-preserved porcine hepatocytes function with UW solution and ascorbic acid-2 glucoside, *Cell Transplant*, 12(6), 599–606, 2003.

4 Selective Cryotherapy: Preservation-Ablation

Andrew Gage, Kristi Snyder, and John M. Baust,

CONTENTS

The application of low temperatures to select anatomical regions is of well-established clinical benefit when the process is appropriately controlled. Moderate cooling of a tissue followed by warming over short intervals (minutes) causes reversible effects on the cellular physiological processes, including perturbation of electrical events, while with deeper and extended cooling, ice formation occurs resulting in site-specific lethal consequences. The employment of low temperature for clinical and research use includes, but is not limited to, applications of thermal therapy: (1) hypothermic storage of cells, tissues, and organs; (2) cryotherapeutic treatment for the selective ablation of cells and tissues; and (3) cryoangiogenic-based tissue repair. Although these applications have certain distinctions, the underlying principles of cell and tissue responses to low temperature provide the foundation or linkage between each of the respective applications. Current expansion in the field of cryotherapy stems from the growing demand for multidisciplinary studies in which knowledge from one specialty area may be transformed to benefit other specialty areas.

The therapeutic uses of cold temperatures had their origin in ancient times and were diverse in scope, ranging from local applications to general body hypothermia. Local application of cooling agents were used for the treatment of open wounds and other forms of trauma, hemorrhage, fever, and a variety of clinical disorders, including infected ulcerating cancers of the breast. Total body cooling by immersion in ice water was used for intractable fevers, mental derangements, and other diverse diseases.[1] Modern cold therapy has similarities to the practices of antiquity. In current times, the body temperature is commonly lowered in some types of cardiac surgery, in some difficult cancer operations, and in the management of stroke in order to reduce the oxygen consumption of
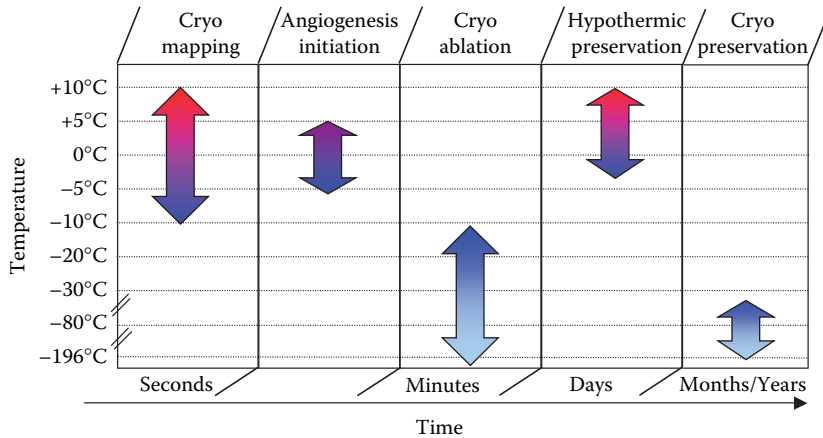
FIGURE 4.1 Illustration of the thermal zones and temporal duration for various clinical applications of cold. This illustration represents the current utilization and corresponding temporal application interval of low temperature ranging from brief periods (15–60 sec) for the reversible transient cessation of cellular physiological function (*Cryomapping*) as well as stimulation of growth (*Angiogenesis*) to short term (minutes) for targeted ablation (*Cryoablation*) to long term (days to years) for storage (*Hypothermic and Cryopreservation*) of cells, tissues, and organs (Snyder et al., 2002).

the brain. Today also, cold applications are used commonly after soft tissue trauma to relieve pain and help prevent swelling of the injured part. These diverse uses of cold can be considered cryotherapy, but none uses the freezing of tissue to produce the desired therapeutic result. This chapter deals with the use of freezing temperatures in therapy.

4.1 DEVELOPMENT OF CRYOSURGICAL TECHNIQUES

Local tissue freezing was first described in the mid-1850s when Arnott, a physician in England, used salt solutions containing crushed ice at temperatures in the range of –18 to –24°C to freeze cancers in accessible sites such as the breast and uterine cervix. He wrote that "congelation arresting the accompanying inflammation, and destroying the vitality of the cancer cell, is not only calculated to prolong life for a great period, but may, not improbably, in the early stages of the disease, exert a curative action."[2] The treatment with the frigid fluid was given with an irrigation device that Arnott had developed. The device could be used only on accessible tissues and had limited freezing capability, but the benefits in patients with cancer included relief of pain, reduction in the size of the tumor, and lessening of bleeding and discharge. The amelioration of pain by this technique received noteworthy attention by physicians of that era.

Late in the 1800s, the so-called permanent gases (oxygen, nitrogen, hydrogen) were liquefied and in 1892, Dewar developed the vacuum flask to hold them. As the century ended, liquid air and solidified carbon dioxide were available for therapeutic use on localized lesions of the skin. In the next six decades, the treatment by freezing was limited to accessible lesions, such as those in the skin or uterine cervix. The cryogen in common use was solidified carbon dioxide, applied either directly or in devices developed for its use. The word cryotherapy was coined midway through these years in a publication that described the use of solidified carbon dioxide in a new device.[3] During those years, the use of freezing techniques to treat disease of deep tissue or visceral disease received little attention. The notable exception was the investigation of Temple Fay, a neurosurgeon in Philadelphia, who used local and general refrigeration techniques to treat cancers. Fay implanted metal capsules, connected to an irrigation system using ice water or saline solution, circulated by

gravity, in tumors of the brain. The tissue response to the freezing featured reduction in tumor size and amelioration of symptoms, just as described by Arnott nearly 90 years earlier.[4,5]

The era of modern cryosurgery was preceded by experiments in the 1940s and 1950s in which researchers produced focal tissue lesions by freezing to gain information about the pathophysiology of disease. Hass and Taylor, using an apparatus cooled by the use of pressurized carbon dioxide, produced discrete necrotic lesions, 2 to 3 cm in diameter, in the brain, the heart, the liver, and the kidney.[6] Other investigators in these years, using diverse types of apparatus, showed that necrotic lesions could be produced in diverse organs and demonstrated the safety of the freezing procedures. These early years of the development of cryosurgery are described in greater detail in a 1998 review.[7]

The modern era of cryosurgery began with the introduction of an automated apparatus cooled by liquid nitrogen (–196°C) by Cooper and Lee in 1961.[8] Originally, the apparatus was intended for the treatment of brain disease, especially Parkinsonism. However, the apparatus was redesigned and widely used for many types of neoplasms in the 1970s. Then, after clinical trials defined appropriate usage, cryosurgery became a well-established method of ablating benign and malignant lesions, especially those tumors that were a problem in treatment by conventional methods.[9] Modern advances have refined cryosurgical procedures, broadened their applicability, and enhanced their reliability. Percutaneous application of cryosurgery in the treatment of localized cancer is considerably less invasive than conventional surgery and is free of the side effects associated with chemotherapy or radiation.[10,11] Success in reducing morbidity through percutaneous cryosurgical procedures has promoted further technical advances in the instrumentation available to employ cryosurgical methods.[12] Technology has enabled the development of precise instrumentation through which effective cryogens (e.g., liquid nitrogen, nitrous oxide, argon, etc.) can be circulated, providing the means to deliver extremely low temperatures to tissues located internally as well as near the body's surface. In the 1990s, technological advances included newer types of apparatus, using pressurized argon (–185.7°C) or nitrous oxide (–89.5°C) in devices which cooled probes by the Joule-Thomson effect, that is, passing the gas through a restrictive orifice into the heat exchange chamber of the probe, as well as devices that circulated super-cooled LN_2 (–210°C). The development of intraoperative ultrasound to monitor the freezing procedure, and the availability of minimally invasive operative methods, has permitted wider and new uses of cryosurgical techniques.[13]

During these years, an improved understanding of the mechanism of injury to cells and tissues has been achieved. Earlier investigations on the tissue injury due to frostbite formed a good foundation to the understanding of the nature of the injury *in vivo*.[14,15] Cryobiological investigations on the preservation of cells by freezing contributed to the knowledge needed to apply freezing to the destruction of cells.[16,17] These investigations provided a good foundation upon which to build cryosurgical techniques. The variable response of cells and tissues to freezing injury was recognized. The importance of careful attention to the elements of the freeze-thaw cycle, including tissue temperature, duration of exposure, and slow thawing, was recognized as critical to the ablation of tumors. However, in recent applications to non-neoplastic disease, the complex balance between preservation and destruction was also recognized. This balance is being tested by the expanding uses of cryosurgery and by the need to improve the results of cryoablative techniques. The new frontier is the development of techniques to manipulate the response of cells at low freezing temperatures in a way that would selectively preserve or destroy tissue, influence the process of healing, and increase the efficacy of therapeutic freezing techniques.

4.2 THE TISSUE RESPONSE TO FREEZING INJURY

The tissue response to injury by freezing is dependent upon many factors and is determined only in part by the rate of cooling or lowest temperature produced in the tissue. These physical factors are important, but other factors, such as the type of tissue and the vascular reaction to freezing temperatures, are significant factors in determining the fate of tissue frozen *in vivo*. With this complexity of critical elements of injury, variations in the response of cells and tissues occur,

ranging from inflammatory to destructive. Minor freezing of tissue produces an inflammatory response, featuring the infiltration of leukocytes and development of edema. For example, the treatment of retinal detachment requires the use of warm freezing temperatures to produce an inflammatory response that promotes adhesion of the detached tissue. Deep-freezing techniques cause destruction of tissue and are used in the treatment of tumors.

The causes of tissue injury from freezing generally have been attributed to two major mechanisms, which are the direct injury to cells due to ice crystal formation and the microcirculatory failure that occurs in the thawing period. In freezing, the temperature produced in the tissue is of prime importance in determining the tissue response. A short exposure of tissue to temperatures in the range of 0 to –10°C will produce a relatively minor injury, featuring inflammatory cell infiltration, new blood vessel formation, and collagen production. Since tissues can supercool to perhaps –15°C, little or no ice crystal formation occurs, so cell death is minimal. On the other hand, colder temperatures produce ice crystal formation, well known to be initially extracellular, but as the temperature falls, intracellular ice formation occurs, and the cells die in progressively greater numbers from mechanical forces or biochemical effects.[18] Practically certain destruction of cells occurs at temperatures colder than –40 to –50°C, commonly termed a "lethal temperature" in cryosurgical practice.

Recent research has shown that apoptosis is a mechanism of cell death after cold injury. Apoptosis, or gene regulated cell death, has been recognized as a mode of cell death in normal tissues and in diverse pathologic conditions, including heat injury, cancers, cytotoxic chemotherapy, and irradiation. Apoptotic cells are characterized by non-random DNA cleavage, blebbing of membranes, phospholipid inversion in the membranes, and irradiation.[19] Several recent investigations have shown that apoptosis is an important mechanism of cell death in prostate cancer cell lines when the temperature did not fall sufficiently low to kill all cells immediately.[20–24] Sublethal freezing temperatures have been shown to induce apoptosis in colon cancer cells *in vitro* also.[25,26] Most investigations of apoptosis caused by freezing have been *in vitro*. Investigations *in vivo* are few in number. However, Steinbach et al.,[27] producing cryogenic tissue damage in the cerebral cortex of mice, described apoptosis cells in the periphery of the previously frozen tissue. Romaneehsen et al.,[28] freezing and thawing a non-small-cell cancer implanted in nude mice, also described apoptotic cell death. Since apoptosis occurs in so many circumstances, it is reasonable to expect apoptosis to occur in cryogenic lesions *in vivo*. Indeed, Baust and Gage recently reviewed the area of the molecular basis of cryosurgery and described the critical role of apoptosis and necrosis in cryotherapeutic outcome.[29]

When cryobiological research is performed *in vivo*, another important mechanism of cell death comes into play, that is, the effect of freezing on the blood supply to the tissue.[30–32] The initial response to the cooling of tissue is vasoconstriction and a decrease in blood flow. With freezing, the circulation ceases. Experiments *in vitro*, using liver and breast tissue, have shown that ice crystals form in the blood vessels, and then preferentially propagate through the vascular system where no cell membranes form a barrier.[33,34] When the tissue thaws, the circulation returns, and the tissue appears to be hyperemic for a brief interval. However, endothelial cell damage leads to increased permeability of capillaries, edema, platelet aggregation, and thrombosis, so the outcome is vascular stasis in 30 to 60 minutes. These changes have been shown to occur at temperatures as warm as –20°C.[35–40] The loss of blood supply deprives the cells of any chance for survival. The injury to tissue from vascular stasis complicates cryosurgical research because this mechanism is not operative in research *in vitro*.

4.3 THE CRYOGENIC LESION

The type of lesion produced by freezing depends on the severity of the trauma. Minor freezing injury, as would be produced by rather brief exposure to temperatures warmer than about –10°C, causes an inflammatory response, featuring hyperemia, edema, and the infiltration of neutrophils,

monocytes, etc. Deep freezing, as would be produced by tissue temperatures colder than –20 to –30°C for several minutes, produces a sharply circumscribed necrosis that closely corresponds to the volume of tissue frozen. Between these two extremes, perhaps especially in the temperature range of –10 to –20°C, the potential for special therapeutic applications permitting selective destruction may be found.

The cryogenic lesion associated with deep freezing, as is required in the treatment of tumors, is a volume of coagulation necrosis. After freezing and thawing, initially the tissue is hyperemic or congested and edema forms. The extent of injury is not obvious, except on electron microscopic studies, which show disruption of cellular components and their membrane. In about two days, the extent of the injury becomes visually evident. The necrotic tissue will be resorbed or will slough, depending upon its location. For example, skin lesions will slough, but hepatic lesions will be resorbed. Tissue with a large amount of fibrous stroma resists change in structure, so the process of sloughing is prolonged, perhaps to several weeks. Major blood vessels, nerves, and cartilage resist structural change, even though devitalized by freezing. After freezing and thawing, bone is unchanged in appearance and maintains form and function, even though the devitalized bone is weakened by the process of slow resorption and replacement.

The central part of the cryogenic lesion, that tissue which was closest to the cryosurgical probe or heat sink, is practically always totally necrotic. At the periphery of the previously frozen volume of tissue, which is the region where cooling was very slow, the temperature rather mild (0 to –20°C), and duration of freezing relatively short, the cells have a chance of survival. In this border area, some cells live, some cells are dead, some are apoptotic, and some are in the balance between life and death.[24] This border area is commonly quite large in comparison to the volume of tissue that was frozen to temperatures 40°C and colder. The thermal zones and common modes of damage to tissue subjected to a cryosurgical event are depicted in Figure 4.2.
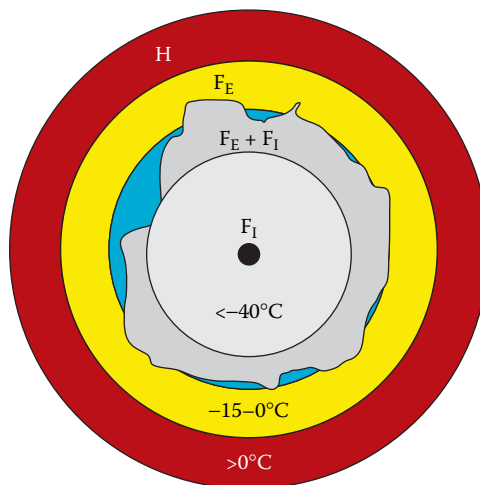
FIGURE 4.2 Isotherm and damage zones in a cryosurgical application. Pictorial representation of isotherms produced during application of a cryoprobe to a tissue mass (shaded irregular area at center). Isotherms extend radially from cryoprobe at center of tissue mass. The uniformity of the isotherm is perturbed by the vascular network, which creates thermal gradients and variability. The isotherms also demonstrate the damage zones, including F_I (Intra-cellular Freezing); F_E (Extracellular Freezing) and H (Hypothermic Exposure) to targeted and non-targeted surrounding tissue (J. Baust, personal collection).

4.4   CELL AND TISSUE RESPONSES TO CRYOSURGERY

The manner in which the cryogen wound heals depends upon the severity of injury and the type of matrix of the tissue. Minor freezing injuries commonly heal without tissue loss. In severe freezing injuries, the process of healing depends on the type of matrix. Some examples may be cited to demonstrate how the matrix of different tissues affects healing. In the skin, the resistance of collagen fibers and fibroblasts to damage from freezing is responsible for the favorable healing.[41] Damaged collagen is absorbed and slowly replaced by new collagen during the days of healing. Hair follicles, glands of the skin, and melanocytes are sensitive to freezing injury and these elements do not regenerate after exposure to temperatures in the –10 to –20°C range.[42,43] Nerves are also sensitive to cold injury. Temporary desensitization of the nerve occurs in the 0 to –5°C range, but function returns when the tissue is warmed. Long-term loss of function is produced at colder temperatures that range from –15 to –20°C. The axons and Schwann cells of the nerve degenerate, but if the nerve sheath is not disrupted, function of sensory and motor nerves is likely to return, though this restoration may take many months. The structurally intact perineurium, though devitalized by freezing, serves as a conduit for regrowth of axons and eventual restoration of function.[44–46] Muscle cells are sensitive to freezing injury as well.[47,48]

In contrast to the microcirculation, which is thrombosed after freezing, the function of major blood vessels is preserved following cryotherapeutic treatment. Though the blood vessel wall is devitalized and the endothelium is lost, the structure of the blood vessel remains intact. Generally, only slight fragmentation of the collageneous and elastic fibers are seen. The blood pressure maintains the lumen, so function as a conduit continues. The process of repair features smooth muscle proliferation, collagen and elastic fiber repair, and endothelial restoration, resulting in some degree of intimal hyperplasis, narrowing the lumen to some extent.[49–52]

Bone resists structural change after freezing, though the osteocytes are very sensitive to freezing and are destroyed at about –10°C. Bone, devitalized by freezing, is slowly resorbed and replaced by new bone, a process that may require months, the time depending upon the volume of bone frozen. The resorptive process weakens the strength of the bone, so fracture may result from even normal stress.[53–55]

Cellular tissue, including most organs and mucosa of the oral cavity and in other sites, lacks the strong collagenous structure of skin and has little fibrous tissue to maintain structure during healing. Therefore, healing is generally from the wound edges, resulting in some scarring, but not as much as produced by hot thermal injuries.

4.5   CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS

Cryotherapy has a wide range of applications, including anesthetic, preservative, and destructive uses. Relief of pain by the application of cold solutions or compresses is the oldest method of anesthesia. The manner of use was described in ancient literature, and later by Larrey to aid in the amputation of limbs of soldiers in Napoleon's armies. Further interest in cold anesthesia was caused by Arnott's description of its impact in diverse conditions in 1850.[2] Bird called Arnott "a pioneer in refrigeration anesthesia" in an interesting report.[56] The advent of general anesthesia in the mid-1850s and subsequently of local anesthetic agents about the same time sharply reduced the need for refrigeration anesthesia, but today cold agents are in wide use for the local surface treatment of soft tissue trauma, and apparatus is available for the treatment of pain by the freezing of the appropriate nerves. This introduces the subject of selective or function-preserving cryotherapy.

4.5.1   Selective Cryotherapy

The tissue response to a range of temperatures provides the basis for choices in therapy. The warmer freezing temperatures would be an appropriate choice when selective cell responses are the goal.

When tissue destruction is the goal, then very cold temperatures are required. *In vitro* experiments have shown that cells can survive at very low temperatures. A wealth of information is available on this subject. For example, several reports may be cited. Zacarian[18] long ago showed that cancer cells in suspension could survive in small numbers after exposure to temperatures colder than –60°C. More recently, Bischof et al.,[20] using rat prostate tumor slices, found that some cells could survive after freezing to a temperature of –40°C at a rate greater than –10°C/minute. Hollister et al.[21] also described occasional cell survival, as measured by ability to grow in culture, of cells frozen to –60°C or colder. Further, Clarke et al.,[57,58] Baust et al.,[29,59,60] and Znati et al.[61] have demonstrated that in select *in vitro* models, cancer cells can survive exposure to temperatures approaching –100°C. The same results are not likely to be seen in work *in vivo*, but the resistance of cells to freezing injury in these experiments is impressive.

Selective destruction of cells by freezing temperatures has considerable therapeutic potential, which is based on the differences in the sensitivities of different cell types to cold.[62] These variations are best identified in single short freezing cycles because longer duration or repeated cycles destroy most cells. Experiments *in vivo* show that the temperatures at which differences in cell susceptibility are evident are in the 0 to –30°C range. Therefore, in freezing therapy, the possibilities of selective preservation of some cells, while destroying other cells, can be explored. Furthermore, selective functional compromise with later return of function has applications in cryotherapy. Related to this thought is the possibility that a nondestructive response may induce changes in the healing process. These uses of cryotherapy commonly require modest freezing temperatures, that is, in the 0 to –30°C range.

The potential applicability of selective destruction/preservation has not yet been fully investigated. One example may be cited. Exploiting the cryosensitivity of melanocytes, freezing is commonly used in the treatment of lentigines, which are pigmented lesions of the skin, usually benign, sometimes malignant.[63] The healing of the wound is favorable because the keratinocytes, fibroblasts, and collagen matrix are not seriously injured at tissue temperatures warmer than –30°C.[63,64]

4.5.2 CRYOMAPPING

An example of the use of freezing to produce functional compromise is found in the use of cold temperatures to inhibit the function of nerves. As early as the 1960s, Cooper used temperatures slightly cooler than 0°C to temporarily desensitize nervous tissue in the brain in an effort to determine that the cryosurgical probe was located at the appropriate site. Then, once the probe was in the correct site, the probe was further cooled to produce the intended therapeutic effect.[65] The same principle is commonly used today in the surgical treatment of disease of the conduction system of the heart. Commonly termed "cryomapping," the procedure requires that a flexible steerable catheter probe be placed in the heart in a position at the suspected problem in impulse conduction or irritable focus of excitation. Then the probe is cooled to produce tissue temperatures in the 0 to –5°C range, which is sufficient to temporarily interrupt nerve function. If this site is not the problem, the probe is warmed. However, if the site is the problem, the faulty conduction/excitation returns on thawing, confirming that the diseased site has been identified. The treatment requires that the probe be cooled to –70 to –80°C for the time needed to ablate the tissue, generally about two or three minutes.[66,67] The temperature at the site of the abnormal conductive tissue is in the range of –20 to –30°C.

While these studies have reported on the successful clinical application of this therapy, an understanding of the mechanisms of action, responses to low-temperature therapeutic intervention at the cellular level, as well as the window of therapeutically relevant temperatures in cardiovascular systems remains unclear. Recently, a study by Snyder et al.[68] investigated the cellular and molecular responses of cardiac systems to thermal excursions utilizing an *in vitro* neonatal cardiomyocyte model. The purpose of this study was to identify and define thermal zones of physiological

Mammalian cardiac culture metabolic activity response
following 60 second thermal exposure
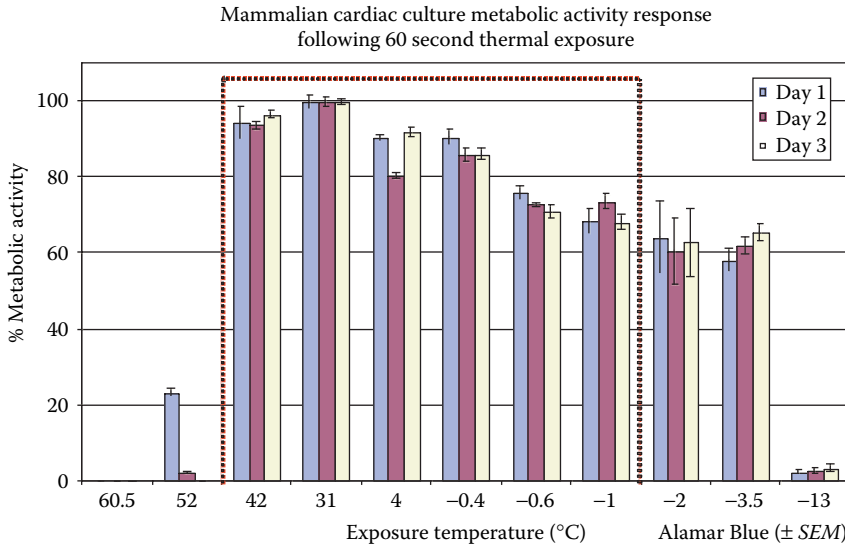
FIGURE 4.3 Relative survival and function of cellular systems in response to brief low-temperature exposure. The data illustrate that the application of cold can be utilized successfully for the ablation or preservation of cells but also as a tool for reversibly or irreversibly altering cellular physiology. The data illustrate the application of cold to cardiac cells can be ultilized to a point to stop cellular contraction followed by return of spontaneous contraction upon rewarming. Interestingly, the data show that there is a finite temperature range (between $-1°C$ and $-2°C$) upon which there is minimal effect on cellular viability, yet there is a complete loss of physiological contractile function (Synder, K.K. et al., 2002).

reversibility (cryomapping) and cellular destruction (cryoablation) in cardiac cell types in an attempt to further expand the knowledge base on cellular responses to cryotherapy in order to help guide clinical technique and device development. This study demonstrated that the application of cryotherapy in cardiac systems provided an effective and more controllable alternative to heat-based therapies such as radiofrequency, as shown in Figure 4.3. Additionally, the study served as a useful procedural guide for the application of low temperature as well as suggesting a mode of treatment in sensitive areas of the heart, where tolerance to mapping and ablative power are equally important, such as near the atrioventricular node, sino-atrial node, and pulmonary veins.

4.5.3 CRYOANGIOGENESIS

Attempts to alter the healing process, eliciting specific responses in terms of angiogenesis or myogenesis, are at the forefront of current research, especially in relation to the heart. All tissues require vasculature access for nutrients, oxygen, and waste removal. Vasculogenesis during embryonic development provides the basic vasculature structure, which is expanded by the process of angiogenesis. Endothelial cells proliferate and migrate to form microtubules, followed by the modification of the extracellular matrix and finally the formation of patent vessels.[69] Adult angiogenesis begins with angiogenic sprouting initiated by vasodilatation, followed by the destabilization of the existing vessel to allow for the migration of the proliferation cells and the eventual maturation.[70,71] However, angiogenesis is typically associated with embryonic and neonatal vascular development. In adults, angiogenesis is typically associated with vascular and tissue repair, as well as in the formation of nutrient supplies for cancerous tumors.[72] Stimulation of angiogenesis by exposure to nitric oxide or hypoxia has been shown *in vitro* and *in vivo*.[73–75]

   Cryogenic injury in tissues causes an angiogenic response as part of the reparative process. New blood vessels enter the necrotic tissue at its border with viable tissue, and repair progresses as the vasculature is reestablished in the lesion. Recently an effort has been made to provide a new

blood supply to the ischemic myocardium by using a thin cryoprobe to penetrate the ischemic area many times, hoping that the freezing injury will induce angiogenesis and create new channels for perfusion of blood. A measure of doubt regarding the potential of these experiments is reasonable, especially since laser-created channels do not remain patent.[76] However, the use of thermal therapies to enhance angiogenesis in myocardial systems has shown positive results, including vascular growth and induction of angiogenesis molecular signaling molecules, such as vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF).[77,78] One recently identified potential area of application of the angiogenic process is the use of mild cryotherapy to induce angiogenesis in ischemic tissue. This approach is designed to take advantage of the myriad cellular and molecular responses to low-temperature insult to stimulate cellular proliferative activity and revascularization. This is a new area of ongoing research and initial success has recently been reported in an *ex vivo* model by Snyder et al.[79] In this study, the effect of low temperature on the activation of the angiogenic process in an aortic ring model was investigated. Analysis of cellular outgrowth (smooth, muscle) revealed that there was in fact an activation of the angiogenic process by low-temperature exposure. The data demonstrated that this response could be modulated by both the thermal and temporal components of tissue exposure. Short intervals of 30 seconds required subzero temperature exposure to elicit response. The greatest response of 30 seconds of exposure was observed in the –5.5°C condition. This exposure resulted in a high degree of cell outgrowth and microvascular formation. Extension of the exposure interval to 60 seconds resulted in a change in the response of the Rat Aortic Ring Segment (RAR). Following 60 seconds of –6.6°C thermal exposure, RAR illustrated a significant reduction in the level of outgrowth compared to controls. In the 60-second conditions, samples exposed at 5°C yielded the greatest degree of outgrowth and organization. In addition, the response of the –2.5°C exposed samples remained relatively unchanged between the 30-second and 60-second exposure intervals. While this area of investigation remains in the early stages, nonetheless it is providing new avenues for the interventional therapeutic initiation of neovascariztion in target tissues.

4.5.4 CRYOANGIOPLASTY

With regard to myogenesis, interest was stimulated by the incidence of restenosis after coronary angioplasty, which is about 30% over a year or two. Balloon dilation of the stenosed artery is associated with disruption of the endothelium and underlying tissue, and this injury is followed by a reparative response featuring inflammatory cell infiltration and proliferation of smooth muscle cells. This response produces initial hyperplasia, narrowing the lumen, and perhaps causing restenosis.[80] Also, angioplasty-induced damage along with increased vessel permeability triggers a thrombogenic response that in turn serves as a strong mitogenic and proliferative signal for medial smooth muscle cells. This signaling elicits intense smooth muscle cell proliferation into the vessel lumen, consequently constricting the vessel lumen and greatly hindering blood flow.[76] Furthermore, it has been shown that altered fluid mechanical shear stresses in the sclerosed vessel segment can have a drastic influence over both vascular endothelial and smooth muscle cell structure and function.[81] In view of these details, it is important to encourage a rapid recovery of the vascular endothelium while re-closure due to the overgrowth of medial smooth muscle cells into the lumen is discouraged. Accordingly, an optimized cryotherapeutic option may rely on the application of "preservative" temperatures for endothelial cells and ablative temperatures for smooth muscle cells.

Efforts to improve the efficacy of vascular therapy have focused to a great extent on the stimulants and inhibitors of smooth muscle cells migration, proliferation, and phenotype. Today, commonly used lipid-lowering drugs, such as simvastatin and gemfibrozil, have also been shown to increase levels of TGF-1 (a suppressor of inflammatory processes and proliferation of smooth muscle cells) and inhibit the release of platelet-derived growth factor-B (PDGF-B — a powerful promoter of smooth muscle cells migration and division) in the neointimal.[82] Using *in vitro* and *ex vivo* models alike, investigators have demonstrated the potential therapeutic value in blocking

myointimal hyperplasia following medical intervention (angioplasty or vascular graft) by blocking either the PDGF growth factor or smooth muscle cells PDGF receptors themselves.[81–84] Some of the latest efforts to curtail smooth muscle cells hyperplasia post-intervention have entailed the placement of drug-eluting stents.[85–87] However, the presence of a stent has been known to further complicate the matter by adding inflammatory effects due to an immunological response to the foreign mesh. Accordingly, freezing temperatures are being used experimentally in an effort to control smooth muscle proliferation.

Cryogenic injury to major blood vessels, including the coronary arteries, causes some intimal hyperplasia, though this reaction tends to regress over several months. The experimentation to control the smooth muscle proliferation, which follows angioplasty, features the use of a catheter cryoprobe into the injured vessel, then freezing the stenotic area to a preselected temperature. If benefit is to be achieved, the tissue temperature will have to be in the −10 to −15°C range. Experimental work by Hollister et al.[80] supports this temperature range as an appropriate goal in therapy, as shown in Figure 4.4. Their work subjected cultured human coronary artery endothelial (CAEC) and smooth muscle cells to a range of hypothermic and freezing temperatures. They showed that smooth muscle cells (CASMC) were more sensitive to cold injury than endothelial cells in the range of 0 to −15°C. The endothelial cells had a better proliferative capacity than the smooth muscle cells. The work suggests that it might be possible to apply a cooling temperature that would preserve the endothelial cells and inhibit smooth muscle proliferation. The lasting susceptibility of smooth muscle cells to the measures applied in this study suggests the potential for endovascular application of cold to act as a "virtual stent," allowing the endothelium to recover, thereby minimizing neointima formation. However, Cheema et al.,[88] in *in vivo* experiments using rabbits, comparing intravascular cryotherapy after iliac artery balloon angioplasty with balloon angioplasty alone, found no evidence of benefit from cryotherapy. In this study, the average arterial wall temperature was −26°C, which is too cold to permit benefit in terms of a selective cell response. At present, the temperature, which
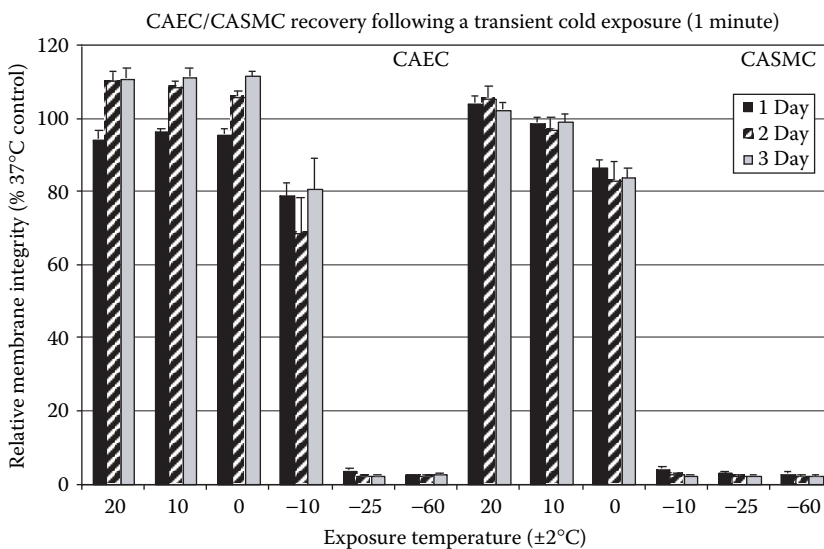
FIGURE 4.4 Relative survival and recovery of coronary artery endothelial and smooth cells following transient exposure (1 min) to various low temperatures. The data demonstrate a clear differential in cell type sensitivity to exposure to the sub-freezing temperatures of −10°C. This differential sensitivity of cell types to low temperatures is proving critical in the development of new approaches and applications for the therapeutic utilization of cold. Figure reproduced with permission from Hollister et al., *Cell Preservation Technology* 1(4); 2003.

will provide a selective response in muscle and endothelial cells *in vivo*, is not known. Future experiments should include, as adjuncts to freezing, the use of pharmaceutical agents or other methods to inhibit smooth muscle proliferation and promote endothelial growth.[89]

The reason(s) for the marked differential in sensitivity exhibited by smooth muscle versus endothelial cells remain(s) unclear, but may not be entirely unexpected. Variable success in the application of freezing has been reported dependent on the tissue type being treated. The differences among tissue types have historically been attributed to changing thermal conductivity with varying degrees of blood perfusion or inherent water content differences in tissue.[90,91] More recently, our experiences applying various cold exposure regimes *in vitro* have yielded varying degrees of cell type-specific sensitivity to cold. These studies have ranged in scope from hypothermic storage[92] to cryopreservation,[93–95] to cryoablative methods[96–98] and have explored inherent cellular/molecular responses to low-temperature exposure without the contribution of extraneous systemic factors, such as thermoconductivity and perfusion-related issues.

An alternate explanation for differential sensitivity may lie in the varying threshold for the activation of programmed cell death or apoptosis. Not only does apoptosis play a significant role in the progression of atherosclerosis,[99–104] but it also appears to be involved following anoxia-reoxygenation of allografts,[105] as well as freeze response of cells during and following cold exposure. Increases in the apoptotic protein Fas in rat aortic transplants have been identified in the developing lesions of allograft vasculopathy.[106] Anoxia-reoxygenation of human CAEC has also been shown to decrease levels of calcium-dependent nitric oxide synthase (cNOS) and anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 while increasing the Fas receptor.[107] As mentioned previously, apoptosis has also been linked to freezing. A post-freeze apoptotic contribution to cell death has been identified in human prostate cancer cells[96–98] and colon carcinoma cells.[25] Further, studies from our laboratory into the mode(s) of cell death by which CAEC and CASMC are succumbing to cold exposure have revealed elevated caspase activity in both cell types, suggesting a possible apoptotic contribution in this system as well. Recent studies by our group have demonstrated an apoptotic contribution to cell death in both CAEC and CASMC following a transient mild freeze exposure. The sustained apoptotic DNA laddering and procaspase-9 cleavage suggest a greater role of programmed cell death in the cold-sensitive CASMC (Hollister et al., unpublished data). Taken as a whole, these data begin to provide a molecular basis for the endovascular application of cryotherapy for the post-operative alleviation of restenosis.

4.6 CRYOSURGICAL TECHNOLOGIES AND APPROACHES

Cryosurgical techniques directed at tissue destruction, as is required in the treatment of tumors, requires the use of apparatus and a cryogenic agent to produce tissue temperatures colder than –40°C. Citing their normal boiling points at atmospheric pressure, liquid nitrogen (–195.8°C), argon (–185°C), and nitrous oxide (–89.5°C) are the cryogens in common use today. Liquid nitrogen cools by a change in phase, that is, liquid to gas. Argon and nitrous oxide are used in pressurized cylinders and cool by the Joule-Thomson effect. Liquid nitrogen is the coldest agent in use, but the need for insulation of the feed conduit limits the ability to construct probes smaller than 2–3 mm in diameter. Pressurized nitrous oxide or argon, used in Joule-Thomson-type apparatus, will not produce as low a temperature as liquid nitrogen; therefore, in use of tumor therapy, a greater number of probes are required in comparison to liquid nitrogen. The Joule-Thomson apparatus does not require insulation of the cryogen feed conduit, so probes as small as flexible catheters for intravascular insertion and use in the treatment of cardiac tachyarrythmias can be constructed.

Cryogens are applied to the treatment area by direct application (spray or pouring) and by use in closed systems (a cryosurgical probe). The spray technique, almost always with liquid nitrogen, is commonly used in dermatological practice for the treatment of skin lesions. Liquid nitrogen also can be poured onto the tissue, typically into the cavity formed by curettement of a bone tumor. Liquid nitrogen, argon, and nitrous oxide are used in probe systems with heat exchange surfaces

for application to the diseased tissue. The capacity of the probes to freeze depends upon the choice of the cryogen, the temperature of the probe, the area of contact with the cold probe, and the heat brought to the area by the blood supply of the tissue. The wide choice of cryogens and apparatus provides the opportunity to select a technique suited for the disease.

Cryoablative techniques must be done in a manner that will destroy an appropriate volume of tissue, a goal that is of special importance in the treatment of cancers. In general, cryosurgical treatment of tumors is quite successful and has the advantage of commonly being a minimally invasive technique. Good results have been achieved in the cryosurgical treatment of diverse tumors, including those of the skin, liver, kidney, prostate, bone, bronchus, and other sites.[9,10,108] The technique offers the possibility of curative or palliative benefit in some difficult problems in the management of cancer. On the other hand, the goal of a cure of cancer is not always achieved. Persistent disease in the cryo-treated sites, for example, is commonly about 20–30% for liver tumors and about 10% for prostatic cancer.[10,108] Persistent disease is a sign of failure to properly judge the extent of the disease or a failure in the technique of freezing. In this article, only the latter can be considered. Fortunately, progress toward optimization of cryosurgery is continually being made.[110]

Cryotherapy of tumors requires that a cryosurgical probe be applied to the tumor, generally by insertion into the tissue. The probe is used as cold as attainable in order to freeze the tissue as rapidly as possible, and so-called lethal temperature is produced in the tissue. The tissue is allowed to thaw spontaneously, and then the cycle is repeated. The tissues close to the probe freeze rather rapidly and attain the coldest temperature, but the isotherms extend radially, so even a short distance (1 cm) from the probe, the freezing rate is considerably slower and the tissue temperature is warmer. Whatever the volume of the frozen tissue, the border is about 0°C. The –40°C isotherm, which is a commonly accepted therapeutic goal, is only a small percentage (about 30%) of the frozen volume. Repetition of the freeze-thaw cycle brings the lethal isotherms close to –20°C, but this still leaves a periphery where the cells were exposed to temperatures between 0° and –20°C. The cells in this region may be viable. To produce a tissue temperature of –40°C at a safe distance outside the limits of a cancer requires a very aggressive freezing technique, which is not easy to achieve and not too practical in some sites, such as the prostate gland. The proximity of the rectum and the complication of rectal fistula limits aggressive freezing in this site. For these reasons, cryosurgery needs adjunctive therapy to increase the lethal effect in the periphery of the cryogenic lesion.

4.7   ADJUNCTIVE CRYOTHERAPY

Adjunctive therapy may consist of cytotoxic drugs, irradiation, antifreeze proteins, apoptotic promoters, or other agents. The most commonly used adjunctive therapy is a cancer chemotherapeutic agent, and the use of the drug after cryosurgery has been thought to improve survival of patients.[109–111] However, a measure of caution in the use of the drug is needed. The coagulopathy or complications due to the considerable cytokine release, which follows large-volume freezing, especially of the liver, may be unfavorably affected by the administration of the cytotoxic drug.[112,113]

Nevertheless, advantage from the use of adjunctive chemotherapy is likely. Cooper et al., in animal experiments, concluded that the administration of cyclophosphamide potentiated cell-mediated immunity.[113] Clarke et al.,[23,24] freezing prostate cancer cells *in vitro,* demonstrated that a combination of freezing and 5-fluouracil was associated with a greater reduction in cell survival than either freezing or the drug alone. Mir and Rubinsky,[109] freezing melanoma cells *in vitro*, and exposing them to bleomycin, reported that the cold injury made the cells permeable to the drug, which is of therapeutic interest because bleomycin does not normally enter the cells.

The optimal dose and time of delivery of cancer chemotherapeutic agents is not established. The thought that the drugs can be concentrated in the tumor area, as first suggested by Benson,[114] is an interesting and perhaps practical approach. The rationale is based on the failure of the microcirculation shortly after the tissue thaws. Drugs given systemically during the thawing period would become locked into the tumor area, unable to gain access to the general circulation, as

vascular stasis develops. Homasson et al.,[115] using bleomycin, has shown that this drug sequestration occurs in bronchial cancers. The same principle would apply to drugs injected into the thawed tissue. Such drugs do not gain access to the general circulation.

With other adjunctive agents, there is little or no demonstration of efficacy in clinical trials. Cooled cells have shown increased radio sensitivity.[115,116] Though the role of irradiation as an adjunct to cryosurgery is not clear, the use of this agent should have a deleterious effect on cells in marginal survival status and should promote apoptosis. Experiments with antifreeze proteins have shown that exposure to these agents before freezing enhances the destructive effects of cold injury.[117,118] During freezing, intracellular ice crystals develop at high subzero temperatures and cause damage, most likely mechanical in nature. Experiments *in vivo*, injecting antifreeze proteins into the tumor before freezing, show enhanced destruction from the use of the adjunctive agents.[117,118] Considerable work needs to be done on the use of adjunctive agents, defining their role and efficacy, because all such agents are capable of causing cell destruction when used alone.

Another type of putative adjunctive therapy is defined in the concept of cryoimmunology, that is, the possibility that freezing tissue *in situ* will elicit a beneficial immunological response, as first suggested by Shulman et al.[119] in the mid-1960s. In the following years, many studies have been directed at the nature of the immunological response, which certainly is complex. As cytokines are released in massive amounts, the reaction may lead to failure of organ systems, called "cryoshock" by some investigators. On the other hand, benefit in tumors in experimental animals have been shown by some investigators and denied by others and enhanced metastases due to immunologic response have been described.[120–124] So the question of benefits due to an immunological response remains unsettled. Nevertheless, immunological-enhancing drugs have been considered helpful in advanced cancers,[125] so it is evident that the last word on the subject has not been written.

4.8 SUMMARY

Throughout history, advancements in the field of cryosurgery have closely followed technological innovations in the handling and delivery of effective cryogens. These strides have enabled the cryo-treatment of almost every known tissue type in the human body.[10] Unique qualities (e.g., minimally invasive, allows nerve regeneration, allows treatment of irregular tissues difficult to resect, etc.) have made cryosurgery an attractive alternative for surgeons. Considerable progress in some aspects of cryotherapy was made in the 1990s. Certainly little change has occurred in the uses of cold to ameliorate pain and swelling in traumatic injuries, but cryotherapy using freezing techniques has provided benefits in diverse diseases. Cryosurgical apparatus and imaging techniques have evolved to the state in which selective preservation and destruction techniques are practical. Research will further development in these new directions. Though researchers have established the impact of the sheer physical damage of ice-rupture, questions still remain regarding the molecular mechanisms of cell death due to the gamut of hypothermic changes that occur during cold exposure. The elucidation of cell type-specific sensitivity and death mechanisms in association with cold exposure will allow surgeons to optimize cryosurgical procedures. In the treatment of tumors, adjunctive therapy by diverse agents promises to increase the efficacy of cryoablative techniques. In these many uses of cryotherapy, a better understanding of freezing injury, including the recognition of apoptosis, will facilitate treatment along molecular-based cellular mechanisms. The research needed to improve cryotherapeutic techniques and applications is in progress.

REFERENCES

1. Henderson, A.R., Cold … man's assiduous remedy, *Med. Ann. Dist. Columbia,* 40, 583, 1971.
2. Arnott, J., Practical illustrations of the remedial efficacy of a very low or anaesthetic temperature in cancer, *Lancet,* 2, 257, 1850.

3. Lortat-Jacobs, L. and Solente, G., La cryotherapie, *Maisson et cie* (in French), Paris, 1930.
4. Fay, T., Observations on prolonged human refrigeration, *New York State J. Med.*, 40, 1351, 1940.
5. Fay, T., Early experience with local and generalized refrigeration of the human brain, *J. Neurosurg.*, 16, 239, 1959.
6. Hass, G.M. and Taylor, C.B., A quantitative hypothermal method for the production of local injury of tissue, *Arch. Pathol.*, 45, 563, 1948.
7. Gage, A.A., History of cryosurgery, *Sem. Surg. Oncol.*, 14, 99, 1998.
8. Cooper, I.S. and Lee, A., Cryostatic congeletion: a system for producing a limited controlled region of cooling or freezing of biologic tissues, *J. Nerv. Ment. Dis.*, 133, 259, 1961.
9. Gage, A.A., Cryosurgery in the treatment of cancer, *Surg. Gynecol. Obstet.*, 174, 73, 1992.
10. Seifert, J.K., Junginger, T., and Morris, D.L. Collective review of world literature on hepatic cryo-surgery, J.R. Coll. Surg. Ed., 43, 141, 1998.
11. Cohen, J.K., Cryosurgical ablation of the prostate: Pro, *Urology,* 48, 178, 1996.
12. Onik, G., Cryosurgery, *Crit. Rev. Oncol. Hematol.*, 23, 1, 1996.
13. Baust, J.G., Gage, A.A., and Zhang, C., Minimally invasive cryosurgery: Technological advances, *Cryobiology*, 34, 373, 1997.
14. Kreyberg, L., Tissue damage due to cold, *Lancet*, 1, 338, 1946.
15. Quintanilla, R., Krusen, F.H., and Essex, H.E., Studies on frostbite with special reference to treatment and the effect on minute blood vessels, *Amer. J. Physiol.*, 149, 149, 1947.
16. Meryman, H.T., Mechanics of freezing in living cells and tissues, *Science*, 124, 515, 1956.
17. Mazur, P., Causes of injury in frozen and thawed cells, *Fed. Proc.*, 24, S-175, 1965.
18. Zacarian, S.A., The observation of freeze-thaw cycles upon cancer-cell suspension*, J. Dermat. Surg. Oncol.*, 3, 173, 1977.
19. Kerr, J.F., Winterford, C.M., and Harmon, B.V., Apoptosis, its significance in cancer and cancer therapy, *Cancer*, 73, 2013, 1994.
20. Bischof, J.C., Smith, D., Pazhayannur, P.V., Manivel, C., Hulbert, J., and Roberts, K.P., Cryosurgery of Dunning AT-1 rat prostate tumor: Thermal biophysical, and viability response at the cellular and tissue level, *Cryobiology*, 34, 42, 1997.
21. Hollister, W.R. et al., Effects of freezing on cell viability and mechanisms of cell death in a human prostate cancer cell line, *Mol. Urol.*, 2, 13, 1996.
22. Roberts, K.P., Smith, D.J., Ozturk, H., Kazem, A., Pazhayannur, P.V., Hulbert, J.C., and Bischof, J.C., Biochemical alterations and tissue viability in AT-1 prostate tumor tissue after *in vitro* cryodestruction, *Cryo-Lett.,* 18, 241, 1997.
23. Clarke, D.M., Hollister, W.R., Baust, J.G., and Van Buskirk, R.G., Cryosurgical modeling: Sequence of freezing and cytotoxic agent application affects cell death, *Mol. Urol.*, 3, 25, 1999.
24. Clarke, D.M., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Chemo-cryo combination therapy: An adjunctive model for the treatment of prostate cancer, *Cryobiology*, 42, 274, 2001.
25. Hanai, A., Yang, W.I., and Ravikumar, T.S., Induction of apoptosis in human colon carcinoma cells HT29 by sublethal cryo-injury: Mediation by cytochrome-c release, *Int. J. Cancer*, 93, 526, 2001.
26. Yang, W.I., Addona, T., Nair, D.G., Qi, L., and Ravikumar, T. S., Apoptosis induced by cryo-injury in human colorectal cancer cells is associated with mitochondrial dysfunction, *Int. J. Cancer*, 103, 360, 2003.
27. Steinbach, J.P., Weissenberger, J., and Aguzzi, A., Distinct phases of cryogenic tissue damage in the cerebral cortex of wild-type and c-fos deficient mice, *Neuropathol. Appl. Neurobiol.*, 25, 468, 1999.
28. Romaneehsen, B., Anders, M., Rohrl, B., Hast, H.J., Hengstler, J.G., Schiffer, I., Neugebauer, B., Teichmann, E., Schreiber, W.G., and Thelen, M., Cryotherapy of malignant tumors: Studies with magnetic resonance imaging in an animal experiment and comparison with morphological changes (article in German), *Rofo Fortschr. Geb Rontgenstr. Neuer. Bildgeb Verfahr.*, 178, 632, 2001.
29. Baust, J.G., Gage, A.A., Clarke, D., Baust, J.M., and Van Buskirk, R., Cryosurgery: A putative approach to molecular-based optimization, *Cryobiology*, 48, 190, 2004.
30. Gage, A.A. and Baust, J.G., Mechanisms of tissue injury in cryosurgery, *Cryobiology*, 37, 171, 1998.
31. Hoffmann, N.E. and Bischof, J.C., The cryobiology of cryosurgical injury, *Urology*, 60, 40, 2002.
32. Rubinsky, B. Cryosurgery, *Annu. Rev. Biomed. Eng.*, 2, 157, 2002.
33. Rubinsky, B., Lee, C.Y., Bastacky, J., and Onik, G., The process of freezing and the mechanism of damage during hepatic cryosurgery, *Cryobiology*, 27, 85, 1990.

34. Hong, J. and Rubinsky, B., Patterns of ice formation in normal and malignant breast tissues, *Cryobiology*, 31, 109, 1994.
35. Bourne, M.H., Piepkorn, M.W., Clayton, F., and Leonard, L.G., Analysis of microvascular changes in frostbite injury, *J. Surg. Research,* 40, 26*,* 1986.
36. Zacarian, S., Stone, D., and Clater, M., Effects of cryogenic temperature on microcirculation in the golden hamster cheek pouch, *Cryobiology*, 7, 27, 1970.
37. Rothenborg, H., Cutaneous circulation in rabbits and humans before, during, and after cryosurgical procedures, measured by xenon-133 clearance, *Cryobiology*, 6, 507, 1970.
38. Lenz, H., Cryosurgery of the cheek pouch of the golden Syrian hamster, *Int. Surg*., 57, 223, 1972.
39. Rabb, J.M., Renaud, M.L., Brandt, P.A., and Witt, C.W., Effect of freezing and thawing on the microcirculation and capillary endothelium of hamster cheek pouch, *Cryobiology*, 11, 508, 1974.
40. LaFebvre, J.H. and Folke, L.P., Effects of subzero temperatures on the microcirculation in the oral mucosa membrane, *Microvasc. Res*., 10, 340, 1975.
41. Shepherd, J.P. and Dawber, R.P., Wound healing and scarring after cryosurgery, *Cryobiology*, 21, 157, 1984.
42. Natiella, J.R., Carter, J.M., Gage, A.A, Natiella, R.R., and Johnson, R.R., Cryosurgery of rhesus monkey skin: Evaluation of epidermal thickening and effect on elastic component, *Clin. Exp. Dermatol*., 11, 486, 1986.
43. Burge, M. and Dawber, R.P.R., Hair follicle destruction and regeneration of guinea pig skin after cutaneous freeze injury, *Cryobiology*, 27, 153, 1990.
44. Whittaker, D.K., Degeneration and regeneration of nerves following cryosurgery, *Br. J. Exp. Pathol.,* 55, 395, 1974.
45. Miles, T.S. and Hribar, D., Recovery of function after cryosurgical lesions of peripheral nerves in rats, *Neurosci*., 17, 285, 1981.
46. Trumble, T.E. and Whalen, J.T., The effects of cryosurgery and cryoprotectants on peripheral nerve function, *J. Reconstr. Microsurg*., 8, 53, 1991.
47. Bowers, W.D. Jr., Hubbard, R.W., Daum, R.C., Ashbaugh, P., and Nilson, E., Ultra-structural studies of muscle cells and vascular endothelium immediately after freeze-thaw injury, *Cryobiology*, 10, 9, 1973.
48. Whittaker, D.K., Ultrastructural changes in muscle following freezing *in situ* by a surface applied cold, *J. Pathol*., 115, 139, 1975.
49. Gage, A.A., Fazakas, G., and Riley, E.E., Freezing injury to large blood vessels in dogs. With comments on the effect of experimental freezing of bile ducts, *Surgery*, 61, 748, 1967.
50. Mikat, E.M., Hackel, D.B., Harrison, L., Gallagher, J.J., and Wallace, A.G., Reaction of the myocardium and coronary arteries to cryosurgery, *Lab. Invest*., 37, 632, 1977.
51. Lida, S., Misaki, T. and Takashi, T., The biological effects of cryocoagulation on the myocardium and coronary arteries, *Jpn. J. Surg*., 19, 319, 1989.
52. Ladd, A.P., Rescorla, F.J., Baust, J.G., Callahan, M., Davis, M., and Grosfeld, J.L., Cryosurgical effects on growing vessels, *Am. Surg*., 65, 677, 1999.
53. Gage, A.A., Greene GW Jr, Neiders ME, and Emmings, F.G., Freezing bone without excision: An experimental study of bone-cell destruction and manner of re-growth in dogs, *JAMA*, 196, 770, 1966.
54. Bradley, P.F. and Fisher, A.D., The cryosurgery of bone: An experimental and clinical assessment, *Br. J. Oral Surg*., 12, 111, 1975.
55. Malawer, M.M., Marks, M.R., McChesney, D., Piasio, M., Gunther, S.F., and Schmookler, B.M., The effect of cryosurgery and polymethylmethacrylate in dogs with experimental bone defects comparable to tumor defects, *Clin. Orthop*., 226, 299, 1988.
56. Bird, H.M. and Arnott, J., A pioneer in refrigeration anesthesia, *Anaesthesia*, 4, 10, 1949.
57. Clarke, D.M., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Addition of anticancer agents enhances freezing-induced prostate cancer cell death: Implications of mitochondrial involvement, *Cryobiology*, 49, 45, 2004.
58. Clarke, D.M., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Chemo-cryo combination therapy: An adjunctive model for the treatment of prostate cancer, *Cryobiology,* 42, 274, 2001.
59. Baust, J.G. and Gage, A.A., The molecular basis of cryosurgery, *BJU Int*., 95, 1187, 2005.
60. Baust, J.G. and Gage, A.A., Progress toward optimization of cryosurgery, *Technol. Cancer Res. Treat*., 3, 95, 2004.

61. Znati, C.A., Werts, E., Kociban, D., Variables influencing response of human prostate carcinoma cells to combined radiation and cryotherapy *in vitro*, *Cryobiology*, 37, 450, 1998.

62. Gage, A.A., Meenaghan, M.A., Natiella, J.R., and Greene, G.W. Jr., Sensitivity of pigmented mucosa and skin to freezing injury, *Cryobiology*, 16, 348, 1979.

63. Kuflik, H.C. and Gage, A.A., Cryosurgery for *lentigo maligna*, *J. Am. Acad. Dermatol.*, 31, 75, 1994.

64. Burge, S.M., Burge, S.M., Jones, R.L., Millard, P.R., and Dawber, R.P., Pigment change and melanocytes distribution in guinea pig skin after cutaneous freeze injury, *J. Invest. Dermatol.*, 88, 136, 1987.

65. Cooper, B., Cryogenic surgery of the basal ganglia, *JAMA*, 181, 400, 1962.

66. Bredikis, J.J. and Bredikis, A.J., Surgery of tachyarrhythmia: Intracardiac closed heart cryoablation, *Pacing Clin. Electrophysiol.*, 13, 1980, 1990.

67. Dubuc, M., Roy, D., Thibault, B., Ducharme, A., Tardif, J.C., Villemaire, C., Leung, T.K., and Talajic, M., Tranvenous catheter mapping and cryoablation of the atrio ventricular node in dogs, *Pace*, 22, 2488, 1999.

68. Snyder, K.K., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Cardiomyocyte response to thermal excursions: Implications for electrophysiological cardiac mapping, *Cryobiology*, 47, 291, 2003.

69. Carmeliet, P., Mechanisms of angiogenesis and arteriogenesis, *Nature Med.*, 6, 389, 2000.

70. Folkman, J., Fundamental concepts of the angiogenesis process, *Curr. Mol. Med.*, 3, 643, 2003.

71. Lee, L.Y., and Rosengart, T.K., Transmyocardial laser revascularization and angiogenesis: The potential for therapeutic benefit, *Semin. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 11, 29, 1999.

72. Folkman, J., Tumor angiogenesis: Therapeutic implications, *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 285, 1182, 1971.

73. Maulik, N., Redox signaling of angiogenesis, *Antioxid. Redox Signal.*, 4, 805, 2002.

74. Murohara, T. and Asahara, T., Nitric oxide and angiogenesis in cardiovascular disease, *Antioxid. Redox Signal.,* 4, 825, 2002.

75. Sasaki, H., Ray, P.S., Zhu, L., Otani, H., Asahara, T., and Maulik, N., Hypoxia/reoxygenation promotes myocardial angiogenesis via an NF kappa B-dependent mechanism in a rat model of chronic myocardial infraction, *J. Mol. Cell. Cardiol.*, 33, 283, 2001.

76. Neville, R.F. and Sidawy, A.N., Myointimal hyperplasia: Basic science and clinical consideration, *Semin. Vasc. Surg.*, 11, 142, 1998.

77. Kanamori, S., Nishimura, Y., Okuno, Y., Horii, N., Saga, T., and Hiraoka, M., Introduction of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) by hypothermia and/or an angiogenesis inhibitor, *Int. J. Hypothermia*, 15, 267, 1999.

78. Yamamoto, N., Gu, A., DeRosa, C.M., Shimizu, J., Zwas, D.R., Smith, C.R., and Burkhoff, D., Radio frequency transmyocardial revascularization enhances angiogenesis and causes myocardial denervation in canine model, *Lasers Surg. Med.*, 27, 18, 2000.

79. Snyder, K.K., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Angiogenic response of cardiovascular tissue to low temperature: Implications in cryosurgical treatment of cardiovascular disease, *Cryobiology*, 45, 221, 2002.

80. Hollister, W.R., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk , R.G., and Baust, J.G., Cellular components of the coronary vasculature exhibit differential sensitivity to low temperature insult, *Cell Pres. Technol.*, 1, 269, 2003.

81. Davies, M.G., Owens, E.L., Mason, D.P., Lea, H., Tran, P.K., Vergel, S., Hawkins, S.A., Hart, C.E., and Clowes, A.W., Effect of platelet-derived growth factor receptor-alpha and -beta blockade on flow-induced neointimal formation in endothelialized baboon vascular grafts, *Circ Res.*, 86, 779, 2000.

82. Yin, T., Sandhu, G., Wolfgang, C.D., Burrier, A., Webb, R.L., Rigel, D.F., Hai, T., and Whelan, J., Tissue-specific pattern of stress kinase activation in ischemic/reperfused heart and kidney, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 272, 19943, 1997.

83. Leppanen, O., Janjic, N., Carlsson, M.A., Pietras, K., Levin, M., Vargeese, C., Green, L.S., Bergqvist, D., Ostman, A., and Heldin, C.H., Intimal hyperplasia recurs after removal of PDGF-AB and -BB inhibition in the rat carotid artery injury model, *Arterioscler. Thromb. Vasc. Biol.*, 20, E89, 2000.

84. Sano, H., Sudo, T., Yokode, M., Murayama, T., Kataoka, H., Takakura, N., Nishikawa, S., Nishikawa, S.I., and Kita, T., Functional blockade of platelet-derived growth factor receptor-beta but not of receptor-alpha prevents vascular smooth muscle cell accumulation in fibrous cap lesions in apolipoprotein E-deficient mice, *Circulation,* 103, 2955, 2001.

85. Hehrlein, C., Arab, A. and Bode, C., Drug-eluting stent: The "magic bullet" for prevention of restenosis?, *Basic Res. Cardiol.*, 97, 417, 2002.

86. Degertekin, M., Regar, E., Tanabe, K., Lee, C.H., and Serruys, P.W., Sirolimus eluting stent in the treatment of atherosclerosis coronary artery disease, *Minerva Cardioangiol.*, 50, 405, 2002.
87. Freedman, S.B., Clinical trials of gene therapy for atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease, *Curr. Opin. Lipidol.*, 13, 653, 2002.
88. Cheema, A.N., Nili, N., Li, C.W., Whittingham, H.A., Linde, J., van Suylen, R.J., Eskandarian, M.R., Wong, A.P., Qiang, B., Tanguay, J.F., Lane, M., and Strauss, B.H., Effects of intravascular cryotherapy on vessel wall repair in a balloon-injured rabbit iliac artery model, *Cardiovasc. Res.*, 39, 222, 2003.
89. Porter, K.E., Naik, J., Turner, N.A., Dickinson, T., Thompson, M.M., and London, N.J., Simvastatin inhibits human saphenous vein neointima formation via inhibition of smooth muscle cell proliferation and migration. *J. Vasc. Surg.*, 36, 150, 2002.
90. Bischof, J., Christov, K. and Rubinsky, B., A morphological study of cooling rate response in normal and neoplastic human liver tissue: Cryosurgical implications, *Cryobiology*, 30, 482, 1993.
91. Hayes, L.J. and Diller, K.R., A finite element model for phase change heat transfer in a composite tissue with blood perfusion, *ISA Trans.*, 22, 33, 1983.
92. Mathew, A.J., Van Buskirk, R.G. and Baust, J.G., Improved hypothermic preservation of human renal cells through suppression of both apoptosis and necrosis, *Cell Pres. Technol.*, 1, 239, 2003.
93. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R. and Baust, J.G., Modulation of the cryopreservation cap: Elevated survival with reduced dimethyl sulfoxide concentration, *Cryobiology,* 45, 97, 2002.
94. Baust, J.M., Vogel, M.J., Van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., A molecular basis of cryopreservation failure and its modulation to improve cell survival, *Cell Transplant.*, 10, 561, 2001.
95. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R. and Baust, J.G., Cell viability improves following inhibition of cryo-preservation-induced apoptosis, *In Vitro Cell Dev. Biol. Anim.,* 36, 262, 2000.
96. Clarke, D.M., Hollister, W.R., Baust, J.G., and Van Buskirk, R.G., Cryosurgical modeling: Sequence of freezing and cytotoxic agent application affects cell death, *Mol. Urol.,* 3, 25, 1999.
97. Clarke, D.M., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Chemo-cryo combination therapy: An adjunctive model for the treatment of prostate cancer, *Cryobiology*, 42, 274, 2001.
98. Hollister, W.R., Mathew, A.J., Baust, J.G., and Van Buskirk, R.G., Effects of freezing on cell viability and mechanisms of cell death in a human prostate cancer cell line, *Mol. Urol.,* 2, 13, 1998.
99. Vincenz, C., Death receptors and apoptosis. Deadly signaling and evasive tactics, *Cardiol. Clin.,* 19, 31, 2001.
100. Choy, J.C., Granville, D.J., Hunt, D.W., and McManus, B.M., Endothelial cell apoptosis: Biochemical characteristics and potential implications for atherosclerosis, *J. Mol. Cell Cardiol.*, 33, 1673, 2001.
101. Dimmeler, S., Haendeler, J. and Zeiher, A.M., Regulation of endothelial cell apoptosis in atherothrom-bosis. *Curr. Opin. Lipidol.*, 13, 531, 2002.
102. Durand, E., Mallat, Z., Addad, F., Vilde, F., Desnos, M., Guerot, C., Tedgui, A., and Lafont, A., Time courses of apoptosis and cell proliferation and their relationship to arterial remodeling and restenosis after angioplasty in an atherosclerotic rabbit model, *J. Am. Coll. Cardiol.*, 39, 1680, 2002.
103. Li, D., Yang, B., Mehta, J.L., Ox-LDL induces apoptosis in human coronary artery endothelial cells: Role of PKC, PTK, bcl-2, and Fas, *Am. J. Physiol.*, 275, H568, 1998.
104. Scott, S., O'Sullivan, M., Hafizi, S., Shapiro, L.M., and Bennett, M.R., Human vascular smooth muscle cells from restenosis or in-stent stenosis sites demonstrate enhanced responses to p53: Implications for brachytherapy and drug treatment for restenosis, *Circ. Res.*, 90, 398, 2002.
105. Randone, B., Sterpetti, A.V., Stipa, F., Proietti, P., Aromatario, C., Guglielmi, M.B., Palestini, M., Santoro-D'Angelo, L., Cavallaro, A., and Cucina, A., Growth factors and myointimal hyperplasia in experimental aortic allografts, *Eur. J. Vasc. Endovasc. Surg.*, 13, 66, 1997.
106. Akyurek, L.M., Johnsson, C., Lange, D., Georgii-Hemming, P., Larsson, E., Fellstrom, B.C., Funa, K., and Tufveson, G., Tolerance induction ameliorates allograft vasculopathy in rat aortic transplants. Influence of Fas-mediated apoptosis. *J. Clin. Invest.*, 101, 2889, 1998.
107. Li, D., Tomson, K., Yang, B., Mehta, P., Croker, B.P., and Mehta, J.L., Modulation of constitutive nitric oxide synthase, bcl-2 and Fas expression in cultured human coronary endothelial cells exposed to anoxia-reoxygenation and angiotensin II: Role of AT1 receptor activation, *Cardiovasc. Res.*, 41, 109, 1999.
108. Donnelly, B.J., Saliken, J.C., Ernst, D.S., Ali-Ridha, N., Brasher, P.M., Robinson, J.W., and Rewcastle, J.C., Prospective trial of cryosurgical ablation of the prostate: Five-year results, *Urology*, 60, 645, 2002.

109. Mir, L.M. and Rubinsky, B., Treatment of cancer with cryochemotherapy, *Br. J. Cancer*, 84, 1656, 2002.

110. Bilchik, A.J., Wood, T.F., Chawla, S.P., Rose, D.M., Chung, M.H., Stern, S.S., Foshag, L.J., and Ramming, K.P., Systemic irinotecan of regional floxuridine chemotherapy prolongs survival after hepatic cryosurgery in patients with metastatic colon cancer, *Clin. Colorectal Cancer*, 1, 36, 2001.

111. Rodriguez-Bigas, M.A., Klippenstein, D., Meropol, N.J., Weber, T.K., and Petrelli, N.J., A pilot study of cryochemotherapy for hepatic metastases from colorectal cancer, *Cryobiology*, 33, 600, 1996.

112. Seifert, J.K., France, M.P., Zhao, J., Bolton, E.J., Finlay, I., Junginger, T., and Morris, D.L., Large volume hepatic freezing: Association with significant release of the cytokines interleukin-6 and tumor necrosis factor in a rat model, *World J. Surg*., 26, 1333, 2002.

113. Cooper, A.J. and Pradur, J.D., Cytophosphamide pretreatment in tumor cryotherapy: A comparison with alternative drugs, *Cryobiology*, 20, 78, 1983.

114. Benson, J.W., Regional chemotherapy and cryotherapy for cancer, *Oncology,* 26, 134, 1972.

115. Homasson, J.P., Pecking, A., Roden, S., Angebault, M., and Bonniot, J.P., Tumor fixation of bleomycin labeled with 57 cobalt before and after cryotherapy of bronchial carcinoma, *Cryobiology*, 29, 543, 1992.

116. Burton, S.A., Paljug, W.R., Kalnicki, S., and Werts, E.D., Hypothermic-enhanced human tumor cell radiosensitivity, *Cryobiology*, 35, 70, 1997.

117. Pham, L., Dabiya, R. and Rubinsky, B., An *in vitro* study of antifreeze protein adjuvant cryosurgery, *Cryobiology*, 38, 169, 1999.

118. Muldrew, K., Rewcastle, J., Donnelly, B.J., Saliken, J.C., Liang, S., Goldie, S., Olson, M., Baissalov, R., and Sandison, G., Flounder antifreeze peptides increase the efficacy of cryosurgery, *Cryobiology*, 42, 182, 2001.

119. Shulman, S., Yantorno, C. and Bronson, P., Cryoimmunology: A method of immunization to autologous tissue, *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med*., 124, 658, 1967.

120. Blackwood, C.E., and Cooper, I.S., Response of experimental tumor systems to cryosurgery, *Cryobiology*, 9, 508, 1972.

121. Joosten, J.J., Muijen, G.N., Wobbes, T., and Ruers, T.J., *In vivo* destruction of tumor tissue by cryoablation can induce inhibition of secondary tumor growth. An experimental study, *Cryobiology*, 42, 49, 2001.

122. Joosten, J.J., van Muijen, G.N., Wobbes, T., and Ruers, T.J., Cryosurgery of tumor tissue causes endotoxin tolerance through an inflammatory response, *Anticancer Res.,* 23, 427, 2003.

123. Hoffman, N.E., Coad, J.E., Huot, C.S., Swanlund, D.J., and Bischof, J.C., Investigation of the mechanism and the effect of cryoimmunology in the Copanhagen rat, Cryobiology, 42, 59, 2001.

124. Shibata, T., Suzuki, K., Yamashita, T., Takeichi, N., Mark, M., Hosokawa, M., Kobayashi, H., and Arisue, M., Immunological analysis of enhanced spontaneous metastasis in WKA rats following cryosurgery, *Anticancer Res.*, 18, 2483, 1998.

125. . Sugiyama, Y., Saji, S., Miya, K., Kunieda, K., Takao, H., Kawaguchi, Y., Kimura, A., Honda, S., and Matsui, K., Therapeutic effect of multimodel therapy, such as cryosurgery, locoregional immunotherapy and systemic chemotherapy agents for advanced breast cancer, *Gan to Kaguku Ryoho.,* 28, 1616, 2001.

5 Biomaterials

Kathy Traianedes, Karlis Gross, and Stephen Livesey

CONTENTS

5.1 INTRODUCTION

The replacement of tissues or organs lost through damage or disease has provided significant clinical challenges over many years. Restoration of normal function of the tissue or organ is the ultimate goal of tissue engineering and regenerative medicine. The application of tissue engineering is not only directed at finding suitable replacement materials to restore tissue loss and function, but more recently has expanded to include application to "biomanufacturing" processes. The combination of the appropriate cells, with the appropriate biomaterial to produce the appropriate protein, enzyme, or cell progeny for example, is only the beginning of future possibilities in biomanufacturing.

Biomaterial is defined as "material that is compatible with living tissue — material that can be safely implanted into the human body and left there without causing an adverse reaction" (*Encarta Dictionary*, UK). This definition can be extended to include material that is compatible with living cells, *ex vivo*.

There are several categories of biomaterials including those derived from living tissue (human and animal) either with (e.g., whole organs, skin, bone, tendon grafts) or without (e.g., acellular dermal matrix, demineralized bone, collagen extracts) cellular components present, recombinant sources (e.g., bacterial-derived, mammalian cell-derived), or synthesized sources (e.g., polylactic acid and its derivatives, alloys, ceramics). Whatever the source, for successful therapeutic or manufacturing application, the material must be biocompatible. Biocompatibility is broadly defined as "the ability of a material to perform with an appropriate response in a specific application."[1] However, consequences of such things as source, preparation or processing, preservation or stabilization, storage, handling, combination of materials, degradation, integration, and remodeling can all affect the biocompatibility of the material, which is therefore not just dependent on the properties of the material itself.[2] All of these facets of biomaterial development must be addressed for successful therapeutic or biomanufacturing outcomes. The very nature of a biocompatible substance requires interaction with its surroundings, whether it be implanted, grafted or used *ex vivo* (e.g., manufacturing) to elicit an appropriate response. Fundamental interactions between surfaces, cells, and tissues are described by Dee, Puleo, and Bizios,[3] and basic biological responses to biomaterials are outlined by Anderson[4] and will not be detailed here.

107

5.2 HISTORICAL

Tissue transplantation has been performed for hundreds of years.[5,6,7] There were few early successes as a consequence of the lack of understanding of immunobiology, compared to the present where it has become routine with the selection of materials to be used ever expanding and not only the number of surgical applications growing, but application of the matrices or materials to a variety of therapeutic and manufacturing needs.

In this chapter, we attempt to illustrate some of the different biomaterial strategies used to create both biologically derived and synthetic therapeutic products. In the field of tissue engineering, a biocompatible, off-the-shelf, efficacious biomaterial is the goal, which all tissue engineering strategies strive to achieve. The application of tissue engineering to manufacturing of cells and cell by-products requires cellular biocompatibility, but the complication of an *in vivo* immune response is eliminated.

Historically, the most efficacious biomaterials are autografts. Biocompatibility is not of concern, as the transfer of tissue from one part of the body to another is recognized as "self" and not foreign. These can be considered as vital tissues (living) that contain an active cellular component. The problems that exist are limitations of autograft supply. For example, in full-thickness skin for burns, if a major proportion of the body is burned, in both pediatric and elderly patients, where donor sites are limited, procuring tissue with a viable blood supply, or in repeated coronary bypass surgery where all available vessels have been utilized. The donor site itself is a second surgery with removal of the tissue for subsequent placement. This removal also results in trauma, increased morbidity, and scarring depending on the amount or depth of tissue removed. Allograft organ transplantation is routine these days with the advent of effective immunosuppressive therapy. These vital or "living" tissues require rapid transference to recipients, and preservation techniques such as simple refrigeration for short-term storage and transport. Longer-term storage would allow a delay in transferring to a recipient, which would result in an accumulation of organs to meet demand. However, the use of vital tissues, such as organs, for allogeneic transplant requires life-long immune suppression therapies to prevent rejection of the organ. There is also increased risk of disease transmission when cells are present. Organs including heart, lung, and kidney are typically used, when they are available, as life-saving treatments for patients. Complications include lifetime immunosuppressive therapy, rejection and disease transmission such as bacterial contamination, viruses, and malignancies.[8,9,10] Early bone transplants also showed evidence of residual tumor.[11] However, availability of donated organs is limited and emergence of diseases with late onset [e.g., Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease (CJD) and new variant (nv) CJD or "mad-cow" disease] or lack of available testing procedures for viruses (e.g., West Nile virus) increases the risk of disease transmission to recipient patients.

Replacement of various body parts (nose, ears, eyelids, etc.) has been described as early as during ancient times and could arguably be the first foray into tissue engineering (outlined by Miller and Evans).[12] Viable allograft tissue transplants have and are still used without immunosuppression (bone, cornea, and skin). These tissues can be stored longer through cryopreservation and hence have more general supply, but have similar risks to organ transplant and, in addition, may result in alloimmunization against subsequent grafts.

There are several types of potential biomaterials that can be divided into two major categories: biological and synthetic. Combining biological and synthetic materials along with other additives such as growth factors, genes, and cells leads to a plethora of possible devices for clinical use and for biomanufacturing purposes.

5.3 BIOLOGICAL APPROACH

Several biologically derived materials have been used clinically. These include viable tissues, decellularized materials, and extracted proteins that have subsequently been synthetically derived or combined with specific growth factors.

Many aspects of effective tissue repair, replacement, or regeneration need to be considered when developing alternative materials. These include whether the material will be rejected, whether it will affect the surrounding tissue (biocompatible), the mechanical strength and durability, the long-term viability including revascularization, incorporation of the material (as part of the natural architecture of the site or conversely, encapsulated by the body keeping it away from surrounding tissue), and finally, remodeling of the material preferably into the same tissue as the implant site.

Biological approaches to tissue replacement have always attracted significant interest. This has been seen in the widespread use of donated tissue transplants including cornea, bone, heart valves, blood vessels, ligaments, tendons and cartilage for tissue replacement, and skin as a temporary dressing in the treatment of full-thickness burns. Again while having advantages such as heart valves not requiring anticoagulation, there are limitations based on the potential for disease transmission and alloimmunization. Alloimmunization results from cells within the tissue transplant potentially sensitizing the recipients to future transplants.[13,14]

Nonvital or acellular matrices such as demineralized bone and acellular soft tissue grafts, such as dermis, have been developed to overcome the problems of cell sensitization and to a degree, disease transmission while maintaining the advantages of biological materials able to interface and become involved in the body's regeneration response. The effectiveness of these grafts has led to the development of machined or engineered bone grafts such as ramps, spacers, and dowels for a variety of orthopedic procedures (such as cervical, thoracolumbar, and lumbar spine interbody, fusions and pinning grafts). In addition, mineralized bone (powder and cancellous chips) and demineralized bone (cortical bone particles and fibers) have been combined with a variety of binding agents such as glycerol (Grafton®, Osteotech, Inc.), gelatin (porcine-derived) (Optefil™ and Opteform™, Regeneration Technologies, Inc.), calcium sulphate and carboxymethylcellulose (AlloMatrix®, Wright Medical Technology, Inc.) to produce a variety of pastes, putties, gels, and flexible sheets to markedly increase the variety of grafts available for surgical use. The addition of carriers assists in the ease of handling for the surgeon and expands the use of the donor-derived material so that many patients are able to benefit from its use. These products demonstrate that a variety of synthetics and biological (gelatin and bone) materials can be combined, producing clinically useful biomaterials.

The inherent growth factors (mainly bone morphogenic protein, BMP) within the demineralized bone matrix provide the biological signaling required to direct bone formation. More recently, the growth factor itself (BMP-2) was approved for specific indications in combination with two different carriers; namely, a bovine-derived collagen sponge, to be used in combination with titanium spinal fusion cages (FDA approved) and for general orthopedic use, with a calcium phosphate carrier. Calcium phosphate is the major mineral component of bone and is relatively inexpensive and bioinert and functions primarily as a delivery vehicle for the growth factor.

An acellular dermal matrix derived from human skin (AlloDerm®, LifeCell Corp.) was developed that has retained the biological and physical properties of the matrix.[15] Allograft skin has been used for decades as an effective, temporary dressing for full-thickness skin injury. Due to the presence of cellular histocompatiblity complex antigens, the host ultimately rejects allogeneic skin. The extracellular matrix of the dermis is a complex three-dimensional array of information. This information is in the form of proteins such as multiple types of collagen, each with different molecular motifs. There are also numerous proteoglycans that form an interface between collagens and cells and provide a reservoir for growth factors, cytokines, and morphogens. This biochemical information helps direct the repopulating cells to regenerate normal tissue and restore function. Several attempts have been made to produce extracellular matrix biosynthetically; however, in the absence of a complete knowledge of matrix design and without a complete and available array of all the proteins and growth factors, such attempts to date have met with limited success. Other methods have also been used to process allogeneic skin to deliver components of the dermal extracellular matrix. In one such approach, the dermal component was derived from human skin by soaking the skin in a buffered saline solution for weeks until the epidermis spontaneously

released and the cells of the dermis had necrosed.[16] In another approach human skin was repeatedly frozen and thawed to produce a devitalized human dermis for keratinocyte seeding.[17] While showing promising *in vitro* results, no reports of effective clinical application have been published using these methods.

The core AlloDerm acellular matrix technology was a new method of freeze-drying cells and tissues without the damaging effects of ice crystals. This involved the creation and drying of the amorphous or glass phase of ice. This technology was subsequently expanded to enable the prolonged dry preservation of any tissue type. To this preservation technology was added tissue processing or tissue engineering technology in the form of cell removal (decellularization) and preservation of the remaining extracellular matrix. The result of the application of these patented technologies is to produce a structurally and biochemically intact acellular, extracellular matrix. As all cells are removed, the matrix does not elicit a specific immune response and as the matrix is preserved and not altered or damaged during processing, little if any nonspecific inflammatory response is stimulated following transplantation. Rather, because the biochemistry of the matrix is preserved, it contains the necessary information to stimulate host cell migration into the matrix resulting in revascularization and repopulation of the matrix, thereby creating a viable tissue that becomes an integrated part of the host.

Clinical use of the acellular dermal matrix technology started in 1993 in the US, first as a skin graft in the treatment of full-thickness burns[18,19] and subsequently expanded to a wide range of applications. The clinical applications now extend to the following areas:

- Burns: predominantly in the pediatric and geriatric age groups and in extensive burns for grafting of major joints and hand reconstruction[18,19,20,21,22]
- Other skin conditions such as Epidermolysis Bullosa (EB) where skin defects lead to extensive scarring and contracture[23]
- Head and neck reconstruction as a soft tissue implant[24,25,26,27]
- Reconstructive surgery, for scar revisions, correction of soft tissue deficits due to trauma, cancer surgery or congenital abnormalities, or wasting with disease[28,29,30]
- Interpositional graft and a facial sling (static reanimation for facial paralysis, for example, in patients with strokes)[31]
- Periodontal surgery to increase the amount of attached gingiva (reduced as a result of gum disease)[32,33,34]
- Urology as a bladder sling for urinary incontinence[35]
- Gynecology for pelvic floor repair — surgical intervention is usually required for pelvic floor repair for the treatment of cystocele (bladder), enterocele (intestine), and rectocele (rectum) and vault suspension for uterine prolapse[36]
- General surgery for repair of abdominal wall defects and hernias;[37] fascial grafts have been used historically and can better resist infection when compared to a commonly used synthetic mesh.[38] The major problem with the use of the fascial grafts, usually harvested from the fascia lata in the thigh, is donor site trauma, including fluid accumulation, delayed movement, and pain[38]
- Orthopedic surgery as a periosteal replacement membrane and for rotator cuff repair[39,40]
- Repair of damaged heart tissue resulting from aneurysm or chronic ischemia and for which no donor heart is available[41]
- Breast reconstruction surgery[42,43]
- Neurosurgery (off label) as a dural substitute in duraplasty.[44,45,46,47,48] (Agag et al., 2004 This application is classified as a medical device and has not yet been approved by the FDA.
- Chronic ulcer repair (unpublished results)

In addition to direct soft tissue replacement, application in certain areas, for example, gingiva, dura, and bone, the acellular matrix has demonstrated a potential to remodel into tissue indistinguishable from the position of transplantation.[48] Its original characteristics of dermal tissue are replaced by the characteristics of the local surrounding tissue.

The acellular dermal matrix has been shown to function in a manner equivalent to autograft dermis taken from a donor site on the patient.[21] The processing of this matrix in the manner described maximizes the use of donated human skin. The matrix has the advantage of being able to be stored for two years under standard refrigeration. The other advantage of this type of tissue is that it can respond to changing physiological stresses and stimuli when implanted whereas synthetic materials cannot respond.

Another acellular matrix that has been used in clinical procedures is small intestinal submucosa (SIS) (SurgiSis, Cook Surgical). It is derived from porcine small intestine; the submucosa is found between the mucosal and muscular layers of the small intestine. SIS is extracted from the intestine in a manner that removes all cells and has been used in colon and rectal surgery, ENT/head and neck, gastroenterology, general surgery, obstetrics and gynecology, otolaryngology, plastic surgery, thoracic surgery, urology, and vascular surgery.

Collagen extracted from animal- and human-derived sources has been used for years.[49] Type I collagen derived from bovine and porcine sources is predominantly used in the medical device industry.[50]

Examples of various commercial products (biological and synthetic) are listed in Table 5.1.

5.4 FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Although very effective and with a long record of accomplishment of clinical safety, it is recognized that tissue grafts will always be limited by supply of the precious gift of tissue donation. This has led to a strong interest in the cross-discipline area of tissue engineering. The basic tenet of tissue engineering is that tissues are composed of cells and scaffolds in the presence of growth factors and cytokines. Tissue engineering in current context is usually considered the combining of cells (various types), scaffold (biological or synthetic, biocompatible, integrating) and growth factors, genes, proteins, peptides (or any other bioactive molecule) to result in the replacement, regeneration, or enhancement of a nonfunctional, damaged, or missing tissue. The result would be to recapitulate the biological and physical function of the tissue deficit with minimal or no adverse event.

In the 1950s the focus was on the use of materials that were bioinert and had minimal if any interaction with surrounding tissue. These materials, including ceramics, Teflon, silicone, metal alloys, and titanium, were and are still used to replace joints (hips), blood vessels, heart valves, and bone. Although effective, these materials are limited in their durability and/or biocompatibility. Degradation of synthetic materials can release harmful by-products locally into the surrounding tissues and systemically. Hence, mechanical hips have a finite lifespan, and mechanical heart valves require lifelong anticoagulation to prevent clotting.

Synthetic biomaterials may be divided into their material class of ceramics, metals, polymers, and composites. They may also be classified by the body response or degradation rate, hence leading to descriptors such as inert, biotolerant, bioactive, and resorbable. In these situations the body will either surround a biomaterial if it is inert or biotolerant or may create tissue which bonds closely with the biomaterial. In each application, there will be situations that can stimulate a cell response and so a biological classification of implants may provide descriptors of conductivity and inductivity, the ability to conduct tissue growth or have a specific tissue growth in a part of the body that does not normally include that particular tissue.

Biomaterials will be discussed in terms of their materials classification, their architectural modification for tissue engineering, and a comparison made with biological alternatives. A combination of biological and synthetic approaches will be considered as a means of improving the body's participation in healing or creating a specific tissue type.

TABLE 5.1
Some Examples of Commercial Products and Their Application

Category	Product (Company)	Composition	Application
Biological			
AlloDerm	LifeCell Corp.	Acellular human dermis (preserved and freeze-dried)	Soft tissue reconstruction (e.g., full-thickness burns, head and neck reconstruction, dental (gingiva, socket), pelvic floor repair, abdominal wall repair, rotator cuff, dura, bladder sling, breast reconstruction, cardiac repair
SurgiSis	Cook Surgical	Derived from porcine small intestinal submucosa — acellular	Soft tissue reinforcement, e.g., hernia repair
Demineralized bone	Osteotech; Musculoskeletal Transplant Foundation; Regeneration Technologies, etc.	Demineralized bone (acellular) with various carriers such as Glycerol, starch, hyaluronic acid, porcine collagen, carboxymethyl cellulose; calcium sulphate, etc.; various configurations such as powders, gels, putty, pasts, sheets, strips, etc.	Bone repair — fracture, spinal fusion, trauma, tumor resection, etc.; used as autograft extender, replacement, combined with marrow or as a filler within other bone grafting devices (e.g., spinal interbody cages)
Bone — weight-bearing engineered grafts	Osteotech, LifeNet, Regeneration Technologies, etc.	Cortical (long bone derived), cancellous, cortico-cancellous (iliac crest derived)	Interbody fusion throughout length of spine; struts; dowels, screws, etc.
Fascia, ligaments, tendons	Most tissue banks	Cadaver derived	Soft tissue reconstruction, ligament/tendon reconstructions
Composite (biological + synthetic)			
Apligraf	Organogenesis, Inc.	Bi-layered skin substitute consisting of an epidermal layer which is formed by neonatal human keratinocytes and the dermal layer is composed of neonatal human fibroblasts within a bovine type 1 collagen lattice (cells are derived from the same donor)	Venous ulcer repair; Contraindicated for infected wounds, or on patients with known allergies to bovine collagen or hypersensitivity to the components of the shipping medium
Dermagraft	Smith & Nephew (originally developed by Advance Tissue Sciences)	Neonatal foreskin fibroblasts seeded onto the Vicryl scaffold (blend of polylactic and polyglycolic acids) — cryopreserved	Indicated for use in the treatment of full-thickness (dermis) diabetic foot ulcers greater than six weeks' duration; contraindicated for infected sites

TABLE 5.1 (CONTINUED)
Some Examples of Commercial Products and Their Application

Category	Product (Company)	Composition	Application
TransCyte	Smith & Nephew	Neonatal foreskin fibroblasts seeded onto nylon mesh which is initially coated with porcine dermal collagen and bonded to a polymer membrane (silicone) (Biobrane) (cryopreserved)	Temporary wound covering for surgically excised full-thickness and partial-thickness burns; contraindicated in those patients with known hypersensitivity to porcine dermal collagen or bovine serum albumin
OrCel	Ortec International, Inc.	OrCel is a bilayered cellular matrix of donor neonatal dermal fibroblasts cultured on and within the porous sponge side of the bilayered collagen sponge; keratinocytes, from the same donor, are cultured on the coated, nonporous side of the collagen matrix	Treatment of Epidermolysis Bullosa and donor sites in burn patients; venous stasis leg ulcers
Synthetics (nonweight-bearing)			
Sepramesh	Genzyme Biosurgery	Sodium hyaluronate and carboxymethylcellulose coating (resorbable) on polypropylene monofilament mesh on one side; other side uncoated (non-resorbable)	Soft tissue reconstruction (e.g., hernia repair); contraindicated for infants and growing children
Fortaflex (technology)	Organogenesis Inc.	Highly purified type I collagen (FortaPerm — non-resorbable; FortaGen — resorbable)	Soft tissue reconstruction
Integra	Integra Life Sciences Corp.	Dermal regeneration template comprising of a porous matrix of cross-linked bovine tendon collagen fibers and a glycosaminoglycan (chondroitin-6-sulfate); the temporary epidermal substitute layer is made of synthetic polysiloxane polymer (silicone)	Partial and full-thickness soft tissue trauma and chronic wounds; burns
DuraGen PlusT	Integra Life Sciences Corp.	Dural Graft Matrix DuraGen Plus is manufactured from collagen obtained from bovine deep flexor tendon	Dura repair
PolyGraft Bone Graft Substitute	OsteoBiologics Inc.	Porous polylactide-co-glycolide copolymer and calcium sulfate	Bone repair
OsteoSet	Wright Medical Technologies	Calcium sulphate pellets	Bone repair
ProOsteon-series	Interpore-Cross Intl.	Polylactide-co-glycolide, calcium sulfate, and polyglycolide fibers	Bone repair
Vitoss	Orthovita	Nano–particle Beta-tricalcium phosphate (ß-TCP)	Bone repair

TABLE 5.1 (CONTINUED)
Some Examples of Commercial Products and Their Application

Category	Product (Company)	Composition	Application
Alpha-Bone-Substitute-Material (-BSM)	ETEX Corporation	Calcium phosphate-based bone graft substitutes; endothermic setting	Bone repair
Collagraft	Zimmer	Bovine-derived fibrillar collagen and porous calcium phosphate ceramic (hydroxyapatite and tricalcium phosphate combination)	Bone repair
Healos	Orquest	Mineralized collagen sponge — three-dimensional, cross-linked, hydroxyapatite coated type I collagen fibers	Bone repair
		Synthetics (weight-bearing)	
Polymethyl-methacrylate (PMMA)		Acrylic bone cement	Vertebral compression fractures
Cortoss	Orthovita	Nonresorbable, terpolymer resin with combeite glass-ceramic reinforcing particles, barium boro-aluminosilicate; amorphous silica, silane coupling agent	Vertebral compression fractures
Titanium alloys			Spinal cages for discectomy or spine fusion
PLA-PGA			
Carbon fiber			
polyetheretherketone (PEEK)		Semicrystalline polyaromatic linear polymer	Interbody fusion devices

5.5 CLASSES OF BIOMATERIALS

All materials used for implantation must satisfy the requirement of biocompatibility. As a first step, materials should not lead to systemic toxicity, mutagenicity, carcinogenicity, pyrogenicity, irritation, or sensitization. After these criteria are met, the material may be considered as a biomaterial for augmentation or other application. At the first level a biomaterial may be biotolerant, in which case the body will isolate the implanted object with a fibrous capsule to remove any influence on the body function. Inert materials may also induce a fibrous capsule due to the competition between different tissue types.

Ceramics fall into the class of inert biomaterials. They typically have a high elastic modulus and are very stiff. Some ceramics exhibit a high abrasion resistance and are thus used in articulating surfaces such as joint prosthesis. The low fracture toughness limits the applications to environments subject to compressive stresses, or the absence of tensile stresses. Examples include alumina, zirconia, and glasses. Inert polymeric materials are also common such as silicone, polyethylene, and polymethylmethacrylate. These represent the first generation of materials used in implantation.

Metals also have a high stiffness, like ceramics, but are tougher and are conventionally used for load-bearing applications or situations where a repetitive loading is experienced such as heart valves. Metals have the disadvantage in that the pH and oxygen concentration within the body do not provide immunity for the metal. Dissolution occurs at a higher level than ceramics and is

referred to as corrosion when higher levels are attained. This is undesirable since specific elements can disturb the cell function and may also lead to rejection of an implant as a result of the hypersensitivity. To improve the surface of these alloys a surface coating of a ceramic such as hydroxyapatite on prosthesis or carbon on heart valves is used. Typical alloys are stainless steel, Ti, Co-Cr, and Zr based alloys. The flexibility of producing metallic alloy compositions can potentially give rise to a bioresorbable material. However, the availability of high concentrations of a metal and the influence on cell function will remain an issue. This can lead to delayed-type hypersensitivity.

From the bioactive materials that are able to create a direct bond to the tissue, there are naturally occurring materials and others that undergo a surface modification to integrate with the tissue. Hydroxyapatite is a naturally occurring material, found within bone and teeth, and can be a site for apatite precipitation and collagen deposition, thus forming a link with surrounding bone tissue. Although this material is widely used, the optimum arrangement of crystals and chemical composition is a feature that requires ongoing investigations. Bioactive glass is subjected to a modification by hydrolysis, incorporation of calcium ions followed by direct bonding to bone. Both materials are bioactive, but possess a low ability to sustain loads. Studies of calcium carbonate have also shown direct tissue bonding, which is particularly attractive due to its porous structure.

Degradable materials are the materials of choice for patients who possess the ability for reconstruction of tissue. These materials will degrade in the body, providing free space for the cells to generate tissue and provide the potential for tissue engineering. The degradation products need to be biocompatible, must be readily removed, and must not lead to an undesired cell response. Some elements have a desirable action at low concentrations, but an overdose can lead to a negative response. The composition of biomaterials and their degradation products are critical. The removal pathway of degradation products and the exposure to different body components is not well known, and therefore other side effects may only be revealed after a prolonged period. Conventional metallic alloys that participate in some movement such as lubrication have caused metallosis, but weight-bearing, structural members or electrode materials are engulfed with tissue and lead to a low release of degradation products. Conventional metallic alloys are typically not addressed for tissue engineering, but novel alloys that slowly release elements to stimulate cell response may be developed as degradable candidates. Inorganic materials offer possibilities since they occur naturally in the body. From the class of bioceramics, degradable materials include calcium compounds such as calcium phosphates or bioglasses. Calcium phosphates can be produced to a range of cystallinities. As a noncrystalline phase, like a glass, amorphous calcium phosphate exhibits very high solubility for fast delivery of calcium and phosphate, a mechanism the body uses to supply calcium phosphate to infants through breast milk. A majority of polymeric materials have been used as degradable bone implants or controlled release applications. Polylactic acid has been developed three decades ago and has received FDA approval for biomedical application. The hydrophobicity and release of lactic acid upon degradation is not favorable for cell response. Various approaches have been used to produce a more suitable chemistry. A higher degradation may be achieved by producing a copolymer with poly(glycolic acid), but the release of acidic components is still present and can be overcome by a thin layer of a more biocompatible polymer or the inclusion of calcium phosphate that will balance the pH upon degradation. Other synthetic biomaterials that are produced include poly(ε-caprolactone), poly(propylene fumarate), polyphosphazenes, polyphosphoesters, polyanhydrides, and poly(orthoesters). Development of new polymeric compositions is fast relative to metallic alloys and inorganic materials. Rapid testing approaches have been developed to quickly ascertain the suitability of different polymers for biomedical applications. Advances in natural macromolecules are slower due to a larger flexibility and conformations possible. Natural polymers have included collagen and polysaccharides (alginate, chitosan, and hyaluronate).

5.6 INFLUENCE OF THE MANUFACTURING PROCESS

Processing of biomaterials has utilized existing processes and materials that are used in other industries. Additives are occasionally used with polymers to improve the processability or final properties of the product. The influence of these processing additives or performance enhancers such as UV stabilizers will be unnecessary in the body and may provoke a biological response. Equipment must thus be totally dedicated for biomaterials processing. The reaction must be well controlled in terms of reactant purity and reaction conditions. Some biomaterials are very sensitive to the surrounding chemical environment and may include elements or chemical groups into the structure or absorbed onto the surface of the product. Undesired by-products need to be removed by rinsing or heating, or an alternative method.

5.7 SCAFFOLD DESIGN AND PRODUCTION

The approach of using porous materials was proposed by Langer and Vacanti in 1993. To replace a volume of tissue/organ within the body, the use of a porous material offers a high surface area to accommodate cells. The porous material would be constructed from a bioresorbable material that would slowly degrade and provide space as the cells follow a particular lineage and generate tissue.

The design aspects of the scaffold involve a long list of desired attributes. A higher proportion of pore space is desirable to accommodate more cells within the porous material. The pore size is the next critical aspect, and previous work with porous materials for tissue augmentation has revealed the importance of pore size for tissue in-growth. This will be dependent on the cell type, and is greater than 100 microns for bone cells, for example Axons are cell extensions and require a smaller pore size for growth into and passage through the structure. Other factors that will influence the performance of a scaffold involve pore shape and pore connectivity. The connectivity between the pores is dictated by pore throat characteristics such as pore throat size, curvature from the previous pore and the number of connections with neighboring pores. Lastly, the shape of the surface may influence the cell response, and the possibilities include surface area, surface curvature, and roughness.

Fluid flow throughout the scaffold can thus be improved with pore gradients or including passages within a porous material. Pores with little connectivity may be designed to provide less fluid flow, receiving nutrients or disposing of waste product from a diffusion process to the surrounding fluid.

5.8 SCAFFOLDS FOR BIOMEDICAL FUNCTION

One of the major goals in developing biomaterials is to minimize the immune response and maximize the regenerative response.

Biomaterials represent a possible alternative to repairing an organ or tissue. Synthetic biomaterials have been investigated due to the ease of manufacturing large quantities of the desired biological tissue replacement.

The scaffold may need to sustain a load, and several possibilities are available. First, the biomaterial will have a set stiffness and strength. For example, polymers typically exhibit low strengths and rigidity. Incorporation of filler with a higher stiffness such as a calcium phosphate or bioglass will increase the stiffness with a possible increase in strength. This approach would require the selection of components that have a similar degradation rate. Pore design aspects can also be used to improve the stiffness and strength. Smaller pore content will increase the stiffness, the resistance to deformation. Given a set pore volume, increasing the pore size will produce thicker pore walls, providing a better ability to sustain a load. Finally, introducing micropores into the pore walls will provide an improvement. The combination of scaffold design aspects provides an

unlimited range in options, and the requirements for fluid flow, mechanical properties, etc. and need to be prioritized to provide the best scaffold performance.

Clinical applications of load-bearing synthetics are primarily in spinal arthrodesis (or fusion) procedures. Materials used in these fusion procedures have also been used for bone loss due to trauma, neoplasia, deformity, infection, and degenerative disease. Recent developments in spinal implants have improved the success rate of these fusion procedures, which have been in use for more than fifty years. A large percentage of spinal fusion procedures involve an interbody fusion between adjacent vertebral bodies. In these procedures, the lordosis is corrected using a spacer or strut that is placed between or adjacent to the vertebral bodies where disk or vertebral bone has been removed. To ensure a successful procedure, this spacer or strut must function both as a structural support and as a conduit for bone growth and fusion. Implants are currently available for virtually every interbody application, including anterior cervical discectomy and corpectomy, anterior lumbar and posterior lumbar interbody fusion, and thoracic and lumbar vertebrectomy.

There are various approaches for producing porous materials for tissue engineering. At the simplest level, one may require a sheet that exhibits porosity. Meshes or intertwined fibers, an approach used widely in the textile industry, have been used for this application. The use of fibers represents one scaffold development direction. Woven or knitted fiber meshes provide a variable pore size, but lack structural stability for clinical use. This led to the development of immobilizing the separate fibers by fiber bonding. Fiber-bonded structures provide a high porosity, but lack the required strength for load-bearing tissues. Fiber allocation initially was by a mechanical process where structures were woven or knitted, then carefully placed within a specific orientation for different layers, and the newest approach has involved a random deposition of fibers in as process called electrospinning. This produces a high pore content scaffold with control over fiber diameter as low as 50 nm, but little control of pore size.

In the 1980s the materials used for scaffolds were resorbable and predominantly amorphous, lacking specific tissue architecture and forming nonspecific interaction with cells. Many of the scaffold materials were derived from components that had been used for a long time in resorbable sutures. Hence, Dermagraft (Advanced Tissue Sciences, Inc.), a product used to treat chronic ulcers, was a porous scaffold of two materials known as polylactic acid and polyglycolic acid materials used in Vicryl sutures. Onto this lattice neonatal fibroblasts were cultured. The concept was that the cells would produce their own matrix while the original scaffold gradually resorbed so ultimately a tissue would be formed.

As this and similar products were tested, it became evident that it was necessary to engineer more complex tissue mechanisms such as tissue orientation and components and revascularization or angiogenesis. A cell cannot survive in general if it is more than 200 microns from a blood supply unless it is part of a special tissue such as articular cartilage or cornea. In addition, it has become increasingly recognized that the interaction between the cell and the surrounding matrix is critical and involves specific factors that interact with special receptors on the cell surface and determines the nature and function of the cell. This has led to the development of biointeractive materials that are resorbable and have information or components within the scaffold able to stimulate specific cell responses at a molecular level. These components can be growth factors, integrins, or a variety of extracellular matrix molecules or proteins such as various types of collagens, hyaluronic acid, laminin, fibrinogen, and vitronectin or heparan sulphate.

These biointeractive or "smart" materials are being used in new types of manufacturing procedures such as photolithography or creating layers of smart surfaces, which can be combined to mimic the three-dimensional structures of tissues.[51] Another method is so-called organ printing using CAD design to sequentially deposit layers of materials to again build a three-dimensional representation of tissue. Into these constructs are embedded growth factors and other agents that can stimulate blood vessel formation and potentially specific cell behavior. Surface topography has been revealed as a key component that can direct cell movement and stimulate a particular response. Progress in the scaffold design is addressing the incorporation of nano and microtopography, and

only one approach can presently provide a fine topography, a series of fine ledges on the walls of the scaffold that may direct cell movement into neighboring pores.[52]

Smart materials are also being incorporated in new cell culturing techniques. The incorporation of bioreactor technology in combination with smart surfaces has enabled the tissue constructs to be subjected to flow and physiological stresses during cell growth and differentiation. These bioreactors are designed to mimic the natural environment of the cells, that is, within the body. These smart materials enable stem cells to be used as the seeding cell population. The concept is that stem cells, which theoretically are an indefinitely renewable cell source, can provide a sustainable source of cells for tissue regeneration, and can be directed to form the required type of cell for the tissue construct.

An example of the historical progression toward tissue transplantation and bioreactor technology is seen in the evolution of the heart valve. In 1953, the Campbell and Hufnagel mechanical heart valve was introduced. This valve had a ball in a cage configuration and required long-term anticoagulant therapy to avoid life-threatening clotting.[53] Mechanical valves have been significantly refined over the years and remain today the most common heart valve replacement but still require anticoagulant treatment. Glutaraldehyde cross-linked porcine or pig valves were introduced in 1975. These tissue valves did not require anticoagulant treatment, but because of the cross-linking and other factors, remain an inert nonliving valve with a relatively short lifespan due to calcification and tissue deterioration. Cryopreserved or frozen human heart valves have had increased use from 1985, mainly in the pediatric age group. These valves are in relatively short supply and can cause alloimmunization or sensitization of the recipient to other transplants. More recently, early results of a tissue-engineered heart valve were published by Hoerstrup and co-workers.[54] The group fabricated a valve from poly-4-hydroxybutrate coated polyglycolic acid. The construct was then seeded with endothelial and smooth muscle cells and placed in a bioreactor under physiological pressures and flow for 14 days. The valve was implanted into sheep for up to 20 weeks, and normal valve function was demonstrated.

Incorporation of bioactive factors (growth factors, cytokines, morphogens, and even genes that have been altered themselves so that they can be released slowly, rapidly, on demand or in a specific sequence) into a smart material as part of its design can specifically instruct the cells placed on the material what to do and when to do it. For example, Mahoney and Saltzman[55] developed a polymeric material with soluble and insoluble components so that the nerve growth factor embedded within each component was released at different times. Cells adhered onto this surface were subsequently implanted and the release of nerve growth factor was detected for 21 days.

A more basic approach has been to inject marrow-derived stem cells directly into the damaged heart in the hope that they seed in the damaged tissue and repopulate, differentiate, and replace the damaged tissue.[56] The efficacy of this approach has recently been disputed.[57,58] Less than 2% of injected cells can ultimately be detected. Tissue regeneration is a constant battle between scar formation and normal tissue regeneration. If the balance is tipped toward scar formation, then the injected cells will only see the damaged tissue and will respond to this environment accordingly. If the cells see undamaged tissue or a compatible matrix with appropriate embedded information, then they are more likely to respond by regenerating the tissue.

Due to the recent advances in stem cell technology, stem-cell-based and non stem-cell-based tissue engineering is being addressed on several fronts (reviewed in Bianco and Robey[59]) including blood vessels, liver, bladder, meniscus, bone, pancreas, cartilage (ear, nose, joints), oral mucosa, nervous tissue, salivary gland, cornea, skeletal muscle, heart valves, trachea, dentin, skin, intestine, ureter, heart muscle, kidney, urethra, and potentially others. Bone marrow contains stem cells that have the capacity to develop into numerous tissues some of which are listed above as well as blood cells (angioblastic cells). Another aspect of the use of smart surfaces is to expand certain types of cells outside the body to be used as a separate source of cells. Traditionally, red cells, white cells, and blood plasma are taken from blood donors and then separated into these components. The number of suitable donors is diminishing with increased health risks to some populations. This is

evidenced by the emergence of several recent cases of CJD in the UK following distribution of blood from a single CJD positive donor (not detected at the time of donation and subsequently presented with the disease) to a number of recipients who subsequently contracted the disease. Blood donations have reached crisis point in the UK, but the reach is widespread as potential donors may have lived in the UK for greater than 6 months: "The deferral implemented by the Red Cross is the result of guidance issued by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). The guidance calls for the indefinite deferral of all blood donors who have spent a cumulative time of six months or more in the United Kingdom between the years 1980 and 1996. The United Kingdom includes England, Northern Ireland, Scotland, Wales, Isle of Man, or the Channel Islands. The deferral is intended to reduce the *theoretical* risk of transmitting new variant Creutzfeldt Jakob disease (nvCJD) through blood transfusion" (www.redcross.org). If the different types of blood cells could be produced in bioreactors from stem cells that have been fully characterized, then the disease risk would be negligible. Applications of tissue engineering to these problems have enormous potential benefits to health care around the world.

Combining cell and tissue engineering technologies translates into significant prospects for the future for these disciplines. Combining biomaterials, scaffolds, stem cells, and progenitor cells can create biointeractive products to address significant medical needs, such as major tissue deficits and organ damage or failure.

Several tissue engineering initiatives worldwide are bringing together expertise to address specific problems. For example, the Pittsburgh Tissue Engineering Initiative (www.ptei.org) lists its target areas as oral/bone, cardiovascular, stem cell, nerve, muscle, and skin tissue engineering. Under these areas, its directed research focus is listed as human developmental biology as applied to tissue engineering, polymer-based advanced biomaterials program, tissue imaging and bioinformatics as applied to tissue structure and function, gene therapy as applied to tissue engineering, artificial organs and tissue engineering, and clinical trials for tissue engineering technologies. Clearly, several disciplines need to be brought together in a synergistic manner to address clinically relevant needs. This will potentially produce a number of therapeutic outcomes and research tools during the development of these therapeutic products. Other such initiatives include: Rice University Bioengineering Program (www.bioe.rice.edu) implementation of a cross-disciplinary research training for their bioengineers capitalizing on recent advances in molecular and cell biology in order to translate scientific aspects of biotechnology into new cost-effective products and processes; and the Georgia Tech/Emory Center (GTEC) for the Engineering of Living Tissues (www.gtec.gatech.edu). GTEC's mission is to be the leader in the development of critical core technologies and an educated workforce that will enable the development of tissue engineering, revolutionize the medical implant industry, and in the process, help confront the transplantation crisis.

Stem cells, smart surfaces, smart materials, bioreactors, and scientific ingenuity hold great promise to make significant advances in tissue transplantation, tissue regeneration, and biomanufacturing in the not too distant future.

REFERENCES

1. Williams, D.F., *The Williams Dictionary of Biomaterials*, Liverpool University Press, Liverpoool, UK, 1999.
2. Black, J., *Biological Performance of Materials: Fundamentals of Biocompatibility*, 2nd ed., Marcel Dekker, New York, 1992, 3–22.
3. Dee, K.C., Puleo, D.A., and Bizios, R., *An Introduction to Tissue-Biomaterial Interactions*, John Wiley & Sons, Hoboken, NJ, 2002.
4. Anderson, J.M., Biological responses to materials, *Annu. Rev. Mater. Res.*, 31, 81–110, 2001.
5. Griffith, B.P., Hardesty, R.L., Trento, A., Paradis, I.L., Duquesnoy, R.J., Zeevi, A., Dauber, J.H., Dummer, J.S., Thompson, M.E., and Gryzan, S., Heart-lung transplantation: Lessons learned and future hopes, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 43(1), 6–16, 1987.

6. Duquesnoy, R.J. and Demetris, A.J., Immunopathology of cardiac transplant rejection, *Curr. Opin. Cardiol.,* 10(2), 193–206, 1995.
7. Duquesnoy, R.J., Immunogenetics of the human major histocompatiblity complex, *Clin. Lab. Med.,* 11(3), 509–536, 1991.
8. Kasiske, B.L., Snyder, J.J., Gilbertson, D.T., and Wang, C., Cancer after kidney transplantation in the United States, *Am. J. Transplant*., 4(6), 905–913, 2004.
9. Opelz, G. and Döhler, B., Lymphomas after solid organ transplantation: A collaborative transplant study report, *Am. J. Transplant*., 4(2), 222–230, 2004.
10. Zamora, M.R., Cytomegalovirus and lung transplantation, *Am. J. Transplant.,* 4(8), 1219–1226, 2004.
11. Klen, R., The origin of metastases in various bone grafts used after removal of malignant bone neoplasms, *Radiobiol. Radiother.* 2, 109–115, 1961.
12. Miller, M.J. and Evans, G.R.D., Tissue engineering and plastic surgery, in *Frontiers in Tissue Engineering*, Patrick, C.W., Jr., Mikos, A.G., and McIntire, L.V., Eds., Pergamon, Oxford, 1998, 213–232.
13. Kupiec-Weglinski, J.W., Graft rejection in sensitized recipients, *Ann. Transplant.,* 1(1), 34–40, 1996.
14. Larsen, C.P. and Pearson, T.C., The CD40 pathway in allograft rejection, acceptance, and tolerance, *Curr. Opin. Immunol*., 9(5), 641–647, 1997.
15. Livesey, S.A., Herndon, D.N., Hollyoak, M.A., Atkinson, Y.H., and Nag, A., Transplanted acellular allograft dermal matrix: Potential as a template for the reconstruction of viable dermis, *Transplantation*, 60(1), 1–9, 1995.
16. Prunieras, M., Epidermal cell cultures as models for living epidermis, *J. Invest. Dermatol*., 73(2), 135–137, 1979.
17. Krejci, N.C., Cuono, C.B., Langdon, R.C., and McGuire, J., *In vitro* reconstitution of skin: Fibroblasts facilitate keratinocyte growth and differentiation on acellular reticular dermis, *J. Invest. Derm.,* 97, 843–848, 1991.
18. Wainwright, D.J. Use of an acellular allograft dermal matrix (alloderm) in the management of full-thickness burns. *Burns* 21(4), 243–248, 1995.
19. Wainwright, D., Madden, M., Luterman, A., Hunt, J., Monafo, W., Heimbach, D., Kagan, R., Sittig, K., Dimick, A., and Herndon, D., Clinical evaluation of an acellular allograft dermal matrix in full-thickness burns, *J. Burn Care Rehabil.,* 17(2), 124–136, 1996.
20. Lattari, V., Jones, L.M., Varcelotti, J.R., Latenser, B.A., Sherman, H.F., and Barrette, R.R., The use of a permanent dermal allograft in full-thickness burns of the hand and foot: A report of three cases, *J. Burn Care Rehabil*., 18(2), 147–155, 1997.
21. Sheridan, R., Choucair, R., Donelan, M., Lydon, M., Petras, L., and Tompkins, R., Acellular allodermis in burns surgery: 11-year results of a pilot trial, *J. Burn Care Rehabil.,* 19(6), 528–530, 1998.
22. Tsai, C.C., Lin, S.D., Lai, C.S., and Lin, T.M., The use of composite acellular allodermis-ultrathin autograft on joint area in major burn patients: One year follow-up, *Kaohsiung J. Med. Sci.,* 15(11), 651–658, 1999.
23. Witt, P.D., Cheng, C.J., Mallory, S.B., and Lind, A.C., Surgical treatment of pseudosyndactyly of the hand in epidermolysis bullosa: Histological analysis of an acellular allograft dermal matrix, *Ann. Plast. Surg*., 43(4), 379–385, 1999.
24. Rhee, P.H., Friedman, C.D., Ridge, J.A., and Kusiak, J., The use of processed allograft dermal matrix for intraoral resurfacing: An alternative to split-thickness skin grafts, *Arch. Otolaryngol. Head Neck Surg.,* 124(11), 1201–1204, 1998.
25. Kridel, R.W., Foda, H., and Lunde, K.C., Septal perforation repair with acellular human dermal allograft, *Arch. Otolaryngol. Head Neck Surg*., 124(1), 73–78, 1998.
26. McFeely, W.J., Jr., Bojrab, D.I., Kartush, J.M., Tympanic membrane perforation repair using Allo-Derm, *Otolaryngol. Head Neck Surg*., 123(1 Pt. 1), 17–21, 2000.
27. Clayman, M.A. and Clayman, L.Z., Use of AlloDerm as a barrier to treat chronic Frey's syndrome, *Otolaryngol. Head Neck Surg*., 124(6), 687, 2001.
28. Mahn, D.H., Esthetic soft tissue ridge augmentation using an acellular dermal connective tissue allograft, *J. Esthet. Restor. Dent*., 15(2), 72–78, 2003.
29. Kridel, R.W., Acellular human dermis for facial soft tissue augmentation, *Facial Plast. Surg. Clin. North Am.,* 9(3), 413–437, 2001.

30. Sclafani, A.P., Romo, T., III, Jacono, A.A., McCormick, S.A., Cocker, R., and Parker, A., Evaluation of acellular dermal graft (AlloDerm) sheet for soft tissue augmentation: A 11-year follow-up of clinical observations and histological findings, *Arch. Facial Plast. Surg.* 3(2), 101–103, 2001.

31. Frodel, J.L., Primary facial rehabilitation in facial paralysis after extirpative surgery, *Arch. Facial Plast. Surg.,* 2(4), 249–251, 2000.

32. Caffesse, R.G., de la Rosa, M., and Mota, L.F., Regeneration of soft and hard tissue periodontal defects, *Am. J. Dent.,* 15(5), 339–345, 2002.

33. Wagshall, E., Lewis, Z., Babich, S.B., Sinensky, M.C., and Hochberg, M., Acellular dermal matrix allograft in the treatment of mucogingival defects in children: Illustrative case report, *ASDC J. Dent. Child.,* 69(1), 39–43, 11, 2002.

34. Novaes, A.B., Jr., Grisi, D.C., Molina, G.O., Souza, S.L., Taba, M., Jr., and Grisi, M.F., Comparative 66-month clinical study of a subepithelial connective tissue graft and acellular dermal matrix graft for the treatment of gingival recession, *J. Periodontol.,* 72(11), 1477–1484, 2001.

35. Lemer, M.L., Chaikin, D.C., and Blaivas, J.G., Tissue strength analysis of autologous and cadaveric allografts for the pubovaginal sling, *Neurourol. Urodyn.,* 18(5), 497–503, 1999.

36. Clemons, J.L., Myers, D.L., Aguilar, V.C., Arya, L.A., Vaginal paravaginal repair with an AlloDerm graft, *Am. J. Obstet. Gynecol.,* 189(6), 1612–1618, 2003.

37. Buinewicz, B. and, Rosen, B., Acellular cadaveric dermis (AlloDerm): A new alternative for abdominal hernia repair, *Ann. Plast. Surg.,* 52(2), 188–194, 2004.

38. Disa, J.J., Invited discussion: Full-thickness abdominal wall reconstruction in the rabbit model, *Ann. Plast. Surg.,* 51(1), 110–111, 2003.

39. Beniker, D., McQuillan, D., Livesey, S., Urban, R.M., Turner, T.M., Blum, B., Hughes, K., and Haggard, W.O., The use of acellular dermal matrix as a scaffold for periosteum replacement, *Orthopedics*, 26 (5 Suppl.), S591–596, 2003.

40. Brigido, S.A., Boc, S.F., Lopez, R.C. Effective management of major lower extremity wounds using an acellular regenerative tissue matrix: A pilot study, *Orthopedics*, 27 (1 Suppl.), S145–149, 2004.

41. Abington Memorial Hospital Press Releases: March 3, 2003: Abington Memorial Hospital's Addonizio performs rare life-saving heart surgery on woman with orange-sized aneurysm using frozen human skin.

42. Baxter, R.A., Intracapsular allogenic dermal grafts for breast implant-related problems, *Plast. Reconstr. Surg.,* 112(6), 1692–1696, 2003.

43. Cothren, C.C., Gallego, K., Anderson, E.D., and Schmidt, D., Chest wall reconstruction with acellular dermal matrix (AlloDerm) and a latissimus muscle flap, *Plast. Reconstr. Surg.,* 114(4), 1015–1017, 2004.

44. Islam, S., Ogane, K., Ohkuma, H., and Suzuki, S., Usefulness of acellular dermal graft as a dural substitute in experimental model, *Surg. Neurol.,* 61(3), 297–302, 2004.

45. Costantino, P.D., Wolpoe, M.E., Govindaraj, S., Chaplin, J.M., Sen, C., Cohen, M., and Gnoy, A., Human dural replacement with acellular dermis: Clinical results and a search of the literature, *Head Neck*, 22(8), 765–771, 2000.

46. Warren, W.L., Medary, M.B., Dureza, C.D., Bellotte, J.B., Flannagan, P.P., Oh, M.Y., and Fukushima, T., Dural repair using acellular human dermis: Experience with 200 cases: Technique assessment, *Neurosurgery*, 46(6), 1391–1396, 2000.

47. Barret, J.P., Dziewulski, P., McCauley, R.L., Herndon, D.N., and Desai, M.H., Dural reconstruction of a class IV calvarial burn with decellularized human dermis, *Burns,* 25(5), 459–462, 1999.

48. Chaplin, J.M., Costantino, P.D., Wolpoe, M.E., Bederson, J.B., Griffey, E.S., and Zhang, W.X., Use of an acellular dermal allograft for dural replacement: An experimental study, *Neurosurgery*, 45(2), 320–327, 1999.

49. Patino, M.G., Neiders, M.E., Andreana, S., Noble, B., Cohen, R.E., Collagen as an implantable material in medicine and dentistry, *J. Oral Implantol.,* 28(5), 220–225, 2002.

50. Delustro, F., Sehl, L., Estridge, T., and Wallace, D., Collagen: The next generation of resorbable biodevices in surgery, in *Tissue Engineering and Novel Delivery Systems,* Yaszemski, M.J., Trantolo, D.J., Lewandrowski, K.-U., Hasirci, V., Altobelli, D.E., and Wise, D.L., Eds., Marcel Dekker, New York, 2004, 521–541.

51. Sachlos, E. and Czernuszka, J.T., Making tissue engineering scaffolds work. Review: The application of solid freeform fabrication technology to the production of tissue engineering scaffolds, *Eur. Cell Mater.*, 5, 29–39; discussion, 39–40, 2003.

52. Gross, K.A. and Rodriguez-Lorenzo, L.M., Biodegradable composite scaffolds with an interconnected spherical network for bone tissue engineering, *Biomaterials,* 25, 4955–4962, 2004.

53. Hufnagel, C.A., Villegas, P.D., and Nahas, H., Experiences with new types of aortic valvular prostheses, *Ann. Surg.,* 147(5), 636–644; discussion 644–645, 1958.

54. Hoerstrup, S.P., Sodian, R., Daebritz, S., Wang, J., Bacha, E.A., Martin, D.P., Moran, A.M., Guleserian, K.J., Sperling, J.S., Kaushal, S., Vacanti, J.P., Schoen, F.J., and Mayer Jr., J.E., Jr., Functional living trileaflet heart valves grown *in vitro*, *Circulation*, 102(19 Suppl. 3), III44–49, 2000.

55. Mahoney, M.J. and Saltzman, W.M., Transplantation of brain cells assembled around a programmable synthetic microenvironment, *Nat. Biotechnol.*, 19(10), 934–939, 2001.

56. Orlic, D., Kajstura, J., Chimenti, S., Limana, F., Jakoniuk, I., Quaini, F., Nadal-Ginard, B., Bodine, D.M., Leri, A., and Anversa, P., Mobilized bone marrow cells repair the infarcted heart, improving function and survival, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 98(18), 10344–10349, 2001.

57. Murry, C.E., Soonpaa, M.H., Reinecke, H., Nakajima, H., Nakajima, H.O., Rubart, M., Pasumarthi, K.B., Ismail, Virag. J., Bartelmez, S.H., Poppa, V., Bradford, G., Dowell, J.D., Williams, D.A., and Field, L.J., Haematopoietic stem cells do not transdifferentiate into cardiac myocytes in myocardial infarcts, *Nature*, 428(6983), 664–668, 2004.

58. Balsam, L.B., Wagers, A.J., Christensen, J.L., Kofidis, T., Weissman, I.L., and Robbins, R.C., Haematopoietic stem cells adopt mature haematopoietic fates in ischaemic myocardium, *Nature,* 428(6983), 668–673, 2004.

59. Bianco, P. and Robey, P.G., Stem cells in tissue engineering, *Nature*, 414(6859), 118–121, 2001.

60. Disa, J.J., Chiaramonte, M.F., Girotto, J.A., Klein, M.H., and Goldberg, N.H. Advantages of autologous fascia versus synthetic patch abdominal reconstruction in experimental animal defects. *Plast. Reconstr. Surg.*, 108(7):2086–2087,2001.

61. Agag, R.L., Granick, M.S., Omidi M., Catrambone, J., and Benevenia, J. Neurosurgical reconstruction with acellular cadaveric dermal matrix. *Ann. Plast. Surg.,* 2004, 52(6):571–77.

62. Issa, N.C. and Patel, R., New issues in bacterial infections in solid organ transplant recipients*, Infect. Med.*, 21(5), 234–244, 2004.

63. Phelps, C.J., Koike, C., Vaught, T.D., Boone, J., Wells, K.D., Chen, S.H., Ball, S., Specht, S.M., Polejaeva, I.A., Monahan, J.A., Jobst, P.M., Sharma, S.B., Lamborn, A.E., Garst, A.S., Moore, M., Demetris, A.J., Rudert, W.A., Bottino, R., Bertera, S., Trucco, M., Starzl, T.E., Dai, Y., and Ayares, D.L., Production of alpha 1,33-–galactosyltransferase-deficient pigs, *Science*, 299(5605), 411–414, 2003.

64. Black, J., Effects of degradation products on remote organ function. In *Biological Performance of Materials: Fundamentals of Biocompatibility*, 2nd ed., Marcel Dekker, New York, 1992, 303–312.

6 Viability and Functional Assays Used to Assess Preservation Efficacy: The Multiple Endpoint/Tier Approach

Robert G. Van Buskirk

CONTENTS

6.1   INTRODUCTION

An accurate assessment of the efficacy of a biopreservation solution and protocol ultimately resides on the quality and reliability of the viability and functional assays used to assess the preservation process. The field of biopreservation viability assessment is continuing to evolve. Early in the history of the discipline red blood cell preservation was monitored using simple spectrophotometers that measured hemoglobin leakage from these cells; whereas sperm preservation was often scored based on motility. Now, however, there are a variety of assessment assays that can track a multitude of changes in cell physiology and function that either reflect cell death or herald the initiation of a key death cascade precipitated by poor preservation procedures. Yet with dozens of assays now available, a quandary is now presented on which assay(s) to choose to assess preservation efficacy. This article reviews the current slate of viability assays that have been organized into four assay tiers. The current state of the art indicates that multiple endpoint fluorescence assays hold the strongest position as a battery of viability assessment tools. Nearly all of these viability assays can be broadly applied for most cell types, whereas functional assays typically need to be tailor-matched to the particular cell type being evaluated. A review of the literature indicates that (1) no single assay should be used to assess viability or function of cells undergoing a preservation process, (2) the unique behavior of a particular viability probe must be considered in the context of each cell

123

type (e.g., primary hepatocytes will detoxify many fluorescent probes leading to erroneous conclusions), (3) new noninvasive assays should be developed to adequately determine the preservation efficacy of thick tissues or whole organs, (4) the future of biopreservation viability assays will be driven by a mechanism approach that may ultimately lead to the use of proteomic and genomic profiling of preserved tissues, and (5) a recommendation is posited arguing that the best method of comprehensively assessing preservation efficacy is to choose at least one assay from Tiers 1, 2, and 3 as defined herein. Thus, the portfolio of assays that is emerging is more reliable and constitutes an array of assays that should be used as a multiple endpoint approach. Furthermore, these assays are now yielding more information about the stress and cell death pathways in cells that are being activated as a consequence of biopreservation. This information, in turn, will yield improved preservation solutions and protocols in the future to support the cell therapy, gamete preservation, and tissue and organ preservation arenas.

6.2 THE EVOLUTION OF THE MULTIPLE ENDPOINT AND MECHANISM-BASED ASSAY CONCEPTS

A bewildering array of viability assays that can be used to assess the efficacy of a new preservation protocol or solution formulation is now available to the preservation biologist. Some of the earliest assays of historical interest were limited to a single cell type. For instance, Gulevsky et al.[1] used one of the earliest assays reported in the literature when they examined the effects of hypertonic solutions and slow freezing to a variety of temperatures on the permeability of plasma membranes in erythrocytes. In this case they examined hemoglobin leakage and the release of [14]sucrose. While these assays appeared to work reasonably well, the former is cell specific and the latter shares the challenge of necessitating appropriate radioactive disposal processes. Furthermore and fundamental to this review article, both assays measured the same parameter — the loss of membrane integrity. Thus, by using them together these assays were not designed to reveal multiple aspects of cell death that can occur as a consequence of preservation. Yet at this point in time there were few other probes or protocols that could reveal the underlying causes of preservation-induced cell death other than the breakdown of cell membranes.

The next group of assays that appeared in the literature was essentially improvements and extensions of the same type of release assays as those mentioned above. The [51]chromium (Cr) release assay functioned in a manner similar to the hemoglobin and glucose release assays. Unlike the glucose release assay, the ^{51}Cr release assay could be used with a multitude of cell types. This assay was used actively in the 1970s–1990s to assess preservation efficacy. For instance, Holden et al. used the ^{51}Cr release assay to study the cryopreservation of lymphocytes.[2] Callery et al. also used the ^{51}Cr release assay to study the cryopreservation of lymphocytes and correlated the release of chromium to rosette-forming cells.[3] The most recent reference to this release assay was that of Schmidt-Wolf et al., who used it to assess the cryopreservation of murine lymphokine-activated killer cells.[4] By this time, however, the use of nonradioactive probes that could substitute for radioactive isotopes was in vogue and preservation biologists began to champion other viability assays such as the LDH release assay.

The LDH (lactate dehydrogenase) assay appeared in the literature at about the same time as the ^{51}Cr release assays were exiting the laboratory. Once again, the LDH release assay was limited to measuring cell membrane leakage. Yet unlike the ^{51}Cr leakage assay, the LDH assay is still used today, given that it (a) is nonradioactive, (b) varies little between different cell types, and most importantly, (c) can be used both on single-cell monolayers as well as to assess whole organ preservation. For instance, Ostrowska et al. used the LDH release assay to examine the functional and morphological integrity of freshly isolated and cryopreserved human hepatocytes.[5] Not surprisingly, they found a tight inverse relationship between LDH leakage and trypan blue exclusion given that both assays measure cell membrane breakdown. As stated previously, however, the LDH

leakage assay is still used today, given that it is an assay that works well examining the post-thaw function of hypothermically stored organs such as liver. Tan et al., for instance, used this assay to examine the protective effects of exogenous adenosine triphosphate on hypothermically preserved rat liver.[6] Quintana et al. examined the effect of S-nitrosoglutathione added to the University of Wisconsin (UW) solution and were able to correlate the release of LDH in hypodermically stored livers to glycogen content, the release of bile, and the morphological appearance of sinusoidal endothelial cells.[7] Finally, a group in the Netherlands compared the efficacy of UW solution to HypoThermosol using the LDH assay and found both solutions to be comparable and once again, the release of LDH appeared to correlate well with liver enzyme function.[8] Thus, the LDH leakage assay is still commonly used today given its flexible applications ranging from single cells to whole organs.

The late 1980s ushered in a revolution in how *in vitro* toxicity assays can be accomplished with cells seeded in multiwell plates. Two simultaneous events occurred at this time. First, the then-young company Molecular Probes of Eugene, Oregon, introduced the power of fluorescent probes to monitor a variety of cell functions by offering hundreds of indicator dyes primarily designed to be used with either a flow cytometer and/or the relatively new, confocal microscope. Yet, the implementation of fluorescent dyes to measure cell toxicity was at the outset limited to those facilities that had these expensive instruments in house. In both cases, neither the FACS nor the confocal was designed for high throughput screening. In the late 1980s, however, Millipore Corporation introduced the first bottom-reading spectrofluorometer (CytoFluor) expressly designed to read fluorescence *in situ* in monolayers of cells grown in multiwell plates.[9] With the ever-increasing number of physiology-specific fluorescent indicator dyes now marketed by a variety of vendors and the advent of this new type of bottom-reading spectrofluorometer that made high throughput screening possible, it was now much easier to accomplish a variety of fluorescence-based assays often referred to as a battery or multiple-endpoint assay.[10,11,12] The term "endpoint" in this phrase marked the beginning of being able to look at multiple cytotoxicity indicators that reflected different endpoints of cell death. Thus, the investigator could look at cell membrane disruption, loss of mitochondrial proton motive force, influx of intracellular calcium and other parameters that reflected different endpoints *other than* merely the ultimate loss of cell membrane integrity that all cells experience once they have gone through the cell death process. Furthermore, given the breadth of fluorescent probes emerging it was possible to do double and triple labels of the same cells so that multiple parameters could be measured at the same time and in the same cells.[9] Thus it was clear by the early 1990s that fluorescent probes had the versatility, chemical specificity, and spectral qualities to be considered the next generation of viability indicators that could be used to assess preservation efficacy. This multiple-endpoint concept is echoed in the current online Molecular Probes Handbook (http://www.probes.com/handbook/sections/1500.html) that states the following in Section 15-1 — Overview of Probes for Cell Viability, Cell Proliferation, and Live-Cell Function:

> *"The diversity of live cells and their environments makes it impossible to devise a single viability or enumeration assay applicable to all cell types. Because viability is not easily defined in terms of a single physiological or morphological parameter, it is often desirable to combine several different measures, such as enzymatic activity, membrane permeability, and oxidation-reduction (redox) potential. Each assay method has inherent advantages and limitations and may introduce specific biases into the experiment; thus, different applications often call for different approaches."*

The third important stage in post-thaw viability assessment occurred more recently when Baust et al. recognized that by using a mix of both the fluorescent multiple endpoint assays and spectrofluorometer analysis of enzymatic assays, it was possible to determine not only *if* cells were succumbing to a preservation process, but in addition it was possible to determine *how* this occurred and to plot a time frame in which cell death due to extended or poor cryopreservation is executed.[13–16]

A critical contributor to this next level in preservation assessment was the introduction of Alamar-Blue, a metabolic indicator dye reviewed later. This probe allowed the investigator to assess the metabolic activity of the same cell culture repeatedly over a nearly unlimited time period. This near-real-time assay was critical for the Baust group to identify delayed-onset cell death. These data, reviewed later, have led us to the understanding of how preservation-induced apoptosis and its prevention are important considerations in preservation protocols.

Thus, viability assays used in the preservation sciences can be seen as three historical chapters marked by (1) the early membrane lysis studies, (2) the multiple endpoint assays that measure different cell parameters, and (3) the more mechanistic assays that have now revealed the importance of both apoptosis and necrosis in preservation-induced cell death. It is the intent of this article to review most of the assays mentioned in the current literature and organize them in a multiple tier level so that a recommendation can be made for a multiple endpoint assay that can comprehensively assess preservation efficacy and molecular mechanisms. An example of how these powerful assays can be used in concert together as a step toward improved preservation protocols and solutions is presented elsewhere. This Multiple Solution Hypothesis, a new concept in the preservation sciences,[17] would not be possible without the appropriate mix of assays from Tiers 1, 2, and 3 listed in the next section. It is also the intent of this article to look at new and emerging technologies such as cDNA microarrays and SELDI-TOF/ProteinChips and to make projections on how these and other techniques will be important in the future as assay systems to understand and improve preservation formulations and protocols.

6.3 THE MULTIPLE ASSAY TIER CONCEPT OF VIABILITY ASSAYS

A survey of nearly all viability assays available to the preservation scientist reveals that they can be grouped into at least four categories. The following assay tier is not specific to preservation biology, but is presented below as a tier concept that can guide those who work with preserved cells.

6.3.1 TIER 1 ASSAYS = CYTOLYSIS LIVE/DEAD ASSAYS

This tier of assays is historically the first to be used to assess viability and still remains a key group of techniques that should be included in all preservation viability assays. The chromium and glucose release assays reviewed earlier are of historical importance (see previous section) and thus are not reviewed here, but do represent cytolysis or membrane leakage assays and thus are included in this assay tier. The cytolysis assays have both a very positive and a negative attribute to them. On the positive side, there are a variety of assays that can reveal cell membrane leakage that occurs as a final stage in most forms of cell death. Thus, the investigator has the flexibility to use these assays coupled to a microscope, spectrophotometer, and/or a spectrofluorometer. Yet given that cytolysis is the last stage of preservation-induced cell death, these assays do not reveal early-stage mechanisms underlying preservation-induced cell death and thus have limited use in the future as a diagnostic means to develop improved preservation formulations and protocols.

The LDH assay, unlike its predecessors, continues today to be useful for measuring preservation-induced cytotoxicity. The concept behind this cytolysis assay is simply that if the cell membrane is compromised, then LDH will leak into the extracellular milieu where it can be measured. LDH has at least three advantages over alternative enzymes that could have been selected as candidate enzymes to be measured. First, LDH is a common enzyme in all cells and varies little with the metabolic state of the cell. Second, unlike many other cytoplasmic enzymes, LDH exists in a relatively high concentration and is stable. Third, LDH can be measured using a coupled enzymatic reaction. In this series LDH oxidizes lactate to pyruvate which, in turn, can be converted to form formazan via the trazolium salt, INT. While there are a number of variations on how this can be accomplished as revealed in several protocols, the end result is that the LDH is measured indirectly via a spectrophotometer that measures formazan at an absorbance of 490–500 nm. There are several

companies that offer protocols and kits that give detailed information of how to assess LDH leakage. Surveying these protocols as well as original research articles has shown that the LDH assay is reliable, but there are at least two drawbacks to this assay. First, several different controls must be executed to compute the results. For instance, BioVision (Mountain View, California) lists a background control, low control and high control; whereas the CytoScan LDH-Cytotoxicity Assay Kit suggests employing seven different controls. The second drawback is that there are relatively few viability assays that use spectrophotometric analysis, whereas the more sensitive and utilitarian spectrofluorometry and bioluminescence are now more preferred. The LDH leakage assay does, however, have an important virtue not shared by most other assays. As mentioned previously, it can be used to assess the preservation efficacy of both single cells as well as whole organs. For this reason, the LDH leakage assay should be considered a key assay in Assay Tier 1.

The trypan blue assay is also one of the most commonly used cytolysis assays. A number of investigators has used the trypan blue exclusion assay in studying preservation efficacy. For instance, Abrahamse *et al*. used the trypan blue assay to measure necrosis as one of many assay tools to compare the hypothermic preservation efficacy of UW, HTK, and Celsior solutions.[18] Muller *et al*. used the trypan blue procedure to assess serum-free cryopreservation of porcine hepatocytes.[19] Finally, Isayeva *et al*. did an interesting study on the chilling sensitivity of zebrafish oocytes and compared the sensitivities of the MTT assay to the trypan blue assay and found the latter more sensitive.[20] It should be noted, however, that the MTT assay measures mitochondrial activity that may or may not be related to cell membrane leakage measured by the trypan blue assay.

The principle behind the trypan blue assay is simple. This dye is negatively charged and will bind to positively charged proteins in the cytosol only if the plasma membrane is ruptured. The advantage of the trypan blue assay over the LDH leakage assay is that the former is much easier to execute, yet demands the use of a hemocytometer to count trypan blue-stained cells. Furthermore, fewer positive controls are necessary to run. For instance, LDH exists in serum and thus can influence results when one is testing cells preserved in serum-based preservation media. The presence of serum has little effect, if any, on the trypan blue assay. It does, however, share the same handicap as the LDH assay given that neither can be analyzed using fluorescence and/or bioluminescence. Thus, in both bases, the LDH and trypan blue assays are not amenable to high throughput analysis. For additional information on the trypan blue exclusion assay, more details can be found in Freshney's *Culture of Animal Cells: A Manual of Basic Technique*.[21]

Clearly, the future of Tier 1 assays is in bioluminescence and fluorescence, given that both are now being more commonly used in cell and molecular biology protocols. Of these two, fluorescence dominates. Yet one particular assay that uses bioluminescence is worth mentioning, although it has not yet been used for assessing preservation efficacy. The ToxiLight BioAssay kit (Cambrex Corporation, Rockland, Maine) works via bioluminescence. It measures the release of adenylate kinase from cells whose cell membranes have been damaged. Like LDH, adenylate kinase is present in all eukaryotic cells. This enzyme converts ADP to ATP and it is the latter that is measured using the bioluminescent firefly luciferase reaction. Thus, as the membranes break down more adenylate kinase is released from the cells. The virtue of this assay is that it is one of the few that can be used over time with the same cell culture set and is amenable to high throughput analysis. For instance, a robotic system can be employed to collect very small samples of media on a regular basis to monitor the release of the enzyme. Given that it uses the luciferase enzyme, it has a range of over 3 orders of magnitude and can detect as few as 10 cells/microwell. As such, it is a non-destructive or noninvasive assay that can reveal small changes in cell membrane permeability. According to the manufacturer, it requires only one step and results can be generated in 10 minutes. Thus, this assay appears to have great potential for assaying preservation-induced, time-dependent changes in cell membrane integrity.

The more commonly used set of Tier 1 assays are those that employ fluorescent indicator dyes. The explosion in the use of these fluorescent dyes as well as the plethora of multiwell-reading

spectrofluorometers is a testimony to the utility of these indicator dyes. A large number of preservation investigations have been accomplished in the past few years that have employed Tier 1 fluorescent probes that include Calcein-AM, CFDA-AM, BCECF-AM, SYTO, ethidium homodimer, and propidium iodide. This group of probes can be subdivided into two different subsets, one of which is trapped by the cell and leaks out only if a membrane rupture occurs. An example illustrated later in this article is Calcein-AM. The other subtype, exemplified by propidium iodide, is membrane insoluble and only stains the cell if it gains access through a compromised plasma membrane.

Most of the probes in the first category contain an acetoxymethyl ester ("AM") that confers membrane permeability to these dyes. As electrically neutral molecules, the esterase substrates have been very useful for loading cells with a variety of indicators that can measure intracellular ph (BCECF-AM) to calcium (FLUO3-AM). In the hands of this investigator as well as corroborated elsewhere (Molecular Probes Handbook), Calcein AM is the dye of choice within this Tier 1 group due to its superior retention, resistance to change in emission intensity due to changes in pH, and the fact that it is read at fluorescein wavelengths and thus can be quantitatively and qualitatively analyzed using standard spectrofluorometry and fluorescence microscopy. BCECF-AM, on the other hand, is also available to be used as a Tier 1 assay, but its emission intensity is only half-maximal at pH 7.0. Fluorescein diacetate was one of the first probes to be used to monitor cell membrane lysis because fluorescein is formed by intracellular hydrolysis of fluorescein diacetate, yet fluorescein readily leaks from cells. This high leakage rate led to the development of carboxyfluorescein diacetate (CFDA) which upon hydrolysis forms carboxyfluorescein, but Calcein-AM is regarded as the premier fluorescent dye that measures plasma membrane integrity.

A number of preservation biologists have used Calcein-AM, propidium iodide, and CFDA to investigate improved preservation protocols and solutions. Grundler et al. used a SYBR-14/propidium iodide stain combination to identify viable, dead, and "intermediate" bull sperm subpopulations subsequent to cryopreservation;[22] whereas Liu et al. used propidium iodide in conjunction with Annexin V (discussed later) to look at the anti-apoptotic effect of ascorbic acid after cold reperfusion injury in rat liver.[23] Sion et al. also used the Annexin V/propidium iodide combination to correlate spermatozoa viability to function.[24] Calcein-AM has also been used by a variety of laboratories, including our group, to assess cell membrane leakage as a consequence of cryopreservation. For instance, the comparative efficacies of hypothermic preservation solutions have been assessed by our group using Calcein-AM and other fluorescent indicator probes. Neonatal human hepatocytes were stored in a variety of hypothermic storage solutions for two days and allowed to recover at normothermic temperatures for one day. At this time cells were incubated with Calcein-AM, washed, and analyzed in both the fluorescence microscope (Figure 6.1) or using the CytoFluor multiwell plate reader (Figure 6.2). Note that Calcein-AM is able to distinguish differences in the abilities of the hypothermic preservation solutions to protect the cell membrane integrity of these hepatocytes. Baust et al. have also shown that Calcein-AM can be useful to demonstrate the delayed-onset cell death that occurs to cells during the 48 hours subsequent to thawing, and can be combined with Annexin V and propidium iodide to yield estimates of cells succumbing to necrosis and apoptosis.[16] Thus, Calcein-AM and the other associated plasma membrane integrity dyes have been extensively used as a first tier to assess cell viability of preserved cells through analyzing cell membrane integrity.

6.3.2 Tier 2 Assays = Enzymatic and Molecular Mechanism Assays

The Tier 2 assays are designed to yield more detailed information of the basis underlying cell death that can occur as a consequence of cell preservation. In most, if not all, cases, these assays reflect changes in cell physiology that can occur that precede the later event of the loss in cell membrane integrity. Once again, given the emphasis on fluorescent indicator dyes in this chapter, the major focus will be on this type of probe. Most of these indicator dyes focus on either events that are
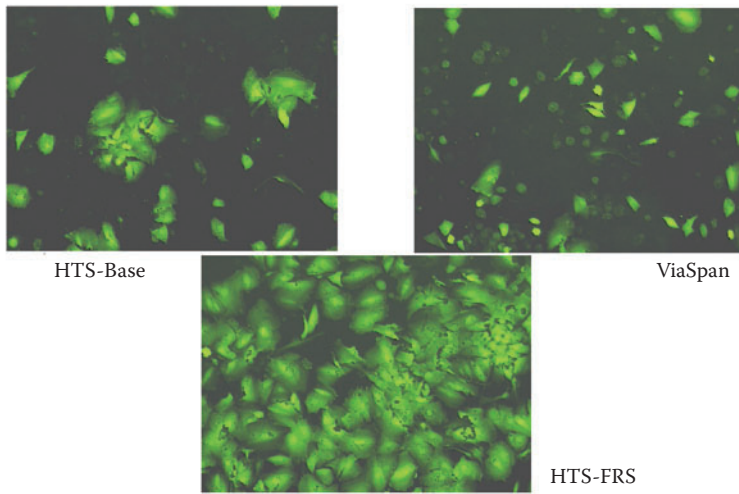
FIGURE 6.1 Hypothermic storage of neonatal human hepatocytes. Human neonatal hepatocytes were isolated and subcultured in 24-well dishes under normothermic conditions. Plates were then hypothermically stored for 2 days at 4°C and then returned to normothermic temperatures (37°C) for 1 day. At the end of this third day the cultures were incubated with Calcein-AM and standard fluorescence microscopy was used (ex 485/em 530) to capture the images above. Note that there were more cells staining with Calcein-AM in cultures that were stored in HTS-FRS. Also note that two types of staining cells appeared in the cultures stored in ViaSpan. The bright cells are those whose membranes have not been compromised by the storage process, whereas the fainter cells are those that have ruptured membranes.
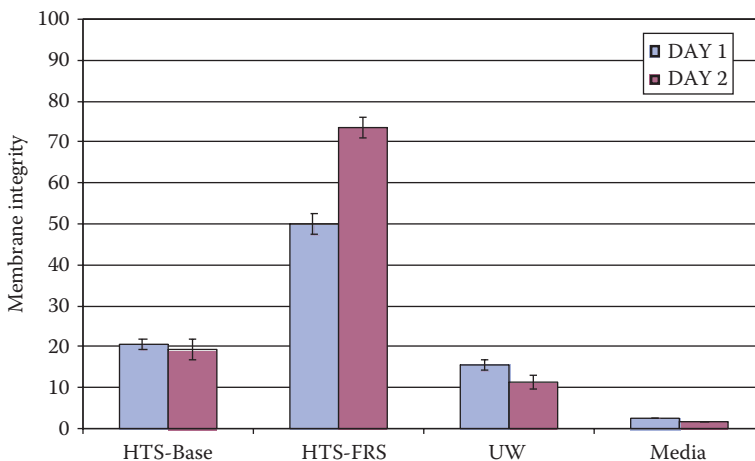
FIGURE 6.2 Hypothermic storage of neonatal human hepatocytes following 2 days at 4°C. A fluorescent plate reader was used to quantitatively assess the same cultures depicted in Figure 6.1. Note that the difference in emission intensity detected by the plate reader mirrored the fluorescence micrographs presented in Figure 6.1.

components of, or linked to, apoptosis — programmed cell death. The other group of probes indicate changes in mitochondrial activity that may or may not be linked to apoptosis and/or necrosis that occurs as a consequence of preservation-induced cell death. Given the breadth of probes available from several vendors, it is beyond the bounds of this discussion to list all of these assays, but the probes used most often in the preservation sciences will be discussed.

6.3.2.1 Mitochondrial Probes

A number of probes have been very useful in assessing mitochondrial activity. One of the most commonly used probes is the resazurin derivative, alamarBlue. Other mitochondrial probes include the tetrazolium salts that have been used for analyzing redox potential of cells for viability, cytotoxicity and proliferation. These compounds form a nonfluorescent formazan product and thus cannot be incorporated easily in a multiple endpoint fluorescence assay system. Yet the reduction of MTT is one of the most popular mitochondrial activity assays used today for a variety of applications and can be quantified using standard absorbance readers. Castagnoli et al., for instance, used MTT successfully to correlate changes in structure and changes in viability in cryopreserved skin.[25] Son et al. has also used the MTT assay for optimizing cryoprotectants for the cryopreservation of rat hepatocytes.[26] On another front, a large group of dyes have emerged that are regarded as potentiometric probes. These dyes, like their parent compound Rhodamine 123, are mitochondrial selective and can be used to analyze the proton motive force of mitochondria. In most cases the amount of Rhodamine 123 retained by the mitochondria reflects the magnitude of the proton motive force. While once again the diversity of these potentiometric probes is too extensive for a full review, many of these dyes, such as JC-1, have been found extremely useful for examining changes to mitochondrial potential as a consequence of preservation.

This chapter will focus briefly on alamarBlue and JC-1, given that both have been used to assess preservation efficacy. AlamarBlue is a noninvasive fluorescent dye that can be analyzed either spectrophotometrically or spectrofluorometrically. While our group has used this dye extensively for both cryopreservation and hypothermic preservation studies,[13–17,27–29] the reader is best directed to an article by Voytik-Harbin et al. that compares alamarBlue to the MTT and radioactive thymidine assays[30] alamarBlue has several virtues. First, as demonstrated by the aforementioned group and verified by our research team, the alamarBlue assay is a superior assay for counting cells *in situ*. The greater the fluorescence signal, the larger the number of cells being measured. Second, while most investigators analyze alamarBlue using a spectrofluorometer, the conversion of alamarBlue to its red alternative can be tracked visually. Thus, in much the same manner as developing black and white photo prints in a developer solution, the investigator can subjectively determine the optimum incubation time that will demonstrate differences between samples. But alamarBlue's major virtue lies in the fact that it is nondestructive and can be used repeatedly with the same cultures over an extended period of time. This has been especially important to our research team given that it has allowed us to track the time-dependent decrease in cell viability that can occur subsequent to preservation. An example of this type of analysis is illustrated in Figure 6.3. Human keratinocytes were seeded in cell culture plates, subjected to hypothermic exposure while immersed in a variety of hypothermic preservation agents, and alamarBlue fluorescence (expressed as "percent viability") was analyzed over a three-day period. Note that the alamarBlue fluorescence of cells preserved in UW solution (ViaSpan) was highest at Day 0 compared to the HTS (HypoThermosol) series. Yet over the course of 3 days the apparent metabolic activity increased in the HTS series, whereas it declined in cells stored in either UW solution or KGM (keratinocyte growth media). Thus, if this experiment had been limited to Day 0, then the assumption might be that the UW preservation solution is superior to HTS; yet the ability of alamarBlue to analyze the same cultures repeatedly over a long period of time showed that the apparent metabolic activity of the cells stored in UW appeared to decrease over time. Given that changes in alamarBlue can reflect metabolic activity and/or an increase in cell number, additional experiments not shown here using SYTO dye
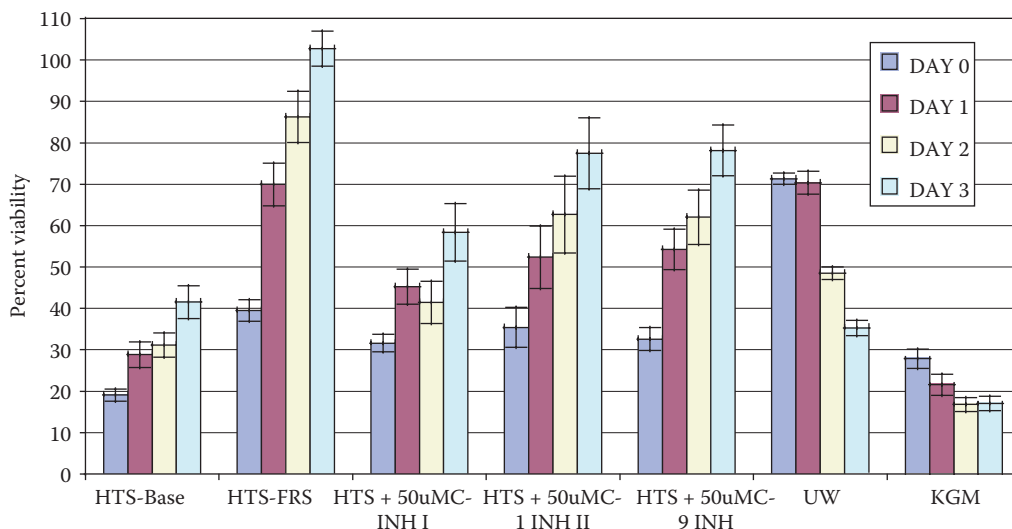
FIGURE 6.3 Hypothermic storage of normal human epidermal keratinocytes. Keratinocytes were subcultured in 96-well plates and stored for 2 days in HTS-BASE, HTS-FRS, or HTS-BASE ("HTS") supplemented with a Caspase inhibitor. Other cells were stored in either UW solution (ViaSpan) or KGM (Keratinocyte Growth Medium). Cells were assayed each day with alamarBlue. Note that in five cases the metabolic activity increased over a three-day period, whereas in two cases the metabolic activity decreased.

(cell membrane permeable nuclear stain) and Calcein-AM showed that these changes reflected an increase (HTS) and a decrease (UW, KGM) in cell number, respectively. Thus, the alamarBlue assay was instrumental for our group to demonstrate that preservation-induced cell death can take several days to be manifested.[29]

As mentioned previously, a number of mitochondrial potentiometric dyes are available for analyzing viability. In contrast to alamarBlue that is quantified while present in a simple, extracellular, assay medium, the aforementioned group of dyes are *in situ* dyes that localize to the mitochondria. Each has its own virtues and limitations. Rhodamine 123, for instance, is a cationic dye that localizes to the mitochondria but often binds nonspecifically and creates high background problems. Also, this and other cationic mitochondria dyes can be retained by some cells for only an hour or two, whereas other cell types such as transformed cells can retain this dye for as long as a week. Thus, the behavior of this dye does not lend itself to routine application in the preservation sciences. Recently, however, our group has tested the JC-1 mitochondrial dye to determine changes in mitochondrial activity in response to different preservation protocols and solutions.

JC-1 (5,5′,6,6′-tetrachloro-1,1′,3,3′-tetraethylbenzimidazolylcarbocyanine iodide) can exist either as a green monomer or as a red fluorescent "J-aggregate." The green emission profile represents mitochondria with relatively low proton motive force; whereas the red emission represents mitochondria with robust and healthy proton motive force. The important nature of this dye to preservation biologists is that it can directly analyze the mitochondrial activity of cells that have emerged from a preservation sequence and the time-dependent recovery of mitochondria can be tracked in replicate samples. Martinez-Pastor et al. have used JC-1 to assess the cryopreservation of ram semen and it constituted one of a battery of assays that measured different viability and functional endpoints.[31] Pena et al. also used JC-1 and correlated emission profiles to sperm motility.[32] Our research team hypothermically preserved normal human dermal fibroblasts in either ViaSpan or HTS-FRS, returned the cells to normothermic temperatures, and then analyzed them using JC-1. The data in Figure 6.4 illustrate that JC-1 formed monomers in the mitochondria in cells preserved in ViaSpan (right), whereas the dye formed the J-aggregates in the mitochondria in cells preserved in HTS-FRS (left). Thus, the mitochondria in cells preserved in the latter preservation medium
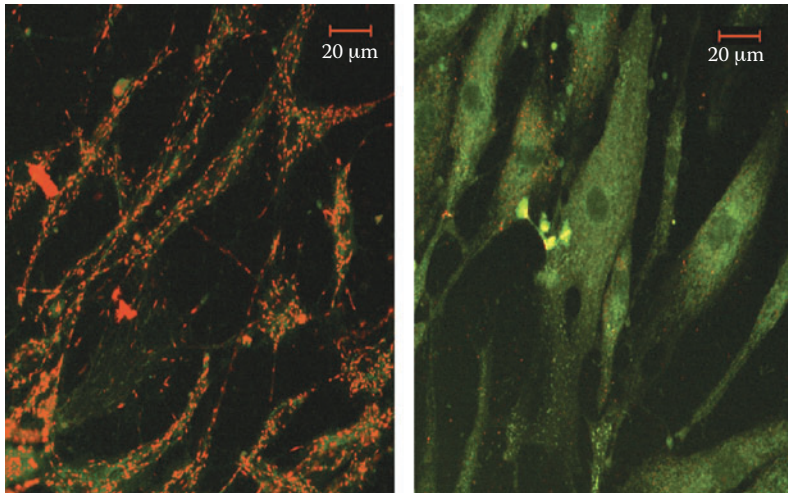
FIGURE 6.4 Normal human dermal fibroblasts stored in ViaSpan or HTS-FRS and stained with JC-1. NHDF were stored in either HTS-FRS (left) or ViaSpan (right) for 2 days at 4°C, returned to normothermic temperature, and then stained with JC-1 and viewed with a confocal microscope. Note that most of the mitochondria in cells stored in HTS-FRS appear orange, reflecting relatively high mitochondrial activity; whereas most of the mitochondria in cells stored in ViaSpan appear green, reflecting depressed mitochondrial activity.

appear to have a higher metabolic rate than those in cells preserved in ViaSpan. This dye is also being used in other venues to analyze the mitochondrial permeability transition pore[33] — a complex system in the mitochondrial membrane that may also be important to consider in the quest to improve preservation solutions and protocols.

6.3.2.2 Apoptosis Probes

One area in the preservation sciences that has been relatively new to appear in the science literature is the apparent ability of both hypothermic preservation and cryopreservation to induce apoptosis or programmed cell death. Cook et al. noted that the extended storage of engineered tissues in any type of preservation medium can result in a time-dependent, incremental decrease in cell or tissue viability that can last up to one week's time.[34] In this experimental series Cook et al. incubated the engineered human epidermis, EpiDerm (MatTek Corporation, Ashland, Massachusetts), for a variety of times in hypothermic preservation solutions. They determined that using alamarBlue, the tissue viability could be monitored for a week or longer subsequent to hypothermic preservation. The data in Figure 6.5 show that the viability of EpiDerm stored for 11 days, however, declined each day subsequent to return to normothermic temperatures. The histology of the tissue reflected the apparent drop in viability as seen by the daily alamarBlue readings (see micrograph insets). Yet it was not clear until the work done by Baust et al. several years later (1999) that this preservation-induced decline in viability referred to later as "delayed onset cell death" was due to apoptosis.[13] These observations, coupled with the increasing importance of apoptosis as the keystones to developing new treatments for cancer, launched a new era of assays available to the preservation biologist.

A variety of tools that range from DNA gel electrophoresis to fluorogenic assays can now be used to study preservation-induced apoptosis. DNA gel electrophoresis has been used by our group to study both apoptosis and necrosis in cryopreserved cells.[14] For instance, in one such case, MDCK cells were hypothermically preserved for various periods of time and then returned to normothermic temperatures (Figure 6.6). The pattern of the gel suggests that apoptosis is a major contributor to preservation-induced cell death (note DNA "ladder" in Lanes 2–4), whereas necrosis is more
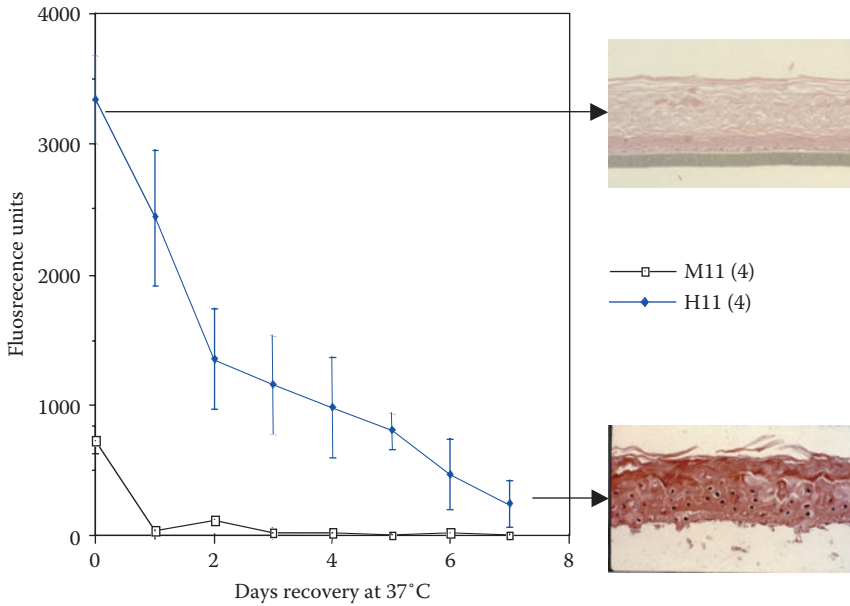
FIGURE 6.5 Hypothermic preservation of EpiDerm in HTS-BASE. EpiDerm was immersed in HTS-BASE or KGM (Keratinocyte Growth Media) for 11 days and allowed to return to normothermic temperatures. This engineered tissue was then assayed with alamarBlue for 7 days thereafter. Note that the apparent metabolic activity (e.g., fluorescence units) declined each day subsequent to return to 37°C. The histopathology of the tissue was representative of this decline (see insets).
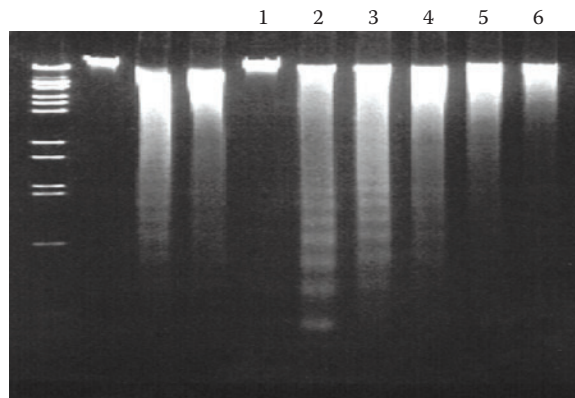

FIGURE 6.6 DNA gel electrophoresis of hypothermically preserved MDCK cells. MDCK cells were hypothermically preserved for various periods of time and the genomic DNA from these cells was extracted and run on a DNA gel. Lane 1 represents DNA from cells that were not hypothermically preserved. Note that there is one band that does not migrate in the gel and thus is representative of uncleaved DNA. Lanes 2 through 6 represent DNA isolated from cells that were hypothermically preserved for increasing periods of time. Note that a DNA ladder is apparent in Lanes 2 through 4 indicating apoptotic degradation of DNA, whereas a DNA smear is present in lanes 5 and 6 suggesting that necrosis is a primary contributor to cell death.

important at later times (note DNA "smear" in Lanes 5 and 6). Thus, it is clear that DNA gel electrophoresis can be used as a later-stage assay to determine how cell death occurs to cells that have been subjected to extended or faulty preservation.

A variety of assays are now available that can examine events that are upstream of DNA cleavage. While there may be a number of ways that poorly preserved cells can launch apoptosis (e.g., activation of cell death receptors, opening of the mitochondrial permeability transition pore, etc.), most of these involve the activation of caspases — the executioner enzymes of apoptosis. Baust et al. were among of the first to show that cryopreservation caused an increase in caspase activity — a process that can be analyzed by using a fluorogenic substrate kit or through traditional RT-PCR.[16] Since this time a variety of new methods have appeared that allow one to analyze the activation of caspases. R&D and other groups offer caspase fluorometric assays that can be used to examine preservation-induced caspase activation. Cells are typically subjected to a preservation episode, the cells are then lysed, and the protease activity determined via the addition of a caspase-specific peptide that is conjugated to the fluorescent reporter molecule, 7-amino-4-trifluoromethyl coumarin. The cleavage by the caspase of this peptide releases the fluorochrome that can be subsequently detected in a spectrofluorometer. The activity of the caspase is directly related to the fluorescence intensity of the sample. An example of preservation-induced caspase activity is illustrated in Figure 6.7. Note that there was a time delay in the activation of caspase activity subsequent to return to normothermic temperatures.

Other fluorogenic assays are now available that can detect active caspases *in situ.* For instance, Molecular Probes offers a host of cell-permeant caspase affinity labels that can be used in this manner. Their Vybrant FAM caspase assay kits are designed for flow cytometry whereas their new Image-iT LIVE caspase detection kits focus on microscopy. Both use a fluorescent inhibitor of caspases (FLICA) that can bind covalently and irreversible to active caspases and unbound FLICA can be easily washed away. BioVision (Mountain View, CA) offers CaspGLOW fluorescein caspase
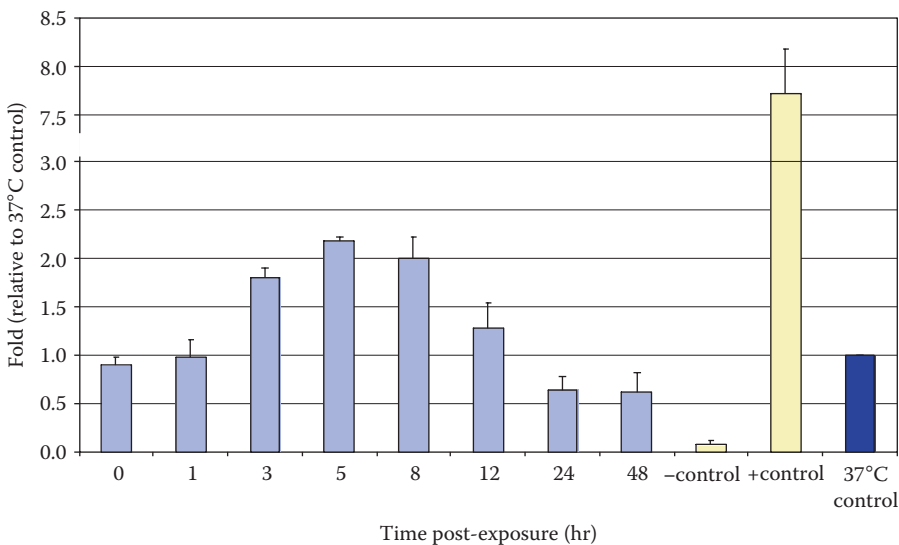
FIGURE 6.7 Increase in caspase-3 activity in CAEC subjected to cryopreservation. Coronary artery endothelial cells were cryopreserved, returned to normothermic temperatures, and Caspase-3 activity was analyzed using a fluorogenic substrate kit. Note that there was a time-dependent increase in caspase activity through 5 hours subsequent to return to normothermic temperatures.
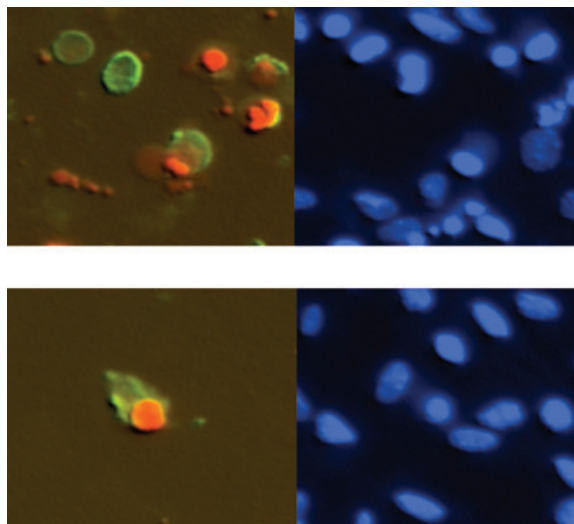
FIGURE 6.8 Fluorescence micrographs of human renal cells stained with Annexin V/PI/Hoechst following 5 days of hypothermic storage. Human renal cells were subjected to extended hypothermic storage and stained with Annexin V/PI (left panel) and Hoechst (right panel). The Hoechst dye is a nuclear stain that shows all cells present in the sample. The Annexin V stains cells that have phosphatidylserine exposed on the outer surface and the PI stains cells whose plasma membranes have been compromised. Note that some cells appear exlusively green (Annexin V only), some exlusively red (PI only) and others are stained with both markers (bottom left hand panel). The latter may represent cells that have undergone secondary necrosis subsequent to apoptosis.

staining kits that can also detect the *in situ* activation of caspases in living cells. Like the Molecular Probes kit, CaspGLOW consists of the caspase family inhibitor, VAD-FMK, conjugated to FITC that irreversible binds to active caspases in living cells. As of yet, no published reports have appeared that document the use of either of these *in situ* dyes for studying preservation-induced apoptosis.

Finally, one of the well-documented apoptosis probes that is an excellent example of the power of multiple fluorescent probes is the commonly employed Annexin V/PI dual stain. Propidium iodide was discussed previously and is a Tier 1 assay. Annexin V can be regarded a Tier 2 apoptosis assay because it measures the flip-flop of phosphatidylserine from the inner plasma membrane leaflet to the outer phospholipid layer where it can be detected by externally added, membrane-impermeable, Annexin. This inversion of phosphatidylserine is one of the earliest events in apoptosis and has been used by our group to study cell death events occurring as a consequence of both hypothermic storage,[35] as well as cryopreservation.[16] An example of images generated using this triple-label technique is presented in Figure 6.8. It is noteworthy that this double-label technique produces four distinct populations. One group of cells does not stain to any extent with either PI and/or Annexin V. In the micrographs in Figure 6.8 they can only be detected by DNA staining with the Hoechst dye (right panels). A second population is one that stains exclusively with Annexin and thus represents cells that have probably launched the apoptosis cascade. A third population is one that stains exclusively with PI and may represent the necrosis group. It is the fourth group, noted in Figure 6.8 as well (bottom left panel), that is the most problematic. These are cells that stain with both Annexin V and PI and, as such, may be undergoing secondary necrosis. Secondary necrosis defines the time in the cell death cycle where the cell has undergone apoptosis but the cell membrane is permeable enough so that the nucleus stains with PI. This is a critical matter to consider given that it is important to do a series of timed studies subsequent to thawing of preserved cells to monitor both the PI and Annexin V-only staining. Double-labeled cells may indicate that the early events of apoptosis may have already occurred.

6.3.2.3 Miscellaneous

Tier 2 assays are defined herein primarily as those that either measure mitochondrial activity or assess early stage and late stage apoptosis/necrosis events. There are, however, many other contemporary assays that can be used to monitor changes in cell physiology that lead to apoptosis, necrosis, and mitochondrial dysfunction events. For instance, Molecular Probes offers MitoSOX Red reagent and Image-iT LIVE Green Reactive Oxygen Species Kit that can monitor oxidative stress in live cells. While useful for mechanistic studies, these assays should not be considered viability probes. Yet these assays, in particular, are important in assessing the oxidative stress that occurs to cells, tissues, and organs subsequent to either a cryopreservation procedure or a hypothermic storage episode.

6.3.3 TIER 3 ASSAYS = FUNCTIONAL ASSAYS

One of the key components of any preservation protocol must be a functional assay that matches the type of cells or tissue being analyzed. In some cases this determination is quite easy. For instance, sperm motility is the method of choice for sperm cryopreservation. Martinez-Pastor et al. showed that there was a correlation between mitochondrial activity (JC-1) and ram sperm motility — a correlation that is not surprising given the link between the two.[31] Pena et al. showed that the addition of the antioxidant trolox increased both JC-1 staining and motility of boar sperm.[32] Thus, these and other studies suggest that there may be a relationship between the viability and functional assay. Finally, Nallella et al. used a motility assay to evaluate two cryopreservation methods and three cryoprotectants on the preservation of human spermatozoa.[36] Thus, the sperm motility is a well-accepted functional assay for this system.

The choice of a functional assay for the hypothermic preservation of single cardiomyocytes is also straightforward. Our group has compared a number of different hypothermic storage solutions that includes cell culture media, ViaSpan (UW solution), and a number of Hypothermosol variants for their abilities to protect cardiomyocytes at 4°C. In this case cultures were scored for the percent cells beating and the same cultures were then assessed for viability using Calcein-AM. Note in Figure 6.9 that there is a tight relationship, once again, between the viability assay and the functional test.

Finally, the preservation of livers and hepatocytes is an active area of research and in most cases functional assays are accomplished using a battery of assays. An experiment was designed to determine if the addition of fetal bovine serum to HTS-FRS improved the performance of this solution compared to HTS-BASE (a different HTS variant) or HTS-FRS without the serum supplement (courtesy, Alina Ostrowska, Tissue Transformation Technolgies). The data are presented in Figure 6.10. In this case five different drug-metabolizing enzyme assays were performed (CYP3A4 = testosterone 6β-hydroxylation; ECOD = 7-ethoxycoumarin O-deethylation; FMO = p-tolyl methyl sulfide oxidation; UGT = 7-hydroxycoumarin glucuronidation; ST = 7-hydroxycoumarin sulfation). It should be noted that there was a similar functional efficacy order in most of the assays. For instance, all five assays suggested that the hypothermic performance of HTS-FRS was superior to that of HTS-BASE supplemented with FBS. It is curious that the data also may suggest that storage in HTS-FRS and HTS-FRS-FBS may improve or restore the function of the liver cells compared to freshly isolated cells ("Isolation (0hr)"). It should also be noted that the viability of the liver cells stored in HTS-FRS was superior to that of cells stored in HTS-FBS (data not shown). In this case viability assays were restricted to Calcein-AM given that primary hepatocytes can detoxify the alamarBlue.

Thus, in the case of the preservation of sperm, cardiomyocytes and liver cells there appeared to be correlations between viability and function. Yet this is not always the case in other systems. Neonatal human keratinocytes used to construct the epidermis that is shown in Figure 6.5 (top insert) is a case in point. Our research team has noted that a single strain of these cells can be
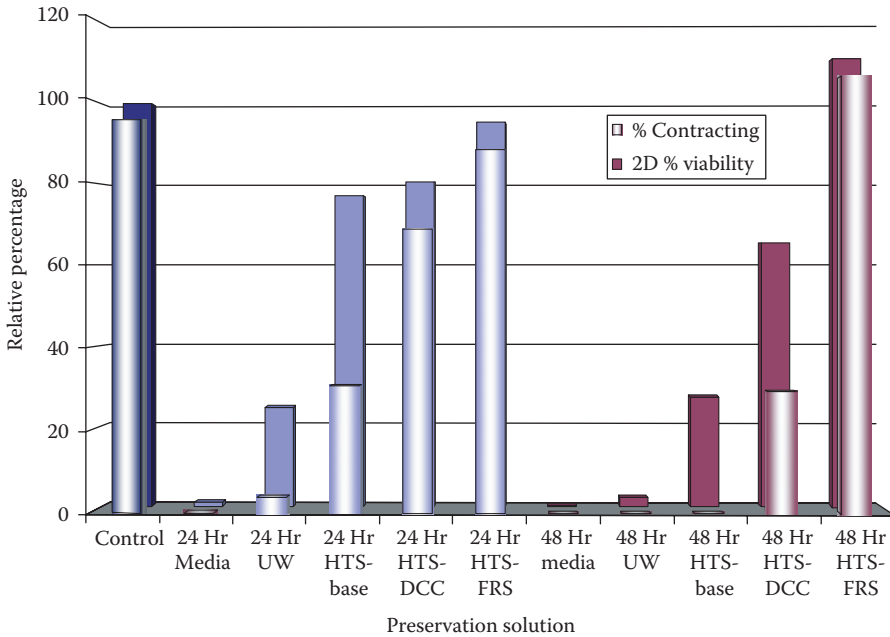
FIGURE 6.9 A comparison between viability and functional activity in neonatal rat ventricular cardiomyocytes (NRVM). NRVM were isolated through proteolytic digestion, plated in 24 well plates, and maintained at 37°C for 2 days. The cultures were then immersed for 24 hours at 4°C in a variety of hypothermic solutions that included standard culture media, ViaSpan ("UW"), HTS-BASE, HTS-DCC, and HTS-FRS. Cultures were scored first for the percent cells contracting (tubes, foreground) and subsequently for membrane integrity (bars, background) using the Calcein-AM test. Note that there was a correlation between the viability and functional asssays.
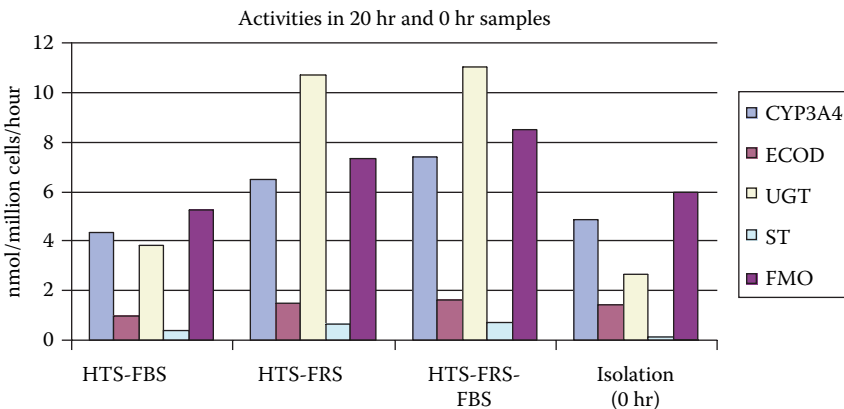
FIGURE 6.10 Hypothermic preservation of isolated human liver cells. Multiple enzymatic assays were performed on human liver cells hypothermically preserved in HTS-BASE supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum (HTS-FBS), HTS-FRS, and HTS-FRS supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum. Note that while all assays measured different functional parameters, most of the assays had a similar hierarchical order between sample types.

cryopreserved multiple times and both cell proliferation and viability do not appear to be grossly compromised as a result of these multiple preservation procedures. Yet when these cells are placed on the appropriate microporous membrane system designed so that the cells can stratify and differentiate into the engineered construct depicted in Figure 6.5, cells cryopreserved multiple times are unable to differentiate fully and form a stratified epidermis. This observation implies that multiple cell and tissue-specific functional assays should be considered carefully for human stem cells cryobanked for subsequent use in cell therapy applications.

6.3.4 TIER 4 ASSAYS = GENOMIC AND PROTEOMIC ASSAYS

Tier 4 assays consist of a group of protocols that have not yet been tested extensively by preservation biologists but may prove to be useful in the future design of improved preservation solutions and protocols. Both cDNA microarrays and protein chips are available through a number of vendors that can analyze preservation-induced stress pathways (e.g., SuperArray Bioscience) as well as examine the protein profile of cells that have been subjected to hypothermic storage or cryopreservation (e.g., Ciphergen). Our group has tested Ciphergen's SELDI ProteinChip system for its ability to distinguish changes in cells subjected to different cryopreservation protocols. As noted in Figure 6.11, clear differences can be noted in the profiles, yet it is unclear at this time how these data can be used to predict viability, function, or both. Yet these assays will be crucial to the advancement in preservation biology given that they have the capability of determining which of the stress pathways are activated in cells. Once known, designing improved protocols or solutions that can suppress these pathways may lead to improved procedures for cell preservation.

6.4 CONCLUSIONS

A number of assays are available to the preservation biologist. Fluorescence probes have now proven to be the best choice for accomplishing viability and functional assays given their abundance, versatility, and high sensitivity. New instruments, such as Molecular Devices, FLIPR system designed for high throughput analysis, may allow preservation biologists to look at multiple fluorescence probes in a near-real time format so that changes in cell physiology (e.g., mitochondrial potential, intracellular calcium, etc.) can be followed over the course of several days subsequent to return to normothermic temperatures. Furthermore, it is important that multiple assays be chosen to assess viability and function as long as they are not measuring the same physiological parameter. This problem can be avoided if assays are chosen from Tiers 1, 2, and 3 as described in this article. Finally, there needs to be a focus on the Tier 4 assays that are more diagnostic in nature so that improved preservation protocols and solutions can be developed.
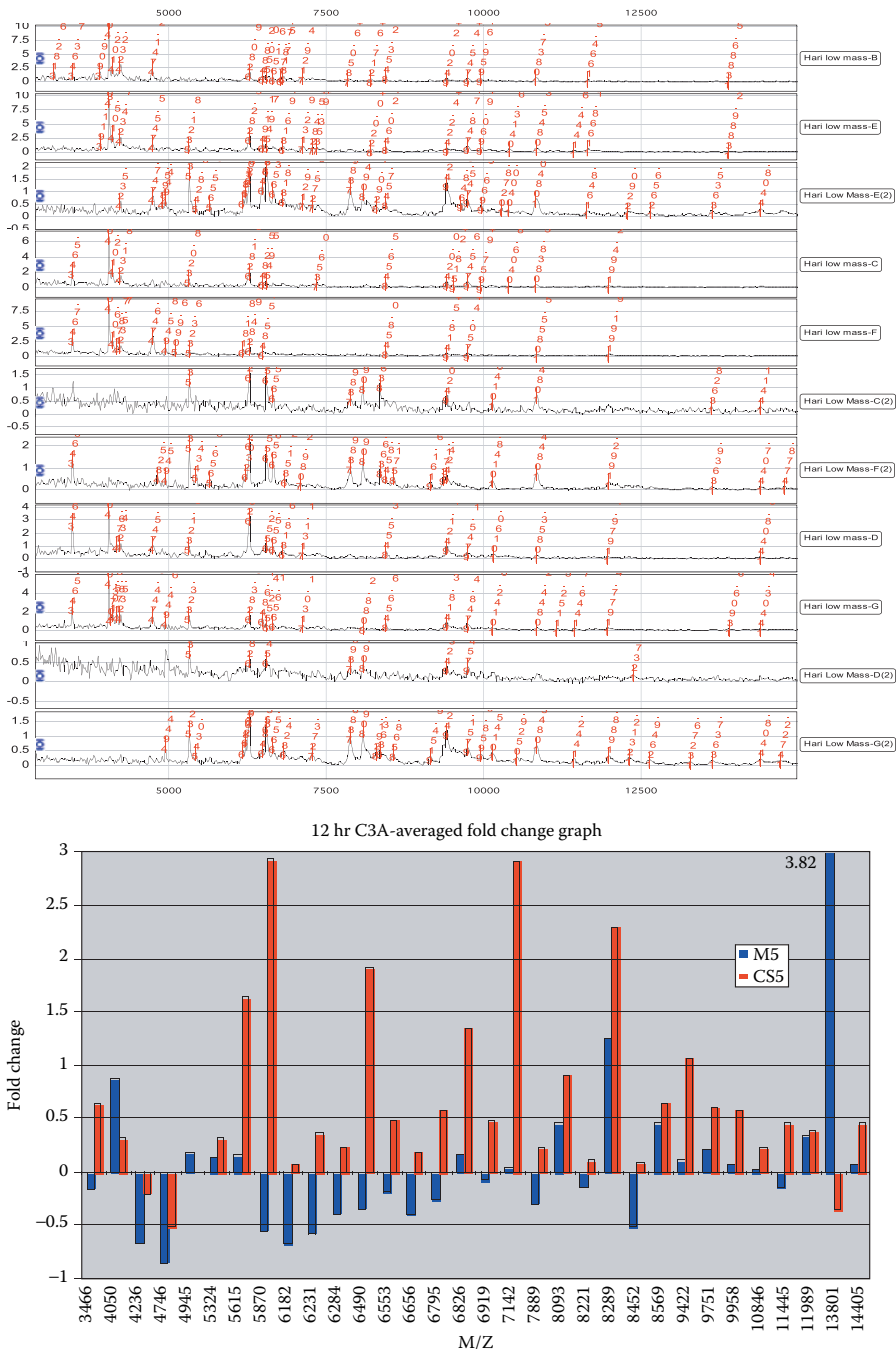
FIGURE 6.11 Ciphergen SELDI-TOF proteinchip protein profile of cells cryopreserved in different cryopreservation solutions. SELDI-TOF analysis of cytoplasmic proteins from C3A cells (human hepatoma cell line) cryopreserved in either cell culture media supplemented with 5% DMSO (M5) or CryoStor CS5 (CS5). The panel of 11 profiles (top) is a representative sample of raw SELDI-TOF data, whereas the graph below plots protein abundance against molecular weight. Red bars indicate proteins that increase in abundance in cells cryopreserved in CryoStor CS5; whereas the blue bars represent proteins that increase in abundance in cells cryopreserved in cell culture media supplemented with 5% DMSO.

REFERENCES

1. Gulevsky, A.K., Sakharov, B.V., and Volkov, V.Y., Role of dehydration in changing the permeability of erythrocyte plasma membrane by freeze-thawing, *Biochim. Biophys. Act.,* 728, 371, 1983.
2. Holden, H.T., Oldham, R.K., Ortaldo, J.R., Herberman, R.B., Standardization of the chromium-51 release, cell-mediated cytotoxicity assay: Cryopreservation of mouse effector and target cells, *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.,* 58, 611, 1977.
3. Callery, C.D., Golightly, M., Sidell, N., Golub, S.H., Lymphocyte surface markers and cytotoxicity following cryopreservation, *J. Immunol. Methods*, 35, 213, 1980.
4. Schmidt-Wolf, I.G., Aihara, M., Negrin, R.S., Blume, K.G., Chao, N.J., In vitro and in vivo activity of murine lymphokine-activated kill cells after cryopreservation, *Transfusion,* 32, 42, 1992.
5. Ostrowska, A., Bode, D.C., Pruss, J., Bilir, B., Smith, G.D., Zeisloft, S., Investigation of functional and morphological integrity of freshly isolated and cryopreserved human hepatocytes, *Cell Tissue Bank,* 1, 55, 2000.
6. Tan, X.D., Egami, H., Wang, F.S., Ogawa, M., Protective effect of exogenous adenosine triphosphate on hypothermically preserved rat liver, *World J. Gastroenterol*., 15, 871, 2004.
7. Quintana, A.B., Lenzi, H.L., Almada, L.L., Scandizzi, A.L., Furno, G., Rodriguez, J.V., Guibert, E.E., Effect of S-nitrosoglutathione (GSNO) added to the University of Wisconsin (UW): II) Functional response to cold preservation/reperfusion of rat liver, *Ann. Hepatol.,* 1, 183, 2002.
8. Bessems, M., Doorschodt, B.M., van Vliet, A.K., van Gulik, T.M., Preservation of rat livers by cold storage: A comparison between the University of Wisconsin solution and Hypothermosol, *Ann. Transplant*., 9, 35, 2004.
9. Essig-Marcello, J. and Van Buskirk, R., A double-label in situ cytotoxicity assay using the fluorescent probes neutral red and BCECF-AM, *In Vitro Tox.,* 3, 219, 1990.
10. O'Connor, S., McNamara, L., Swerdin, M., and Van Buskirk, R., Multifluorescent assays reveal mechanisms underlying cytotoxicity-Phase I CTFA compounds, *In Vitro Tox.,* 4, 197, 1991.
11. Van Buskirk, R.G., The evolution of multiple endpoint assays in in vitro toxicology: The versatility of fluorochromes, *Pharm. Manufacturing Int.*, 81, 1991.
12. Rhoads, L.S., Baust, J.G., and Van Buskirk, R.G., A human epidermal model that can be assayed employing a multiple fluorescent endpoint assay and the CytoFluor 2300, *J. Toxicol: Cutaneous and Ocular Toxicol.,* 12, 87, 1993.
13. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Improved cryopreservation outcome is facilitated by an intracellular-type medium and inhibition of apoptosis, *J. Biomed. Eng. Soc.,* 1, 206, 1999.
14. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Cell viability improves following inhibition of cryopreservation-induced apoptosis, *In Vitro Cell Dev. Biol. Anim.*, 36(4), 267, 2000.
15. Baust, J.M., Vogel, M.J., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., A molecular basis of cryopreservation failure and its modulation to improve cell survival, , *Cell Transplant.,* 10(1), 561, 2001.
16. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Gene activation of the apoptotic caspase cascade following cryogenic storage, *Cell Preservation Technol.,* 1(1), 63, 2002.
17. Snyder, K.K., Van Buskirk, R.G., Baust, J.M., Mathew, A.J., Baust, J.G., Biological packaging for the global cell and tissue therapy markets, *BioProcessing J.,* 3, 39, 2004.
18. Abrahamse, S.L., van Runnard Heimel, P., Hartman, R.J., Chamuleau, R.A., van Gulik, T.M., Induction of necrosis and DNA fragmentation during hypothermic preservation of hepatocytes in UW, HTK and Celsior solutions, *Cell Transplant.,* 112, 59, 2003.
19. Muller, P., Aurich, H., Wenkel, R., Schaffner, I., Wolff, I., Walldorf, J., Fleig, W.E., Christ, B., Serum-free cryopreservation of porcine hepatocytes, *Cell Tissue Res.,* 317, 45, 2004.
20. Isayeva, A., Zhang, T., and Rawson, D.M., Studies on chilling sensitivity of zebrafish (Danio rerio) oocytes, *Cryobiology,* 49, 114, 2004.
21. Freshney, R.I., Ed., *Culture of Animal Cells: A Manual of Basic Technique,* Alan R. Liss, New York, 1987, p. 117.
22. Grundler, W., Dirscherl, P., Beisker, W., Weber, F., Stolla, R., Bollwein, H., Quantification of temporary and permanent subpopulations of bull sperm by an optimized SYBR-14/propidium iodide assay, *Cytom. Part A.,* 60A, 63, 2004.

23. Liu, J., Yagi, T., Sadamori, H., Matsukawa, H., Sun, D.S., Mitsuoka, N., Yamamura, M., Matsuoka, J., Jin, Z., Yamamoto, I., Tanaka, N., Annexin V-assay-proven anti-apoptotic effect of ascorbic acid 22—glucoside after cold ischemia/reperfusion injury in rat liver transplantation, *Acta Med. Okayam.*, 57, 209, 2003.

24. Sion, B., Janny, L., Boucher, D., Grizard, G., Annexin V binding to plasma membrane predicts the quality of human cryopreserved spermatozoa, *Int. J. Androl.*, 27, 108, 2004.

25. Castagnoli, C., Alotto, D., Cambieri, I., Casimiri, R., Aluffi, M., Stella, M., Alasia, S.T., Magliacani, G., Evaluation of donor skin viability: Fresh and cryopreserved skin using tetrazolioum salt assay, *Burns*, 29, 759, 2003.

26. Son, J.H., Kim, K.H., Nam, Y.K., Park, J.K., Kim, S.K., Optimization of cryoprotectants for cryo-preservation of rat hepatocyte, *Biotechnol. Lett.*, 26, 829, 2004.

27. Mathew, A.J., Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R.G., Baust, J.G., Cell preservation in reparative and regen-erative medicine: Evolution of individualized solution composition. *Tissue Eng.*, 10, 1662, 2004.

28. Van Buskirk, R.G., Baust, J.M., Snyder, K.K., Mathew, A.J., Baust, J.G., Hypothermic storage and cryopreservation: The issues of successful short-term and long-term preservation of cells and tissues, *Bioprocessing Int.*, 2, 42, 2004.

29. Baust, J.M., Molecular mechanisms of cellular demise associated with cryopreservation failure, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 1, 17, 2002.

30. Voytik-Harbin, S.L., Brightman, A.O., Waisner, B., Lamar, C.H., Badylak, S.F., Application and evaluation of the alamarBlue assay for cell growth and survival of fibroblasts, *In Vitro Cell Dev. Biol. Anim.*, 34, 239, 2004.

31. Martinez-Pastor, F., Johannisson, A., Gil, J., Kaabi, M., Anel, L., Paz, P., Rodriguez-Martinez, H., Use of chromatin stability assay, mitochondrial stain JC-1, and fluorometric assessment of plasma membrane to evaluate frozen thawed ram semen, *Anim. Reprod. Sci.*, 84, 121, 2004.

32. Pena, F.J., Johannisson, A., Wallgren, M., Rodriguez-Martinez, H., Antioxidant supplementation in vitro improves boar sperm motility and mitochondrial membrane potential after cryopreservation of different fractions of the ejaculate, *Anim. Reprod. Sci.*, 78, 85, 2003.

33. Lecoeur, H., Langonne, A., Baux, L., Rebouillat, D., Rustin, P., Prevost, M.C., Brenner, C., Edelman, L., Jacotot, E., Real-time flow cytometry analysis of permeability transition in isolated mitochondria, *Exp. Cell Res.*, 10, 106, 2004.

34. Cook, J.R., Eichelberger, H., Robert, S., Rauch, J., Baust, J.G., Taylor, M.J., and Van Buskirk, R.G., Cold-storage of synthetic human epidermis in hypothermosol., *J. Tissue Eng.*, 1(4), 361, 1995.

35. Mathew, A.J, Baust, J.G., and Van Buskirk, R.G., Improved hypothermic preservation of human renal cells through suppression of both apoptosis and necrosis, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 1, 239, 2003.

36. Nallella, K.P., Sharma, R.K., Allamaneni, S.S., Aziz, N., Agarwal, A., Cryopreservation of human spermatozoa: Comparison of two cryopreservation methods and three cryoprotectants, *Fertil. Steril.*, 82, 913, 2004.

7 Preservation of Cellular Therapies: Gene Therapy, Cellular, and Metabolic Engineering

Allison Hubel

CONTENTS

7.1   INTRODUCTION

Cell-based therapies continue to evolve and are becoming the standard of care for a wide range of human diseases and injuries. Most people are familiar with the transfusion of red blood cells to treat traumatic blood loss or disease-based anemia. Similarly, tens of thousands of people each year are treated with a bone marrow transplant.[1–4] Cell-based therapies are based on the scientific and clinical platform created by blood component transfusions and hematopoietic stem cell transplantations. The purpose of this chapter is not to discuss clinical preservation protocols associated with blood components or traditional hematopoietic stem cell transplants; instead, the focus is on cell-based therapies in which the cells have undergone significant manipulation *ex vivo*. An excellent review of present clinical preservation practices for blood components and bone marrow can be found in a recent review by Sputtek and Sputtek.[5] Specifically, the cells might be cultured to expand cell number, selected according to subpopulations, or subjected to genetic or biological modification. The manipulation of the cells outside of the body results in a product that differs greatly from that which is harvested from the body, and these differences influence the biological activity and biophysical properties of the cells and consequently the methods of preservation that should be used.

7.2   OVERVIEW OF CELL-BASED THERAPIES

A wide range of cell-based therapies have been used to treat human disease. Islets of Langerhans are transplanted to treat diabetes,[6] and cell and tissue transplants are used to treat Parkinson's disease[7] and other neurological disorders. Isolated hepatocytes are also transplanted for the

143

treatment of liver disease.[8] Blood cell-based therapies have become the standard of care for some diseases, such as leukemia, and an even larger number of blood cell-based therapies are in preclinical development. Processing protocols for blood cell-based therapies are much more mature and extensive. The focus of this chapter is the preservation of bone marrow cell-based therapies.

Advances in our understanding of hematopoiesis and immunology fuel the development of a wide range of hematopoietic cell-based therapies.[9] For example, adoptive immunotherapy typically involves removing lymphocytes from the patient, expanding cell numbers, and modifying the cells to enhance specific immune function. Clinical studies of lymphokine activated killer (LAK) cells have been performed for the treatment of advanced cancer.[10,11] However, studies evaluating the effect of both LAK cell and tumor infiltrating lymphocyte (TIL) infusions for the treatment of cancer do not suggest that these therapies provide a significant clinical benefit.[12] In contrast, when donor lymphocyte infusions are used to treat patients who have relapsed after an allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplant, a clear clinical benefit has been found.[13] Donor lymphocyte infusions (DLI) can be performed using minimally manipulated cells obtained using apheresis. Other forms of DLI involve the infusion of lymphocytes depleted of or enriched with specific cell subsets or cells transduced with suicide genes. Common clinical practice is to cryopreserve DLI using conventional cryopreservation protocols for hematopoietic stem cell products, and the therapy typically involves multiple infusions.

Early studies in lymphocyte-based adoptive immunotherapy led to the use of antigen-presenting cells (specifically dendritic cells) to stimulate lymphocyte response *in vivo*. Small numbers of activated dendritic cells are effective in generating an immune response against different pathogens (i.e., viruses and tumor cells). The majority of dendritic cell therapies involve taking monocytes or hematopoietic progenitor cells (CD34+ cells) from a donor (autologous or allogenic), culturing the cells in cytokine-supplemented media to induce maturation, and exposing the cells to proteins from the patient's tumor cells, followed by reinfusion of the cells into a patient.[14] Early clinical studies have shown that dendritic cell therapy is nontoxic and effective in certain patient groups.[15] However, more controlled clinical studies are needed to prove efficacy.

Immunotherapy is also used to treat viral infections. For example, both lymphocytes[16] and dendritic[17] cells have been studied for the treatment of infection by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Viral infection after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation is still a significant source of morbidity and mortality. Both cytomegalovirus (CMV) and Epstein–Barr infections have been treated with immunotherapy.[18] As in the case of adoptive immunotherapy for the treatment of cancer, effectiveness of the therapy relies on the ability to cultivate and reinfuse virus-specific cells (lymphocytes or dendritic cells).

Hematopoietic stem cell transplants have become the standard of care for malignant and nonmalignant blood diseases. For instance, leukemia, aplastic anemia, or thalassemia can be treated with hematopoietic stem cell transplants.[19] Hematopoietic stem cell rescue has also been used to restore bone marrow function to patients receiving high-dose chemotherapy or radiation therapy for the treatment of solid tumors. For almost a decade, hematopoietic stem cell transplants have been used to treat a wide range of autoimmune diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, and multiple sclerosis.[20]

Recent studies suggest that hematopoietic stem cell transplantation can be used for the treatment of a wide range of medical conditions. For example, early clinical studies suggest that hematopoietic stem cell transplantation can be used in the treatment of myocardial infarctions.[21] The limited studies performed to date show an improvement in left ventricular function for patients receiving injections of hematopoietic progenitor cells or unfractionated bone marrow cells after myocardial infarction. The mechanism for the observed improvement in cardiac function is still unknown. Further studies are needed to elucidate the mechanisms and establish conclusively the safety and efficacy of this type of treatment.

Cells harvested from the bone marrow include both hematopoietic cells (stem cells and blood cells at different stages of maturation) and nonhematopoietic cells (adipocytes, endothelial cells,

stromal fibroblasts, reticular cells, smooth muscle cells, etc). More commonly known as mesenchymal stem cells or marrow stromal cells (MSC), these cells were discovered by Friedenstein and colleagues over thirty years ago.[22] They established that these cells could differentiate into osteoblasts, adipocytes, and chondrocytes *in vitro*. Subsequent investigations have confirmed these observations and further demonstrated that the cells can differentiate in culture into muscle, neuronal precursors, and cardiomyocytes (see reference 23 for review). Additionally, animal studies show potential effectiveness for MSC-based therapy for the treatment of ostengenesis imprefecta, Parkinsonism, spinal cord injury, stroke, myelin deficiency, and lung diseases.[23] Early human clinical trials for the use of MSCs to treat osteogenesis imperfecta,[24] Hurler's syndrome, and metachromatic leukodystrophy[25] suggest that MSCs can be effective in treating these disorders as well.

With the exception of bone marrow transplantation for the treatment of leukemia and stem cell rescue, all the therapies described above require extensive *ex vivo* cell manipulation. The manipulation of the cell product (expansion, enrichment or depletion of specific subsets, and biological or genetic modification) results in a significant change in the composition of the final product from the initial harvested product. Also, the time required for some of these protocols ranges from hours to weeks.[9] Furthermore, specific cell therapies may require multiple injections or infusions of cells over a time period. All of these factors influence the preservation protocol appropriate for the desired therapy.
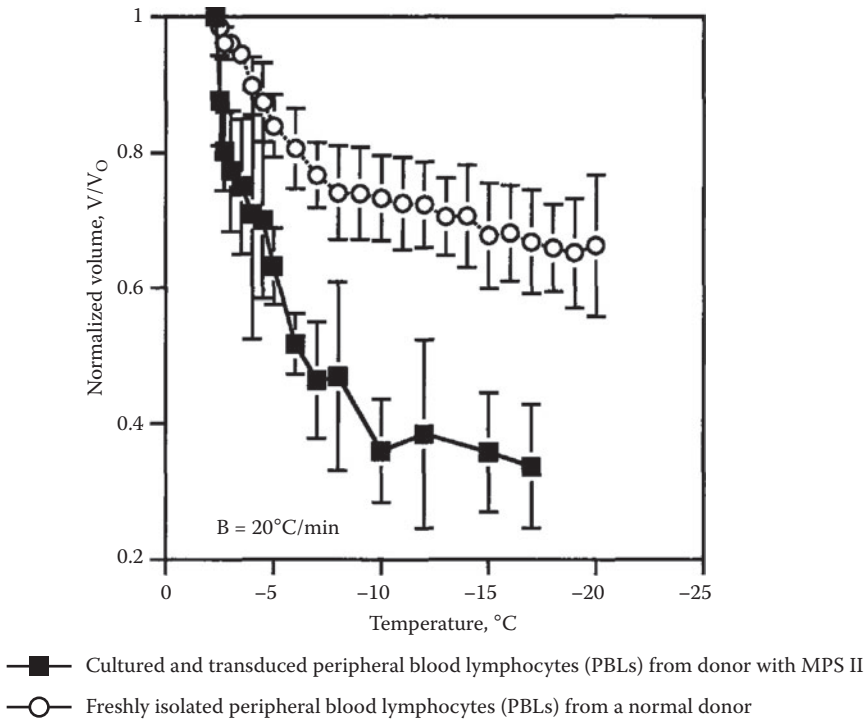
As more and more cell-based therapies become the standard of care, the need to develop improved and appropriate preservation techniques will only become more urgent. A recent survey by Read and Sullivan[4] shows that the most significant growth in products processed at clinical cell-processing centers involve what have been considered nontraditional therapies described previously in this chapter. The remaining sections in this chapter will describe both the scientific and clinical need for reengineering preservation protocols for cell-based therapies.

7.3 BIOPHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF *EX VIVO* CULTURED CELLS

As described by Mazur in a recent review,[26] "Cryobiology is not only concerned with the state of water in cells and the role of water in the structure and function of components but is also equally concerned with factors affecting the movement of water into and out of cells." To that end, the water content and water permeability for lymphocytes and hematopoietic progenitor cells have been measured as a function of temperature and time in culture.[27,28]

Ex vivo culture of hematopoietic progenitor cells resulted in a significant change in cell size. The average cross-sectional area of freshly isolated CD34$^+$ cells (hematopoietic stem cells) from a normal donor was observed to be 57±13 μm^2. After culture and transduction of the cells (a five-day protocol), the cross-sectional area of the cells had increased to 116±33 μm^2, which was statistically greater than the freshly isolated cells ($p<0.0001$). The total volume of a cell consists of water available for transport, solids, and water that is not available for transport. The osmotically inactive cell volume fraction represents the relative contribution of these different components. For CD34$^+$ cells from normal donors, the osmotically inactive cell volume fraction was initially 0.29 and reduced to 0.20 after three days in culture. Combining calculations of cell volume and osmotically inactive cell volume fraction, the water content of the cells increased roughly twofold during the brief culture period.

We were interested not only in water content but water transport as well. The lymphocytes, which were cultured *ex vivo* for two weeks to permit expansion of total cell number and genetic modification, were frozen on a cryomicroscope. The volumetric response of the cells was observed during the freezing process, and the corresponding images were analyzed. Figure 7.1 shows the normalized volume as a function of temperature for cells frozen at 20ºC/min. The volumetric response of the lymphocytes that were cultured and transduced is compared to freshly isolated lymphocytes from a normal donor. The normalized cell volume (volume at a given temperature divided by the initial volume) decreased more rapidly as a function of temperature for the cultured

Cultured and transduced peripheral blood lymphocytes (PBLs) from donor with MPS II

Freshly isolated peripheral blood lymphocytes (PBLs) from a normal donor

FIGURE 7.1 Normalized cell volume as a function of temperature for cultured and transduced lymphocytes from a donor with MPS II (■) and freshly isolated mononuclear cells from a normal donor (○). The cells were frozen in IMDM using a cooling rate of 20°C/min. Experimental results are given as an average ±SD for 15 cells (Hubel, A., Darr, T.B., and Norman, J.A., Freezing characteristics of genetically modified lymphocytes for the treatment of MPSII, *Cell Transplant*, 8, 521, 1999. With Permission).

cells than the fresh cells from a normal donor. In addition, the minimum normalized volume achieved by the cultured cells was significantly less than that typically observed for the fresh cells.

The efflux of water that results in the observed change in cell volume can be analyzed using a nonequilibrium model developed by Mazur.[29] Assuming that equilibria of temperature and pressure prevail between the intra- and extracellular media, the following equation can be written:

$$\frac{dV}{dT} = \frac{L_p ART}{\nu_w B} \left[\ln \left(\frac{V - V_b}{(V - V_b) + \nu_w(\nu_s n_s)} \right) - \frac{\Delta H_f}{R} \left(\frac{1}{T_r} - \frac{1}{T} \right) \right] \tag{7.1}$$

in which V is the cell volume, T is the temperature (absolute), L_p is the hydraulic permeability, A is the surface area of the cell, B is the cooling rate, ν_w is the partial molar volume of water, V_b is the osmotically inactive cell volume fraction, ν_s is the partial molar volume of salt, n_s is the dissociation constant for NaCl, ΔH_f is the latent heat of fusion of water, R is the Universal Gas Constant, and T_r is the equilibrium freezing temperature for pure water (273.15 K).

The hydraulic permeability of the membrane, L_p, is a function of the temperature. Assuming an Arrhenius relationship,[30,31] the permeability is expressed as a function of temperature:

$$L_p = L_{pg} \exp \left(-\frac{E_{lp}}{R} \left(\frac{1}{T_r} - \frac{1}{T} \right) \right) \tag{7.2}$$

TABLE 7.1
Reference Permeability and Activation Energy for CD34+
Cells from Normal Donors

	L_{pg} (10^{-14} m³/Ns)	E_{lp} (kJ/mol)	V_b (%)
Freshly isolated	6.4	69	29
Cultured and transduced (day 5)	0.41	29	20

(From Hubel, A., Norman, J., and Darr, T.B., Cryobiophysical characteristics of genetically modified hematopoietic progenitor cells, *Cryobiology*, 38, 140, 1999. With permission).

in which L_{pg} is the permeability of the cell membrane to water at the reference temperature T_R, and E_{lp} is the apparent activation energy for the water transport process. Analysis of the volumetric data obtained from cryomicroscopy experiments using Equations 1 and 2 indicate that the average values of the water permeability parameters, L_{pg} and E_{lp}, for the cultured and transduced cells from a donor with mucopolysaccharidosis Type II (MPS II) were determined to be 5.3×10^{-14} m³/Ns and 156 kJ/mol, respectively. For cells from a normal donor, L_{pg} and E_{lp} were 1.4×10^{-14} m³/Ns and 168 kJ/mol, respectively.[27] Thus, the *ex vivo* culture process resulted in an increase in both L_{pg} and E_{lp} for the cells. Similar studies were performed using CD34⁺ cells (hematopoietic progenitor cells) and, as with the lymphocyte studies, significant changes in L_{pg} and E_{lp} were observed between fresh and cultured cells (Table 7.1). Cultured cells from a normal donor exhibited a decrease in both L_{pg} and E_{lp} with time in culture. This shift in permeability parameters differs from those observed with lymphocytes and may reflect differences in the basic biology between mature and progenitor cells.

Unfortunately, these studies do not suggest a specific mechanism for the change in water content or water transport properties of the cells; however, previous studies of the freezing behavior of hepatocytes may suggest a potential mechanism. Increases in post-thaw viability and function were observed for hepatocytes cryopreserved after preculture in the form of aggregates.[32–34] Studies using NMR showed distinct shifts in membrane composition and shifts in metabolic pathways between freshly isolated and cultured hepatocytes. These shifts in membrane composition and metabolic activity occurred over a relatively short period of time (24 h culture), and the shifts in membrane composition (increase in cholesterol content) were consistent with the change in water permeability measured. These studies suggest that differences in the environment (nutrient and oxygen concentrations, shear forces, cell-to-cell contact, etc.) between *in vitro* and *in vivo* culture may influence cell metabolism for hematopoietic cells cultured *ex vivo*. This influence may result in the changes in water content and membrane permeability observed. Additional studies are needed, however, to conclusively establish this link.

Stem cells capable of reconstituting hematopoiesis can be obtained from various sources — peripheral blood, bone marrow, umbilical cord blood, and fetal liver cells — and they share certain traits such as the expression of cell surface marker CD34⁺ and the ability to reconstitute hematopoiesis in humans. The different sources of hematopoietic stem cells reflect different ontogenies. Distinct changes in proliferative and differentiation potential for the hematopoietic stem cell compartment have been observed throughout development and life.[35] Investigators have examined the water content and permeability characteristics of hematopoietic stem cells from these different sources,[28,36–39] and their studies provide insight into the role of ontogeny on the freezing behavior of a cell-based therapy.

Table 7.2 provides a summary of three different biophysical properties — osmotically inactive cell volume fraction, water permeability, and permeability to dimethyl sulfoxide (Me₂SO). Distinct differences in the osmotically inactive cell volume fraction can be observed. Human fetal

TABLE 7.2
Osmotically Inactive Cell Volume Fraction (Vb) and Hydraulic Permeability (L_{pg}). Permeability to Me_2SO (P_{Me2SO}) for Hematopoietic Stem Cells from Different Sources

Cell Type	V_b (%)	L_{pg} (10^{14} m³/Ns)	P_{Me_2SO} (10^8 m/s)	Ref.
HFL-HSC[1]	48	2.4–4.4	1.0–3.5	38
Bone Marrow	21	ND[2]	ND	36
Cord Blood	32	2.4	1.6	39
Cord Blood[3]	27	2.8	0.42–7.4	37
PBSC[4]	29	6.4	ND	28

[1] Human fetal liver-derived hematopoietic stem cells

[2] Not determined

[3] Determined in the presence of external ice

[4] Peripheral blood stem cells from G-CSF stimulated donors

liver-derived hematopoietic cells exhibit an osmotically inactive cell volume fraction of approximately 48% with decreasing values for V_b with maturation (in terms of ontogeny). Peripheral blood stem cells (PBSCs) are the exception to this trend with a V_b of approximately 29%, and that difference may reflect the influence of the use of a drug (Granulocyte-Colony Stimulating Factor) to stimulate migration of stem cells into the peripheral blood. The difference between the permeability of the cells to water or Me_2SO for the different cell types studied was insignificant. Variations in biophysical characteristics for cells with ontogeny have distinct implications for the development of cryopreservation protocols for cells and tissues derived from adult or embryonic stem cells. As stem-cell-based products are brought to clinical and commercial use, the cryopreservation protocols may need to reflect the distinct differences in the cells resulting from *ex vivo* culture and/or ontogeny.

7.4 POST-THAW SURVIVAL

The changes in biophysical properties with time in culture described in the previous section are only one descriptor of the freezing response. We are also interested in the post-thaw survival of cells that are cultured, frozen, and thawed. One study measured the post-thaw viability of lymphocytes frozen immediately after isolation and those frozen after culture and transduction.[27] For cells from the same donor, the post-thaw viability of lymphocytes significantly decreased from 87% for freshly isolated cells to 69% for the cultured and transduced cells ($p<0.0001$). The culture and transduction protocol for the lymphocytes was approximately two weeks in duration. These findings suggest that long-term culture of the cells may alter their ability to survive the stresses of freezing and thawing. Yokomuro and colleagues[40] observed similar results in a study of cryopreserved cardiomyocytes. They observed that the post-thaw functional recovery of the cryopreserved cardiomyocytes was reduced with increased cell passage. Thus, the ability to cryopreserve primary cells versus immortalized cell lines may be influenced by culture period.

The previous paragraph describes a situation in which *in vitro* culture resulted in a decrease in post-thaw survival. We were also interested in determining whether shorter periods of culture had the same effect. To that end, peripheral blood lymphocytes were cultured using the same basic protocol,[27] except that the cells were not transduced with a retroviral vector and the entire culture protocol was limited to one week in duration. Samples of the cells were removed from culture and cryopreserved using the same protocol (10% Me_2SO, 1°C/min) at day zero, three, and seven in
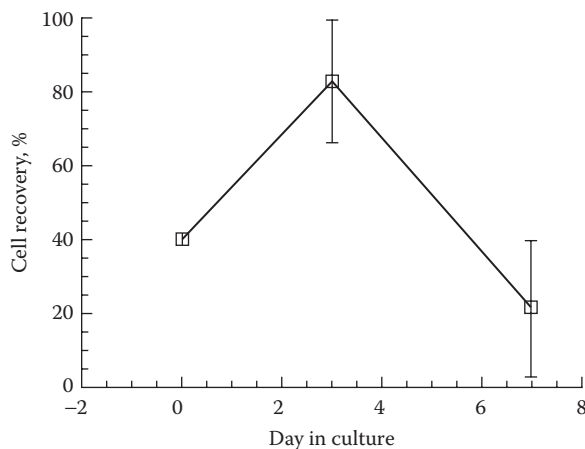
FIGURE 7.2 Cell recovery (number of viable cells post-thaw divided by number of viable cells prefreeze) as a function of day in culture for peripheral blood lymphocytes frozen preserved in 10% DMSO at 1°C/min. The culture protocol is described in more detail in reference 27. Error bars indicate the standard deviation of the mean (n>7).

culture. Post-thaw cell recovery — the number of viable cells post-thaw divided by the number of viable cells prefreeze — was determined 48 hours post-thaw. The variation in cell recovery with time in culture prefreeze is given in Figure 7.2. The cell recovery increased from 40.5 ± 2.5% at day zero to 84 ± 18% at day three in culture. After seven days in culture, the post-thaw cell recovery was 22 ± 18%. The cell recovery at day zero was not statistically different than day seven, but the cell recovery at day three was distinctly greater than both days zero and seven (p<0.0001). Although this study does not suggest a specific mechanism for the observed differences in post-thaw recovery with time in culture, lymphocyte activation and death in culture have been analyzed in studies too numerous to list. Medema and Borst summarized many of these studies in a review.[41] They observed that after activation, primary T-lymphocytes are resistant to activation-induced cell death for the first few days in culture. However, these cells lose this resistance to apoptosis after three days in culture. The culture protocol for the lymphocytes included activation of the cells by exposure to anti-CD3 antibody at the beginning of the protocol. Thus, the observed increase in post-thaw recovery at three days in culture may reflect the influence of cell resistance to apoptosis. Further studies will be needed to confirm this hypothesis.

Post-thaw survival can also vary with time post-thaw. In Figure 7.3, the total number of frozen and thawed lymphocytes in culture is determined as a function of time post-thaw. The number of viable cells in the culture bag declines over a 48- to 72-hour period of time and finally increases as proliferation exceeds cell death. Baust and colleagues also observed this decline in viability with time in culture post-thaw with MDCK cells;[42] they went on to establish a link between post-thaw apoptosis and the decline of post-thaw survival.

Several investigators have documented and studied post-thaw apoptosis for hematopoietic cells. DeBoer and colleagues[43,44] observed that a significant fraction of hematopoietic stem cells (CD34[+] cells) expressed early markers of apoptosis. If corrected for the fraction of cells expressing early stage apoptosis, the post-thaw viability of CD34[+] cells decreased from 78% (measured with viability stains alone) to 42% (measured with apoptosis and viability stains combined). The authors further asserted that post-thaw apoptosis may influence the dose of CD34[+] cells required for engraftment. Stroh and colleagues studied the specific mechanism for the observed post-thaw apoptosis[45] and found that both primary hematopoietic cells and hematopoietic cell lines exhibited post-thaw apoptosis mediated by the mitochondria and activated specifically by caspase 3. They observed that only overexpression of Bcl-2 resulted in protection of the cells from post-thaw apoptosis and
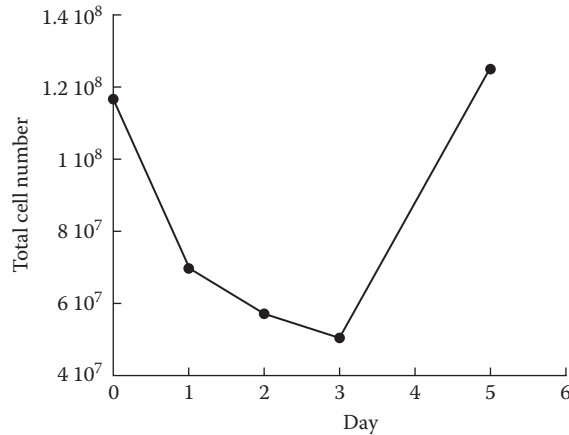
FIGURE 7.3 Growth in peripheral blood lymphocytes (PBLs) from a patient with mucopolysaccharidosis Type II after cryopreservation. PBLs were cryopreserved, thawed, washed, and cultured in a bag (redrawn from Stroncek, D.F., et al., Retroviral transduction and expansion of peripheral blood lymphocytes for the treatment of mucopolysaccharidosis type II, Hunter's syndrome, *Transfusion*, 39, 343, 1999. With permission).

that the use of caspase inhibitors conferred protection from post-thaw apoptosis. Similar results were obtained by Sarkar and colleagues studying the post-thaw apoptosis of T-lymphocytes.[46] Sarkar and colleagues also investigated the potential for using caspase inhibition to prevent apoptosis or cytokines to rescue cells from post-thaw apoptosis. Post-thaw apoptosis has been shown to influence the viability of hepatocytes.[47–50] As with hematopoietic cells, post-thaw apoptosis for hepatocytes appears to be mediated by the mitochondria and activated by caspases. Cell losses resulting from apoptosis are typically observed between 24 and 72 hours post-thaw depending upon cell type. A limited number of studies have examined the role of freezing and thawing on longer-term cell survival. Frozen and thawed retinal pigment epithelial cells exhibited altered cell membrane protein structure and enzymatic function as well as damage to the DNA as a result of freezing.[51] A subsequent study of these cells by Honda and colleagues demonstrated that cryopreservation decreased proliferation of the cells post-thaw and shortened telomeres.[52] These studies suggest that molecular-level phenomena may play an important role in both short- and long-term freezing response.

7.5 CLINICAL ISSUES

Effective cryopreservation of cell-based therapies is essential to their clinical application. Cryopreservation permits coordination of culture protocols with patient care regimes, completion of safety and quality control testing before administration, and transportation of the product from the processing facility to the site of use (doctor's office, hospital, etc.). Specific challenges arise in the application of cryopreservation to a clinical context. For example, clinical application of cryopreservation must involve the use of solutions and reagents appropriate for human use.

The reinfusion of nonfrozen (fresh) hematopoietic cells is typically not associated with adverse reactions;[53] in contrast, the infusion of cryopreserved hematopoietic stem cells (bone marrow, PBSC, and cord blood) is commonly associated with adverse events. Studies suggest that one source of adverse reactions results from the infusion of cell fragments. Cell losses from the stresses of freezing and thawing can be significant (>30%),[54] and most of the dead cells are no longer intact with cell membranes disrupted and intracellular contents released. The infusion of cell fragments has been associated with fevers, chills, hypotension, and respiratory distress.[55] The severity of the reaction is a function of the dose of fragments infused.

Controlled clinical studies show that Me_2SO and not cell fragments is responsible for the most severe adverse reactions. Nearly all patients receiving cryopreserved hematopoietic stem cell transplants containing Me_2SO experience nausea, chills, hypotension, dyspnea, and cardiac arrythmia.[56–59] In a smaller number of patients receiving infusions with hematopoietic stem cell products, case studies also illustrate more serious reactions including cardiac arrest,[60,61] transient heart blockage,[62] neurological toxicity,[63] renal failure,[56,64] and respiratory arrest.[65] Studies of hematopoietic stem cell transplants in children show that reactions in this patient group are more severe.[66–68] Children generally receive a greater dose of Me_2SO per kg of body weight for a transplant than adults, and consequently, children experience both more frequent and more severe adverse reactions. Several of these studies that examined the relationship between transfusion reactions and Me_2SO content of the transplanted cells[59,62,64,69,70] noted either that the greater the dose of Me_2SO, the more severe the adverse reaction, or that removing Me_2SO reduced the incidence and severity of the transfusion reaction.

Based on the clinical studies documenting the severity of reactions for children, transplantation protocols for umbilical cord blood specify post-thaw washing of the cells to remove Me_2SO.[71,72] Unfortunately, washing cells (by centrifugation or automated cell washers) prior to infusion to remove Me_2SO results in significant cell losses. Antonenas and colleagues observed a loss of 27 to 30% of nucleated cells resulting from post-thaw washing of cord blood.[73] A more recent study by Perotti and colleagues[74] observed a similar loss in nucleated cell counts for cord blood units washed with an automated cell washer. Cell losses, in particular for cord blood transplants, have a significant influence on transplant outcome.[75,76] Specifically, reduced cell numbers are associated with longer periods of engraftment and increased morbidity and mortality. Therein lies the conundrum: direct infusion of cryopreserved hematopoietic stem cells results in significant adverse reactions, but washing cells to remove Me_2SO results in significant cell losses with the risk of increased patient morbidity and mortality.

Cryopreservation solutions are composed of tissue culture medium, cryoprotective agent (typically Me_2SO), and animal serum (typically fetal calf serum (FCS)). As described, Me_2SO is associated with adverse reactions, as is the use of animal sera in culture media for human cell therapy. Other components of cryopreservation solutions may also be inappropriate for human therapeutic application. Selvaggi and colleagues[77] documented a range of unfavorable reactions resulting from the *ex vivo* culture of lymphocytes using FCS-containing media. Patients receiving cell infusions exhibited hypotension, rigors, arthralgias, myalgias, headache, and/or malaise. Furthermore, the majority of patients formed antibodies to specific components in FCS within two cell infusions. This finding echoed studies performed over two decades earlier by Irie and colleagues.[78] Both studies suggest that the use of animal sera in cryopreservation solutions for human therapeutic applications is not appropriate. Fortunately, the majority of clinical cryopreservation protocols do not use animal sera in the cryopreservation solution but rather autologous serum/plasma or human serum albumin (HSA).[79] The quality of the serum/plasma can vary greatly based on the health status of the patient. Consequently, it may be difficult to obtain a consistent outcome for the cryopreservation protocol when autologous serum is used. HSA has been adopted as an alternative for autologous serum, but concerns over supply and the transmission of adventitious agents makes HSA a less-than-ideal substitute. The mechanism by which proteins act to protect cells during freezing is as yet unknown; as a consequence, little has been done to develop alternatives.

By volume the principal component of clinical cryopreservation solutions typically consists of tissue culture media (see reference 80 for review). Tissue culture media can easily contain more than fifty components, including amino acids, inorganic salts, vitamins, and trace elements. Many of these components are not available in therapeutic grade, and the safety of these solutions for humans has not been studied. A limited number of investigators have examined the use of plasma expanders or electrolyte solutions as a base for cryopreservation solutions[81] or as a short term storage solution for hematopoietic stem cells.[54,82–87] These studies suggest that infusible grade solutions could be substituted for tissue culture media in both cryopreservation and liquid storage

solutions. Little movement, however, has been made to standardize the use of licensed electrolyte solutions or plasma expanders as a basis for clinical cryopreservation solutions.

7.6 CONCLUSIONS AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The preservation of cell-based therapies presents a unique opportunity and challenge. Studies demonstrate that *ex vivo* culture can influence cell metabolism and membrane composition, which in turn can influence post-thaw survival. Future studies elucidating the cellular and molecular mechanisms that influence cell survival (beyond apoptosis) could be important in advancing our basic understanding of cellular or molecular response to the stresses of freezing and thawing and lead to the development of a novel class of cryoprotective agents ("molecular modifiers") that exploit this understanding to enhance post-thaw survival. We may also be able to develop *ex vivo* culture protocols that minimize detrimental cell changes (increases in membrane cholesterol content, telomere shortening, and shifts in metabolism to pathways typically associated with stress response) and therefore maximize post-thaw recovery.

At the present time, stem cell-based therapies have typically involved adult stem cells. The preservation of embryonic stem cell-based therapies is an important emerging challenge. Early studies have shown the ability to cryopreserve embryonic stem cells[88,89] and the ability to preserve neuronal progenitor cells derived from embryonic stem cells.[90] Our difficulty in preserving certain mature cell types (e.g., granulocytes and hepatocytes) suggests that post-thaw survival may vary with differentiation. Our understanding of biophysical (water transport properties) and molecular properties on the post-thaw survival of cells may be essential to the rational design of preservation protocols for embryonic stem cell-based therapies.

Worldwide, a considerable financial and human resource investment has already been made in banking hematopoietic stem cells.[3] The hundreds of thousands of hematopoietic stem cell product (typically cord blood) presently stored in clinical banks use conventional cryopreservation solutions containing Me_2SO. The development of improved methods of post-thaw processing to minimize infusion of Me_2SO and cell losses would improve the safety and efficacy of these products.

Finally, cell-based therapies developed for human therapeutic application require the development of preservation methods appropriate for human use. In particular, current cryopreservation solutions contain components associated with adverse reactions or are not available in therapeutic grade. Alternatives for tissue culture media and animal sera have been developed and partially adopted but are not yet mainstream. The development of Me_2SO-free cryopreservation solutions remains a significant hurdle, but it would represent a huge step forward in improving the safety of cryopreserved cell products. Further work is needed to develop solutions safe for human use and obtain regulatory approval.

REFERENCES

1. Ballen, K., Broxmeyer, H.E., McCullough, J., Piaciabello, W., Rebulla, P., Verfaillie, C.M., and Wagner, J.E., Current status of cord blood banking and transplantation in the United States and Europe, *Biol. Blood Marrow Transplant,* 7, 635, 2001.
2. M-Reboredo, N., Diaz, A., Castro, A., and Villaescusa, R.G., Collection, processing and cryopreservation of umbilical cord blood for unrelated transplantation, *Bone Marrow Transplant*, 26, 1263, 2000.
3. Rebulla, P., Cord blood banking 2002: 112,010 of 7,914,773 chances, *Transfusion*, 42, 1246, 2002.
4. Read, E.J. and Sullivan, M.T., Cellular therapy services provided by blood centers and hospitals in the United States, 1999: An analysis from the Nationwide Blood Collection and Utilization Survey, *Transfusion*, 44, 539, 2004.
5. Sputtek, A. and Sputtek, R., in *Life in the Frozen State*, Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E., Eds. CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, p. 483.

6. Ruggles, J.A., Kelemen, D., and Baron, A., Emerging therapies: Controlling glucose homeostasis, immunotherapy, islet transplantation, gene therapy, and islet cell neogenesis and regeneration, *Endocrinol Metab. Clin. North Am.,* 33, 239, 2004.

7. Drucker-Colin, R. and Verdugo-Diaz, L., Cell transplantation for Parkinson's disease: Present status, *Cell Mol. Neurobiol.,* 24, 301, 2004.

8. Horslen, S.P. and Fox, I.J., Hepatocyte transplantation, Transplantation 77, 1481, 2004.

9. Morstyn, G. and Sheridan, W., *Cell therapy: Stem cell transplantation, gene therapy, and cellular immunotherapy,* Cambridge University Press, New York, 1996.

10. Rosenberg, S.A., Lotze, M.T., Muul, L.M., Leitman, S., Chang, A.E., Ettinghausen, S.E., Matory, Y.L., Skibber, J.M., Shiloni, E., and Vetto, J.T., Observations on the systemic administration of autologous lymphokine- activated killer cells and recombinant interleukin-2 to patients with metastatic cancer, *N. Engl. J. Med.,* 313, 1485, 1985.

11. Rosenberg, S.A., Lotze, M.T., Muul, L.M., Chang, A.E., Avis, F.P., Leitman, S., Linehan, W.M., Robertson, C.N., Lee, R.E., and Rubin, J.T., A progress report on the treatment of 157 patients with advanced cancer using lymphokine-activated killer cells and interleukin-2 or high-dose interleukin-2 alone, *N. Engl. J. Med.,* 316, 889, 1987.

12. Grimm, E., in *Cancer Medicine*, Bast, R., Kufe, D., and Pollock, R., Eds. BC Decker, Hamilton, ON, 2000.

13. Peggs, K.S. and Mackinnon, S., Cellular therapy: Donor lymphocyte infusion, *Curr. Opin. Hematol.,* 8, 349, 2001.

14. Timmerman, J.M. and Levy, R., Dendritic cell vaccines for cancer immunotherapy, *Annu. Rev. Med.,* 50, 507, 1999.

15. Nestle, F.O., Banchereau, J., and Hart, D., Dendritic cells: On the move from bench to bedside, *Nat. Med.,* 7, 761, 2001.

16. Torpey, D., III, Huang, X.L., Armstrong, J., Ho, M., Whiteside, T., McMahon, D., Pazin, G., Heberman, R., Gupta., and Tripoli, C., Effects of adoptive immunotherapy with autologous CD8+ T lymphocytes on immunologic parameters: Lymphocyte subsets and cytotoxic activity, *Clin. Immunol. Immunopathol.,* 68, 263, 1993.

17. Walsh, S.R., Bhardwaj, N., and Gandhil, R.T., Dendritic cells and the promise of therapeutic vaccines for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-1, *Curr. HIV Res.,* 1, 205, 2003.

18. Moss, P.A., Cobbold, M., and Craddock, C., The cellular immunotherapy of viral infection, *Transfus. Med.,* 13, 405, 2003.

19. Baron, F., Storb, R., and Little, M.T., Hematopoietic cell transplantation: Five decades of progress, *Arch. Med. Res.,* 34, 528, 2003.

20. Conference synopsis: Hematopoietic stem cell therapy in autoimmune diseases, October 2001, *Biol. Blood Marrow Transplant,* 8, 407, 2002.

21. Mathur, A. and Martin, J.F., Stem cells and repair of the heart, *Lancet*, 364, 183, 2004.

22. Friedenstein, A.J., Gorskaja, J.F., and Kulagina, N.N., Fibroblast precursors in normal and irradiated mouse hematopoietic organs, *Exp. Hematol.,* 4, 267, 1976.

23. Prockop, D.J., Gregory, C.A., and Spees, J.L., One strategy for cell and gene therapy: Harnessing the power of adult stem cells to repair tissues, *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.,* 100 (Suppl. 1), 11917, 2003.

24. Horwitz, E.M., Prockop, D.J., Gordon, P.L., Koo, W.W., Fitzpatrick, L.A., Neel, M.D., McCarville, M.E., Orchard, P.J., Pyeritz, R.E., and Brenner, M.K., Clinical responses to bone marrow transplantation in children with severe osteogenesis imperfecta, *Blood*, 97, 1227, 2001.

25. Koc, O.N., Day, J., Nikeder, M., Gerson, S.L., Lazarus, H.M., and Krivit, W., Allogeneic mesenchymal stem cell infusion for treatment of metachromatic leukodystrophy (MLD) and Hurler syndrome (MPS-IH), *Bone Marrow Transplant,* 30, 215, 2002.

26. Mazur, P., in *Life in the Frozen State*, Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, p. 3.

27. Hubel, A., Darr, T.B., and Norman, J.A., Freezing characteristics of genetically modified lymphocytes for the treatment of MPS II, *Cell Transplant,* 8, 521, 1999.

28. Hubel, A., Norman, J., and Darr, T.B., Cryobiophysical characteristics of genetically modified hematopoietic progenitor cells, *Cryobiology*, 38, 140, 1999.

29. Mazur, P., Kinetics of water loss from cells at subzero temperature and the likelihood of intracellular freezing, *J. Gen. Physiol.,* 47, 347, 1963.

30. Toner, M., Tompkins, R.G., Cravalho, E.G., and Yarmush, M.L., Transport phenomena during freezing of isolated hepatocytes, *Am. Inst. Chem. Eng. J.,* 38, 1512, 1992.

31. Levin, R.L., Cravalho, E.G., and Huggins, C.E., A membrane model describing the effect of temperature on the water conductivity of erythrocyte membranes at subzero temperatures, *Cryobiology*, 13, 415, 1976.

32. Darr, T.B. and Hubel, A., Freezing characteristics of isolated pig and human hepatocytes, *Cell Transplant,* 6, 173, 1997.

33. Darr, T.B. and Hubel, A., Postthaw viability of precultured hepatocytes, *Cryobiology,* 42, 11, 2001.

34. Hubel, A., Conroy, M., and Darr, T.B., Influence of preculture on the prefreeze and postthaw characteristics of hepatocytes, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.,* 71, 173, 2000.

35. Verfaillie, C.M., Hematopoietic stem cells for transplantation, *Nat. Immunol.,* 3, 314, 2002.

36. Gao, D.Y., et al., Fundamental cryobiology of human hematopoietic progenitor cells. I: Osmotic characteristics and volume distribution, *Cryobiology*, 36, 40, 1998.

37. Hunt, C.J., Armitage, S.E., and Pegg, D.E., Cryopreservation of umbilical cord blood: I. Osmotically inactive volume, hydraulic conductivity and permeability of CD34(+) cells to dimethyl sulphoxide, *Cryobiology*, 46, 61, 2003.

38. Tarasov, A.I., Petrenko, A.Y., and Jones, D.R., The osmotic characteristics of human fetal liver-derived hematopoietic stem cell candidates, *Cryobiology*, 48, 333, 2004.

39. Woods, E.J., et al., Osmometric and permeability characteristics of human placental/umbilical cord blood CD34+ cells and their application to cryopreservation, *J. Hematother. Stem Cell Res.,* 9, 161, 2000.

40. Yokomuro, H., Mickle, D.A., Weisel, R.D., and Li, R.K., Optimal conditions for heart cell cryopreservation for transplantation, *Mol. Cell Biochem.,* 242, 109, 2003.

41. Medema, J.P. and Borst, J., T cell signaling: A decision of life and death, *Hum. Immunol.,* 60, 403, 1999.

42. Baust, J.M., Vogel, M.J., Van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., A molecular basis of cryopreservation failure and its modulation to improve cell survival, *Cell Transplant,* 10, 561, 2001.

43. de Boer, F., et al., Extensive early apoptosis in frozen-thawed CD34-positive stem cells decreases threshold doses for haematological recovery after autologous peripheral blood progenitor cell transplantation, *Bone Marrow Transplant,* 29, 249, 2002.

44. de Boer, F., Drager, A.M., Pinedo, H.M., Kessler, F.L., Monnee-van Muijen, M., Weijers, G., Westra, G., van der Wall, E., Netelenbos, T., Oberink, J.W., Huijgens, P.C., and Schuurhuis, G.J., Early apoptosis largely accounts for functional impairment of CD34+ cells in frozen-thawed stem cell grafts, *J. Hematother. Stem Cell Res.,* 11, 951, 2002.

45. Stroh, C., Cassens, U., Samraj, A.K., Sibrowski, W., Schulze-Osthoff, K., and Los, M., The role of caspases in cryoinjury: Caspase inhibition strongly improves the recovery of cryopreserved hematopoietic and other cells, *Faseb. J.,* 16, 1651, 2002.

46. Sarkar, S., Kalia, V., and Montelaro, R.C., Caspase-mediated apoptosis and cell death of rhesus macaque CD4+ T-cells due to cryopreservation of peripheral blood mononuclear cells can be rescued by cytokine treatment after thawing, *Cryobiology,* 47, 44, 2003.

47. Mahler, S., Desille, M., Fremond, B., Chesne, C., Guillouzo, A., Campion, J.P., and Clement, B., Hypothermic storage and cryopreservation of hepatocytes: The protective effect of alginate gel against cell damages, *Cell Transplant,* 12, 579, 2003.

48. Matsushita, T., Yagi, T., Hardin, J.A., Cragun, J.D., Crow, F.W., Bergen III, H.R., Gores, G.J., and Nyberg, S.L., Apoptotic cell death and function of cryopreserved porcine hepatocytes in a bioartificial liver, *Cell Transplant,* 12, 109, 2003.

49. Nyberg, S.L., Hardin, J.A., Matos, L.E., Rivera, D.J., Misra, S.P., and Gores, G.J., Cytoprotective influence of ZVAD-fmk and glycine on gel-entrapped rat hepatocytes in a bioartificial liver, *Surgery,* 127, 447, 2000.

50. Yagi, T., Hardin, J.A., Valenzuela, Y.M., Miyoshi, H., Gores, G.J., and Nyberg, S.L., Caspase inhibition reduces apoptotic death of cryopreserved porcine hepatocytes, *Hepatology,* 33, 1432, 2001.

51. Basu, P.K., Sarkar, P., Menon, I., Carre, F., and Persad, S., Bovine retinal pigment epithelial cells cultured *in vitro*: Growth characteristics, morphology, chromosomes, phagocytosis ability, tyrosinase activity and effect of freezing, *Exp. Eye Res.,* 36, 671, 1983.

52. Honda, S., Weigel, A., Hjelmeland, L.M., and Handa, J.T., Induction of telomere shortening and replicative senescence by cryopreservation, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.,* 282, 493, 2001.
53. Lasky, L.C., The role of the laboratory in marrow manipulation, *Arch. Pathol. Lab. Med.,* 115, 293, 1991.
54. Hubel, A., Carlquist, D., Clay, M., and McCullough, J., Liquid storage, shipment, and cryopreservation of cord blood, *Transfusion*, 44, 518, 2004.
55. McCullough, J., *Transfusion Medicine,* McGraw-Hill, New York, 1998.
56. Alessandrino, P., Bernasconi, P., Caldera, D., Colombo, A., Bonfichi, M., Malcovati, L., Klersy, C., Martinelli, G., Maiocchi, M., Pagnucco, G., Varettoni, M., Perotti, C., and Bernasconi, C., Adverse events occurring during bone marrow or peripheral blood progenitor cell infusion: Analysis of 126 cases, *Bone Marrow Transplant,* 23, 533, 1999.
57. Davis, J., Rowley, S.D., and Santos, G.W., Toxicity of autologous bone marrow graft infusion, *Prog. Clin. Biol. Res.,* 333, 531, 1990.
58. Stroncek, D.F., Fautsch, S.K., Lasky, L.C., Hurd, D.D., Ramsay, N.K., and McCullough, J., Adverse reactions in patients transfused with cryopreserved marrow, *Transfusion*, 31, 521, 1991.
59. Zambelli, A., Poggi, G., Da Prada, G., Pedrazzoli, PO., Cuomo, A., Miotti, D., Perotti, C., Preti, P., and Robustelli della Cuna, G., Clinical toxicity of cryopreserved circulating progenitor cells infusion, *Anticancer Res.,* 18, 4705, 1998.
60. Berenson, R.J., Shpall, E.J., Auditore-Hargreaves, K., Heimfeld, S., Jacobs, C., and Krieger, M.S., Transplantation of CD34+ hematopoietic progenitor cells, *Cancer Invest.*, 14, 589, 1996.
61. Zenhausern, R., Tobler, A., Leoncini, L., Hess, O.M., and Ferrari, P., Fatal cardiac arrhythmia after infusion of dimethyl sulfoxide-cryopreserved hematopoietic stem cells in a patient with severe primary cardiac amyloidosis and end-stage renal failure, *Ann. Hematol.,* 79, 523, 2000.
62. Martino, M., Morabito, F., Messina, G., Irrera, G., Pucci, G., and Iacopino, P., Fractionated infusions of cryopreserved stem cells may prevent DMSO-induced major cardiac complications in graft recipients, *Haematologica*, 81, 59, 1996.
63. Hoyt, R., Szer, J., and Grigg, A., Neurological events associated with the infusion of cryopreserved bone marrow and/or peripheral blood progenitor cells, *Bone Marrow Transplant,* 25, 1285, 2000.
64. Smith, D.M., Weisenburger, D.D., Bierman, P., Kessisnger, A., Vaughan, W.P., and Armitage, J.O., Acute renal failure associated with autologous bone marrow transplantation, *Bone Marrow Transplant,* 2, 195, 1987.
65. Benekli, M., Anderson, B., Wentling, D., Bernstein, S., Czuczman, M., and McCarthy, P., Severe respiratory depression after dimethylsulphoxide-containing autologous stem cell infusion in a patient with AL amyloidosis, *Bone Marrow Transplant,* 25, 1299, 2000.
66. Garaventa, A., Porta, F., Rondelli, R., Dini, G., Meloni, G., Bonetti, F., Uderzo, C., De Manzini, A., Miniero, R., and Brutti, F., Early deaths in children after BMT. Bone Marrow Transplantation Group of the Italian Association for Pediatric Hematology and Oncology (AIEOP) and Gruppo Italiano Trapianto di Midollo Osseo (GITMO), *Bone Marrow Transplant,* 10, 419, 1992.
67. Okamoto, Y., Takaue, Y., Saito, S., Shimizu, T., Suzue, T., Abe, T., Sato, J., Hirao, A., Watanabe, T., and Kawano, Y., Toxicities associated with cryopreserved and thawed peripheral blood stem cell autografts in children with active cancer, *Transfusion*, 33, 578, 1993.
68. Thome, S., Craze, J., and Mitchell, C., Dimethylsulphoxide-induced serum hyperosmolality after cryopreserved stem-cell graft, *Lancet*, 344, 1431, 1994.
69. Iacone, A., et al., Density gradient separation of hematopoietic stem cells in autologous bone marrow transplantation, *Haematologica*, 76 (Suppl. 1), 18, 1991.
70. Syme, R., Bewick, M., Stewart, D., Porter, K., Chadderton, T., and Cluck, S., The role of depletion of dimethyl sulfoxide before autografting: On hematologic recovery, side effects, and toxicity, *Biol. Blood Marrow Transplant,* 10, 135, 2004.
71. Rubinstein, P., Dobrila, L., Rosenfield, R.W., Adamson, J.W., Migliaccio, G., Migliaccio, A.R., Taylor, P.E., and Stevens, C.E., Processing and cryopreservation of placental/umbilical cord blood for unrelated bone marrow reconstitution, *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA,* 92, 10119, 1995.
72. Fraser, J.K., Cario, M.S., Wagner, E.L., McCurdy, P.R., Baxter-Lowe, L.A., Carter, S.L., Kernan, N.A., Lill, M.C., Slone, V., Wagner, J.E., Wallas, C.H., and Kurtzberg, J., Cord Blood Transplantation Study (COBLT): Cord blood bank standard operating procedures, *J. Hematother.,* 7, 521, 1998.

73. Antonenas, V., Bradstock, K., and Shaw, P., Effect of washing procedures on unrelated cord blood units for transplantation in children and adults, *Cytotherapy*, 4, 16, 2002.

74. Perotti, C.G., et al., A new automated cell washer device for thawed cord blood units, *Transfusion*, 44, 900, 2004.

75. Migliaccio, A.R., et al., Cell dose and speed of engraftment in placental/umbilical cord blood transplantation: Graft progenitor cell content is a better predictor than nucleated cell quantity, *Blood*, 96, 2717, 2000.

76. Gluckman, E., Hematopoietic stem-cell transplants using umbilical-cord blood, *N. Engl. J. Med.,* 344, 1860, 2001.

77. Selvaggi, T.A., Walker, R.E., and Fleisher, T.A., Development of antibodies to fetal calf serum with arthus-like reactions in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients given syngeneic lymphocyte infusions, *Blood*, 89, 776, 1997.

78. Irie, R.F., Irie, K., and Morton, D.L., Natural antibody in human serum to a neoantigen in human cultured cells grown in fetal bovine serum, *J. Nat. Cancer Inst.,* 52, 1051, 1974.

79. Areman, E.M., Sacher, R.A., and Deeg, H.J., Cryopreservation and storage of human bone marrow: A survey of current practices, *Prog. Clin. Biol. Res.,* 333, 523, 1990.

80. Pamphilon, D., Stem-cell harvesting and manipulation, *Vox Sang,* 87 (Suppl. 1), 20, 2004.

81. Killian, D., Wright, P., Bentley, S.A. and Brecher, M.E., A cost-effective and Food and Drug Administration-approved alternative to tissue culture media in cryopreservation, *Transfusion*, 36, 476, 1996.

82. Areman, E.M., Dickerson, S.A., Bender, J.G., Cullis, H., and Sacher, R., Use of licensed electrolyte solutions and anti-coagulant citrate dextrose for bone marrow collection, *Progress in Clinical and Biological Research,* 377, 353, 1992.

83. Areman, E.M., Dickerson, S.A., Kotula, P.L., Spitzer, T.R., and Sacher, R.A., Use of a licensed electrolyte solution as an alternative to tissue culture medium for bone marrow collection, *Transfusion*, 33, 562, 1993.

84. Burger, S.R., Hubel, A., and McCullough, J., Development of an infusible-grade solution for non-cryopreserved hematopoietic cell storage, *Cytotherapy,* 1, 123, 1999.

85. Hubel, A.,Carlquist, D., Clay, M., and McCullough, J., Cryopreservation of cord blood after liquid storage, *Cytotherapy*, 5, 370, 2003.

86. Hubel, A.,Carlquist, D., Clay, M., and McCullough, J., Short term liquid storage of umbilical cord blood, *Transfusion*, 43, 626, 2003.

87. Schmid, J., McCullough, J., Burger, S.R., and Hubel, A., Non-cryopreserved bone marrow storage in STM-Sav, in infusible-grade cell storage solution, *Cell Preservation Technology,* 1, 45, 2002.

88. Reubinoff, B.E., Itsykson, P., Turetsky, T., Pera, M.F., Reinhartz, E., Itzik, A., and Ben-Hur, T., Neural progenitors from human embryonic stem cells, *Nat. Biotechnol.,* 19, 1134, 2001.

89. Thomson, J.A., Itskovitz-Eldor, J., Shapiro, S.S., Waknitz, M.A., Swiergiel, J.J., Marshall, V.S., and Jones, J.M., Embryonic stem cell lines derived from human blastocysts, *Science*, 282, 1145, 1998.

90. Hancock, C.R., Wetherington, J.P., Lambert, N.A., and Condi, B.G., Neuronal differentiation of cryopreserved neural progenitor cells derived from mouse embryonic stem cells, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.,* 271, 418, 2000.

91. Stroncek, D.F., Hubel, A., Shankar, R.A., B urger, S.R., Pan, D., McCullough, J., and Whitley, C.B., Retroviral transduction and expansion of peripheral blood lymphocytes for the treatment of mucopolysaccharidosis type II, Hunter's syndrome, *Transfusion*, 39, 343, 1999.

8 Tissue Preservation

Kelvin G.M. Brockbank and Michael J. Taylor

CONTENTS

8.1   INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this chapter is to provide an overview of the "state of the art" for biopreservation of tissues ranging from simple clumps of cells to complex tissues containing multiple cell types. Preservation of specific tissue types including ovaries, corneas, vascular grafts, articular cartilage, heart valves, skin, and pancreatic islets have been the subject of recent reviews.[1] The use of human allogeneic tissues, such as skin, heart valves, and blood vessels in medicine has become normal practice. However, while clinical demand for tissues continues to grow, supply of these valuable human resources has become a limiting factor. As a result, the development of living engineered constructs has become an important new field of biomedical science and biopreservation of donor tissues and manufactured product is generally recognized as an important issue without which many market applications may never be fully achieved.

The differences between simple cell suspensions and structured, multicellular tissues with respect to their responses to cooling, warming, and dehydration clearly impact their requirements

157

for biopreservation. These differences have previously been described in detail with respect to the response of structured tissues to freezing and thawing.[2,3] We regard biopreservation to be a crucial enabling technology for the progression from preclinical and translational clinical research on cellular tissue products for regenerative medicine and transplantation. Tissue biopreservation is also needed for samples to be used for various research and toxicology test purposes. The need and advantages of tissue biopreservation are widely recognized and well documented.[3,4] There are several approaches to biopreservation, the optimum choice of which is dictated by the nature and complexity of the tissue and the required length of storage. Obviously, tissues such as bone and tendon that are banked successfully without a viable cell component (often referred to as nonliving tissues) are far more robust in withstanding the stresses of preservation than "living" tissues that invariably contain cells that must retain viability for maintenance of tissue functions. Maintenance of structural and functional integrity of living tissues is demanding and will be the principal focus of this chapter.

Short-term preservation of tissues and organs that cannot yet be successfully cryopreserved because they sustain too much injury at deep subzero temperatures can be achieved using either normothermic organ culture, in the case of corneas, or more commonly hypothermic storage at temperatures a few degrees above the freezing point. Normothermic organ culture is usually limited to corneal preservation for periods of up to a month or more.[4,5] In contrast, hypothermic storage is commonly employed for many types of tissue for transport between tissue donation sites, processing laboratories and end users, and short-term storage. These approaches to short-term biopreservation are dealt with in other chapters (see Chapter 2) and will be covered only in outline here for completeness.

With the exception of normothermic organ culture, all approaches to biopreservation aim to stabilize biological tissues by inhibiting metabolism and significantly retarding the chemical and biochemical processes responsible for degradation during *ex vivo* storage. Long-term preservation calls for much lower temperatures than short-term hypothermic storage and requires the tissue to withstand the rigors of heat and mass transfer during protocols designed to optimize cooling and warming in the presence of cryoprotective agents (CPAs). As we will explain below, ice formation in structured tissues during cryopreservation is the single most critical factor that severely restricts the extent to which tissues can survive cryopreservation procedures involving freezing and thawing. In recent years, this major problem has been effectively circumvented for several tissues by using ice-free cryopreservation techniques based upon *vitrification*.[6]

Long-term preservation in the presence of ice is achieved by coupling temperature reduction with cellular dehydration. In principle, stabilization by dehydration without concomitant cooling can be achieved for long-term storage at ambient temperatures.[7,8] However, the application of this approach to mammalian systems is in its infancy and will be addressed at the end of this chapter as a prospective development for the future.

Obtaining adequate and reproducible results for cryopreservation of most tissues requires an understanding of the major variables involved in tissue processing and subsequent preservation. Optimization of these variables must be derived for each tissue by experimentation guided by an understanding of the chemistry, biophysics, and toxicology of cryobiology.[2,3,6,9,10] Before discussing the factors affecting tissue quality in detail, it is necessary to consider the meaning of "viability" with respect to tissue function *in vivo*. Viability may simply be defined as the ability of preserved tissues to perform their normal functions upon return to physiological conditions. Many means of assessing cell viability within tissues have been described including amino acid uptake, protein synthesis, contractility, dye uptake, ribonucleic acid synthesis, and 2-deoxyglucose phosphorylation.[11] The assay(s) used to determine viability should give clear indications that the cells are alive and, preferably, should report on activities important for long-term tissue functions.

Multicellular tissues are considerably more complex than single cells, both structurally and functionally, and this is reflected in their requirements for cryopreservation. Some cell systems,

such as platelets and sperm, may be subject to thermal or cold shock upon cooling without freezing. In general, tissues are not known to be sensitive to cold shock. However, due to concerns that CPAs, such as DMSO, may increase tissue sensitivity to cold shock[12,13] or result in cytotoxicity, CPAs are usually added to tissues after an initial cooling to 4°C prior to further cooling. Frozen tissues have extensive extracellular and interstitial ice formation following use of tissue bank cryopreservation procedures. Such frozen tissues may, in some cases, have excellent cell viability. In other cases, as discussed later, viability may be very poor or cell viability can be good but cells in the tissue may no longer operate as a functional unit. It is usually not possible to detect where the ice was present after thawing by routine histopathology methods. Cryosubstitution techniques, which reveal where ice was present in tissues, have, however, demonstrated significant extracellular tissue matrix distortion and damage.[14–16] The extent of freezing damage depends upon the amount of free water in the system and the ability of that water to crystallize during cooling.

Other factors, in addition to ice formation, have biological consequences during biopreservation: the inhibitory effects of low temperatures on chemical and physical processes and, perhaps most important, the physiochemical effects of rising solute concentrations as the volume of liquid water decreases during crystallization. The latter process results in cell volume decreases, pH changes, and the risk of solute precipitation. There have been several hypotheses on mechanisms of freezing-induced injury based upon such factors.[3,14,17,18,19]

Two main approaches to tissue cryopreservation are currently in use or development. The first involves traditional freezing methods, based upon the cell preservation methods developed shortly after the Second World War, versus approaches involving ice-free vitrification. Both approaches involve the application of cryobiological principles.[3,6,14,17,18,20,21] Cryobiology may be defined as the study of the effects of temperatures lower than normal physiologic ranges upon biologic systems. Simply cooling cells or tissues with spontaneous ice nucleation and crystal growth results in dead, nonfunctional materials. Little advance was made in the field of cryobiology, with respect to significant post-freeze cell survival, until 1949 when Polge et al.[22] reported the cryoprotective properties of glycerol. Shortly thereafter, Lovelock and Bishop[23] discovered that dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) was also an effective cryoprotectant. Since the discovery of these CPAs, the field of cryopreservation has flourished and many other cryoprotectants have been identified. Before considering cryopreservation of tissues further, we will review some of the principles of short-term preservation in the absence of freezing.

8.2 SHORT-TERM TISSUE PRESERVATION

This section deals with the issues relating to the selection and design of solutions for hypothermic preservation and tissue transport. Most tissues are transported on ice for short periods of time before being processed for an application or cryopreserved for long-term storage. Reference was made at the end of Chapter 2 to the importance of interventional control of the extracellular environment of cells and tissues to optimize preservation. More specifically, the composition of the buffer medium used to nurture the tissue during the preservation protocol is very important but often overlooked on the assumption that conventional salt buffers such as Ringer's lactate and Krebs' solution, or regular tissue culture medium will be adequate. There are very good reasons (outlined in Ch 2) that these types of solutions may be suboptimal for cell preservation in tissues at reduced, hypothermic temperatures. Since control of the component cell and tissue environments is of fundamental importance for the outcome of preservation, it is worth considering some of the basic principles of solution design in relation to low-temperature storage. In essence, two basic types of solution are considered and often referred to as "extracellular-type" or "intracellular-type" solutions to reflect their basic ionic composition. Over the years we have encountered some confusion and inconsistencies in the use of these terms, hence definitions of these terms are footnoted.*

Some more sophisticated hypothermic blood substitution solutions such as Hypothermosol (Biolife Solutions), Unisol™ (Organ Recovery Systems), and KPS1 (Belzer's UW kidney perfusion solution; Organ Recovery Systems), the formulations of which are tabulated in Chapter 2, also contain an oncotic agent in the form of a high-molecular-weight colloid such as Dextran or hydroxyethyl starch. These solutions are perfused through the vascular bed of an individual organ, or even the whole body, at a pressure sufficient (typically 25–60 mm Hg) to achieve uniform tissue distribution. To balance this applied hydrostatic pressure and prevent interstitial edema, an oncotic agent such as albumin or synthetic macromolecular colloids (e.g., Dextran or hydroxyethyl starch) is incorporated into the perfusate. These perfusates may have an "intracellular" or "extracellular" complement of ions depending upon the temperature of perfusion preservation.[24–28]

Methods of short-term hypothermic preservation are neither standardized nor optimized for various tissues and organs. Currently the formulation of solutions employed differs depending upon the type of tissue or organ and whether the excised organs are stored statically on ice or mechanically perfused (see Chapters 2 and 9). Historically, a variety of preservation solutions have been developed and used for organs, but their application for tissues has been generally neglected. Most tissues are still transported in cell culture media and the fallacy of assuming that physiological culture media is acceptable for low-temperature storage is illustrated below. While there are undisputed industry standards for certain organs and applications, the concept of a "universal" preservation solution for all tissues and organs has still to be realized in practice. In general, the solutions adopted for abdominal visceral organs (kidney, liver, and pancreas) have not proved optimal for thoracic organs (heart and lungs) and vice versa. In contrast, a new approach to "universal" tissue preservation solutions has been developed for bloodless surgery using hypothermic blood substitution (HBS) to protect the whole body during profound hypothermic circulatory arrest (clinical suspended animation, or "*corporoplegia*" — literally meaning body paralysis).[24,26,28,29]

In recent years we have used this approach based upon the "Unisol" concept,[27] in which two new solutions (a "*maintenance*" and a "*purge*") formulated for separate roles in the procedure have been tested.[30,31] The principal solution is a hyperkalemic, "intracellular-type" solution designed to "maintain" cellular integrity during hypothermic exposure at the nadir temperature (<10°C). The companion solution is an "extracellular-type" purge solution designed to interface between blood and the *maintenance* solution during both cooling and warming. This novel approach to clinical suspended animation has been established in several large animal models[24,26] and more recently explored for resuscitation after traumatic hemorrhagic shock in preclinical models relevant to both civilian and military applications.[30,32–35] Most recently the efficacy of hypothermic blood substitution

---

* DEFINITIONS

"Intracellular-type" solution: A preservation solution that is typically hypertonic having a composition that is designed to restrict the passive exchange of water and ions during hypothermic exposure when cell membrane pumps are inhibited. This is achieved by raising the concentration of potassium, and reducing sodium, to mimic that of the intracellular space and thereby restrict passive fluxes of these ions. More importantly, an I-type solution usually includes a non-permeating (impermeant) anion to partially replace chloride ions in the extracellular space and thereby provide osmotic support to balance the intracellular oncotic pressure generated by macromolecules and their associated counter-ions locked inside the cell (these molecules do not cross the plasma membrane even passively due to their size and charge). Energy-consuming pumps normally control the water content of cells, but during hypothermia (and/or energy depletion) this control mechanism is compromised and cells imbibe water due to the oncotic pressure of the intracellular milieu. Cell swelling due to this passive hydraulic flux can be inhibited by raising the osmolality of the extracellular medium and by incorporating an impermeant anion such as lactobionate, or gluconate. Hence, these biophysical characteristics are the basis of why such solutions have been termed "intracellular-type" although in truth the solutions do not mimic the intracellular composition of the cytoplasm in many other respects.

"**Extracellular-type" solution:** By contrast, this is an isotonic solution having a plasma-like complement of ions that mimics the normal extracellular environment of cells. Examples of this type of solution can range from simple saline ("extracellular" in terms of the concentration of NaCl and osmolality) to tissue culture media that contain a more complete complement of ions, amino acids, and other metabolites to mimic the extracellular composition of plasma and other body fluids. Such solutions are generally poor preservation solutions at reduced temperatures principally because they do not counteract the passive biophysical processes outlined above.

with the hybrid Unisol solutions for whole-body protection has been demonstrated in a porcine model of uncontrolled lethal hemorrhage (ULH).[30,35,36]

In considering the efficacy of a solution for universal tissue preservation there is no better test than to expose all the tissues of the body to cold ischemia. Moreover, protection of those tissues most exquisitely sensitive to an ischemia/hypoxia insult, namely the heart and brain, provides the greatest challenge. Current interests in the development of hypothermic arrest techniques to facilitate resuscitation of hemorrhagic shock victims in trauma medicine has parenthetically provided an opportunity to examine the efficacy of new hypothermic blood substitution solutions for universal tissue preservation. In accordance with earlier baseline models,[26,37,38] these studies validate the unequivocal benefit of profound hypothermia combined with specially designed blood replacement fluids for the protection of heart, brain, and the other major organs during several hours of cardiac arrest and ensuing ischemia. Moreover, the preservation of higher cognitive functions in these animals subjected to hypothermic arrest further corroborates previous reports of the high level of neuroprotection provided by these hypothermic blood substitute solutions.[39] The general *in vivo* tissue-preservation qualities of this hypothermic blood substitution technique are clearly demonstrated by the consistent resuscitation of exsanguinating animals after traumatic hypovolemic shock. More specifically, biochemical profiles of the surviving animals showed that, apart from a transient elevation in liver enzymes that normalized within the first post-op week, there were no metabolic signs of organ dysfunction.[35] This is consistent with previously published observations in a canine model of clinical suspended animation in which specific markers of heart, brain, and muscle injury (creatine kinase isozymes) all showed transient increases in the immediate post-op period and returned to normal baseline levels within the first post-op week.[24,26]

In conclusion, the demonstrated efficacy of these synthetic, acellular hypothermic blood substitute solutions for protection of all the tissues and organs in the body during clinical suspended animation justifies their consideration for multiple organ harvesting from cadaveric and heart-beating donors. Furthermore, these observations support the findings of parallel studies for longer-term hypothermic storage of a variety of cell types derived from vascular tissues and kidney in which the Unisol-UHK *maintenance* solution has provided excellent cell survival compared with a variety of commonly employed solutions.[27,31] This provides further evidence for the protective properties of hypothermic blood substitutes such as *Hypothermosol* and *Unisol* solutions used for global tissue preservation during whole body perfusion in which the microvasculature of the heart and brain are especially vulnerable to ischemic injury.[24,39] Moreover, the application of solution-design for clinical suspended animation under conditions of ultraprofound hypothermia places the Hypothermosol and Unisol solutions in a unique category as universal preservation media for all tissues in the body. In contrast, all other preservation media, including the most widely used commercial solutions such as UW-ViaSpan are established for specific organs, or groups of organs, e.g., UW for abdominal organs and Celsior or Cardiosol for thoracic organs.

8.2.1 HYPOTHERMIC STORAGE OF TISSUES: ILLUSTRATIVE STUDIES USING BLOOD VESSELS

Hypothermic storage of whole organs flushed or perfused with a preservation solution is common practice in clinical transplantation. This procedure leaves the vascular endothelial cells in direct contact with the preservation medium during the cold ischemic period. The effect of storage conditions on the integrity of vascular endothelium is therefore of crucial importance for the quality of preservation of intact organs. Moreover, it has been established in recent years that the long-term patency of vascular grafts used in reconstructive surgery may be significantly affected by cold storage.[40] We have reviewed the effects of hypothermia upon vascular function elsewhere.[31,41] The importance of these effects is illustrated by some experiments we conducted to compare the microscopic changes in tissue morphology when excised blood vessels were immersed and transported in Unisol-UHK hypothermic preservation solution compared with Dulbecco's Minimum

Essential Medium (DMEM), which is a common culture medium used to incubate and transport tissues *ex vivo*. The total cold ischemia time in these experiments was relatively short, 34.5 ± 9.5 minutes for samples transported in DMEM, and 37 ± 4 minutes for samples in Unisol-UHK. Tissue immersed and transported in DMEM on ice exhibited microscopic changes within the tunica intima and tunica media as shown in Figure 8.1A. The intima was intact, but there was extreme vacuolization (indicated by the arrows) of the underlying basal lamina causing, in turn, extrusion of the endothelial cells into the lumen and giving a "rounding-up" appearance. Apart from this vacuolization, the endothelial cells had a near normal appearance. The smooth muscle cells (SM) had a somewhat shrunken appearance with irregular contours. The tunica adventitia was essentially normal.

In contrast, jugular veins transported in Unisol demonstrated little if any histological changes compared with the DMEM group as shown in Figure 8.1B. The tunica intima was intact with little evidence of vacuolization of the underlying basement membrane. The smooth muscle cells (SM) did not appear shrunken and were in a normal, horizontal orientation.

These preliminary observations have been extended recently in a comprehensive study of interactive determinants that impact the preservation of autologous vascular grafts.[31] A multifactorial analysis of variance was used in the design and analysis of a study to evaluate the interaction of solution composition with time and temperature of storage. In summary, these *in vitro* studies that have examined both the function and structure of hypothermically stored blood vessels have clearly shown that optimum preservation of vascular grafts is achieved by selection of the type of storage medium in relation to time and temperature. Synthetic preservation solutions such as Unisol, designed specifically to inhibit detrimental cellular changes that ensue from ischemia and hypoxia, are clearly better than culture medium or blood and saline, which are commonly used clinically.[31]

8.2.2 BASIC RATIONALE FOR THE DESIGN OF HYPOTHERMIC SOLUTIONS

The scientific rationale for the choice of components selected in the design of Unisol is largely the same as that described previously for other hypothermic solutions[24–26] and will be summarized here. Based upon results from decades of organ preservation studies, desirable properties of hypothermic preservation solution have been determined and are listed in Chapter 2. The strategic design of solutions used for organ preservation have differed depending upon their ultimate use, either as a flush solution for static storage of the organ, or as a perfusate for continuous, or intermittent,
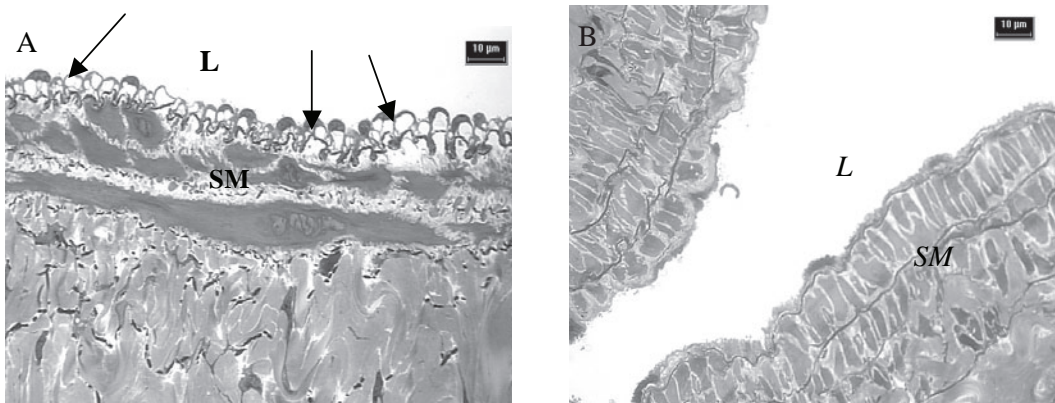
FIGURE 8.1 Light microscope histology of jugular vein segments after a period of cold ischemia in either DMEM culture medium (A) or Unisol-UHK hypothermic preservation solution (B). Note: L = Lumen; SM= smooth muscle cells.

perfusion of the organ. Taking a unique approach, Unisol has been formulated with a view to developing a universal baseline solution that may be used for both hypothermic static storage of tissues and organs, and also for machine perfusion preservation.[27,42] By design Unisol contains components that help to (1) minimize cell and tissue swelling, (2) maintain appropriate ionic balance, (3) prevent a state of acidosis, (4) remove or prevent the formation of free radicals, and (5) provide substrates for the regeneration of high-energy compounds and stimulate recovery upon rewarming and reperfusion. Parenthetically, these are regarded as the minimum essential characteristics for what can be regarded as baseline formulations. Additional classes of compounds can be considered as additives to these baseline solutions to fine-tune the cytoprotective properties. Examples are listed below and in Table 2.2 in Chapter 2. The scientific basis for new strategies to counteract cold ischemic injury by modifying storage solutions and perfusates is still emerging. Most of these strategies focus on combating oxidative stress and cold or hypoxia-induced apoptosis. Some insights into the cellular and molecular mechanisms of cold-storage injury have recently been reviewed by Rauen and DeGroot.[43] While these mechanisms have been elucidated using various experimental models, potential strategies[44,45] to counteract their effects have yet to be demonstrated in clinical practice.

The strategic design of Unisol (Table 2.2 in Chapter 2) included combining the main characteristics of effective hypothermic solutions with attention toward selection of multifunction components. By carefully selecting components that possess multiple properties, the intrinsic protective properties of these hybrid solutions are maximized.

A fundamental biophysical property of the Unisol design is to provide the optimum concentration of ions and colloids to maintain ionic and osmotic balance within the organ or body tissues during hypothermia. In particular, an effective impermeant anion is included to partially replace chloride in the extracellular space and prevent osmotic cell swelling (i.e., to balance the fixed ions inside cells that are responsible for the oncotic pressure leading to osmotic cell swelling and eventual lysis during ischemia and hypothermia). A number of anions including citrate, glycerophosphate, gluconate, and lactobionate, or the anionic forms of aminosulphonic acids such as HEPES* could be suitable candidates. Lactobionate (FW = 358) was used exclusively as the principal impermeant in many solutions developed in recent years; these include ViaSpan®, Hypothermosol, Celsior, Cardiosol, and Churchill's solution, among others.[46–52] Lactobionate is also known to be a strong chelator of calcium and iron and may, therefore, contribute to minimizing cell injury due to calcium influx and free radical formation.[53] However, for organ perfusion Belzer and Southard recommended against using lactobionate in a perfusion solution, especially for kidneys.[54] Instead, gluconate was selected and shown to be an important component of Belzer's machine perfusion solution (currently marketed as KPS1 by Organ Recovery Systems). As a hybrid solution, Unisol has effectively incorporated both impermeants and uses gluconate (70 mM) as the predominant impermeant plus lactobionate (30 mM) for its additional cytoprotective properties (Table 2.3 and Table 8.1).

The osmoticum of Unisol is supplemented by the inclusion of sucrose and mannitol, the latter of which also possesses properties as a hydroxyl radical scavenger and reduces vascular resistance by inducing a prostaglandin-mediated vasodilatation that may be of additional benefit.[55,56]

A macromolecular oncotic agent is an important component of a perfusate to help maintain oncotic pressure equivalent to that of blood plasma. Any oncotic agent that is sufficiently large to prevent or restrict escape from the circulation by traversing the fenestration of the capillary bed may be considered. Examples of acceptable colloidal osmotic agents include:

- blood plasma expanders such as human serum albumin
- hetastarch or hydroxyethyl starch (HES) — an artificial colloid derived from a waxy starch and composed almost entirely of amylopectin with hydroxyethyl ether groups introduced into the alpha (1–4) linked glucose units[57]

---

* N-2(hydroxyethyl-piperazine)N-2-ethanesulfonic acid

TABLE 8.1
Formulation of Cryoprotectant
Vehicle Solutions

Components (mM 1–1)	EC	Unisol-CV
Ionic		
Na$^+$	10.0	60.0
K$^+$	115.0	70.0
Ca^{++}	–	0.05
Mg^{++}	–	15.0
Cl$^-$	15.0	30.1
pH Buffers		
H$_2$PO$_4^-$	15.0	–
HPO$_4^{2-}$	42.5	–
HCO$_3^-$	10.0	5.0
HEPES	–	35.0
Impermeants		
Lactobionate$^-$	–	30.0
Sucrose	–	15.0
Mannitol	–	25.0
Glucose	194.0	5.0
Gluconate	–	70.0
Colloids		
Dextran 40	–	6%
Pharmacologics		
Adenosine	–	2.0
Glutathione	–	3.0
Osmolality (mOsm/Kg)	375	350
pH		7.6

EC (EuroCollins Solution); UNISOL-CV (Unisol Cryoprotectant Vehicle — phosphate free Unisol-UHK[31,80])

- Haemaccel (Hoechst) — a gelatin polypeptide[58]
- pluronic F108 (BASF — a nonionic detergent copolymer of polyoxyethylene and polyoxypropylene[59]
- polyethylene glycol[60]
- polysaccharide polymers of D-glucose such as the dextrans[61]

For a variety of reasons, dextran-40 (average mol wt = 40,000 daltons) was selected as the preferred colloid of choice for oncotic support to balance the hydrostatic pressure of perfusion and help prevent interstitial edema. It has long been known that dextran can improve the efficiency of the removal of erythrocytes from the microvasculature of cooled organs by inhibiting red cell clumping and by increasing intravascular osmotic pressure and reducing vascular resistance.[62–65] These attributes of dextran may be particularly important during washout, both *in vivo* and *ex vivo*. Dextran is widely used clinically as a plasma expander and is readily and rapidly excreted by the kidneys.[66] There is ample recent evidence that dextran-40 is also an effective and well tolerated

colloid in modern cold-storage solutions for organ preservation.[67–69] Moreover, in 1996, a Swiss clinical study verified that dextran-40 safely replaces HES in the UW solution for the purpose of human kidney preservation for transplantation.[70]

Retention of the colloid in the vascular space is an important consideration for achieving optimal oncotic support. Any dextran that permeates into the interstitial space during the hypothermic procedure will be readily eluted upon return to physiological conditions. Another advantage of the use of dextran is that the viscosity of the solution will not be as high as with some other colloids such as HES.

The ionic balance, notably the Na^+/K^+ and Ca^{2+}/Mg^{2+} ratios, of Unisol has been adjusted to restrict passive diffusional exchange at low temperatures when ionic pumps are inactivated. Table 8.1 shows that in the Unisol formulation, the concentration of monovalent cations Na^+ and K^+ are approximately equimolar to restrict their passive transmembrane exchange. Due to documented concerns regarding the very high potassium levels in commercial organ preservation solutions, including ViaSpan and EuroCollins,[50,71,72] the potassium concentration in Unisol is lower by comparison, but sufficiently elevated to fulfill the requirements of an "intracellular-type" preservation medium. In the area of cardioplegia and myocardial preservation there is good evidence for improved survival using elevated concentrations of magnesium and very low, but not zero, calcium to avoid the putative calcium paradox.[73–75] Some glucose is included in these hypothermic solutions as a substrate, but the concentration is low to prevent exogenous overload during hypothermia, which may potentiate lactate production and intracellular acidosis by anaerobic glycolysis.[76]

Acidosis is a particular hazard during hypothermia and attention has been given to the inclusion of a pH buffer that will be effective under nonphysiological conditions that prevail at low temperatures (see Chapter 2 for a detailed discussion of acid-base regulation under hypothermic conditions). HEPES was selected as one of the most widely used biocompatible aminosulphonic acid buffers that have been shown to possess superior buffering capacity at low temperatures,[77–80] and have been included as a major component of other hypothermic tissue preservation media.[77,81,82] Synthetic zwitterionic buffers such as HEPES also contribute to osmotic support in the extracellular compartment by virtue of their molecular size (HEPES = 238 daltons).

Adenosine is a multifaceted molecule and is included in the hypothermic preservation solutions not only as an essential substrate for the regeneration of ATP during rewarming, but also as a vasoactive component to facilitate efficient vascular flushing by vasodilatation.[83,84] Glutathione is included as an important cellular antioxidant and hydroxyl radical scavenger, as well as a cofactor for glutathione peroxidase, which enables metabolism of lipid peroxides and hydrogen peroxide.[46,85,86]

Unisol, by design, is a base vehicle solution to which any combination of pharmacological additives might be added for optimization of the preservation of a particular tissue or organ. Moreover, there is the potential benefit of a wide variety of pharmacological and biochemical agents that may be selected from the following categories:

- Cytoprotective agents and membrane stabilizers
- Energy-producing substrates and nucleotide precursors
- Calcium channel blockers
- Oxygen-derived free radical scavengers/antioxidants
- Apoptosis inhibitors
- Vasoactive agents
- Trophic factors
- Molecules for oxygen delivery

8.3 TISSUE SCREENING, PREPARATION, AND ANTIBIOTIC STERILIZATION

If tissues are destined for transplantation, it is normal practice for them to go through an extensive donor screening, microbial testing before and after processing to check for potential contaminants, and incubation in antibiotic formulations to hopefully kill low levels of microbial contaminants that are below the resolution of the microbial sampling protocols employed. In the USA the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulates tissue-engineered products, and the allograft tissue community has its own regulatory body, the American Association of Tissue Banks (AATB). The AATB has established standards that provide minimum performance requirements for all aspects of tissue banking activity.[87] These guidelines include requirements for donor suitability as well as the handling of transplantable human tissue. Their intent is to assure allograft tissue recipients disease- and contaminant-free implants, and to help ensure the optimum clinical performance of transplanted cells and tissues.

In contrast, tissue-engineered product regulations are in various stages of development by the FDA. One of the issues from a regulatory perspective has been that many tissue-engineered products combine features of drugs, devices, and/or biological products, so the normal division of work structure at the FDA has had to be modified. The Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research (CBER), the Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH), and the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER) have established intercenter agreements to clarify product jurisdictional issues within the FDA. The FDA has also established an InterCenter Tissue Engineering Work Group to address scientific and regulatory issues and members of this group have been very active at large. Two other special interest groups are presently involved in the development of standards for tissue-engineered products, the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) and the Tissue Engineering Special Interest Group of the Society for Biomaterials.

Recently the FDA published final rules establishing donor eligibility criteria for donors of human cells, tissues, and cellular- and tissue-based products (HCT/Ps) to help prevent the transmission of communicable disease when these products are transplanted. This new rule is part of the agency's plan to regulate tissues and related products with a comprehensive, risk-based approach. The new rule on donor eligibility pertains to donors of traditional tissues such as musculoskeletal, skin, and eye tissues that have been required to be screened and tested for HIV, hepatitis B virus (HBV), and hepatitis C virus (HCV) since 1993. Under this new rule, reproductive tissue (semen, ova, and embryos), hematopoietic stem cells derived from cord blood and peripheral blood sources (circulating blood sources as opposed to bone marrow), cellular therapies, and other innovative products are also regulated. In addition to including a broader range of tissues and cells, the new rule extends the scope of protection against additional communicable diseases that can be transmitted through transplanted tissues and cells. The new regulation adds requirements to screen for human transmissible spongiform encephalopathies, including Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD), and to screen and test for syphilis. Screening and testing for still other relevant communicable disease agents [human T-lymphotropic virus (HTLV)] would be required for viable cells and tissue rich in leukocytes such as semen and hematopoietic stem cells. The new rule also provides a framework for identifying emerging diseases that may pose risks to recipients of transplanted HCT/Ps and for which appropriate screening measures or testing are available. Thus, this new regulation gives the FDA the flexibility to rapidly address new disease threats as they appear, providing substantial new protections for patients receiving tissue transplants. Examples of such diseases include West Nile virus and Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS). The rule also contains requirements related to record keeping, quarantine, storage, and labeling of the HCT/Ps, all important to the prevention of disease transmission. The final rule became effective on May 25, 2005. FDA documents are available on the FDA's web site at http://www.fda.gov. References for ethical and safety considerations in Europe were recently provided by Wuseman and Hunt.[1]

Regardless of whether the transplantable material is an allograft or an engineered product, recipient safety must be ensured through administration of strict donor screening criteria along with stringent quality control measures that encompass the entire tissue preparation protocol. In contrast to most inanimate medical products, which are sterilized to eliminate bacterial, viral, and fungal contaminants, it is not possible to terminally sterilize products that contain living cells. It is necessary, therefore, to ensure the safety of these products by stringent control of the living component source.

In engineered products, just as with allogeneic tissues and organs, procedures for the screening of donors and handling of materials must be strictly performed. These procedures are presently in the process of being defined and may vary depending upon the type of cell source employed. There is no need for modification from existing clinical practice in the autologous situation, in which cells or tissues are removed from a patient and transplanted back into the same patient in a single surgical procedure. If the autologous cells or tissues are banked, transported, or processed with other donor cells or tissues, however, there then exists opportunities for product adulteration and the introduction of transmissible disease. When this is the case, good manufacturing practices (GMPs) and good tissue practices (GTPs) should be implemented and it becomes necessary to screen for infectious agents (US FDA, 61 CFR 26523, 1996). For example, in the case of the Carticel™ process, in which biopsies of healthy cartilage are used as a source of chondrocytes, the biopsies are minced, washed, and cultured with cell culture medium containing antibiotics. However, years ago Brittberg et al.[88] found that presence of antibiotics (50 µg/ml gentamicin sulphate and 2 µg/ml amphotericin B) in the culture medium may prevent contaminant detection; therefore the culture medium should be changed to an antibiotic-free formulation prior to testing for bacterial contamination and extensive washing of the biological material may be required to remove inhibitory antibiotics to allow their proliferation and subsequent detection.

Utilization of allogeneic donors is associated with greater risk than an autologous donation because of the risk of infectious disease transmission from the donor to the recipient. Donor screening similar to that outlined in the following section on allogeneic tissue grafts should be performed, along with the implementation of product screening and/or quarantine procedures (US FDA, 21 CFR Parts 16 & 1270, 1997). The allogeneic cells may then be (1) used with no modifications after expansion *in vitro*, (2) genetically manipulated, or (3) turned into continuously proliferating cell lines. As an additional safety measure, specimens of each donor tissue should be archived for future pathogen screening.

There is a similar concern about unidentified diseases in the use of xenogeneic cell, tissue, and organ sources. The range of infectious diseases potentially transmissible by xenogeneic cells is unknown because infectious agents that produce little or no effects in animals may have severe consequences in human patients. The FDA has published draft recommendations on infectious disease issues in xenotransplantation (US FDA, 61 CFR 49920, 1996 & 62 CFR 3563, 1997). Donor screening issues again play a significant role in the prevention of infection. With xenogeneic materials, the pedigree and health status of environmentally isolated herds or colonies of animals to be used as donors become critically important.

All tissues should be delivered to patients with the highest possible assurance that they are free of pathogens. The two most effective and common methods for the prevention of infectious agent transmission are thorough donor screening and adherence to sterile techniques during harvesting, transport, and processing. The first step in confirming a potential donor in most parts of the world is to obtain permission for organ and/or tissue donation from the donor's legal next of kin. Regulations in some countries and states may differ. Once permission has been obtained, the donor must be screened to minimize the potential for transfer of infectious or neoplastic disease. In most organ donors, the donor has been declared brain dead and organ functions are supported by extracorporeal life support. This is to ensure maintenance of tissue viability while permission for donation is obtained and donor screening and infectious disease testing is performed. The AATB

standards require donor tissue be tested for blood-borne infectious disease prior to acceptance for transplantation, so tissues are placed in quarantine until the test results are complete.

The most commonly employed viable tissue allografts involving antiseptic treatments are tricuspid heart valves (aortic and pulmonary valves) and blood vessels. Other tissues, such as skin where viability is not considered a major issue and, less frequently, transplanted tissues, are subject to antiseptic treatment methods similar to those used for heart valves. Donor tissues for transplantation are obtained aseptically in an operating room or, alternatively, at autopsy in a clean fashion. The donor is usually prepared in a manner similar to preparing the incision site of a patient for surgery. For example, skin donors are usually shaved and the areas of skin to be removed are scrubbed with an iodine-based wash (for example, Betadine™), rinsed with isopropyl alcohol, and again painted with iodine.[89] Kirklin and Barratt-Boyes[90] have presented surgical techniques for the recovery of hearts for valve procurement in an autopsy setting. In order to provide a sterile allograft for transplantation, identification and elimination of any potential contaminants are required. The antiseptic treatment stage of tissue processing begins once the tissues have been prepared and dissected employing aseptic technique. AATB standards dictate that "processing shall include an antibiotic disinfection period followed by rinsing, packaging, and cryopreservation" and that "disinfection of cardiovascular tissue shall be accomplished via a time-specific antibiotic incubation."[87] Following immersion in the antibiotic solution of choice, the tissues are incubated, while immersed, at either 4°C or 37°C for up to 24 h (temperature and time being variable between tissue banks). Following incubation the tissues are packaged aseptically for tissue storage by cryopreservation.

Many different antibiotic mixtures for treatment of tissues for transplantation have been employed. Heart valve indicators of effectiveness, documented in many studies over the years, include cellular viability, host ingrowth rate, disinfection efficiency, and valve survival rates.[91–98] Various formulae using various combinations of penicillin, gentamicin, kanamycin, axlocillin, metronidazole, flucloxacillin, streptomycin, ticarcillin, methicillin, chloramphenicol, colistimethate, neomycin, erythromycin, and nystatin have been tried for heart valve treatment. Skin is usually treated with gentamicin (personal communication, American Red Cross Tissue Services, 1999) or combinations of penicillin and streptomycin.[99,100] Csonge et al. reported the best results with combinations of ceftazidime, ampicillin, and amphotericin.[101] Currently, a modified version of the antibiotic treatment regimen recommended by Strickett et al., in which cefoxitin, lincomycin, polymyxin B, and vancomycin are added to sterile-filtered RPMI 1640 tissue culture medium, is being commonly used in the USA to disinfect allograft heart valves.[102] Various nutrient media have also been used, including modified Hank's solution, TCM 199, Eagle's MEM, and RPMI 1640 in conjunction with various antibiotic "cocktails."[98,102–105] While many different antibiotics in various tissue culture media have been employed, all are employed at relative low doses with varying incubation times at either 4°C or 37°C. Care should be taken to optimize the antibiotic concentrations and conditions to minimize loss of tissue viability and function while maximizing antimicrobial effectiveness.

The antibiotic solutions developed for the antiseptic treatment of heart valves were originally formulated to ensure sterility after weeks of storage at 4ºC. However, Angell et al. showed that antibiotics are more effective at physiological temperatures (~37ºC) than at refrigerator temperatures.[106] The simple protocol of collection of heart valves within 24 h of death combined with low-dose antibiotic treatment has been reported to be sufficient to produce pathogen-free valves in >95% of cases.[107] In fact, there is little evidence that antibiotics even provide bactericidal action at 4ºC since most antibiotics function through interference with temperature-dependent processes of nucleic acid synthesis or the bacterial cell wall. It is possible that the effectiveness of some of the 4ºC antibiotic treatment protocols can be credited to antibiotic binding during low-temperature incubation, and that upon subsequent rewarming the antibiotic action is actually activated. Nevertheless, and regardless of the mechanism, cardiovascular tissue programs usually advocate the use of antibiotics, and in some cases residual antibiotics in the tissue may actually reduce the risk of subsequent graft infection. These tissue grafts are often preferred for implantation in infected patient sites.

Besides the issues of microbial effectiveness, there is also the issue of cytotoxic effects of antibiotics upon cells and tissues. Cram et al. provided evidence that reduction in antibiotic concentrations improves viability of refrigerated stored skin.[100] There have been many reports of antibiotic effects on heart valve cell viability,[106,108–111] alterations in cell morphology,[108] and inhibition of cell ingrowth.[92,112] In particular, amphotericin B may destabilize mammalian cell membranes during cryopreservation by altering the mobility of the cholesterol in the lipid phase of the plasma membrane or alterations in osmoregulation.[111] Alternatively, amphotericin B is supplied as a colloidal suspension that has been dispersed by the detergent deoxycholate. This detergent may directly alter the membrane permeability properties of mammalian cells and such changes may render the cells less resistant to the osmotic stresses of freezing and thawing. There have been few reports on alternative antifungal agents; however, Schmehl et al. assessed the water-soluble fungicide flucytosine as an alternative to amphotericin B in combination with imipenem,[113] a wide spectrum β-lactam, but this fungicide is not being used clinically for tissue processing. Elimination of amphotericin B from the antibiotic regimen used to sterilize grafts emphasizes the fact that postprocurement treatment cannot be relied upon to guarantee recipient safety. It further highlights the importance of thorough donor screening. Permission for autopsy and obtaining pertinent medical history, including detection of symptoms associated with systemic mycoses or infective endocarditis, are paramount to exclusion of fungal contaminants originating from the donor graft. Strict sterile technique during recovery, transport at 4°C, and cold, sterile processing are additional measures to prevent fungal proliferation. A sterile specimen is preferred because evidence of fungus may be masked by an overgrowth of competitive bacteria. Coprocessed specimens are usually tested before and after antibiotic treatment, just prior to packaging for cryopreservation. Antibiotics cannot be expected to unfailingly disinfect every allograft.[95,114,115] The issue of how to assure sterility of tissue allografts while maintaining cell viability and tissue functions has no effective solution in sight.

8.4 CRYOPRESERVATION

The principles that govern the cryopreservation of mammalian systems at the cellular level are covered in other chapters in this book and other recent reviews.[18,19] Our objective here is to give an overview of tissue preservation by relating these principles to the practical demands of developing techniques for the preservation of living tissues. It is important to emphasize at the outset that successful cryopreservation of tissues is not a simple matter of extrapolating the well-established principles of cell cryopreservation to more complex tissues. The reason is that tissues are much more than the aggregate sum of their component cells. They invariably comprise a variety of cell types intimately associated with basement membranes, an extracellular matrix, and often a vascular supply such that the structure of the integrated tissue demands special considerations in its response to cryopreservation conditions for its successful preservation. These differences are manifest in additional mechanisms of injury, identified some years ago,[2] that must be circumvented for successful preservation. Ultimately these differences in their response to freezing between individual cells and tissues are principally due to extracellular ice formation.

A variety of factors are known to influence cell survival during cryopreservation (Table 8.2), but the role of the vehicle solution for the CPAs is often overlooked. It is generally assumed that simple salt buffers or conventional culture media used to nurture cells at physiological temperatures will also provide a suitable medium for exposure at low temperatures. In a manner similar to our earlier discussion of optimum control of the cells' environment during hypothermic short-term storage, cryopreservation also demands consideration of the chemical composition of the buffer medium used as a vehicle for the CPAs as well as the temperature to which the cells are exposed. It has been a common practice in tissue banking to use tissue culture media as the base solution for preservation media. However, for the reasons outlined above, tissue culture media, which are designed to maintain cellular function at normal physiological temperatures, are inappropriate for

---

TABLE 8.2
Major Cryopreservation Variables

Freezing-compatible pH buffers
Vehicle solution selection (may vary with cryoprotectant selection)
Apoptosis inhibitors (may be required to get long-term post-thaw cell survival for some cells)
Cryoprotectant selection (optima may vary with vehicle solution selected)
Cooling rate
Storage temperature
Warming rate
Cryoprotectant addition/elution conditions (number of steps, temperature)

---

optimum preservation at reduced temperatures and we have long advocated the use of intracellular-type solutions as more appropriate vehicle solutions for CPAs.[77,81,116–118] Maintaining the ionic and hydraulic balance within tissues during cold exposure can be better controlled in media designed to physically restrict these temperature-induced imbalances and can be applied equally to the choice of vehicle solution for adding and removing CPAs in a cryopreservation protocol.[119] Moreover, the nature of the vehicle solution used to expose cells and tissues to cryoprotectants at low temperatures has been shown to impact the outcome of cryopreservation,[77,117,120,121] and has recently become the focus of additional research aimed at optimization and attenuation of the so-called cryopreservation cap.[80,119,122–124]

Figure 8.2 illustrates the marked effect that an intracellular-type vehicle solution can have on the outcome of cryopreservation. In a study of factors that influence the survival of vascular smooth muscle and endothelial cells it was discovered that the choice of carrier solution significantly impacted the optimum survival of the cells. Moreover, the survival varied with the nature of the CPA and the cell type suggesting that nature of the vehicle solution should be included as one of the variables that must be optimized for a given system. Our aim is to use the approach of a hybrid universal formulation in an attempt to nullify the wide differences in available solution choices. Baust et al. have corroborated this approach and shown that an intracellular-type solution, *Hypothermosol,* provides a significantly better vehicle solution for CPAs than a range of extracellular-type media in other cell systems.[123–125]

Another common practice in tissue banking is to employ serum of animal origin in the cryopreservation formulation. Serum-free procedures have been reported for a variety of tissues[126] and mammalian sources of serum can be removed providing that cryopreservation conditions are subsequently reoptimized.[127]

8.4.1 SYNTHETIC CRYOPROTECTANTS

Historically, serendipity has been largely responsible for most discoveries of cryoprotectants. Cryoprotectant selection for cryopreservation in general is usually restricted to those that have conferred cryoprotection in a variety of biological systems (dextrans, DMSO, ethylene glycol, glycerol, hydroxyethyl starch, polyvinylpyrrolidone, sucrose, and trehalose).[10] Combinations of two cryoprotectants may result in additive or synergistic enhancement of cell survival.[128,129] Comparison of chemicals with cryoprotectant properties has revealed no common structural features. These chemicals are usually divided into two classes: (1) intracellular cryoprotectants with low molecular weights that penetrate and permeate cells and (2) extracellular cryoprotectants with relatively high molecular weights (greater than or equal to sucrose [342 daltons]) that neither penetrate nor permeate cells. A variety of biologic chemicals with cryoprotective activity for one or more biological systems have been reported (Table 8.3).

Intracellular cryoprotectants, such as glycerol and DMSO at concentrations from 0.5 to 3.0 molar, are effective in minimizing cell damage in slowly frozen biological systems. Extracellular
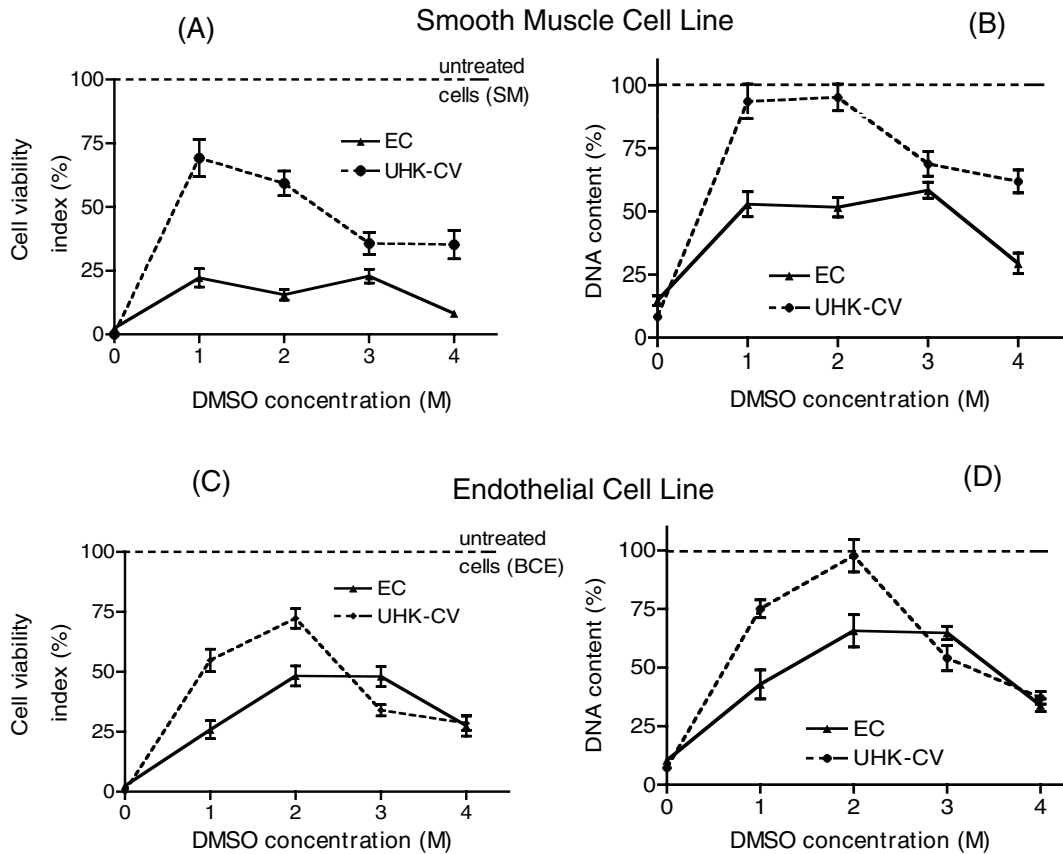
FIGURE 8.2 Cell survival (viability: A and C and DNA content; B and D) after freezing and thawing with varying concentrations of DMSO in either Unisol-CV (UHK-CV) or EuroCollins. Cells were frozen and thawed as adherent populations in microtiter plates. Data was normalized to untreated cells and is the mean (±SEM) of 12 replicates. (From Taylor, M.J., Campbell, L.H., Rutledge, R.N., and Brockbank, K.G.M. (2001): Comparison of Unisol with EuroCollins solution as a vehicle solution for cryoprotectants. Transpl. Proc., 33: 677–679. With permission.)

cryoprotective agents such as polyvinylpyrrolidone or hydroxyethyl starch are often more effective at protecting biological systems cooled at higher rates. Such agents are often large macromolecules that affect the properties of the solution to a greater extent than would be expected from their osmotic pressure. These nonpermeating cryoprotective agents are thought to have direct protective effects on the cell membrane. This protection may be due to the oncotic forces (colloidal osmotic pressure) exerted by large molecules and alterations in the activity of the unfrozen water caused by hydrogen bonding to water molecules. Although cryoprotective agents also reduce the amount of extracellular ice at each subzero temperature with a resultant increase in the volume of the unfrozen fraction, it is not known if fewer ice crystals are responsible for any of the reduction in cell damage.[130] The latter function of cryoprotective agents may also relate to their role in reducing membrane fusion during cryopreservation.[131] The pharmacologic effects of cryoprotective agents such as DMSO and glycerol were reviewed by Shlafer.[132] According to Mazur, cryoprotectants protect slowly frozen cells by one or more of the following mechanisms: suppression of salt concentrations, reduction of cell shrinkage at a given temperature, and reduction in the fraction of the solution frozen at a given temperature.[10] Cryoprotectants and their mechanisms of action have been the subject of a number of useful reviews.[14,17,20,133]

TABLE 8.3
Chemicals with Demonstrated Cryoprotective Activity

Acetamide	Ethylene glycol*	Mannitol	Pyridine N-oxide
Agarose	Ethylene glycol	Mannose	Ribose
Alginate	Monomethyl ether	Methanol	Serine
Alanine	Formamide	Methoxy propanediol	Sodium bromide
Albumin	Glucose	Methyl acetamide	Sodium chloride
Ammonium acetate	Glycerol*	Methyl formamide	Sodium iodide
Butanediol	Glycerophosphate	Methyl ureas	Sodium nitrate
Chondroitin sulfate	Glyceryl monoacetate	Methyl glucose	Sodium nitrite
Chloroform	Glycine	Methyl glycerol	Sodium sulfate
Choline	Hydroxyethyl starch*	Phenol	Sorbitol
Cyclohexanediols**	Inositol	Pluronic polyols	Sucrose*
Dextrans*	Lactose	Polyethylene glycol	Trehalose
Diethylene glycol	Magnesium chloride	Polyvinylpyrrolidone*	Triethylene glycol
Dimethyl acetamide	Magnesium sulfate	Proline	Trimethylamine acetate
Dimethyl formamide	Maltose	Propylene glycol*	Urea
Dimethyl sulfoxide*			Valine
Erythritol			Xylose
Ethanol			

* Chemicals that have conferred substantial cryoprotection in a wide variety of biological systems, modified from Shlafer.[132]

** Synthetic ice blockers.[6,225]

8.4.2 NATURAL CRYOPROTECTANTS

Through millions of years of evolution, nature has produced several families of proteins that may have benefits during cryopreservation, which help animals and plants survive in cold climates. These proteins are known collectively as antifreeze proteins (AFPs). AFPs have the ability to modify ice structure, the fluid properties of solutions, and the response of organisms to harsh environments. The antifreeze molecules are diverse in structure and, to date, four main types have been characterized. The first to be discovered and best characterized are the antifreeze peptides and glycoproteins (AFPs) found in Antarctic fish and northern cod species. The natural AFPs found in polar fish and certain terrestrial insects are believed to adsorb to ice by lattice-matching[134] or by dipolar interactions along certain axes[135] of forming ice nuclei. By default, when temperature is lowered sufficiently, growth occurs preferentially in the *c*-axis direction (perpendicular to the basal plane) in a series of steps. This abnormal growth mode produces long ice needles, or spicules, that are much more destructive to cells and tissues than normal ice.[136] Regardless, these molecules confer a survival advantage upon certain animals. These observations led to the hypothesis that naturally occurring antifreeze molecules might be improved upon by synthesis of molecules that will either bind to other ice nuclei domains or upon stable ice crystals.

Conflicting results have been obtained by scientists following up on the proposal of Knight and Duman that many of the problems associated with ice formation during cryopreservation might be limited by the addition of naturally occurring AFP.[135] However, the studies of Hansen et al. demonstrated that AFP Type I inhibited ice recrystallization in the extracellular milieu of cells, but increased ice crystal growth associated with the cells, and resulted in AFP concentration-dependent cell losses compared to untreated control cultures.[137] A major focus of our research for the past six years has involved the identification of synthetic ice blockers (SIBs) that may combine with certain naturally occurring antifreeze compounds and cryoprotectants to minimize ice damage during

freezing or risk of ice formation during vitrification. The best SIBs we have identified to date are 1,3-cyclohexanediol and 1,4-cyclohexanediol (patent pending).[6]

In recent years, some of the challenges for cryopreservation of living tissues have been more fully characterized and new approaches are under development for circumventing the problems that have thus far limited the extrapolation of established principles and techniques for cells to more complex tissues and organs. A synopsis of the state of the art of biopreservation of living tissues utilizing cryopreservation methods follows.

8.4.3 CRYOPRESERVATION BY CONTROLLED FREEZING

Successful biopreservation by freezing is dependent on the optimization of several major factors. Advances in the field of cryopreservation had been modest until Polge et al. discovered the cryoprotective properties of glycerol.[22] Subsequent research by Lovelock and Bishop showed that dimethyl sulfoxide was also a cryoprotectant (CPA).[138] The use of cryoprotectants during freezing and thawing of biological materials has become established and many other cryoprotectants have been identified. When cryoprotectants are used in extremely high concentrations, ice formation can be eliminated during cooling to and warming from cryogenic temperatures. Under these conditions the solution and tissue become vitrified; this is discussed further in a later section. In addition to cryoprotectant selection several major variables must be considered in development of cryopreservation methods (both freezing and vitrification approaches; Table 8.2).

A wide variety of isolated cells in suspension can be preserved using conventional cryopreservation methods involving freezing. In such methods the cells are concentrated and vitrify in ice-free channels between regions of extracellular ice. In general terms, each cell type has a freezing "window" in which the change in temperature with time provides for optimal cell survival. This proposed "window" is narrow at high temperatures and becomes increasingly wider as the temperature decreases, suggesting that deviation from a given cooling rate at high temperatures may be more critical to cell survival than deviations at low temperatures. Studies on the survival of various mammalian cell types, frozen in glycerol or DMSO, both as single cell suspensions and in tissues, frozen at a variety of rates suggest that optimal survival occurs at a cooling rate somewhere between 0.3°C and 10°C per minute.

The cell viability of cardiovascular tissues including veins, arteries, and heart valves can be preserved by a number of cryopreservation freezing techniques. However, smooth muscle and endothelial functions are usually impaired to varying degrees depending upon species, tissue type, and preservation methods employed.[1,141] Clinically the fundamental issue with cryopreserved cardiovascular tissues, regardless of whether they are cryopreserved by freezing or vitrification, is that they are allogeneic and there is an inevitable immune response unless immunosuppressive therapy is employed. We have compared cryopreservation techniques in syngeneic and allogeneic rat models and concluded that the changes observed in allogeneic heart valves are primarily due to immunological incompatibility of the graft and recipient, as previously suggested in rats[142] and human infants,[143,144] not cryopreservation method.[145] The immune response is not clinically significant for the majority of cryopreserved allogeneic heart valves; however, cryopreserved small-diameter vascular allografts typically have only short-term patency and this is probably a consequence of immunogenicity. There has been considerable discussion of whether or not cell viability is needed for allograft heart valves. The conclusion appears to be that viability correlates with "minimally traumatized" tissue with the result that most allograft heart valves employed today retain viable cells at the moment of implantation.

In marked contrast to cardiovascular tissue, studies using a variety of animal articular cartilage models[146–149] and human cartilage biopsies[150] have revealed no more than 20% chondrocyte viability following conventional cryopreservation procedures employing either DMSO or glycerol as cryoprotectants. Ohlendorf et al. used a bovine articular cartilage, osteochondral plug model to develop a clinical cryopreservation protocol.[147] This protocol employed slow-rate cooling and 8% DMSO

as the cryoprotectant. They observed loss of viability in all chondrocytes except those in the most superficial layer at the articular surface. Muldrew et al. previously investigated chondrocyte survival in a similar sheep model.[148] These researchers observed cells surviving post-cryopreservation close to the articular surface and deep at the bone/cartilage interface. The middle layer was devoid of viable cells. More recently, Muldrew et al. demonstrated improved results using a step-cooling cryopreservation protocol, but cell survival posttransplantation was poor and again there was significant loss of cells in the mid-portion of the graft.[151] The reason for lack of cell survival deeper than the superficial layers of articular cartilage is most likely multifactorial and related principally to heat and mass transfer considerations.[9] Surface cells freeze and thaw more rapidly than cells located deep within the matrix. This phenomenon could result in a greater opportunity for ice to form, both within cells and in the extracellular matrix, deeper within the articular cartilage. Furthermore, typically employed concentrations of DMSO (8–20%) may not penetrate adequately to limit intracellular ice formation. Recent data from Jomha et al. demonstrated that increasing DMSO concentrations to 6 M can result in higher overall cell survival (40%) after cryopreservation.[152] These observations suggest that use of higher DMSO concentrations results in better penetration of the DMSO into the cartilage.

We are aware that other factors, in addition to ice formation, may have biological consequences during freezing procedures. Two of these factors are the inhibitory effects of low temperatures on chemical and physical processes, and, perhaps more importantly, the physiochemical effects of rising solute concentrations as the volume of liquid water decreases during crystallization. This latter process results in a decrease in cell volume and the risk of solute precipitation. Several hypotheses have been published on mechanisms of freezing-induced injury based upon such factors,[9,17] but our own experiences with mammalian tissues concur with others that the principal disadvantage of conventional cryopreservation revolve primarily around ice formation.[3,15,16,153–156]

8.4.4 Cryopreservation by Avoidance of Ice Formation — Vitrification

It is now generally accepted that extracellular ice formation presents a major hazard for biopreservation by freezing of multicellular tissues. This has led to a major focus during the last decade on the development of low-temperature preservation techniques that avoid ice crystallization and *ipso facto* circumvent the associated problems. The evidence for the damaging role of ice in tissue cryopreservation has been previously reported.[2,3,6,15,155,157,158]

Prevention of freezing by vitrification means that the water in a tissue remains unfrozen in a noncrystalline state during cooling. Vitrification is the solidification of a liquid without crystallization. As cooling proceeds, however, the molecular motions in the liquid permeating the tissue decrease. Eventually, an "arrested liquid" state known as a *glass* is achieved. It is this conversion of a liquid into a glass that is called vitrification (derived from *vitri*, the Greek word for glass). A glass is a liquid that is too cold or viscous to flow. A vitrified liquid is essentially a liquid in molecular stasis. Vitrification does not have any of the biologically damaging effects associated with freezing because no appreciable degradation occurs over time in living matter trapped within a vitreous matrix. Vitrification has been shown to provide effective preservation for a number of cells, including monocytes, ova, and early embryos and pancreatic islets.[159–162] Vitrification is potentially applicable to all biological systems.

Vitrification preservation procedures are very similar to those employed for freezing tissues. Generally speaking, the cryoprotectants are added in stepwise or gradient manner on ice. In some cases, due to risks of toxicity, lower temperatures may be employed for the final higher CPA concentrations. The cooling rates employed are typically as fast as can be achieved for the tissue in question to temperatures around –100°C and then more slowly to the final vapor phase nitrogen storage temperature between –135°C and –160°C. Warming is performed in a similar manner, slowly to –100°C and then rapidly to 0°C. Rapid cooling and warming in our laboratory is usually performed by immersion in either chilled alcohol (–100°C) or warm water baths (4°C or 37°C).

Microwave warming has been attempted but has never been successful using conventional devices due to the uneven warming of specimens and problems with thermal runaway, which results in heat-denatured tissues. In 1990, Ruggera and Fahy reported success in warming test solutions at rates of up to about 200°C/min using a novel technology based on electromagnetic techniques (essentially microwave heating).[163] Unfortunately, unpublished results indicate that this method is also problematic due to the uneven warming of specimens and problems associated with thermal runaway. Others have taken a systematic approach to develop a dielectric heating device to achieve uniform and high rates of temperature change.[164,165] This has been achieved in some preliminary model systems but application of this warming technology with survival of cells has yet to be reported.

Vitrification and freezing (water crystallization) are not mutually exclusive processes; the crystalline phase and vitreous phase often coexist within a system. In fact part of the system vitrifies during conventional cryopreservation involving controlled freezing of cells. This occurs because during freezing the concentration of solutes in the unfrozen phase increases progressively until the point is reached when the residual solution is sufficiently concentrated to vitrify in the presence of ice. Conventional cryopreservation techniques by freezing are optimized by designing protocols that avoid intracellular freezing. Under these cooling conditions the cell contents actually vitrify due to the combined processes of dehydration, cooling, and the promotion of vitrification by intracellular macromolecules. Phase diagrams have proved to be a useful tool in understanding the physicochemical relationship between temperature, concentration, and change of phase. For detailed discussion of the role and interpretation of solid-liquid state diagrams in relation to low-temperature biology, please refer to a previous review.[21] In particular, *supplemented* phase diagrams that combine nonequilibrium data on conventional equilibrium phase diagrams serve to depict the important transitions inherent in cooling and warming aqueous solutions of cryoprotective solutes. [6,21]

The term vitrification is generally used to refer to a process in which the objective is to vitrify the whole system from the outset such that any ice formation (intracellular and extracellular) is avoided.[166–171] In cryopreservation by vitrification dehydration occurs by chemical substitution alone, while in cryopreservation by freezing dehydration occurs by both osmotic dehydration and chemical substitution. In the former case the cells appear normal, while in the latter case the cells appear shrunken (Figure 8.3).

Stability of the vitreous state is critical for the retention of vitrified tissue integrity and viability. Comprehensive studies of vitreous stability for a variety of potentially important cryoprotective mixtures have been made.[172] Glass stability of vitrified blood vessel samples stored in vapor phase liquid nitrogen storage with retention of smooth muscle function has been demonstrated up to 4 months of storage.[173] The stability of glasses formed from aqueous solutions of 1,2-propanediol are much greater, for the same water contents, than for all other solutions of commonly used cryoprotectants including glycerol, dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), and ethylene glycol. Unfortunately, solutions of polyalcoholic cryoprotectants (CPAs) such as propanediol and butanediol that show the most promise in terms of cooling rates and concentrations necessary for vitrification, also required unrealistically high heating rates to avoid devitrification during rewarming. Moreover, due principally to isomeric impurities that form a hydrate at reduced temperatures, 2,3-butanediol has proved to have an unanticipated biological toxicity at concentrations below that necessary for vitrification.[174–177]

Advances in biostabilization require process development for optimization of chemical and thermal treatments to achieve maximal survival and stability. At this time the consensus opinion is that viable tissues such as blood vessels, corneas, and cartilage that have proven refractory to cryopreservation by conventional freezing methods, despite decades of intense research by many investigators, can only be successfully preserved if steps are taken to prevent or control the ice that forms during cooling and warming. In contrast, other tissues in which the cells do not function in an organized manner or in which the extracellular matrix water is not highly organized are well preserved by traditional cryopreservation by freezing methods (i.e., heart valves and skin). Our

laboratory has developed a cryopreservation approach using vitrification, which thus far has demonstrated >80% preservation of smooth muscle cell viability and function in cardiovascular grafts[16,153] and similar levels of chondrocyte survival in articular cartilage.[6,178–181] In addition to *in vitro* studies of cardiovascular tissues, transplant studies have been performed that demonstrate normal *in vivo* behavior of vitrified cardiovascular and cartilaginous tissues. Most recently, this technology has been successfully applied to tissue-engineered blood vessels[182] and encapsulated cells described below.[183,184]

Avoidance of ice by vitrification has been achieved by cooling highly concentrated solutions (typically >50% w/w) that become sufficiently viscous at low temperatures to suppress crystallization rates. The original formulation and method was licensed from the American Red Cross, where it was developed for organ preservation.[154,167] However, even though rabbit kidneys were successfully vitrified, they could not be rewarmed with significant retention of function. Viability was lost due to ice formation during the rewarming process. The rewarming of vitrified materials requires careful selection of heating rates sufficient to prevent significant thermal cracking, devitrification, and recrystallization during heating. The use of carefully designed warming protocols is necessary to maximize product viability and structural integrity. Vitrified materials, which may contain appreciable thermal stresses developed during cooling, may require an initial slow warming step to relieve residual thermal stresses (see Chapter 13). Dwell times in heating profiles above the glass transition should be brief to minimize the potential for devitrification and recrystallization phenomena. Rapid warming through these temperature regimes generally minimizes prominent effects of any ice crystal damage. It is presently not possible to rewarm organs rapidly enough due to their high volume relative to the volume of tissues. Development of optimum vitrification solutions requires selection of compounds with glass-forming tendencies and tolerable levels of cytotoxicity at the concentrations required to achieve vitrification. Due to the high total solute concentration within the solution, stepwise protocols are commonly employed at low temperatures for both the addition and removal of cryoprotectants to limit excessive cell volume excursions and lower the risk of cytotoxicity. For a current comprehensive review of vitrification see Taylor et al.[6]

Despite developments to devise solutions that would vitrify at practically attainable cooling rates for sizeable biological tissues, the corresponding critical warming rate necessary to avoid devitrification remains a critical challenge. Conceptually, elevated pressures,[185] electromagnetic heating,[163–165] the use of naturally occurring antifreeze molecules,[186] and synthetic ice blockers[6] have been proposed as means to tackle the problem.

8.4.5 VITRIFICATION VERSUS FREEZING

We are often asked how we make the decision to use a vitrification approach rather than a freezing method for a particular tissue. The answer is usually a combination of method efficacy, based upon our experience and the literature with respect to the specific tissue, and ease of use or cost.

An excellent example of efficacy is conventional cryopreservation of articular cartilage by means of freezing, which typically results in death of 80–100% of the chondrocytes plus extracellular matrix damage due to ice formation. These detrimental effects are major obstacles preventing successful clinical use of osteochondral allografts[147,150,187] and commercial success of tissue-engineered cartilage constructs. Cryosubstitution studies of frozen and vitrified articular cartilage plugs revealed negligible ice in vitrified specimens and extensive ice formation throughout frozen specimens.[180] Transplantation studies in rabbits demonstrated that vitrified cartilage performance was not significantly different to fresh untreated cartilage. In contrast, frozen cartilage performance was significantly different when compared to either fresh or vitrified cartilage.[179] These studies combine to demonstrate that the vitrification process results in ice-free preservation of rabbit articular cartilage plugs and that about 85% of cellular metabolic activity is retained following rewarming. In contrast, frozen tissues contained ice within the cells and the matrix, with the exception of the articular surface, where some viable cells were observed. In our experience
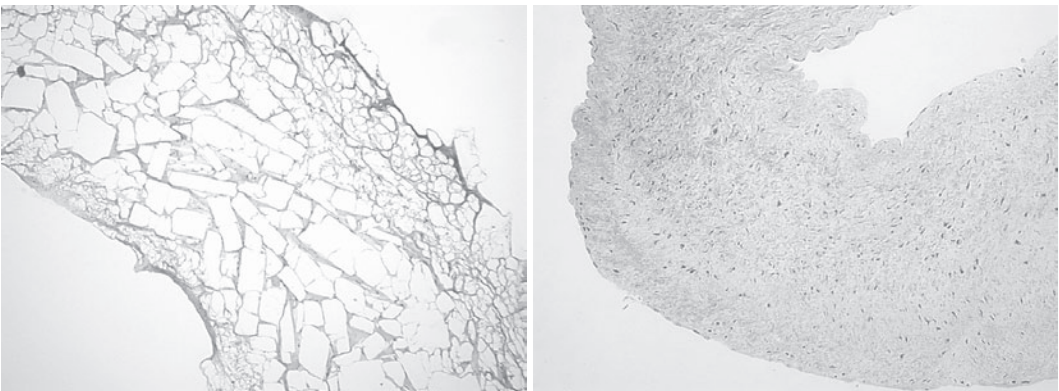
Jugular Vein (40x)
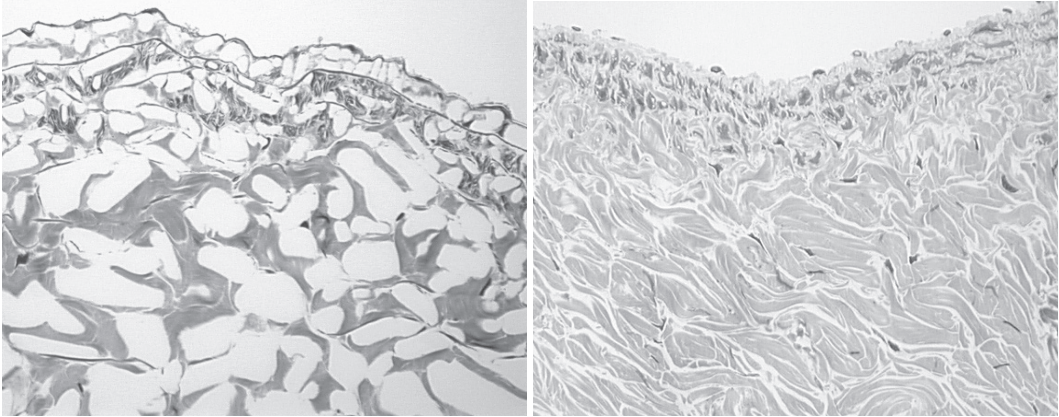

Cartilage (100x)
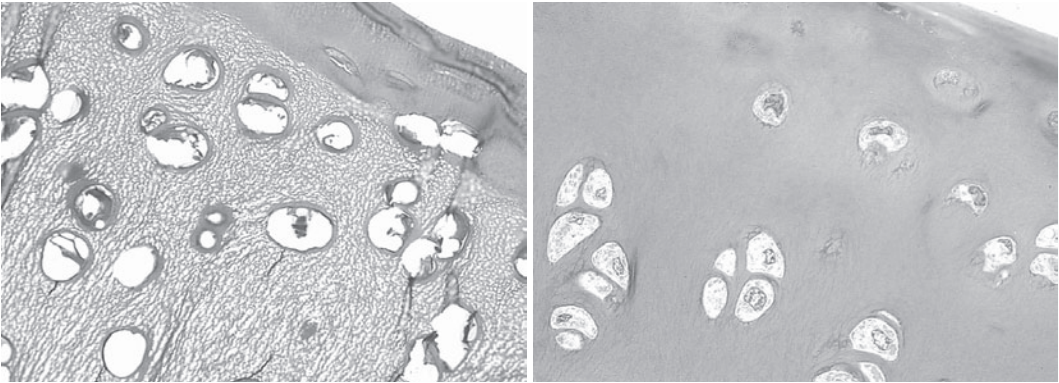
Heart Valve Leaflet (20x)

FIGURE 8.3 Light microscopy of cryosubstituted frozen (A, C, E) or vitrified (B, D, F) specimens from a variety of natural tissues: Jugular vein (A, B); articular cartilage (C, D) and heart valve leaflet (E, F). Cryosubstitution is a process whereby the location and size of the domains occupied by ice in the cryopreserved tissue are revealed and appear as white spaces in the tissue section (see Brockbank, K.G.M., Lightfoot, F.G., Song, Y C., and Taylor, M.J. (2000): Interstitial ice formation in cryopreserved homografts: A possible cause of tissue deterioration and calcification in vivo. J. Heart Valve Dis., 9:(2) 200–206). Extensive ice formation is present in the frozen veins (A), cartilage (C) and heart valve leaflet (E). In contrast, the respective vitrified specimens (B, D and F) appear to be free of ice and retain a more normal, undistorted morphology.

vitrification has been superior to freezing for rabbit cartilage plugs, porcine cartilage plugs, and human biopsy specimens (unpublished data). That does not mean that effective freezing methods can't be developed, just that no one has come close to date.

In cardiovascular tissues the decision to use a vitrification method over freezing is not as clear cut. Both approaches to cryopreservation result in high cell viability, but in our experience smooth muscle and endothelial functions are better preserved by vitrification than freezing. At this time we hypothesize that this is due to prevention of extracellular ice damage to tissue matrix. We fully agree with criticism that we have compared vitrification with freezing methods that may be improved upon; however, we would also point out that both the vitrification and the freezing methods that we have employed may be improved by further research. We have primarily employed freezing protocols derived by extensive research and in clinical practice for allografts in the United States. In the case of cardiovascular allografts the use of vitrification techniques may have cost benefits because there is no need for control-rate freezers. However, regardless of whether vitrification or freezing is employed, the tissue is still allogeneic with respect to the potential recipient and there is no reason to anticipate that vitrification will reduce immunogenicity. The research that we have performed on vitrification of cardiovascular tissues was intended for tissue-engineered cellular constructs; however, when the work was initiated there were no constructs available so we employed autologous and allogeneic tissue models. There are still no tissue-engineered cellular constructs approved for human use, but there are several well-established experimental models. We have compared the published vitrification and freezing procedures for two experimental vascular graft models based upon collagen or polyglycolic acid matrixes combined with smooth muscle cells. The results reflect our earlier results with rabbit jugular vein segments: cell viability was well preserved by both freezing and vitrification methods. However, in the graft model capable of developing detectable contractile forces in response to various drugs, the polyglycolic acid construct, smooth muscle function was significantly better preserved by vitrification than freezing (see Figure 8.4).[182]

In many small tissue structures (such as tissue organoids, cell aggregates, or encapsulated cells) it is anticipated that optimized freezing and vitrification procedures will provide similar levels of cell viability and tissue functions. We are finding that cryopreservation by freezing and vitrification methods may be equally effective in preservation of small pieces of tissue. The question is often which method is easiest and most consistent. We recently performed cryopreservation studies on rat embryo metanephroi (embryonic kidneys).[188] One potential solution to xenotransplantation immunological complications is the transplantation of embryonic kidneys whose blood supply is not yet fully developed. The metanephroi (MN) may be less immunogenic in comparison to their adult counterparts, at least in part due to the fact that post transplantation their vascular supply is derived from the host.[189] It has been shown that MN from E15 Lewis rat embryos that are transplanted into the omentum of adult C57BI/6J mice receiving costimulatory blockade undergo growth and differentiation.[189] Also, the E28 pig MN growth and development occurs post-transplantation across an allogeneic or highly disparate xenogeneic barrier with costimulatory blockage.[190] For such a therapy to be commercially viable, long-term storage of embryonic kidneys is crucial. In these studies the effects of controlled-rate freezing and ice-free vitrification on MN viability were investigated. Metanephroi were isolated from 15-day (E15) timed pregnant Lewis rats and either (1) control-rate frozen at $-0.3°C/min$ in a DMSO formulation or (2) vitrified in VS55. The MN were then stored at $-135°C$ for 48 h. After storage the MN were rewarmed, placed in culture media, and their viability was assessed using the alamar Blue assay and histology (light microscopy, TEM, and cryosubstitution). There were no statistical differences in embryonic kidney metabolic activity of either of the cryopreserved MN groups relative to the untreated control group. Cryosubstitution demonstrated the presence of significant ice formation during controlled-rate freezing (see Figure 8.5). This was confirmed by TEM, where vacuolation of the cytoplasm of control-rate frozen MN was observed. In contrast, no ice was observed in vitrified MN and there was very little cytoplasmic disruption. However, vitrified MN showed mitochondrial and nuclear injury suggestive of CPA cytotoxicity. This injury was not observed in frozen MN, nor
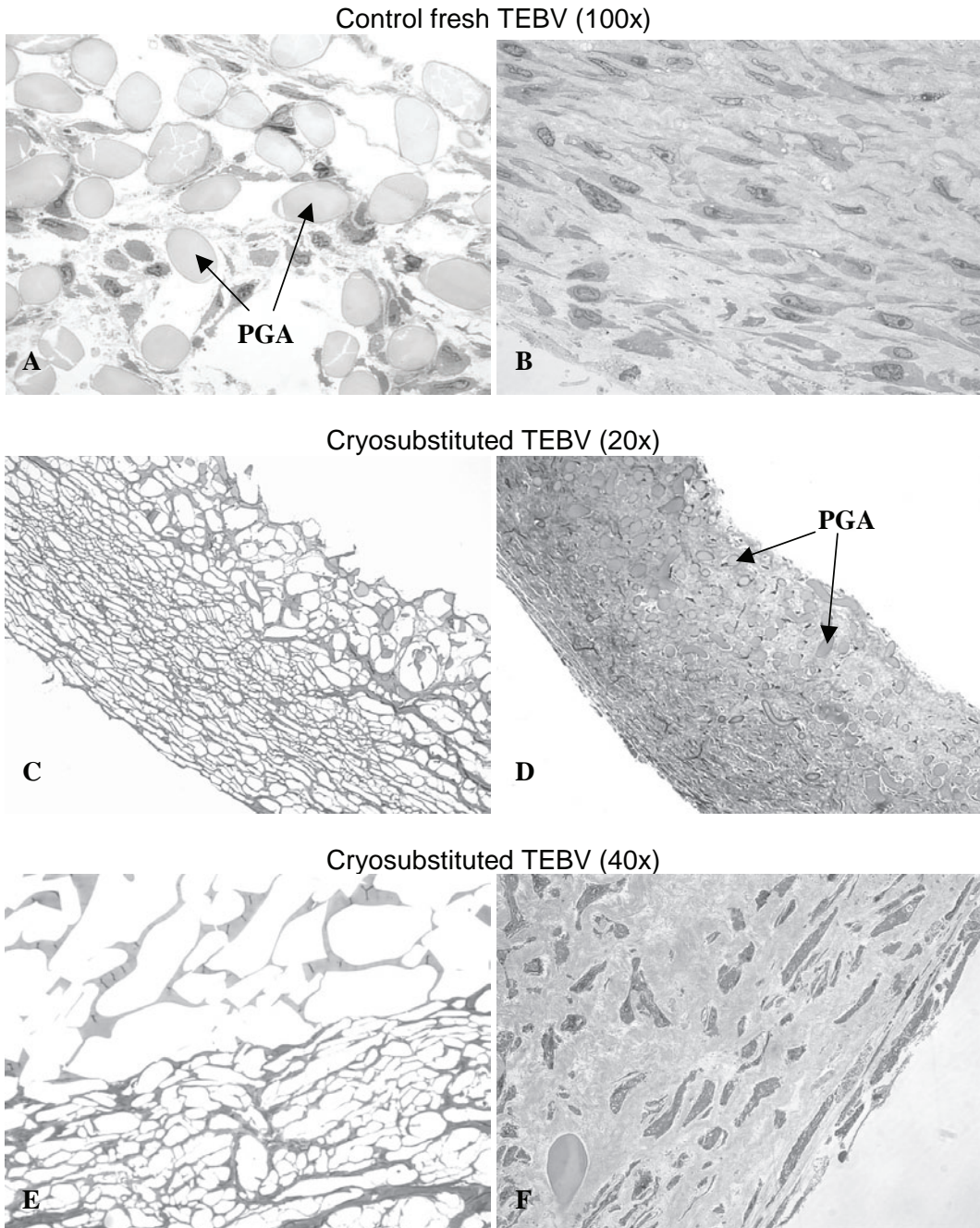
FIGURE 8.4 Cryosubstitution of tissue-engineered blood vessels (TEBV) at –90°C. Low-power micrographs of frozen TEBV (left panels C, E) reveal the noticeable distortion of the tissue structure by the prevalent ice domains (white spaces) of variable size scattered throughout the extracellular matrix of the vessel wall. The tissue matrix appears shrunken and sandwiched between the ice crystals. In contrast, the vitrified specimens (D,F) appear to be ice-free with a morphology that resembles the normal structure of these engineered constructs (A, B are control non-cryopreserved specimens). These constructs comprise vascular smooth muscle and endothelial cells on highly porous, degradable polyglycolic acid (PGA; arrows) scaffolds.

Metanephroi (40x)
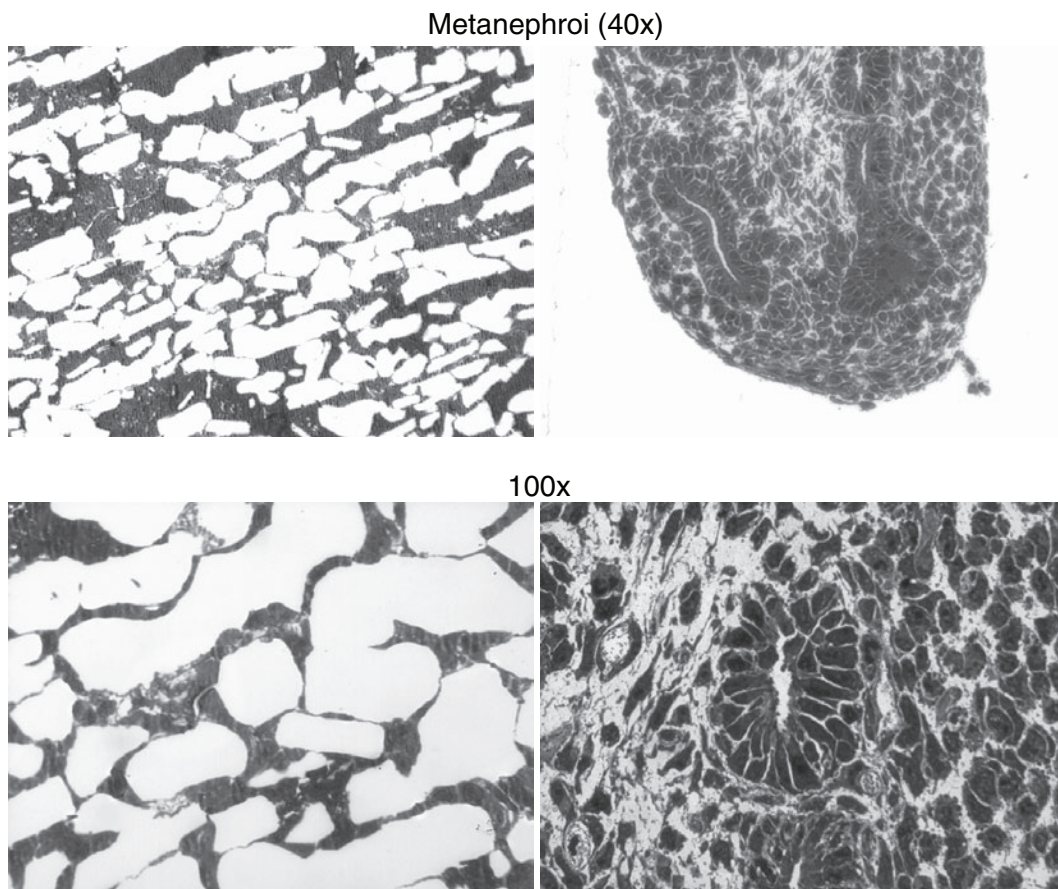
100x

FIGURE 8.5 Light microscopy images of cryosubstituted frozen and vitrified 15-day rat metanephroi (magnification 40X and 100X). The controlled-rate frozen metanephroi show the presence of ice crystals (white spaces) in the extracellular matrix as a result of the cryopreservation method. By contrast, the cryosubstituted vitrified specimen is devoid of large ice domains and illustrate normal tissue morphology. Toluidine Blue was used for resin-embedded tissue section staining.

have we observed similar changes in other vitrified tissues. The effects of vitrification solution formulation, concentration, exposure time, and loading steps on embryonic kidney viability need to be evaluated in future studies.

8.4.6 MICROENCAPSULATED CELLS AS PSEUDO-TISSUES

Another example is in the development of cryopreservation protocols for microencapsulated cells. Microcapsules are particularly prone to cryodamage using freezing by cryopreservation methods. Since 1991 studies of microcapsule cryopreservation by freezing employing a variety of cell types have accumulated.[184,191–201] Excellent cell viability was obtained in many cases, but capsule integrity is another issue (Table 8.4).

Viability is excellent following preservation in alginate microcapsules. Algae-derived polysaccharides, such as agarose and alginate, are a novel class of nonpermeating (with respect to the cell) cryoprotectants.[191] These polysaccharides had no cryoprotective abilities when used alone, but resulted in enhanced viability when mixed with known penetrating cryoprotectants (such as DMSO). Ice formation in slow-rate, DMSO-protected frozen microcapsules containing insulin-secreting βTC3 cells was demonstrated using cryosubstitution at –90°C and fixation, a method that

TABLE 8.4
Capsule or Cell Cryodamage Induced with Cryopreservation by Freezing

Cell Type	Capsule Composition	Outcome	Reference
Hepatocytes	Collagen matrix enveloped by sodium alginate-poly L-lysine-sodium alginate membrane	Some cryo-samples broke down *in vivo* resulting in inflammatory reaction, poor long-term storage stability.	198
Hepatocytes	Sodium alginate	Fraction (>10%) of capsules broken.	197
Pancreatic islets	Sodium alginate with a poly L-lysine membrane and a further treatment with sodium alginate	No mention of capsule damage; however, the cell viability was low and the authors concluded that further cryopreservation method development was needed.	192
Hepatocytes	Sodium alginate, cellulose sulphate, and poly (methylene-co-guanidine) hydrochloride	A small percentage of capsules (number not given) were broken, good long-term storage stability.	195
Hepatocytes	Sodium alginate, cellulose sulphate, and poly (methylene-co-guanidine) hydrochloride	A small percentage of capsules (number not given) were broken.	196
Adipocytes	Sodium alginate	Capsules were deformed.	196
Kidney cells	Anionic Ter-polymer (composed of methylacrylic acid, 2-hydroxyethyl methylmethacrylate, and methyl methacrylate) with cationic collagen	~40% loss of capsule integrity with best viability retention.	194

permits visualization of ice.[184] In this same study vitrification resulted in freedom from ice (see Figure 8.6).[184] Vitrified insulin-secreting βTC3 cells had significantly better viability (metabolic activity) and function (insulin release) than frozen insulin-secreting βTC3 cells.[184]

Very little investigation of cryopreservation variables has been performed for microencapsulated cells. Most studies have used low-rate cooling with 5–20% DMSO and storage in liquid nitrogen. Single studies have compared cryopreservation with and without nucleation control,[192] duration of DMSO incubation prior to cryopreservation,[193] and cooling rates with several cryoprotectant formulations.[194] The outcome of the DMSO incubation study indicated that a 5-h incubation was required for optimum cell survival. This was curious since we have found that DMSO equilibrates in alginate capsules in 2–3 min (unpublished data). Nucleation was required for optimum cell survival as we would anticipate for an effective freezing cryopreservation method for either isolated cells or tissues. The most in-depth study was performed by Heng et al.[194] In this study rapid cooling cryopreservation protocols with high DMSO concentrations (3.5 M, 25% v/v) resulted in low post-thaw cell viability (<10%), which did not improve with higher concentrations (4.5 M, 32% v/v) and longer exposure to DMSO, even though the majority of microcapsules (60–80%) remained intact. Subsequent investigations of slow cooling with a range of DMSO and EG concentrations resulted in a much higher post-thaw cell viability (80–85%), with ~60% of the microcapsules remaining intact when DMSO was used at a concentration of 2.8 M (20% v/v) and EG at a concentration of 2.7 M (15% v/v). The presence of 0.25 M sucrose significantly improved post-thaw cell viability upon slow cooling with 2.8 M (20% v/v) DMSO, although it had no effect on microcapsule integrity. Multistep exposure and removal of sucrose did not significantly improve either post-thaw cell viability or microcapsule integrity, compared to a single-step protocol. Ficoll 20% (w/v) also did not significantly improve post-thaw cell viability and microcapsule integrity.[194] There have been two reports on vitrification of microencapsulated cells, including our paper on microencapsulated insulin producing TC3 cells.[184] Vitrified encapsulated cells demonstrated no

Tissue Engineered Pancreas Beads
20x

100x
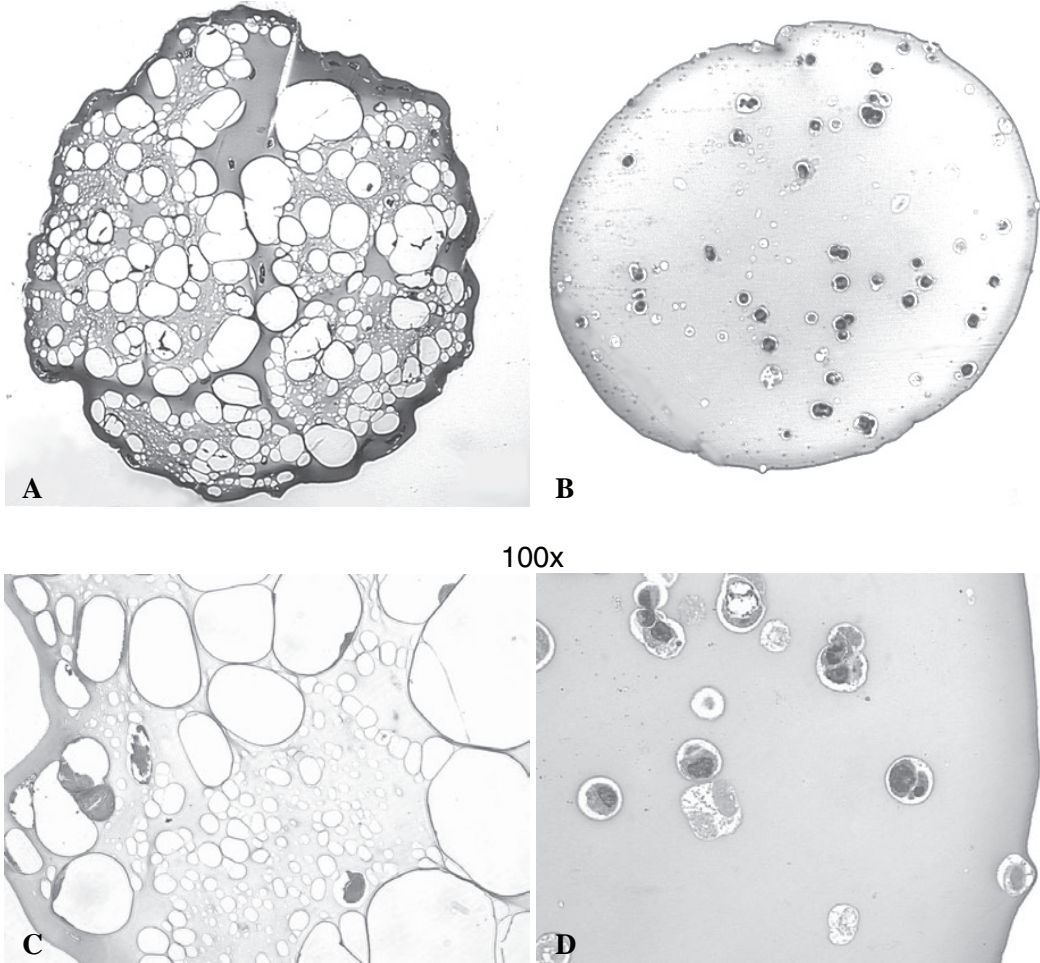
FIGURE 8.6 Morphology of frozen and vitrified pancreatic substitute beads. The beads comprise insulin-secreting _TC3 cells encapsulated in calcium alginate/poly-L-lysine/alginate. Beads frozen using a conventional controlled-rate (1°C/min) protocol with 1 M dimethyl sulfoxide show considerable ice formation throughout the construct (white spaces A, C). In contrast, beads vitrified with VS55 appear to be ice-free (B, D). At higher magnification it is seen that the encapsulated cells are shrunken and compressed within the frozen matrix (arrows) compared with the more normal morphology of the cells embedded in the vitrified matrix (D).

significant difference between fresh and vitrified specimens and no ice was observed in the vitrified specimens. Kuleshova et al. investigated vitrification of encapsulated hepatocytes employing 40% ethylene glycol and 0.6 M sucrose.[202] They employed a modification of vitrification approaches employed for embryos and oocytes that employs straws for handling and storage combined with a capsule made from Ter-polymer and collagen as previously described.[194] These studies combine to demonstrate that both freezing and vitrification procedures for cryopreservation of microencapsulated cells are feasible.

However, as the scale of the tissue increases, vitrification procedures excel and levels of tissue functions and/or cell survival previously not achieved with freezing procedures are achieved (discussed in earlier sections). Conceptually, cryopreservation of tissues by vitrification offers several

important advantages compared with procedures that allow or require ice formation. Complete vitrification eliminates concerns for the known damaging effects of intra- and extracellular ice crystallization. Furthermore, tissues cryopreserved by vitrification are exposed to less concentrated solutions of cryoprotectants for shorter time periods. For example, Rall has calculated that for embryos, during a typical cryopreservation protocol involving slow freezing to –40ºC or –70ºC, the cells are exposed to cryoprotectant concentrations of 21.5 and 37.6 osmolal respectively.[169] In contrast, cells dehydrated in vitrification solutions are exposed for much shorter periods to <18 osmolal solution, although the temperature of exposure is higher. Finally, unlike conventional cryopreservation procedures that employ freezing, vitrification does not require controlled cooling and warming at optimum rates. A principal benefit of vitrification is the elimination of requisite studies to determine optimal cooling rates for tissues with multiple cell types. Successful vitrification requires that the thermal processing be rapid enough to transition regions of maximal ice crystal nucleation and growth that occur above the glass transition temperature of the solution. Thus, it is only necessary to cool solutions at rates in which a negligible fraction of the solution forms ice (typically < 0.2%).[172] Vitrified materials have a similar rate requirement during heating, when samples are rewarmed for subsequent use, to limit ice formation to negligible levels (typically <0.5%).[203]

8.4.7 Applications to Tissue-Engineered Products

There are significant challenges for deployment of both preservation methods for tissue-engineered medical products. Vitrification approaches to preservation have some of the limitations associated with conventional freezing approaches. First, both approaches require low-temperature storage and transportation conditions. Neither can be stored above their glass transition temperature for long without significant risk of product damage due to inherent instabilities leading to ice formation and growth. Both approaches employ cryoprotectants with their attendant problems and require competent technical support during rewarming and cryoprotectant elution phases. The high concentrations of cryoprotectants necessary to facilitate vitrification are potentially toxic because the cells may be exposed to these high concentrations at higher temperatures than in freezing methods of cryopreservation. Cryoprotectants can kill cells by direct chemical toxicity, or indirectly by osmotically induced stresses during suboptimal addition or removal. Upon completion of warming, the cells should not be exposed to temperatures above 0°C for more than a few minutes before the glass-forming cryoprotectants are removed. It is possible to employ vitrified products in highly controlled environments, such as a commercial manufacturing facility or an operating theater, but not in a doctor's outpatient office or in third-world environments. The cryoprotectants employed for vitrification, in contrast to DMSO or glycerol for freezing, are less well known for preservation applications outside low-temperature biology circles. In particular, formamide, one of the components of the 55% (v/v) vitrification solution consisting of 3.10 M DMSO, 3.10 M formamide and 2.21 M 1,2-propanediol in EuroCollins solution at 4°C[16,153] (known as VS55), is a known mutagen. Alternatives to formamide with fewer safety risks and potentially easier clinical acceptance are being sought. However, the cytotoxicity of complex cryoprotectant formulations containing formamide is surprisingly much less than the cytotoxicity of single component formulations at the same concentrations.[204]

Storage and shipping temperatures also have a major impact on maintenance of product quality and can result in cell death mediated by ice formation. Degradative processes occur at temperatures warmer than the freezing solution's glass transition temperature (approximately –125°C). Even cells in heart valve leaflets that are frozen slowly can be negatively affected by storage at temperatures warmer than –100°C.[205] It is anticipated that synthetic ice blocker molecules, such as the cyclohexanediols, will be effective in prevention of recrystallization and allow storage of frozen biological materials for longer periods at warmer subzero temperatures. Ice blockers will also allow vitrification at lower, less cytotoxic CPA concentrations. This improved storage capability

will facilitate longer shipping times, less expensive shipping methods, and larger cryopreserved specimens.

It is well established that storage and shipping temperatures have a major impact on maintenance of product quality and can result in cell death via ice formation. If storage temperature is sufficiently low (below the glass transition point of the freezing solution [approximately –135°C to –95°C]), little, if any, change occurs in biological materials.[14,17] Human heart valve leaflets demonstrate retention of protein synthetic capabilities for at least two years of storage below –135°C.[205] Degradative processes may occur at and above the solution's glass transition temperature. For example, it has been shown that cells in cryopreserved human heart valve leaflets are negatively affected by storage at temperatures warmer than –100°C.[205]

One of the major issues for both frozen and vitrified storage of product relates to mechanical forces generated by cooling and warming conditions. Immersion of frozen human valves directly into liquid nitrogen for as little as 5 min may result in tissue fractures.[206] This problem came to light when a hospital-based frozen valve storage system overfilled during an automatic refill cycle. Valves from this accident were discovered to have numerous full-thickness fractures of the valve conduit following normal thawing procedures in the operating room.[207] Adam et al. reproduced this phenomenon experimentally.[206] The rationale for development of fractures appears to relate to abrupt changes in the physical properties of the solidified tissue matrix. Kroener and Luyet described abrupt temperature-dependent changes in aqueous glycerol solutions.[208] Subsequently they reported[209] that the formation and the disappearance of cracks depended on the interaction of several factors, in particular the mechanical properties of the material, the concentration of solute, the temperature gradients, the overall temperature, and the rate of temperature change. Studies of frozen biological materials have also supported the presence of mechanical forces in cryopreserved tissues.[210,211]

Heat transfer issues are the primary hurdle for scaling up the successes in tissues to larger organs. The limits of heat and mass transfer in bulky systems result in nonuniform cooling and contribute to stresses that may initiate cracking. In fact, the higher cooling rates that facilitate vitrification may lead to higher mechanical stresses. Very little information on the material properties of vitreous aqueous solutions exists. Material properties such as thermal conductivity and fracture strength of vitreous aqueous solutions have many similarities with their inorganic analogues that exist at normal temperatures, e.g., window glass and ceramics. Any material that is unrestrained will undergo a change in size (thermal strain) when subjected to a change in temperature. Calculations of stress in frozen biological tissues have shown that thermal stress can easily reach the yield strength of the frozen tissue resulting in plastic deformations or fractures.[212–214] We need a much better understanding of mechanical stresses during vitrification and freezing if we are to effectively proceed from long-term biopreservation of simple tissue structures to complex organs in the future (see Chapter 13).

8.5   ISSUES FOR THE FUTURE

In this overview of biopreservation we have indicated several areas where further research is urgently required, including sterilization methods for allogeneic tissues that permit retention of cell viability, less toxic CPA formulations, better warming methods for large cryopreserved specimens, and the need for a better understanding of the mechanical forces generated by cryopreservation. There are two other topics that we believe should be mentioned in closing that could have a major impact on biopreservation in the future. The first is the development of methods for the intracellular delivery of disaccharide cryoprotectants that are too large to permeate mammalian cell membranes. Success in this area promises new relatively noncytotoxic methods of cell and tissue cryopreservation and leads directly to the second topic of new biopreservation technologies based upon desiccation and freeze drying strategies.[7,8,215,216]

Both conventional freezing and vitrification approaches to preservation have limitations. First, both of these technologies require low-temperature storage and transportation conditions. Neither

can be stored above their glass transition for long without significant risk of product damage due to ice formation and growth. Both technologies require competent technical support during the rewarming and CPA elution phase prior to product utilization. This is possible in a high-technology surgical operating theater but not in a doctor's outpatient office or in third-world environments. In contrast, theoretically, a dry product would have none of these issues because it should be stable at room temperature and rehydration should be feasible in a sterile packaging system.

Drying and vitrification have previously been combined for matrix preservation of cardiovascular and skin tissues but not for live cell preservation in tissues or engineered products. However, nature has developed a wide variety of organisms and animals that tolerate dehydration stress by a spectrum of physiological and genetic adaptation mechanisms. Among these adaptive processes, the accumulation of large amounts of disaccharides, especially trehalose and sucrose, are especially noteworthy in almost all anhydrobiotic organisms including plant seeds, bacteria, insects, yeast, brine shrimp, fungi and their spores, cysts of certain crustaceans, and some soil-dwelling animals.[216,–218] The protective effects of trehalose and sucrose may be classified under two general mechanisms: (1) "the water replacement hypothesis" or stabilization of biological membranes and proteins by direct interaction of sugars with polar residues through hydrogen bonding, and (2) stable glass formation (vitrification) by sugars in the dry state.

The stabilizing effect of these sugars has also been shown in a number of model systems, including liposomes, membranes, viral particles, and proteins during dry storage at ambient temperatures.[215,219,220] On the other hand, the use of these sugars in mammalian cells has been somewhat limited, mainly because mammalian cell membranes are impermeable to disaccharides or larger sugars. Recently, a novel genetically modified pore former has been used to reversibly permeabilize mammalian cells to sugars with significant postcryopreservation and, to a lesser extent, drying cell survival.[221] Such permeation technologies, which may also include use of pressure or electroporation, may provide some of the most likely opportunities for preservation of tissues in the five- to ten-year vision, either by permitting cryopreservation with nontoxic cryoprotectants or drying. Several methods have been developed for loading of sugars in living cells.[7] Introduction of trehalose into human pancreatic islet cells during a cell membrane thermotropic lipid-phase transition, prior to freezing in the presence of a mixture of 2 M DMSO and trehalose, has resulted in good cell survival rates.[222] We have found that prolonged cell culture in the presence of trehalose results in significant increases in postcryopreservation cell survival (patent pending).[223] Human fibroblast transfection with *E. coli* genes expressing trehalose resulted in retention of viability after drying for up to five days.[224] However, it should be noted that most organisms that reach a dried state during dormancy and drought, do so by air drying (not freeze drying), which suggests this may be innocuous to cells under certain conditions. Further, studies of anhydrobiotic organisms may also suggest methods for conditioning mammalian cells for storage by either cryopreservation or drying in the tissue-engineered products of the future.

8.6 CONCLUDING COMMENTS

The emerging fields of tissue engineering and regenerative medicine for living cell-based therapies embody a wide variety of enabling technologies that include the need for effective methods of preservation. Despite significant advances in many of these technologies, it is generally regarded that the basic knowledge and practical know-how needed for the storage of living tissues and complex tissue constructs lags significantly behind. This is reflected by the four key areas of research identified by the US National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) in its request for research proposals (1997). These four research areas are automation and scale up, sterilization, product storage, and transportation of product in which substantial technical innovation is required for the development of manufacturing processes (NIST Advanced Technologies Program Request for Proposals — 1997). Concerns for the issues relating to the transition from the laboratory to the market include the major problem of preservation and storage of living biomaterials. Manufacturers

and/or distributors recognize the need for maintaining stocks of their products to ensure a steady supply, while the unpredictable clinical demand for specific tissues will necessitate the creation of tissue banks at medical centers. Methods of preservation are crucial for both the source of cells and the final tissue constructs or implantation devices. Tissue preservation technology involves both hypothermic (above freezing) methods for short-term storage, and cryopreservation for long-term banking. Both approaches call for consideration of the cell in relation to its environment and as interventionalists we can control or manipulate that environment to effect an optimized protocol for a given cell or tissue.

In conclusion, tissue preservation as it exists today has been developed empirically and basic research on fundamentals of biopreservation has had restricted impact on the field to this point. In the near future vitrification methods will get a lot more attention, particularly for tissue-engineered products in which immunogenicity is not an issue. In contrast, for allografts, unless the tissue is immuno-privileged, it is unlikely that vitrification will result in significant differences in clinical outcomes. There are, however, two basic research areas that we believe may have a significant impact on tissue preservation in the future. Both are based on lessons we are still learning from nature, namely strategies by which living organisms deal with the environmental temperature extremes to which they are exposed. Through evolution, nature has produced several families of proteins that help animals (e.g., fish and insects) and plants survive cold climates. These observations led to the hypothesis that naturally occurring antifreeze molecules might be improved upon by synthesis of molecules that will either bind to other ice nuclei domains or upon stable ice crystals. Other organisms naturally accumulate antifreeze compounds such as sucrose and trehalose. Creative methods are required for placement of these compounds within mammalian cells,[7] followed by the development of effective preservation strategies.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

REFERENCES

1. Wusteman, M.C. and Hunt, C.J., The scientific basis for tissue banking, in *Life in the Frozen State.* (Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, pp. 541–562.
2. Pegg, D.E., Jacobsen, I.A., Armitage, W.J., and Taylor, M.J., Mechanisms of cryoinjury in organs, in *Organ Preservation II,* Pegg, D.E. and Jacobsen, I.A., Eds., Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh, 1979, pp. 132–146.
3. Taylor, M.J., Sub-zero preservation and the prospect of long-term storage of multicellular tissues and organs, in *Transplantation Immunology: Clinical and Experimental,* Calne, R.Y., Ed., Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1984, pp. 360–390.
4. Armitage, W.J. (1991): Preservation of viable tissues for transplantation, in *Clinical Applications of Cryobiology,* Fuller, B.J. and Grout, B.W.W., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1991, pp. 169–189.
5. Taylor, M.J., Clinical cryobiology of tissues: Preservation of corneas. *Cryobiology*, 23: 323–353, 1986.
6. Taylor, M.J., Song, Y.C., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Vitrification in tissue preservation: New developments, in *Life in the Frozen State,* Benson, E., Fuller, B.J., and Lane, N., Eds., CRC Press, London, 2004, pp. 603–641.
7. Acker, J.P., Chen, T., Fowler, A., and Toner, M., Engineering desiccation tolerance in mammalian cells: Tools and techniques, in *Life in the Frozen State,* Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, pp. 563–580.

8. Crowe, J.H., Crowe, L.M., Tablin, F., Wolkers, W, Oliver, A.E., and Tsvetkova, N.M., (2004): Stabilization of cells during freeze-drying: The trehalose myth, in *Life in the Frozen State,* Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, pp. 581–601.

9. Karlsson, J.O.M. and Toner, M., Long-term storage of tissues by cryopreservation: Critical issues. *Biomaterials*, 17, 243–256, 1996.

10. Mazur, P., Fundamental cryobiology and the preservation of organs by freezing, in *Organ Preservation for Transplantation* 2nd, Karow, A.M. and Pegg, D.E., Eds., Marcel Dekker, New York, 1984, pp. 143–175.

11. Pegg, D.E., viability assays for preserved cells, tissues, and organs, *Cryobiology*, 26, 212–231, 1989.

12. Morris, G.J., Coulson, G.E., and Meyer, M.A., Cold shock: A wide-spread cellular reaction, *Cryo-Letters*, 4, 179–192, 1983.

13. Morris, G.J., Direct chilling injury, in *The Effects of Low Temperatures on Biological Systems,* Grant, B.W.W. and Morris, G.J., Eds., Arnold Press, London, 1987, pp. 120–146.

14. Karow, A.M., (1981): Biophysical and chemical considerations in cryopreservation, in *Organ Preservation for Transplantation,* Karow, A.M. and Pegg, D.E., Eds., Marcel Dekker, New York, 1981, pp. 113.

15. Hunt, C.J., Taylor, M.J., and Pegg, D.E., Freeze-substitution and isothermal freeze fixation studies to elucidate the pattern of ice formation on smooth muscle at 252K (–21 C), *J. Microscopy*, 125, 177–186, 1982.

16. Song, Y.C., Khirabadi, B.S., Lightfoot, F.G., Brockbank, K.G.M., and Taylor, M.J., Vitreous cryopreservation maintains the function of vascular grafts, *Nature Biotech.*, 18, 296–299, 2000.

17. Mazur, P., Freezing of living cells: Mechanisms and implications. *Am. J. Phys.*, 247 (*Cell Physiol* 16), C125–C142, 1984.

18. Mazur, P., Principles of Cryobiology, in *Life in the Frozen State,* Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, pp. 3–65.

19. Muldrew, K., Acker, J.P., Elliott, J.A.W., and McGann, L.E., The water to ice transition: Implications for living cells, in *Life in the Frozen State,* Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, pp. 67–108.

20. Brockbank, K.G.M., Essentials of cryobiology, in *Principles of Autologous, Allogeneic, and Cryopreserved Venous Transplantation,* Brockbank, K.G.M., Ed., RG Landes Company, Austin, 1995, pp. 91–102.

21. Taylor, M.J., Physico-chemical principles in low temperature biology, in *The Effects of Low Temperatures on Biological Systems,* Grout, B.W.W. and Morris, G.J., Eds., Edward Arnold, London, 1987, pp. 3–71.

22. Polge, C., Smith, A.Y., and Parkes, A.S., Revival of spermatozoa after vitrification and de-hydration at low temperatures, *Nature*, 164, 666, 1949.

23. Lovelock, J.E. and Bishop, M.W.H., Prevention of freezing damage to living cells by dimethyl sulfoxide. *Nature*, 183, 1394–1395, 1959.

24. Taylor, M.J., Elrifai, A.M., and Bailes, J.E., Hypothermia in relation to the acceptable limits of ischemia for bloodless surgery, in *Advances in Low Temperature Biology,* Steponkus, P.L., Ed., JAI Press, London, , 1996, pp. 1–64.

25. Taylor, M.J., Solutions for tissue preservation and bloodless surgery and methods using same. Application number: 092456. Patent number: 5,405,742. Date Issued: 1995. Assignees: Cryomedical Sciences, Inc., 1995.

26. Taylor, M.J., Bailes, J.E., Elrifai, A.M., Shih, S.-R., Teeple, E., Leavitt, M.L., Baust, J.G., and Maroon, J.C., A new solution for life without blood: Asanguineous low flow perfusion of a whole-body perfusate during 3 hours of cardiac arrest and profound hypothermia, *Circulation*, 91, 431–444, 1995.

27. Taylor, M.J., System for organ and tissue preservation and hypothermic blood substitution. Application number: 09/628,311. Patent 6,492,103, Organ Recovery Systems, Inc., 2002.

28. Taylor, M.J., Biology of cell survival in the cold: The basis for biopreservation of tissues and organs, in *Advances in Biopreservation,* Baust, J. G., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2005 [in press].

29. Taylor, M.J. and Brockbank, K.G.M., Frontiers in biopreservation technology: Challenges for the storage of living tissues and engineered constructs, in *Anti-Aging Medical Therapeutics,* Klatz, R. and Goldman, R., Eds., A4M Publications, Chicago, 2003, pp. 515–526.

30. Alam, H.B., Bowyer, M.W., Koustova, E., Gushchin, V., Anderson, D., Stanton, K., Kreishman, P., Cryer, C.M.T., Hancock, T., and Rhee, P., Learning and memory is preserved after induced asanguineous hyperkalemic hypothermic arrest in a swine model of traumatic exsanguination, *Surgery*, 132, 278–288, 2002.

31. Taylor, M.J., Song, Y.C., Chen, Z.Z., Lee, F.S., and Brockbank, K.G., Interactive determinants for optimized stabilization of autologous vascular grafts during surgery, *Cell Preserv. Technol.*, 2, 198–208, 2004.

32. Rhee, P., Talon, E., Eifert, S., Anderson, D., Stanton, K., Koustova, E., Ling, G., Burris, D., Kaufmann, C., Mongan, P., Rich, N.M., and Taylor, M.J., Induced hypothermia during emergency department thoractomy: An animal model. *J. Trauma*, 48, 439–447, 2000.

33. Behringer, W., Safar, P., Nozari, A., Wu, X., Kentner, R., Tisherman, S.A., Radovsky, A., and Taylor, M.J., Intact survival of 120 min cardiac arrest at 10°C in dogs: Cerebral preservation by cold aortic flush (and novel solutions). *Crit. Care Med.*, 29, 225, 2001.

34. Behringer, W., Safar, P., Kentner, R., Wu, X., Radovsky, A., Tisherman, S.A., and Taylor, M.J., Novel solutions for intra-ischemic aortic cold flush for preservation during 30 min cardiac arrest in dogs. *Crit. Care Med.*, 29, 226, 2001.

35. Taylor, M.J., Rhee, P., and Alam, H.B., Design of preservation solutions for universal tissue preservation *in vivo*: Demonstration of efficacy in pre-clinical models of profound hypothermic cardiac arrest, *Transpl. Proc.*, 303–307, 2005.

36. Alam, H.B., Chen, Z., Honma, K., Koustova, E., Querol, R., Jaskille, A., Inocencio, R., Ariaban, N., Toruno, K., and Rhee, P., The rate of induction of hypothermic arrest determines the outcome in a swine model of lethal hemorrhage, *J. Trauma, 961–969,* 2004.

37. Bailes, J.E., Elrifai, A.M., Taylor, M.J., Shih, S.-R., Simon, D.M., and Diamond, D.L., Combining ultraprofound hypothermia with blood substitution facilitates resuscitation from hemorrhagic shock. *Surg. Forum*, XLVI, 567–569, 1995.

38. Simon, D., Taylor, M.J., Elrifai, A.M., Shih, S.-H., Bailes, J.E., Davis, D., Kluger, Y., Diamond, D.L., and Maroon, J.C., Hypothermic blood substitution enables resuscitation after hemorrhagic shock and 2 hours of cardiac arrest. *ASAIO J.*, 41, M297–M300, 1995.

39. Ikonomovic, M., Kelly, K.M., Hentosz, T.M., Shih, S.R., Armstrong, D.M., and Taylor, M.J., Ultraprofound cerebral hypothermia and blood substitution with an acellular synthetic solution maintains neuronal viability in rat hippocampus, *CryoLetters*, 22, 19–26, 2001.

40. Goldman, S., Zadina, K., Krasnicka, B., Moritz, T., Gulshan, S., Copeland, J., Ovitt, T., and Henderson, W., Predictors of graft patency 3 years after coronary artery bypass. *JACC*, 29,) 1563–1568, 1997.

41. Brockbank, K.G.M., Effects of hypothermia upon venous functions, in *Principles of autologous, allogeneic and cryopreserved venous transplantation,*. Brockbank, K.G.M., Ed., RG Landes Company, Austin, 1995, pp. 103–112.

42. Taylor, M.J., Soleto, E., Aultman, D., Mancini, M.C., Moulder, P.V., Owen, D., Shih, T., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Preclinical evaluation of Unisol: A single solution for both flush and perfusion preservation of organs for transplantation, *Cryobiology*, 41, 360, 2000.

43. Rauen, U. and De Groot, H., New insights into the cellular and molecular mechanisms of cold storage injury, *J. Invest. Med.*, 52, 299–309, 2004.

44. Storey, K.B., Cold ischemic organ preservation: Lessons from natural systems, *J. Invest. Med.*, 52, 315–322, 2004.

45. Van de Woude, F.J., Schnuelle, P., and Yard, B.A., Preconditioning strategies to limit graft immunogenicity and cold ischemic organ injury, *J. Invest. Med.*, 52, 323–329, 2004.

46. Southard, J.H., van Gulik, T.M., Ametani, M.S., Vreugdenhil, P.K., Lindell, S.L., Pienaar, B.L., and Belzer, F.O., Important components of the UW solution, *Transplantation*, 49, 251–257, 1990.

47. Tokunaga, Y., Wicomb, W.N., Concepcion, W., Nakazato, P., Collins, G.M., and Esquivel, C.O., Successful 20-hour rat liver preservation with chlorpromazine in sodium lactobionate sucrose solution, *Surgery*, 110, 80–86, 1991.

48. Sumimoto, R., Dohi, K., Urushihara, T., Jamieson, N.V., Ito, H., Sumimoto, K., and Fukuda, Y., An examination of the effects of solutions containing histidine and lactobionate for heart, pancreas, and liver preservation in the rat, *Transplantation*, 53, 1206–1210, 1992.

49. Collins, G.M., Wicomb, W.N., Warren, R., Wong, L., Bry, W.I., Feduska, N.J., and Salvatierra, O., Canine and cadaver kidney preservation with sodium lactobionate s solution, *Transplant. Proc.*, 25, 1588–1590, 1993.

50. Shiiya, N., Paul, M., Bevenuti, C., Astier, A., Ferrer, M.-J., and Loisance, D., A lactobionate-based extracellular-type solution for donor heart preservation, *J. Heart Lung Transplant.*, 12, 476–483, 1993.

51. Menasche, P., Hricak, B., Pradier, F., Cheav, S.L., Grousset, C., Mouas, C., Alberici, G., Bloch, G., and Piwnica, A., Efficacy of lactobionate-enriched cardioplegic solution in preserving compliance of cold-stored heart transplants, *J. Heart Lung Transplant.*, 12, 1053–1061, 1993.

52. Menasche, P., Termignon, J.L., Pradier, F., Grousset, C., Mouas, C., Alberici, G., Weiss, M., Piwnica, A., and Bloch, G., Experimental evaluation of Celsior, a new heart preservation solution, *Eur. J. Cardio-thorac. Surg.*, 8, 207–213, 1994.

53. Burgmann, H., Reckendorfer, H., Sperlich, M., Doleschel, W., and Spiekermann, P.G., The calcium chelating capacity of different protecting solutions. *Transplantation*, 54, 1106–1108, 1992.

54. Southard, J.H. and Belzer, F.O., Organ preservation, *Ann. Rev. Med.*, 46, 235–247, 1995.

55. Weimar, W., Geerlings, W., Bijnen, A.B., Obertop, H., Van Urk, H., Lameijer, L.D.F., Wolfe, E.D., and Jeekel, J., A controlled study on the effect of mannitol on immediate renal function after cadaver donor kidney transplantation, *Transplantation*, 35, 99–101, 1983.

56. Hickey, P.R. and Andersen, N.P., Deep hypothermic circulatory arrest: A review of pathophysiology and clinical experience as a basis for anesthetic management, *J. Cardiothorac. Anesth.*, 1, 137–155, 1987.

57. Hoffman, R.M., Southard, J.H., Lutz, M.F., Mackety, A., and Belzer, F.O., 72 hour preservation of dog kidneys using a purely synthetic perfusate containing hydroxyethyl starch, *Arch. Surg.*, 118, 919, 1983.

58. Armitage, W.J. and Pegg, D.E., An evaluation of colloidal solutions for normothermic perfusion of rabbit hearts: An improved perfusate containing Haemaccel, *Cryobiology*, 14, 428–434, 1977.

59. Pegg, D.E., The water and cation content of nonmetabolizing perfused rabbit kidneys, *Cryobiology*, 14, 160–167, 1977.

60. Wicomb, W.N., Hill, J.D., Avery, J., and Collins, G.M., Optimal cardioplegia and 24-hour heart storage with simplified UW solution containing polyethylene glycol, *Transplantation*, 49, 261–264, 1990.

61. Schlumpf, R., Morel, P., Loveras, J.J., Condie, R.M., Matas, A., Kurle, J., Najarian, J.S., and Sutherland, D.E.R., Examination of the role of the colloids hydroxyethylstarch, dextran, human albumin, and plasma proteins in a modified UW solution, *Transplantat. Proc.*, 23, 2362–2365, 1991.

62. Edmunds, L.H., Jr., Folkman, J., Snodgrass, A.B., and Brown, R.B., Prevention of brain damage during profound hypothermia and circulatory arrest. *Ann. Surg.*, 157, 637–649, 1963.

63. Hint, M., The relationship between molecular weight of dextran and its effects, in *Symposium on Rheomacrodex,* Pharmacia, GB Ltd., Eds., Pharmacia(GB) Ltd., Uppsala, Sweden, 1964, pp. 2–12.

64. Hitchcock, C.R., Kiser, J.C., Telander, R.L., and Peterson, T.A., Effect of low molecular weight dextran on organ perfusion sludging. *Surgery*, 56, 533, 1964.

65. Wusteman, M.C., Jacobsen, I.A., and Pegg, D.E., A new solution for initial perfusion of transplant kidneys. *Scandinavian J. Urol. Nephrol.*, 12, 281–286, 1978.

66. Davies, J.W.L., Ricketts, C.R., and Williams, B.N., Plasma volume expansion by rapid infusion of a low molecular weight dextran, *Br. J. Pharmacol. Chemother.*, 21, 220, 1963.

67. Morel, P., Moss, A., Schlumpf, R., Nakhleh, R., Lloveras, J.K., Field, M.J., Condie, R., Matas, A.J., and Sutherland, D.E.R., 72-Hour preservation of the canine pancreas: Successful replacement of hydroxyethylstarch by Dextran-40 in UW solution, *Transplant. Proc.*, 24, 791–794, 1992.

68. Ar'Rajab, A., Ahren, B., Sundberg, R., and Bengmark, B., A new Dextran 40-based solution for liver preservation, *Transplantation*, 53, 742–745, 1992.

69. Fasola, C.G., Kim, Y.S., Dunning, M., Condie, R.M., Kurle, J., Manivel, J.C., Nakhleh, R.E., Schlumpf, R., Payne, W.D., Sutherland, D.E.R., Najarian, J.S., and Dunn, D.L., Successful canine small bowel preservation in simple cold storage for 48 hours using a Dextran-40-based solution, *Transplant. Proc.*, 25, 1576–1579, 1993.

70. Schlumpf, R., Candinas, D., Weber, M., Stocker, R., Spahn, D., and Largiader, F., Dextran 40 for clinical organ preservation, *Prog. Appl. Microcirc.*, 22, 61–73, 1996.

71. Tyers, G.F.O., Todd, G.J., Niebauer, I.M., Manley, J.N., and Waldhausen, J.A., The mechanism of myocardial damage following potassium citrate (Melrose) cardioplegia, *Surgery*, 78, 45, 1975.

72. Kinoshita, K. and Ehara, T., Importance of sodium ions in the protective effects of high-potassium, high-glucose solution on electromechanical activities in the guinea-pig myocardium, *J. Mol.Cell. Cardiol.*, 16, 405–419, 1984.

73. Foreman, J., Pegg, D.E., and Armitage, W.J., Solutions for preservation of the heart at 0 C, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 89, 867–871, 1985.

74. Brown, P.S., Jr., Holland, F.W., Parenteau, G.L., and Clark, R.E., Magnesium ion is beneficial in hypothermic crystalloid cardioplegia, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 51, 359–367, 1991.

75. Robinson, L.A. and Harwood, D.L., Lowering the calcium concentration in St. Thomas Hospital's cardioplegic solution improves protection during hypothermic ischemia, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 101, 314–325, 1991.

76. Anderson, R.V., Siegman, M.G., Balaban, R.S., Ceckler, T.L., and Swain, J.A., Hyperglycemia exac-erbates cerebral intracellular acidosis during hypothermic circulatory arrest and reperfusion: A 31P NMR study, *Ann. Thor. Surg.*, 54:(6) 1126–1130, 1992.

77. Taylor, M.J., The role of pH* and buffer capacity in the recovery of function of smooth muscle cooled to –13 C in unfrozen media, *Cryobiology*, 19, 585–601, 1982.

78. Taylor, M.J. and Pignat, Y., Practical acid dissociation constants, temperature coefficients and buffer capacities for some biological buffers in solutions containing dimethyl sulfoxide between 25 and –12°C, *Cryobiology*, 19, 99–109, 1982.

79. Swan, H., New synthetic buffer compositions need evaluation, *J. Am. Col. Surg.*, 179, 118–126, 1994.

80. Baicu, S. and Taylor, M.J., Acid-base buffering in organ preservation solutions as a function of temperature: New parameters for comparing buffer capacity and efficiency, *Cryobiology*, 45, 33–48, 2002.

81. Taylor, M.J. and Hunt, C.J., A new preservation solution for storage of corneas at low temperatures, *Curr. Eye Res.*, 4, 963–973, 1985.

82. Taylor, M.J. and Hunt, C.J., Hypothermic preservation of corneas in a hyperkalaemic solution (CPTES). I. short-term storage in the absence of colloid osmotic agents, *Br. J. Ophthalmol.*, 73, 781–791, 1989.

83. Forman, M.B., Puett, D.W., and Virmani, R., Endothelial and myocardial injury during ischemia and reperfusion: Pathogenesis and therapeutic implications, *J. Am. Coll. Cardiol.*, 13, 450–459, 1989.

84. Ely, S.W. and Berne, R.M., Protective effects of adenosine in myocardial ischemia, *Circulation*, 85, 893–904, 1992.

85. Kosower, E.M. and Kosower, N.S., Lest I forget thee, glutathione, *Nature*, 224, 117–120, 1969.

86. Boudjema, K., van Gulik, T.M., Lindell, S.L., Vreugdenhil, P.S., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Effect of oxidized and reduced glutathione in liver preservation, *Transplantation*, 50, 948–951, 1990.

87. Kagan, R.J., *Standards for Tissue Banking,* The American Association of Tissue Banks, Washington D.C., 1998.

88. Brittberg, M., Lindahl, A., Nilsson, A., Ohlsson, C., Isaksson, O., and Peterson, L., Treatment of deep cartilage defects in the knee with autologous chondrocyte transplantation, *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 331, 889–895, 1994.

89. Bright, R.W., Friedlander, G.E., and Sell, K.W., Tissue banking: The United States Navy tissue bank, *Mil. Med.*, 142, 503, 1977.

90. Kirklin, J.W. and Barratt-Boyes, B.G., *Cardiac Surgery: Morphology, Diagnostic Criteria, Natural History, Techniques, Results, and Indications,* John Wiley & Sons. New York, 1986.

91. Yacoub, M. and Kittle, C.F., Sterilization of valve homografts by antibiotic solutions, *Circulation*, 41, II29–II32, 1970.

92. Gavin, J.B., Herdson, P.B., Monro, J.L., and Barratt-Boyes, B.G., Pathology of antibiotic-treated human heart valve allografts, *Thorax*, 28, 473–481, 1973.

93. Gavin, J.B., Barratt-Boyes, B.G., Hitchcock, G.C., and Herdson, P.B., Histopathology of "fresh" human aortic valve allografts,. *Thorax*, 28, 482–487, 1973.

94. Waterworth, P.M., Lockey, E., Berry, E.M., and Pearce, H.M., A critical investigation into the antibiotic sterilization of heart valve homografts, *Thorax*, 29, 432–436, 1974.

95. Wain, W.H., Pearce, H.M., Riddell, R.W., and Ross, D.N., A re-evaluation of antibiotic sterilisation of heart valve allografts, *Thorax*, 32, 740–742, 1977.

96. Barratt-Boyes, B.G., Roche, A.H., and Whitlock, R.M., Six year review of the results of freehand aortic valve replacement using an antibiotic sterilized homograft valve, *Circulation*, 55, 353–361, 1977.

97. Stelzer, P. and Elkins, R.C., Pulmonary autograft: An American experience, *J. Cardiac Surg.*, 2, 429–433, 1987.

98. Angell, W.W., Angell, J.D., Oury, J.H., Lamberti, J.J., and Grehl, T.M., Long-term follow-up of viable frozen aortic homografts: A viable homograft valve bank, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 93, 815–822, 1987.

99. Raju, S. and Grogan, J.B., Effect of storage on skin allograft survival, *Arch. Surg.*, 99, 100–102, 1969.

100. Cram, A.E., Domayer, M., and Shelby, J., Human skin storage techniques: A study utilizing a nude mouse recipient, *J. Trauma*, 23, 924–926, 1983.

101. Csonge, L., Pellet, S., Szenes, A., and Istvan, J., Antibiotics in the preservation of allograft and xenograft skin. *Burns*, 21, 102–105, 1995.

102. Strickett, M.G., Barratt-Boyes, B.G., and MacCulloch, D., Disinfection of human heart valve allografts with antibiotics in low concentration, *Pathology*, 15, 457–462, 1983.

103. Watts, L.K., Duffy, P., Field, R.B., Stafford, E.G., and O'Brien, M.F., Establishment of a viable homograft cardiac valve bank: A rapid method of determining homograft viability, *Ann. Thorac. Surg*, 21, 230–236, 1976.

104. Karp, R.B., The use of free-hand unstented aortic valve allografts for replacement of the aortic valve, *J. Card. Surg.*, 1, 23–32, 1986.

105. Kirklin, J.W., Blackstone, E.H., Maehara, T., Pacifico, A.D., Kirklin, J.K., Pollock, S., and Stewart, R.W., Intermediate-term fate of cryopreserved allograft and xenograft valved conduits, *Ann. Thorac. Surg*, 44, 598–606, 1987.

106. Angell, J.D., Christopher, B.S., Hawtrey, O., and Angell, W.M., A fresh, viable human heart valve bank: Sterilization, sterility testing, and cryogenic preservation, *Transplant. Proc.*, 8, 139–147, 1976.

107. Gall, K., Smith, S., Willmette, C., Wong, M., and O'Brien, M., Allograft heart valve sterilization: A six-year in-depth analysis of a twenty-five-year experience with low-dose antibiotics, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 110, 680–687, 1995.

108. Girinath, M.R., Gavin, J.B., Strickett, M.G., and Barratt-Boyes, B.G., The effects of antibiotics and storage on the viability and ultrastructure of fibroblasts in canine heart valves prepared for grafting, *Aust. N.Z. J. Surg.*, 44, 170–172, 1974.

109. Armiger, L.C., Gavin, J.B., and Barratt-Boyes, B.G., Histological assessment of orthotopic aortic valve leaflet allografts: its role in selecting graft pre-treatment, *Pathology*, 15, 67–73, 1983.

110. Hu, J.F., Gilmer, L., Hopkins, R., and Wolfinbarger, L., Jr., Effects of antibiotics on cellular viability in porcine heart valve tissue, *Cardiovasc. Res.*, 23, 960–964, 1989.

111. Brockbank, K.G. and Dawson, P.E., Cytotoxicity of amphotericin B for fibroblasts in human heart valve leaflets, *Cryobiology*, 30, 19–24, 1993.

112. Gavin, J.B. and Monro, J.L., The pathology of pulmonary and aortic valve allografts used as mitral valve replacements in dogs, *Pathology*, 6, 119–127, 1974.

113. Schmehl, M.K., Bank, H.L., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Effects of antibiotics on the endothelium of fresh and cryopreserved canine saphenous veins, *Cryobiology*, 30, 164–171, 1993.

114. Kainer, M.A., Linden, J.V., Whaley, D.N., Holmes, H.T., Jarvis, W.R., Jernigan, D.B., and Archibald, L.K., Clostridium infections associated with musculoskeletal-tissue allografts, *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 350, 2564–2571, 2004.

115. Patel, R. and Trampuz, A., Infections transmitted through musculoskeletal-tissue allografts. *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 350, 2544–2546, 2004.

116. Lakey, J.R.T., Rajotte, R.V., Fedorow, C.A., and Taylor, M.J., Islet cryopreservation using intracellular preservation solutions, *Cell Transplant.*, 10, 583–589, 2001.

117. Taylor, M.J., Walter, C.A., and Elford, B.C., The pH-dependent recovery of smooth muscle from storage at −13 C in unfrozen media, *Cryobiology*, 15, 452–460, 1978.

118. Taylor, M.J., Campbell, L.H., Rutledge, R.N., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Comparison of Unisol with EuroCollins solution as a vehicle solution for cryoprotectants, *Transplant. Proc.*, 33, 677–679, 2001.

119. Taylor, M.J., Campbell, L.H., Rutledge, R.N., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Comparison of Unisol(TM) with EuroCollins solution as a vehicle solution for cryoprotectants, Fig. 1, *Transplant. Proc.*, 33, 677–679, 2001.

120. Elford, B.C. and Walter, C.A., Effects of electrolyte composition and pH on the structure and function of smooth muscle cooled to –79°C in unfrozen media, *Cryobiology*, 9, 82–100, 1972.

121. Elford, B.C. and Walter, C.A., Preservation of structure and function of smooth muscle cooled to –79°C in unfrozen aqueous media, *Nature New Biol.*, 236, 58–60, 1972.

122. Baust, J.M., Vogel, M.J., van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., A molecular basis of cryopreservation failure and its modulation to improve cell survival, *Cell Transplant.*, 10, 561–571, 2001.

123. Baust, J.M., Molecular mechanisms of cellular demise associated with cryopreservation failure, *Cell Preserv. Technol.*, 1, 17–32, 2002.

124. Baust, J.M., Van Buskirk, R., and Baust, J.G., Modulation of the cryopreservation cap: Elevated survival with reduced dimethyl sulfoxide concentration, *Cryobiology*, 45, 97–108, 2002.

125. Baust, J.M., van Buskirk, R.G., and Baust, J.G., Improved cryopreservation outcome is facilitated by an intracellular-type medium and inhibition of apoptosis, *J. Biomed. Eng. Soc.*, 1, 206–207, 1999.

126. Muller-Schweinitzer, E., Mihatsch, M.J., Schilling, M., and Haefeli, W.E., Functional recovery of human mesenteric and coronary arteries after cryopreservation at –196 degrees C in a serum-free medium. *J. Vasc. Surg.*, 25, 743–750, 1997.

127. Campbell, L.H., Taylor, M.J., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Evaluation of cell viability during cryopreservation using cell culture medium versus low-temperature storage solutions, presented at the 2001 World Congress for *In vitro* Biology, St. Louis, MO, *In Vitro and Dev. Biol. — Animal*, 37, Part II, 46A.

128. Brockbank, K.G.M. and Smith, K.M., Synergistic interaction of low-molecular-weight Poly-vinylpyrrolidones with dimethyl sulfoxide during cell preservation, *Transplant. Proc.*, 25, 3185, 1993.

129. Brockbank, K.G.M., Method for cryopreserving blood vessels. Patent number: 5,145,769 and 5,158,867. Date Issued: 1992.

130. Schneider, U. and Mazur, P., Relative influence of unfrozen fraction and salt concentration on the survival of slowly frozen eight-cell mouse embryos, *Cryobiology*, 24, 17–41, 1987.

131. Ladbrooke, B.D., Williams, R.M., and Chapman, D., Studies on lecithin-cholesterol-water interactions by differential scanning calorimetry and X-ray diffraction, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta*, 150, 333–340, 1968.

132. Shlafer, M., Pharmacologic considerations in cryopreservation, in *Organ Preservation for Transplantation,* Karow, A.M. and Pegg, D.E., Eds., Marcel Dekker, New York, 1981, pp. 177–212.

133. Fuller, B.J., Cryoprotectants: The essential antifreezes to protect life in the frozen state, *CryoLetters*, 25, 375–388, 2004.

134. Davies, P.L. and Hew, C.L., Biochemistry of fish antifreeze proteins, *FASEB*, 4, 2460–2468, 1990.

135. Knight, C.A. and Duman, J.G., Inhibition of recrystallization of ice by insect thermal hysteresis proteins: A possible cryoprotective role, *Cryobiology*, 23, 256–262, 1986.

136. Mugnano, J.A., Wang, T., Layne, J.R., Jr., DeVries, A.L., and Lee, R.E., Jr., Antifreeze glycoproteins promote intracellular freezing of rat cardiomyocytes at high subzero temperatures, *Am. J. Physiol.*, 269, R474–R479, 1995.

137. Hansen, T.N., Smith, K.M., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Type I antifreeze protein attenuates cell recoveries following cryopreservation, *Transplant. Proc.*, 25, 3186–3188, 1993.

138. Lovelock, J. and Bishop, M.W.H., Prevention of freezing damage to living cells by dimethylsulphoxide, *Nature*, 183, 1394–1395, 1959.

139. Brockbank, K.G.M., McNally, R.T., and Walsh, K.A., Cryopreserved vein transplantation, *J. Card. Surg.*, 7, 170–176, 1992.

140. McGrath, J.J., Membrane transport properties, in *Low Temperature Biotechnology: Emerging Applications and Engineering Contributions,* McGrath, J.J. and Diller, K.R., Eds., The American Society of Mechanical Engineers, New York, 1988, pp. 273–330.

141. Brockbank, K.G.M., Effects of cryopreservation upon venous functions, in *Principles of Autologous, Allogeneic and Cryopreserved Venous Transplantation,* Brockbank, K.G.M., Ed., RG Landes Company, Austin, 1995, pp. 113–120.

142. Song, Y.C., Yao, L.Y., Kneebone, J.M., and Lupinetti, F.M., Effects of cryopreservation and histocompatibility on procollagen gene expression in aortic valve grafts, *J. Thoracic Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 114, 421–427, 1997.

143. Clarke, D.R., Campbell, D.N., Hayward, A.R., and Bishop, D.A., Degeneration of aortic valve allografts in young recipients, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 105, 934–942, 1993.

144. Yankah, A.C., Alexi-Meskhishvili, V., Weng, Y., Schorn, K., Lange, R.E., and Hetzer, R., Accelerated degeneration of allografts in the first two years of life, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 60, 71–77, 1995.

145. Brockbank, K.G.M. and Song, Y.C., Morphological analyses of ice-free and frozen cryopreserved heart valve explants, *J. Heart Valve Dis.*, 13, 297–301, 2004.

146. Marco, F., Leon, C., Lopez-Oliva, F., Perez, A.J., Sanchez-Barba, A., and Lopez-Duran Stern, L., Intact articular cartilage cryopreservation: *In vivo* evaluation, *Clin. Orthop. Relat. Res.*, 283, 11–20, 1992.

147. Ohlendorf, C., Tomford, W.W., and Mankin, H.J., Chondrocyte survival in cryopreserved osteochondral articular cartilage, *J. Orthop. Res.*, 14, 413–416, 1996.

148. Muldrew, K., Hurtig, M., Schachar, N., and McGann, L.E., Localization of freezing injury in articular cartilage, *Cryobiology*, 31, 31–38, 1994.

149. Wu, F.J., Davisson, T.H., and Pegg, D.E., Preservation of tissue-engineered articular cartilage. *Cryobiology*, 37, 410, 1998.

150. Stone, B.B., Defranzo, B.E., Dicesare, C., Rapko, S.M., Brockbank, K.G.M., Wolfrum, J.M., Wrenn, C.A., and Grossman, J.D., Cryopreservation of human articular cartilage for autologous chondrocyte transplantation, *Cryobiology,* 37: 445–446, 1998.

151. Muldrew, K., Novak, K., Studholme, C., Wohl, G., Zernicke, R., Schachar, N.S., and McGann, L.E., Transplantation of articular cartilage following a step-cooling cryopreserved protocol, *Cryobiology*, 43, 260–267, 2001.

152. Jomha, N.M., Anoop, P.C., Bagnall, K., and McGann, L.E., Effects of increasing concentrations of dimethyl sulfoxide during cryopreservation of porcine articular cartilage, *Cell Preserv. Technol.*, 1, 111, 2002.

153. Taylor, M.J., Song, Y.C., Khirabadi, B.S., Lightfoot, F.G., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Vitrification fulfills its promise as an approach to reducing freeze-induced injury in a multicellular tissue, *Adv. Heat Mass Transfer Biotechnol.*, 44 93–102, 1999.

154. Fahy, G.M., Saur, J., and Williams, R.J., Physical problems with the vitrification of large biological systems, *Cryobiology*, 27, 492–510, 1990.

155. Taylor, M.J. and Pegg, D.E., The effect of ice formation on the function of smooth muscle tissue following storage at –21 C and –60 C, *Cryobiology*, 20, 36–40, 1983.

156. Brockbank, K.G.M., Lightfoot, F.G., Song, Y.C., and Taylor, M.J., Interstitial ice formation in cryopreserved homografts: A possible cause of tissue deterioration and calcification *in vivo*, *J. Heart Valve Dis.*, 9, 200–206, 2000.

157. Pegg, D.E., Ice crystals in tissues and organs, in *The Biophysics of Organ Preservation,* Pegg, D.E. and Karow, A.M., Jr., Eds., Plenum Publishing Corp., New York, 1987, pp. 117–140.

158. Jacobsen, I.A., Pegg, D.E., Starklint, H., Chemnitz, J., Hunt, C.J., Barfort, P., and Diaper, M.P., Effect of cooling rate and warming rate on glycerolized rabbit kidneys, *Cryobiology*, 21, 637–653, 1984.

159. Takahashi, T., Hirsh, A.G., Erbe, E.F., Bross, J.B., Steere, R.L., and Williams, R.J., Vitrification of human monocytes, *Cryobiology*, 23, 103–115, 1986.

160. Jutte, N.H.P.M., Heyse, P., Jansen, H.G., Bruining, G.J., and Zeilmaker, G.H., Vitrification of mouse islets of Langerhans: Comparison with a more conventional freezing method, *Cryobiology*, 24, 292–302, 1987.

161. Jutte, N.H.P.M., Heyse, P., Jansen, H.G., Bruining, G.J., and Zeilmaker, G.H., Vitrification of human islets of Langerhans, *Cryobiology*, 24, 403–411, 1987.

162. Van Wagtendonk-De Leeuw, A.M., Den Daas, J.H.G., Kruip, Th.A.M., and Rall, W.F., Comparison of the efficacy of conventional slow freezing and rapid cryopreservation methods for bovine embryos, *Cryobiology*, 32, 157–167, 1995.

163. Ruggera, P.S. and Fahy, G.M., Rapid and uniform electromagnetic heating of aqueous cryoprotectant solutions from cryogenic temperatures, *Cryobiology*, 27, 465–478, 1990.

164. Marsland, T.P., Evans, S., and Pegg, D.E., Dielectic measurements for the design of an electromagnetic rewarming system, *Cryobiology*, 24, 311–323, 1987.

165. Robinson, M.P. and Pegg, D.E., Rapid electromagnetic warming of cells and tissues, *IEEE Trans. Biomed. Eng.*, 46, 1413–1425, 1999.

166. Fahy, G.M., MacFarlane, D.R., Angell, C.A., and Meryman, H.T., Vitrification as an approach to cryopreservation, *Cryobiology*, 21, 407–426, 1984.

167. Fahy, G.M., Vitrification, in *Low Temperature Biotechnology: Emerging Applications and Engineering Contributions,* McGrath, J.J. and Diller, K.R., Eds., The American Society of Mechanical Engineers, New York, 1988, pp. 113–146.

168. Pegg, D.E. and Diaper, M.P., Freezing versus vitrification: basic principles, in *Cryopreservation and Low Temperature Biology in Blood Transfusion,* Smit Sibinga, C.Th., Das, P.C., and Meryman, H.T., Eds., Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, 1990, pp. 55–69.

169. Rall, W.F., Factors affecting the survival of mouse embryos cryopreserved by vitrification, *Cryobiology*, 24, 387–402, 1987.

170. Armitage, W.J. and Rich, S.J, Vitrification of organized tissues, *Cryobiology*, 27, 483–491, 1990.

171. Fahy, G.M., Vitrification as an approach to organ cryopreservation: Past, present, and future, in *Cryopreservation and Low Temperature Biology in Blood Transfusion,* Smit Sibinga, C.Th., Das, P.C., and Meryman, H.T., Eds., Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, 1989, pp. 255–268.

172. Boutron, P., Mehl, P., Kaufmann, A., and Angibaud, P., Glass-forming tendency and stability of the amorphous state in the aqueous solutions of linear polyalcohols with four carbons, *Cryobiology*, 23, 453–469, 1986.

173. Song, Y.C., Li, C.Y., Lightfoot, F.G., Boggs, J.M., Greene, E.D., Taylor, M.J., Chen, Z.Z., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Stability of vitrified tissues in the vapor phase of liquid nitrogen, Presented at the 39th Annual Meeting of the Society for Cryobiology, 2002. *Cryobiology*, 45(3), 243.

174. Mehl, P. and Boutron, P., Cryoprotection of red blood cells by 1,3-butanediol and 2,3- butanediol, *Cryobiology*, 25, 44–54, 1988.

175. Hunt, C.J., Taylor, M.J., and Chapman, D., Exposure of rabbit corneas to multimolar concentrations of butane-2,3-diol: A transmission and scanning electron microscope study of the endothelium, *Cryobiology*, 28, 561–561, 1991.

176. Taylor, M.J. and Foreman, J., Tolerance of isolated pancreatic islets to butane-2,3-diol at 0°C, *Cryobiology*, 28 566–567, 1991.

177. Mejean, A. and Pegg, D.E., Development of a vehicle solution for the introduction and removal of butane-2,3-diol in rabbit kidneys, *Cryobiology*, 28, 518–518, 1991.

178. Song, Y.C., Lightfoot, F.G., Li, C., Boggs, J.M., Taylor, M.J., and An, Y.H., Successful cryopreservation of articular cartilage by vitrification, *Cryobiology,* 43, 353, 2001.

179. Song, Y.C., Lightfoot, F.G., Chen, Z., Boggs, J.M., Li, C., Taylor, M.J., An, Y.H., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Vitreous preservation of articular cartilage grafts improves *in vitro* and *in vivo* functions, Presented at the XIX International Congress of the Transplantation Society, Miami, FL; August 25–30, *Transplantation Suppl.,* 74, 227, 2002.

180. Song, Y.C., Lightfoot, F.G., Chen, Z., Taylor, M.J., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Vitreous preservation of rabbit articular cartilage, *Cell Preserv. Technol.*, 2, 67–74, 2004.

181. Song, Y.C., An, Y.H., Kang, Q.K., Li, C., Boggs, J.M., Chen, Z., Taylor, M.J., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Vitreous preservation of articular cartilage grafts,. *J. Invest. Surg.*, 17, 1–6, 2004.

182. Song, Y.C., Chen, Z., Mitchell, S., Lightfoot, F.G., Chaoyang, L., Niklason, L.E., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Successful cryopreservation of tissue engineered blood vessels by vitrification, *Tissue Eng.*, 8, 1117, 2002.

183. Mukherjee, N., Chen, Z., Sambanis, A, and Song, Y.C., Effects of cryopreservation on cell viability and insulin secretion in a model tissue engineered pancreatic substitute (TEPS), *Cell Transplant.*, 14, 449–456, 2005.

184. Song, Y.C., Chen, Z.Z., Mukherjee, N., Lightfoot, F.G., Taylor, M.J., Brockbank, K.G.M., and Sambanis, A., Vitrification of tissue engineered pancreatic substitute (TEPS), *Transplant. Proc.*, 37, 253–255, 2004.

185. MacFarlane, D.R. and Angell, C.A., Homogenous nucleation and glass formation in cryoprotective systems at high pressures, *Cryo Letters*, 2, 353–358, 1981.

186. DeVries, A.L., Antifreeze peptides and glycopeptides in cold-water fishes, *Ann. Rev. Physiol.*, 45, 245–260, 1983.

187. Tomford, W.W., Fredericks, G.R., and Mankin, H.J., , Studies on cryopreservation of articular cartilage chondrocytes, *J. Bone Joint Surg. Am.*, 66, 253–259, 1984.

188. Bottomley, M.J., Baicu, S., Boggs, J.M., Marshall, D.P., Clancy, M., Brockbank, K.G.M., and Bravery, C.A., Preservation of embryonic kidneys for transplantation, *Tranplant. Proc.*, 37, 280–284, 2005.

189. Rogers, S.A. and Hammerman, M.R., Transplantation of rat metanephroi into mice, *Am. J. Physiol. Regul. Integr. Comp. Physiol.*, 280, R1865–R1869, 2001.
190. Rogers, S.A., Talcott, M., and Hammerman, M.R., Transplantation of pig metanephroi, *ASAIO J.*, 49, 48–52, 2003.
191. Brockbank, K.G.M., Cryoprotective agent and its use in cryopreservation of cellular matter. Patent number: 5,071,741. Date Issued: 1991.
192. Zhou, D., Vacek, I., and Sun, A.M., Cryopreservation of microencapsulated porcine pancreatic islets: *In vitro* and *in vivo* studies, *Transplantation*, 64, 1112–1116, 1997.
193. Almqvist, K.F., Wang, L., Broddelez, C., Veys, E.M., and Verbruggen, G., Biological freezing of human articular chondrocytes, *Osteoarthr. Cartilage*, 9, 341–350, 2001.
194. Heng, B. C., Yu, H., and Ng, S.C., Strategies for the cryopreservation of microencapsulated cells, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 85, 202–213, 2004.
195. Canaple, L., Nurdin, N., Angelova, N., Saugy, D., Hunkeler, D., and Desvergne, B., Maintenance of primary murine hepatocyte functions in multicomponent polymer capsules: *In vitro* cryopreservation studies, *J. Hepatol.*, 34, 11–18, 2001.
196. Canaple, L., Nurdin, N., Angelova, N., Hunkeler, D., and Desvergne, B., Development of a coculture model of encapsulated cells, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 944, 350–361, 2001.
197. Guyomard, C., Rialland, L., Fremond, B., Chesne, C., and Guillouzo, A., Influence of alginate gel entrapment and cryopreservation on survival and xenobiotic metabolism capacity of rat hepatocytes, *Toxicol. Appl. Pharmacol.*, 141, 349–356, 1996.
198. Dixit, V., Darvasi, R., Arthur, M., Lewin, K., and Gitnick, G., Cryopreserved microencapsulated hepatocytes-transplantation studies in Gunn rats, *Transplantation*, 55, 616–622, 1993.
199. Rajotte, R.V., Ao, Z., Korbutt, G.S., Lakey, J.R., Flashner, M., Colby, C.B., and Warnock, G.L., Cryopreservation of microencapsulated canine islets, *Transplant. Proc.*, 27, 3389, 1995.
200. Stensvaag, V., Furmanek, T., Lonning, K., Terzis, A.J., Bjerkvig, R., and Visted, T., Cryopreservation of alginate-encapsulated recombinant cells for antiangiogenic therapy, *Cell Transplant.*, 13, 35–44, 2004.
201. Mahler, S., Desille, M., Fremond, B., Chesne, C., Guillouzo, A., Campion, J.P., and Clement, B., Hypothermic storage and cryopreservation of hepatocytes: The protective effect of alginate gel against cell damages, *Cell Transplant.*, 12, 579–592, 2003.
202. Kuleshova, L.L., Wang, X.W., Wu, Y.N., Zhou, Y., and Yu, H., Vitrification of encapsulated hepatocytes with reduced cooling/warming rates, *Cryo Letters*, 25, 241–254, 2004.
203. Boutron, P. and Mehl, P., Theoretical predictions of devitrification tendency: Determination of critical warming rates using finite expansions, *Cryobiology*, 27, 359–377, 1990.
204. Campbell, L.H., Rutledge, R.N., Taylor, M.J., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Evaluation of the relative cytotoxicity of the components of a vitrification solution in a variety of cardiovascular cells, *Cryobiology,* 39, 362, 1999.
205. Brockbank, K.G.M., Carpenter, J.F., and Dawson, P.E., Effects of storage temperature on viable bioprosthetic heart valves, *Cryobiology*, 29, 537, 1992.
206. Adam, M.J., Hu, F., Lange, P., and Wolfinbarger, L., The effect of liquid nitrogen submersion on cryopreserved human heart valves, *Cryobiology*, 27, 605–614, 1990.
207. Wolfinbarger, L. Jr., Adam, M., Lange, P., and HU, J.F., Microfractures in cryopreserved heart valves: Valve submersion in liquid nitrogen revisited, *Appl. Cryogen. Technol.*, 10, 227–233, 1991.
208. Kroener, C. and Luyet, B., Discontinuous change in expansion coefficient at the glass transition temperature in aqueous solutions of glycerol, *Biodynamica*, 10, 41–45, 1966.
209. Kroener, C. and Luyet, B., Formation of cracks during the vitrification of glycerol solutions and disappearance of the cracks during rewarming, *Biodynamica*, 10, 47–52, 1966.
210. Rubinsky, B., Lee, C., Bastacky, J., and Onik, G. (1987), The process of freezing in the liver and the mechanisms of damage, in *Proceedings, CRYO 87-24th Annual Meeting, Cryobiology,* 24, 583–584.
211. Rajotte, R., Shnitka, T., Liburd, E., Dossetor, J., and Voss, W., Histological studies on cultured canine heart valves recovered from –196°C, *Cryobiology*, 14, 15–22, 1977.
212. Rabin, Y. and Podbilewicz, B., Temperature-controlled microscopy for 4-D imaging of living cells: Apparatus, thermal analysis, and temperature dependency of embryonic elongation in *C. elegans*. *J. Microsc.*, 199, 214–223, 2000.

213. Rabin, Y. and Steif, P.S., Thermal stresses in a freezing sphere and its application to cryobiology. *ASME J. Appl. Mech.*, 65, 328–333, 1998.
214. Rabin, Y. and Steif, P.S., Thermal stress odeling in cryosurgery. *Int. J. Solids aStruct.*, 37, 2363–2375, 2000.
215. Crowe, J.H., Hoekstra, F.A., and Crowe, L.M., Anhydrobiosis, *Ann. Rev. Physiol.*, 54, 579–599, 1993.
216. Crowe, J.H., Carpenter, J.H., and Crowe, L.M., The role of vitrification in anhydrobiosis, *Ann. Rev. Physiol.*, 60, 73–103, 1998.
217. Crowe, J.H., Crowe, L.M., Carpenter, J.F., Rudolf, A.S., Wistrom, C.A., Spargo, B.J., and Anchordoguy, T.J., Interactions of sugars with membranes, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta*, 947, 367–384, 1988.
218. Potts, M., Desiccation tolerance of prokaryotes. *Microbiol. Rev.*, 58, 755–805, 1994.
219. Bieganski, R., Fowler, A., Morgan, J.R., and Toner, M., Stabilization of active recombinant retroviruses in an amorphous dry state with trehalose, *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 14, 615–620, 1998.
220. Womersley, C., Uster, P.S., Rudolph, A.S., and Crowe, J.H., Inhibition of dehydration-induced fusion between liposomal membranes by carbohydrates as measured by fluorescence energy transfer, *Cryobiology*, 23, 245–255, 1986.
221. Eroglu, A., Russo, M.J., Bieganski, R., Fowler, A., Cheley, S., Bayley, H., and Toner, M., Intracellular trehalose improves the survival of cryopreserved mammalian cells, *Nat. Biotechnol.*, 18, 163–167, 2000.
222. Beattie, G.M., Crowe, J.H., Lopez, A.D., Cirulli, V., Ricordi, C., and Hayek, A., Trehalose: A cryoprotectant that enhances recovery and preserves function of human pancreatic islets after long-term storage, *Diabetes*, 46, 519–523, 1997.
223. Campbell, L.H., Sarver, K.A., Hylton, K.R., Sycuro, L., Leman, B., Song, Y.C., and Brockbank, K.G.M., Cell culture in the presence of disaccharides results in good post-thaw viability, presented as a poster at the World Congress of Cryomedicine and Cryobiology, Beijing, China, July 15–19, 2004.
224. Guo, N., Puhlev, I., Brown, D.R., Mansbridge, J., and Levine, F., Trehalose expression confers desiccation tolerance on human cells, *Nat. Biotechnol.*, 18, 168–171, 2000.
225. Wowk, B., Leitl, E., Rasch, C.M., Mesbah-Karimi, N., Harris, S.B., and Fahy, G.M., Vitrification enhancement by synthetic ice blocking agents, *Cryobiology*, 40, 228–236, 2000.

9 Applications: Organ Preservation for Transplantation

Tariq Hafez and Barry Fuller

CONTENTS

197

9.1 INTRODUCTION

The ability to preserve organs outside the body has played a major role in the development of transplant services worldwide over the last 4 decades. Indeed, although the recognition and control of immune responses elicited by the allograft reaction have been central to the success of transplant therapies, equal recognition must be given to preservation technologies that have permitted the retrieval and transport of organs between hospitals in different cities and sometimes in different countries. As stated by Calne and colleagues in the opening line of their report in 1963, "Ischaemic renal damage is extremely important to those interested in cadaveric kidney transplantation and has probably been responsible for more failures than immunological reactions."[1] Without the development of modern preservation protocols, organ transplantation would have remained a very esoteric and infrequent operation. This chapter reviews the history and development of organ preservation, the current status of protocols used in the major transplantable organs, and future avenues that may be pursued.

9.2 HISTORY OF ORGAN TRANSPLANTATION

The scientific challenge of maintaining a functioning organ outside the body has a long history and has been inextricably linked with the expansion of physiology and medicine in the 19th and 20th centuries. An understanding of the essential support provided by the circulatory system fueled attempts to perfuse *in vitro* organs such as the kidney[2] and liver[3] by simple syringe methods, whereas the development of more sophisticated perfusion circuits using artificial pumps allowed detailed physiology of organ function to be studied outside the body.[4] In parallel, investigators started to formulate synthetic perfusates-electrolyte solutions capable of replacing blood, at least in some respects.[5,6] By the 1930s, sufficient significant progress had been made to permit Carrel and Lindbergh to study a range of organs *in vitro*, including kidney, heart, lung, spleen, thyroid, ovary, and fallopian tube at normal body temperatures for several days.[7] Despite this success, these pioneers recognized the limitations of their systems to maintain organ viability without associated perfusion damage (resulting from the inability to completely mimic all the essential support provided by the *in vivo* circulatory system), most often indicated by increasing edema (now known to result from failing microcirculation) and associated hypoxic damage. Thus, an additional safety net for the maintenance of organ viability was sought; this solution proved to be the application of hypothermia.

Although sporadic attempts had been made to transplant organs using microsurgical techniques throughout the early part of the 20th century, it was not until the 1950s that consistent operative success was achieved by Hume and colleagues, most frequently in the kidney.[8] These authors themselves commented on the problems of ischaemic damage to the grafted kidneys and on the negative effect this damage had on postoperative renal function. In the same period, there were coincident reports about the effects of cooling on renal physiology,[9] and others on the protection provided by hypothermia and afforded to kidneys *in vivo* during ischemia.[10] Thus, there were many logical reasons for using hypothermia in organ preservation *in vitro*, and these reasons were applied by Calne et al. to demonstrate that protection of function to the grafted kidney could be achieved.[1] These authors investigated the relative merits of cooling kidneys by simple surface cooling or by perfusion of the renal artery with cooled heparinized blood[11] and concluded that vascular perfusion was more efficient. From these and other early studies,[12] the basic tenets of organ preservation were established (i.e., to perfuse via the vascular bed with a specially selected chilled solution). It was soon established that heparinized or diluted blood, when cooled and used as preservation solution, still led to problems with vascular stasis on reimplantation of the graft, and the next phase of research focused on better solutions to be used for the establishment of *in vitro* hypothermia.

9.3 ORGAN PRESERVATION: THE PROBLEMS OF COOLING AND HYPOXIA

In mammals, up to 70% of basal energy metabolism is concerned with the maintenance of homeostasis, on which all the complex, integrated life processes depend. The control of ion distribution, pH, solute content, and associated osmotic potential within cells all depend on this high-level basal activity, particularly for fueling membrane pumps such as the Na^+/K^+ ATPase. Such significant energy requirements can only be met by oxidative energy production via coupled mitochondrial electron transfer, and thus it is unsurprising that transplantation (requiring removal and manipulation of organs) has such a propensity to induce hypoxic damage. The inescapable need to use energy (in mammalian systems in the form of ATP and phosphocreatine) for homeostasis means that once vascular perfusion with blood is interrupted, ATP levels at normal body temperature fall dramatically within minutes and reach a low plateau value over approximately half an hour.[13] Cells possess various fallback mechanisms to generate energy by hypoxic metabolism, such as anaerobic glycolysis and limited substrate interconversion,[13] but these mechanisms can only provide a small fraction of the required energy supply and can only function for limited periods. Thereafter, the homeostatic controls begin to differentially "unravel," leading to progressively more injury, which

at some point becomes irredeemable, even if the organ is transplanted and blood perfusion reestablished. There has been continuing debate over the last 40 years about which injury is the key factor, but in reality, this factor is an interlinked cascade of hypoxic changes, the sum of which cannot be controlled by any simple means such as administering pharmacological agents. The issue is further complicated because this cascade itself predisposes the cells to additional damage when oxygen is supplied during reperfusion of the transplanted organ, leading to the classically defined ischaemia-reperfusion syndrome. It is beyond the scope of this chapter to describe this syndrome, and several recent reviews have covered this field in detail.[14–18] Detailed discussion can also be found in Chapter 2. It is clear that inhibition of oxidative energy supply (both by deprivation of essential ATP for transmembrane pumping and by structural disruption of the mitochondria that signals secondary damage such as initiation of apoptosis) is one of the most significant factors in the scheme.

The use of cooling to try and control the damaging effects of organ manipulation outside the body is, of course, intuitive, as man has used low-temperature techniques such as ice-packing to slow biodeterioration in foods and crops for thousands of years. Also, many microscopic studies undertaken on cells at reduced temperatures documented the associated decrease in activities, such as motility and streaming of cytoplasm. In current practice, hypothermia in organ preservation is defined as storage at any temperature down to 0°C in the liquid state. (Deep cooling and ice formation are currently not used, but there may soon be developments in this area; these advances will be touched on below and discussed in detail in the chapter by Taylor and colleagues). The empirical studies (such as those by Schloerb et al.[10]) in the middle of the last century demonstrated that mammalian systems could be cooled by hypothermia and then recover function. However, when viewed considering the complexity at normal body temperatures of the multitude of coupled biochemical processes essential for life, it is sometimes difficult to understand how that temperature can be lowered by tens of degrees and then returned to normal without devastating consequences. The secret may partly lie in evolutionary development. Homeotherms may have evolved from earlier ancestors in which body temperature was allowed to fluctuate more widely as the environment changed; this theory is backed by the observation that some of the more primitive current mammalian species (monotremes and marsupials) function at lower and more widely ranging body temperatures.[19] It is also true that the vestigial ability to allow body temperature to fluctuate widely in cold winters in specialized groups of hibernatory mammals indicates that there may be an evolutionary route to the ability to withstand hypothermia, but this is a highly specialized response, in which weeks of metabolic preparation with allied changes in feeding practices, hormone profiles, and molecular and physiological adaptations are necessary for survival at low temperatures.[20,21] This process is vastly different from the immediate requirement for cooling in transplantation, which is one reason why it has been difficult to translate research on hibernation into applied hypothermia in organ preservation.[22]

The physiological basis for the depression of metabolism was established by the work of Arrhenius[23] and modified for biological processes by authors such as Heilbrunn.[24] Many important biochemical reactions require prior activation of the participating molecules; that is, molecules possessing sufficient energy to take part in the process (this is why cellular energy balance is so important in all life processes). Cooling (by removing energy in the form of heat) reduces the proportion of activated molecules, which can be expressed in the relationship between reaction rate (V) and temperature (T, in degrees absolute), where R is the gas constant, E_a is the activation energy and A a constant:

$$V = A^{\exp}(E_a/RT).$$

Results of a specific metabolic reaction during cooling, when plotted as Logn V against $1/T$ provide a linear relationship with a slope of E_a/R. This can be used to give the activation energy of the specific reaction (assuming a single, rate-limiting step). Over the temperature range used for

organ preservation (from body temperature to 0°C), many biochemical processes in mammalian systems do not produce a single linear Arrhenius relationship on cooling but, rather, express a curvilinear or "broken" plot, with a shift to higher activation energies (i.e., a slower overall rate) at temperatures below about 20°C.[25,26] See also Chapter 2. The depression caused by cooling can also be quantified as the Q_{10} relationship,[24] in which the fall in reaction rate for a 10°C temperature drop is calculated. For many biochemical reactions, the Q_{10} between 40°C and 20°C is about 2, whereas between 20°C and 0°C the value increases to between 3 and 5. Taken together, these observations have been interpreted as the increasing and additive effects of cooling on cellular ultrastructure that affect biochemical processes. (For example, many important biological reactions are catalyzed by enzymes embedded in the membrane lipid bilayers or require substrate exchange across such bilayers.)

It should be stressed here that most of these physiological studies on cooling were performed on systems that were aerobically respiring.[9] The complicating effects of hypoxia (as experienced by organs removed from the body for transplantation) can be seen as an additional metabolic challenge. In simple terms, hypothermia can be aerobic or anaerobic; even under aerobic conditions there is a depression of all metabolic activity, and true, long-term adaptation to cold (as in hibernation) requires a level of complexity far greater than simply applying low temperatures. It is this deficit between the aspirations of the transplant surgeon and the ability of the organ to survive the storage period that has been the driving force for the modern studies in organ preservation.

9.4 COOLING AND CELLULAR ENERGETICS

Mitochondrial electron transport and ATP production are surprisingly robust in mammalian cells after cooling. For example, it has been known for some time[27] that in kidneys subjected to oxygenated hypothermic perfusion for up to 48 hours, both the total content of adenine nucleotides and relative ratios of ATP to lower phosphorylated-state adenine nucleotides could be maintained unchanged compared to those measured in kidneys at normal body temperatures. This is true metabolic turnover, rather than a static maintenance of an existing pool, as indicated by experiments on liver.[28] In organs previously depleted of ATP by cold hypoxic storage, a progressive restoration of ATP over several minutes could be shown when oxygenated perfusion was resumed. It has also been known for some time that ATP is consumed at hypothermia for homeostatic ion pumping,[29] as addition of uncoupling agents in stable, oxygenated organs caused a massive release of intracellular potassium. Similar effects of ion-transport inhibitors on energy consumption have been demonstrated in the hypothermic kidney.[30] It is necessary to recognize that measurements of cell energy supply are always a balance between production and consumption, such that the "normal" status measured in these organs can equally be attributed to a lowered energy consumption at hypothermia, which is just balanced by a lower (but adequate) activity of mitochondrial electron transport. Other methods of oxygen supply at hypothermia (such as persufflation) will be discussed later (see Section 9.10) and have similar positive effects on energy turnover. However, the central tenet holds that oxygen is still essential, even at cold temperatures.

Once oxygen is restricted, in the cold, flush-stored organ, cooling itself provides minimal protection of energy balance. The switch to anaerobic metabolism via glycolysis produces low yields of ATP, which at normal body temperature can in no way match the requirements for continued homeostatic control, such that, within a few minutes, ATP falls to very low levels.[13,31] Cooling, by the relative Q_{10} depression of all metabolic processes, delays this energy collapse by a factor of about 8, or put in another way, adenine nucleotide status fell within about 240 minutes to the equivalent of about 30 minutes at 37°C.[13]

Although a continued energy supply can permit many of the essential homeostatic controls of ion gradients and pH, it is easy to foresee that other, more complicated multistep processes such as protein synthesis may be more susceptible to cooling; this is, in fact, the case. It is difficult to detect synthesis of new proteins in response to a specific inducer much below about 20°C.[32]

9.5 EFFECTS OF COOLING ON CELL STRUCTURE

All essential cell metabolism depends on the separation of discrete chemical reactions into specific compartments by the selective properties of biological membranes (comprising phospholipid bilayers and proteins in a liquid crystalline or fluid state at normal body temperatures[33]). Lipids generally are known to undergo a phase transition to a gel state on cooling, and in the complex mixtures of lipid classes in biological membranes, cooling induces a thermotropic separation of the different lipid classes as the respective melting point of a particular lipid is passed. This leads to demixing and lateral phase separation into gel and liquid crystalline phases in the plane of the membrane, and also an exclusion of integral proteins from the gel-phase areas.[34] Such gel formation acts to decrease global membrane fluidity[35] and may also lead to increased solute leakiness through membranes in which such packing faults have occurred. Cooling has been reported to increase transmembrane diffusion of many solutes from small ions to larger molecules, such as disaccharide sugars.[36] The change in fluidity affects the kinetics of many membrane-bound enzymes, such as the Na^+/K^+ ATPase, in which it was shown that cooling of the enzyme when bound in the membrane had a greater inhibitory effect than when the enzyme was a free protein in solution.[37]

Cooling has the potential to alter the cytoskeletal arrangement in mammalian cells. The maintenance of internal structures such as microtubules or microfilaments relies on a sensitive interplay of ion balances, energy status and temperature. In isolated hepatocytes, microtubules were shown to de-polymerize and F-actin from microfilaments to precipitate during storage at 4°C.[38] Alteration in the colloid content of the preservation solution could beneficially modulate these changes. A similar change in hepatocyte microtubules was reported by Kim & Southard,[39] which again could be modified by drug action. In kidney cells, a cold-induced disruption of microtubules was also observed,[40] and was associated with a redistribution of integral membrane proteins.

Mitochondria are also sensitive to reduced temperatures during organ preservation, and swelling or vacuolization has been demonstrated by electron microscopy in experiments on kidney[41] and liver[42] storage. Membrane reorganization with loss of electron chain complexes has also been reported[43] (see Figure 9.1).

Calcium, which is normally sequestered in both endoplasmic reticulum and mitochondria, is also known to be released, significantly increasing cytosolic free-calcium concentrations.[44] Particularly during cold hypoxic storage, conditions prevail that may stimulate the opening of the mitochondrial transition pore,[44] which may result in release of cytochrome C and stimulation of cell death via apoptosis, particularly during the rewarming phase after preservation[45,46] (see also following discussion).

Cooling may also affect the molecular organization at the level of specific proteins. Some enzymes, notably those that are multisubunit enzymes, are susceptible to cold-related inactivation by dissociation.[47] The pK of specific ionizable groups of proteins may alter with lowered temperature, which affects associated reactions within and between proteins. There is also a noted shift in the pK of the most common protein-associated ionizable groups (the -imidazole group of peptide histidine residues), which characteristically appears as an apparent shift in pH (by a factor of about 0.017 pH unit/°C, on cooling from 37°C). This is not a true alkalinization, because the effect is to maintain the relative degree of ionization of the α-imidazole pool, which is the major intracellular protein-associated buffer. The apparent shift in pH can be demonstrated by techniques such as whole-organ nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy and is evident even in those organs in which energy metabolism is supported by oxygenated hypothermic perfusion.[48] Other changes may involve proteins associated with binding transition metals, particularly iron. There is growing evidence that iron-associated free radical effects are an important source of cold-preservation damage.[49,50] Normally, non-protein-associated chelatable pools of iron are very low, but following hypoxic cold preservation, this "free" iron has been shown to increase.[46,51] This has been suggested to play a role in apoptosis and cell death.[50]
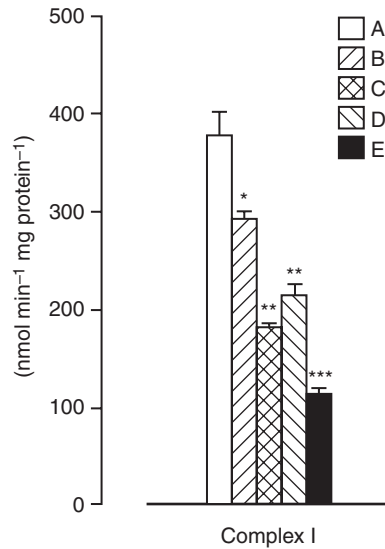
FIGURE 9.1 Hypothermic storage and transplantation and the activity of hepatic mitochondrial complex 1. Figure shows mean ± SEM; □: Untreated liver controls ($n = 8$); □: 25 minutes storage ($n = 8$); □: 24-hour storage ($n = 6$); □: 25 minutes of storage plus transplantation ($n = 7$); ■: 24-hour storage plus transplantation ($n = 8$); *Statistical significance $P < .05$, **$P < .01$, ***$P < .001$ against controls. The activity of complex 1 decreased significantly with cold storage and was further reduced following *in vivo* reperfusion at each preservation period. (Sammut, I.A., et al., Impairment of hepatic mitochondrial respiratory function following storage and orthotopic transplantation of rat livers, *Cryobiology*, 36, 49, 1998. With permission.)

The destabilization of homeostasis when hypoxia is coupled with cooling leads to a predictably complex cascade of biochemical events that eventually become irreversible (see Figure 9.2). Progressive dephosphorylation of ATP results in accumulation of breakdown products such as purines and nucleoside bases (e.g., inosine, hypoxanthine, and xanthine), which can diffuse from the cell. The internal pH falls toward acid conditions as the switch to anaerobic glycolysis fuels accumulation of lactate. Failure of energy-linked transmembrane pumps results in an inward flux of Na^+ (enhanced by resident anions on intracellular proteins) and Cl^-, leading to associated water influx and cell swelling. Phosphate levels increase as a result of the dephosphorylation events, and control of other actively transported ions (such as calcium and magnesium) is lost. The high-free calcium levels can cause mitochondrial damage and activate degradative enzymes (such as phospholipases and nonlysosomal proteases), which destabilize membranes, accelerating the abnormal leakage of solutes. Taken together with the lowered pH, which also favors the activation of lysosomal digestive enzymes by destabilizing lysosomal membranes, an autodigestive state is enhanced. Depending on the time and conditions experienced during cold hypoxia, progressive cell death by both necrosis and apoptosis has been observed. The endothelial cell compartment of many organs is particularly sensitive to cold hypoxic preservation, leading to membrane blebbing, cell detachment, and blockage of the microcirculation. Residual blood cells within the vascular bed also become swollen and act to plug the capillary network. More detailed observations on the various effects of this cold hypoxic syndrome can be found in several reviews,[52–55] and a schematic representation is shown in Figure 9.2. This extensive biochemical understanding is beginning to be supplemented by molecular studies that indicate that cooling itself may activate specific signaling pathways that can drive transcription of selected genes on rewarming.[56,57]
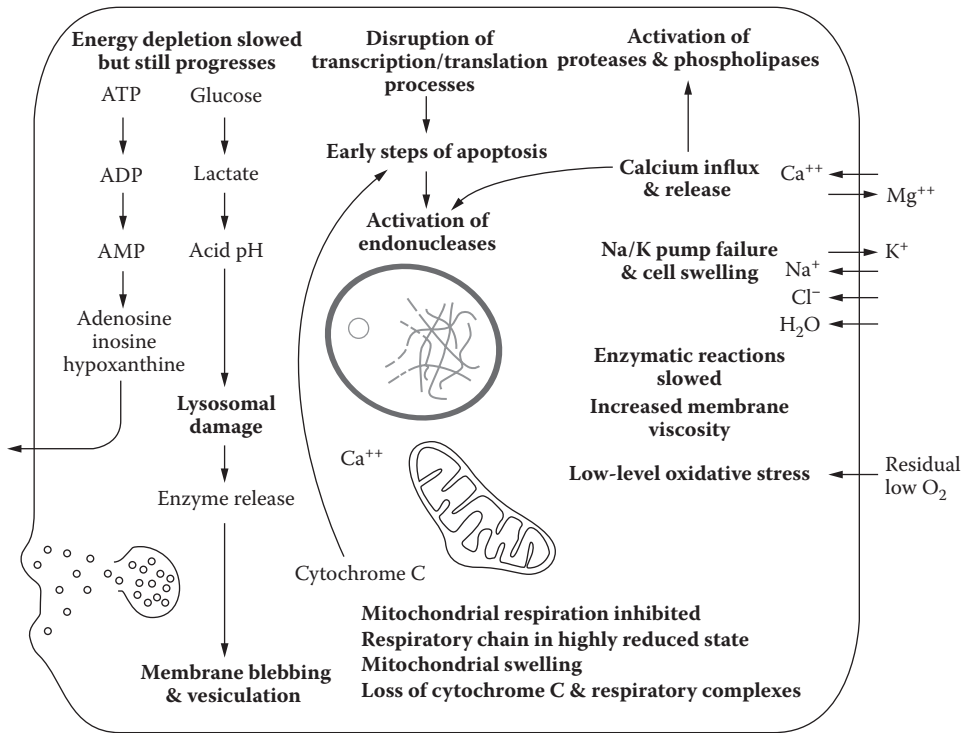
FIGURE 9.2 A schematic of a cell during cold hypoxia. Aerobic energy consumption is reduced but not completely inhibited by the cold hypoxia, whereas ATP production is greatly reduced. ATP breakdown products accumulate and can diffuse from the cell, whereas residual anaerobic glycolysis increases hydrogen ion accumulation. Membrane ion pumps fail because of a lack of energy supply and inhibition from cold-induced alterations in local membrane microviscosity, leading to influx of sodium (and chloride), loss of potassium, and increase in calcium. Ion and pH changes activate digestive enzymes with damage to membranes (including the cell membrane and organelle membranes, such as those of the mitochondria). Cell and mitochondrial swelling gradually increase, with loss of solutes such as cytochrome C from mitochondria, leading to activation of apoptosis. Hypoxia results in the establishment of a highly reduced electron transport chain, which can interact with low residual levels of oxygen to produce oxidative stress.

9.6 EFFECTS OF COOLING: ENHANCING REPERFUSION INJURY

The multitude of changes described above that occur during the cold storage period (especially in the hypoxic state) predispose the organ to further injury during the early rewarming phase. These additional events have been collectively termed reperfusion injury or ischaemia/reperfusion injury (IR). The syndrome has been recognized since the early days of organ preservation and was then called the "no-reflow phenomenum."[58] A great deal of information on the driving forces for the development of IR injury (which occurs after both warm and cold hypoxia) has been accumulated over the past decade,[14–18] and a full description is beyond this scope of this chapter, but it is worth summarizing some of the major points.

Many of the mechanisms are central to all situations, but individual factors (such as calcium-induced contracture of cardiac muscle) are particularly obvious in specific organs.[59] Mitochondria are as important in IR injury as they are in preservation injury. The conditions during reperfusion can favor a more substantial and prolonged opening of the mitochondrial transition pore following loss of calcium homeostasis,[60,61] leading to apoptosis or impaired electron transport and failure of ATP regeneration. Impaired mitochondrial function also leads to inefficient transfer of electrons and generation of oxygen free radicals when oxygen is resupplied on revascularization, adding to

a generalized oxidative stress[62] from multiple causes. Delocalization of catalytically available free iron can enhance oxygen free radical (OFR) formation.[46,63] One of the earliest proposals for OFR production during reperfusion injury was that of the breakdown products of adenine nucleotides, particularly to xanthine and hypoxanthine, interacting with the xanthine oxidase enzyme to liberate OFR,[64] and this scenario is still being evaluated today.[65] Endothelial cells within the vascular bed of the reperfusing organ will generate nitric oxide (itself a radical) as part of the physiological control of vascular tone, and this additional radical may interact with other OFR to produce harmful adducts such as peroxynitrite.[66] In specific situations, cell subsets (such as Kupffer cells in the liver[67] or mesangial cells in the kidney[68]) can be activated by IR to release additional sources of OFR or contribute directly to the inflammatory response, in addition to effects caused by influx of neutrophils within the recirculating blood (see Figure 9.3).

In fact, a secondary sequence of changes results from interaction between the damaged organ and the host's blood system during reperfusion. The variable redox status of the organ at this time can activate various transcription factors such as hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF-1) and nuclear factor kappa B, which control production of inflammatory markers.[69] The effects can also enhance local synthesis of cytokines and chemokines, attracting leukocytes to the organ. The same agents activate expression of cell adhesion molecules on the cells of the reperfusing organ,[70] which increases binding of leukocytes, particularly neutrophils, and magnifies the inflammatory response. Neutrophils themselves produce OFR and other agents such as proteases, which can enhance the degree of IR,[71] with additional stimulus for platelet activation resulting in blockage of the micro-circulation.

This combination of preservation- and reperfusion-related injuries can have negative effects on graft function well beyond the immediate poststorage period. There is increasing evidence that the stimulation of the IR inflammatory cascade may produce a prolonged activation of the host's immune system (beyond that produced directly by the allograft reaction to the foreign organ), producing progressive fibrotic change, which eventually results in deteriorating graft function or loss.[72] These consequences explain why so much effort over the last 2 decades has been placed on developing preservation solutions, with pharmacological additives (discussed in the following text), to ameliorate the damage.

9.7 A COMPARISON TO NATURAL COLD AND HYPOXIC SURVIVAL

Although hibernation and natural cold tolerance are complex fields too detailed to discuss in depth here, there are a few points that are worth making in comparison to the aims of organ preservation techniques. As discussed above, the maintenance of cellular homeostasis is as important for the survival of cold- and hypoxia-tolerant species as it is to normal homeotherms. Across the spectrum of species that survive in extreme environments (from lower vertebrates such as turtles to true hibernators such as ground squirrels on the North American continent), the necessity is to balance energy consumption with production under conditions in which oxygen and nutrients may be limiting. This requires a range of responses that have been defined as defense and rescue.[73] There are integrated gene-regulated responses that downregulate energy consumption in the resting condition to a new hypometabolic state.[74] The changes range from alterations in membrane channel activity in individual cells[73] to a whole-body response from pH change.[75] Although many lower species (such as turtle) have a relatively efficient capability to harness glycolysis and other secondary fermentations, it is instructive to note that the majority of mammalian hibernators strive to maintain oxidative metabolism (albeit at a low rate) — they perform intermittent breathing motions while in deep hibernation.[76] It has also been found that many hibernators go through several brief arousal periods during the hibernation season[76] that could indicate a need for the rescue of essential metabolic pathways required for the essential homeostasis. In all species there appears the need for the maintenance of a small, consolidated, turnover of ATP — energy metabolism cannot be completely silenced even in the best-adapted species but must be maintained at a low "pilot light"
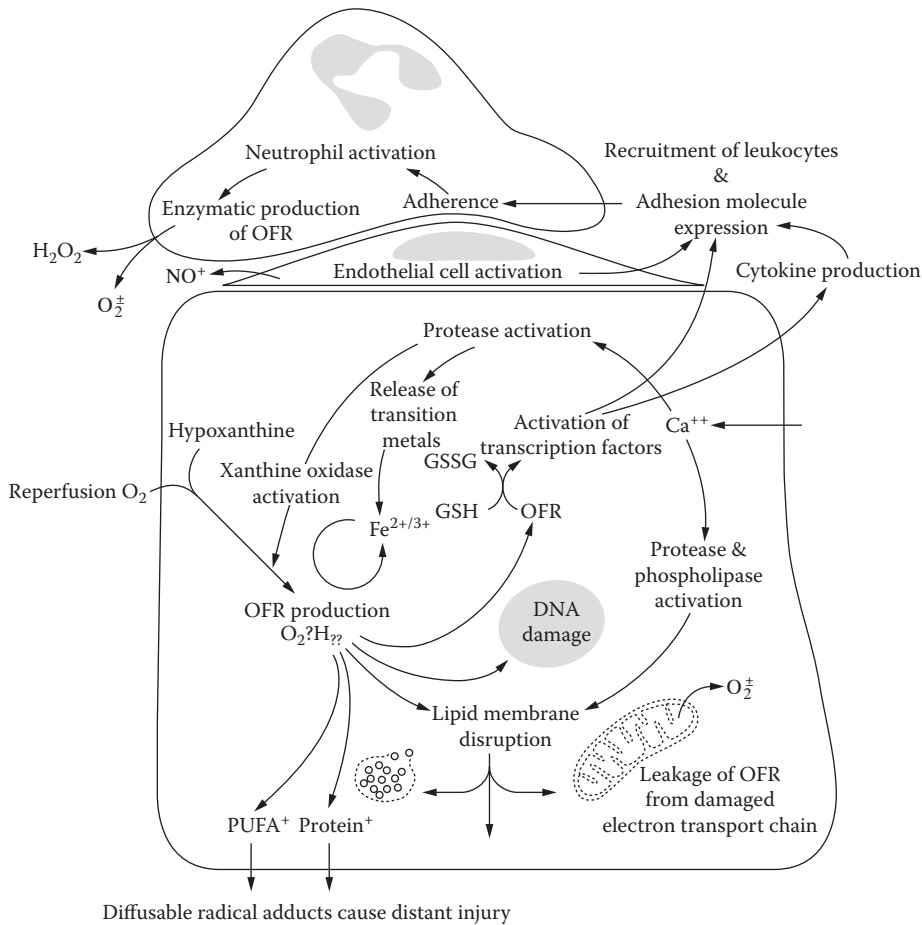
FIGURE 9.3 A schematic of the pathways for oxygen free radical (OFR) production following cold hypoxic preservation. The increase in oxygen resulting from reestablishment of oxygen supply can interact with products of ATP breakdown in the xanthine oxidase reaction, liberating superoxide ($O_2^.$). Damaged mitochondria also liberate OFR from the electron transport chain. Calcium imbalance (progressive on that from cold preservation) increases activation of degradative enzymes, with release of transition metals from storage proteins. Redox cycling of the transition metals with oxygen and OFR can enhance overall OFR load and yield other radical sources such as hydroxyl radical ($OH^.$). Accumulation of OFR and oxidized intermediates (e.g., glutathione) activates transcription factors with production of cytokines, chemokines, and the adhesion molecule cascade. This inflammatory milieu results in recruitment of leukocytes and activation of endothelial cells, which themselves contribute to OFR (oxygen-centered radicals from granulocytes and nitrogen-centered radicals from endothelial cells). The OFR load overwhelms intracellular antioxidant defenses, resulting in damage to polyunsaturated lipids, proteins, and nucleic acids. Combined with digestive enzyme activity, these can be released in significant quantities into the circulation and result in specific distant damage (e.g., to the lungs) or multiorgan failure. Redox disbalance also enhances progressive apoptotic change.

level of ATP regeneration.[73] Given these intriguing responses, there may be lessons to be learned from hibernating species in applied organ preservation. Some work has been performed in this area,[22] but much remains to be understood.

9.8 PRESERVATION STRATEGIES

The sudden arrival of clinical kidney transplantation in 1962–1963 was so unexpected that little collateral research or other formal preparation had been made to preserve organs.[77] Although kidneys were successfully transplanted in the pioneer identical twin cases despite protracted periods of warm ischemia, the maturation of clinical transplantation could not proceed without effective organ conservation.[77] This conservation was at first accomplished by total body hypothermia of living volunteer kidney donors,[78] using methods developed by cardiac surgeons for open heart operations.[79] In the experimental laboratory, Lillehei et al. simply immersed the excised intestine in iced saline before its autotransplantation,[80] a method also used by Shumway when developing experimental and clinical heart and heart–lung transplantation.[81–83] Thus the principle of hypothermia was understood at an early time, although not efficiently applied.

The first major innovation in hypothermia was in the laboratory when canine liver allografts were cooled through the infusion of chilled fluids into the vascular bed of hepatic allografts via the portal vein.[84] Before this time, after liver transplantation, dogs almost never survived, whereas after this technical innovation, success became routine. In a logical extension of this knowledge to clinical kidney transplantation, in 1963 the practice of infusing chilled lactated Ringer's or low-molecular-weight dextran solutions into the renal artery of kidney grafts immediately after their removal was introduced.[85] The solution described by Collins, Bravo-Shugarman, and Terasaki,[86] resembling intracellular electrolyte concentrations, or modifications of it, was the first notable advance in organ preservation and was used for almost 2 decades. Renal allograft preservation was feasible for 1–2 days, long enough to allow tissue matching and sharing of organs over a wide geographic area. Experiments with hepatic allografts by Benichou et al.[85] using the Collins-Terasaki solution, and by Wall et al.[87] with the plasma-like Schalm solution, led directly to liver sharing among cities, but with a time limitation of only 2–8 hours.

Today, intravascular cooling is the first step in the preservation of all whole-organ grafts. For cadaver donors, this is most often done *in situ* by some variant of the technique described originally by Marchioro et al.[88] Ackermann and Snell[89] and Merkel, Jonasson, and Bergan[90] popularized the simpler core cooling of cadavers with cold electrolyte solutions infused into the distal aorta.

Until 1981, transplantation of the extrarenal organs was an unusual event. By late 1981, however, it had become obvious that liver and thoracic organ-transplant procedures were going to be widely used. A method of multiple-organ procurement was required by which the kidneys, liver, heart, and lungs — or various combinations of these organs — could be removed without jeopardizing any of the individual organs. Flexible techniques were developed[91,92] that were quickly adopted worldwide. With these methods, all organs to be transplanted are cooled *in situ*, rapidly removed in a bloodless field, and dissected on a back table. Fluids of differing osmotic, oncotic, and electrolyte composition are infused into the allograft before placing it in a refrigerated container.[86,93] Introduction of the University of Wisconsin solution (UW) to liver transplantation by Belzer, Jamieson, and Kalayoglu[94,95] was the next major development in static preservation. The superiority of the UW for preservation of the kidney and other organs was promptly demonstrated in experimental models and confirmed in clinical trials.[96–100] The UW preservation doubled or tripled the time of safe preservation of the various allografts, making national and international sharing of most organs an economic and practical objective.

From the above discussions, it will have become apparent that there is a fundamental choice to be made in applied organ preservation: whether to supply oxygen to sustain low-level oxidative metabolism and energy-consuming homeostatic control of the intracellular milieu or whether to allow hypoxia to develop and attempt to modulate the inevitable biochemical changes such that organ viability is maintained for a practically useful period. Hypothermia is central to both approaches, but thereafter they differ in complexity, portability, and cost. There are some general approaches for correcting hypothermic damage, and these approaches will be outlined here. Specific

compositions of preservation solutions for static or perfusion preservation will be discussed in Sections 9.9 and 9.10.

9.8.1 MAINTAINING HOMEOSTASIS IN PRESERVATION

9.8.1.1 Oxygenation

Static cold storage cannot supply oxygen, whereas continuous organ perfusion with an asanguinous-oxygenated perfusion can provide adequate oxygen for a hypothermic organ's low metabolic requirements. In the kidney, perfusion with oxygenated Fluosol may improve preservation further, whereas retrograde oxygen persufflation has proven to be a useful adjunct to static preservation in experimental studies but has not yet gained wide acceptance because of the fear of increased endothelial vascular damage.[101]

9.8.1.2 Nutrition

Glucose is often incorporated as a metabolic fuel, but amino acids, fatty acids, ATP, and adenosine have also been added, particularly in perfusion preservation. Complete oxidative phosphorylation may require such additional supplements[102] during perfusion. Adenosine was found to be an essential additive in the UW[103] for static storage, although its vasoactive properties may also have facilitated the flushing procedure. During hypoxic storage, provision of substrates such as fructose has been shown in experimental studies to prolong the synthesis of ATP for a limited period[104] (see Figure 9.4).

9.8.1.3 pH Maintenance

Flushing solutions with good buffering capacities are generally used for static cold storage (e.g., phosphate, citrate, and histidine). Bicarbonate buffering, which is generally used for continuous perfusion, requires continuous provision of carbon dioxide and is not as effective in the pH range 7.1–7.8, but protein in the perfusate can offer additional buffering capacity. Other components of static flush solutions such as citrate, phosphate, and lactobionate have limited buffering capabilities. Histidine is an efficient buffer at low temperatures and forms the basis of Bretschneider's solution,[105] now widely used for static preservation of kidneys in Europe. The addition of glucose to solutions for static preservation may be counterproductive if lactate production is enhanced and acidosis develops. Such additions for continuous perfusions can prove effective because acid catabolites are continually diluted and washed out of the organ.

9.8.1.4 Prevention of Cellular Edema

The use of solutions containing slowly permeable (e.g., mannitol and glucose) or impermeable (e.g., sucrose and raffinose) solutes helps reduce edema during both static and perfusion storage. Further advantage can be obtained by replacing the permeable anion, chloride, with an impermeable anion (e.g., lactobionate or gluconate). The gradients affecting loss of potassium and magnesium and influx of sodium can be minimized by preservation solutions containing high intracellular concentrations of potassium and magnesium and low concentrations of sodium. However, sodium/potassium ratios for static and perfusion storage can be reversed without significant ill effect.

9.8.1.5 Modification of Cellular Calcium

Diltiazem, a calcium antagonist, has attracted attention because it increases renal blood flow[106] and prevents an influx of calcium. In the kidney, diltiazem has been shown to reduce the incidence of acute tubular necrosis (ATN) when incorporated in EuroCollins' (EC) flush-out solution, administered during kidney procurement and after transplantation.[107] Another calcium antagonist,
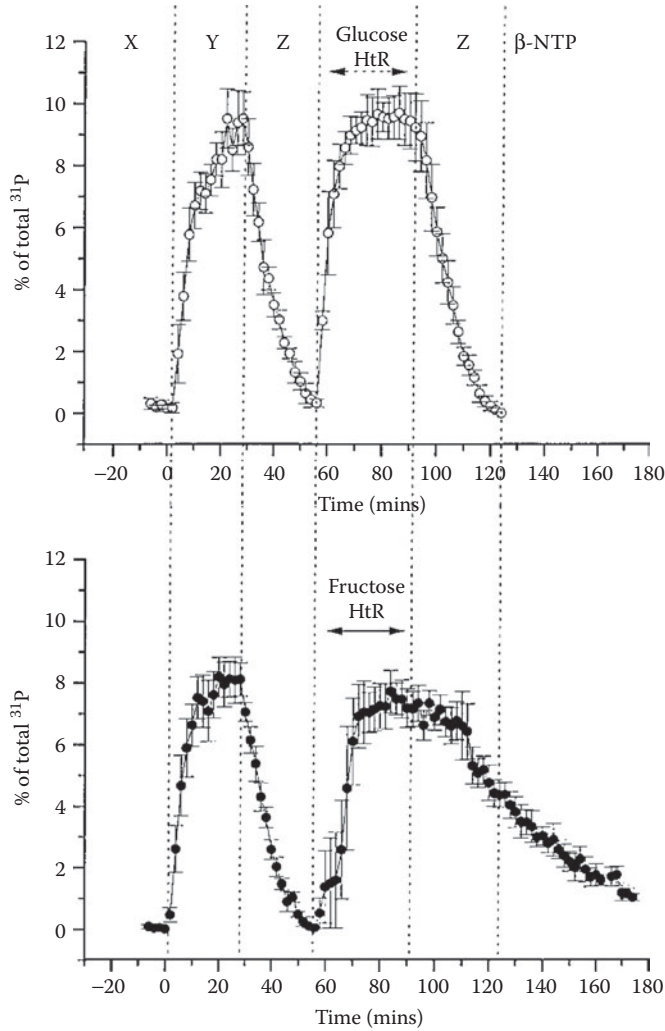
FIGURE 9.4 Real-time changes in hepatic NTP (nucleoside triphosphates that are mostly ATP) following liver isolation and reperfusion with glucose and fructose substrates. Real-time changes in hepatic NTP following liver isolation (X), cycle 1 hypothermic reperfusion (HtR) with no substrate (Y), cycles 1 and 2 of hypoxia (Z), and cycle 2 of reperfusion with added substrate (Glucose HtR [○]; Fructose HtR [●]). (In the liver, NTP signals are almost wholly composed of signals from ATP moieties.) Changes are normalized to the total phosphorous signal, which remains constant throughout the experimental protocol, and are shown as mean ± SE for $n = 5$ in each group of porcine livers. Oxygenated hypothermic reperfusion resulted in significant synthesis of ATP from baseline, nondetectable levels following hypoxia. By $t = 120$ minutes in the second cycle of hypoxia, NTP became undetectable in the glucose group. In the fructose group, NTP signals were present for longer periods, and the observation time was extended to $t = 180$; under these conditions, fructose acted to prolong support for NTP synthesis via anaerobic glycolysis. (Changani, K., et al., Enhanced energy metabolism at hypothermia following addition of a prostacyclin derivative in porcine liver, *Cryo-Lett.*, 19, 131, 1998. With permission.)

verapamil, has similar protective properties.[108] Incorporation of phenothiazines such as trifluoper-azine into flushing solutions has also been used to inhibit the activation of the calcium–calmodulin complex[109] and has improved kidney preservation.

9.8.1.6 Antioxidants

Several strategies have been tested to limit free-radical formation after reperfusion of the graft. Allopurinol, a xanthine oxidase inhibitor, has been added to the preserving solution or administered to the donor and recipient, with inconclusive results.[110,111] Its omission from UW was found to be deleterious[103] to renal function. Free-radical scavengers glutathione and ascorbate have also been included in some preservation solutions, but the efficacy of such additives may be limited by their instability in the presence of atmospheric oxygen during production or storage of the solution. Mannitol, polyethylene glycol, histidine, and tryptophane have also been used. The iron-chelating agent deferoxamine has been an effective additive to the perfusate for machine preservation of canine kidneys for 48 hours with 30 minutes of warmischaemia (WI).[112]

The effect of hypothermia on enzymes and membranes cannot easily be manipulated. In nature, such modification is a characteristic of hibernating animals that can withstand low temperatures for long periods with no damage. Kidneys from hibernating squirrels can be preserved for 10 days and maintain metabolic activity comparable to that measured after only 3 days from nonhibernating squirrels.[113]

9.8.2 Donor Factors in Organ Preservation

Although the main thrust of this chapter has been the changes imposed on individual organs by cold preservation, there are some factors inherent in the donor from which the organs have been removed that affect storage outcome.

9.8.2.1 Brain Death

The primary source of solid-organ transplants has become brain-dead cadaveric donors. Although brain death has been well defined neurologically, knowledge of the systemic changes that follow this massive central injury remains limited. Growing interest in the pathophysiology of the condition and its effects on function of peripheral organs has led to a number of experimental and clinical studies designed to elucidate the complexity of hemodynamic, neurohumoral, and immunologic alterations that may develop. The first major studies of the effects of brain death on the structure and function of organs to be transplanted were carried out by Wicomb et al.[114,115] in the early 1980s, stimulated by an observation made in the first patient to receive a donor heart that had been stored by continuous hypothermic perfusion.[114] After heterotopic transplantation, this heart, which had been hypothermically perfused and stored for over 12 hours, did not function for almost 24 hours, in direct contrast to observations made in baboons receiving orthotopic transplants of hearts that had been stored under identical conditions for periods of 24 hours.[114] The significant difference between these clinical and experimental studies was that although in the baboons the donor hearts were excised from healthy, anesthetized animals, the human heart had been obtained from a brain-dead donor. In numerous studies in both baboons and pigs, the Cape Town group confirmed and expanded on Cushing's observations (made in 1901) on the hemodynamic consequences of an increase in intracranial pressure, often associated with brain death. Inflation of the balloon of a Foley catheter (placed within the skull) resulted in the typical features of the "autonomic storm," which have been fully described previously.[114,115] This intense stimulation of the autonomic nervous system resulted in major electrocardiographic and hemodynamic abnormalities[114] and even in structural damage to the myocardium and lungs.[115] Novitzky's group also documented significant reductions in the circulating levels of certain hormones, notably free triiodothyronine (fT3), cortisol, and insulin,[114,115] which in turn led to major metabolic disturbances.[115] Anaerobic metabolism replaced aerobic metabolism, myocardial high-energy stores were depleted, lactate was accumulated, and organ function deteriorated.

Brain death involves a syndrome that includes rapid swings in blood pressure, hypotension, coagulopathies, pulmonary changes, hypothermia, and electrolyte aberrations.[116] The hemodynamic changes are well recognized. Hypotension following brain death is a common phenomenon necessitating intensive stabilization. It has been confirmed in rats that brain death produces noradrenalin levels that are 22-fold and adrenalin levels that are 148-fold of baseline.[117] This increase in catecholamines was followed by altered organ perfusion secondary to elevated vascular resistance (kidney fourfold, spleen ninefold, liver twofold to those resistance levels seen in control conditions). Fifteen minutes after central injury, the mean blood pressure and vascular resistance decreased below normal, indicating increasing anoxia. Vasoconstriction during the initial events is severe, and a significant reduction in flow to peripheral organs occurs despite the highly increased perfusion pressure; the combination results in ischemia.[118,119] Elevated catecholamine levels secondary to brain death appear to cause major histopathologic and functional effects in organs, best identified in the heart.[116] Cardiac lesions include petechial hemorrhage in the subendocardium, contraction bands, and coagulative myocytolysis, which is also found in patients dying of acute cerebral injury as well as in experimental animals following catecholamine administration.

The type of brain death appears to influence subsequent events. The effects of brain death are less severe following brain death caused by a gradual increase in intracranial pressure,[119] where there is a transient decrease in the heart rate but no changes in other hemodynamic parameters and less severe morphologic changes of heart tissue. This variable course of hemodynamic instability appears to be the result of the extent of brain stem lesions. These differences are emphasized by multivariate analysis, which shows that both primary and long-term results of organ transplantation are dependent on the etiology of brain death in the donor. The prognosis for graft success is poorest when the donor has died of acute intracerebral hemorrhage, where there is an explosive increase of intracranial pressure and hemodynamic instablity.[120] In addition, administration of exogenous catecholamines to brain-dead donors is followed by less satisfactory survival and initial graft function after allotransplantation.[121]

Little is know about the effects of brain death on cytokine activation of peripheral organs. Examination of the presence of cytokines in the circulation of brain-dead patients showed increased interleukin 6 levels[122] and upregulation of transcriptional levels of tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) and interleukin 6 in association with episodes of transient focal cerebral ischemia.[123] It has been suggested that organs experiencing warm ischemia because of hemodynamic deterioration of brain-dead donors, and subsequently cold ischemia during storage, express higher levels of cytokines than those from ideal living donors by the time they are transplanted. Recent experimental studies investigating the relation between brain death and the activation of peripheral organs have demonstrated that an explosive increase in intracranial pressure in rats rapidly upregulates various lymphocyte and macrophage-derived cytokines on peripheral organs.[124] Upregulation of MHC class II and I complexes and the costimulatory molecule B7 indicates that the immunogenicity of injured organs was increased.

The hypothesis that brain death increases the immunogenicity of solid organs is further supported by clinical findings that indicate that the incidence and severity of acute rejection are greater among cadaveric organs than among those from living donor sources. This would explain the apparent synergy noted clinically between the effects of initial delayed graft function and acute rejection episodes. Whether brain death–associated activation of donor organs is mediated via neurohormonal, circulating cytokines or by hemodynamic events following central destruction remains unanswered.

9.8.2.2 Warm Ischemic Time and Non-Heart-Beating Donors

The standard organ retrieval procedure from cadaveric donors diagnosed with brain death, but still maintaining a cardiac circulation, produces minimal warm ischaemia before the organ cooling and preservation. However, the growing imbalance between organs available for transplantation and

needy patients has led to consideration of using organs from less favorable situations — the so-called marginal donors. Within this group are donors who have gone into sudden cardiac arrest and those in whom supportive therapy has been withdrawn on ethical grounds but who do not fulfill brain-death criteria. In these situations, considerable agonal ischemia (up to 1 hour) may be experienced before organs can be surgically removed and cooled — this group has become known as the non-heart-beating donor pool.[125] It is beyond the scope of this chapter to discuss these issues, but information can be found in several recent publications.[126,127] However, there is considerable evidence that factors such as donor organ age and agonal warm ischemia may become additive insults, on top of preservation injury, which can negatively influence the long-term outcome of the graft.[72] At present, kidneys are the most frequently used organs from non-heart-beating donors, although liver donation is also possible in selected cases.[128] In relation to organ preservation, it is usual practice now for kidneys from non-heart-beating donors to be assessed during hypothermic perfusion preservation[129] (see Section 9.10). This allows the possibility of avoiding the transplantation of organs that have been seriously damaged by the warm ischaemic insult, on the grounds of poor perfusion characteristics or high levels of released enzymes (indicating renal cell damage) into the perfusate. However, there are not yet universally accepted viability tests on which to base this decision. Perfusion preservation also allows the possibility of the resuscitation of the prior ischaemic damage in organs; for example, by stimulating resynthesis of ATP via aerobic metabolism, which is possible even at hypothermia.[28] This has been demonstrated in many experimental studies but has yet to be established in the clinical situation[130] (see Figure 9.5), although the value of hypothermic perfusion versus simple cold storage has been shown in some clinical reports.[131] Predictions of improved long-term results using cold perfusion have long appeared in statistical models,[132] but as this is a relatively recent activity in transplantation, the true results will not be available for some years.
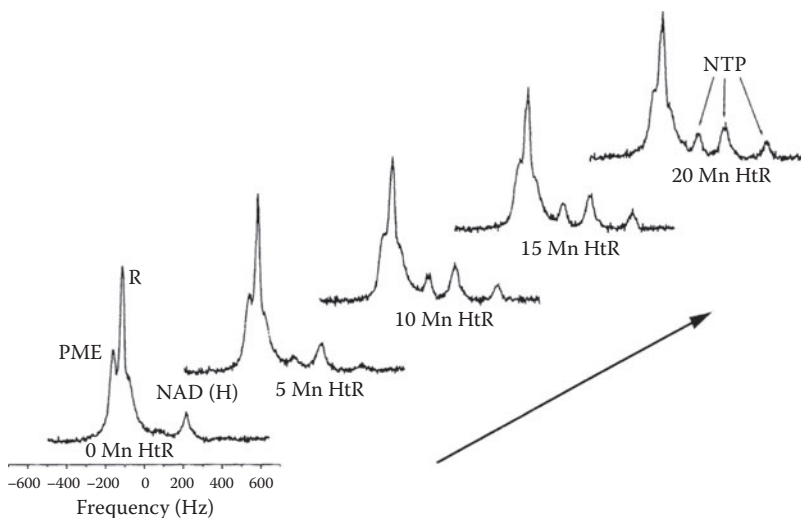
FIGURE 9.5 Typical ^{31}P-MRS spectra of a flush-harvested pig liver during the period of hypoxic cold storage and hypothermic reperfusion (HtR). At 0 minutes (before start of hypothermic reperfusion), signals were only detected for phosphomonoester PME (mainly sugar phosphates), inorganic phosphate (P_i), and NAD(H). As HtR progressed over 20 minutes, signals for NTP (which in the liver are composed almost wholly of ATP) appeared as ATP was produced by aerobic metabolism, and those for P_i reduced, as phosphate was reincorporated into the nucleotide triphosphate pool. (Changani, K., et al., Enhanced energy metabolism at hypothermia following addition of a prostacyclin derivative in porcine liver, *Cryo-Lett.*, 19, 131, 1998. With permission.)

9.8.2.3 Steatosis

This is a complication that mainly affects liver preservation. The term steatosis (or fatty liver) identifies a liver in which lipid, mainly triglyceride, accounts for more than 5% of liver wet weight.[133] Hepatic steatosis may develop without clinical or biochemical evidence of liver disease. Biochemical plasma liver function test results frequently fail to identify a liver with even a considerable degree of steatosis. However, after cold preservation, such a liver is at substantial risk for primary nonfunction, or at least a period of very poor function after reperfusion.[134,135] With the shortage of donor organs, steatotic livers are used increasingly for transplantation. The rate of steatosis found in potential living-related liver donors, who represent a relatively healthy nonbiased population, is 6–10%.[136,137] Far greater rates of fatty change were found in studies dealing with victims of trauma deaths, reaching 24% in victims of fatal traffic accidents[138] and 30% in children who had died in traumatic accidents who had no preexisting comorbidity.[139] These very high levels of steatosis may reflect relative hypoperfusion of the liver in a shocked patient after trauma.[140]

The mechanisms behind this rate of change are still not completely understood. Experimental studies of steatotic animal models showed an inverse correlation between degree of steatosis and sinusoidal blood flow, believed to be caused by ballooned hepatocytes containing fat droplets that compress and distort the sinusoidal lumen and increase intrahepatic portal resistance.[141,142] This resistance in turn leads to relative ischemia of fatty hepatocytes, shown to have increased sensitivity to anoxia in culture, and thus exaggerating the susceptibility of these organs to preservation–reperfusion injury.[143] This shunting of blood from the hepatic microcirculation may be responsible for impaired perfusion of an organ with cold preservation solution, leading to more damage during the preservation process.[144] Inefficient anaerobic metabolism during warm ischemia and cold preservation, with the depletion of high-energy phosphates and the buildup of lactic acid, is believed to be one of the major mechanisms contributing to reperfusion injury. The energy level within the hepatocyte after the period of preservation has been shown to correlate with the eventual outcome after transplantation.[145] Several investigators have shown abnormal adenosine triphosphate production within the mitochondria of steatotic livers. This is believed to be caused by the accumulation of nonesterified fatty acids and has been postulated as a possible mechanism for the increased sensitivity of fatty livers to ischemic injury.[146] Others postulate that the critical injury is to the sinusoidal lining cell, with an alteration in plasma membrane fluidity[147] and subsequent leukocyte adhesion and Kupffer cell activation.[141] Others suggest that fat-laden hepatocytes undergo changes, including solidification during cold injury, and are responsible for increased sensitivity to reperfusion injury, releasing fatty globules that can disrupt the sinusoid microcirculation.[134] The massive accumulation of lipids released from hepatocytes within sinusoids after transplantation, mimicking peliosis, has been termed lipopeliosis.[148]

Cellular disruption, with free-radical formation and triglyceride and free–fatty acid release, is known to activate phospholipase digestion and lipid peroxidation, thus causing additional cellular damage.[149] It also has been shown in an experimental animal model that steatotic livers are more susceptible to injury during subsequent periods of warm ischemia.[150] Disruption of the sinusoidal microvasculature again is postulated to be the underlying mechanism. In view of the increased sensitivity of steatotic livers to both warm and cold ischemia, the logistic difficulty of transplantation of this group of organs increases, with both ischemic times required to be as short as possible, thereby minimizing the risk of primary nonfunction. These constraints, together with recipient factors that may prejudice outcome, need to be taken into account when a decision is made to use a steatotic organ.[149]

Hepatocyte growth factor has ameliorated preservation injury in fatty livers, possibly by providing some protection to hepatocytes and sinusoidal lining cells.[151] Prostaglandin E_1, an agent known to improve hepatic microcirculation, also has shown a beneficial effect in diminishing ischemic injury in a Zucker rat fatty-liver transplant model.[152] The use of oxygenated perfusion to predict survival of steatotic livers before transplantation would require establishing parameters that

correlate with survival. These may possibly include hemodynamic parameters[153] as well as markers of synthetic function[154] and liver injury[155] assessed by sampling perfusate. If a supply of oxygen and nutrients is provided within a suitable perfusate, then continual normothermic preservation may become a viable reality (see also Section 9.15.2), thus abrogating the increased sensitivity of fatty livers to cold-preservation reperfusion injury.

9.9 DEVELOPMENT OF PRESERVATION SOLUTIONS

The development of preservation solutions for clinical use has resulted from a combination of experiments in tissue biochemistry and experimental transplantation. The work of Keller et al. demonstrated that ion diffusion and edema in renal tissues could be usefully investigated during cold preservation,[156] and these techniques were used by many later authors,[157,158] resulting in several different preservation solutions being reported over the last 30 years. In particular, prolonged preservation became possible after the development of solutions of intracellular electrolyte composition. These solutions minimized cellular edema and the loss of intracellular potassium. Collins ushered in a new era of simple hypothermic storage by showing that a solution of crystalloid solutes alone, more resembling intracellular than extracellular composition, and quite free of colloid (see Table 9.1), could extend renal preservation reliably for 48 hours and longer.[86] Subsequently, solutions of widely different composition, based on the citrate anion (Marshall, Ross), amino acids (Bretschneider), or simple sugar (sucrose), were shown to be equally or more effective than the original Collins' solution, and the significance of intracellular composition became less relevant. The composition of equally effective flush solutions can differ significantly, but each solution has components aimed at preventing cellular swelling, and each contains a buffer. These solutions are used primarily in static hypothermic storage. Various adjuvant solutes can further enhance preservation.

9.9.1 STATIC HYPOTHERMIC STORAGE: INTRACELLULAR SOLUTIONS

9.9.1.1 Collins' and EC Solution

Many preservation solutions were developed along with research efforts to find appropriate cardioplegic solutions, and one of the first solutions for kidney preservation was developed by G.M.

TABLE 9.1
Collins' Solutions

mM/L	C2	EuroCollins'	EuroCollins' Mannitol	EuroCollins' Sucrose
Na$^+$	9	10	10	10
K$^+$	108	108	108	108
Mg^{++}	30	—	—	—
Cl	14	15	15	15
Bicarbonate	9	10	10	10
Phosphate	47	60	60	60
Sulphate	30	—	—	—
Glucose	126	180	—	—
Mannitol	—	—	180	—
Sucrose	—	—	—	180
Osmolality (mM/kg)	320	340	340	340
pH (0°C)	7.0	7.3	7.2	7.2

Collins in laboratories in Australia and Los Angeles, California.[86] Prolonged kidney preservation by simple cold storage became possible after the development of Collins' intracellular solutions.[86,159–162] However, after 72-hour cold storage, the initial function of kidneys was poor, and any added warm ischemia markedly diminished the efficacy of these solutions.[163] The early Collins' solutions (C2, C3, and C4) had high concentrations of potassium, magnesium, phosphate, sulphate, and glucose (120 mM). Precipitation of magnesium phosphate was a major technical defect. Additions of procaine (in C3 and C4) and of phenoxybenzamine (C4) were found to be unnecessary and, in the case of procaine, harmful. Subsequently, mannitol, magnesium, procaine, and phenoxybenzamine were omitted from the very widely used EC solution (Table 9.1), containing high concentrations of potassium and phosphate and increased glucose.[164–166] The higher glucose concentrations reduced the potential efficacy of EC solution and made it less effective in the preservation of organs other than the kidney. Glucose is slowly permeable across cell membranes, and even under hypothermic conditions, glucose is broken down at least to the level of lactate, which augments tissue acidosis and doubles the intracellular carbon solutes, promoting cell swelling on an osmotic basis. These potentially harmful effects become more apparent with prolonged storage times. Replacement of glucose by other less permeable and nonmetabolizable solutes (sucrose, mannitol) improved the results of renal preservation by Collins' solution in rat[167] and dog[168] kidneys. A significant reduction in posttransplantation renal failure occurred when human kidneys were preserved in EC solution with mannitol substituted for the glucose.[169] The replacement of glucose by sucrose may be even more relevant in liver and pancreas grafts, in which cells are more permeable to glucose. EC solution, although cheaper, was not simple to use, because sterilization of the glucose-containing fluid had to be done separately from the electrolyte part and mixed before use. EC solution was standard in Europe for about 15 years.[101]

9.9.1.2 Citrate-Based Solutions (Marshall/Ross)

Citrate solution[170,171] was developed to overcome some of the limitations of Collins'-type solutions. This solution also has high concentrations of potassium and magnesium, but citrate replaces phosphate and mannitol replaces glucose (Table 9.2). Citrate provides buffering capacity and interacts with magnesium to form impermeable, stable chelates. A high concentration of magnesium is necessary for the efficacy of citrate solutions; only 4% of the magnesium remains unchelated, and magnesium-citrate chelate contributes to the semipermeable solute available physically to maintain cellular integrity.[172] High levels of potassium may minimize the loss of cellular potassium. Citrate chelates calcium as well as magnesium and may aid in the extrusion of calcium from the

TABLE 9.2
Citrate-Based Solutions

mM/L	Hypertonic Citrate	Isotonic Citrate
Na$^+$	78	78
K$^+$	84	84
Mg^{++}	40	40
Cl	1	1
Citrate	54	54
Sulphate	40	40
Glucose	—	—
Mannitol	200	100
Osmolality (mM/kg)	400	300
pH (0°C)	7.1	7.1

TABLE 9.3
Phosphate-Buffered Sucrose

mM/L	Phosphate-Buffered Sucrose (isomolar)	Phosphate-Buffered Sucrose (hyperisomolar)
Na^+	126	92
Phosphate	82	60
Sucrose	100	140
Osmolality (mM/kg)	300	310
pH (0°C)	7.1	7.2

cell as well as the maintenance of pH; citrate could be replaced by its analog, tricarballylate, provided hydroxyethylpiperazine-ethane sulphonic acid (HEPES) is added to augment its buffering capacity.[173] Isotonic and hypertonic solutions are equally effective in preserving human kidneys and livers;[172] the sulphate ion is unimportant and can be replaced by other anions. Mannitol can be replaced by sucrose with equivalent results; the replacement of mannitol with glucose was detrimental in kidney preservation. Effective buffering of the solutions is a most important feature. An acid pH (6.8) is deleterious, whereas solutions with a pH of 7.1–7.8 were equally effective.[101,173] Citrate solutions gave results comparable to Collins' solutions experimentally and clinically for kidney, liver, and pancreas grafts.[172]

9.9.1.3 Sucrose Solutions (Phosphate-Buffered Sucrose)

The demonstration that sucrose improved efficacy of preserving solutions[167] led to the formulation of a simple isosmolar sodium phosphate-buffered sucrose solution (PBS). This very simple solution (Table 9.3) provided excellent preservation of kidneys.[174] Sucrose-based solutions, optimally at a sucrose concentration of around 140 mM, are also effective in preservation of other organs. These solutions contain no potassium or magnesium. Addition of gluconate does not improve the efficacy of the solution. Hyperosmolar sucrose-based solutions are less effective than isosmolar solutions. These sucrose solutions provide buffering and impermeable solute only; cooling reduces metabolic requirements, and no other physicochemical attributes can be demonstrated. This indicates that hypothermia, buffering, and impermeable solute represent major components of static preservation in kidneys.[101]

9.9.1.4 UW Solution

Research by Folkert Belzer and James Southard,[175] acknowledged pioneers of organ preservation, resulted in a development of a new preservation solution[97,176] called UW, initially developed for the pancreas, that introduces three new philosophies: osmotic concentration is no longer maintained by metabolically active glucose but, rather, is achieved by the administration of metabolically inert substrates like lactobionate[175] and raffinose; much attention is paid to the additional administration of colloid hydroxyethylstarch (HES); and addition of oxygen radical scavengers, glutathione, allopurinol, and adenosine in addition to steroids and insulin (Table 9.4). Subsequently, UW was effectively applied to liver,[94] kidney,[98] and heart[177–180] preservation. The clinical success of UW in liver,[95,181] pancreas, and cluster preservation[182,183] has made it the preferred solution for multiple-organ harvest.[101] At present, UW is considered to be the most generally effective flush solution. It was the first to contain lactobionate and raffinose, both relatively large impermeant molecules that effectively control cell volume. Lactobionate seems to be a rather unique component, the full action of which remains to be explained,[184] possibly it is based on the chelation of calcium or iron. UW and Collins' solutions both contain phosphate to control acidosis and a high potassium level to

TABLE 9.4
University of Wisconsin–Based Solutions

mM/L	UW	UW-K9 (Low K)	UW-N (No hydroxyethyl-starchHES or adjuvants)	UMW (No hydroxyethyl-starchHES, reversed Na/K)	Sodium Lactobionate and Sucrose
Na$^+$	30	140	30	125	155
K$^+$	125	9	125	30	5
Mg^{++}	5	5	5	5	5
Sulphate	5	5	5	5	—
Lactobionate	100	100	100	100	100
Phosphate	25	25	25	25	25
Raffinose	30	30	30	60	—
Sucrose	—	—	—	—	75
Adenosine	5	5	—	5	—
Glutathione	3	3	3	3	3
Allopurinol	1	1	—	1	—
Insulin (U/L)	100	100	—	—	—
Dexamethasone (mg/L)	8	8	—	—	—
Bactrim (ml)	0.5	0.5	—	0.5	—
HydroxyethylstarchHES (g/L)	50	50	—	—	—
Chlorpromazine (mg/L)	—	—	—	—	5
0smolality (mM/kg)	320	320	290	320	320
PH	7.4	7.4	7.4	7.4	7.4

minimize loss of intracellular cation. However, these features may be of relatively minor importance because the small volume of solution left in an organ probably has little buffering capacity in comparison with the much larger amount of intracellular buffer, and solutions with an extracellular cation content have been found to work well for liver, kidney, and pancreas preservation.[185] The requirement for colloid in flush solutions is controversial. It may prevent interstitial edema, but at the price of appreciably higher solution viscosity. The use of a colloid has been particularly advocated for pancreas preservation.

Although the current supremacy of liver storage by UW has become well established, and assessments of the advantages of this solution have been recorded on clinical and histological grounds, a complete explanation for its efficacy remains obscure.[181] One mechanism may lie in synergism between various UW ingredients. For example, adenosine and glutathione exert greater hepatocyte protection when used together than when either is used alone, and other such links between UW components may provide a summation of protection.[186] However, removal of some UW ingredients does not affect the quality of cytoprotection,[187] and substitution of other ingredients with substances postulated to have a similar effect does significantly alter preservation.[188]

Better heart, lung, and kidney preservation by UW, compared with EC solution, is much less dramatic than improved liver preservation.[189] This indicates either a mechanism of hepatic cytoprotection by UW that is distinct from the prevention of hypothermic damage incurred by all cells, or a liver-specific susceptibility to hypothermia that is selectively retarded by UW support. Cold storage indeed produces a specific injury to the hepatic sinusoids.[190] Morphological studies of rat grafts after periods of cold storage and reperfusion show that hepatocytes are very largely preserved and Kupffer cells are activated, and the dramatic, predominant histological finding is gross destruction of the hepatic sinusoidal endothelial lining.[191]

Endothelial cell death is delayed after storage in UW compared with storage in EC solution.[192] Furthermore, videomicroscopy of cell detachment, mitosis, and motility confirms better preservation

of endothelial cell stability after UW than after EC preservation.[193] The liver exhibits highly specialized microcirculatory features. For instance, distinctive endothelial fenestral actin rings may contract and relax to alter vascular and Hisse space perfusion.[194] Specialized unfenestrated endothelium at the narrow junction of the sinusoidal space and terminal portal venule may protrude into the vascular lumen to occlude it. Such an inlet sphincter may be enhanced by a local periendothelial contraction of Ito cells.[195] The highly specialized feature of liver sinusoidal endothelium, and its particular susceptibility to hypothermic injury, might account for this selective improvement of liver preservation by UW and the less marked improvement in UW preservation of other organs.

UW incorporates a variety of additives: adenosine (ATP precursor and vasodilator), allopurinol (xanthine oxidase inhibitor), glutathione (free-radical scavenger), insulin, and steroid (membrane stabilizer). The solution has a high concentration of potassium. The relative importance of individual components has been elucidated in a number of studies. Modifications of the original solution with the omission of one or more components have provided equivalent preservation of kidney and other organs. No modification has been shown to improve preservation significantly, but simplification of the base solution has allowed additional room for future additives that may prove helpful.[101] It is worth considering the important components of UW and their relative importance.

9.9.1.4.1 HES

The inclusion of the synthetic colloid HES does not appear to confer any advantage.[103,196,197] Colloid added to flushing solutions has long been known to improve the rheological properties and the efficiency of vascular washout, but the addition of colloid is only essential in continuous perfusion storage. Colloid increases the viscosity of the solution, but this does not appear to be either harmful or helpful in simple flushing. Preservation of canine kidneys by simple hypothermic storage was reliably extended to 5 days by a modified HES-free UW.[198] Omission of colloid in a randomized clinical trial showed equivalent and satisfactory preservation of kidneys with HES-free UW. Both UW and its colloid-free modification gave significantly better preservation than EC.[101,197]

9.9.1.4.2 Electrolytes

Reduction of potassium concentration with reversal of the sodium/potassium ratio[185,199] considerably improves flushing efficacy (potassium is markedly vasoconstrictive) and is just as effective in preservation. A modification without HES and based on sodium lactobionate and sucrose with low potassium has been widely used experimentally and clinically for multiple-organ preservation.[101,200]

9.9.1.4.3 Impermeants

The great efficacy of UW in organ preservation is primarily a result of the impermeable anion lactobionate. Gluconate, also impermeable, can replace lactobionate. Similarly, the impermeable raffinose can be replaced by sucrose with little detriment.[101]

9.9.1.4.4 Other Additives

The omission of insulin and dexamethasone[103] has not been detrimental. Adenosine, allopurinol, and glutathione were found to confer some benefit in the preservation of rat kidneys,[103] but both adenosine and allopurinol were omitted in a clinical trial with no detrimental effects.[197]

The introduction of UW and its modifications has markedly enhanced preservation of all transplantable organs; it has restored order to the operations of liver and pancreas grafting, given more effective heart preservation than previous methods, and served as the standard for all transplantable organs. Although differences between organs in their sensitivity to ischemic damage and their individual requirements for optimal preservation certainly exist, these differences are outweighed by the universally protective effects of the major components of UW.[101]

UW has proven to guarantee extreme long cold-ischemia tolerance — 72 hours in kidneys[98] and certainly 48 hours in livers.[94] This solution was also tested prospectively in a multicenter European trial, in which UW was found to be superior to EC by decreasing the rate of delayed graft function from 33% to 23%.[201] The clinical success of UW and its variants in heart and lung,

liver, pancreas, kidney, small bowel, and organ cluster grafts has made it the preferred solution and the gold standard for multiple-organ harvest in the 1990s.[177,183,202–204] A multicenter trial in Europe comparing UW with EC showed that UW preservation gave more rapid recovery of renal function and less posttransplant dialysis[201]; other studies showed equivalent function of kidneys preserved by UW and Collins' solution in a randomized prospective clinical trial.[205] UW has been shown to diminish the trapping of erythrocytes in the microcirculation.[206] The effects of UW on protecting nonparenchymal cells in kidney, liver, and pancreas may be important aspects of the solution's abilities to provide extended preservation, rather than effects on the more easily preserved parenchymal cells.

9.9.1.5 Bretschneider's Histidine-Tryptophane-Ketoglutarate Solution

Histidine-Tryptophane-Ketoglutarate solution (HTK) was introduced by H.J. Bretschneider from Göttingen, Germany, primarily as a physiologic cardioplegic solution,[105] and was subsequently shown to be effective in the experimental and clinical preservation of the kidney[207] and liver.[202] HTK contains relatively impermeable amino acids and other solutes (Table 9.5); its main component is histidine, with added mannitol, tryptophane, and alpha-ketoglutarate, with low electrolyte concentrations of sodium, potassium, and magnesium. Histidine is an excellent buffer, and tryptophane, histidine, and mannitol can act as free-radical scavengers. The HTK solution has a very low viscosity, and according to Bretschneider, high volumes at a low flow rate should be applied to guarantee "equilibration." HTK has been tested in clinical trials. The solution has given a low incidence of delayed function in kidney transplantation clinically and was shown to be better than EC in kidney transplantation in a prospective randomized clinical trial.[208] Eurotransplant conducted a multicenter randomized prospective trial comparing UW with HTK; the results show that both solutions have the same efficacy at the endpoint of delayed graft function.[209] Clinical use of HTK in liver preservation is documented by single-center experiences,[210] which show the same safety and efficacy profile as UW, at least in the time range of below 24 hours cold ischemia time.[211]

TABLE 9.5
Bretschneider's Histidine-Tryptophane-Ketoglutarate Solution

mM/L	Histidine-Tryptophane-Ketoglutarate Solution
Na$^+$	15
K$^+$	9
Mg^{++}	4
Cl	26
Histidine	198
Tryptophane	2
Alpha-ketoglutarate	1
Mannitol	30
Osmolality (mM/kg)	310
pH (0°C)	7.3

9.9.2 STATIC HYPOTHERMIC STORAGE: EXTRACELLULAR SOLUTIONS

9.9.2.1 Celsior

The Celsior preservation solution created by Pasteur-Merieux is a mixture of the impermeant inert osmotic carrier philosophy from the Belzer solution, using lactobionate and mannitol, and the strong buffer philosophy from the HTK solution, using 30 mmol of histidine buffer. In addition, Celsior also contains oxygen radical scavengers. From the electrolyte point of view, Celsior is a high-sodium, low-potassium solution that is unique in this respect. Celsior has been used clinically in cardiac conservation.[212] Interestingly, the heart seems to require a high-potassium solution, which raises the question as to whether there may be other organs that have specific requirements.[213]

9.9.2.2 Other Extracellular Solutions

Solutions of extracellular electrolyte composition, such as plasma, saline, or Hartmann's solution, are unsuitable for prolonged (>12 hours) preservation but are often used to flush-cool kidneys *in situ* during multiple organ procurement. They may also be used for cooling kidneys before immediate transfer in living donor transplantation but are not recommended because alternative solutions have been demonstrated to be markedly superior.[101] Wallwork[214] and low-potassium dextran solutions are used in lung preservation as a variant of UW that may be considered an extracellular solution; namely, reverse Na^+/K^+ UW or low-potassium UW. Stanford, Hopkins, and St. Thomas Hospital solutions are extracellular solutions used in heart preservation.[215]

9.9.3 SUMMARY OF PRESERVATION SOLUTION DEVELOPMENT

In summary, EC has almost been abandoned because of the glucose disadvantage, whereas UW is certainly the most used preservation solution for livers, kidneys, and pancreases, with excellent clinical and experimental preservation data. UW can certainly be considered the current gold-standard solution.[216] However, it is not without its disadvantages — the high viscosity, price, and difficult handling of numerous 1-L bags, and the fact that the radical scavenger glutathione is gradually oxidized in the bags (presumably because of diffusion), encourage competitors to produce new compounds with better cost-to-effect ratios. HTK has a firm place in cardiac preservation by demonstration of equal safety and efficacy in preserving livers and kidneys, at least in the middle and lower ranges of cold-ischemia time. HTK will be used more frequently, particularly with the consideration of lower price and more easy handling aspects (HTK has recently been given approval by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for use in abdominal organs). The suggested high-volume perfusion is not really necessary, and a calculation based on a total volume of 10 L for a multiorgan donor shows significant cost reductions. Celsior is currently only used for cardiac preservation.

Finally, although the basic aim of improved solutions is to extend storage times, clinical application of this stratagem may be unwise because there is a relationship between storage time on the one hand and the incidence of delayed function, rejection, and poorer long-term results on the other.[217] In an analysis of the influence of the ice storage time of first cadaveric renal transplants, Collins' suggested that the best results were seen with the shortest preservation times. In this setting, living donor transplants do no better than what is projected for cadaveric transplants if storage times could be reduced to only 3 hours. The inference is that the immunologic significance of the preservation effect is of greater importance than histocompatibility, and it may be worthwhile to search for components such as polyethylene glycol that affect long-term outcome as well as immediate function.[218] Table 9.6 has a listing of the components of the major current preservation solutions for comparative purposes. Further information on development of presentation solutions in the recent past can be found in (Chapter 2).

TABLE 9.6
Comparative Composition of Organ Preservation and Rinse Solutions

Content (mmol/L)	EC	UW	HTK	CEL	StTH2	RL	CR	CU
Glucose	180	—	—	—	—	—	10	67
Fructose	—	—	—	—	—	—	10	—
Adenose	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	5
Lactobionate	—	100	—	80	—	—	—	—
Raffinose	—	30	—	—	—	—	—	—
Dextran (g/L)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	50
Mannitol	—	—	30	60	—	—	—	—
Lactate	—	—	—	—	—	28	28	—
Glutamate	—	—	—	20	—	—	—	—
Gluconate	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	95
Ketoglutarate	—	—	1	—	—	—	—	—
Tryptophane	—	—	2	—	—	—	—	—
Phosphate	60	25	—	—	—	—	1	25
Bicarbonate	10	—	—	—	10	—	—	—
Histidine	—	—	180	30	—	—	—	—
Butylated hydroxyanisole	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0.05
Butylated hydroxytoluene	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0.05
Glutathione	—	3	—	3	—	—	3	—
Allopurinol	—	1	—	—	—	—	1	—
Adenosine	—	5	—	—	—	—	1	—
Desferrioxamine	—	—	—	—	—	—	1	—
HES (g/L)	—	50	—	—	—	—	50	—
Na$^+$	10	30	15	100	140	130	115	—
K$^+$	115	120	10	15	16	2.9	5	120
Mg^{++}	30	5	4	13	—	16	1.2	5
Ca^{++}	—	—	0.015	0.25	1.2	1.4–2.7	1.3	—
Cl$^-$	15	—	50	—	139	109	112	—
Osmolarity*	406	320	310	360			300	325
pH at 4°C	7.1	7.4	7.1	7.3	7.8	7.0	6.5	7.6
Dexamethasone[a] (mg/L)	—	8	—	—	—	—	—	—
Penicillin[a,b]	—	0.2×10^6	—	—	—	—	—	—
Insulin[a,b]	—	40	—	—	—	—	100	—
Verapamil	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0.01
Nitroglycerin (mg/L)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0.1
Heparin[b]	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	10
Dibutyryl cAMP	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	2
Nicardipine	—	—	—	—	—	—	0.002	—
MOPS[c]	—	—	—	—	—	—	20	—

EC: EuroCollins; UW: University of Wisconsin solution; HTK: Bretschneider solution; CEL: Celsior; StTH2: St. Thomas Hospital solution; RL: Ringer's Lactate; CR: Carolina rinse; CU: Columbia University; HES: hydroxyethylstarch; *: in mOsmol/L; [a]: added prior to use; [b]: international units/L; [c]: 3[N-morpholino]propanesulfonic acid.

9.10 MACHINE PERFUSION PRESERVATION

The development of *ex vivo* perfusion as a means of sustaining organ function was extensively evaluated by the Nobel prize-winning scientist Alexis Carrel and the aviator technologist Charles A. Lindbergh in the 1940s. Their aim was to simulate normal physiologic conditions with *ex vivo*

perfusion techniques.[219] This concept was modified by Ackermann and Barnard,[220] who provided the isolated organs with continuous low-flow arterial circulation, using a perfusate primed with blood and oxygenated within a hyperbaric oxygen chamber.

This technique was initially most widely used during the early days of clinical renal transplantation.[221] It has remained the preservation method of choice in some centers, and there is now a resurgence of interest in the storage and assessment of ischemically damaged kidneys obtained from non-heart-beating donors.[222] Continuous perfusion aims to simulate conditions *in vivo*: The organ can be continually supplied with oxygen and nutrients; waste products are continuously removed. However, the method is complex, costly, and more liable to complication (by technical error or aseptic breach) than is simple static cold storage. Perfusion techniques still provide the maximum extension of successful storage of most organs. The essential requirements are sterile nonthrombogenic and nonallergenic delivery tubing, an organ chamber, a pump and heat exchanger, a mechanism for oxygenation (membrane oxygenation or surface diffusion), appropriate monitoring of perfusate temperatures and pressures, and an effective perfusion fluid (Figure 9.6).

However, the complexity of the method precluded its general use. Elimination of the hemoglobin and hyperbaric chamber components by Belzer et al. resulted in satisfactory kidney preservation for up to 2–3 days.[223] The asanguineous perfusion technique eventually was abandoned in most kidney transplant centers when it was learned that the quality of 2-day preservation was no better than with the simpler static methods. Nevertheless, it is expected that the refinement of perfusion technology will someday permit true organ banking.[77]

Stable solutions were needed to enhance the rapidity and uniformity of cooling by perfusion and to provide solutes that improved preservation of vasculature, parenchyma, and interstitium. Blood was demonstrably not the ideal medium: Cold blood adds rheological problems of greater viscosity and sluggish flow.[172] Simple balanced electrolyte solutions mimicking the extracellular milieu, such as Ringer's-lactate solution or saline, were shown to be unsatisfactory organ-preserving solutions that exacerbated interstitial and cellular edema. For continuous perfusion, attention was then directed by Belzer and others toward plasma-like solutions containing albumin, dextrans,
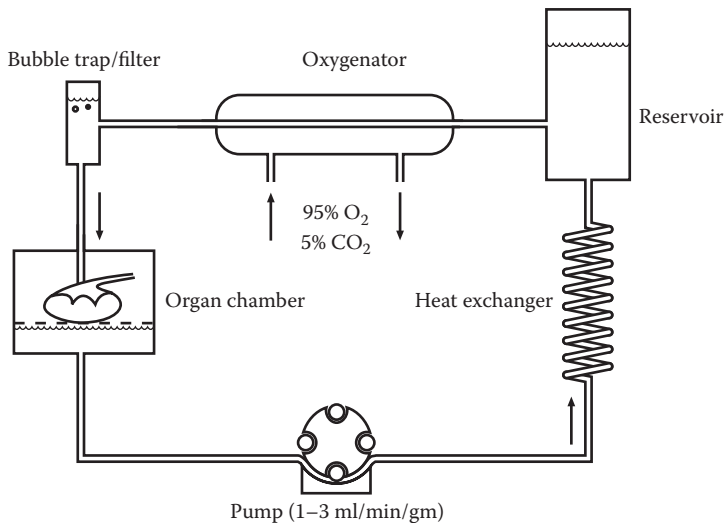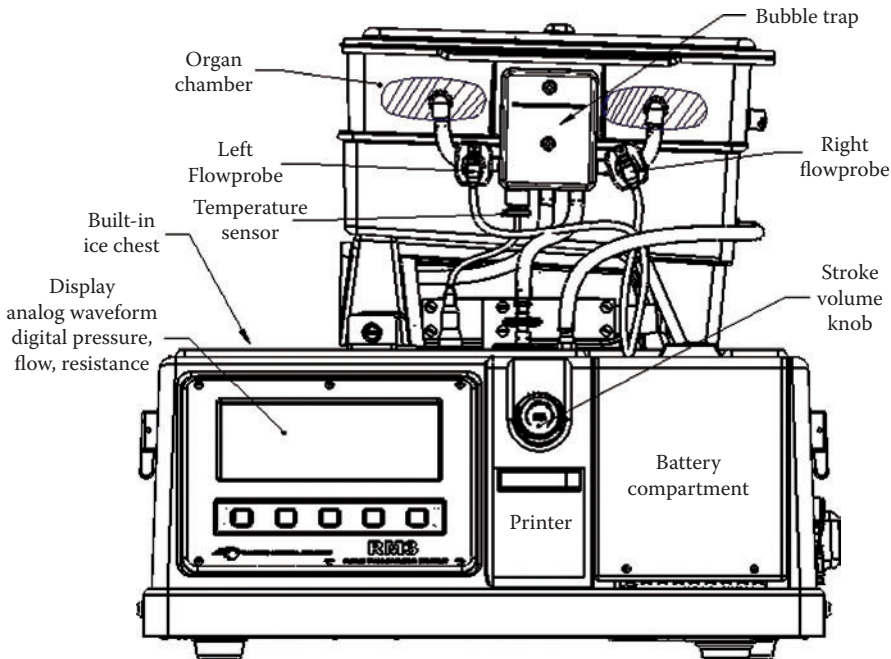

FIGURE 9.6 A schematic representation of a generic organ perfusion circuit. Perfusate flows in the region of 1–3 mL/g per minute would be expected. A reliable pump system is essential, whereas other components (such as tubing, oxygenator, etc.) would need to be disposable in the clinical setting. Trapping of any circulating debris with an in-line bubble trap or filter before it enters the vasculature of the organ is also important.

starch, or other colloids (combined with extracellular electrolyte content) to provide oncotic support and to prevent interstitial edema.

Cold perfusion has shown a greater capacity to revive and resuscitate organs previously damaged by warm ischemia. This is this method's area of greatest potential, together with the prospect of potentially infusing immunosuppressants or agents capable of deleting antigen-presenting cells before implantation.

All perfusion storage is carried out between 4° and 9°C, and the perfusion circuit must include a heat exchanger to maintain hypothermia. A reliable pump is essential, and the original Belzer pump provided physiological pulsatile flow, but such flow does not appear to be essential. Nonpulsatile pumps have been equally effective.[224] The commonly used equipment provides nonphysiological pulsatile flow at a pressure of 20–60 mm Hg and an average flow of 1–6 mL/g per minute.[101]

Oxygenation is a feature of some perfusion storage circuits. Some systems include a membrane oxygenator (e.g., Belzer and early Waters machine); other systems rely on surface oxygenation (e.g., Gambro) and appear to be equally reliable. A mixture of air or oxygen with added carbon dioxide is essential for membrane oxygenators to maintain pH as well as oxygen tension. Surface oxygenation is possible without added carbon dioxide. The perfusates must pass through a bubble trap before reaching the organ.[101] More recently, air equilibration without added carbon dioxide has become routine, with the introduction of Belzer's machine perfusion solution, and a new generation of portable hypothermic perfusion machines has been developed (see Figure 9.7 and also Figure 9.8).

FIGURE 9.7 A schematic representation of a Waters kidney perfusion circuit. Controlled perfusion of two kidneys can be undertaken, cooling the perfusion medium via a heat-exchanger circuit passing through the ice chest. Perfusion pressure and renal resistance can be continually monitored. Oxygenation is achieved by aeration of the thin film of perfusate, held in the middle chamber and mixed by a rocking motion. (Schematic provided by D. Schollman, Waters Medical Devices, Rochester, MN.)

FIGURE 9.8 A portable LifePort™ hypothermic kidney perfusion apparatus. The LifePort™ Kidney Transporter, a portable hypothermic perfusion device (Organ Recovery Systems, Des Plaines IL), opened to show the kidney placed in the sterile disposable cassette (center). The system comprises online recording for renal temperature, pressure, and flow. The perfusion solution is KPS-1, Belzer's Kidney Perfusion Solution with HES (see Table 9.7). Photo provided by Organ Recovery Systems.

The compositions of solutions for continuous perfusion storage are provided in Table 9.7. Blood has no advantages and considerable disadvantages in hypothermic perfusion. Cold blood introduces problems of increased viscosity, resistance to flow, and aggregation of platelets and red blood cells.

Cryoprecipitated plasma[223] derived from blood treated with the anticoagulant acid-citrate-glucose, with added magnesium sulphate and mannitol, provides good preservation for 3 days. However, the preparation of this perfusate is time consuming and difficult to standardize; thus, other plasma-derived solutions were developed — plasma protein fraction[225] and silica-gel fraction plasma[110] — but these have largely been superseded by the gluconate-based (Belzer-type) solutions.

9.10.1 Colloids

A colloid of molecular size similar to or exceeding that of plasma protein is essential for the continuous machine perfusion preservation needed for providing oncotic vascular support. Omission of colloid leads to progressive transcapillary passage of perfusate into the interstitium by ultrafiltration, causing explosive weight gain and edema of the organ, increased resistance to perfusion, and early organ failure.[172]

Machine perfusion has been applied most extensively to kidney preservation. Belzer and colleagues in the 1960s demonstrated the effectiveness of cryoprecipitated plasma thawed and passed through a membrane filter. Subsequently, perfusates based on purified albumin (MW 68 kDa) were shown by Johnson and Toledo-Pereyra to be equally effective.[224,225]

Substitutes for these biological colloids were sought to make perfusate preparation easier and to eliminate the risk of transmitted viral infection. The most widely applied synthetic colloid, subsequently used by Belzer and Southard in developing UW, was HES. A UW developed for continuous perfusion, containing HES, has been effective in extending the preservation of canine kidneys by machine perfusion for 7 days. Dextrans are synthetic macromolecules derived from bacterial digestion of starch, and they occupy a spectrum of molecular size from 40 to 150 kDa. Perfusates using Dextran 70,000 or Dextran 40,000 have been successful in the preservation of

TABLE 9.7
Perfusates for Perfusion Storage

mM/L	Albumin-Based Solutions			HES-Based (UW) Solutions*
	Belzer	Citrate	Sucrose	HES-gluconate
Na$^+$	140	78	77	140
K$^+$	25	84	—	25
Mg^{++}	5	40	—	5
Cl	40	1	38	—
Bicarbonate	—	—	—	—
Citrate	—	54	—	—
Gluconate	85	—	—	85
Phosphate	25	—	25	25
Sulphate	—	40	—	—
Glucose	10	10	10	10
Mannitol	—	54	—	—
Sucrose	—	—	100	—
Albumin (g/L)	37.5	50	50	—
HES (g/L)	—	—	—	40–50
Glutathione	3	—	—	3
0smolality (mM/kg)	305	300	300	350
pH (0°C)	7.5	7.1	7.1	7.1

* HES = synthetic colloid, UW = University of Wisconsin

kidneys and other vascularized organs. PEG, an impermeable polymer also available in a range of molecular sizes, has been used by Collins to develop solutions suitable either for perfusion or for flushing. PEG also has been suggested to have additional effects in diminishing the intensity of the immune rejection response.[226] Colloids, although essential for perfusion preservation, are neither necessary nor advantageous for simple hypothermic storage. In any case, the colloid in a flush solution is usually regarded as an inert component included only for its oncotic properties. PEG appears to be an exception to this rule. When PEG 20,000 was substituted for HES in UW, the resulting solution, known as Cardiosol, was found to be significantly superior to UW for 24-hour heart preservation.[227]

9.10.2 IMPERMEABLE SOLUTES

Solutes that are impermeable or are only slowly permeable to cellular membranes are a vital component of preserving solutions — whether used for cold-flushing or for continuous perfusion. Impermeable solutes are required at concentrations of up to 140 mM to counteract the effect of diminished cell membrane ion transport in the cold. Large inert molecules, metabolically and nutritionally unavailable to cellular physiological processes, have been most effective. Gluconate (for perfusing and flushing solutions, MW 196) and lactobionate (for flushing solutions, MW 358) have been very successful; other polysaccharides and disaccharides (raffinose, MW 594; sucrose, MW 134; maltose, MW 360; trehalose, MW 378) and chelates of citrate and magnesium have also been very effective for static flush but not so important for continuous perfusion, and metabolizable monosaccharides (glucose, fructose) have been less effective, and colloids alone are not effective.[172]

Other agents, which diffuse into cells, but at a slower rate than do simple electrolytes, have also been used. Amino acids (glutamine, MW 146; histidine, MW 155; tryptophane, MW 204; aspartate, MW 133; glycine, MW 75) and fatty acids (linoleic acid, MW 280) have also been used in successful solutions.[172]

9.10.3 ELECTROLYTES

Originally based on extracellular solutions that were high in sodium and chloride, the composition of preservation solutions subsequently saw a swing of the pendulum to solutions that were high in potassium and phosphate (intracellular type) and then back toward normal extracellular concentrations of sodium and potassium as some of the potentially deleterious consequences of very high potassium levels were appreciated. Cold-induced paralysis of cell membrane pumps requires the chloride anion to be reduced and replaced by less permeable anions — gluconate, lactobionate, citrate, and phosphate. Apart from these measures, electrolyte content is of relatively little importance. Potassium in the original intracellular concentrations of 125–135 mM is markedly vasoconstrictive and potentially harmful to the vascular endothelium. Solutions lower in potassium and higher in sodium (sodium 130 mM, potassium 5–30 mM) have been equally effective. Magnesium has been a useful additive in some solutions. Calcium tends to precipitate with phosphate and has been excluded from solutions or added in minute concentration. Successful solutions have been isosmolar or hyperosmolar.[172]

The hydrogen ion concentration again has not been a critical factor, although extremes of acidity and alkalinity have diminished effectiveness. All successful solutions use one or more buffers — bicarbonate, phosphate, citrate, and many others — but intracellular acidosis and its correction have not wholly correlated with effectiveness of solutions.[172]

9.10.4 OXYGENATION

During perfusion storage, some nutrient substrate has been regarded as essential, together with continuous oxygenation. Oxygen can be supplied by the use of membrane oxygenators or by passing a stream of humidified gas across a thin film of flowing perfusate. At hypothermic temperatures, equilibration with air may provide sufficient oxygen to stimulate aerobic energy production in some situations,[228] but for large organs, extra oxygenation may be essential. Mixtures of oxygen and carbon dioxide can also be used to stabilize the pH of the perfusing solution if a bicarbonate buffer is included, but newer perfusion solutions, such as the Belzer gluconate-based solution, do not need carbon dioxide for pH control.

The addition of oxygen during storage can also be achieved by another technique, which is not classic perfusion, but does use the vascular bed of the organ — this technique is called venous oxygen persufflation. In venous oxygen persufflation, cold, humidified, oxygen-rich gas is supplied at hypothermic temperatures and low controlled pressure via the venous system (e.g., in the kidney, via the renal vein).[229] Fine-needle punctures on the surface of the organ allow a more even diffusion of gas to peripheral regions and the escape of gas during storage. This method is sufficient to promote ATP synthesis.[230] The organ may need to be immersed in preservation solution to avoid drying. Persufflation of the kidney during storage has shown some experimental advantages, especially in organs that have been damaged by prior warm ischemia,[231] but only one clinical trial has so far been undertaken.[232]

Another means of enhancing oxygen supply is the use of synthetic perfluorochemical polyols to substitute for erythrocytes in facilitating oxygen transport. These agents have been used for continuous machine perfusion[233] and also for static storage, in which oxygenation by diffusion may be achieved in smaller organ masses such as the pancreas. In this latter procedure, these agents have been helpful in enhancing oxygen delivery to stored organs balanced at the interface between two solutions of different physical characteristics — one containing the synthetic fluorochemical. The method has been shown to enhance pancreatic storage in particular.[234,235]

The application of oxygenation during cold preservation, particularly by persufflation, does raise the issue of benefit (sustained aerobic energy metabolism) versus risk (oxidative stress). To this end, it has been shown that the addition of extra anti-free-radical agents (in addition to

glutathione present in many preservation solutions) can have beneficial effects. For example, superoxide dismutase has been shown to improve experimental oxygen persufflation.[236]

For perfusion, substrates such as glucose (10 mM) are often used, sometimes enriched with fructose, pyruvate, amino acids, fatty acids, phosphates, adenosine, and other high-energy compounds or precursors; for example, the addition of adenosine- and phosphate-enhanced ATP synthesis during hypothermic liver perfusion.[237] However, even during optimal oxygenated hypothermic machine perfusion, aerobic metabolism may not be fully restored during storage.[102]

## 9.11 ADDITIVES TO PRESERVATION SOLUTIONS

In general, colloid is necessary for machine perfusion, but not for simple storage. Extended preservation times by perfusion require suitable nutritional precursors and oxygen supply. Otherwise, prerequisites for machine perfusion solutions, and for solutions used for cold flushing before hypothermic storage, have been similar. The major requirements have been suitable impermeable solutes (anions or non-electrolytes) replacing permeable chloride, together with a suitable buffer system.

The role of nutrient substrates during static storage, and on reperfusion, is also unclear. Substrates are not obligatory — solutions containing no utilizable metabolic fuel can give excellent preservation of most organs for 24 hours, and in the case of the kidneys, for up to 3 days experimentally with PBS solution. In contrast, substrates capable of supporting anaerobic glycolysis (such as fructose) have been shown to be beneficial in some experimental situations.[238]

Static storage normally implies anaerobic conditions with progressive fuel depletion. Precursors of ATP added to flushing solutions (such as adenosine, adenine, inosine, and phosphate), ATP itself,[239] or high-energy intermediates such as fructose 1,6 bis phosphate[240] have been shown helpful in some experiments. Whether these agents are acting by increasing the availability of high-energy compounds or by some other metabolic or hemodynamic manner is uncertain. In contrast, nutritional depletion in experimental conditions can enhance tolerance to ischaemic damage. Glycogen-depleted livers from fasted rats showed resistance to ischemic injury and better survival after transplantation.[241]

Small concentrations of added agents that quench or scavenge oxygen free radicals, antioxidants, calcium-channel blockers, and other pharmacologically or metabolically active compounds can help as adjuvants in increasing ischemic tolerance. In UWs, allopurinol, glutathione and adenosine have been demonstrated to be helpful — insulin and steroids appear of no benefit. Other additives have included cytokines, prostaglandins, leukotrienes, lazaroids (aminosteroids) and their intermediaries, hormones, chlorpromazine and other benzodiazepines, nitric oxide, interleukins, TNF antagonists, and other growth factors.[172] For example, prostaglandin analogue (Iloprost) was shown to enhance ATP recovery when added to the cold reperfusion solution in experimental porcine liver preservation[130] (see Figure 9.9). Most recently, the addition of a mixture of trophic factors during cold preservation has shown promise in experimental work.[242]

Storage-reperfusion injury affects endothelial cells and activates neutrophils and macrophages (e.g., Kupffer cells in liver). This injury leads to the expression of cell adhesion molecules, leukocyte and platelet adhesion, and exacerbation of reperfusion injury. Kupffer cells are a main source of oxygen radicals and also release other proinflammatory mediators, such as TNF-α, interleukins 1 and 6, eicosanoids, and nitric oxide. Agents suppressing TNF-α formation include calcium channel blockers, pentoxifylline, adenosine, and prostaglandin E, whereas liposaccharides from bacteria are stimulatory.[172]
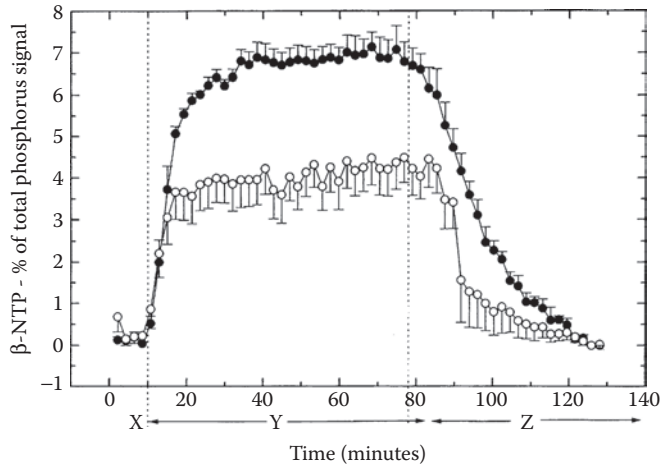
FIGURE 9.9 Changes within ATP following hypothermic reperfusion with Iloprost. Absolute changes associated with ATP following liver storage (X), hypothermic reperfusion (HtR) (Y), and cessation of HtR (Z); controls (○); and Iloprost (●). Changes are normalized to total phosphorous signal, which remains constant throughout the experimental protocol, and are shown as mean ± SE, $n = 5$. A greater efficiency for ATP resynthesis was seen with inclusion of Iloprost.

9.12 STORAGE TEMPERATURE

Organs surrounded by preserving solution and stored and transported in a container of crushed ice maintain a storage temperature of melting ice (0°–2°C). Storage temperatures above 0°C aim to diminish cold-induced membrane paralysis while maintaining the protective effects of hypothermia. Temperatures above 15°–20°C have usually been considerably less effective than 0°C. Temperatures for continuous perfusion have been maintained between 4°C and 10°C. The optimal storage temperature of nonparenchymal cells may differ from that required by parenchymal cells, perhaps over quite a narrow range. In rat liver preservation, 48-hour storage was possible by simple hypothermic storage at 4°C but not at 0°C.[243] Differences in effectiveness between various solutions (UW, sucrose, citrate) were less marked during storage at 4°C than at 0°C.

These results indicate a greater sensitivity of endothelial cells to cold damage than occurs with parenchymal cells, and temperatures around 4°C may be optimal for hypothermic storage.[172] Storage at 4°C could be simply obtained by the portable electrical refrigerator storage of organs surrounded by cold liquid rather than by ice, but this would require good temperature control within the system, as air is a poor conductor of heat. Such equipment has been used in experimental studies[244] but not clinically examined yet to any great degree.

9.13 PRE-REPERFUSION RINSE SOLUTIONS

A prevascularization flush-out or rinse at the conclusion of the storage period, just before reimplantation, has two main aims: first, to remove potentially toxic components of the preservation solution and accumulated waste products (e.g., high levels of potassium and hydrogen ions) or to prevent a large intracardiac bolus of cold fluid on clamp release. Second, rinsing aims to smooth the transition between hypothermic storage and isothermic revascularization. Anastomosis can be tested before revascularization by intravascular wash-out before final clamp release. This process has been most studied in relation to the liver. One method allows blood to flow to the liver via the portal vein, venting the initial effluent from the infrahepatic vena cava before completing this anastomosis, and finally releasing the clamp on the suprahepatic vena cava. Alternatively, the organ

TABLE 9.8
Ringer's Lactate and Carolina Rinse Solution

mMol/L	Ringer's Lactate	Carolina Rinse
Na$^+$	130	115
K$^+$	2.9	5
Mg^{++}	16	1.2
Ca^{++}	1.4–2.7	1.3
Cl$^-$	109	112
Glucose	—	10
Fructose	—	10
Lactate	28	28
Phosphate	—	1
Glutathione	—	3
Allopurinol	—	1
Adenosine	—	1
Desferrioxamine	—	1
HES	—	50
Insulin (IU/L)[a]	—	100
Nicardipine	—	0.002
MOPS (3[N-morpholino]propanesulfonic acid)	—	20
Osmolarity (mOsmol/L)		300
pH at 4°C	7.0	6.5

[a] Added prior to use.

can be reflushed via the portal vein or hepatic artery with a cold or warm electrolyte solution (e.g., Ringer's-lactate) or with albumin before clamp release.[245]

Carolina rinse solution (CR), developed by Lemasters and colleagues at the University of North Carolina, maintained the basic electrolyte composition of Ringer's lactate, but had added components and provided better results than a simple electrolyte rinse (see Table 9.8).[246,247] CR combines extracellular electrolyte composition with a mildly acidic pH, oncotic support (albumin or HES), antioxidants (allopurinol, glutathione, desferrioxamine), energy substrates (adenosine, glucose and insulin, fructose), vasodilators (calcium channel blockers), and glycine. As with UW, it was not clear which of the several components were effective and whether the effects were the result of the beneficial effects of the CR or the potentially harmful effects of a Ringer's-lactate rinse.[248]

Analysis of the various components and techniques indicates that the temperature of the rinse solution is preferably above the required cold-storage temperatures of 0°–4°C; rinses at ambient temperatures (20°C) and at body temperatures (37°C) have given better results. The preferred pH of the rinse may be slightly acidic (pH 6.8). Components that seem unnecessary are colloid (HES or albumin), nicardipine and magnesium, glucose, fructose, and insulin. Beneficial agents include adenosine, allopurinol, desferrioxamine, glutathione, and glycine, possibly acting through free-radical scavenging and quenching.[247,249–251]

Similarities between these findings and those with UW are apparent. Whether a CR rinse has advantages over a prereperfusion second rinse with a UW-derived, low-potassium, sodium lactobionate and sucrose solution used for storage is not yet established, nor is the effect of CR on other vascularized allografts yet known.

9.14 PRESERVATION OF INDIVIDUAL ORGANS FOR CLINICAL TRANSPLANTATION

At present, vascularized grafts are most commonly and optimally preserved by static hypothermic storage, which for kidney, liver, and pancreas provides effective storage and likelihood of immediate function for up to about 24 hours of storage. Extended storage times beyond this are more liable to poor early function. Perfusion preservation for kidneys is relevant to such extended storage and also for resuscitation of ischemically damaged organs from asystolic cardiac donors with significant warm ischemic damage.

9.14.1 KIDNEY

The effectiveness of kidney preservation is measured by the quality of early kidney function after transplantation. Factors affecting that quality of preservation include donor management, nephrectomy technique, warm ischemia time, total renal ischemia time, and the anastomosis time.[252]

Prospective, randomized clinical trials using preservation times averaging around 24 hours have shown no significant differences in early function or in long-term survival between machine preservation and simple cold storage.[171,253] Extended cold-storage times of up to 2 and 3 days, although still capable of giving satisfactory results, are accompanied by an increased frequency of acute tubular necrosis (ATN) as storage times lengthen beyond 24–48 hours. Although in experienced units, delayed initial function is compatible with good long-term results, the advantages of immediate good renal function with a maintained urine output and rapid correction of azotemia after transplantation are striking. Clinical management is markedly facilitated, with earlier hospital discharge and earlier recognition and treatment of rejection episodes. Kidneys with early ATN, even when this is followed by adequate function, do less well in terms of long-term survival than do kidneys functioning immediately, raising the likelihood that ischemically damaged kidneys may be more prone to immunological rejection.

Thus, even with the kidney, in which dialysis can maintain patient survival in the face of poor early function, good early function remains the paradigm of clinical organ preservation. Simple hypothermic storage can give early function in the majority of grafts. Storage times over 48 hours are rarely obligatory, except when organs are transplanted over very long distances.

UW-derived solutions (HES-free UW) have given successful static storage for 5 days in dogs.[198] The gold standard for cadaver kidney preservation thus remains UW. Comparable results are achievable by a variety of other solutions when preservation times do not exceed 24 hours. Thus, for shorter anticipated preservation periods and for living-donor transplantation, UW, sucrose, Collins' solution, hypertonic citrate, and Bretschneider's solution can give equivalent results.[172]

9.14.1.1 Static Hypothermic Storage

The length of time that a kidney can be stored depends on both cooling to diminish metabolic activity, and thus oxygen requirements, and on use of fluids designed to preserve the intracellular milieu in the absence of a Na^+/K^+ pump. Cold flushing washes out the blood and enhances cooling rate. As surface cooling is too slow and freezing would produce irreversible intracellular damage, perfusion of preservation fluid at 2°–4°C is undertaken through the renal arteries.[252] Cooling by flushing through the aorta *in situ* can reduce renal core temperature to below 10°C in 3–5 min,[254] compared with 20 min for an equivalent reduction by surface cooling.[255] The preferred storage temperature in rat and dog kidney preservation has been shown to be 0°C rather than 5°C or 10°C. Very rapid cooling has been shown to be detrimental to rabbit kidneys,[256] but such rapid rates of cooling are not obtained in larger human kidneys.

A miscellany of preserving solutions of varying solute composition has been developed over the last 30 years. Solutions of extracellular electrolyte composition, such as plasma, saline, or Hartmann's solution, are unsuitable for prolonged (>12 hours) preservation but are often used to

flush-cool kidneys *in situ* during multiple-organ procurement. These solutions may also be used for cooling kidneys before immediate transfer in living-donor transplantation but are not recommended because alternative solutions have been demonstrated to be markedly superior.[101] Both the original colloid-containing, high-potassium UW and the modified HES-free, high-sodium UW without some adjuvants have been shown to be equally effective in kidney preservation.[101]

The recommended practice for cadaver kidneys is to submerge the organ in iced saline slush after removal from the body and to complete the flush with cold-preserving solution at 0°C until the effluent is clear of blood. The kidney is then surrounded with the perfusing solution, placed in a sterile container — usually double plastic bags, and stored in ice in an insulated container.

Perfusion with normal saline would result in transmembrane influx of sodium, loss of potassium, and rapid destruction of cellular integrity. A number of fluids have been designed that retain cellular viability for many hours or days. Cellular edema is reduced by use of impermeant solute such as mannitol, sucrose, or raffinose. Intracellular pH is preserved with buffers such as phosphate, citrate, or lactobionate, and high concentrations of potassium prevent influx of sodium and water. Commonly used solutions are either isotonic and mimic the intracellular electrolyte composition (Collins', Marshall's, EC), or hypertonic such as Ross citrate solution. Any of these solutions preserve cold-stored kidneys for up to 24 or 48 hours.[252]

The UW solution is more complex and provides no clear advantage over other preservation solutions for kidneys stored for up to 24 hours, but it may be more effective thereafter[252] (see also Section 9.9).

9.14.1.2 Oxygenated Perfusion

An alternative to cold storage of the perfused kidneys packed in ice is continuous machine perfusion. In essence, a pump is used to recirculate either oxygenated synthetic stable albumin-based solution or UW at temperatures between 5°C and 10°C. Good renal preservation for up to 72 hours has been shown, but continuous perfusion has the disadvantage of being labor intensive and is unnecessary if the kidneys are transplanted within 24 hours of donation[252] (see also Section 9.10).

Continuous perfusion preservation is only clinically used for the kidney and only at a few centers. The balance of evidence indicates that this method provides better kidney preservation. Early reports based on retrospective comparisons of machine perfusion and cold storage showed no significant differences in allograft function after transplantation.[257,258] However, these studies may have been biased in favor of cold storage, as the practice at the time was to use machine perfusion for much longer cold-ischemia times.[259,260] In addition, little information was included about the recipient patients and the institutions where they were treated.[259] In prospective randomized trials, there was no statistical difference in the rate of delayed graft function,[253] and when delayed graft function did occur, machine-perfused kidneys showed earlier recovery and higher 1-year graft survival,[253] a beneficial effect of the machine-preserved kidney,[261] and less acute tubular necrosis was shown in the cold-stored organs when the preservation period exceeded 24 hours.[262]

Later trials have concluded that kidneys preserved by machine perfusion show better early function than preservation by cold storage, and less dialysis requirement,[263,264] which may correlate with initial graft dysfunction and long-term graft survival.[265,266] Early and long-term renal function in kidneys preserved with hypothermic Belzer-MPS solution and machine perfusion has been shown to be improved,[267] and it is even advantageous after kidneys have been initially cold stored.[268] Machine perfusion can provide longer successful preservation periods[269–272] and may produce significant savings from reducing delayed graft function and dialysis.[273]

One of the limitations of preservation by perfusion is that it becomes less reliable after 5 days when considerable damage to the vascular endothelium can occur. This may be a result of hemodynamic effects on the endothelium,[99] loss of vital metabolites, derangement of calcium compartmentation, and accumulation of toxic products in the cell and in the perfusate. The restoration

of cellular homeostasis also becomes more difficult after prolonged periods of hypothermic preservation.

Preservation periods were extended for canine kidneys to 6 days by a 3-hour period of normothermic perfusion (either *ex vivo* or *in vitro*) at the halfway point.[274,275] These observations have been confirmed and extended in dog and rat kidneys; however, the underlying mechanisms are still obscure.[276,277] Provided damage during the period of normothermic perfusion can be avoided, this method provides the means to restore metabolite deficits, reverse cold-inhibited enzyme systems, and metabolize accumulated toxic products. A period of normothermic perfusion with blood is also effective in "rescuing" kidneys damaged by a period of warm ischemia.[278]

The addition of metabolic inhibitors (e.g., quinacrine, a phospholipase inhibitor, and protease inhibitors, relevant to mitochondrial function and calcium compartmentation) may also be of value in prolonging kidney preservation up to 7 days.[279] Thus far, 1 week has marked the limit of successful kidney preservation by machine perfusion. UW, containing HES, has formed the basis of such extension of preservation times; the UW-derived solutions (Table 9.7) can experimentally preserve kidneys (with minimal warm ischemia) reliably for 5 days by ice storage after a simple flush and for 7 days by continuous machine perfusion. Hypothermic perfusion has no significant advantages experimentally or clinically over static hypothermic storage for 24-hour preservation of kidneys procured with minimal warm ischemia. However, the recent resurgence of interest in use of kidneys from non-heart-beating donors has stimulated renewed efforts to provide reliable portable perfusion technology; an example of this is shown in Figure 9.8 (see also Figure 9.7).

9.14.2 LIVER

9.14.2.1 Static Hypothermic Storage

The introduction of UW revolutionized liver transplantation. Previous solutions had given successful preservation for only 8–16 hours in canine, porcine, or rodent models. UW allowed reliable and near-100% successful preservation in dog and in rat livers for 24 hours. Extended preservation to 30–48 hours was also possible experimentally, but with less adequate initial function.[172]

Clinical practice requires immediate function for liver grafts. At present, 80% or more grafts function adequately, but about 10% show initially poor graft function, and about 5% have permanent nonfunction of the graft, necessitating life-saving retransplantation. Factors influencing and responsible for poor initial function include fatty change in the donor liver, older donor age, preliminary liver reduction surgery, and longer cold storage.[203] Although storage for 24 or 30 hours can give good early function, it is thus preferable to keep storage times to under 12 hours for optimal results.[280]

Benchmark clinical practice remains hypothermic storage using UW. Modifications without HES and with reversed Na^+/K^+ ratio are equally effective. When using high-K^+ UW for preservation, a prevascularization rinse with a further washout solution is desirable. CRs are preferable to a Ringer's-lactate rinse.[281] Important considerations, whatever the composition of the solution, are that a brief prevascularization rinse should be at room or body temperature and that a basic extracellular crystalloid rinse composition can be enhanced by addition of adenosine, allopurinol, desferrioxamine, and glycine. Other additions to UW have been pentoxifylline, chlorpromazine and calcium-channel blockers, prostaglandins, eicosanoids, and lazaroids. Future modifications are likely to incorporate these and other additives to storage and rinse solutions, together with glycine and reversed Na^+/K^+ electrolyte content.

9.14.2.2 Oxygenated Perfusion

In the early 1960s, as liver transplantation was approaching clinical reality, Sicular and Moore investigated various methods of cooling and preserving organs by measuring glucose metabolism and carbon dioxide production.[282] The researchers reported surprisingly good maintenance of

function in livers perfused with acellular, oxygenated perfusate at 15°C. In 1963, Starzl used femoro-femoral, extracorporeal perfusion to preserve canine organs at 12°–15°C with autologous blood.[88] Using this technique, function was limited to 6 hours for the kidney and 2 hours for the liver. In these experiments, perfusion was initiated after cessation of blood flow without flushing the organ *in vivo*; this created a period of warm ischemia. *In vivo*–isolated perfusion of the liver with oxygenated blood at 10°–18°C was used to preserve canine livers for up to 5 hours before successful transplantation.[283] By 1967, the combination of continuous perfusion and hypothermic storage brought organ preservation to a new level. Using oxygenated plasma pumped in a pulsatile fashion at 8°–12°C, canine kidneys were successfully preserved for 72 hours, as described by Belzer and colleagues in a landmark paper.[223] Since then, perfusion has recently undergone a revival, with livers being perfused in increasingly complex circuits[284] for increasingly longer periods[284–287] and at increased temperatures (see also Section 9.15.2).

The use of machine perfusion applied to the liver presents a logistical concern because of the dual blood supply. Pulsatile perfusion of the artery alone using balanced salt solution at 4°C and 4 atmospheres pressure of oxygen gave marginal results in canines in 1967.[288] Bretschneider perfused both the portal vein and hepatic artery with a perfusate composed of half autologous blood and half preservation solution under refrigerated, hyperbaric conditions. In this experiment, in canines, the organ was flushed *in vivo* before being placed on the machine and subsequently transplanted. All five animals survived with excellent hepatic function after 8–9 hours of machine preservation. Three of five survived after 24 hours of preservation.[289] The method was successfully applied in seven patients, with periods of liver preservation lasting from 4 to 7 hours. All seven patients survived the first postoperative week.[290] This effective technique never gained widespread acceptance on account of logistical constraints, but it marked the first successful machine preservation of the liver and emphasized the importance of perfusing the portal vein and flushing the organ *in vivo*.

Subsequent introduction of Collins' solution and successful preservation with static HIP (hypothermic ischemic preservation) moved the clinical focus away from OP (oxygenated cold perfusion).[86] Clinical priorities then moved toward the logistic advantages of HIP, which enabled rapid and economic distant procurement and transport of organs.

Belzer later focused his OP work on the liver, using the porcine liver with the same cryoprecipitated plasma and hypothermic temperatures already used in kidney perfusion. This method involved continuous portal flow and pulsatile arterial flow. Four of five animals survived transplantation for 7 days after 8–10 hours of preservation, but only 2 of 12 survived beyond 12 hours when the preservation period was extended to 24 hours.[291] Similar results have been seen in canines.[292] The 24-hour barrier of OP in livers was achieved in 1973 by reports of 24- and 48-hour preservations of the canine liver. The reported technique involved arterial and portal perfusion of hypothermic, oxygenated plasma with the addition of corticosteroids. Twelve of 19 dogs survived 5 days in the 24-hour group, and 2 of 19 survived in the 48-hour group.[293,294]

Rat livers were perfused for 20–24 hours at 10°C with a perfluorocarbon emulsion in the perfusate.[295] Long-term survival (88–370 days) was achieved in five of nine rats in the fluorocarbon emulsion group, whereas the longest survivor in the control group lasted 5 days after transplantation.[295] An advantage of machine perfusion over HIP is the ability to provide a continuous supply of the substrates necessary for cellular functions. These results emphasize the need to enhance the benefits of continuous perfusion with the addition of oxygen.

The best results to date in liver preservation by machine perfusion were obtained by Belzer's group, which used only the portal vein to perfuse canine livers for 72 hours at 5°C.[296] This study showed the feasibility of using OP to achieve substantially longer preservation periods than can be achieved with HIP.

9.14.3 HEART

A shortage of organs, a relatively short acceptable ischemic time, and the serious perioperative consequences of inadequate preservation, as evidenced by a primary organ failure rate of 25% of early-recipient deaths, underline the importance of optimal hypothermic preservation techniques, in addition to rigorous selection criteria for donor hearts.[297]

Experimental studies have demonstrated satisfactory preservation of cardiac allograft function after 24 hours of storage, which, unfortunately, has not translated into successful extension of preservation times in man. Current clinical preservation techniques generally permit a safe ischemic period for cardiac allografts of 4–6 hours. The disparity between experimental and clinical studies may be attributed to several factors. First, it is imperative that cardiac allografts function immediately on implantation, achieving near-normal functional capacity in the early postoperative period. Second, unlike the kidney and liver, the heart poorly tolerates depletion of ATP. Third, the status of the human donor allograft at explantation is an additional factor not accounted for in laboratory studies, with virtually all experimental studies performed using allografts from normal donor animals that do not take into account baseline injury before explantation. It is now clear that significant injury can result from suboptimal management of the donor before allograft procurement. Furthermore, with the increasing acceptance of marginal and older donors, in an effort to boost the number of available organs, there is an unavoidable increase in baseline coronary artery disease. Optimal donor selection and management must now be considered integral components of allograft preservation.[297]

Preservation injury in the heart is multifactorial. Factors contributing to the severity of postoperative allograft dysfunction include insults associated with suboptimal donor management, hypothermia, ischemia-reperfusion injury, and depletion of energy stores. It has been suggested that organ preservation commences with meticulous treatment of the donor. Hemodynamic instability, loss of thermal regulation, and metabolic derangements accompanying brain death complicate the care of these patients (see also Section 9.8.1.3). Electrolyte imbalances exacerbate allograft edema and predispose the donor to dysrhythmias. Microinfarctions develop as a result of hypotensive and hypertensive episodes. It is important that aggressive efforts are taken to minimize these sequelae of brain death to ensure the potential suitability of the organ for transplantation and to decrease the likelihood of early and late dysfunction of implanted allografts. Selection and management of the donor candidate is at least as important as the preservation technique used.

The cardiac graft is further subject to injury at procurement. Excessive handling of the allograft during procurement may predispose the manipulated tissues to more severe preservation injury. Maintenance of allograft hypothermia and avoidance of extended exposure to air are also important for optimal preservation. Hypothermia is the cornerstone of current organ preservation. Unfortunately, it also contributes to the untoward cellular changes characteristic of *ex vivo* organ storage.[298] The hypothermic inactivation of the Ca^+ ATPase and Na^+/K^+ ATPase results, in part, in the sequestration of calcium and the leakage of water across the sarcolemma and into the cellular organelles,[299] respectively. Cardiac muscle is also very sensitive to depletion of energy stores during preservation. Static cold storage inevitably results in the exhaustion of high-energy phosphate stores. Without exogenous substrates for energy metabolism, the cardiac allograft must resort to finite glycogen and lipid stores, contributing to the limitations of safe storage times.

The predominant histological changes associated with heart preservation injury are myocardial edema bands and ischemic contracture. Contractures result from energy depletion and oxygen free-radical-mediated injury to intracellular organelles, with subsequent disturbance in calcium homeostasis. Mitochondrial damage exacerbates the progressive depletion of energy stores by further reduction in ATP availability. Altered membrane permeability and a reduction in Ca^+ ATPase activity in the sarcoplasmic reticulum, in conjunction with this decrease in high-energy phosphates, results in sluggish resequestration of calcium and, in turn, prolongation of diastolic relaxation. Cytosolic free calcium accumulates and binds with tropomyosin, creating a high-affinity state between actin

and myosin. With ATP depleted, the actinomycin cross-bridges are unable to be broken, resulting in irreversible myocardial contractures. The resultant allograft dysfunction often presents as diastolic stunning and reduced ventricular compliance in the early postoperative period. Endothelial cell injury accompanying the global parenchymal insult may result in coronary vascular dysfunction. Depositions of activated leukocytes and platelets in capillary beds of the donor heart contribute to the development of the low-reflow phenomenon occasionally observed at reperfusion.

Medical management of cardiac donors is an integral part of organ preservation that is complicated by the complex physiologic phenomenon of brain death and the need to coordinate procurement with other organ transplantation teams. Optimal care requires that the donor be treated as any other patient in an intensive care unit, with invasive hemodynamic monitoring, ventilatory support, and meticulous attention to intravascular volume status and electrolytes, to avoid irreversible damage to the allograft, precluding transplantation.[300]

Despite more than 2 decades of investigation, no single preservation regimen of the heart has yielded consistent, clinically superior preservation of allograft function. Hypothermia remains the most important component of organ preservation and the only factor universally considered to be essential,[301] as it reduces cellular oxygen consumption, metabolism, and activity of hydrolytic enzymes; increases allograft tolerance to ischemic insults; and stabilizes lysosomal membranes. Because cellular metabolism continues during cold storage — albeit at a greatly reduced rate — hypothermia can provide only a finite amount of protection before energy stores are eventually depleted, and toxic metabolites accumulate as anaerobic metabolic pathways commence.

9.14.3.1 Static Hypothermic Storage

The addition of a single flush of cardioplegic solution before static hypothermic storage significantly improves myocardial protection over hypothermia alone.[302] At the time of organ procurement, a bolus of cardioplegia solution is administered in standard fashion with a 14-gauge catheter proximal to the aortic cross-clamp. Rapid topical cooling of the heart is achieved with cold saline poured into the pericardial well. After explantation is complete, the allograft is sequentially placed in two sterile bags, each filled with cold saline; a saline-filled air-tight container; and finally a standard cooler of ice for transport. This simple technique provides excellent short-term myocardial protection and is the primary method used by more than 90% of transplant centers.[297] This simple technique of static hypothermic preservation provides excellent protection for currently accepted safe ischemic times. Target temperature for heart allograft storage is institution dependent and generally ranges between 0°C and 7°C. Experimental evidence indicates that the optimal temperature for myocardial protection approximates to 4°C — the temperature of melting ice.[303] This evidence supports the use of the simple, ice-slush static storage system. Because the temperature of the storage solution likely falls below 4°C, and few centers actually monitor the temperature,[304] the allograft should be immersed in sufficient saline to avoid cryogenic injury. Supercooling or freezing techniques using subzero temperature storage are being explored to extend the period of safe ischemic times.[305] Efforts are focused on prevention of intracellular crystal formation and optimal thawing protocols (see also 9.15.4). Cold saline is the most frequently used storage medium. In the Papworth heart donor survey, storage in any nonsaline solution was correlated with a greater than twofold increase in mortality.[306] Controlled studies are necessary to confirm this finding. The time necessary to perform implantation of the heart may account for a significant amount of the total ischemic time. During this period, the allograft may be warmed by direct thermal transfer from adjacent thoracic structures as well as from pulmonary venous drainage. Continuous aspiration of pulmonary venous return may be achieved by insertion of a vent into the left atrium through the right superior pulmonary vein or left atrial appendage. After completion of the posterior left atrial suture line, topical cold saline irrigation is initiated, and the patient is oriented in a left-side-down, head-up position to allow drainage of the saline away from the operative field and maximal exposure of the left and right ventricles. It is essential that the dependent portions of the allograft remain immersed

in cold saline and that any exposed regions be covered with cold saline-soaked gauze pads.[297] To shorten the allograft ischemic period, some centers perform the aortic anastomosis before that of the pulmonary artery, permitting completion of implantation with the cross-clamp removed. However, others suggest that the additional 10 minutes of ischemia necessary to perform the pulmonary anastomosis is a relatively short amount of time to exchange for greatly facilitating this important anastomosis.[297]

9.14.3.2 Oxygenated Perfusion

In the search for methods to extend preservation times, the efforts of some early investigators were directed toward developing a successful continuous-perfusion system for the explanted heart.[307] The theoretical advantages of perfusion preservation over static storage are the presence of a constant supply of oxygen and substrate for basal metabolic demands and the washout of toxic byproducts of metabolism. Unfortunately, these potential benefits were often overshadowed by the progressive increase in myocardial edema, in addition to the technical problems inherent in a complex perfusion apparatus. It is unlikely that human cardiac allografts preserved with current perfusion technology would be able to sustain recipients if transplanted orthotopically. Microperfusion techniques were proposed to reduce interstitial edema and associated diastolic dysfunction accompanying continuous perfusion.[308] They are characterized by perfusion at low pressures to attenuate the intravascular hydrostatic component of Fick's equation and thus reduce fluid extravasation. Perfusate oncotic pressure may be enhanced with the addition of solution impermeants to minimize edema further.

A compromise between single-flush and continuous perfusion cardioplegic delivery is a multiple-flush technique extended over the course of the ischemic interval.[309] Although experimental evidence suggests some improved parameters with intermittent perfusion, clinical application has remained limited.

9.14.3.3 Composition of Perfusate and Storage Solutions

Historically, many solutions have been used for myocardial preservation, with varying success. Because the optimal perfusate remains elusive, solutions of widely different compositions are currently championed by their advocates.[306]

9.14.3.3.1 Cardioplegic Solutions

To date, cardioplegic solution has not been an independent predictor of mortality in multivariant analysis.[297] Current intracellular solutions for cardioplegia include EC, Belzer's UW, and Bretschneider (HTK) solutions.[310] Early work with extracellular solutions as perfusate-storage media failed because of the loss of endothelial integrity and the development of significant cellular edema; however, addition of impermeants eventually permitted their successful use clinically. Stanford, Hopkins, and St. Thomas Hospital solutions are the representative extracellular cardioplegic solutions.[215] (See Table 9.6.) Of electrolytes included in cardioplegic-storage solutions, the optimal concentration of potassium and calcium has stimulated the most controversy. In selected situations, high concentrations of potassium have been associated with cellular injury, particularly of the coronary endothelium. Nevertheless, most investigators agree that convincing evidence demonstrating significant injury of the hypothermic cardiac allograft secondary to currently available hyperkalemic solutions is lacking.[311] Proponents of the addition of calcium warn of the possibility of the calcium paradox,[312] with acalcemic solutions (particularly in the setting of a low-sodium preservation medium); in contrast, calcium overload is intimately involved in the development of ischemic contractures in the myocyte. Experimental evidence indicates that only micromolar amounts are necessary to prevent the rare calcium paradox phenomenon, thus reducing the risk of contributing to contracture formation.[313]

9.14.3.3.2 Solution Additives

Recognizing that oxygen-derived free radicals are likely the critical mediators of ischemic-reperfusion injury, pharmacologic interventions to neutralize these cytotoxic molecules were a natural extension of heart preservation research. Administration of exogenous free-radical scavengers is believed to assist the recipient's intrinsic antioxidant defenses in the metabolism of the oxygen intermediates to benign molecules.[314] Although the addition of scavengers or chelators to the preservation regimen of heart allografts has resulted in a reduction in allograft edema and improved posttransplant function in numerous studies, their use remains controversial because of unsatisfactory or inconsistent results when administered clinically.[315] Impermeants are high-molecular-weight molecules that do not readily penetrate cell membranes. Mannitol, lactobionate, and raffinose are examples of impermeants that act as extracellular osmotic agents. They purportedly reduce hypothermia-induced cellular edema in allografts by counteracting the intracellular osmotic pressure imparted by protein and other cytosol-confined molecules.[182] Other impermeants such as hydroxyethyl starch and dextran act as oncotic agents and help prevent the development of allograft interstitial edema. The need to include impermeants in static storage solutions remains debatable. Because storage of organs at 4°C does not completely arrest metabolism, it is not surprising that metabolic substrates are common additives in perfusate-storage solutions. Investigations of metabolic substrate supplementation with adenosine, pyruvate, glutamate, and aspartate have dominated the myocardial preservation literature.[316] ATP may be repleted from adenosine through the purine salvage pathway and from these amino acids through the citric acid cycle. Although the biochemical rationale for provision of substrates in perfusate storage solutions appears theoretically sound, it is still unclear whether exogenous substrates can be taken up and used by the hypothermic cells of the allograft and, moreover, whether their addition significantly improves outcome.

Steroids (methylprednisolone, dexamethasone) have been added to preservation solutions for their general antiinflammatory effects.[317] Because ischemic injury to the allograft is partially mediated by a calcium influx, the addition of calcium channel blockers has also been proposed (e.g., verapamil in the University of California, Los Angeles, solution).[318] Finally, myocardial ischemic injury may be ameliorated by the administration of potent inhibitors of lipid peroxidation, called lazaroids.[319]

Many issues regarding perfusate storage solutions remain unresolved, and the spectrum of diverse experimental models complicates reliable comparison of results in the literature. Perhaps, as some investigators have theorized, if allograft ischemic periods are extended in the future, electrolyte composition and pharmacologic additives will become increasingly more important clinically. However, despite the vehement claims of investigators worldwide, there is no compelling clinical evidence at this time that any solution is clearly superior to the others for cardiac preservation when used within the current 6-hour ischemic limit.

9.14.3.4 Non-Heart-Beating Donor Hearts

Because of the critical shortage of allografts, the use of non-heart-beating donors is now being explored.[320] The period of warm ischemia before procurement further complicates preservation strategies. Furthermore, preparation of the procurement team is difficult, with the unpredictability of the time of death. Although some organs may tolerate the warm ischemic insult, it remains uncertain whether reanimation of hearts from these donors will yield allografts adequate for successful clinical transplantation.

The critical components of successful cardiac allograft preservation include meticulous donor management, hypothermia, and reperfusion modification. Continued research will be necessary to explore systematically the complex mechanisms mediating donor allograft injury and the many variables affecting the elusive optimal preservation strategy of cardiac allografts.

9.14.4 Lung

The quality of lung preservation affects perioperative allograft function, as poor allograft preservation results in increased morbidity and mortality following lung transplantation and could upregulate the expression of histocompatibility antigens, potentially resulting in increased allograft rejection. In addition, better lung preservation techniques could extend allograft ischemia times, resulting in increased numbers of organs available for transplantation, better procurement strategies, and prospective human leukocyte antigen matching. These factors have led to the continued search for better preservation modalities to decrease the extent of ischemia-reperfusion lung injury.

Since the first human lung transplantation procedure was performed in 1963, much progress has been made in the field of lung allograft preservation. Initially, lung transplantations were performed locally, with the donor transported to the recipient center. This resulted in minimal graft ischemic times and a decrease in the possibility of primary nonfunction, which is not well tolerated in the lung. Despite extensive experimental research, graft preservation beyond 2–3 hours was difficult to obtain before 1980. A variety of techniques were subsequently developed to allow for the preservation of lung grafts over greater distances and to allow for graft ischemia times of 4–6 hours. These techniques have included simple hypothermic atelectatic immersion, *ex vivo* normothermic heart–lung autoperfusion, donor core cooling, and pulmonary artery flush. The first two of these methods are of historical interest only and are no longer used in clinical practice.

9.14.4.1 Hypothermic Atelectatic Immersion

Hypothermic atelectatic immersion was the initial method of preservation used by the Toronto Lung Transplant Group. Satisfactory clinical results after 5.5 hours of ischemia were achieved.[321] This method was used for both single- and double-lung transplantation with good results.[322,323] However, the negative effects of atelectasis later led to the abandonment of this technique in favor of pulmonary artery flush, which allowed longer ischemic times with more predictable postoperative graft function.

9.14.4.2 Oxygenated Perfusion

Ex vivo normothermic heart–lung autoperfusion was also used successfully in the early clinical experience of lung transplantation. Originally described by the physiologists Martin and then Starling in the early 20th century, it was adapted in the 1960s for the preservation of heart grafts.[324] The Pittsburgh group then subsequently adapted this technique for the preservation of heart–lung grafts, with good results.[325] This method was later abandoned because of early deterioration of lung grafts from presumed neutrophil sequestration, resulting in uncontrolled pulmonary hypertension, hypostatic pulmonary edema, and graft failure. The procedure was also technically complex and required mechanical ventilation of lung grafts via the donor trachea during transport, preventing the sharing of intrathoracic organs among different transplantation centers. This technique is no longer used clinically, but it does provide a good model for the study of lung function in the laboratory.[326]

9.14.4.3 Static Hypothermic Preservation

Static preservation with hypothermia is the mainstay of current lung preservation of which two variants dominate the clinical field. To ensure complete cooling of the lung, donor core cooling has been employed before organ removal with good results. The other common technique is similar to that employed in the liver and kidney and consists of organ perfusion with cooled perfusate *in situ* before removal through the pulmonary artery.

9.14.4.3.1 Donor Core Cooling

Yacoub and colleagues were the main proponents of donor core cooling on cardiopulmonary bypass, especially for combined heart–lung transplantation.[327] The donor core cooling technique has not undergone major changes since its introduction into clinical practice in 1985.[328] It is estimated that more than 50% of the world's heart–lung transplantation procedures have been performed with organs preserved in this fashion. The technique results in controllable hypothermia with protection of other thoracic and abdominal organs. The perfusate is blood, which is an effective pH buffer, allows for tissue metabolic activity, and contains free-radical scavengers. The pulmonary parenchyma is also protected against embolism during perfusion because its only inflow comes from the bronchial arterial system. Despite these advantages, however, there are several disadvantages.[329] First, the technique is cumbersome, requiring a portable cardiopulmonary bypass unit (roller pump, perfusion circuit, heat exchanger, and oxygenator) in addition to the appropriate skilled personnel. Second, cooling of the lungs is slow and inefficient, requiring large amounts of ice and a prolonged period of time to achieve the necessary temperature drop. Third, the use of cardiopulmonary bypass results in deleterious effects on pulmonary function both from a direct ischemic insult and from the activation of various inflammatory pathways,[330] which results in increased alveolar capillary permeability. Fourth, animal data have indicated the presence of reduced oxygenation capacity in lungs preserved with this method compared with the pulmonary artery flush technique, although postoperative pulmonary vascular resistance was lower with core cooling, suggesting better preservation of the pulmonary vasculature.[331] A study in bovine lung allografts, however, revealed that the addition of recipient and donor leukocyte depletion to donor core cooling resulted in improved postischemic lung function beyond that provided by donor core cooling alone, resulting in good lung function after 24 hours of ischemia.[332] Given these concerns about donor core cooling for lung allograft preservation, the pulmonary artery flush technique has become the accepted preservation method used in lung transplantation.[326]

9.14.4.3.2 Pulmonary Artery Flush

As in kidney, liver, and heart preservation, the most common technique for lung preservation is simple flushing with a cold solution. In the lung, this is followed by hypothermic immersion in a semi-inflated state. Although at one point continuous flushing of lung grafts was investigated, this research has since been abandoned because of increased pulmonary hypertension, decreased lung compliance, and worsening pulmonary edema. On the basis of initial experimental and clinical work at Stanford University,[333] the pulmonary artery flush technique has been adopted by the vast majority of lung transplantation centers worldwide. Initial work at Stanford University centered on the use of cold potassium cardioplegia to flush both the pulmonary and the coronary arteries for combined heart–lung transplantation. Subsequently, cold EC solution was modified with magnesium sulfate and 50% dextrose. This modified solution was used to flush the pulmonary arteries, and cardioplegia was used to simultaneously perfuse the coronary circulation.[334] Subsequently, modified EC became the solution of choice for lung preservation.

The technique of pulmonary artery flush is straightforward and simple and allows for the rapid cooling of both lungs. The extent of cooling, however, depends on the volume used and on the distribution of this perfusate within the lungs. Increasing both the flow rate and the total volume of perfusate used resulted in significant improvement in postoperative graft function.[335] This method has been adopted into current clinical practice, in which a total perfusate volume of 60 mL/kg of body weight is typically infused over a 4-minute period. The technique also removes potentially harmful blood products such as platelets, leukocytes, and complement. Embolization into the pulmonary microvasculature is possible, however, and care must be taken to avoid this complication. The perfusion pressure should be kept low, and the flush temperature should be kept at 4°C as much as possible to decrease other potential complications.[329]

Although the majority of centers flush the lungs in an antegrade fashion, an interesting variation is a retrograde flush of the lungs via the left atrium.[336] In a porcine model of lung preservation

with modified EC, radiolabeled albumin was used to assess distribution within the tracheobronchial tree. Retrograde flush resulted in higher radiolabeled albumin counts compared with antegrade flush. Results were also encouraging in a study of 21 consecutive lung transplant recipients who received lungs preserved via the retrograde route.[336] Whether this technique is significantly different from antegrade pulmonary artery flush when applied on a more widespread basis remains to be seen, although the preliminary evidence is encouraging.

9.14.4.4 Composition of Preservation and Flush Solutions

During the period of graft ischemia, the activity of the Na^+/K^+ ATPase pump is decreased, leading to cellular swelling. To counteract this problem, two types of preservation solutions have been developed: intracellular solutions, such as EC and UW, and extracellular solutions, such as Wallwork and low-potassium dextran solutions.

Among the intracellular solutions, the most commonly used worldwide is the EC modified by the addition of magnesium sulfate and 50% dextrose.[337] The addition of glucose is based on animal studies showing better immediate lung function and higher levels of glucose metabolites in lungs preserved with a glucose-containing, low-potassium, dextran solution, compared with lungs preserved with only a low-potassium dextran solution.[338] The osmolarity of modified EC solution is slightly higher than that of serum. This has resulted in the preservation of lung grafts for up to 8–10 hours, although the upper limit is difficult to ascertain, given the many confounding variables affecting graft function in the clinical setting.

Another intracellular solution in clinical use in some centers is the UW. Although its use in the preservation of liver, kidney, and pancreas grafts is well documented and results in the extension of preservation times for these organs, its use in lung transplantation is still limited. It contains several components, the actual roles of which in ameliorating ischemia-reperfusion injury are not well understood (see also Section 3.9.1.4). The K^+ concentration in UW (120 mmoL) is similar to that of EC (115 mmol/L). This high concentration of potassium ions can result in pulmonary vasoconstriction and nonuniform flushing of the grafts if no pulmonary vasodilator, such as a prostaglandin bolus infusion, is used before flushing.

A complicating factor for UW is that its efficacy may be related to its shelf life, in contrast to EC. This is probably related to one of its components, reduced glutathione, which is a neutralizer of oxygen free radicals and lipid peroxides. Following prolonged storage, glutathione is converted to oxidized glutathione.[339] However, the effect of this change on lung preservation and postoperative graft function is not clear.

In general, it is thought that UW is as effective for lung preservation as the modified EC.[340] There is some evidence to indicate that longer periods of preservation may be possible with UW. The introduction of a low-potassium UW has resulted experimentally in improved gas exchange in isolated rabbit lungs. Whether this result is true in the clinical setting has yet to be determined. The majority of lung transplantation centers worldwide, however, continue to use modified EC solution for graft preservation primarily because of its longer duration of use in lung preservation and its lower cost and complexity in comparison with UW.

An alternative to intracellular solutions is an extracellular solution developed by the Papworth group, known as Wallwork solution.[214] It is based on third-party cold donor blood that is modified by the addition of various substrates such as epoprostenol (formerly prostacyclin), buffers, and human proteins, achieving a flush hematocrit of approximately 10%. Reports of its clinical use are limited, although preservation times of up to 4 hours have been achieved.[341] In a comparison study of Wallwork solution and modified EC, conducted in a canine lung transplantation model, lungs preserved with Wallwork solution demonstrated lower compliance and worse postreperfusion pulmonary edema.[342] Contradictory results were obtained when an *ex vivo* rat lung allograft model was used.[343] In this latter study, ischemia reperfusion lung injury was most decreased using Wallwork solution, compared with EC, UW, and low-potassium dextran solution. In another
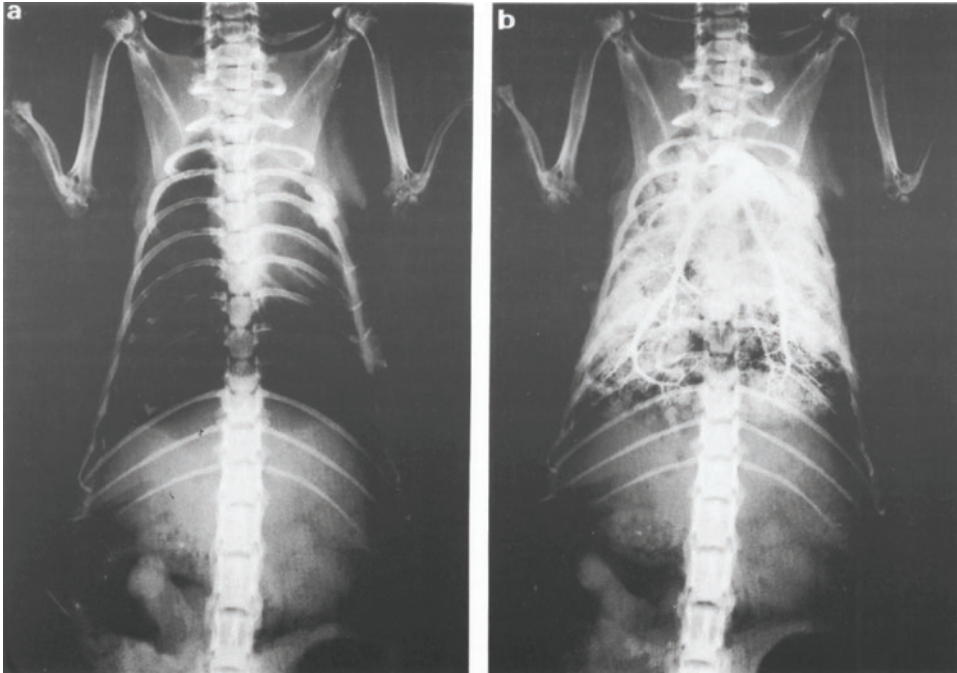
FIGURE 9.10 Images of an experimental single lung graft in rat after preservation with a high-sodium balanced lactobionate solution. Successfully preserved lung tissue in a rat model of single lung transplantation. Plate a: x-ray and Plate b: angiogram, taken 4 weeks after transplantation of a 24-hour stored lung using UW low-K solution. The radiological images of the transplanted left lung, which was ventilating normally, are comparable to those of the native right lung, showing a 100% recovery of the pulmonary tissue (absence of fibrotic change or congestion on x-ray, and good definition of lung vasculature on angiogram). (Hidalgo, M.A., et al., Morphological changes in rat single lung isografts after long-term survival, *Int. J. Exp. Pathol.*, 76, 43, 1995. With permission.)

experimental transplantation model, both low-potassium and high-potassium lactobionate solutions gave equivalent lung function after 24 hours of cold preservation[344] (see Figure 9.10). Further improvements in lung preservation were obtained when epoprostenol or the nitric oxide precursor L-arginine were added to Wallwork solution. Whether these results are similar in the setting of human lung transplantation has not been determined.

Another extracellular solution is low-potassium dextran solution, initially derived from animal experiments and then applied to clinical practice.[345] The use of dextran 40 in this solution confers potential advantages, such as its role as a free-radical scavenger, its anticoagulant properties, and its beneficial effects on tissue oncotic pressures. Whether these benefits render low-potassium dextran solution superior to EC solution is controversial. In canine left lung allograft transplantation, low-potassium dextran solution was compared directly with modified EC solution after donor pretreatment with alprostadil (formerly prostaglandin E_1) infusion.[346] Immediately following transplantation and at 3 days postoperatively, there were no significant differences in gas exchange or hemodynamic function between the two experimental groups. Another study, however, showed beneficial effects of extracellular solutions compared with intracellular solutions, using a perfused and ventilated rabbit lung model.[347] Both low-potassium dextran and blood-low-potassium dextran solutions provided superior pulmonary function compared with that of modified EC preceded by a bolus of alprostadil. Given this controversy, EC continues to be used for lung allograft flushing, typically after a bolus of prostaglandins is inserted into the pulmonary circulation.

A variety of pharmacologic additives have been investigated in animal models of lung preservation and transplantation, although the translation of these laboratory results into clinical practice remains slow. The additives that have been shown to ameliorate posttransplantation ischemia-reperfusion injury in various experimental models[348] include the following: prostaglandins such as alprostadil and epoprostenol; oxygen free-radical scavengers such as catalase, glutathione, superoxide dismutase, allopurinol, dimethylthiourea, lazaroid, and deferoxamine; calcium channel blockers such as verapamil, diltiazem, nifedipine, and nicardipine; lidocaine; complement inhibitors such as nafamostat mesylate and the soluble form of complement receptor 1; platelet-activating factor inhibitors; pentoxifylline; surfactant; monoclonal antibodies directed against intercellular adhesion molecule 1, CD11b antigen, or CD18 antigen; leumedins such as NPC 15669 and NPC 18915; sialyl Lewis[x] analogs such as CY 1503; and NO donors such as inhaled NO, nitroglycerin, nieorandil, glyceryl trinitrate, and nitroprusside. Leukocyte depletion by filtration has also been shown to decrease reperfusion injury in experimental models. More recently, gene therapy of donor lungs to ameliorate posttransplantation ischemia-reperfusion injury has been investigated in animal models. This strategy may hold promise as a future therapeutic option in lung preservation.

A few transplantation centers have begun adding nitrates to the flush solution in clinical lung transplantation to decrease the extent of subsequent acute lung dysfunction. In an *ex vivo* reperfusion model of rat lung grafts, the addition of glycerol trinitrate to the flush solution improved oxygenation and lung graft integrity, resulting in better allograft preservation than that seen with the addition of epoprostenol.[349] Another NO donor is sodium nitroprusside, which has been studied in a canine left lung allograft transplantation model.[350] The administration of nitroprusside to the flush solution and during allograft reperfusion resulted in reductions in pulmonary vascular resistance and myeloperoxidase activity, a measure of leukocyte sequestration. In addition, the nitroprusside group had improved lung allograft function and blood flow, correlating with reductions in the extent of ischemia-reperfusion injury. Similar results were obtained when sodium nitroprusside was directly infused into the pulmonary artery in an isolated, ventilated, whole blood–perfused rabbit lung model.[351] This resulted in improvements in pulmonary hemodynamics, oxygenation, compliance, and lung edema formation, without significant systemic hypotension. In a rat lung transplantation model with contralateral right pulmonary artery ligation, the addition of nitroglycerin to lactated Ringer's irrigation resulted in improved oxygenation, pulmonary blood flow, pulmonary vascular resistance, and survival compared with controls.[352] Nitroglycerin has been incorporated into a new pulmonary artery flush solution, resulting in better preservation of canine lung allografts.[353]

Given these beneficial effects of NO donors in lung allograft transplantation, sodium nitroprusside has started to be added to the flush solution.[326] Initially, it was added to the flush solution at the donor harvest site just before pulmonary artery flushing. Since then, sodium nitroprusside has been incorporated into the modified EC flush solution.[326] Another pharmacologic intervention that has been studied in the clinical setting is the inhibition of a complement, using a soluble complement receptor 1 inhibitor called TP10. A multicenter trial enrolled 59 patients who were randomly assigned to TP10 administered before reperfusion or to placebo.[354] TP10 resulted in significant increases in early extubation following lung transplantation, although there were no statistical differences with respect to total time spent on the ventilator or total intensive care unit time. Increased benefit was observed in patients who had experienced both ischemia-reperfusion injury and cardiopulmonary bypass. Although these results are encouraging, more work needs to be done before complement inhibition becomes a clinical reality.

9.14.4.5 Additional Factors Affecting Lung Storage

Given the inherent differences of the lung compared with other solid organs available for transplantation, various physiologic factors during the storage phase have been studied to ameliorate subsequent ischemia-reperfusion injury. These factors have included the storage temperature of the graft, the state of graft inflation, and the oxygen concentration of the graft.

9.14.4.5.1 Graft Temperature

Hypothermia is the cornerstone of lung preservation, although the exact degree of hypothermia has been a matter of controversy. The beneficial effects of hypothermia arise mainly from decreased cellular metabolic rates and slower substrate depletion rates. However, profound hypothermia can result in abnormal cellular membrane transport functions and calcium homeostasis. In addition, the activity of the Na^+/K^+ transmembrane pump is inhibited, resulting in decreased plasma membrane integrity. There is experimental evidence in an isolated rabbit lung model[355] and a canine left lung allotransplantation model[356] indicating that the optimal temperature for lung preservation may be 10°C rather than 4°C. This has not been translated into clinical practice, however, because of the cumbersome nature of maintaining grafts at 10°C, which would require a portable temperature regulator and cooling cabinet. Following procurement, the vast majority of transplantation centers store lung allografts in ice-cold saline or slush during transport. One potential complicating factor with the use of this technique is the inhomogeneous cooling that results following cold immersion because of the buoyancy of the inflated lung. An alternative method, investigated in the laboratory, is the use of ambient compressed air with dry ice for the preservation of lung allografts. Favorable results were obtained in nonflushed canine lungs preserved in this way compared with immersion in iced slush.[357] The translation of these results into clinical practice awaits further investigation before widespread acceptance.

9.14.4.5.2 Graft Inflation

The initial clinical experience in lung transplantation employed grafts preserved by atelectatic cold immersion, for which the graft is completely deflated with the use of a bronchial blocker.[322] With the introduction of the technique of pulmonary artery flush, it became apparent that the storage of grafts in an inflated state provided better graft preservation and decreased postoperative pulmonary edema. Experimental evidence in a canine lung transplantation model demonstrated that hyperinflated lungs resulted in more reliable posttransplantation graft function compared with grafts inflated at low lung volumes.[358] Hyperinflation applied clinically, however, resulted in increased acute allograft dysfunction. Lungs stored at normal lung volumes, in contrast, demonstrated satisfactory allograft function and minimal pulmonary edema during the postoperative assessment period.[359] Current practice is 100% oxygen end tidal volume inflation until implantation.[326]

9.14.4.5.3 Storage Oxygen Concentration of the Graft

The lung is unique among solid organs available for transplantation in that it is capable of maintaining aerobic metabolism after the cessation of cardiac activity. During extended periods of preservation, infra-alveolar oxygen and intracellular glucose allow the hypothermic lung to continue aerobic metabolism and preserve ATP levels.[338] The lung may also be capable of maintaining aerobic metabolism for short periods in non-heart-beating cadavers, as shown by adequate arterial oxygenation in canine lungs harvested from donors several hours after death.[360] For these reasons, it is common in clinical practice to inflate harvested lung grafts with oxygen, although there is still controversy about the exact oxygen concentration that is desirable. Experimental evidence has been contradictory. Ventilation with 100% nitrogen has been shown to be superior to room air or 100% oxygen in isolated canine lungs.[361] In isolated rabbit lungs, however, ventilation with 100% oxygen was superior to room air, which was superior to 100% nitrogen.[362] In an *in vitro* gravimetric rabbit lung model, graft inflation with 100% oxygen or 100% nitrogen increased the pulmonary capillary filtration coefficient, in comparison with storage at room air.[363] In further studies in the same model, this increase in the capillary filtration coefficient correlated with increases in end products of lipid peroxidation. This was counteracted by dimethylthiourea, a free-radical scavenger, indicating that oxygen free-radical injury occurs during ischemia and not only during reperfusion.[364] The use of hyperbaric oxygen has also been investigated,[365] yielding favorable results, although the procedure is technically cumbersome and the experiments were often not controlled. Current practice is 100% oxygen until implantation.[326]

9.14.4.6 Pretreatment

Treatment of the donor before pulmonary artery flush is used in virtually all lung transplantation programs to improve pulmonary artery flush distribution and decrease subsequent ischemia-reperfusion injury in the allograft. The high potassium concentration in intracellular flush solutions, pulmonary artery distention during graft flushing, and cold temperatures of the perfusates all result in reflex pulmonary vasoconstriction. This can theoretically result in nonuniform distribution of the flush solution and worse organ preservation. Prostaglandin administration into the donor lung before flush solution administration has been used to decrease this injury.

Bolus administration of prostaglandins into the pulmonary circulation before pulmonary artery flush has been routinely used in clinical practice to counteract reflex pulmonary vasoconstriction arising from the use of intracellular preservation solutions. Alprostadil is used in North America, and epoprostenol is used in Europe. These two prostaglandin formulations are considered clinically equivalent with respect to their effects on allograft preservation in lung transplantation.

The main benefit from the use of prostaglandins is pulmonary vasodilation, which counteracts reflex pulmonary vasoconstriction and allows for more uniform lung flushing and better organ preservation. Prostaglandins are also potentially beneficial for a variety of other reasons: decreased leukocyte sequestration, inhibition of platelet aggregation, prevention of lysosomal enzyme release and superoxide anion production by neutrophils, better cytoprotection, immunosuppression, and decreased vascular permeability.[366] Whether these other effects of prostaglandins further contribute to improved lung preservation remains controversial. A study of the mechanism of action of alprostadil in rat lung transplantation indicated that vasodilation by itself was insufficient to enhance lung protection.[367] Alprostadil enhanced lung preservation in that model by stimulating cyclic adenosine monophosphate-dependent protein kinase, thereby promoting nonvasodilatory mechanisms of lung allograft preservation. A variety of experimental lung transplantation studies have shown beneficial effects to donor pretreatment with prostaglandins before pulmonary artery flushing.[346,368–370] The beneficial effects of alprostadil pretreatment were also seen when canine lung allografts were flushed retrograde with alprostadil followed by UW[371] or infused during the first 6 hours of reperfusion,[372] supporting the use of alprostadil in the clinical setting following lung transplantation, with similar results reported using epoprostenol[373] or Iloprost,[374] a stable synthetic derivative of epoprostenol with a longer half-life and fewer systemic hypotensive effects. The vast majority of lung transplantation centers use prostaglandins, mainly for their effects on pulmonary vasodilation, resulting in a high-volume, low-pressure pulmonary artery flush. Clinically, alprostadil is administered via the pulmonary artery, as a single bolus injection into the main pulmonary artery before the administration of the flush solution.[326]

Treatment of the recipient after implantation has also been shown to be beneficial. In addition to standard immunosuppressive and antibiotic therapy in the postoperative period, various therapies have been used clinically to varying degrees to ameliorate the extent of graft ischemia-reperfusion injury. These have included the use of prostaglandins, high-dose methylprednisolone, and inhaled NO. Prostaglandins are also used clinically in the early postoperative setting to decrease reperfusion injury. In Europe, epoprostenol is administered until the systemic pressure is reduced by 30%, whereas in the United States, alprostadil is administered to control pulmonary artery pressures and reduce pulmonary vascular resistance.[326] Single-dose methylprednisolone has been added to most clinical protocols mainly because of its anti-inflammatory actions on activated neutrophils. Specifically, corticosteroids reduce lysosomal enzyme release and superoxide anion production by neutrophils, block complement-induced neutrophil aggregation, and inhibit arachidonic acid metabolism in granulocytes. Experimental evidence indicates benefits if corticosteroids are used in the donor before ischemia.[375] Clinically, however, corticosteroids are usually administered as an intravenous pulse of methylprednisolone to the recipient immediately before reperfusion.[326] An additional pharmacologic intervention used with marginal lung grafts at risk for reperfusion injury is inhaled NO in the posttransplantation period. Inhaled NO has a variety of potential beneficial effects

in the lung.[376] It is a potent yet selective pulmonary vasodilator, inducing relaxation of pulmonary vascular smooth muscle cells by activation of guanylate cyclase. NO has a variety of other actions inhibiting early neutrophil adhesion; preventing increases in microvascular permeability; inhibiting platelet adhesion, activation, and aggregation; and regulating the proliferation of vascular smooth muscle cells *in vitro* and *in vivo*.[377] Clinically, inhaled NO has been shown to ameliorate acute lung dysfunction,[378,379] although frequent monitoring of plasma methemoglobin levels is necessary to avoid toxicity.[326]

Current practice in lung preservation is full heparinization of the donor, a bolus pulmonary artery infusion of alprostadil followed by inflow occlusion by ligation of the superior vena cava and cross-clamping of the inferior vena cava.[380] Three liters of modified EC solution (added 50% glucose, magnesium sulfate and sodium nitroprusside) is administered, ice cold, into the main pulmonary artery via a large-bore catheter, usually a 14-gauge cannula. The perfusate is positioned 2 m above the ground to allow drainage by gravity. Perfusion pressures are usually 15–20 mm Hg. Simultaneous with the administration of flush through the main pulmonary artery, cardioplegia is infused into the ascending aorta after aortic cross-clamping. The right heart is vented by transecting the inferior vena cava proximal to its cross-clamp. The team harvesting abdominal organs is asked to cannulate the abdominal segment of the inferior vena cava to allow drainage of the perfusate off the table. The left atrial appendage rip is also cut to allow for drainage of the flush solution from the lungs. Ventilation with 100% FIO_2 is administered manually throughout this phase to result in an even distribution of the perfusate within the lung parenchyma. The chest is flooded with iced saline, and cold effluent is allowed to collect in the pleural spaces to further topically cool the lungs. After excision of the heart and decannulation of the pulmonary artery and the ascending aorta, the lungs are extracted en bloc. They are moderately inflated with 100% FIO_2 to a final volume corresponding to normal end-tidal inspiration. An additional lung flush is occasionally administered at this time by retrograde infusion of modified EC solution into the pulmonary veins. Following separation of the intrathoracic organs, the grafts are transported under hypothermic conditions by placement in ice, which results in temperatures between 0°C and 1°C. Ischemic times are typically less than 8 hours, although 10 hours is considered the upper limit. During implantation, the graft is protected from warm ischemia by topical cooling with iced slush. Immediately before reperfusion, a pulse dose of methylprednisolone is routinely administered to the recipient. Following reperfusion, intravenous infusion of alprostadil in the immediate perioperative period is administered for 24 hours. Methylprednisolone is continued intravenously twice daily for the first 3 days. Inhaled NO is administered at the first evidence of reperfusion injury.[380]

9.14.5 HEART–LUNG BLOCK

Simple cooling has been used for short-term preservation for heart–lung transplants. Lungs were originally flushed with cold EC via the pulmonary artery immediately after induction of cardioplegia. Flushing should maintain pressure below that normally found in the pulmonary artery. Hyperinflation of the lung before storage was shown to be beneficial.[358] Treatment of the donor with prostaglandin E1 followed by a hypothermic flush gave adequate 6-hour preservation.[329]

Single lung transplantation is now increasingly common, and lung preservation using a EC flush is only successful for 5–6 hours. Progressive deterioration with increased pulmonary vascular resistance and decreased compliance occurs by 12 hours, with interstitial hemorrhage and edema by 24 hours. The disaccharide trehalose has been substituted for glucose in EC with advantage.[381] Increasing experience with lung and heart–lung transplantation has demonstrated that the lung may be more robust in relation to its tolerance of extended storage than previously thought. UW and other solutions have given successful preservation for 24 hours.[382] Additions to the preserving solution that have been found useful have included prostaglandin E1, pentoxifylline, verapamil, and glutathione. Equivalent results to UW have been found with a dextran-based, low-potassium solution.[383]

9.14.6 Pancreas

UW was originally introduced to improve pancreas preservation. In the pancreas, it is paramount that preservation conserves the beta cells. Exocrine cell function can provide a marker of viability in the form of amylase excretion. Another important aim of preservation is to minimize the occurrence of ischaemia-induced acute pancreatitis, which increases morbidity after transplantation. Preservation of the pancreas proved difficult using Collins', citrate, and other solutions, and it was not until the advent of UW that reliable preservation for 24 hours was achieved experimentally and clinically. Experimental preservation has since been extended to 96 hours using UW with an added prostanoid inhibitor.[384] Other variations of UW can give satisfactory cold storage, including removal of HES or its replacement with dextran, and combinations of sodium lactobionate with histidine.[385–387]

The pancreas has also been studied in relation to the benefit of additional oxygen using a two-layer storage technique with a perfluorochemical adjacent to UW. In small animals, the technique of cold storage, whether surrounded by the preserving liquid or wrapped in moistened gauze, has influenced efficacy of preservation, perhaps related to the filamentous and nonencapsulated nature of the pancreas, resulting in a greater tendency for harmful edema and weight gain to occur during storage immersed in liquid.[235,388] Whole-organ pancreas preservation needs to include the associated duodenal segment containing the duodenal papilla and pancreatic ducts.

9.14.7 Small Bowel

Small-bowel grafts can be transplanted alone or combined as organ-cluster grafts with liver or pancreas. Commonly, organ donors are treated with both OKT3 and antithymocyte globulin in an attempt to immunomodulate the potential allograft. An osmotic agent is not used to flush the intestinal contents, nor is any specific intestinal decontamination regimen used.[389]

The main site of injury during small-bowel preservation has been thought to be the endothelium and basement membrane of the highly vascularized mucosa. The small intestine has a high concentration of the enzyme xanthine oxidase, rendering it liable to reperfusion injury. Free-radical damage has been implicated, particularly after prolonged preservation and after warm ischemic injury. Experimental preservation is possible for up to 48 hours in the rat and dog; the advantages of any one preservation solution are less obvious than with other organs. Sucrose, Collins', UW, and Bretschneider's solutions, and solutions with added dextran and containing free-radical scavengers have given more or less equivalent results.[390] Pretransplant rinse has not been shown helpful in preventing reperfusion injury. Polyethylene glycol has been suggested as an additive both to enhance preservation and to modify rejection in experimental small-bowel, heart, and pancreas transplantation.[391] Small-bowel and small-bowel/liver transplantation have evolved from an experimental therapy to an accepted form of treatment for patients with intestinal failure and associated life-threatening complications. Factors that have contributed to improved patient and allograft survival include new immunosuppressive agents, better patient selection, and refinements in the surgical procedure.[389] The upper limit of acceptability is currently 12 hours of cold ischemia.

9.14.8 Composite Tissues and Limbs

Reconstructive plastic surgery uses vascularized autografts of composite tissues to fill large defects. These grafts involve skin, subcutaneous fat, muscle, bone, nerves, and blood vessels. Severed limbs and digits can be replaced as autografts in complex operative procedures that can take many hours. Storage of the grafts relies principally on simple external cooling by refrigerated saline and on wrapping the grafts in cold saline-soaked packs during implantation.[172] Vascular flushing has not been widely used for fear of damaging the small vessels requiring microvascular suture. Flushing does not give any significant improvement over simple hypothermic storage in cold-preserving

liquid.[172] Recent studies on the cold preservation of skeletal muscle demonstrated that HTK was an effective preservation medium[392] when used as bathing solution, whereas no clear advantage of vascular perfusion could be shown. The addition of antioxidants trolox and deferione to the storage medium improved muscle function after cold storage.[393] Hypothermic storage usually adequately covers the periods required in clinical practice — usually less than 12 hours. However, in a composite murine whole-limb replantation model, cooling to –1°C in the absence of ice formation provided better protection than that seen at 4°C.[394] The challenge with this technology is to maintain strict temperature control such that ice does not spontaneously nucleate following a small drift in the temperature of storage. In general, tolerance of the various tissues within limbs and digits to ischemia varies: muscle and nerve are more sensitive than skin and bone. Restoration of the circulation to reimplanted limbs or other composite grafts of large bulk may release a large bolus of potassium into the circulation and can induce fatal hyperkaliemic cardiac arrest. After extended storage, the contained blood or preservation solution should be rinsed out with warm plasma or balanced electrolyte solution before release of the clamps.[172]

9.15 NEW DEVELOPMENTS IN ORGAN PRESERVATION

9.15.1 ISCHEMIC PRECONDITIONING

Organ preconditioning is a process whereby a brief event, be it transient ischemia, oxidative stress, temperature change, or drug administration, bestows on an organ a temporary tolerance to further insults by the same or similar stressors.[395] Ischemic preconditioning (IP) is the exposure of the organ to a brief period of ischemia (e.g., 5–10 minutes) and reperfusion that has been shown to effectively protect it against subsequent warm ischemia[396,397] and cold storage injury.[398] Murry et al. first recognized organ preconditioning: While trying to create a larger myocardial infarction in a dog, they subjected animals to several brief episodes of myocardial ischemia and reperfusion before a protracted ischemic injury.[399] Surprisingly, they observed that the area of infarction in the stressed animals was dramatically reduced — by up to 75% — compared with animals not subjected to the antecedent brief ischemia.[399] In addition to limiting infarct size, IP reduced myocardial functional stunning [400,401] and postischemic arrhythmias[402,403] and accelerated the recovery of muscle function after ischemia.[404] Similar pictures of ischemic protection have been confirmed in multiple organs across many species.[395] Preliminary studies in humans confirmed the efficacy of IP in the liver.[405] In animals, ischemic preconditioning of lungs before prolonged hypothermic storage is protective of both compliance and gas exchange.[406] There is strong evidence that adenosine is a key mediator in IP[407] through its stimulation of adenosine A_2 receptors,[408–410] which initiates NO formation,[407,410] and causes activation of protein kinase C, AMP-activated protein kinase, and p38 MAPK.[411,412] These intracellular signaling pathways, once activated, not only trigger increased tolerance of the hepatocytes, and endothelial cells in the case of the liver, against ischemic insults, but they also cause quiescent cells to enter the cell cycle and initiate a regenerative response.[412] Induction of heat-shock proteins HSP70[396] and heme oxygenase 1 (HSP32)[413] has been implicated in the mechanism of preconditioning. HSP induction can reduce the nuclear binding of proinflammatory transcription factors[414] and increase the antioxidant capacity of cells.[415] This may contribute to a reduction in the formation of TNF-α and an attenuated inflammatory response in preconditioned livers.[416,417] Carbon monoxide, a byproduct of heme oxygenase 1 activity, was shown to activate p38 MAPK as a key mechanism of carbon monoxide–mediated protection against IR injury.[418] Thus a combination of factors may contribute to the reduced injury and the improved long-term survival in animals subjected to preconditioning, including the increased tolerance to ischemic injury and oxidant stress, a reduced inflammatory response, and enhanced regeneration.[419]

9.15.2 Higher-Temperature Storage

The advantages of oxygenated perfusion and its specific use in organs (mainly kidney and liver) have been discussed in Sections 9.10, 9.14.1.2, and 9.14.2.2. Recently, there has been increasing interest in these techniques, with the abandonment of the principle of hypothermia as the cornerstone of preservation in favor of attempting to replicate homeostasis by supplying adequate substrates at normothermia or mild hypothermia (10°C); hence the description of "higher-temperature storage." This status has been brought on by the increasing inability to expand donor pools and the increasing use of previously considered marginal organs (e.g., steatotic livers and non-heart-beating organs), which suffer more damage from cold ischemic storage.

The introduction of UW improved the quality of the cold-preserved grafts and remains the gold standard of organ preservation. Further improvement of UW was attempted, but without clear clinical effect.[211,420,421] It is doubtful that further significant improvements of organ-preservation solution will be possible as long as the solution is based on a static ischemic principle. In contrast to the static method of cold preservation, normothermic oxygenated perfusion (NOP) could be a major step forward if it were possible to maintain the physiologic metabolism of the graft extra-corporeally during preservation.[422] To stop the process of biodegradation as it takes place under cold static preservation, a graft needs substrates and must get rid of metabolites. NOP provides substrates and, as long as it is being conducted with simultaneous dialysis, also allows for disposal of metabolites.

The technique of isolated liver perfusion for evaluation of preservation methods, either normo-thermic or at low temperature, has been known for many years.[423–425] The potential advantages of NOP storage versus cold and static cold-flush preservation are obvious. First, no cold-ischemic injury is inflicted. Second, it is possible to monitor liver viability during perfusion by bile produc-tion, transaminase release,[426] and metabolic function before transplantation.[427,428] The most con-vincing evidence of NOP is the success of preservation, proven by primary graft function after transplantation. Moreover, NOP must be compared with UW preservation, as it is the standard against which all modifications in preservation must be assessed.[185,429] There are few examples in which this has been achieved, the most interesting of which is from Neuhaus' group in Berlin, using a pig model.[284] This group developed an advanced liver perfusion circuit in which the organ was placed in a waterlogged and sealed chamber.[284] Oscillating pressure profiles imitating the intraabdominal pressures improved perfusion of peripheral lobules significantly.[430] Further, the introduction of simultaneous dialysis of the recirculating perfusate allows for regulation of pH and physiologic electrolyte concentrations. Water-soluble toxins and increased amino acids are removed.[431] The researchers demonstrated that it was possible to maintain a liver on NOP (37°C), for 4–5 hours, using a perfusate of pig blood from fed pigs under the assumption that it contains all necessary substrates, and to transplant it successfully, producing results that were comparable to immediately transplanted livers.[284] The scientists went on to demonstrate that NOP was superior to cold UW preservation when it was preceded by 1 hour of warm ischemia, which has far-reaching implications for the use of non-heart-beating organs.[284] Working almost simultaneously, Friend's group in Oxford tried to simplify the NOP circuit while further exploring its use in preserving non-heart-beating pig livers.[285–287] This group succeeded in maintaining the liver's function for 48 hours on NOP in a nontransplant model.[287] These studies have obvious implications for non-heart-beating and steatotic organs that are more sensitive to cold ischemic injury than cadaveric organs.[432]

9.15.3 Gene Therapy in Organ Preservation

The ability to modulate the damage mechanisms following organ preservation by gene therapy has moved from theory to practice over the last 5 years. Specific pathways, such as the regulatory genes controlling apoptosis (e.g., Bcl-2) have been shown to be amenable to transfection and to reduce hypoxic cell damage.[433] Improved survival after liver cold preservation was demonstrated[434] by

transfection of Bag-1 (another of the proteins that interacts with BCL-2). There was also a possible effect on the heme oxygenase pathway (a member of the stress protein family), and this supported previous work in which transfection of HO-1 was also protective in experimental liver storage and transplantation.[435] Combined transfer of genes for antioxidant enzyme super oxide dismutase and cytoprotective nitric oxide synthase provided enhanced function in a model of cardiac preservation and transplantation.[436] There remain many hurdles to overcome before such techniques reach clinical application, including the nature of the transfection agent and the timing of gene induction, but these will undoubtedly become the center of attention in the near future.

9.15.4 FREEZING AND VITRIFICATION

The biophysical events dictating survival of cells after exposure to very low temperatures, ice crystal growth, and the need for protections by cryoprotectants have been dealt with in detail elsewhere in this book. Attempts at cryopreserving organs have a long history,[437] but occasional reports of success[438] have proved difficult to repeat in a consistent fashion. For example, short-term freezing of kidneys causes very substantial damage, and such organs never regain normal function.[27,224,438]

Thus, unfortunately, freezing of organs, so attractive in concept, in establishing organ banks by true suspended animation and indefinite storage, has not proved feasible to date.[439,440] There are many characteristics specific to organs that dictate this poor survival, but it is worth commenting on a few here.

Although it is relatively simple to add and remove cryoprotectant mixtures from cell suspensions by mixing solutions, the ability to achieve this in a large, three-dimensional structure like a mammalian organ can only be achieved by controlled vascular perfusion. Because osmotic damage can be induced by exposure to high concentrations of such chemicals, perfusion must be allied with integrated control of cryoprotectant concentration change. This has been achieved in experimental studies[441] but has not so far been applied in the clinical setting.

For single cells, the distribution or orientation of extracellular ice crystals is largely irrelevant, but in organs in which cells are packed in high density, with important connections to the basement membrane or other cells, growth of ice can cause significant structural damage.[442] Given that organs are of large size, with a low surface area–to-volume ratio, manipulation of cooling and warming rates are restricted. Because slow cooling rates are compatible with the survival of many mammalian cells, ice is not a problem during the cooling phase, but it may have a significant negative effect during warming, where rapid rates are usually imperative to avoid damaging events linked to ice recrystallization. Application of electromagnetic warming has been suggested for many years,[443] but significant biophysical and equipment-related problems remain to be sorted out, although progress is being made in this area.[444] The cellular heterogeneity of organs such as the kidney is another problem, because different cell types vary in their requirements for successful cryopreservation. The vascular system appears especially vulnerable, and the vascular endothelium cells are disrupted by freezing, leading to occlusion after revascularization.[445]

Cooling to subzero temperatures without freezing (supercooling or, more correctly, undercooling) diminishes problems caused by ice formation, but a depression of only a few degrees in storage temperature can be achieved, and the toxicity of cryoprotectants is still excessive. An alternative method of cryopreservation is based on total vitrification of the organ.[446–448] (The scientific basis for this has been discussed in Chapter 8.) In this approach, the organ or tissue is first perfused with a high concentration of cryoprotectants so that on cooling, neither intracellular nor extracellular freezing occurs. The solution vitrifies (i.e., solidifies into a glassy state) at temperatures below approximately –100°C, marking the effective end of biological time. Extremely high concentrations of cryoprotectants are needed for this approach. Again, problems of addition and removal of these agents and control of cooling and warming remain, but investigations are continuing, with reported improvements in some aspects of the technology.[449]

REFERENCES

1. Calne, R.Y., Pegg, D.E., Pryse-Davies, J., and Brown, F.L., Renal preservation by ice-cooling: An experimental study relating to kidney transplantation from cadavers, *Br. Med. J.*, 2, 651, 1963.
2. Loebell, C., *De Conditionibus Quibus Secretiones in Glandulis Perficiuntus*, Ph.D. thesis, Philipps Universitat, Marburg, Germany, 1849.
3. Bernard, C., Sur le mechanisme de la formation du sucre dans la foie, *C. R. Acad. Sci.*, 41, 461, 1855.
4. Brodie, T., The perfusion of surviving organs, *J. Physiol. (Lond.)*, 29, 266, 1903.
5. Locke, F. and Rosenheim, O., Contribution to the physiology of the isolated heart. The consumption of dextrose by mammalian cardiac muscle, *J. Physiol. (Lond.)*, 36, 205, 1907.
6. Ringer, S., A third contribution regarding the influence of the inorganic constituents on the ventricular contraction, *J. Physiol. (Lond.)*, 4, 222, 1881.
7. Carrel, A. and Lindbergh, C., The culture of whole organs, *Science*, 81, 621, 1935.
8. Hume, D.M., Merril, J.P., Miller, B.F., and Thorn, G.W., Experiences with renal homotransplantation in the human: Report of nine cases, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 34, 327, 1955.
9. Levy, M.N., Oxygen consumption and blood flow in the hypothermic, perfused kidney, *Am. J. Physiol.*, 197, 1111 1959.
10. Schloerb, P.R., Waldorf, R.D., and Welsh, J.S., The protective effect of kidney hypothermia on total renal ischemia, *Surg. Forum*, 8, 633, 1957.
11. Pegg, D.E., Calne, R.Y., Pryse-Davies, J., and Leigh-Brown, F., Canine renal preservation using surface and perfusion cooling techniques, *Annu. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 120, 506, 1964.
12. Kiser, J., Farley, H., Mueller, G., Strobel, C., and Hitchcock, C., Successful renal autografts in the dog after seven-hour selective kidney refrigeration, *Surg. Forum*, 11, 26, 1960.
13. Churchill, T.A., Cheetham, K.M., and Fuller, B.J., Glycolysis and energy metabolism in rat liver during warm and cold ischemia: Evidence of an activation of the regulatory enzyme phosphofructokinase, *Cryobiology*, 31, 441, 1994.
14. Selzner, N., Rudiger, H., Graf, R., and Clavien, P.A., Protective strategies against ischemic injury of the liver, *Gastroenterology*, 125, 917, 2003.
15. Teoh, N.C. and Farrell, G.C., Hepatic ischemia reperfusion injury: Pathogenic mechanisms and basis for hepatoprotection, *J. Gastroenterol. Hepatol.*, 18, 891, 2003.
16. Daemen, M.A., de Vries, B., and Buurman, W.A., Apoptosis and inflammation in renal reperfusion injury, *Transplantation*, 73, 1693, 2002.
17. Lien, Y.H., Lai, L.W., and Silva, A.L., Pathogenesis of renal ischemia/reperfusion injury: Lessons from knockout mice, *Life Sci.*, 74, 543, 2003.
18. Piper, H.M., Meuter, K., and Schafer, C., Cellular mechanisms of ischemia-reperfusion injury, *Annu. Thorac. Surg.*, 75, S644, 2003.
19. Lyman, C.P., Why bother to hibernate? in *Hibernation and Torpor in Mammals and Birds*, Lyman, C.P., Willis, J., Malan, A., and Wang, L., Eds., Academic Press, New York, 1982, p. 317.
20. Heldmaier, G., Klingenspor, M., Werneyer, M., Lampi, B.J., Brooks, S.P., and Storey, K.B., Metabolic adjustments during daily torpor in the Djungarian hamster, *Am. J. Physiol.*, 276, E896, 1999.
21. Klingenspor, M., Niggemann, H., and Heldmaier, G., Modulation of leptin sensitivity by short photoperiod acclimation in the Djungarian hamster, *Phodopus sungorus*, *J. Comp. Physiol. [B]*, 170, 37, 2000.
22. Green, C., Mammalian hibernation: Lessons for organ preparation? *Cryo-Lett.*, 21, 91, 2000.
23. Arrhenius, S.A., *Quantitative Laws in Biological Chemistry*, G. Bell & Sons, London, 1915.
24. Heilbrunn, L.V., *An Outline of General Physiology*, W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia, 1937.
25. Pfaff, E., Heldt, H.W., and Klingenberg, M., Adenine nucleotide translocation of mitochondria. Kinetics of the adenine nucleotide exchange, *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 10, 484, 1969.
26. Lyons, J.M. and Raison, J.K., Oxidative activity of mitochondria isolated from plant tissues sensitive and resistant to chilling injury, *Plant Physiol.*, 45, 386, 1970.
27. Pegg, D.E., An approach to hypothermic renal preservation, *Cryobiology*, 15, 1, 1978.
28. Fuller, B.J., Busza, A.L., and Proctor, E., Possible resuscitation of liver function by hypothermic reperfusion *in vitro* after prolonged (24-hour) cold preservation: A 31P NMR study, *Transplantation*, 50, 511, 1990.

29. Proctor, E. and Jones, G.R., *In vitro* assessment of preserved dog hearts with some reference to preserved dog kidneys, in *Organ Preservation*, Pegg, D.E., Ed., Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh, 1973, p. 216.
30. Pegg, D.E., Foreman, J., Hunt, C.J., and Diaper, M.P., The mechanism of action of retrograde oxygen persufflation in renal preservation, *Transplantation*, 48, 210, 1989.
31. Calman, K., Quin, R., and Bell, P., Metabolic aspects of organ storage and the prediction of organ viability, in *Organ Preservation*, Pegg, D.E., Ed., Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh, 1973, p. 225.
32. Balogun, E., Foresti, R., Green, C.J., and Motterlini, R., Changes in temperature modulate heme oxygenase-1 induction by curcumin in renal epithelial cells, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.*, 308, 950, 2003.
33. Lee, D. and Chapmen, D., The effects of temperature on biological membranes and their models, in *Temperature and Animal Cells*, Fuller, B.J. and Bowler, K., Eds., The Company of Biologists, Cambridge, 1987, p. 35.
34. Feltkamp, C.A. and van der Waerden, A.W., Low temperature-induced displacement of cholesterol and intramembrane particles in nuclear membranes of mouse leukemia cells, *Cell. Biol. Int. Rep.*, 6, 137, 1982.
35. Crowe, J.H., Hoekstra, F.A., Crowe, L.M., Anchordoguy, T.J., and Drobnis, E., Lipid phase transitions measured in intact cells with Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy, *Cryobiology*, 26, 76, 1989.
36. Beattie, G.M., Crowe, J.H., Lopez, A.D., Cirulli, V., Ricordi, C., and Hayek, A., Trehalose: A cryoprotectant that enhances recovery and preserves function of human pancreatic islets after long-term storage, *Diabetes*, 46, 519, 1997.
37. Willis, J.S., Ellory, J.C., and Becker, J.H., Na-K pump and Na-K-ATPase: Disparity of their temperature sensitivity, *Am. J .Physiol.*, 235, C159, 1978.
38. Stefanovich, P., Ezzell, R.M., Sheehan, S.J., Tompkins, R.G., Yarmush, M.L., and Toner, M., Effects of hypothermia on the function, membrane integrity, and cytoskeletal structure of hepatocytes, *Cryobiology*, 32, 389, 1995.
39. Kim, J.S. and Southard, J.H., Membrane stabilizing effects of calcium and Taxol during the cold storage of isolated rat hepatocytes, *Transplantation*, 68, 938, 1999.
40. Breton, S. and Brown, D., Cold-induced microtubule disruption and relocalization of membrane proteins in kidney epithelial cells, *J. Am. Soc. Nephrol.*, 9, 155, 1998.
41. Fuller, B.J., Marely, S., and Green, C., Gluconeogenesis in stored kidneys from normal and cold-acclimated rats, *Cryo-Lett.*, 6, 91, 1985.
42. Ellermann, J., Gewiese, B., David, H., Stiller, D., Plotz, M., Wolf, K.J., and Luning, M., Electron microscopic and 31-P NMR studies of ischemic injured rat livers during preservation and reflow, *Exp. Toxicol. Pathol.*, 44, 245, 1992.
43. Sammut, I.A., Thorniley, M.S., Simpkin, S., Fuller, B.J., Bates, T.E., and Green, C.J., Impairment of hepatic mitochondrial respiratory function following storage and orthotopic transplantation of rat livers, *Cryobiology*, 36, 49, 1998.
44. McAnulty, J.F., The effect of calcium on hypothermia-facilitated resuscitation of warm ischemic kidney tissue slices: A role for the mitochondrial permeability transition pore? *Cryobiology*, 36, 12, 1998.
45. Salahudeen, A.K., Joshi, M., and Jenkins, J.K., Apoptosis versus necrosis during cold storage and rewarming of human renal proximal tubular cells, *Transplantation*, 72, 798, 2001.
46. Rauen, U., Kerkweg, U., Weisheit, D., Petrat, F., Sustmann, R., and de Groot, H., Cold-induced apoptosis of hepatocytes: Mitochondrial permeability transition triggered by nonmitochondrial chelatable iron, *Free Radic. Biol. Med.*, 35, 1664, 2003.
47. Bock, P.E., Gilbert, H.R., and Frieden, C., Analysis of the cold lability behavior of rabbit muscle phosphofructokinase, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.*, 66, 564, 1975.
48. Fuller, B.J., Lockett, C.L., Proctor, E., and Busza, A.L., Control of intracellular pH in mammalian liver at hypothermia: Evidence for a relationship with energy metabolism, *Cryobiology*, 30, 543, 1993.
49. Green, C.J., Gower, J.D., Healing, G., Cotterill, L.A., Fuller, B.J., and Simpkin, S., The importance of iron, calcium, and free radicals in reperfusion injury: An overview of studies in ischaemic rabbit kidneys, *Free Radic. Res. Commun.*, 7, 255, 1989.
50. Rauen, U. and de Groot, H., Mammalian cell injury induced by hypothermia — the emerging role for reactive oxygen species, *Biol. Chem.*, 383, 477, 2002.

51. Gower, J.D., Healing, G., Fuller, B.J., Simpkin, S., and Green, C.J., Protection against oxidative damage in cold-stored rabbit kidneys by desferrioxamine and indomethacin, *Cryobiology*, 26, 309, 1989.

52. Toledo-Pereyra, L.H. and Rodriguez, F.J., Scientific basis and current status of organ preservation, *Transplant Proc.*, 26, 309, 1994.

53. Southard, J.H. and Belzer, F.O., Organ preservation, *Annu. Rev. Med.*, 46, 235, 1995.

54. Bilzer, M. and Gerbes, A.L., Preservation injury of the liver: Mechanisms and novel therapeutic strategies, *J. Hepatol.*, 32, 508, 2000.

55. Fuller, B., Organ preservation: The profit and loss account of using hypothermia to maintain viability, *Transplant Rev.*, 13, 55, 1999.

56. Chan, E.Y., Stang, S.L., Bottorff, D.A., and Stone, J.C., Hypothermic stress leads to activation of Ras-Erk signaling, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 103, 1337, 1999.

57. Roberts, J.R., Rowe, P.A., and Demaine, A.G., Activation of NF-kappaB and MAP kinase cascades by hypothermic stress in endothelial cells, *Cryobiology*, 44, 161, 2002.

58. Lokkegaard, H. and Bilde, T., Vascular resistance in hypothermically perfused kidneys following one hour of warm ischaemia, *Acta. Med. Scand.*, 191, 429, 1972.

59. Kim, S.J., Depre, C., and Vatner, S.F., Novel mechanisms mediating stunned myocardium, *Heart Fail. Rev.*, 8, 143, 2003.

60. Kim, J.S., He, L., Qian, T., and Lemasters, J.J., Role of the mitochondrial permeability transition in apoptotic and necrotic death after ischemia/reperfusion injury to hepatocytes, *Curr. Mol. Med.*, 3, 527, 2003.

61. Duchen, M.R., Roles of mitochondria in health and disease, *Diabetes*, 53 Suppl 1, S96, 2004.

62. Jaeschke, H., Preservation injury: Mechanisms, prevention and consequences, *J. Hepatol.*, 25, 774, 1996.

63. Healing, G., Gower, J., Fuller, B., and Green, C., Intracellular iron redistribution. An important determinant of reperfusion damage to rabbit kidneys, *Biochem. Pharmacol.*, 39, 1239, 1990.

64. McCord, J.M., Oxygen-derived free radicals in postischemic tissue injury, *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 312, 159, 1985.

65. Jaeschke, H., Xanthine oxidase-induced oxidant stress during hepatic ischemia-reperfusion: Are we coming full circle after 20 years? *Hepatology*, 36, 761, 2002.

66. Liaudet, L., Szabo, G., and Szabo, C., Oxidative stress and regional ischemia-reperfusion injury: The peroxynitrite-poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase connection, *Coron. Artery Dis.*, 14, 115, 2003.

67. Lemasters, J.J. and Thurman, R.G., Reperfusion injury after liver preservation for transplantation, *Annu. Rev. Pharmacol. Toxicol.*, 37, 327, 1997.

68. Garin, G., Badid, C., McGregor, B., Vincent, M., Guerret, S., Zibara, K., Hurlstone, A., Laville, M., and McGregor, J.L., Ischemia induces early expression of a new transcription factor (6A3-5) in kidney vascular smooth muscle cells: Studies in rat and human renal pathology, *Am. J. Pathol.*, 163, 2485, 2003.

69. Semenza, G.L., HIF-1: Mediator of physiological and pathophysiological responses to hypoxia, *J. Appl. Physiol.*, 88, 1474, 2000.

70. Singh, I., Zibari, G.B., Brown, M.F., Granger, D.N., Eppihimer, M., Zizzi, H., Cruz, L., Meyer, K., Gonzales, E., and McDonald, J.C., Role of P-selectin expression in hepatic ischemia and reperfusion injury, *Clin. Transplant*, 13, 76, 1999.

71. Vinten-Johansen, J., Involvement of neutrophils in the pathogenesis of lethal myocardial reperfusion injury, *Cardiovasc. Res.*, 61, 481, 2004.

72. Halloran, P.F., Homik, J., Goes, N., Lui, S.L., Urmson, J., Ramassar, V., and Cockfield, S.M., The "injury response": A concept linking nonspecific injury, acute rejection, and long-term transplant outcomes, *Transplant Proc.*, 29, 79, 1997.

73. Hochachka, P.W., Buck, L.T., Doll, C.J., and Land, S.C., Unifying theory of hypoxia tolerance: Molecular/metabolic defense and rescue mechanisms for surviving oxygen lack, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U S A*, 93, 9493, 1996.

74. Storey, K.B. and Storey, J.M., Metabolic rate depression and biochemical adaptation in anaerobiosis, hibernation and estivation, *Q. Rev. Biol.*, 65, 145, 1990.

75. Malan, A., pH and metabolic rate depression in mammalian hibernation: The example of brown adipose tissue, in *Surviving Hypoxia: Mechanisms of Control and Adaptation,* Hochachka, P.W., Ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1993.

76. Wang, L., Mammalian hibernation, in *The Effects of Low Temperatures on Biological Systems*, Morris, G.J. and Grout, B., Eds., Edward Arnold, London, 1987, p. 349.

77. Starzl, T.E., History of clinical transplantation, *World J. Surg.*, 24, 759, 2000.

78. Starzl, T.E., Brittain, R.S., Stonnington, O.G., Coppinger, W.R., and Waddell, W.R., Renal transplantation in identical twins, *Arch. Surg.*, 86, 600, 1963.

79. Owens, J.C., Prevedel, A.E., and Swan, H., Prolonged experimental occlusion of thoracic aorta during hypothermia, *AMA Arch. Surg.*, 70, 95, 1955.

80. Lillehei, R.C., Goott, B., and Miller, F.A., The physiological response of the small bowel of the dog to ischemia including prolonged *in vitro* preservation of the bowel with successful replacement and survival, *Ann. Surg.*, 150, 543, 1959.

81. Lower, R.R. and Shumway, N.E., Studies on orthotopic homotransplantation of the canine heart, *Surg. Forum*, 11, 18, 1960.

82. Lower, R.R., Stofer, R.C., and Shumway, N.E., Homovital transplantation of the heart, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 41, 196, 1961.

83. Lower, R.R., Stofer, R.C., Hurley, E.J., and Shumway, N.E., Complete homograft replacement of the heart and both lungs, *Surgery*, 50, 842, 1961.

84. Starzl, T.E., Kaupp, H.A., Jr., Brock, D.R., Lazarus, R.E., and Johnson, R.V., Reconstructive problems in canine liver homotransplantation with special reference to the postoperative role of hepatic venous flow, *Surg. Gynecol. Obstet.*, 111, 733, 1960.

85. Benichou, J., Halgrimson, C.G., Weil, R., 3rd, Koep, L.J., and Starzl, T.E., Canine and human liver preservation for 6 to 18 hr by cold infusion, *Transplantation*, 24, 407, 1977.

86. Collins, G.M., Bravo-Shugarman, M., and Terasaki, P.I., Kidney preservation for transportation: Initial perfusion and 30 hours' ice storage, *Lancet*, 2, 1219, 1969.

87. Wall, W.J., Calne, R.Y., Herbertson, B.M., Baker, P.G., Smith, D.P., Simple hypothermic preservation for transporting human livers long distances for transplantation: Report of 12 cases, *Transplantation*, 23, 210, 1977.

88. Marchioro, T.L., Huntley, R.T., Waddell, W.R., and Starzl, T.E., Extracorporeal perfusion for obtaining postmortem homografts, *Surgery*, 54, 900, 1963.

89. Ackermann, J.R. and Snell, M.E., Cadaveric renal transplantation: A technique for donor kidney removal, *Br. J. Urol.*, 40, 515, 1968.

90. Merkel, F.K., Jonasson, O., and Bergan, J.J., Procurement of cadaver donor organs: Evisceration technique, *Transplant Proc.*, 4, 585, 1972.

91. Starzl, T.E., Hakala, T.R., Shaw, B.W., Jr., Hardesty, R.L., Rosenthal, T.J., Griffith, B.P., Iwatsuki, S., and Bahnson, H.T., A flexible procedure for multiple cadaveric organ procurement, *Surg. Gynecol. Obstet.*, 158, 223, 1984.

92. Starzl, T.E., Miller, C., Broznick, B., and Makowka, L., An improved technique for multiple organ harvesting, *Surg. Gynecol. Obstet.*, 165, 343, 1987.

93. Schalm, S.W., Liver preservation without perfusion, *Folia Med. Neerl*, 15, 198, 1972.

94. Jamieson, N.V., Sundberg, R., Lindell, S., Claesson, K., Moen, J., Vreugdenhil, P.K., Wight, D.G., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Preservation of the canine liver for 24-48 hours using simple cold storage with UW solution, *Transplantation*, 46, 517, 1988.

95. Kalayoglu, M., Sollinger, H.W., Stratta, R.J., D'Alessandro, A.M., Hoffmann, R.M., Pirsch, J.D., and Belzer, F.O., Extended preservation of the liver for clinical transplantation, *Lancet*, 1, 617, 1988.

96. Hoffman, B., Sollinger, H., Kalayoglu, M., and Belzer, F.O., Use of UW solution for kidney transplantation, *Transplantation*, 46, 338, 1988.

97. Wahlberg, J.A., Love, R., Landegaard, L., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., 72-hour preservation of the canine pancreas, *Transplantation*, 43, 5, 1987.

98. Ploeg, R.J., Goossens, D., McAnulty, J.F., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Successful 72-hour cold storage of dog kidneys with UW solution, *Transplantation*, 46, 191, 1988.

99. Ueda, Y., Todo, S., Imventarza, O., Furukawa, H., Oks, A., Wu, Y.M., Oguma, S., and Starzl, T.E., The UW solution for canine kidney preservation: Its specific effect on renal hemodynamics and microvasculature, *Transplantation*, 48, 913, 1989.

100. Belzer, F.O. and Southard, J.H., Principles of solid-organ preservation by cold storage, *Transplantation*, 45, 673, 1988.

101. Marshall, V., Jablonski, P., and Scott, D., Renal preservation, in *Kidney Transplantation: Principles and Practice*, Morris, P.J., Ed., W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia, 1994.

102. Pegg, D.E., Wusteman, M.C., and Foreman, J., Metabolism of normal and ischemically injured rabbit kidneys during perfusion for 48 hours at 10°C, *Transplantation*, 32, 437, 1981.

103. Biguzas, M., Jablonski, P., Howden, B.O., Thomas, A.C., Walls, K., Scott, D.F., and Marshall, V.C., Evaluation of UW solution in rat kidney preservation. II. The effect of pharmacological additives, *Transplantation*, 49, 1051, 1990.

104. Changani, K.K., Fuller, B.J., Bell, J.D., Taylor-Robinson, S., and Davidson, B.R., Bioenergetic targeting during organ preservation: (31)P magnetic resonance spectroscopy investigations into the use of fructose to sustain hepatic ATP turnover during cold hypoxia in porcine livers, *Cryobiology*, 41, 72, 2000.

105. Bretschneider, H.J., Myocardial protection, *Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 28, 295, 1980.

106. Wagner, K. and Neumayer, H.H., Influence of the calcium antagonist diltiazem on delayed graft function in cadaveric kidney transplantation: Results of a 6-month follow-up, *Transplant Proc.*, 19, 1353, 1987.

107. Puig, J.M., Lloveras, J., Oliveras, A., Costa, A., Aubia, J., and Masramon, J., Usefulness of diltiazem in reducing the incidence of acute tubular necrosis in Euro-Collins-preserved cadaveric renal grafts, *Transplant Proc.*, 23, 2368, 1991.

108. Dawidson, I., Rooth, P., Alway, C., Dulzo, T., Palmer, B., Lu, C., Peters, P., Sagalowsky, A., and Sandor, Z., Verapamil prevents posttransplant delayed function and cyclosporine A nephrotoxicity, *Transplant Proc.*, 22, 1379, 1990.

109. Asari, H., Anaise, D., Bachvaroff, R.J., Sato, T., and Rapaport, F.T., Preservation techniques for organ transplantation. I. Protective effects of calmodulin inhibitors in cold-preserved kidneys, *Transplantation*, 37, 113, 1984.

110. Toledo-Pereyra, L.H., Simmons, R.L., Olson, L.C., and Najarian, J.S., Clinical effect of allopurinol on preserved kidneys: A randomized double-blind study, *Ann. Surg.*, 185, 128, 1977.

111. Winchell, R.J. and Halasz, N.A., Lack of effect of oxygen-radical scavenging systems in the preserved reperfused rabbit kidney, *Transplantation*, 48, 393, 1989.

112. Baron, P., Gomez-Marin, O., Casas, C., Heil, J., Will, N., Condie, R., Burke, B., Najarian, J.S., and Sutherland, D.E., Renal preservation after warm ischemia using oxygen free radical scavengers to prevent reperfusion injury, *J. Surg. Res.*, 51, 60, 1991.

113. Green, C.J., Fuller, B.J., Ross, B., Marriot, S., and Simpkin, S., Storage of organs from ground squirrels during and after hibernation, *Proc. Soc. Cryobiol.*, 20, 739, 1983.

114. Wicomb, W.N., Cooper, D.K., Novitzky, D., and Barnard, C.N., Cardiac transplantation following storage of the donor heart by a portable hypothermic perfusion system, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 37, 243, 1984.

115. Cooper, D.K., Novitzky, D., and Wicomb, W.N., The pathophysiological effects of brain death on potential donor organs, with particular reference to the heart, *Ann. R. Coll. Surg. Engl.*, 71, 261, 1989.

116. Mertes, P.M., Physiology of brain death. In: *Transplantation Biology: Cellular and Molecular Aspects*, Tilney, N.L., Strom, T.B., and Paul, L.C., Eds., Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia, 1996, p. 275–289.

117. Herijgers, P., Leunens, V., Tjandra-Maga, T.B., Mubagwa, K., and Flameng, W., Changes in organ perfusion after brain death in the rat and its relation to circulating catecholamines, *Transplantation*, 62, 330, 1996.

118. Powner, D.J., Hendrich, A., Nyhuis, A., and Strate, R., Changes in serum catecholamine levels in patients who are brain dead, *J. Heart Lung Transplant*, 11, 1046, 1992.

119. Shivalkar, B., Van Loon, J., Wieland, W., Tjandra-Maga, T.B., Borgers, M., Plets, C., and Flameng, W., Variable effects of explosive or gradual increase of intracranial pressure on myocardial structure and function, *Circulation*, 87, 230, 1993.

120. Busson, M., N'Doye, P., Benoit, G., Hannoun, L., Adam, R., Pavie, A., Romano, P., and Hors, J., Donor factors influencing organ transplant prognosis, *Transplant Proc.*, 27, 1662, 1995.

121. Pienaar, H., Schwartz, I., Roncone, A., Lotz, Z., and Hickman, R., Function of kidney grafts from brain-dead donor pigs: The influence of dopamine and triiodothyronine, *Transplantation*, 50, 580, 1990.

122. Amado, J.A., Lopez-Espadas, F., Vazquez-Barquero, A., Salas, E., Riancho, J.A., Lopez-Cordovilla, J.J., and Garcia-Unzueta, M.T., Blood levels of cytokines in brain-dead patients: Relationship with circulating hormones and acute-phase reactants, *Metabolism*, 44, 812, 1995.

123. Zhai, Q.H., Futrell, N., and Chen, F.J., Gene expression of IL-10 in relationship to TNF-alpha, IL-1beta, and IL-2 in the rat brain following middle cerebral artery occlusion, *J. Neurol. Sci.*, 152, 119, 1997.

124. Takada, M., Chandraker, A., Nadeau, K.C., Sayegh, M.H., and Tilney, N.L., The role of the B7 costimulatory pathway in experimental cold ischemia/reperfusion injury, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 100, 1199, 1997.

125. Kootstra, G., Kievit, J.K., and Heineman, E., The non-heart-beating donor, *Br. Med. Bull.*, 53, 844, 1997.

126. Koffman, G. and Gambaro, G., Renal transplantation from non-heart-beating donors: A review of the European experience, *J. Nephrol.*, 16, 334, 2003.

127. Kimber, R.M., Metcalfe, M.S., White, S.A., and Nicholson, M.L., Use of non-heart-beating donors in renal transplantation, *Postgrad. Med. J.*, 77, 681, 2001.

128. D'Alessandro A.M., Hoffmann, R.M., Knechtle, S.J., Odorico, J.S., Becker, Y.T., Musat, A., Pirsch, J.D., Sollinger, H.W., and Kalayoglu, M., Liver transplantation from controlled non-heart-beating donors, *Surgery*, 128, 579, 2000.

129. Gok, M.A., Pelzers, M., Glatz, J.F., Shenton, B.K., Buckley, P.E., Peaston, R., Cornell, C., Mantle, D., Soomro, N., Jaques, B.C., Manas, D.M., and Talbot, D., Do tissue damage biomarkers used to assess machine-perfused NHBD kidneys predict long-term renal function post transplant? *Clin. Chim. Acta.*, 338, 33, 2003.

130. Changani, K., Davidson, B.R., Bell, J.D., Taylor-Robinson, S.D., and Fuller, B..J., Enhanced energy metabolism at hypothermia following addition of a prostacyclin derivative in porcine liver, *Cryo-Lett.*, 19, 131, 1998.

131. Balupuri, S., Buckley, P., Mohamed, M., Cornell, C., Mantle, D., Kirby, J., Manas, D.M., and Talbot, D., Assessment of non-heart-beating donor (NHBD) kidneys for viability on machine perfusion, *Clin. Chem. Lab. Med.*, 38, 1103, 2000.

132. Wight, J., et al., The clinical and cost-effectiveness of pulsatile machine perfusion versus cold storage of kidneys for transplantation retrieved from heart-beating and non-heart-beating donors, *Health Technol. Assess.*, 7, 1, 2003.

133. Sherlock, S., Acute fatty liver of pregnancy and the microvesicular fat diseases, *Gut*, 24, 265, 1983.

134. Todo, S., Demetris, A.J., Makowka, L., Teperman, L., Podesta, L., Shaver, T., Tzakis, A., and Starzl, T.E., Primary nonfunction of hepatic allografts with preexisting fatty infiltration, *Transplantation*, 47, 903, 1989.

135. D'Alessandro, A.M., Kalayoglu, M., Sollinger, H.W., Hoffmann, R.M., Reed, A., Knechtle, S.J., Pirsch, J.D., Hafez, G.R., Lorentzen, D., and Belzer, F.O., The predictive value of donor liver biopsies on the development of primary nonfunction after orthotopic liver transplantation, *Transplant Proc.*, 23, 1536, 1991.

136. Baker, A., Dhawan, A., Devlin, J., Mieli-Vergani, G., O'Grady, J., Williams, R., Rela, M., and Heaton, N., Assessment of potential donors for living related liver transplantation, *Br. J. Surg.*, 86, 200, 1999.

137. Morimoto, T., Awane, M., Tanaka, A., Ikai, I., Nakamura, Y., Yamamoto, Y., Takada, Y., Honda, K., Inamoto, T., Uemoto, S., et al., Analysis of functional abnormalities uncovered during preoperative evaluation of donor candidates for living-related liver transplantation, *Clin. Transplant*, 9, 60, 1995.

138. Hilden, M., Christoffersen, P., Juhl, E., and Dalgaard, J.B., Liver histology in a "normal" population: Examinations of 503 consecutive fatal traffic casualties, *Scand. J. Gastroenterol.*, 12, 593, 1977.

139. Bonnell, H.J. and Beckwith, J.B., Fatty liver in sudden childhood death: Implications for Reye's syndrome? *Am. J. Dis. Child.*, 140, 30, 1986.

140. Lamesch, P., Ringe, B., Neuhaus, P., Burdelski, M., Oellerich, M., and Pichlmayr, R., Qualitative assessment of liver function after hypovolemic, hypoxemic, and ischemic shock in a transplantation model, *Transplant Proc.*, 20, 994, 1988.

141. Hui, A.M., Kawasaki, S., Makuuchi, M., Nakayama, J., Ikegami, T., and Miyagawa, S., Liver injury following normothermic ischemia in steatotic rat liver, *Hepatology*, 20, 1287, 1994.

142. Wada, K., Fujimoto, K., Fujikawa, Y., Shibayama, Y., Mitsui, H., and Nakata, K., Sinusoidal stenosis as the cause of portal hypertension in choline deficient diet induced fatty cirrhosis of the rat liver, *Acta. Pathol. Jpn.*, 24, 207, 1974.

143. Caraceni, P., Ryu, H.S., Subbotin, V., De Maria, N., Colantoni, A., Roberts, L., Trevisani, F., Bernardi, M., and Van Thiel, D.H., Rat hepatocytes isolated from alcohol-induced fatty liver have an increased sensitivity to anoxic injury, *Hepatology*, 25, 943, 1997.

144. Seifalian, A.M., Piasecki, C., Agarwal, A., and Davidson, B.R., The effect of graded steatosis on flow in the hepatic parenchymal microcirculation, *Transplantation*, 68, 780, 1999.

145. Cisneros, C., Guillen, F., Gomez, R., Gutierrez, J., Vorwald, P., Montero, A., and Moreno, E., Analysis of warm-ischemia time for prediction of primary nonfunction of the hepatic graft, *Transplant Proc.*, 23, 1976, 1991.

146. Fukumori, T., Ohkohchi, N., Tsukamoto, S., and Satomi, S., Why is fatty liver unsuitable for transplantation? Deterioration of mitochondrial ATP synthesis and sinusoidal structure during cold preservation of a liver with steatosis, *Transplant Proc.*, 29, 412, 1997.

147. Fukumori, T., Ohkohchi, N., Tsukamoto, S., and Satomi, S., The mechanism of injury in a steatotic liver graft during cold preservation, *Transplantation*, 67, 195, 1999.

148. Cha, I., Bass, N., and Ferrell, L.D., Lipopeliosis: An immunohistochemical and clinicopathologic study of five cases, *Am. J. Surg. Pathol.*, 18, 789, 1994.

149. Imber, C.J., St Peter, S.D., Handa, A., and Friend, P.J., Hepatic steatosis and its relationship to transplantation, *Liver Transplant*, 8, 415, 2002.

150. Hayashi, M., Fujii, K., Kiuchi, T., Uryuhara, K., Kasahara, M., Takatsuki, M., Takeichi, T., Kitade, H., Sugimoto, T., Uemoto, S., Asonuma, K., Egawa, H., Fujita, S., Inomata, Y., and Tanaka, K., Effects of fatty infiltration of the graft on the outcome of living-related liver transplantation, *Transplant Proc.*, 31, 403, 1999.

151. Takeda, Y., Arii, S., Kaido, T., Niwano, M., Moriga, T., Mori, A., Hanaki, K., Gorrin-Rivas, M.J., Ishii, T., Sato, M., and Imamura, M., Morphologic alteration of hepatocytes and sinusoidal endothelial cells in rat fatty liver during cold preservation and the protective effect of hepatocyte growth factor, *Transplantation*, 67, 820, 1999.

152. Husberg, B.S., Genyk, Y.S., and Klintmalm, G.B., A new rat model for studies of the ischemic injury after transplantation of fatty livers: Improvement after postoperative administration of prostaglandin, *Transplantation*, 57, 457, 1994.

153. Valero, R., Garcia-Valdecasas, J.C., Tabet, J., Taura, P., Rull, R., Beltran, J., Garcia, F., Gonzalez, F.X., Lopez-Boado, M.A., Cabrer, C., and Visa, J., Hepatic blood flow and oxygen extraction ratio during normothermic recirculation and total body cooling as viability predictors in non-heart-beating donor pigs, *Transplantation*, 66, 170, 1998.

154. Sumimoto, K., Inagaki, K., Yamada, K., Kawasaki, T., and Dohi, K., Reliable indices for the determination of viability of grafted liver immediately after orthotopic transplantation: Bile flow rate and cellular adenosine triphosphate level, *Transplantation*, 46, 506, 1988.

155. Smrekova, R., Vajdova, K., Kukan, M., Ulicna, O., Lutterova, M., Wsolova, L., and Horecky, J., A rapid, simple, and cost-effective method for screening liver preservation solutions in the rat, *Transplantation*, 70, 430, 2000.

156. Keller, R., Swinney, J., Taylor, R.M., and Uldell, P.R., The problem of renal reservation, *Br. J. Urol.*, 38, 653, 1966.

157. Collins, G.M., Hardie, I.R., and Clunie, G.J., A simplified kidney preservation system: Development and initial results, *Med. J. Aust.*, 1, 59, 1973.

158. Green, C.J. and Pegg, D.E., Mechanism of action of "intracellular" renal preservation solutions, *World J. Surg.*, 3, 115, 1979.

159. Sacks, S.A., Petritsch, P.H., and Kaufman, J.J., Canine kidney preservation using a new perfusate, *Lancet*, 1, 1024, 1973.

160. Collins, G.M., Hartley, L.C., and Clunie, G.J., Kidney preservation for transportation: Experimental analysis of optimal perfusate composition, *Br. J. Surg.*, 59, 187, 1972.

161. Collins, G.M., Green, R.D., and Halasz, N.A., Importance of anion content and osmolarity in flush solutions for 48 to 72 hr hypothermic kidney storage, *Cryobiology*, 16, 217, 1979.

162. Hardie, I., Balderson, G., Hamlyn, L., McKay, D., and Clunie, G., Extended ice storage of canine kidneys using hyperosmolar Collins solution, *Transplantation*, 23, 282, 1977.

163. Halasz, N.A. and Collins, G.M., Forty-eight-hour kidney preservation: A comparison of flushing and ice storage with perfusion, *Arch. Surg.*, 111, 175, 1976.

164. Watkins, G.M., Prentiss, N.A., and Couch, N.P., Successful 24-hour kidney preservation with simplified hyperosmolar hyperkalemic perfusate, *Transplant Proc.*, 3, 612, 1971.

165. Dreikorn, K., Horsch, R., and Rohl, L., 48- to 96-hour preservation of canine kidneys by initial perfusion and hypothermic storage using the Euro-Collins solution, *Eur. Urol.*, 6, 221, 1980.

166. Squifflet, J.P., Pirson, Y., Gianello, P., Van Cangh, P., and Alexandre, G.P., Safe preservation of human renal cadaver transplants by Euro-Collins solution up to 50 hours, *Transplant Proc.*, 13, 693, 1981.

167. Andrews, P.M. and Bates, S.B., Improving Euro-Collins flushing solution's ability to protect kidneys from normothermic ischemia, *Miner Electrolyte Metab.*, 11, 309, 1985.

168. Bretan, P.N., Jr., Baldwin, N., Martinez, A., Stowe, N., Scarpa, A., Easley, K., Erturk, E., Jackson, C., Pestana, J., and Novick, A.C., Improved renal transplant preservation using a modified intracellular flush solution (PB-2). Characterization of mechanisms by renal clearance, high performance liquid chromatography, phosphorus-31 magnetic resonance spectroscopy, and electron microscopy studies, *Urol. Res.*, 19, 73, 1991.

169. Grino, J.M., Alsina, J., Castelao, A.M., Sabate, I., Mestre, M., Gil-Vernet, S.,, andres, E., and Sabater, R., Low-dose cyclosporine, anti-lymphocyte globulin, and steroids in first cadaveric renal transplantation, *Transplant Proc.*, 20, 18, 1988.

170. Ross, H., Marshall, V.C., and Escott, M.L., 72-hr canine kidney preservation without continuous perfusion, *Transplantation*, 21, 498, 1976.

171. Marshall, V.C., Ross, H., Scott, D.F., McInnes, S., Thomson, N., Atkins, R.C., Mathew, T.H., and Kincaid-Smith, P.S., Preservation of cadaver of renal allografts: Comparison of ice storage and machine perfusion, *Med. J. Aust.*, 2, 353, 1977.

172. Marshall, V.C., Organ and tissue preservation, in *Organ and Tissue Donation for Transplantation*, Chapman Jeremy, R., Deierhoi, M., and Wight, C., Eds., Arnold, London, 1997, p. 200.

173. Jablonski, P., Howden, B., Marshall, V., and Scott, D., Evaluation of citrate flushing solution using the isolated perfused rat kidney, *Transplantation*, 30, 239, 1980.

174. Lam, F.T., Ubhi, C.S., Mavor, A.I., Lodge, J.P., and Giles, G.R., Clinical evaluation of PBS140 solution for cadaveric renal preservation, *Transplantation*, 48, 1067, 1989.

175. Southard, J.H., Coffee creamer, the bionic man, and organ preservation, *Surgery*, 131, 228, 2002.

176. Wahlberg, J.A., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Development of a cold storage solution for pancreas preservation, *Cryobiology*, 23, 477, 1986.

177. Stein, D.G., Drinkwater, D.C., Jr., Laks, H., Permut, L.C., Sangwan, S., Chait, H.I., Child, J.S., and Bhuta, S., Cardiac preservation in patients undergoing transplantation. A clinical trial comparing University of Wisconsin solution and Stanford solution, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 102, 657, 1991.

178. Demertzis, S., Wahlers, T., Schafers, H.J., Wippermann, J., Jurmann, M., Cremer, J., and Haverich, A., Myocardial preservation with the UW solution. First European results in clinical heart transplantation, *Transplant Int.*, 5 (Suppl. 1), S343, 1992.

179. Jeevanandam, V., Auteri, J.S., Sanchez, J.A., Hsu, D., Marboe, C., Smith, C.R., and Rose, E.A., Cardiac transplantation after prolonged graft preservation with the University of Wisconsin solution, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 104, 224, 1992.

180. Jeevanandam, V., Barr, M.L., Auteri, J.S., Sanchez, J.A., Fong, J., Schenkel, F.A., Marboe, C.C., Michler, R.E., Smith, C.R., and Rose, E.A., University of Wisconsin solution versus crystalloid cardioplegia for human donor heart preservation: A randomized blinded prospective clinical trial, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 103, 194, 1992.

181. Todo, S., Nery, J., Yanaga, K., Podesta, L., Gordon, R.D., and Starzl, T.E., Extended preservation of human liver grafts with UW solution, *JAMA*, 261, 711, 1989.

182. D'Alessandro, A.M., Kalayoglu, M., Sollinger, H.W., Pirsch, J.D., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Current status of organ preservation with University of Wisconsin solution, *Arch. Pathol. Lab. Med.*, 115, 306, 1991.

183. D'Alessandro, A.M., Reed, A., Hoffmann, R.M., Sollinger, H.W., Kalayoglu, M., Knechtle, S.J., Pirsch, J.D., and Belzer, F.O., Results of combined hepatic, pancreaticoduodenal, and renal procurements, *Transplant Proc.*, 23, 2309, 1991.

184. Collins, G.M., *Procurement, Preservation, and Allocation of Vascularized Organs*, Kluwer Academic, Dordrecht, 1997, p. 107.

185. Moen, J., Claesson, K., Pienaar, H., Lindell, S., Ploeg, R.J., McAnulty, J.F., Vreugdenhil, P., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Preservation of dog liver, kidney, and pancreas using the Belzer-UW solution with a high-sodium and low-potassium content, *Transplantation*, 47, 940, 1989.

186. Southard, J.H., van Gulik, T.M., Ametani, M.S., Vreugdenhil, P.K., Lindell, S.L., Pienaar, B.L., and Belzer, F.O., Important components of the UW solution, *Transplantation*, 49, 251, 1990.

187. Yu, W.M., Coddington, D., and Bitter-Suermann, H., Rat liver preservation. I. The components of UW solution that are essential to its success, *Transplantation*, 49, 1060, 1990.

188. Holloway, C.M., Harvey, P.R., Mullen, J.B., and Strasberg, S.M., Evidence that cold preservation-induced microcirculatory injury in liver allografts is not mediated by oxygen free radicals or cell swelling in the rat, *Transplantation*, 48, 179, 1989.

189. Clavien, P.A., Harvey, P.R., and Strasberg, S.M., Preservation and reperfusion injuries in liver allografts: An overview and synthesis of current studies, *Transplantation*, 53, 957, 1992.

190. McKeown, C.M., Edwards, V., Phillips, M.J., Harvey, P.R., Petrunka, C.N., and Strasberg, S.M., Sinusoidal lining cell damage: The critical injury in cold preservation of liver allografts in the rat, *Transplantation*, 46, 178, 1988.

191. Caldwell-Kenkel, J.C., Thurman, R.G., and Lemasters, J.J., Selective loss of nonparenchymal cell viability after cold ischemic storage of rat livers, *Transplantation*, 45, 834, 1988.

192. Caldwell-Kenkel, J.C., Currin, R.T., Tanaka, Y., Thurman, R.G., and Lemasters, J.J., Reperfusion injury to endothelial cells following cold ischemic storage of rat livers, *Hepatology*, 10, 292, 1989.

193. Gerlach, J., Grehn, S., and Neuhaus, P., Endothelial cell kinetics after anoxia and hypothermia in preservation solutions as indicators of endothelial repair, *Transplant Proc.*, 25, 1593, 1993.

194. Gatmaitan, Z. and Arias, I.M., From blood to bile and back: New perspectives, in *Liver Microcirculation and Hepatobiliary Function*, Menger, M.D. and Messmer, K., Eds., Karger, Basel, 1993, p. 1.

195. Oda, M., Kaneko, H., and Suematsu, M., A new aspect of hepatic microcirculation: Electron microscopic evidence of Ito cells around portal and hepatic venules as pericytes, in *Liver Microcirculation and Hepatobiliary Function*, Menger, M.D. and Messmer, K., Eds., Karger, Basel, 1993, p. 25.

196. Schlumpf, R., Candinas, D., Zollinger, A., Keusch, G., Retsch, M., Decurtins, M., and Largiader, F., Kidney procurement from non-heartbeating donors: Transplantation results, *Transplant Int.*, 5 (Suppl. 1), S424, 1992.

197. Baatard, R., Pradier, F., Dantal, J., Karam, G., Cantarovich, D., Hourmant, M., Bourbigot, B., and Soulillou, J.P., Prospective randomized comparison of University of Wisconsin and UW-modified, lacking hydroxyethyl-starch, cold-storage solutions in kidney transplantation, *Transplantation*, 55, 31, 1993.

198. Marshall, V.C., Howden, B.O., Thomas, A.C., Baxter, K., Wilson, N., Kumar, A., and Jablonski, P., Extended preservation of dog kidneys with modified UW solution, *Transplant Proc.*, 23, 2366, 1991.

199. Biguzas, M., Jablonski, P., Thomas, A.C., Walls, K., Howden, B.O., Scott, D.F., and Marshall, V.C., Evaluation of UW solution in a rat kidney preservation model. I. Effect of hydroxyethyl starch and electrolyte composition, *Transplantation*, 49, 872, 1990.

200. Collins, G.M., Wicomb, W.N., Warren, R., Wong, L., Bry, W.I., Feduska, N.J., and Salvatierra, O., Canine and cadaver kidney preservation with sodium lactobionate sucrose solution, *Transplant Proc.*, 25, 1588, 1993.

201. Ploeg, R.J., van Bockel, J.H., Langendijk, P.T., Groenewegen, M., van der Woude, F.J., Persijn, G.G., Thorogood, J., and Hermans, J., Effect of preservation solution on results of cadaveric kidney transplantation. The European Multicentre Study Group, *Lancet*, 340, 129, 1992.

202. Erhard, J., Lange, R., Scherer, R., Kox, W.J., Bretschneider, H.J., Gebhard, M.M., and Eigler, F.W., Comparison of histidine-tryptophan-ketoglutarate (HTK) solution versus University of Wisconsin (UW) solution for organ preservation in human liver transplantation: A prospective, randomized study, *Transplant Int.*, 7, 177, 1994.

203. Belzer, F.O., Evaluation of preservation of the intra-abdominal organs, *Transplant Proc.*, 25, 2527, 1993.

204. Belzer, F.O., D'Alessandro, A.M., Hoffmann, R.M., Knechtle, S.J., Reed, A., Pirsch, J.D., Kalayoglu, M., and Sollinger, H.W., The use of UW solution in clinical transplantation: A 4-year experience, *Ann. Surg.*, 215, 579, 1992.

205. Hefty, T., Fraser, S., Nelson, K., Bennett, W., and Barry, J., Comparison of UW and Euro-Collins solutions in paired cadaveric kidneys, *Transplantation*, 53, 491, 1992.

206. Jacobsson, J., Tufveson, G., Odlind, B., and Wahlberg, J., The effect of type of preservation solution and hemodilution of the recipient on postischemic erythrocyte trapping in kidney grafts. An experimental study in the rat, *Transplantation*, 47, 876, 1989.

207. Isemer, F.E., Ludwig, A., Schunck, O., Bretschneider, H.J., and Peiper, H.J., Kidney procurement with the HTK solution of Bretschneider, *Transplant Proc.*, 20, 885, 1988.

208. Groenewoud, A.F. and Thorogood, J., A preliminary report of the HTK randomized multicenter study comparing kidney graft preservation with HTK and EuroCollins solutions. HTK Study Group, *Transplant Int.*, 5 Suppl 1, S429, 1992.

209. Groenewoud, A.F. and Thorogood, J., Current status of the Eurotransplant randomized multicenter study comparing kidney graft preservation with histidine-tryptophan-ketoglutarate, University of Wisconsin, and Euro-Collins solutions. The HTK Study Group, *Transplant Proc.*, 25, 1582, 1993.

210. Gubernatis, G., Pichlmayr, R., Lamesch, P., Grosse, H., Bornscheuer, A., Meyer, H.J., Ringe, B., Farle, M., and Bretschneider, H.J., HTK-solution (Bretschneider) for human liver transplantation: First clinical experiences, *Langenbecks Arch. Chir.*, 375, 66, 1990.

211. den Butter, G., Saunder, A., Marsh, D.C., Belzer, F.O., and Southard, J.H., Comparison of solutions for preservation of the rabbit liver as tested by isolated perfusion, *Transplant Int.,* 8, 466, 1995.

212. Menasche, P., Termignon, J.L., Pradier, F., Grousset, C., Mouas, C., Alberici, G., Weiss, M., Piwnica, A., and Bloch, G., Experimental evaluation of Celsior, a new heart preservation solution, *Eur. J. Cardiothorac. Surg.*, 8, 207, 1994.

213. Collins, G.M. and Wicomb, W.N., New organ preservation solutions, *Kidney Int. Suppl.*, 38, S197, 1992.

214. Wallwork, J., et al., Distant procurement of organs for clinical heart-lung transplantation using a single flush technique, *Transplantation*, 44, 654, 1987.

215. Baumgartner, W.A., Reitz, B.A., and Stinson, E.B., Cardioplegia in human heart transplantation, in *A Textbook of Clinical Cardioplegia*, Engelman, R.M. and Levitsky, S., Eds., Futura, Mount Kisko, 1982.

216. Muhlbacher, F., Langer, F., and Mittermayer, C., Preservation solutions for transplantation, *Transplant Proc.*, 31, 2069, 1999.

217. Ojo, A.O., Wolfe, R.A., Held, P.J., Port, F.K., and Schmouder, R.L., Delayed graft function: Risk factors and implications for renal allograft survival, *Transplantation*, 63, 968, 1997.

218. Collins, G.M., What solutions are best? Overview of flush solutions, *Transplant Proc.*, 29, 3543, 1997.

219. Lindbergh Charles, A., and Carrel, A., *The Culture of Organs,* P. B. Hoeber, New York, 1938, pp. xix. 221.

220. Ackermann, J.R. and Barnard, C.N., Successful storage of kidneys, *Br. J. Surg.*, 53, 525, 1966.

221. Belzer, F.O., Ashby, B.S., Gulyassy, P.F., and Powell, M., Successful seventeen-hour preservation and transplantation of human-cadaver kidney, *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 278, 608, 1968.

222. Daemen, J.H., de Vries, B., Oomen, A.P., DeMeester, J., and Kootstra, G., Effect of machine perfusion preservation on delayed graft function in non-heart-beating donor kidneys: early results, *Transplant Int.,* 10, 317, 1997.

223. Belzer, F.O., Ashby, B.S., and Dunphy, J.E., 24-hour and 72-hour preservation of canine kidneys, *Lancet*, 2, 536, 1967.

224. Toledo-Pereyra, L.H., Kidney perfusion, in *Basic Concepts of Organ Procurement, Perfusion, and Preservation for Transplantation*, Toledo-Pereyra, L.H., Ed., Academic Press, New York, 1982,

225. Johnson, R.W., Anderson, M., Flear, C.T., Murray, S.G., Taylor, R.M., and Swinney, J., Evaluation of new perfusion solution for kidney preservation, *Transplantation*, 13, 270, 1972.

226. Tokunaga, Y., Wicomb, W.N., Garcia-Kennedy, R., Esquivel, C.O., and Collins, G.M., The immunosuppressive effect of polyethylene glycol in a flush solution for rat liver transplantation, *Transplantation*, 54, 756, 1992.

227. Wicomb, W.N., Hill, J.D., Avery, J., and Collins, G.M., Optimal cardioplegia and 24-hour heart storage with simplified UW solution containing polyethylene glycol, *Transplantation*, 49, 261, 1990.

228. Mitchell, S.J., Churchill, T.A., Winslet, M.C., and Fuller, B.J., Effects of different cold preservation solutions on restoration of hepatic energy metabolism during cold reperfusion, *Cryobiology*, 33, 413, 1996.

229. Isselhard, W., Berger, M., Denecke, H., Witte, J., Fischer, J.H., and Molzberger, H., Metabolism of canine kidneys in anaerobic ischemia and in aerobic ischemia by persufflation with gaseous oxygen, *Pflugers Arch.*, 337, 87, 1972.

230. So, P.W. and Fuller, B.J., A comparison of the metabolic effects of continuous hypothermic perfusion or oxygenated persufflation during hypothermic storage of rat liver, *Cryobiology*, 43, 238, 2001.

231. Rolles, K., Foreman, J., and Pegg, D.E., Preservation of ischemically injured canine kidneys by retrograde oxygen persufflation, *Transplantation*, 38, 102, 1984.

232. Rolles, K., Foreman, J., and Pegg, D.E., A pilot clinical study of retrograde oxygen persufflation in renal preservation, *Transplantation*, 48, 339, 1989.

233. Tamaki, T., Kamada, N., Wight, D.G., and Pegg, D.E., Successful 48-hour preservation of the rat liver by continuous hypothermic perfusion with Hemaccel-isotonic citrate solution, *Transplantation*, 43, 468, 1987.

234. Kuroda, Y., Tanioka, Y., Morita, A., Hiraoka, K., Matsumoto, S., Fujino, Y., Yamamoto, K., Ku, Y., and Saitoh, Y., Protective effect of preservation of canine pancreas by the two-layer (University of Wisconsin solution/perfluorochemical) method against rewarming ischemic injury during implantation, *Transplantation*, 57, 658, 1994.

235. Urushihara, T., Sumimoto, K., Ikeda, M., Hong, H.Q., Fukuda, Y., and Dohi, K., A comparative study of two-layer cold storage with perfluorochemical alone and University of Wisconsin solution for rat pancreas preservation, *Transplantation*, 57, 1684, 1994.

236. Minor, T. and Kotting, M., Gaseous oxygen for hypothermic preservation of predamaged liver grafts: Fuel to cellular homeostasis or radical tissue alteration? *Cryobiology*, 40, 182, 2000.

237. Lockett, C.J., Fuller, B.J., Busza, A.L., and Proctor, E., Hypothermic perfusion preservation of liver: The role of phosphate in stimulating ATP synthesis studied by 31P NMR, *Transplant Int.,* 8, 440, 1995.

238. Evdokimova, E., Martos, M., and Buc Calderon, P.M., Protective effect of fructose on survival and metabolic capacities of hepatocytes kept overnight under cold hypoxia before normothermic reoxygenation, *Food Chem. Toxicol.*, 35, 669, 1997.

239. Hirata, T., Fukuse, T., Ishikawa, S., Miyahara, R., and Wada, H., Addition of ATP and MgCl2 to the preservation solution attenuates lung reperfusion injury following cold ischemia, *Respiration*, 68, 292, 2001.

240. Chien, S., Zhang, F., Niu, W., Ehringer, W., Chiang, B., Shi, X., and Gray, L.A., Jr., Fructose-1,6-diphosphate and a glucose-free solution enhances functional recovery in hypothermic heart preservation, *J. Heart Lung Transplant*, 19, 277, 2000.

241. Sumimoto, R., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Livers from fasted rats acquire resistance to warm and cold ischemia injury, *Transplantation*, 55, 728, 1993.

242. Ambiru, S., Uryuhara, K., Talpe, S., Dehoux, J.P., Jacobbi, L., Murphy, C.J., McAnulty, J.F., and Gianello, P., Improved survival of orthotopic liver allograft in swine by addition of trophic factors to University of Wisconsin solution, *Transplantation*, 77, 302, 2004.

243. Marshall, V.C., Howden, B.O., and Jablonski, P., Effect of storage temperature in rat liver transplantation: 4 degrees C is optimal and gives successful 48-hour preservation, *Transplant Proc.*, 26, 3657, 1994.

244. Fuller, B. and Shah, S., Organ cooling profiles using a portable refrigerated filtered air cooling unit (ISOSafe), *Cryobiology*, 43, 358, 2001.

245. Emre, S., Schwartz, M.E., Mor, E., Kishikawa, K., Yagmur, O., Thiese, N., Sheiner, P., Jindal, R.M., Chiodini, S., and Miller, C.M., Obviation of prereperfusion rinsing and decrease in preservation/reperfusion injury in liver transplantation by portal blood flushing, *Transplantation*, 57, 799, 1994.

246. Gao, W.S., Takei, Y., Marzi, I., Lindert, K.A., Caldwell-Kenkel, J.C., Currin, R.T., Tanaka, Y., Lemasters, J.J., and Thurman, R.G., Carolina rinse solution: a new strategy to increase survival time after orthotopic liver transplantation in the rat, *Transplantation*, 52, 417, 1991.

247. Gao, W.S., Hijioka, T., Lindert, K.A., Caldwell-Kenkel, J.C., Lemasters, J.J., and Thurman, R.G., Evidence that adenosine is a key component in Carolina rinse responsible for reducing graft failure after orthotopic liver transplantation in the rat, *Transplantation*, 52, 992, 1991.

248. Egawa, H., Esquivel, C.O., Wicomb, W.N., Kennedy, R.G., and Collins, G.M., Significance of terminal rinse for rat liver preservation, *Transplantation*, 56, 1344, 1993.

249. Bachmann, S., Caldwell-Kenkel, J.C., Currin, R.T., Lichtman, S.N., Steffen, R., Thurman, R.G., and Lemasters, J.J., Protection by pentoxifylline against graft failure from storage injury after orthotopic rat liver transplantation with arterialization, *Transplant Int.,* 5 (Suppl. 1), S345, 1992.

250. Post, S., Palma, P., Rentsch, M., Gonzalez, A.P., Otto, G., and Menger, M.D., Importance of rinse solution vs. preservation solution in prevention of microcirculatory damage after liver transplantation in the rat, *Transplant Proc.*, 25, 1607, 1993.

251. Gonzalez, A.P., Post, S., Palma, P., Rentsch, M., and Menger, M.D., Essential components of Carolina rinse for attenuation of reperfusion injury in rat liver transplantation, *Transplant Proc.*, 25, 2538, 1993.

252. Allen, R.D.M. and Chapman, J.R., *A Manual of Renal Transplantation*, Edward Arnold, London, 1994, p. 37.

253. Heil, J.E., Canafax, D.M., Sutherland, D.E., Simmons, R.L., Dunning, M., and Najarian, J.S., A controlled comparison of kidney preservation by two methods: Machine perfusion and cold storage, *Transplant Proc.*, 19, 2046, 1987.

254. Johnson, R.W.G., The donor kidney, in *Scientific Foundations of Urology*, Chisholm, G.D. and Williams, D.I., Eds., Heinemann Medical, London, 1982, p. 150.

255. Markland, C. and Parsons, F.M., Preservation of kidneys for homotransplantation, *Br. J. Urol.*, 35, 457, 1963.

256. Jacobsen, I.A., Kemp, E., and Buhl, M.R., An adverse effect of rapid cooling in kidney preservation, *Transplantation*, 27, 135, 1979.

257. Clark, E.A., Opelz, G., Mickey, M.R., and Terasaki, P.I., Evaluation of Belzer and Collins kidney-preservation methods, *Lancet*, 1, 361, 1973.

258. Rosenthal, J.T., Herman, J.B., Taylor, R.J., Broznick, B., and Hakala, T.R., Comparison of pulsatile machine perfusion with cold storage for cadaver kidney preservation, *Transplantation*, 37, 425, 1984.

259. Tate, H.C. and Pegg, D.E., Kidney preservation by pulsatile perfusion, *Transplantation*, 34, 233, 1982.

260. Toledo-Pereyra, L.H., Pulsatile perfusion is still indicated for kidney preservation, *Transplantation*, 34, 110, 1982.

261. Mendez, R., Mendez, R.G., Koussa, N., Cats, S., Bogaard, T.P., and Khetan, U., Preservation effect on oligo-anuria in the cyclosporine era: A prospective trial with 26 paired cadaveric renal allografts, *Transplant Proc.*, 19, 2047, 1987.

262. Merion, R.M., Oh, H.K., Port, F.K., Toledo-Pereyra, L.H., and Turcotte, J.G., A prospective controlled trial of cold-storage versus machine-perfusion preservation in cadaveric renal transplantation, *Transplantation*, 50, 230, 1990.

263. Alijani, M.R., Cutler, J.A., DelValle, C.J., Morres, D.N., Fawzy, A., Pechan, B.W., and Helfrich, G.B., Single-donor cold storage versus machine perfusion in cadaver kidney preservation, *Transplantation*, 40, 659, 1985.

264. Halloran, P. and Aprile, M., A randomized prospective trial of cold storage versus pulsatile perfusion for cadaver kidney preservation, *Transplantation*, 43, 827, 1987.

265. Najarian, J.S., Gillingham, K.J., Sutherland, D.E., Reinsmoen, N.L., Payne, W.D., and Matas, A.J., The impact of the quality of initial graft function on cadaver kidney transplants, *Transplantation*, 57, 812, 1994.

266. Sanfilippo, F., Vaughn, W.K., Spees, E.K., and Lucas, B.A., The detrimental effects of delayed graft function in cadaver donor renal transplantation, *Transplantation*, 38, 643, 1984.

267. Polyak, M.M., Arrington, B.O., Stubenbord, W.T., Boykin, J., Brown, T., Jean-Jacques, M.A., Estevez, J., Kapur, S., and Kinkhabwala, M., The influence of pulsatile preservation on renal transplantation in the 1990s, *Transplantation*, 69, 249, 2000.

268. Henry, M.L., Sommer, B.G., Tesi, R.J., and Ferguson, R.M., Improved immediate renal allograft function after initial simple cold storage, *Transplant Proc.*, 22, 388, 1990.

269. McAnulty, J.F., Ploeg, R.J., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Successful five-day perfusion preservation of the canine kidney, *Transplantation*, 47, 37, 1989.

270. Schilling, M., Saunder, A., Ametani, M., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Prolonged kidney preservation by inhibition of arachidonic acid metabolism, *Transplant Proc.*, 25, 1629, 1993.

271. Barber, W.H., Deierhoi, M.H., Phillips, M.G., and Diethelm, A.G., Preservation by pulsatile perfusion improves early renal allograft function, *Transplant Proc.*, 20, 865, 1988.

272. Barber, W.H., Laskow, D.A., Deierhoi, M.H., Poplawski, S.C., and Diethelm, A.G., Comparison of simple hypothermic storage, pulsatile perfusion with Belzer's gluconate-albumin solution, and pulsatile perfusion with UW solution for renal allograft preservation, *Transplant Proc.*, 23, 2394, 1991.

273. Burdick, J.F., Rosendale, J.D., McBride, M.A., Kauffman, H.M., and Bennett, L.E., National impact of pulsatile perfusion on cadaveric kidney transplantation, *Transplantation*, 64, 1730, 1997.

274. Van der Wijk, J., Rijkmans, B.G., and Kootstra, G., Six-day kidney preservation in a canine model. Influence of a one- to four-hour *ex vivo* perfusion interval, *Transplantation*, 35, 408, 1983.

275. Rijkmans, B.G., Buurman, W.A., and Kootstra, G., Six-day canine kidney preservation: Hypothermic perfusion combined with isolated blood perfusion, *Transplantation*, 37, 130, 1984.

276. Gaber, A.O., Yang, H.C., Haag, B.W., Buckingham, F.C., Lloyd, D.M., Thistlethwaite, J.R., Jr., and Stuart, F.P., Intermediate normothermic hemoperfusion doubles safe cold preservation of rat kidneys, *Transplant Proc.*, 19, 1369, 1987.

277. Mayfield, K.B., Ametani, M., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Mechanism of action of *ex vivo* blood rescue in six-day preserved kidneys, *Transplant Proc.*, 19, 1367, 1987.

278. Maessen, J.G., van der Vusse, G.J., Vork, M., and Kootstra, G., The beneficial effect of intermediate normothermic perfusion during cold storage of ischemically injured kidneys: A study of renal nucleotide homeostasis during hypothermia in the dog, *Transplantation*, 47, 409, 1989.

279. McAnulty, J.F., Vreugdenhil, P.K., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Improved survival of kidneys preserved for seven days with a phospholipase inhibitor, *Transplant Proc.*, 23, 691, 1991.

280. Adam, R., Bismuth, H., Diamond, T., Ducot, B., Morino, M., Astarcioglu, I., Johann, M., Azoulay, D., Chiche, L., Bao, Y.M., et al., Effect of extended cold ischaemia with UW solution on graft function after liver transplantation, *Lancet*, 340, 1373, 1992.

281. Sanchez-Urdazpal, L., Gores, G.J., Lemasters, J.J., Thurman, R.G., Steers, J.L., Wahlstrom, H.E., Hay, E.I., Porayko, M.K., Wiesner, R.H., and Krom, R.A., Carolina rinse solution decreases liver injury during clinical liver transplantation, *Transplant Proc.*, 25, 1574, 1993.

282. Sicular, A. and Moore, F.D., The postmortem survival of tissues: The effect of time and temperature on the survival of liver as measured by glucose oxidation rate, *J. Surg. Res.*, 1, 16, 1961.

283. Kestens, P.J., Mikaeloff, P., Haxhe, J.J., Dureau, G., Alexandre, G., Rassat, J.P., Cuilleret, J., Hassoun, A., Dubernard, M., Descotes, J., and Morelle, J., Homotransplantation of the canine liver after hypothermic perfusion of long duration, *Bull. Soc. Int. Chir.*, 25, 647, 1966.

284. Schon, M.R., Kollmar, O., Wolf, S., Schrem, H., Matthes, M., Akkoc, N., Schnoy, N.C., and Neuhaus, P., Liver transplantation after organ preservation with normothermic extracorporeal perfusion, *Ann. Surg.*, 233, 114, 2001.

285. Peter, S.D., Imber, C.J., Kay, J., James, T., and Friend, P.J., Hepatic control of perfusate homeostasis during normothermic extracorporeal preservation, *Transplant Proc.*, 35, 1587, 2003.

286. Friend, P.J., Imber, C., St Peter, S., Lopez, I., Butler, A.J., and Rees, M.A., Normothermic perfusion of the isolated liver, *Transplant Proc.*, 33, 3436, 2001.

287. St Peter, S.D., Imber, C.J., Lopez, I., Hughes, D., and Friend, P.J., Extended preservation of non-heart-beating donor livers with normothermic machine perfusion, *Br. J. Surg.*, 89, 609, 2002.

288. Slapak, M., Wigmore, R.A., and MacLean, L.D., Twenty-four-hour liver preservation by the use of continuous pulsatile perfusion and hyperbaric oxygen, *Transplantation*, 5, 1154, 1967.

289. Brettschneider, L., Kolff, J., Smith, G.V., Martin, A.J., Taylor, P., and Starzl, T.E., An evaluation of perfusion constituents in liver preservation, *Surg. Forum*, 19, 354, 1968.

290. Bretschneider, L., Groth, C.G., and Starzl, T.E., Experimental and clinical preservation of orthotopic liver homografts, in *Organ Perfusion and Preservation*, Norman, J.C., Ed., Appleton-Century-Crofts, New York, 1968, p. 271.

291. Belzer, F.O., et al., Short-term preservation of porcine livers, *J. Surg. Res.*, 10, 55, 1970.

292. Turner, M.D. and Alican, F., Successful 20-hour storage of the canine liver by continuous hypothermic perfusion, *Cryobiology*, 6, 293, 1970.

293. Petrie, C.R. and Woods, J.E., Successful 24-hour preservation of the canine liver, *Arch. Surg.*, 107, 461, 1973.

294. Sung, D.T. and Woods, J.E., Modified technique for creation of an arteriovenous fistula for hemodialysis, *Am. J. Surg.*, 126, 441, 1973.

295. Kamada, N., Calne, R.Y., Wight, D.G., and Lines, J.G., Orthotopic rat liver transplantation after long-term preservation by continuous perfusion with fluorocarbon emulsion, *Transplantation*, 30, 43, 1980.

296. Pienaar, B.H., Lindell, S.L., Van Gulik, T., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., Seventy-two-hour preservation of the canine liver by machine perfusion, *Transplantation*, 49, 258, 1990.

297. Fleischer, K.J. and Baumgartner, W.A., Heart preservation, in *Heart and Lung Transplantation*, Baumgartner, W.A., Eds., W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia, 2002, p. 135.

298. Stringham, J.C., Southard, J.H., Hegge, J., Triemstra, L., Fields, B.L., and Belzer, F.O., Limitations of heart preservation by cold storage, *Transplantation*, 53, 287, 1992.

299. Martin, D.R., Scott, D.F., Downes, G.L., and Belzer, F.O., Primary cause of unsuccessful liver and heart preservation: Cold sensitivity of the ATPase system, *Ann. Surg.*, 175, 111, 1972.

300. Baumgartner, W.A., Reitz, B.A., Oyer, P.E., Stinson, E.B., and Shumway, N.E., Cardiac homotransplantation, *Curr. Probl. Surg.*, 16, 1, 1979.

301. Belzer, F.O. and Southard, J.H., Principles of solid-organ preservation by cold storage, *Transplantation*, 45, 673, 1988.

302. Conti, V.R., Bertranou, E.G., Blackstone, E.H., Kirklin, J.W., and Digerness, S.B., Cold cardioplegia versus hypothermia for myocardial protection: Randomized clinical study, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 76, 577, 1978.

303. Swanson, D.K., Dufek, J.H., and Kahn, D.R., Improved myocardial preservation at 4 degrees C, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 30, 518, 1980.

304. Hendry, P.J., Walley, V.M., Koshal, A., Masters, R.G., and Keon, W.J., Are temperatures attained by donor hearts during transport too cold? *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 98, 517, 1989.

305. Braxton, J.H., Letsou, G.V., Schwann, T.A., Liu, W.X., Al Abdulla, N., Cole, G., el Gamel, A., and Baldwin, J.C., Effect of supercooling solutions on electromechanical activity, *Transplant Proc.*, 26, 2428, 1994.

306. Wheeldon, D., Sharples, L., Wallwork, J., and English, T., Donor heart preservation survey, *J. Heart Lung Transplant*, 11, 986, 1992.

307. Cooper, D.K., Wicomb, W.N., Rose, A.G., and Barnard, C.N., Orthotopic allotransplantation and autotransplantation of the baboon heart following 24-hr storage by a portable hypothermic perfusion system, *Cryobiology*, 20, 385, 1983.

308. Ferrera, R., Marcsek, P., Larese, A., Girard, C., Guidollet, J., Dittmar, A., and Dureau, G., Comparison of continuous microperfusion and cold storage for pig heart preservation, *J. Heart Lung Transplant*, 12, 463, 1993.

309. Zhu, Q., Yang, X., Claydon, M.A., Hicks, G.L., Jr., and Wang, T., Twenty-four hour intermittent perfusion storage of the isolated rat heart: The effect of perfusion intervals on functional preservation, *J. Heart Lung Transplant*, 13, 882, 1994.

310. Hendry, P.J., Labow, R.S., and Keon, W.J., A comparison of intracellular solutions for donor heart preservation, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 105, 667, 1993.

311. Jellinek, M., Standeven, J.W., Menz, L.J., Hahn, J.W., and Barner, H.B., Cold blood potassium cardioplegia: Effects of increasing concentrations of potassium, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 82, 26, 1981.

312. Jansen, M.A., Badlou, B.A., van Echteld, C.J., and Ruigrok, T.J., Cytosolic Ca2+ concentration during Ca2+ depletion of isolated rat hearts, *Mol. Cell. Biochem.*, 203, 169, 2000.

313. Marban, E., Koretsune, Y., Corretti, M., Chacko, V.P., and Kusuoka, H., Calcium and its role in myocardial cell injury during ischemia and reperfusion, *Circulation*, 80, IV17, 1989.

314. Stewart, J.R., Gerhardt, E.B., Wehr, C.J., Shuman, T., Merrill, W.H., Hammon, J.W., Jr., and Bender, H.W., Jr., Free-radical scavengers and myocardial preservation during transplantation, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 42, 390, 1986.

315. Menasche, P., Grousset, C., Mouas, C., and Piwnica, A., A promising approach for improving the recovery of heart transplants: Prevention of free-radical injury through iron chelation by deferoxamine, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 100, 13, 1990.

316. Segel, L.D. and Follette, D.M., Cardiac function and glycogen content after twenty-four-hour preservation with various metabolic substrates, *J. Heart Lung Transplant*, 17, 299, 1998.

317. Sellevold, O.F. and Jynge, P., Steroids and cardioplegia: An experimental evaluation of glucocorticoid supplementation to cardioplegic solutions in clinical use, *Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 33, 65, 1985.

318. Hachida, M., Koyanagi, H., and Endo, M., Heart and lung preservation using a new solution: UCLA Formula, *Transplant Int.,* 5 Suppl 1, S370, 1992.

319. Du, Z.Y., Hicks, M., Spratt, P., Mundy, J.A., and Macdonald, P.S., Cardioprotective effects of pinacidil pretreatment and lazaroid (U74500A) preservation in isolated rat hearts after 12-hour hypothermic storage, *Transplantation*, 66, 158, 1998.

320. Fukushima, N., Shirakura, R., Chang, J., Izutani, H., Inoue, M., Yamaguchi, T., Kobayashi, Y., Yoshitatsu, M., Ahamet, I., Saito, S., and Matsuda, H., Successful multiorgan transplants from non-heart-beating donors using percutaneous cardiopulmonary support, *Transplant Proc.*, 30, 3783, 1998.

321. Toronto Lung Transplant Group. Unilateral lung transplantation for pulmonary fibrosis, *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 314, 1140, 1986.

322. Cooper, J.D., Pearson, F.G., Patterson, G.A., Todd, T.R., Ginsberg, R.J., Goldberg, M., and DeMajo, W.A., Technique of successful lung transplantation in humans, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 93, 173, 1987.

323. Patterson, G.A., Cooper, J.D., Dark, J.H., and Jones, M.T., Experimental and clinical double lung transplantation, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 95, 70, 1988.

324. Robicsek, F., Pruitt, J.R., Sanger, P.W., Daugherty, H.K., Tam, W., Miller, B., and Bagby, E., The maintenance of function of the donor heart in the extracorporeal stage and during transplantation, *Coll. Works Cardiopulm. Dis.*, 14, 13, 1968.

325. Genco, C.M., Connolly, R.J., Peterson, M.B., Bernstein, E.A., Ramberg, K., Zhang, X., Cleveland, R.J., and Diehl, J.T., Granulocyte sequestration and early failure in the autoperfused heart-lung preparation, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 53, 217, 1992.

326. Mora, B.N. and Patterson, G.A., Lung preservation, in *Heart and Lung Transplantation*, Baumgartner, W.A., Eds., W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia, 2002, p. 142.

327. Yacoub, M.H., Khaghani, A., Banner, N., Tajkarimi, S., and Fitzgerald, M., Distant organ procurement for heart and lung transplantation, *Transplant Proc.*, 21, 2548, 1989.

328. Hardesty, R.L. and Griffith, B.P., Procurement for combined heart-lung transplantation. Bilateral thoracotomy with sternal transection, cardiopulmonary bypass, and profound hypothermia, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 89, 795, 1985.

329. Kirk, A.J., Colquhoun, I.W., and Dark, J.H., Lung preservation: A review of current practice and future directions, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 56, 990, 1993.

330. Kirklin, J.K., Westaby, S., Blackstone, E.H., Kirklin, J.W., Complement and the damaging effects of cardiopulmonary bypass, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 86, 845, 1983.

331. Wahlers, T., Haverich, A., Fieguth, H.G., Schafers, H.J., Takayama, T., and Borst, H.G., Flush perfusion using Euro-Collins solution vs. cooling by means of extracorporeal circulation in heart–lung preservation, *J. Heart Transplant*, 5, 89, 1986.

332. Schueler, S., De Valeria, P.A., Hatanaka, M., Cameron, D.E., Bando, K., Zeebley, M., Hutchins, G.M., Reitz, B.A., and Baumgartner, W.A., Successful twenty-four-hour lung preservation with donor core cooling and leukocyte depletion in an orthotopic double lung transplantation model, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 104, 73, 1992.

333. Baldwin, J.C., Frist, W.H., Starkey, T.D., Harjula, A., Starnes, V.A., Stinson, E.B., Oyer, P.E., and Shumway, N.E., Distant graft procurement for combined heart and lung transplantation using pulmonary artery flush and simple topical hypothermia for graft preservation, *Ann. Thorac. Surg*, 43, 670, 1987.

334. Jamieson, S.W., Stinson, E.B., Oyer, P.E., Reitz, B.A., Baldwin, J., Modry, D., Dawkins, K., Theodore, J., Hunt, S., and Shumway, N.E., Heart-lung transplantation for irreversible pulmonary hypertension, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 38, 554, 1984.

335. Haverich, A., Aziz, S., Scott, W.C., Jamieson, S.W., and Shumway, N.E., Improved lung preservation using Euro-Collins solution for flush-perfusion, *Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 34, 368, 1986.

336. Varela, A., Montero, C.G., Cordoba, M., Antequera, A., Perez, M., Tabuenca, M.J., Ortiz Berrocal, J., Tendillo, F.J., Mascias, A., Santos, M., and Castillo Olivares, J.L., Improved distribution of pulmonary flush solution to the tracheobronchial wall in pulmonary transplantation, *Eur. Surg. Res.*, 29, 1, 1997.

337. Starkey, T.D., Sakakibara, N., Hagberg, R.C., Tazelaar, H.D., Baldwin, J.C., and Jamieson, S.W., Successful six-hour cardiopulmonary preservation with simple hypothermic crystalloid flush, *J. Heart Transplant*, 5, 291, 1986.

338. Date, H., Matsumura, A., Manchester, J.K., Obo, H., Lima, O., Cooper, J.M., Sundaresan, S., Lowry, O.H., and Cooper, J.D., Evaluation of lung metabolism during successful twenty-four-hour canine lung preservation, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 105, 480, 1993.

339. Astier, A. and Paul, M., Instability of reduced glutathione in commercial Belzer cold storage solution, *Lancet*, 2, 556, 1989.

340. Hardesty, R.L., Aeba, R., Armitage, J.M., Kormos, R.L., and Griffith, B.P., A clinical trial of University of Wisconsin solution for pulmonary preservation, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 105, 660, 1993.

341. McGoldrick, J.P., et al., Early graft function after heart-lung transplantation, *J. Heart Transplant*, 9, 693, 1990.

342. Hooper, T.L., Locke, T.J., Fetherston, G., Flecknell, P.A., and McGregor, C.G., Comparison of cold flush perfusion with modified blood versus modified Euro-Collins solution for lung preservation, *J. Heart Transplant*, 9, 429, 1990.

343. Xiong, L., Mazmanian, M., Chapelier, A.R., Reignier, J., Weiss, M., Dartevelle, P.G., and Herve, P., Lung preservation with Euro-Collins, University of Wisconsin, Wallwork, and low-potassium-dextran solution. Universite++ Paris-Sud Lung Transplant Group, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 58, 845, 1994.

344. Hidalgo, M.A., Manek, S., Fryer, P.R., Fuller, B.J., and Green, C.J., Morphological changes in rat single lung isografts after long-term survival, *Int. J. Exp. Pathol.*, 76, 43, 1995.

345. de Hoyos, A.L., Patterson, G.A., Maurer, J.R., Ramirez, J.C., Miller, J.D., and Winton, T.L., Pulmonary transplantation: Early and late results. The Toronto Lung Transplant Group, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 103, 295, 1992.

346. Puskas, J.D., Cardoso, P.F., Mayer, E., Shi, S., Slutsky, A.S., and Patterson, G.A., Equivalent eighteen-hour lung preservation with low-potassium dextran or Euro-Collins solution after prostaglandin E1 infusion, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 104, 83, 1992.

347. Binns, O.A., DeLima, N.F., Buchanan, S.A., Cope, J.T., King, R.C., Marek, C.A., Shockey, K.S., Tribble, C.G., and Kron, I.L., Both blood and crystalloid-based extracellular solutions are superior to intracellular solutions for lung preservation, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 112, 1515, 1996.

348. Trulock, E.P., Lung transplantation, *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.*, 155, 789, 1997.

349. Bhabra, M.S., Hopkinson, D.N., Shaw, T.E., and Hooper, T.L., Relative importance of prostaglandin/cyclic adenosine monophosphate and nitric oxide/cyclic guanosine monophosphate pathways in lung preservation, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 62, 1494, 1996.

350. Yamashita, M., Schmid, R.A.,, ando, K., Cooper, J.D., and Patterson, G.A., Nitroprusside ameliorates lung allograft reperfusion injury, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 62, 791, 1996.

351. King, R.C., Binns, O.A., Kanithanon, R.C., Cope, J.T., Chun, R.L., Shockey, K.S., Tribble, C.G., and Kron, I.L., Low-dose sodium nitroprusside reduces pulmonary reperfusion injury, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 63, 1398, 1997.

352. Naka, Y., Chowdhury, N.C., Oz, M.C., Smith, C.R., Yano, O.J., Michler, R.E., Stern, D.M., and Pinsky, D.J., Nitroglycerin maintains graft vascular homeostasis and enhances preservation in an orthotopic rat lung transplant model, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 109, 206, 1995.

353. Liu, C.J., Ueda, M., Kosaka, S., Hirata, T., Yokomise, H., Inui, K., Hitomi, S., and Wada, H., A newly developed solution enhances thirty-hour preservation in a canine lung transplantation model, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 112, 569, 1996.

354. Zamora, M.R., Davis, R.D., Keshavjee, S.H., Schulman, L., Levin, J., Ryan, U., and Patterson, G.A., Complement inhibition attenuates human lung transplant reperfusion injury: A multicenter trial, *Chest*, 116, 46S, 1999.

355. Ueno, T., Yokomise, H., Oka, T., Puskas, J., Mayer, E., Slutsky, A.S., and Patterson, G.A., The effect of PGE1 and temperature on lung function following preservation, *Transplantation*, 52, 626, 1991.

356. Date, H., Lima, O., Matsumura, A., Tsuji, H., d'Avignon, D.A., and Cooper, J.D., In a canine model, lung preservation at 10 degrees C is superior to that at 4 degrees C: A comparison of two preservation temperatures on lung function and on adenosine triphosphate level measured by phosphorus 31-nuclear magnetic resonance, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 103, 773, 1992.

357. Kon, N.D., Hines, M.H., Harr, C.D., Miller, L.R., Taylor, C.L., Cordell, A.R., and Mills, S.A., Improved lung preservation with cold air storage, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 51, 557, 1991.

358. Puskas, J.D., Hirai, T., Christie, N., Mayer, E., Slutsky, A.S., and Patterson, G.A., Reliable thirty-hour lung preservation by donor lung hyperinflation, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 104, 1075, 1992.

359. Aoe, M., Okabayashi, K., Cooper, J.D., and Patterson, G.A., Hyperinflation of canine lung allografts during storage increases reperfusion pulmonary edema, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 112, 94, 1996.

360. Egan, T.M., Ulicny, K.S., Jr., Lambert, C.J., Jr., and Wilcox, B.R., Effect of a free-radical scavenger on cadaver lung transplantation, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 55, 1453, 1993.

361. Koyama, I., Toung, T.J., Rogers, M.C., Gurtner, G.H., and Traystman, R.J., O_2 radicals mediate reperfusion lung injury in ischemic O_2-ventilated canine pulmonary lobe, *J. Appl. Physiol.*, 63, 111, 1987.

362. Weder, W., Harper, B., Shimokawa, S., Miyoshi, S., Date, H., Schreinemakers, H., Egan, T., and Cooper, J.D., Influence of intra-alveolar oxygen concentration on lung preservation in a rabbit model, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 101, 1037, 1991.

363. Haniuda, M., Dresler, C.M., Hasegawa, S., Patterson, G.A., and Cooper, J.D., Changes in vascular permeability with ischemic time, temperature, and inspired oxygen fraction in isolated rabbit lungs, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 57, 708, 1994.

364. Haniuda, M., Dresler, C.M., Mizuta, T., Cooper, J.D., and Patterson, G.A., Free radical–mediated vascular injury in lungs preserved at moderate hypothermia, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 60, 1376, 1995.

365. Garzon, A.A., Cheng, C., Pangan, J., and Karlson, K.E., Hypothermic hyperbaric lung preservation for twenty-four hours with replantation, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 55, 546, 1968.

366. Novick, R.J., Reid, K.R., Denning, L., Duplan, J., Menkis, A.H., and McKenzie, F.N., Prolonged preservation of canine lung allografts: The role of prostaglandins, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 51, 853, 1991.

367. Naka, Y., Roy, D.K., Liao, H., Chowdhury, N.C., Michler, R.E., Oz, M.C., and Pinsky, D.J., cAMP-mediated vascular protection in an orthotopic rat lung transplant model: Insights into the mechanism of action of prostaglandin E1 to improve lung preservation, *Circ. Res.*, 79, 773, 1996.

368. Mayer, E., Puskas, J.D., Cardoso, P.F., Shi, S., Slutsky, A.S., and Patterson, G.A., Reliable eighteen-hour lung preservation at 4 degrees and 10 degrees C by pulmonary artery flush after high-dose prostaglandin E1 administration, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 103, 1136, 1992.

369. Matsuzaki, Y., Waddell, T.K., Puskas, J.D., Hirai, T., Nakajima, S., Slutsky, A.S., and Patterson, G.A., Amelioration of post-ischemic lung reperfusion injury by prostaglandin E1, *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 148, 882, 1993.

370. Higgins, R.S., Letsou, G.V., Sanchez, J.A., Eisen, R.N., Smith, G.J., Franco, K.L., Hammond, G.L., and Baldwin, J.C., Improved ultrastructural lung preservation with prostaglandin E1 as donor pre-treatment in a primate model of heart-lung transplantation, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 105, 965, 1993.

371. Chen, C.Z., Gallagher, R.C., Ardery, P., Dyckman, W., Donabue, S., and Low, H.B., Retrograde flush and cold storage for twenty-two to twenty-five hours lung preservation with and without prostaglandin E1, *J. Heart Lung Transplant*, 16, 658, 1997.

372. Aoe, M., Trachiotis, G.D., Okabayashi, K., Manchester, J.K., Lowry, O.H., Cooper, J.D., and Patterson, G.A., Administration of prostaglandin E1 after lung transplantation improves early graft function, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 58, 655, 1994.

373. Hooper, T.L., Thomson, D.S., Jones, M.T., Cook, L., Owen, S., Wilkes, S., Woodcock, A., Webster, A.H., Hasleton, P., Campbell, C.S., et al., Amelioration of lung ischemic injury with prostacyclin, *Transplantation*, 49, 1031, 1990.

374. Klepetko, W., Muller, M.R., Khunl-Brady, G., Wisser, W., Windisch, A., Eckersberger, F., and Wolner, E., Beneficial effect of iloprost on early pulmonary function after lung preservation with modified EuroCollins solution, *Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 37, 174, 1989.

375. Novick, R.J., Menkis, A.H., and McKenzie, F.N., New trends in lung preservation: A collective review, *J. Heart Lung Transplant*, 11, 377, 1992.

376. Fullerton, D.A. and McIntyre, R.C., Jr., Inhaled nitric oxide: Therapeutic applications in cardiothoracic surgery, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 61, 1856, 1996.

377. Loscalzo, J., Nitric oxide and vascular disease, *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 333, 251, 1995.

378. Date, H., Triantafillou, A.N., Trulock, E.P., Pohl, M.S., Cooper, J.D., and Patterson, G.A., Inhaled nitric oxide reduces human lung allograft dysfunction, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 111, 913, 1996.

379. Adatia, I., Lillehei, C., Arnold, J.H., Thompson, J.E., Palazzo, R., Fackler, J.C., and Wessel, D.L., Inhaled nitric oxide in the treatment of postoperative graft dysfunction after lung transplantation, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 57, 1311, 1994.

380. Sundaresan, S., Trachiotis, G.D., Aoe, M., Patterson, G.A., and Cooper, J.D., Donor lung procurement: Assessment and operative technique, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 56, 1409, 1993.
381. Hirata, T., Yokomise, H., Fukuse, T., Muro, K., Ono, N., Inui, K., Hitomi, S., and Wada, H., Successful 12-hour lung preservation with trehalose, *Transplant Proc.*, 25, 1597, 1993.
382. Kawahara, K., Itoyanagi, N., Takahashi, T., Akamine, S., Kobayashi, M., and Tomota, M., Transplantation of canine lung allografts preserved in UW solution for 24 hours, *Transplantation*, 55, 15, 1993.
383. Steen, S., Kimblad, P.O., Sjoberg, T., Lindberg, L., Ingemansson, R., and Massa, G., Safe lung preservation for twenty-four hours with Perfadex, *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, 57, 450, 1994.
384. Kin, S., Stephanian, E., Gores, P., Shirabe, K., Tanaka, T., Salazar, A., Brayman, K., Gruessner, R., and Sutherland, D.E., Successful 96-hr cold-storage preservation of canine pancreas with UW solution containing the thromboxane A2 synthesis inhibitor OKY046, *J. Surg. Res.*, 52, 577, 1992.
385. Sumimoto, R., Dohi, K., Urushihara, T., Jamieson, N.V., Ito, H., Sumimoto, K., and Fukuda, Y., An examination of the effects of solutions containing histidine and lactobionate for heart, pancreas, and liver preservation in the rat, *Transplantation*, 53, 1206, 1992.
386. Urushihara, T., Sumimoto, R., Sumimoto, K., Jamieson, N.V., Ito, H., Ikeda, M., Fukuda, Y., and Dohi, K., A comparison of some simplified lactobionate preservation solutions with standard UW solution and Eurocollins solution for pancreas preservation, *Transplantation*, 53, 750, 1992.
387. Morel, P., Moss, A., Schlumpf, R., Nakhleh, R., Lloveras, J.K., Field, M.J., Condie, R., Matas, A.J., and Sutherland, D.E., 72-hour preservation of the canine pancreas: successful replacement of hydroxyethylstarch by dextran-40 in UW solution, *Transplant Proc.*, 24, 791, 1992.
388. Howden, B.O., Jablonski, P., and Marshall, V.C., A novel approach to pancreas preservation: Does the gaseous milieu matter? *Transplant Proc.*, 24, 795, 1992.
389. Langnas, A.N., Intestinal transplantation, in *Current Issues in Liver and Small Bowel Transplantation*, Kitamaji, M. Shimazu, M. , Wakabayashi, g., Hoshino, K., Tanaby, M., and Kawachi, S., Eds., Springer, Tokyo, 2002, p. 75.
390. Muller, A.R., Nalesnik, M., Platz, K.P., Langrehr, J.M., Hoffman, R.A., and Schraut, W.H., Evaluation of preservation conditions and various solutions for small bowel preservation, *Transplantation*, 57, 649, 1994.
391. Itasaka, H., Burns, W., Wicomb, W.N., Egawa, H., Collins, G., and Esquivel, C.O., Modification of rejection by polyethylene glycol in small-bowel transplantation, *Transplantation*, 57, 645, 1994.
392. van der Heijden, E.P., Kroese, A.B., Stremel, R.W., Bar, P.R., Kon, M., and Werker, P.M., Contractile properties of rat skeletal muscles following storage at 4 degrees C, *Clin. Sci. (Lond.)*, 97, 45, 1999.
393. van der Heijden, E.P., Kroese, A.B., Werker, P.M., de With, M.C., de Smet, M., Kon, M., and Bar, D.P., Improving the preservation of isolated rat skeletal muscles stored for 16 hours at 4 degrees C, *Transplantation*, 69, 1310, 2000.
394. Nakagawa, Y., Ono, H., Mizumoto, S., Fukui, A., and Tamai, S., Subzero nonfreezing preservation in a murine limb replantation model, *J. Orthop. Sci.*, 3, 156, 1998.
395. Raeburn, C.D., Cleveland, J.C., Jr., Zimmerman, M.A., and Harken, A.H., Organ preconditioning, *Arch. Surg.*, 136, 1263, 2001.
396. Kume, M., Yamamoto, Y., Saad, S., Gomi, T., Kimoto, S., Shimabukuro, T., Yagi, T., Nakagami, M., Takada, Y., Morimoto, T., and Yamaoka, Y., Ischemic preconditioning of the liver in rats: Implications of heat shock protein induction to increase tolerance of ischemia-reperfusion injury, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 128, 251, 1996.
397. Lloris-Carsi, J.M., Cejalvo, D., Toledo-Pereyra, L.H., Calvo, M.A., and Suzuki, S., Preconditioning: Effect upon lesion modulation in warm liver ischemia, *Transplant Proc.*, 25, 3303, 1993.
398. Yin, D.P., Sankary, H.N., Chong, A.S., Ma, L.L., Shen, J., Foster, P., and Williams, J.W., Protective effect of ischemic preconditioning on liver preservation-reperfusion injury in rats, *Transplantation*, 66, 152, 1998.
399. Murry, C.E., Jennings, R.B., and Reimer, K.A., Preconditioning with ischemia: A delay of lethal cell injury in ischemic myocardium, *Circulation*, 74, 1124, 1986.
400. Cleveland, J.C., Jr., Wollmering, M.M., Meldrum, D.R., Rowland, R.T., Rehring, T.F., Sheridan, B.C., Harken, A.H., and Banerjee, A., Ischemic preconditioning in human and rat ventricle, *Am. J. Physiol.*, 271, H1786, 1996.

401. Sun, J.Z., Tang, X.L., Knowlton, A.A., Park, S.W., Qiu, Y., and Bolli, R., Late preconditioning against myocardial stunning: An endogenous protective mechanism that confers resistance to postischemic dysfunction 24 h after brief ischemia in conscious pigs, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 95, 388, 1995.

402. Shiki, K. and Hearse, D.J., Preconditioning of ischemic myocardium: Reperfusion-induced arrhythmias, *Am. J. Physiol.*, 253, H1470, 1987.

403. Pomerantz, B.J., Joo, K., Shames, B.D., Cleveland, J.C., Jr., Banerjee, A., and Harken, A.H., Adenosine preconditioning reduces both pre and postischemic arrhythmias in human myocardium, *J. Surg. Res.*, 90, 191, 2000.

404. Banerjee, A., Locke-Winter, C., Rogers, K.B., Mitchell, M.B., Brew, E.C., Cairns, C.B., Bensard, D.D., and Harken, A.H., Preconditioning against myocardial dysfunction after ischemia and reperfusion by an alpha 1-adrenergic mechanism, *Circ. Res.*, 73, 656, 1993.

405. Clavien, P.A., Yadav, S., Sindram, D., and Bentley, R.C., Protective effects of ischemic preconditioning for liver resection performed under inflow occlusion in humans, *Ann. Surg.*, 232, 155, 2000.

406. Du, Z.Y., Hicks, M., Winlaw, D., Spratt, P., and Macdonald, P., Ischemic preconditioning enhances donor lung preservation in the rat, *J. Heart Lung Transplant*, 15, 1258, 1996.

407. Peralta, C., Hotter, G., Closa, D., Gelpi, E., Bulbena, O., and Rosello-Catafau, J., Protective effect of preconditioning on the injury associated to hepatic ischemia-reperfusion in the rat: Role of nitric oxide and adenosine, *Hepatology*, 25, 934, 1997.

408. Arai, M., Thurman, R.G., and Lemasters, J.J., Contribution of adenosine A(2) receptors and cyclic adenosine monophosphate to protective ischemic preconditioning of sinusoidal endothelial cells against Storage/Reperfusion injury in rat livers, *Hepatology*, 32, 297, 2000.

409. Nakayama, H., Yamamoto, Y., Kume, M., Yamagami, K., Yamamoto, H., Kimoto, S., Ishikawa, Y., Ozaki, N., Shimahara, Y., and Yamaoka, Y., Pharmacologic stimulation of adenosine A2 receptor supplants ischemic preconditioning in providing ischemic tolerance in rat livers, *Surgery*, 126, 945, 1999.

410. Peralta, C., Hotter, G., Closa, D., Prats, N., Xaus, C., Gelpi, E., and Rosello-Catafau, J., The protective role of adenosine in inducing nitric oxide synthesis in rat liver ischemia preconditioning is mediated by activation of adenosine A2 receptors, *Hepatology*, 29, 126, 1999.

411. Carini, R., De Cesaris, M.G., Splendore, R., Bagnati, M., and Albano, E., Ischemic preconditioning reduces Na(+) accumulation and cell killing in isolated rat hepatocytes exposed to hypoxia, *Hepatology*, 31, 166, 2000.

412. Teoh, N., Dela Pena, A., and Farrell, G., Hepatic ischemic preconditioning in mice is associated with activation of NF-kappaB, p38 kinase, and cell cycle entry, *Hepatology*, 36, 94, 2002.

413. Redaelli, C.A., Tian, Y.H., Schaffner, T., Ledermann, M., Baer, H.U., and Dufour, J.F., Extended preservation of rat liver graft by induction of heme oxygenase-1, *Hepatology*, 35, 1082, 2002.

414. Uchinami, H., Yamamoto, Y., Kume, M., Yonezawa, K., Ishikawa, Y., Taura, K., Nakajima, A., Hata, K., and Yamaoka, Y., Effect of heat shock preconditioning on NF-kappaB/I-kappaB pathway during I/R injury of the rat liver, *Am. J. Physiol. Gastrointest. Liver Physiol.*, 282, G962, 2002.

415. Bauer, M. and Bauer, I., Heme oxygenase-1: Redox regulation and role in the hepatic response to oxidative stress, *Antioxid. Redox. Signal.*, 4, 749, 2002.

416. Arai, M., Thurman, R.G., and Lemasters, J.J., Ischemic preconditioning of rat livers against cold storage-reperfusion injury: Role of nonparenchymal cells and the phenomenon of heterologous preconditioning, *Liver Transplant*, 7, 292, 2001.

417. Yonezawa, K., Yamamoto, Y., Yamamoto, H., Ishikawa, Y., Uchinami, H., Taura, K., Nakajima, A., and Yamaoka, Y., Suppression of tumor necrosis factor-alpha production and neutrophil infiltration during ischemia-reperfusion injury of the liver after heat shock preconditioning, *J. Hepatol.*, 35, 619, 2001.

418. Amersi, F., Shen, X.D., Anselmo, D., Melinek, J., Iyer, S., Southard, D.J., Katori, M., Volk, H.D., Busuttil, R.W., Buelow, R., and Kupiec-Weglinski, J.W., *Ex vivo* exposure to carbon monoxide prevents hepatic ischemia/reperfusion injury through p38 MAP kinase pathway, *Hepatology*, 35, 815, 2002.

419. Jaeschke, H., Molecular mechanisms of hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury and preconditioning, *Am. J. Physiol. Gastrointest. Liver Physiol.*, 284, G15, 2003.

420. Wahlberg, J., Jacobsson, J., and Tufveson, G., Relevance of additive components of University of Wisconsin cold-storage solution: An experimental study in the rat, *Transplantation*, 48, 400, 1989.

421. Chiang, C.H., Hsu, K., Yan, H.C., Harn, H.J., and Chang, D.M., PGE1, dexamethasone, U-74389G, or Bt2-cAMP as an additive to promote protection by UW solution in I/R injury, *J. Appl. Physiol.*, 83, 583, 1997.
422. Schon, M.R., Hunt, C.J., Pegg, D.E., and Wight, D.G., The possibility of resuscitating livers after warm ischemic injury, *Transplantation*, 56, 24, 1993.
423. Bell, R., Shiel, A.G., Dolan, P., Mears, D.C., and Woodman, K., The evaluation of the isolated perfused liver as a model for the assessment of liver preservation, *Aust. N.Z. J. Surg.*, 63, 44, 1993.
424. Filipponi, F., Bacci, S., and Romagnoli, P., Normothermic liver perfusion *ex situ*: A resuscitation tool for hepatic grafts damaged by warm ischemia, *G. Chir.*, 14, 254, 1993.
425. Jamieson, N.V., Sundberg, R., Lindell, S., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., The isolated perfused rabbit liver as a model for assessment of organ preservation, *Transplant Proc.*, 20, 996, 1988.
426. Ikeda, T., Yanaga, K., Lebeau, G., Higashi, H., Kakizoe, S., and Starzl, T.E., Hemodynamic and biochemical changes during normothermic and hypothermic sanguinous perfusion of the porcine hepatic graft, *Transplantation*, 50, 564, 1990.
427. Iu, S., Harvey, P.R., Makowka, L., Petrunka, C.N., Ilson, R.G., and Strasberg, S.M., Markers of allograft viability in the rat: Relationship between transplantation viability and liver function in the isolated perfused liver, *Transplantation*, 44, 562, 1987.
428. Jamieson, N.V., Sundberg, R., Lindell, S., Southard, J.H., and Belzer, F.O., A comparison of cold storage solutions for hepatic preservation using the isolated perfused rabbit liver, *Cryobiology*, 25, 300, 1988.
429. Sumimoto, R., Jamieson, N.V., and Kamada, N., Examination of the role of the impermeants lacto-bionate and raffinose in a modified UW solution, *Transplantation*, 50, 573, 1990.
430. Neuhaus, P. and Blumhardt, G., Extracorporeal liver perfusion: Applications of an improved model for experimental studies of the liver, *Int. J. Artif. Organs*, 16, 729, 1993.
431. Schon, M.R., Puhl, G., Frank, J., and Neuhaus, P., Hemodialysis improves results of pig liver perfusion after warm ischemic injury, *Transplant Proc.*, 25, 3239, 1993.
432. Takada, Y., Taniguchi, H., Fukunaga, K., Yuzawa, K., Otsuka, M., Todoroki, T., Iijima, T., and Fukao, K., Takada, Y., Taniguchi, H., Fukunaga, K., Yuzawa, K., Otsuka, M., Todoroki, T., Iijima, T., and Fukao, K., Hepatic allograft procurement from non-heart-beating donors: Limits of warm ischemia in porcine liver transplantation, *Transplantation*, 63, 369, 1997.
433. Yamabe, K., Shimizu, S., Kamiike, W., Waguri, S., Eguchi, Y., Hasegawa, J., Okuno, S., Yoshioka, Y., Ito, T., Sawa, Y., Uchiyama, Y., Tsujimoto, Y., and Matsuda, H., Prevention of hypoxic liver cell necrosis by *in vivo* human Bcl-2 gene transfection, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.*, 243, 217, 1998.
434. Sawitzki, B., Amersi, F., Ritter, T., Fisser, M., Shen, X.D., Ke, B., Busuttil, R., Volk, H.D., and Kupiec-Weglinski, J.W., Upregulation of Bag-1 by *ex vivo* gene transfer protects rat livers from ischemia/reperfusion injury, *Hum. Gene Ther.*, 13, 1495, 2002.
435. Amersi, F., Buelow, R., Kato, H., Ke, B., Coito, A.J., Shen, X.D., Zhao, D., Zaky, J., Melinek, J., Lassman, C.R., Kolls, J.K., Alam, J., Ritter, T., Volk, H.D., Farmer, D.G., Ghobrial, R.M., Busuttil, R.W., and Kupiec-Weglinski, J.W., Upregulation of heme oxygenase-1 protects genetically fat Zucker rat livers from ischemia/reperfusion injury, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 104, 1631, 1999.
436. Abunasra, H.J., Smolenski, R.T., Yap, J., Sheppard, M., O'Brien, T., and Yacoub, M.H., Multigene adenoviral therapy for the attenuation of ischemia-reperfusion injury after preservation for cardiac transplantation, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 125, 998, 2003.
437. Halasz, N.A., Rosenfield, H.A., Orloff, M.J., and Seifert, L.N., Whole-organ preservation. II. Freezing studies, *Surgery*, 61, 417, 1967.
438. Dietzman, R.H., Rebelo, A.E., Graham, E.F., Crabo, B.G., and Lillehei, R.C., Long-term functional success following freezing of canine kidneys, *Surgery*, 74, 181, 1973.
439. Pegg, D.E., Jacobsen, I.A., and Halasz, N.A., *Organ Preservation III: Basic and Applied Aspects: A Symposium of the Transplantation Society*, MTP, Boston, 1982, p. 433.
440. Pegg, D.E., and Karow, A.M. *The Biophysics of Organ Cryopreservation*, Advanced Study Institute Series. New York: Plenum Press. Published in cooperation with NATO Scientific, 1987.
441. Jacobsen, I.A., et al., Transplantation of rabbit kidneys perfused with glycerol solutions at 10 degrees C, *Cryobiology*, 15, 18, 1978.
442. Rubinsky, B., Heat transfer during cryopreservation by perfusion through the vascular system, *Cryobiology*, 24, 537, 1987.

443. Pegg, D.E., Green, C.J., and Walter, C.A., Attempted canine renal cryopreservation using dimethyl sulphoxide helium perfusion and microwave thawing, *Cryobiology*, 15, 618, 1978.
444. Robinson, M.P., Wuseman, M.C., Wang, L., and Pegg, D.E., Electromagnetic re-warming of cryopreserved tissues: Effect of choice of cryoprotectant and sample shape on uniformity of heating, *Phys. Med. Biol.*, 47, 2311, 2002.
445. Pollock, G.A., Pegg, D.E., and Hardie, I.R., An isolated perfused rat mesentery model for direct observation of the vasculature during cryopreservation, *Cryobiology*, 23, 500, 1986.
446. Fahy, G., The effect of cryoprotectant on freezing damage of kidney slices, in *Basic Concepts of Organ Procurement, Perfusion, and Preservation for Transplantation*, Toledo-Pereyra, L.H., Ed., Academic Press, New York, 1982, p. 121.
447. Fahy, G., Prevention of toxicity from high concentration of cryoprotective agents, in *Basic Concepts of Organ Procurement, Perfusion, and Preservation For Transplantation*, Toledo-Pereyra, L.H., Ed., Academic Press, New York, 1982, p. 367.
448. Fahy, G.M., Vitrification: A new approach to organ cryopreservation, *Prog. Clin. Biol. Res.*, 224, 305, 1986.
449. Kheirabadi, B.S. and Fahy, G.M., Permanent life support by kidneys perfused with a vitrifiable (7.5 molar) cryoprotectant solution, *Transplantation*, 70, 51, 2000.

10 Cryopreservation of Nonmammalian Metazoan Systems

Roger A. Leopold

CONTENTS

10.1 INTRODUCTION

The cryopreservation of nonmammalian metazoan systems is a topic that encompasses much diversity. This diversity applies not only to the range of animal species represented but also to the range of life stages and approaches employed in the effort to render themes species amenable to storage at low temperature. Similar to investigations concerning mammals, research relating to cryopreservation of some of the animal systems covered in this review involves the treatment of individuals during some stage of embryonic development. However, unlike with mammals, embryonic development of nonmammalians is usually outside the mother, and fertilization of the oocyte by sperm often occurs after its release into the external environment. Thus, in the absence of a womblike milieu to provide sustenance and protection to the developing embryos, nonmammalian embryos are often equipped with copious amounts of yolk for nourishment and growth and with various membranes or shells to protect them from potential harm while they develop under harsh environmental conditions. Such adaptive measures present considerable challenges to cryobiologists

271

seeking to apply conventional procedures that have been designed to cryopreserve mammalian embryos. Further, embryos of some nonmammals have thus far proven to be intractable to the use of cryopreservation methodology. Nevertheless, these organisms may have commercial or aesthetic value (the utility and economy that cryopreservation technology could provide) from which certain industries, such as aquaculture, biocontrol, and so on, could benefit. To bypass or accommodate the inherent obstacles that these systems present to the use of conventional methods, cryobiologists have devised or are in the process of devising innovative protocols for the storage of alternate forms of germplasm such as primordial germ cells, blastomeres, spermatozoa, and an array of postembryonic stages.

Many of the cryopreservation obstacles that these systems possess have been identified by Rana,[1] Hagedorn et al.,[2] and Lubzens et al.[3] for fish; Chao and Liao[4] for shellfish and fin fish; and Leopold[5] for insects. Considering the often-severe environmental conditions in which development occurs for the animals covered in this chapter, it should not be surprising that many of the barriers to successful cryopreservation are not species specific but are shared by many species across phylogenetic lines. Thus, the intent of this chapter is to provide an overview of the studies relating to the cryopreservation of germplasm of nonmammalian metazoans, with an emphasis on identifying the commonalities and problems presented by this diverse group of animals. With this focus, it is hoped that a broad, multispecies perspective will lend some insight to solving seemingly insolvable problems connected to the application of cryopreservation technology.

This overview does not include discussion of the extensive array of research pertaining to cryopreservation of nonmammalian sperm. In 1996, Rana and Gilmour[6] reported that the literature contained studies on cryopreservation of sperm of up to 200 species of fish, and Gwo,[7] in 2000, estimated that research on storage of aquatic invertebrate semen covered about 30 species. Since publication of those reviews, research on cryopreservation of mammalian and nonmammalian semen has intensified to the point that it would be too large a topic to include with this chapter. It also should be mentioned that cryopreservation of single-celled organisms, although not considered here, is an important endeavor. Free-living and parasitic protozoans are commonly cryopreserved — usually with little difficulty.[8–10] In general, these organisms, like bacteria, are much more tolerant to freezing than the metazoan species; so much so, that recent evidence indicates that various pathogens can exist as contaminants in commercially purchased liquid nitrogen (LN) or come from other cryopreserved samples. As a consequence, these pathogens may present a biosecurity risk to samples in a storage system unless certain precautions are observed.[11,12]

10.2 HIGHLIGHTS: GENERALITIES AND EXCEPTIONS

On examining the literature on cryopreservation of nonmammalian species, certain generalities and trends become evident. In general, the relative degree of difficulty in creating a protocol for cryopreserving germplasm, other than male gametes, of nonmammalian species escalates when climbing the phylogenetic tree, traversing an aquatic to terrestrial environment, or developing embryonically from a few cells to many. There are, of course, exceptions to these observations, and one exception pertains to those species having anhydrobiotic properties. For example, Hinton[13] was successful in recovering live larvae of the midge *Polypedilium vanderplanki* after exposing it to liquid helium. During the larval stage, this insect is able to survive desiccation to about 8% total body moisture, and hence it is not severely damaged by exposure to a temperature of –270°C. Similar studies have also been conducted with the drought-resistant stages of rotifers[14] and tardigrades.[15]

Another exception exists among the vertebrates. Sandwiched around the process of mammalian embryo cryopreservation are the requisite, painstaking techniques for harvesting low numbers of embryos from individual females, followed by uterine implantation after cryogenic storage. Thus, it would seem that cryopreservation would not be difficult under circumstances in which literally hundred of thousands of embryos can be easily collected while developing freely in an aqueous environment. However, embryos of freshwater and marine fishes have resisted considerable effort

by cryobiologists to provide the fisheries industry with cryopreservation technology.[16,17] A similar situation exists for dipteran insects. The anopheline mosquito *Anopheles gambiae*, aquatic except for the adult stage, has defied attempts to provide researchers with a much-needed method for storing the numerous strains of these malaria vectors.[18–21] In contrast, cryopreservation efforts have been successful for one aquatic midge and a number of terrestrial dipterans representing five different families of flies.[22–28]

Further, it is usually the case that devising cryopreservation protocols for animals early in their embryonic development is less problematic when cells are few in number, totipotency is present, and tissues and organ systems are absent. The overall size of the organism at this stage is not a factor. The totipotency characteristic of the cells forming preblastocyst mammalian embryos allows the embryos to survive blastomere damage[29] and even splitting into two individuals.[30] However, for the reasons mentioned in the introductory paragraph and the additional obstacle of chilling intolerance,[31,32] the early embryos of some nonmammals do not readily yield to cryogenic manipulations. In embryos of organisms for which these factors are resident, cryopreservation efforts have been generally shunted to some later embryonic or postembryonic stage of development in which cryogenic manipulation is better tolerated.

10.3 CRYOPRESERVATION AND PHYLOGENY

The array of organisms having had some aspect of cryogenic storage or research effort cited in the following paragraphs is arranged phylogenetically, starting with Platyhelminthes. In addition to Protozoa, examples of whole-animal (embryos, immatures, larvae, etc.) studies involving cryopreservation can be found in Platyhelminthes, Acanthocephala, Aschelminthes, Annelida, Arthropoda, Mollusca, Echinodermata, and Chordata. Success with parasitic helminth cryopreservation has been especially high, and in terms of the number of species and individuals, cryogenic storage is used with this group more often than with any other group of animals. Earlier reviews on helminth cryopreservation literature include those by Eckert,[10] James,[33–38] and Muller.[9] However, unlike the helminths, LN storage of the lower metazoans has not received much attention. Presumably, cryopreservation of the germplasm of these animals can be stored as cell isolates in those few species of sponges, corals, and cnidarians[39,40] in which cell cultures have been developed. Yet, the prospects bode well for anyone interested in preserving the lower metazoans in LN because many have extraordinary regenerative abilities and may also have multiple reproductive forms, of which some may be freeze tolerant or drought resistant.[41] Furthermore, development of cryopreservation technology for the lower metazoans would seem to be one of general interest, as a significant number of these animals have been found to generate products that have a potential therapeutic value for humans.[42]

10.3.1 PLATYHELMINTHES

For the trematodes, the sporocyst and, more commonly, the schistosomula stages of various *Schistosoma ssp.* are the stages used for cryopreservation purposes.[38,43] The schistosomula stage is the migratory stage of development within the mammalian host, and the sporocyst is the intramolluscan stage of this parasite. Cohen and Eveland[43] compared glycerol to dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) as a cryoprotectant agent (CPA) for the cryopreservation of *Schistosoma mansoni* sporocysts within fragments of snail tissues and found that only DMSO allowed recovery and infectivity by the parasites after LN storage. These results indicate that a penetrating cryoprotectant may be the only effective way to preserve sporocysts contained within tissues of mollusks.

Techniques for cryopreservation of the schistosomules include a single or two-step incubation in 1,2-ethanediol (ethylene glycol) with a final concentration of up to 35%,[44,45] which replaced the earlier protocol of James,[46] using 40% methanol. All techniques incorporate rapid cooling to LN temperature. Recovery requires fast warming[45] and is enhanced by the addition of serotonin and

fetal calf serum to the thawing medium when cryopreserving large quantities of the schistoso-mules.[47] The use of live, irradiated schistosomes has been investigated for the production of an immunizing vaccine to reduce schistosomiasis. Lewis et al.[48] reported that suboptimal thawing rates during recovery of the cryopreserved schistosomules eliminated the protective immunity of the vaccine because of the resulting damage expressed in the larvae. Also, it was discovered that irradiation of schistosomules in the cryopreserved state required higher doses of radiation to prevent adult worm development because 1,2-ethanediol also apparently acts as a radioprotectant.[49]

For the cestodes, the metacestode stage has been the stage of tapeworm development used for cryopreservation.[36,50] The metacestode stage of *Echinococcus multilocularis* is the larval stage and is almost always found in liver. Eckert and Ramp[50] gained a 100% infection rate after cryopreserving tissue blocks containing the metacestodes of *E. multilocularis* in 10% glycerol and cooling to LN temperature via a three-step protocol. Bretagne et al.[51] obtained acceptable postcryopreservation infection rates after shortening the technique by simply homogenizing the hydatid cysts in 10% glycerol and cooling the mixture to LN temperature at a rate of –1°C/min. Short-term storage at –30°C of alveolar hydatids of *E. multilocularis* of up to one-half year without cryoprotection was reported by Jiang.[52]

10.3.2 Aschelminthes

This large group of parasitic and free-living species includes what has nominally been divided into 10 different phyla. Among these different phyla, cryopreservation research has largely been conducted on species falling within only two of the groups, the nematodes and the rotifers. The early work on the cryopreservation of nematodes shows that certain species are quite permissive of storage in LN in the absence of cryoprotective manipulations.[53–55] Further, many species of nematodes and rotifers are especially tolerant to desiccation to the extent that some can become anhydrobiotic during one or more stages in their lifecycle.[56,57] Thus, it is not especially surprising that these animals are able to cope with the rigors of cryopreservation, because during dormancy, they can accommodate an extreme loss of body water, and some even produce copious amounts of trehalose to combat possible freezing damage.[58]

10.3.2.1 Nematoda

The primary inducement for the cryopreservation of nematodes has often been to have a ready supply of an infectious stage of larvae present for conducting research on some aspect of parasitism. Maintaining the life cycle of many of zooparasites in the laboratory is costly and labor intensive, and obtaining adequate animal hosts for research can often be problematic. Having the ability to place parasites in LN storage reduces the maintenance costs and allows some flexibility in the acquisition of permissive hosts.

Representative species from all the major groups of nematodes have been cryopreserved. For the trichurids, the research has been limited to study of the *Trichinella spp*. The host is infected by consuming meat that contains encysted larvae, which are then freed in the intestinal tract. After the parasites mate and produce offspring in the intestine, it is these offspring that migrate to the muscle tissues of the host and encyst there.

Pozio et al.[59] reported low survival (0.5–8.0%) and infectivity (2–33%) for *Trichinella spiralis*, *Trichinella nativa,* and *Trichinella pseudospiralis,* using a regime involving slow cooling of newborn intestinal stage larvae in 10% DMSO to LN temperature followed by thawing and incubation in a culture medium. In addition to DMSO, hydroxyethyl starch, 1,2-ethanediol, and polyvinylpyrroli-done (PVP) were also tested as CPAs for cryopreserving the muscle stage larvae of *T. spiralis* and *T. nativa,* without success. Neither stage of *T. nelsoni* survived any of the treatments. Further, the muscle stage of the *Trichinella* larvae may be impermeable to the entry of the CPAs that were tested in this study. For example, muscle-stage larvae of *T. spiralis* and *T. nativa* were successfully

cryopreserved by Jackson-Gegan and James[60] by using a pretreatment in 10% bile to increase the surface permeability. This step was followed by incubation of the larvae in a methanol/ethanediol mixture and rapid cooling to LN. Five-day postinfection recovery of cryopreserved adult worms cryopreserved in this manner was high, but the reproductive capacity was significantly reduced.

The low temperature tolerance of muscle-stage larvae, in the absence of a CPA, can vary with larval age and incidence of encapsulation. When devising cryopreservation protocols for various domestic and sylvatic *Trichinella* species of parasites, it may be helpful to ascertain the chilling tolerance of the various stages during the postinfection period. An array of seven *Trichinella spp.* were exposed to temperatures ranging from –5°C to –18°C, and only *T. nativa* remained infective after exposure to –18°C.[60] In general, this study showed that the encapsulated species were more chill tolerant than nonencapsulated species, as were the domestic versus the tropical species, and the medium-age larvae (10–20 weeks postinfection) were tolerant, as opposed to the more sensitive stages at 5 or 40 weeks postinfection.

Of all the nematode groups, hookworms, lungworms, and the intestinal parasitic species have probably received the most attention as potential subjects for cryopreservation. Except for the lungworms, the first two larval stages are free-living in the soil. The third larval stage (L3) is the infective stage of development and has been used almost exclusively for cryopreservation of these groups. However, there is one report in which the low-temperature preservability of the uterine eggs of *Angiostrongylus cantonensis* was tested.[62] In addition, techniques for using L1 larvae of three species of intestinal worms, the human hookworm, and a *Strongyloides spp.* have been developed with acceptable survivability after recovery from LN.[63–65] When using the earlier protocols, removal of the sheath surrounding the body of the L3 stage was a requirement for successful cryopreservation.[66–68] More recently, the procedure for removing the sheath from the L3 larvae has been successfully eliminated from the protocols for preserving a variety of species.[69–71] Further, valuable information on the long-term survivability of postembryonic animals after LN storage is readily available as cryobiological research on various nematode species has been ongoing since the 1970s.[53,54,66–68] For example, it was reported by van Wyk et al.[72] that in a study of gastrointestinal parasitic species cryopreserved from 13.3 to 15.8 years, the mean poststorage developmental rate in permissive hosts exceeded 33% in six of the eight species tested.

The inherent capacity of the nematodes to avoid the potentially damaging effects of severe dehydration undoubtedly relates to a lack of the need to provide a CPA, as was commonly done in the earlier studies. Typically, many of the exsheathed L3 stages of these parasitic worms can be cooled and frozen in simple saline solutions and yet retain acceptable rates of infectivity following recovery from LN.[54,55,66–68,73–77] Key to the survival of these parasites when using these particular protocols is the removal of the residual, unshed L1- and L2-stage cuticles (sheath) and the implementation of slow cooling rates. Apparently, L3 larvae with intact sheaths are resistant to water loss, and they do not survive cryopreservation under these conditions without exsheathment.[67] Exsheathment, commonly done with incubation in dilute sodium hypochlorite, allows dehydration of the L3 larvae via equilibrium freezing in the external medium. The dehydration of specimens cooled in the presence of ice is driven by the difference between the vapor pressure of ice and the supercooled water.[78]

The exsheathment step can be avoided, at least with some species, by collecting L1 larvae, which have no sheaths, or by employing an alternate cryopreservation regime with the L3 stage.[63–65,79–83] With both stages of development, a CPA such as DMSO, DMSO/dextran, 1,2-ethanediol, or methanol was used to replace the saline solutions of the earlier protocols, which included the exsheathment procedure. For preservation of L1 larvae of *Haemonchus contortus, Trichostrongylus colubriformis,* and *Ostertagia circumcinta*, Gill and Redwin[63] used a two-step cooling method and used DMSO as the CPA. The significance of this study, beyond that of the postcryopreservation high survival and infectivity rates, was that the drug-resistance/drug-sensitivity response of the *H. contortus* strains was unimpaired following cryopreservation. This was an

indication that selection against these particular traits was not occurring as a result of the cryopreservation process.

The procedures developed for cryopreserving the array of sheathed L3 species vary significantly in the employment of cooling rates and CPA concentrations. However, the methods developed by Titoy that were sufficient to gain the postcryopreservation survival and infectivity of three hookworm and two intestinal species are generally similar.[69,70,80,82] These various methods use rapid cooling by plunging the parasites into LN after one or two short incubation periods (30 seconds to 20 minutes) in multimolar concentrations of 1,2-ethanediol. Other methods, such as that of Duarte et al.,[71] which was developed for cryopreserving the sheathed stage of the human hookworm, *Ancylcostoma ceylanicum*, use a single overnight incubation in 10% DMSO and dextran before quenching in LN. Also, exsheathment was apparently not used when devising two methods for cryopreserving the rat lungworm, *Angiostrongylus cantonensis*. Both methods employed relatively low levels of DMSO (4.8% and 10%) as the CPA, short incubation times, and slow cooling rates.[79,83] The moderately successful use of these dissimilar techniques for cryopreserving the various species at the L3 stage indicates that considerable leeway exists when devising protocols. It also indicates that optimization of the existing technology for individual species may result in significant increases in survival and infectivity following recovery from LN storage.

Apparently, only a single species of an ascarid, the intestinal roundworm of dogs, *Toxocara canis*, has been cryopreserved in LN. Ramp et al.[84] used the second-stage larvae for their studies. The researchers incubated the larvae in 5% DMSO or 10% glycerol and submitted the larvae to either of two slow-cooling schedules. Following recovery from LN and a 35-week *in vitro* culture period, the cryopreserved larvae proved to be infective. Further testing of the cryopreserved larvae showed that certain excretory and secretory antigens of this species were unaltered by the cryopreservation process.

Another group of nematodes that has received considerable interest in the cryopreservation arena is the filarial worms. These worms are parasites of man and other vertebrates, and most have a blood-sucking arthropod as the intermediate host and vector. The L3 juvenile stage is the infective stage, conveyed to the primary host by the vector. Depending on the species, the bloodborne stage within the vertebrate host that ultimately infects the vector (micofilariae) may or may not have a sheath. The groundwork for cryopreservation of microfiliariae was done by Ham and his coworkers[85,87,88] and by Schiller et al.[86] on several *Onchocera spp*. After testing glycerol, DMSO, methanol, and 1,2-ethanediol at low concentrations and also stepwise cooling in the earlier studies, Ham et al.[88] developed a two-phase incubation protocol in 10% 1,2-ethanediol for 15 minutes at 37°C, followed by 40% for 5 minutes at 0°C before quenching in LN. Recovery was accomplished by rapid thawing in a culture medium at 37°C. Survival and development within the mosquito host was greater than 72% of the unfrozen controls. This latter technique was also successful for cryopreserving *S. mansoni* schistosomula[44] and is remarkably similar to cryogenic techniques subsequently developed for the vitrification and storage of insect embryos,[23–28] mammalian embryos,[30] and various parasitic organisms.[37] Ham et al.[88] suggested that vitrification may have occurred during the rapid cooling because the 20-μL droplets of microfilariae/CPA processed by this protocol appeared clear and not opaque when viewed within the LN.

The technique of Ham et al.[88] was adapted to cryopreserve microfilariae of *Wuchereria bancrofti*[89] and *Brugia pahangi*,[90] both of which are sheathed species, as opposed to the *Onchocerca spp*. Alternative techniques for sheathed and unsheathed microfilariae include those of Minjas and Townson,[91] Lowrie,[92] Lok et al.,[93] Cesbron et al.,[94] Wang and Zheng,[95] and Bartholomay et al.[96] All studies used slow cooling down to nucleation, and except for Minjas and Townson, all used low levels (<10%) of DMSO or DMSO/PVP as the CPA. Minjas and Townson[91] used 16% hydroxyethyl starch as the CPA and were able to feed the thawed microfiliariae directly to mosquitoes and obtain infectivity with four species of microfilariae without toxicity caused by the residual cryoprotectant.

The L3 vertebrate infective stage of the filarial worms has also been cryopreserved by using various techniques. Ham and James[97] used 20% methanol as the CPA and cooled *Brugia pahangi*

L3 larvae slowly to –21°C before quenching in LN. Trpis et al.[98] tested low concentrations of four CPAs in a study on the cryopreservation of the infective stage of *O. volvulus*. The researchers found that incubation in DMSO containing a low amount of sucrose yielded the best survival after slow cooling to –40°C before plunging into LN. Rapid thawing gave the best recovery in this study. Lok et al.[93] also used their method for LN storage of microfilariae for preserving the L3 larvae of *Dirofilaria immitis,* but molting of the cryopreserved L3 larvae to the L4 stage was only 10% or less.

A novel method for cryopreserving the infective larvae of *Dipetalonema viteae* was developed by McCall et al.[99] Ticks infected with *D. viteae* were incubated in 5% DMSO, cooled to LN temperature for storage for over 1 year, thawed rapidly, and found to be suitable for infecting small mammals (jirds). Larvae similarly preserved free of the tick host were not infective, which led the authors to suggest that the nonsurviving tick, plus the DMSO, protected the larvae during the freezing and thawing process. Another tissue method employed collection of blood from jirds infected with *Babesia divergens*. DMSO was diluted with the infected blood to a concentration of 3 M, and then the mixture was cooled at a rate of –10°C/min to LN temperature. This protocol resulted in an infectivity rate via intraperitoneal injection of the filariae into jird hosts of nearly 50% after recovery from LN.[100] Similarly, Tagboto and Townson[101] used the method that Ham et al.[88] developed for other *Onchocera spp*. and substituted methanol for 1,2-ethanediol for cryopreserving skin-snips containing *O. lienalis* microfilariae. The infectivity rate of the methanol-cryopreserved microfiliarae was found to be to be about 50% of the 1,2-ethanediol technique, but the methanol method had the advantage of being easier to use under field conditions.

The early work of Sayre and Hwang[53] showed that a plant-parasitic nematode, *Ditylenchus dipsaci*, regardless of whether it was in an active or quiescent stage, survived LN storage by simply being incubated in 7.5% in DMSO and slowly cooling to –25°C before being plunged into LN. Riga and Webster[102] obtained greater survival and reproduction of juvenile pinewood nematodes, *Bursaphelenchus spp*., cryopreserved in glycerol as the CPA as opposed to DMSO. The low level of DMSO (1% aqueous) as compared with 15% glycerol in culture medium may have contributed to the low recovery for DMSO-treated larvae. Recent studies have increased the recovery and infectivity rates of other plant parasites by adapting the 1,2-ethanediol technique developed by Ham et al.[88] for the *Onchocerca spp*. Carneiro et al.[103] lengthened the two-step incubation periods in the increasing amounts of 1,2-ethanediol to 2 hours (10%) plus 45 minutes (45%) before submitting L2 stage juveniles of *Meloidogyne javanica* to a two-stage cooling regime and storage in LN. Like the previous techniques for plant parasite cryopreservation, rapid thawing gave the best survival and reproduction in the latter study.

The potential of the entomopathogenic nematodes for use in biological control programs directed toward insect pests has stimulated some interest in the use of cryopreservation as a storage mechanism for *Steinernema feltiae* and *S. carpocapsae*. The preliminary studies of Smith et al.[103] on *S. feltiae* determined the toxicity levels of several CPAs, incubation temperature and equilibration time in CPA, and survival after rapid or slow cooling. The researchers found that a short incubation (45 seconds) in 60% DMSO at 0°C, followed by rapid cooling into LN, resulted in about 12% survival of the L1 stage on rapid thawing. However, after a rapid thaw, 30–34% of the L3 infective juveniles survived if they were previously incubated in 60% methanol or 45% glycerol for 20 minutes at 0°C and then cooled rapidly to LN temperature. In a later study by Lee et al.,[104] infective juveniles of a related species, *S. carpocapsae*, were cryopreserved by being preincubated in 22% glycerol for 12 hours before exposure to 70% methanol at 0°C for 10 minutes and then rapidly cooled. With this treatment, about 70% of the larvae survived, and they were reported to have unimpaired pathogenicity.

Numerous mutant strains and lines of the free-living nematode, *Caenorhabditis elegans*, have been frequently cryopreserved on a long-term basis. This often-studied animal is an important organism to hundreds of laboratories around the world that investigate the genetics of development and neurobiology. Sulston and Hodgkin[106] developed a simple method that involves starving L1 and L2 stage larvae about 1 day and then placing them in 30% glycerol in buffer followed by slow

cooling at about –1ºC/min. The storage temperature commonly used is either –80°C or –196°C, and the recovery is by slow warming. Ohba et al.[107] examined the survival of dauer larvae of *C. elegans* and compared DMSO with glycerol as CPAs and slow versus rapid cooling. The researchers found the survival to be greatest when glycerol and rapid cooling were employed with this particular stage of development, where stress resistance and longevity are increased and metabolism and developmental rates are decreased.

10.3.2.2   Rotifera

Rotifers, like nematodes, are a diverse group that exhibits a variety of metabolic responses (e.g., dormancy) to environmental stress. Rotifers are often used as a food source in marine aquaculture, and cryopreservation provides a means to store various strains used in mass production and research. There are two classes of rotifers, monogononts and bdelloids. Monogonont females are capable of producing resting-stage eggs (diapause) during a mictic phase, whereas the bdelloids are capable of entering anhydrobiosis under stressful environmental conditions.[108] The euryhaline monogonont, *Brachionus plicatilis*, is commonly used in the culture of marine fishes, and it is the species on which the research on the development of a cryopreservation protocol for rotifers has been conducted. Both mictic (haploid males if unfertilized) and amictic eggs have been tested for survival after various cryogenic procedures that employed DMSO, glycerol, or 1,2-ethanediol as the CPA and after slow cooling to –20°C for an equilibration period before plunging into LN.[109–112] Using a mixed culture of adults, with or without parthogenetic eggs, Okamoto et al.[109] tested cooling rates of from –0.2°C to –10°C/min after incubation in 10% DMSO. Cooling rates of –0.3°C/min or less resulted in about 40% of the rotifers hatching from the eggs, but no adults survived any of the testing. Likewise, Hadani et al.[111] obtained from 15–28% success in hatching from a mixed culture of cryopreserved adults bearing amictic eggs. It is intriguing that starving the adult rotifers before cryopreservation and a diet of the alga *Nannochloropsis* improved the post-thaw survival of the hatchlings. Better survival (53–63%) was obtained by Toledo and Kurokura[112] by carefully choosing an optimum stage of embryonic development for cryopreservation, increasing the equilibration time, and feeding the hatchlings *Chlorella* on recovery. Late-stage embryos (stage III) were the most tolerant to the cryogenic manipulations. Young embryos (stage I) did not survive, paralleling what is described in following sections with respect to the early-stage arthropod, mollusk, crustacean, and echinoderm embryos.

A noteworthy report by Balompapueng et al.[113] indicated that resting eggs of *B. plicatilis* survive lyophilization and storage by canning at partial pressures of up to 101 kPa. Survival after storage for 6 months was similar to untreated controls when the eggs were desiccated for 12 hours, frozen before lyophilizing at –40°C, canned at a partial pressure of 61 or 75 kPa, and then stored at 5°C. The authors suggested that this procedure could be improved by using eggs at the beginning of the resting stage and by pretreating with an antimicrobial agent. The eggs used in this test already had been stored for 6 years in the dark at 4°C.

10.3.3   Annelida

Interest in annelid cryopreservation has thus far been limited to worms having a commercial value to the fishing industry as bait. The polychaete, *Nereis virens*, has been commercially mass reared and supplied to the European bait-worm market since 1984.[114] Olive and Wang[115] developed a cryopreservation method to provide a means to rear this worm on a year-round basis. The three-segment juvenile stage is used in a protocol that includes incubation in 1.4 *M* DMSO and a chilling at a –2.5°C/min cooling rate to –25ºC before plunging into LN. Recovery from storage was by a rapid thaw in seawater. A preliminary report by Setti et al.[116] indicated that the cryopreservation of the embryonic stage was also possible for the polychaete *Ophryotrocha labronica*.

A subsequent study by Wang and Olive[117] that compared the tissue ultrastructure of cryopreserved and untreated *N. virens* larvae demonstrated that cilia and pigment were missing from the prostomia of larvae recovered from LN. However, this result was deemed not to be a threat to survival. More serious was the treatment of the larvae before or after the optimum stage of development. Significant structural damage to the tissues of the gut was observed. Interestingly, this consequence has also been observed in our studies with the cryopreservation of several dipteran species (Rajamohan and Leopold, unpublished data), and similar damage has been reported to occur in the cryopreserved parasitic intestinal nematodes *O. circumcincta, N. spathiger,* and *C. ovina.*[71]

10.3.4 MOLLUSCA

The effort toward cryopreservation of mollusk embryos and larvae has been a moderately successful endeavor occurring mostly within the last 10–15 years. Of the bivalves, representative oyster, clam, and mussel species have all had long-term preservation protocols developed to facilitate management of brood stock production and for use as a ready source of bioindicators for testing possible pollution of oceans and estuaries.

The interacting variables, such as CPA toxicity, developmental-stage tolerance to cryogenic procedures, equilibration time, cooling rate, and cooling endpoints, which are essential to the successful formation of any cryopreservation protocol, have been extensively studied for the shellfish. For example, preliminary CPA toxicity testing by Renard and Cochrand[118] on three species of shellfish embryos, *Crassotera gigas*, *Ruditapes phillippinarum*, and *Pecten maximus,* indicated that methanol proved to be superior to 1,2-ethanediol, 1,2-propanediol (propylene glycol), DMSO, and glycerol/sucrose when examining biochemical and osmotic parameters. Renard[119] subsequently combined methanol with sucrose and examined the survival of early embryos of the Pacific oyster, *C. gigas*, at various subzero temperatures. Sucrose was found to slightly moderate the damaging effects of 0.5 M methanol, but few survived 15 minutes at –20ºC at the 1.0 M level. Also, methanol incubation at 0ºC for 25 minutes was found to disrupt the ultrastructure of the plasma membrane and cytoplasmic organelles of the Pacific oyster embryos. Similarly, Chao et al.[120] determined that early- and late-stage oyster embryos tolerated 1–2 M of acetamide, DMSO, 1,2-ethanediol, or 1,2-propanediol, and that the late stages were less vulnerable than the early stages to the toxic effects of these CPAs at the 4 or 5 M level. DMSO was generally less toxic than the other CPAs on a molar basis. Combinations of DMSO and acetamide (5 M total) were less toxic, and the addition of trehalose or glucose to the higher CPA concentrations also reduced the toxicity for all stages of development.

Liu and Robinson[121] examined survival rates of Pacific oyster embryos after 30 and 60 minutes of exposure to DMSO, 1,2-ethanediol, methanol, glycerol/sucrose, or PVP and to various mixtures of these CPAs. No significant toxicity blocking could be discerned by the addition of one CPA to another (e.g., DMSO + PVP or DMSO + sucrose). Glycerol proved to be highly toxic to both the two- and four-cell embryo and also to the trochophore stage. Further, temperature was found to be the limiting factor in testing the time for equilibration in sucrose. Tompkins and Couturier[122] assessed 4°C and 15ºC as equilibration temperatures for three CPAs and demonstrated that *Mytilus edulis* trochophore survival was higher at 4°C than at 15ºC for sucrose but that these temperatures had little effect on ameliorating the toxicity of either DMSO or 1,2-ethanediol.

Concurrent with the above-cited studies, others examined cooling rates and also gained preliminary results on survival after LN storage. Toledo et al.[123] cooled early cleavage embryos and trochophores of the blue mussel, *M. edulis,* at slow rates to –20°C, –30°C, or –40°C in 1.5 M DMSO with a hold for 5 minutes before plunging into LN. Survival of the trochophore stage, when cooled at 0.5°C/min to –30°C before LN quenching, was nearly 50%, but some of the larvae showed delayed or abnormal development. Xue[124] demonstrated that the succeeding stage of development (veliger larva) of the scallop, *Chlamys farreri*, was the most tolerant to cryopreservation when

using 10% glycerol + 4% sucrose. Cooling was at –1°C/min to –20°C before plunging into LN, and as in the previous study, the thawing was rapidly done. Survival rates reached 65% when using the veliger larvae, and no trochophores survived when using this protocol. Gwo[125] obtained about 38% survival by using 10% 1,2-propanediol as the CPA and cooling at a rate of –2.5°C/min down to –30°C before placing trochophores of the Pacific oyster into LN. This study, like those before, showed that the oldest stage of development tested was the most tolerant to the cryogenic treatment and yielded the greatest survival after thawing.

Using a more complex cooling and equilibration procedure, Chao et al.[126] cryopreserved mixed ages of late embryos and early larvae of the oyster *C. gigas* and the hard clam *Meretrix lusoria*. High survival (*C. gigas* = 62–75%; *M. lusoria* = 73–84%) was obtained by equilibrating three times in 2 M DMSO and 0.06 M trehalose at 27°C, 12°C, and 35°C and by employing slow cooling between the temperatures of 0°C and –12°C and between –12°C and –35°C before quenching in LN. Recovery was by rapid thawing at 28°C before returning to seawater. More than 1000 embryos/larvae were able to be processed within plastic straws with the methods developed in this study. A vitrification schedule, modified from that used for cryopreservation of *Drosophila*,[24] was also tested, but survival averaged less than 15%.

Recently, Choi and Chang[127] tested the method of Chao et al.[126] on the pearl oyster, *Pinctada fucata martensii,* and examined replacement of trehalose with fructose, glucose, or sucrose. With this species, the D-shaped larval stage was significantly more tolerant of the freezing procedure than the trochophore stage. Up to 91% of the D-shaped larvae survived cryopreservation when either sucrose or glucose was added to 2 M DMSO, as opposed to about 43% in the trochophore stage.

Paniagua-Chavez and Tiersch[128] and Paniagua-Chavez et al.[129] used a protocol very similar to that of Gwo[125] to cryopreserve the trochophores of the Eastern oyster, *Crassostrea virginica,* in large quantities. Survival approached 100% when about 150 trochophores were cryopreserved in 5-mL macrotubes, but survival fell to less than 10% when 50,000 larvae were processed per tube. The authors indicated that the maximum number of survivors that could be obtained from a 5-mL macrotube was 4000 from samples when starting with no greater than 50,000 trochophores. It was suggested that this survival could possibly be improved with better culture conditions following recovery from LN storage. Further, when comparing yields of oysters produced, the number of adults developing from the survivors in the cryopreserved group was 85% of a comparable number of individuals in an untreated group.[129]

10.3.5 ARTHROPODA

Although the arthropod group exhibits the most diversity and number of species in the animal kingdom, most of the interest in long-term LN storage generated so far has been with penaeid prawns and dipteran insects. On a worldwide basis, literally billions of animals in these two groups are produced under mass-rearing conditions each week for purposes of consumption as food (prawns) or for use in areawide autocidal pest-control programs (insects). For this reason, the development of cryopreservation methods for use in the maintenance of brood stock and storage of germplasm for research purposes becomes an important and necessary endeavor.

10.3.5.1 Insecta

There are three reports on the successful freezing and recovery of live whole insects at liquid gas temperatures in the absence of cryoprotectants. As mentioned earlier, Hinton[13] used liquid helium to freeze cryptobiotic midge larvae. Also, Tanno[130] and Moon et al.[131] used lengthy stepwise cooling regimes to freeze prepupae of the sawfly, *Trichiocampus populi,* and larvae of the drosophilid, *Chymomyza costata*, respectively, before quenching in LN. These studies of freeze tolerance to liquid gas temperatures appear to be the exception rather than the rule for insects. Lee[132] surveyed

the literature on overwintering insects, and of the more than 35 reports that were listed, in addition to that of Hinton,[13] Lee found that only two species were observed to survive temperatures approaching 80°C, and three in the range from –50°C to –55°C. Further, with one exception, none of the other insects, where cryopreservation protocols have recently been developed, exhibit long-term dormancy or freezing tolerance capabilities.

To date, the key to the development of successful cryopreservation protocols for insects has been the ability to permeabilize the embryonic stage and also to discover a stage of embryonic development amenable to the vitrification process. Permeabilization of the fly and midge species, where cryopreservation has succeeded, entails removal of two barriers associated with the egg membranes that surround the dipteran embryo.[5] Before cryopreservation, an egg chorion (outer shell) is stripped off by incubation in dilute sodium hypochlorite, and an inner lipid layer on the vitelline membrane is removed by an alkane extraction. Although chorion removal is easily done, the method for elimination of the impermeable lipid layer needs to be tailored to a particular species.[25–28,133,134] The differences observed in the ease of extractability and the relative toxicities to the embryo are probably a result of a species variation in the composition of the lipid layer.[135] The egg membranes of late-stage *A. gambiae* embryos have thus far been resistant to development of an effective permeablization procedure that will allow embryo loading with a CPA to a level that allows vitrification.[19–21] It was shown by Mazur et al.[22] and Liu et al.[136] that blocking the melanization process, thought to cause onset of the membrane impermeability of the older mosquito embryos, also has little effect on facilitating permeation of cryoprotective solutes. As an alternative to cryopreserving mosquito embryos, Liu and Mazur[137] and Liu et al.[138] have since made efforts to determine the susceptibility of the first instar larval stages to water loss and the influx of 1.5 mol/L methanol or 1,2-ethanediol. The findings of these researchers are encouraging because the scientists discovered that permeation does indeed occur and that methanol and 1,2-ethanediol can reach as high as 75% and 81% of equilibrium, respectively, before becoming toxic.

The early work of Heacox et al.[139] showed that permeablized late-stage embryos of the house fly, *Musca domestica*, equilibrated stepwise in DMSO at 0°C to a final concentration of 2 M, survived only a few minutes at –20°C or –30°C. These results were obtained regardless of whether the embryos were cooled slowly (–1°C/min) or at rate of –80°C/min[1]. Survival was further reduced when treating the younger stages of embryogenesis, and no embryos younger than 3 hours postoviposition survived exposure to subzero temperatures. The kinetics of the chilling sensitivity of related embryos throughout their development was subsequently verified by Meyers et al.[140] and Mazur et al.[141] with *D. melanogaster* and by Miles and Bale[142] with the gall midge, *Aphidoletes aphidimyza*.

Additional work by Myers et al.[143] demonstrated that avoidance of intracellular ice formation via equilibrium freezing with *Drosophila* embryos could only be accomplished by cooling rates less than 1°C/min, a rate that would be lethal because of the inherent chilling sensitivity at this stage of development. Subsequently, Steponkus et al.[144] were the first to gain survival of *D. melanogaster* embryos by using an approach to avoid chilling injury, in which 12–14-hour-old embryos were first loaded with 2.1 M 1,2-ethandiol at room temperature and then exposed to 8.5-M 1,2-ethandiol at 0°C to raise the intraembryonic concentration of the CPA to a high level by osmotic removal of additional water. With these preparatory steps, the embryos were then vitrified by rapid cooling in nitrogen slush. Recovery required equally rapid warming, and the hatching of the embryos recovered from LN reached 19%, with about 3% emerging as adults. Mazur et al.[144] had better slightly better success by devising a different permeabilization technique and vitrification mixture. After these initial successes, Mazur et al.[22] and Steponkus and Caldwell[23] each refined their vitrification techniques for *Drosophila* embryos by determining the optimum stage for cryopreservation, increasing the efficiency of the permeabilization process, improving the vitrification fluid, and changing the posttreatment culture techniques for the recovering embryos and larvae. With these changes, hatching increased to the range of 60–75%, and about 40% of these larvae developed into adults.

Wang et al.,[25] when attempting to apply the *Drosophila* cryopreservation procedure[22,23] to preserve housefly embryos, found that several significant modifications were required to gain survival. These modifications included eliminating the carryover of alcohol into the alkane lipid-extraction procedure, substituting Schneider's cell culture media for the BD20 solution as a diluent, formulating a vitrification solution that contained 1,2-ethandiol, polyethylene glycol, and trehalose, cooling the embryos by exposure to LN vapor for 1 minute before quenching, and adding fetal bovine serum to the recovery medium. With only slight modifications, this technique was also used by Leopold et al.[26] for cryopreservation of the New World screwworm, *Cochliomyia hominivorax,* and also by Rajamohan et al.[28] for the Mediterranean fruit fly, *Ceratitis capitata*.

Although cooling and warming rapidly at exceedingly high rates appear to be at the core of the *Drosophila* procedures, annealing in LN vapor before cooling to LN temperature, coupled with another pass through the vapor on warming, seems to be the most important aspect of the procedures for the other flies. Wang et al.[25] suggested that the annealing procedure rendered the larger housefly eggs less vulnerable to fractures during the vitrification process and therefore resulted in greater survival. Using cryomicroscopy techniques, Rajamohan et al.[146] compared several vitrification solutions used in cryopreserving embryos of the Mexican fruit fly, *A. ludens*. They concluded that less fracturing occurred in solutions used to vitrify Mexican fruit fly embryos, which are about 1.5 times larger than those of the housefly, if they were annealed before quenching in LN. Fracturing was also reduced if the vitrifying solutions contained 5% polyethylene glycol in addition to the 40% ethylene glycol. Hatching reached 62% when the embryos were annealed at temperatures between –120°C and –130°C but fell to 11% or less when embryos were plunged directly into LN.

Nunamaker and Lockwood[27] slightly modified the *Drosophila* technique of Steponkus and Caldwell[23] to cryopreserve late-stage embryos (12–14 hours postoviposition) of the midge, *Culicoides sonorensis*. Cooling after CPA loading and dehydration of the embryos was performed by quenching in liquid propane. They obtained about a 19% yield of adults from a hatch rate of nearly 43%. Most of the mortality expressed by applying this technique was caused by the dehydration step in the presence of the multimolar concentration of CPA and also during the development of the larvae to the pupal stage. The authors suggested that optimizing the embryonic age used for cryopreservation and reducing the toxicity of dehydration process would likely increase survival.

There are two reports on efforts to cryopreserve moth embryos[147,148] using the vitrification technique developed for *Drosophila*.[23] The yield of beet armyworm, *Spodoptera exigua*, adults cryopreserved as embryos was low (<2.0%), but it is encouraging that this technique may be applicable, with some modifications, to other insects than dipteran flies. Obtaining a low yield of adults is not uncommon when attempting to adapt a method developed for another species. As mentioned earlier, the diverse nature of the class Insecta with respect to rates of embryonic development, complexity of egg membranes, tolerance to chilling, and the reaction to potentially toxic CPAs requires that each protocol be tailored to fit a particular insect species.

10.3.5.2 Crustacea

Cryopreservation studies on crustaceans are almost exclusively limited to a few genera within the entomostracan and malacostracan groups. Entomostracans of the *Artemia spp.* are an important food source for the aquaculture industry worldwide.[149] *Artemia* have a cryptobiotic embryonic cyst stage[150] that allows the embryos to be stored on a long-term basis under certain conditions. Nevertheless, it has been beneficial to cryopreserve the various species and brood stock strains that are currently being cultured to augment the dwindling supply that is harvested annually from sources such as the Great Salt Lake in Utah.

The early studies of Baust and Lawrence[151,152] examined the chilling tolerance of *A. salina*. Larvae, 0–24 hours, were placed in the presence or absence of glycerol, DMSO, glucose, or sucrose either as single or combined two-component solutions and were slowly cooled to, or directly placed

at, 1ºC. The older larvae were more tolerant to prolonged chilling, and the single and multiple-component systems enhanced survival for all ages of larvae, especially when in higher concentrations. Glycerol as the CPA yielded the best survival, and slow cooling showed an advantage over direct transfer or fast cooling rates. Little research on cryopreservation of brine shrimp larvae was conducted until 1994, when Liu and Lu[153] conducted studies similar to those of Baust and Lawrence on *Artemia spp* nauplii and also on the zoea of *Eriocheir japonicus hepuensis*. The researchers gained high survival of the shrimp nauplii frozen to –30ºC for a few minutes in 20% glycerol; for the crab zoea, viability was best when frozen at –24ºC in 20% methanol.

Liu and Lu[154] shifted their emphasis on *Artemia* preservation to the embryonic stage and gained success by using decapsulated embryos. The blastula stage survived LN exposure when glycerol + DMSO, glucose + sucrose, or saturated NaCl was applied as the CPA. Slow cooling rates were used to the point where nucleation occurred, then the embryos were placed into LN. The cryoprotective activity by the CPAs was suggested to be related to the strong dehydration effect. Alfaro[155] likewise used decapsulated embryos of *Artemia* and applied 20% DMSO as the CPA. Freezing was by holding over a metal surface cooled to LN temperature. Survival after LN storage was increased from 17% to 39% by prior dehydration in a hypersaline solution, confirming the supposition of Liu and Lu[154] on the beneficial effects of dehydration. Zhang et al.[156] followed these successes by developing another cryopreservation procedure after testing five vitrification solutions on *Artemia* embryos and nauplii. Survival of the nauplii was low (3–5%), but embryo survival after cryopreservation in LN was reported to reach 90%. It is unclear whether vitrification of the intact embryos actually occurred, but indirect evidence in a subsequent study by Zhang et al.[157] leads one to conclude that it probably does not. The authors' interpretation of scanning electron micrographs of embryos sampled during this procedure was that when the embryophoric membrane was damaged, the cryoprotectant penetrated the embryos and resulted in death.

Cryopreservation techniques for the penaeid prawns have not yet been developed for general use, but considerable effort has been expended toward this goal.[158,159] Baust and Lawrence[160] also initiated the cryopreservation research on penaeids by examining the tolerance of *Penaeus setiferus* larvae to freezing at –30ºC by using various cooling rates and procedures. Although the nauplii and protozoea stages tolerated freezing, cold conditioning these stages did not result in enhanced long-term survival. Since this study, there have been numerous reports on attempts to cryopreserve no fewer than 10 species of penaeid nauplii or zoea, but most studies have indicated little success on the recovery of viable animals after LN exposure. Some of the more noteworthy studies include those of Newton and Subramonium,[161] Gwo and Lin,[162] Arun (a.k.a. A. Rajamohan) and Subramoniam,[161] and Subramaniam and Browdy.[164]

Newton and Subramonium[161] examined the toxicity of seven low–molecular weight CPAs on *P. indicus* naupulii and compared it to that of similarly treated morula stage embryos. It was concluded that for this species, the nauplii were more tolerant to the CPAs than were the embryos and were also suitable subjects for a slow cooling or perhaps a vitrification protocol. In an extensive study of cooling and cryoprotectant toxicity, Gwo and Lin[162] tested 42 different cooling regimes on *P. japonicus* larvae, using five CPAs that have been labeled either as permeating or nonpermeating in other cryogenic systems. DMSO was deemed to be the most toxic to all stages, and methanol the least. Chilling tolerance was greatest in the older juveniles, and although a few juveniles survived freezing at –196ºC, none developed to the next stage. Choice of an optimum cooling rate was instrumental to gaining survival of larvae of *P. monodon* in an 1,2-ethanediol/DMSO mixture cooled to –70ºC.[163] *Litopenaeus vannamei* nauplii and zoea only tolerated cooling to –20ºC in a more complex four-component mixture of permeating and nonpermenating CPAs.[164]

Ma and Wei[165] reported that they were able to obtain a respectable 36% survival of *P. orientalis* stage 4 and 5 nauplius larvae after slow cooling at –1ºC/min in relatively low concentrations of DMSO in seawater to LN temperature. However, the survivors were damaged and had difficulty swimming. Further confirmation of this 1996 study has not been forthcoming.

On attempting to compare the results of the above-mentioned studies, it is evident that there is wide variation in the response of the penaeid juveniles to various cryoprotectant mixtures, cooling rates, equilibration times, and so on. Some of the variation is, no doubt, species related, and the rest probably involves the experimental designs and yet-unknown factors.

Like the *Artemia spp*, there have been numerous attempts to try to develop a cryopreservation protocol for the embryonic stages of penaeids. The cryogenic treatment of shrimp embryos is problematic because the embryo is protected by a selectively permeable hatching envelope, and the eggs during early embryogenesis are equipped with abundant amounts of yolk.[166] Robertson and Lawrence[167] determined that penaeid shrimp morulae had a low tolerance to relatively low concentrations (0.17–7%) of cryoprotectants, and the researchers suggested that the toxicity expressed is probably of osmotic origin. A number of succeeding studies have reconfirmed these observations, and in general, the older embryonic stages are also more chilling tolerant than the young embryos.[160,161,163,165,166] It is interesting that, except for one study, none of the reports that have studied CPA toxicity have been concerned with the permeability of the hatching envelope that surrounds the embryo. Simon et al.[168] increased CPA permeation by treating *P. indicus* gastrula stage and 5-hour-old embryos with either dilute sodium hypochlorite or protease. The permeability of the hatching membranes of untreated embryos increases with age and in all ages after applying the permeabilization techniques. Survival of the embryos with permeabilized membranes survived exposure to higher concentrations of CPAs than were reported in previous studies, indicating that perhaps the toxicity displayed was of an osmotic nature rather than biochemical. In summary, it should also be noted that the penaeid larval stages are more tolerant to most CPAs, and they are definitely more resistant to short-term chilling damage, which ostensibly makes them better candidates than the embryos for developing cryopreservation protocols.

There are several reports on the successful cryopreservation of barnacles. Gakhova et al.[169] used a two-step cooling procedure and 1.5-M DMSO as the CPA to cryopreserve stage II nauplii of *Balanus improvisus*. Cooling was at a rate of about –6°C/min, down to between –38°C and –42°C, with a 10-minute hold before quenching in LN. Recovery was by a fast thaw in 20°–25°C seawater. About 30% of the barnacles were capable of developing on to the cypris stage. Likewise, Anil et al.[170] tested the toxicity of DMSO, 1,2-ethanediol, and glycerol as CPAs, varying the equilibration times, and also tested two-step cooling regimes on *B. amphitrite* nauplii. On recovery, about 36% of the nauplii developed to the next stage after equilibration in 3 M ethanediol and cooling to –40°C before quenching in LN. Oo[171] used a technique similar to that of Gakhova et al.[169] for cryopreserving *B. amphitrite* nauplii, except that the cooling regime consisted of nucleation at –12°C, cooling to –30°C at a rate of –0.5°C/min before LN quenching. Survival reached 78%, and about 20% of the recovered nauplii developed to the next stage with this procedure.

10.3.6 ECHINODERMATA

To date, little work on echinoderm cryopreservation has been conducted. However, the studies by Asahina and Takahashi[172,173] on sea urchin embryo and sperm preservation are probably among the most often cited reports in cryopreservation-related literature, especially in review articles, because they represent early successes in the cryopreservation of nonmammalian systems. Recently fertilized eggs and late embryos of *Strongyloncentrotus intermedius* and *Hemicentrotus pulcherrimus* were in held in 1.5 M 1,2-ethandiol or DMSO at –40°C and –76°C, respectively, for 15 minutes before quenching in LN. As with other systems, survival was greatest for the older embryos after recovery (90%), as opposed to the early embryos (10%). No survival was seen with unfertilized eggs. Rapid cooling and warming was more damaging to young embryos than to the older stages. A later study by Gakhova et al.,[174] also using sea urchin embryos, employed an equilibration at 0°C. Freezing was then initiated by seeding at –7°C and was followed by slow cooling to about –40°C before transferring to LN. The authors also reported about 90% survival for blastula through pluteus-stage embryos on recovery. Others using similar techniques have had varied success cryopreserving the

pluteus stage in 1-2 M DMSO. They include Adams et al.[175] with *Evechinus chloroticus*, Barros et al.[176] with *Lorechinus allus* and Barros et al.[177] with *Tetrapigus niger.*

10.3.7 CHORDATA

The most significant effort toward seeking a long-term storage protocol for nonmammalian vertebrates has been directed toward fish. Fish embryos present formidable barriers to cryobiologists. This is, in part, because of the relatively large size of the embryos, their high chilling sensitivity, and an abundance of yolk that is carried past the hatching stage. In addition, CPA permeation is thwarted by the multicompartmental system of the embryo and the complex membrane structure. These barriers have spawned a number of novel approaches by researchers in their efforts to circumvent the various incompatibilities that fish embryos have with conventional cryopreservation procedures. Although these various approaches have yet to solve the problems fish embryos present, these research efforts provide an excellent format for resolving related difficulties when attempting to cryopreserve other complex animal systems.

10.3.7.1 Pisces

The initial determination of the chorion as a possible barrier to CPA permeation was made by Harvey et al.[179] and Harvey and Ashwood-Smith[178] on rainbow trout and zebrafish embryos, respectively. Permeation of the trout embryos by radio-labeled methanol, DMSO, or glycerol was found to be inversely proportional to the MW. Dechorionation of the zebrafish (*Brachydanio rerio*) embryos resulted in a several-fold increase in embryo permeability to glycerol and DMSO, but both of the CPAs were toxic at concentrations of greater than 1 M and at exposure times of more than 1 hour. In neither study did the intraembryonic levels of CPA approach equilibrium, with exposure times up to 2 hours.

Extensive studies on the permeability barriers within the compartments of dechorionated zebrafish embryos at epiboly and the three- and six-somite stage have been made by Hagedorn et al.,[180–182] using magnetic resonance microscopy and spectroscopy. These studies identified two major membrane-limited compartments, one containing the yolk and the other the blastoderm, that were permeated by methanol but excluded 1,2-propanediol and DMSO. Further, it was shown that the two compartments differed in the distribution of water and had relatively equal water permeabilities, but the permeability of the yolk compartment to DMSO was threefold less than that of the blastoderm. It was suggested that the yolk compartment and the overlying yolk syncytial layer would be the most susceptible to damage based on inadequate cryoprotection, and this was confirmed by microscopic examination of cryoprotectant-exposed embryos after a freeze–thaw cycle.

During epiboly (invagination), the blastoderm cells surround the multinucleate yolk syncytial layer (YSL) which, in turn, surrounds the yolk. Although the chorion is generally permeable or may be removable from fish embryos by enzymatic digestion or chemical treatment,[183] it is the YSL that lies between the blastoderm and the yolk that is reportedly responsible for blocking CPA entry and exit from the yolk.[180] It is unclear how the YSL blocks permeation of certain cryoprotectants. Rawson et al.[184] examined the ultrastructure of the YSL plasma membrane and compared it to that of the blastoderm cell mass. No obvious structural modifications were found in either of the membranes that would indicate a mechanism for some type of barrier to cryoprotectant movement. It was suggested that boundary structures surrounding the yolk granules and the yolk mass itself may be responsible for the impermeability. Recent reports indicate that membrane channel proteins have a role in the regulation of water and solute movement in the gills of catadromous fishes.[185] Similar proteins may also be present in the membranes of YSL and have a similar function (see below for discussion of aquaporins).

To overcome the impermeability barrier of the fish embryo to cryoprotectant permeation, several novel approaches have been attempted. Janik et al.[186] injected CPAs into the yolk of zebrafish

embryos after epiboly in an effort to raise the concentration of either DMSO or 1,2-propanediol to vitrifiable levels. The calculated level of 1,2-propanediol within the yolk was nearly 6 M, but examination of the post-thaw morphology of yolk syncytial layer of embryos submitted to a vitrification protocol showed no protection from damage. It was suggested that optimization of the various steps in the vitrification protocol may yield better results.

In another approach, Bart and Zohar[187] presented preliminary data on the use of electroporation and ultrasound cavitation to increase membrane permeability of zebrafish embryos. The researchers found that the older embryos (30–60% epiboly) were more tolerant of both techniques than were the 4- and 16-cell stages. In a later study, Bart and Kyaw[188] examined permeation of 40–60% methanol solutions applied via the ultrasound treatment. The older embryos were again the most tolerant to the ultrasound/methanol treatment, with about 45% surviving after applying methanol at a concentration of 45%.

Routray et al.[189] also presented a preliminary report on the use of hydrostatic pressure to increase permeation of DMSO into eggs and embryos of medaka, *Oryzias latipes*. Initial exposure to 1 M trehalose before application of the pressurized CPA treatment was found to significantly increase levels of DMSO within 8-cell embryos without affecting survival. Uptake of DMSO by unfertilized eggs was also increased with this procedure, but survival was diminished. Permeation of the older embryos displaying eye development was ineffective with this method. Effectiveness of this method varied with CPA concentration, impregnation time, type of CPA, and stage of embryonic development.

Another promising scheme to increase water and solute movement across membranes is the use of aquaporins. Aquaporins are membrane channel proteins that have osmoregulatory functions. Artificially induced expression of a water channel aquaporin (AQP3) was shown to increase survival of mouse embryos after cryopreservation.[190] Likewise, Hagedorn et al.[191] have demonstrated increased membrane permeability to water and cryoprotectant after injection of mRNA for AQP3 into zebrafish embryos. Expression of AQP3 was subsequently demonstrated to begin 30 min after injection into the yolk of 1–4 cell embryos.[192] Within 24 hr, aquaporin activity spread to the membranes of the blastoderm and YSL and then diminished after 96 hr. The results of these studies indicated that the amount of cryoprotectant that could permeate the embryo after aquaporin treatment would be in the range that would normally allow cryopreservation.

Chill sensitivity, another barrier to cryopreservation, has also been characterized as to developmental stage, temperature of exposure, and length of exposure in the embryos of several commonly cultured species. Zhang and Rawson[193] examined chilling tolerance of zebrafish embryos at 0°C to –20°C. They found the midstage embryos (27–40 hours old) to be the most tolerant and the preheartbeat stages to be the most sensitive. In addition, the prehatch stage was slightly less sensitive than the early stages. Cold tolerance of all groups decreased as the temperature was lowered to subzero levels. Methanol containing sucrose (0.1 M) ameliorated chilling injury at subzero temperatures, and the optimal concentration of methanol was temperature dependent. The highest concentration (5 M) was most effective at –15°C. Similar analyses of chilling of *Cyprinus carpio* embryos showed the heartbeat stage to be the most tolerant to chilling at 0°C and 4°C and that methanol, glycerol, and sucrose lessened the damaging effects of longer-term chilling.[194–197] In a later study, Zhang et al.[198] reported that methanol also enhanced survival of zebrafish embryos, as the cooling rate was increased from –30°C to –300°C/min and then down to –5°C. Implementation of anoxia and developmental arrest had no effect on chilling sensitivity. Further, Hagedorn et al.[199] demonstrated that chorion removal also did not affect tolerance to the chilling of zebrafish embryos.

An interesting report by Liu et al.[31] implicated the yolk of zebrafish embryos as the possible site of damage caused by chilling. Partial removal of the yolk at the prim-6 stage of development reduced cold-shock injury caused by rapid cooling. This study also examined the relationship of cooling rate and time of subzero exposure with developmental stage. With 64-cell embryos, the time of exposure to low temperature was more of a factor in eliciting chilling damage than rate of

cooling, whereas damage expressed in embryos in the later stages of development was a consequence of both rapid cooling and time of exposure at low temperature.

Most of the studies on cryoprotectant toxicity reported in the literature have dealt with low concentrations of CPAs (<3.0 M) and have used relatively long incubation times in an effort to gain sufficient permeation of the embryos of a wide array of freshwater and marine species.[200–204] Of the studies in which cryopreservation in LN was also attempted, none were successful. The problems with chilling sensitivity, permeability, and cryoprotectant toxicity were not resolved in these investigations. Further, Zhang et al.[203] and Hagedorn et al.[206] confirmed that the use of conventional equilibrium freezing technology for probably cryopreserving all fish embryos tested so far was probably not feasible. Thus, the recent direction of effort to cryopreserve fish embryos has shifted to the development of protocols and testing of the various cryoprotectant solutions that promote vitrification rather than a conventional freezing process.

Zhang and Rawson[205] examined the toxicity to zebrafish embryos of several potentially penetrating cryoprotectants augmented with polyethylene glycol 400 at concentrations that effect vitrification. The researchers found the 2 M butane-2-3-diol, 3 M 1,2-propanediol, and polyethylene glycol 400 (6%) mixture to be the least toxic to the both the 6-somite and heartbeat stages of development. Studies on equilibration in the CPA mixtures showed that the chorion was permeable to water and cryoprotectant, whereas vitelline membrane permeation by cryoprotectant was low. Apparently, no embryos survived LN exposure, because only the embryos deemed to be morphologically intact were tallied (32%) after recovery. It was observed that most embryos were opaque when the surrounding medium vitrified and burst on warming, indicating that CPA permeation of the embryos was not sufficient to inhibit ice formation. Zhang et al.[207] were apparently more successful in gaining development following vitrification with the loach, *Misgurnus anguillicaudatus*. The authors reported that by using a methanol/1,2-propandiol vitrification solution, two- or three-step cooling, and a two-step recovery procedure that significant numbers of recovered embryos survived and showed development. The optimum treatment stage for this species was just after blastopore closure. Evidence was presented for a small number of embryos that developed as far as the appearance of a caudal fin. Robles et al.[208] also obtained embryonic development, but no hatching, following vitrification of the cold-tolerant flounder, *Pseudopleuronectes americanis*. While it was suggested that the inherent production of an antifreeze protein may aid this limited survival, another study on the widely cultured Japanese flounder, *Paralichthys olivaceus*, seems to discount that theory. Chen and Tian,[209] by using a five-step equilibration technique with a vitrification solution containing saline, propylene glycol and DMSO, gained embryo hatching and larval survival of *P. olivaceus* to 108 hr after LN exposure.

Cabrita et al.[210] assessed the permeation of DMSO into the three membrane-limited compartments — perivitelline space, yolk sac, and cellular compartment — of turbot (*Scophthalmus maximus*) embryos when using the vitrification protocol devised by Chao et al.[126] for oyster larvae. Permeation by DMSO (1–5 M) of the perivitelline space was determined to be high, but entry into the other two compartments was much reduced. Treatment of the embryos with the enzyme pronase did not increase influx of the CPA but did enhance its removal. Additional studies on the postvitrification morphology of turbot embryos revealed that the use of French straws for holding embryos during vitrification, and thawing at 25ºC instead of 0ºC, was detrimental to obtaining an intact embryo.[211] Aggregation of the embryos within the straws tended to increase damage, and it was suggested that the placement of embryos on electron microscope grids, similar to the technique used by Steponkus and Caldwell[23] for *Drosophila* and Liu et al.[212] for zebrafish, would alleviate the problem of mass nucleation on clumping within straws.

Although there is a definite variation in tolerance to vitrification solutions related to the particular stage of development, tolerance may also be species dependent. Turbot embryos tolerate incubation in DMSO and multimolar vitrification solutions better than those of zebrafish, but tolerance to certain mixtures at comparable incubation times was found to be difficult to predict.[213] Moreover, Suzuki et al.[214] showed that tolerance of four species of fish embryos to DMSO up to

5 M differed in the order of carp < trout < perjerrey < medaka. This species-dependent response to potentially toxic cryoprotectants could be explained by variation that may exist in membrane or compartment permeability between the different embryo species. The use of the magnetic resonance and spectroscopy techniques devised by Hagedorn et al.[180] to determine the actual sites and amounts of permeation of the CPA could help resolve this question. More important, it appears that a union of the recently developed permeabilization techniques with one or more of these promising vitrification protocols would have good potential for providing a means to cryopreserve fish embryos.

10.3.8 CRYOPRESERVATION OF ALTERNATE FORMS OF GERMPLASM

In the absence of long-term cryopreservation technology for intact organisms, such as the piscine and avian species, the quest for methods for the preservation of genetic resources in animal species has led researchers to isolate and culture embryonic stem cells or blastomeres and primordial germline cells. These forms of animal germplasm are relatively easy to obtain from most animal embryos, can be pluripotent in cell culture, may include both the nuclear genome and maternal mitochondrial DNA, and are usually cryopreserveable. Some of the embryonic cell isolates, including those from insects, fish, and birds, have been used to create, via cell transplantation, either clones or chimeras that express the donor-derived genotype.[215–219]

Cryopreservation of blastomeres is not a recent development. Over 20 years ago, Harvey[215] was perhaps one of the first to recognize the utility of blastomeres as an alternate form of germplasm for fishes and to work out a cryopreservation protocol for zebrafish embryonic cells. Fish blastomere cryopreservation typically employs two-step cooling, which may or may not be interrupted by seeding at a temperature above –10ºC.[220–223] Cooling blastomeres at a slow rate to –80ºC for rainbow trout, *Oncorthynchus mykiss*,[220] and carp, *C. carpio*,[221] and to –30ºC for the chum salmon, *O. keta*,[223] before quenching in LN was found to be most beneficial for post-thaw survival. The CPAs commonly used are either DMSO[222] or 1,2-propanediol[220,221,223] at concentrations of less than 2.0 M, with or without fetal bovine serum. Slow warming after LN exposure for recovery of these cells also resulted in higher yields of transplantable cells when using these protocols. Further, all studies showed that blastomeres isolated from the late-stage blastula, rather than from an earlier stage, were the most tolerant to cryopreservation.

Protocols for the cryopreservation of chicken blastoderm and primordial germ cells, very similar to those for the fish embryonic cells, have been developed by Chelmonska et al.[224] and Naito et al.[225] Although Naito et al.[225] obtained a post-thaw survival rate of over 94% with primordial germ cells, Pokorny[226] demonstrated in a subsequent study that the viability of avian blastoderm cells was best if they were transplanted into recipient embryos within the first hour following recovery from LN storage.

In most of the foregoing techniques, French straws were used for the containment of the blastomeres and primordial germ cells during the freezing and storage process. However, Yu et al.[216] were able to eliminate this type of containment and several other steps in the conventional equilibrium freezing process when cryopreserving totipotent nuclei from embryos of the honey bee, *Apis mellifera*. Donor ooplasm containing preblastoderm nuclei was removed from 8–9-hour-old embryos with a transplantation pipette, which was then plugged with cotton and plunged into LN without the benefit of a cryoprotectant. After a rapid thaw, the nuclei and ooplasm in the pipette were injected into recipient embryos. Using this procedure, the incidence of chimerism was 85% of the frequency obtained when noncryopreserved nuclei were used. Further, 2 of 157 surviving larvae expressed only the donor genotype and were presumed to be cloned individuals. A novel extension of this technology has been to biopsy individual honey bee embryos by removing up to 80 nuclei and cryopreserving them.[227] The biopsied embryos are then reared to adulthood as queens and submitted to a comprehensive testing and screening procedure. The totipotent nuclei remain in reserve in LN storage to use to create future germlines of those queens that have been established to possess exceptional qualities for honey production.

Finally, using the silkmoth, *Bombyx mori,* Mochida et al.[228] were able to obtain progeny from adults that had undergone transplantation of cryopreserved ovaries during their larval stage. Cryopreservation of silkworm ovarian tissue was first developed by Shinbo et al.[229] Preservation of the larval ovaries was accomplished by adding increasing concentrations of DMSO to about 120 larval ovaries in culture medium to reach a final concentration of 1.5 M and by freezing the ovaries in LN vapor within a cryovial before placing them into LN.[228] Recovery from LN storage was achieved through rapid thawing, and transplantation was into castrated fourth or fifth instar larvae, followed by rearing to adulthood. This technique does not require that the donor ovaries join up with the recipient ovarian ducts because once the ovaries are mature, eggs can be surgically removed from the transplants and can either be activated parthenogenetically or fertilized by artificial insemination.

10.4   CONCLUSIONS

It is readily evident by examining the array of nearly 230 citations contained in this chapter that the cryopreservation of nonmammalian systems is a vast and dynamic area of endeavor. Further, new technologies are being developed to cope with the ostensibly intractable problems concerning membrane permeability, chilling sensitivity, and cryoprotectant toxicity. Yet it is clearly obvious that there is an immediate need for resolution of the difficulties encountered when attempting to cryopreserve the embryos or larvae of fish, prawns, and insects. Cryopreservation of blastomeres and primordial germ cells is an exciting advancement, and with frozen semen, these techniques are probably the only means by which genetic diversity can be preserved for avian species. However, for the teleosts and arthropods, the need for the development of a means to cryopreserve these organisms goes beyond that of saving genetic diversity. Strain replacement in large culture facilities or intermittent propagation of a strain in a multispecies mass-rearing facility are but two of a host of examples for which large numbers of cryopreserved individuals could be used. Results of experiments designed for the mass cryopreservation of individuals were reported in only three of the publications cited in this chapter. Industries involved in aquaculture and biocontrol of pests using beneficial insects and nematodes could immediately profit by the availability of mass cryopreservation technology. Hopefully, these research needs will be addressed in the near future.

As a final point, I have observed that the conservation of genetic diversity has often been often mentioned in the cryopreservation literature as the motivation for conducting a particular research project. Furthermore, there is the tacit implication that society will benefit from the development of this specific type of cryopreservation technology because it will allow the banking of the collective genomic information of an animal species for use by future generations. Though the technology now exists for the long-term storage of definitely hundreds, and with minor modifications perhaps thousands, of animal species, the banking of animal germplasm falls woefully short of what has been accomplished for the storage of plant germplasm around the world. In the United States alone, the various repositories that make up the National Plant Germplasm System contain over 470,000 accessions from over 11,800 species. In this continuously changing world, are we wasting a valuable commodity by not developing a similar system for animals? Are we depriving our future generations of their rightful heritage? It would seem so.

REFERENCES

1. Rana, K., Cryopreservation of aquatic gametes and embryos: Recent advances and applications, in *Proceedings of the Fifth International Symposium on the Reproductive Physiology of Fish*, Goetz, F.W. and Thomas, P., Eds., Fish Symposium 95, July 2–8, University of Texas Press, Austin, TX, 1995, 85.
2. Hagedorn, M., Kleinhans, F.W., Artemov, D., and Pilatus, U., Characterization of a major permeability barrier in the zebrafish embryo, *Biol. Reprod.*, 59, 1240, 1998.

3. Lubzens, E., Pekarsky, I., Magnus, Y., and Ar, A., Term and prospects for long-term storage of teleost ova and embryos, in *Proceedings of the Conference of IIR Commission C2, Bordeaux Colloquium, Refrigeration and Aquaculture*, 1996, 491.

4. Chao, N-H., Liao, I.C., Recent trends of cryopreservation of embryos in aquatic species, in *Aquaculture 2001, Book of Abstracts*, 2001, 111.

5. Leopold, R.A., Cryopreservation of insect germplasm: Cells, tissues and organisms, in *Insects at Low Temperature*, Lee, R.E. and Denlinger, D.L., Eds., Chapman and Hall, New York, 1991, p. 379.

6. Rana, K. and Gilmour, Cryopreservation of fish spermatozoa: Effect of cooling methods on the reproducibility of cooling rates and viability, in *Proceedings of the Conference of IIR Commission C2, Bordeaux Colloquium, Refrigeration and Aquaculture*, 1996, 3.

7. Gwo, J-C., Cryopreservation of aquatic invertebrate semen: A review, *Aquacult Res.*, 31, 259, 2000.

8. Diamond, L.S., Cryopreservation and storage of parasitic protozoa in liquid nitrogen, *J. Eukaryot. Microbiol.,* 42, 585, 1995.

9. Muller, R., Cryopreservation of parasites, *Ann. Parasitol. Hum. Comp.,* 66 suppl 1, 5, 1991.

10. Eckert, J., Alternatives to animal experimentation in parasitology, *Vet. Parasit.*, 71, 99, 1997.

11. Wierzbowski, S., Bull semen opportunistic pathogen and ubiquitary microflora, in *Disease Control in Semen and Embryos*, 23, FAO, Rome, 1985, p. 21.

12. Bielanski, A., Bergeron, H., Lau, P.C.K., and Devenish, J., Microbial contamination of embryos and semen during long-term banking in liquid nitrogen, *Cryobiology*, 46, 146, 2003.

13. Hinton, H.E., Cryptobiosis in the larva of *Polypedilium vanderplanki* Hinton (Chironomidae), *J. Insect Physiol.,* 5, 375, 1969.

14. Koehler, Studies on the survival of the rotifer *Philodina* after freezing and thawing, *Cryobiology*, 3, 392, 1967.

15. Copley, J., Indestructible, *New Scientist*, 23 Oct., 44, 1999.

16. Horvath, A. and Urbanyi, B., Cryopreservation of fish gametes, *Halaszat,* 93, 39, 2000.

17. Robles, V., Cabrita, E., Real, M., Alvarez, R., and Herráez, M.P., Vitrification of turbot embryos: Preliminary assays, *Cryobiology*, 47, 30, 2003.

18. Vallancia, M.D., Miller, L.H., and Mazur, P., Permeability of intact and dechorionated eggs of the *Anopheles* mosquito to water vapor and liquid water: A comparison with *Drosophila*, *Cryobiology*, 33, 142, 1996.

19. Vallancia, M.D., Miller, L.H., and Mazur, P., Permeabilization of eggs of the malaria mosquito, *Anopheles gambiae*, *Cryobiology*, 33, 149, 1996.

20. Mazur, P., Liu, X-H., Koshimoto, C., Cole, K.W., Gamliel, E., Benedict, M., and Valle, D., The development of permeability barriers in oocytes and eggs of *Anopheles gambiae* and the golden cuticle mutant of *Anopheles quadrimaculatus*, *Cryobiology*, 43, 341, 2001.

21. Mazur, P., Valle, D., Cole, K.W., Gamliel, E., Wangia, V., and Laughinghouse, A., Effect of benserazide on melanization and permeability of *Anopheles* eggs and its effect on sensitivity to dechorionation by hypochlorite, *Cryobiology*, 41, 349, 2000.

22. Mazur, P., Cole, K.W., Hall, J.W., Schreuders, P.D., and Mahowald, A.P., Cryobiological preservation of *Drosophila* embryos, *Science*, 258, 1932, 1992.

23. Steponkus, P.L. and Caldwell, S., An optimized procedure for the cryopreservation of *Drosophila melanogaster* embryos, *Cryo-Lett.,* 14, 377, 1993.

24. Leopold, R.A. and Atkinson, P., Cryopreservation of sheep blow fly embryos, *Lucilla cuprina* (Diptera: Calliphoridae), *Cryo-Lett.*, 20, 37, 1999.

25. Wang, W.B., Leopold, R.A., Nelson, D.R., and Freeman, T.P., Cryopreservation of *Musca domestica* (Diptera: Muscidae) embryos, *Cryobiology*, 41, 153, 2000.

26. Leopold, R.A., Wang, W-B., Berkebile, D.R., and Freeman, T.P., Cryopreservation of embryos of the New World screwworm, *Cochliomyia hominivorax* (Diptera: Calliphoridae), *Ann. Entomol. Soc. Am.*, 94, 695, 2001.

27. Nunamaker, R.A. and Lockwood, J.A., Cryopreservation of embryos of *Culicoides sonorensis* (Diptera: Ceratopogonidae), *J. Med. Entomol.*, 38, 55, 2001.

28. Rajamohan, A., Leopold, R.A., Wang, W-B., Harris, M., McCombs, S.D., Peabody, N.C., and Fisher, K., Cryopreservation of Mediterranean fruit fly embryos, *Cryo-Lett.*, 24, 125, 2003.

29. Ruelicke, Th. and Autenried, P., Potential of two-cell mouse embryos to develop to term despite partial damage after cryopreservation, *Lab. Anim.*, 29, 320, 1995.

30. Palasz, A.T. and Mapletoft, R.J., Cryopreservation of mammalian embryos and oocytes: *Recent advances, Biotechnol. Adv.*, 14, 127, 1996.

31. Liu, X.H., Zhang, T., and Rawson, D.M., Effect of cooling rate and partial removal yolk on the chilling injury in zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) embryos, *Theriogenology*, 55, 1719, 2001.

32. Mazur, P., Schneider, U., and Mahowald, A.P., Characteristics and kinetics of subzero chilling injury in *Drosophila* embryos, *Cryobiology*, 29, 39, 1992.

33. James, E.R., Protozoa and helminth parasites of man and animals, in *Low Temperature Preservation in Medicine and Biology*, Ashwood-Smith, M.J. and Farrant, J., Eds., Pitmans Medical Publisher, 1980, p. 155.

34. James, E.R., Production and cryopreservation of schistosomula-practical, in *Immunoparasitology: Principles and Methods in Malaria and Schistosomiasis Research*, Strickland, G.T. and Hunter, K.W., Eds., Praeger, 1982.

35. James, E.R., Cryopreservation of parasites, in *Parasitology in Focus*, Mehlhorn, H., Ed., Springer Verlag, 1988, p. 684.

36. James, E.R., Cryopreservation of helminth parasites, in *In Vitro Cultivation of Helminth Parasites*, Smyth, J.D., Ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1990, p. 237.

37. James, E.R., Parasite cryopreservation by vitrification, *Cryobiology*, 49, 201, 2004.

38. James, E.R. and Ham, P.J., Cryopreservation of schistosomula and microfilariae, in *Nuclear and Related Techniques in Parasitology: A Laboratory Manual*, Hayunga, E.G. and Stek, M., Jr., IAEA Technical Document 371, 1986.

39. Willoughby, R. and Pomponi, S.A., Quantitative assessment of marine sponge cells *in vitro*: Development of improved growth medium, *In Vitro Cell Dev. Biol. An.*, 36, 194, 2000.

40. Domart-Coulon, I.J., Elbert, D.C., Scully, E.P., Calimlim. P.S., and Ostrander, G.K., Aragonite crystallization in primary cell cultures of multicellular isolates from a hard coral, *Pocillopora damicornis*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 98, 11885, 2001.

41. Barnes, R.D., The sponges, in *Invertebrate Zoology*, W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia, 1963.

42. Mayer, A.M.S. and Lehmann, V.K.B., Marine pharmacology, *Pharmacology*, 42, 62, 2000.

43. Cohen, L.M. and Eveland, L.K., Cryopreservation of *Schistosoma mansoni* sporocysts, *J. Parasitol.*, 70, 592, 1984.

44. James, E.R., Production and cryopreservation of schistosomula, *Int. J. Nucl. Med. Biol.*, 7, 125, 1980.

45. James, E.R. Cryopreservation of schistosomula by two-step addition of ethanediol and rapid cooling, *Exper. Parasitol.*, 52, 105, 1981.

46. James, E.R. Cryopreservation of *Schistosoma mansoni* schistosomula using 40% v/v (10M) methanol and rapid cooling, *Cryo-Lett.*, 1, 535, 1980.

47. Stirewalt, M., Lewis, F.A., Cousin, C.E., and Leef, J.L., Cryopreservation of schistosomules of *Schistosoma mansoni* in quantity, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 33, 116, 1984.

48. Lewis, F.A., Winestock, J., and James, S., Macrophage activation as an immune correlate to protective immunity against schistosomiasis in mice immunized with an irradiated, cryopreserved live vaccine, *Infec. Immun.*, 55, 1339, 1987.

49. James, E.R. and Dobinson, A.R., *Schistosoma mansoni*: Interactive effects of irradiation and cryoprotection on parasite maturation and immunization of mice, *Exper. Parasitol.*, 57, 279, 1984.

50. Eckert, J, and Ramp, T., Cryopreservation of *Echinococcus multilocularis* metacestodes and subsequent proliferation in rodents (Meriones), *Z. Parasitenkd.*, 71, 777, 1985.

51. Bretagne, S., Beaujean, F., Uner, A., Bresson-Hadni, S., Liance, M., and Houin, R., Rapid technique for cryopreservation of *Echinococcus multilocularis* metacestodes, *Int. J. Parasitol.*, 20, 265, 1990.

52. Jiang, C.P., Preliminary observation of infectivity of isolated alveolar hydatid after cryopreservation, *Zhongguo Ji Sheng Chong Xue Yu Ji Sheng Chong Bing Za Zhi*, 10, 307, 1992.

53. Sayre, R.M. and Hwang, S.W., Freezing and storing *Ditylenchus dipsaci* in liquid nitrogen, *J. Nematol.*, 7, 199, 1975.

54. Vetter, J.C.M. and Klaver-Wesseling, J.C.M., Unimpaired infectivity of *Ancylostoma ceylanicum* after storage in liquid nitrogen for one year, *J. Parasitol.*, 63, 700, 1977.

55. Jensen, J.R., Merlo, A., and Vieira, M.C.R., Cryopreservation of first and infective stage larvae and the infectivity test by anigical inoculation of the nematodes *Haemonchus placei* and *Cooperia puntata*, *Rev. Brasil Parasitol. Vet.*, 9, 175, 2000.

56. McSorley, R., Adaptations of nematodes to environmental extremes, *Fla. Entomol.*, 86, 138, 2003.

57. Ricci, C., Dormancy patterns in rotifers, *Hydrobiologia,* 446/447, 1, 2001.

58. Jagdale, G.B. and Grewal, P.S., Acclimation of entopathogenic nematodes to novel temperatures: Trehalose accumulation and the acquisition of thermotolerance, *Int. J. Parasitol.*, 33, 145, 2003.

59. Pozio, E., Rossi, P., and Scrimitore, E., Studies on the cryopreservation of *Trichinella* species, *Exp. Parasitol.*, 67, 182, 1988.

60. Jackson-Gegan, M. and James, E.R., Cryopreservation of *Trichinella spiralis* muscle stage larvae, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.,* 38, 558, 1988.

61. Malakauskas, A. and Kapel, C.M., Tolerance to low temperatures of domestic and sylvatic *Trichinella* species in rat muscle tissue, *J. Parasitol.*, 89, 744, 2003.

62. Uga, S., Araki, K., Matsumura, T., and Iwamura, N., Studies on the cryopreservation of *Angiostronglus cantonensis, J. Helminthol.*, 57, 297, 1983.

63. Gill, J.H. and Redwin, J.M., Cryopreservation of first-stage larvae of trichostrongylid nematode parasites, *Int. J. Parasitol.,* 25, 1421, 1995.

64. Nolan, T.J., Bhopale, V.M., Megyeri, Z., and Schad, G.A., Cryopreservation of human hookworms, *J. Parasitol.*, 80, 648, 1994.

65. Nolan, T.J., Aikens, L.M., and Schad, G.A., Cryopreservation of first-stage and infective third-stage larvae of *Strongyloides stercoralis*, *J. Parasitol.,* 74, 387, 1988.

66. Van Wyk, J.A., Gerber, H.M., and Van Aardt, W.P., Cryopreservation of the infective larvae of the common nematodes of ruminants, *Onderstepoort J. Vet. Res.*, 44, 173, 1977.

67. Nikitisch, K., Deep-freeze conservation of nematode larvae, *Wiener Tierarztliche Monatsschrift*, 66, 190, 1979.

68. James, E.R. and Peacock, R., Studies on the cryopreservation of *Dictyocaulus viviparous* (Nematoda) third-stage larvae, *J. Helminthol.,* 60, 65, 1986.

69. Titoy, G.A. and Malan, F.S., Cryopreservation of sheathed third-stage larvae of *Ancylostoma caninum* (hookworm of dogs) and *Ancylostoma tubaeforme* (hookworm of cats), *Onderstepoort J. Vet. Res.*, 63, 181, 1996.

70. Titoy, G.A. and Schwan, E.V., Cryopreservation of sheathed third-stage larvae of *Gaigeria pachyscelis* (Sandveld hookworm), *Onderstepoort J. Vet. Res.*, 62, 63, 1995.

71. Duarte, J., Harrison, L.M., and Cappello, M., Short report: *Ancylostoma ceylanicum*: Exsheathment is not required for successful cryopreservation of third stage hookworm larvae, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 69, 44, 2003.

72. Van Wyk, J.A., Gerber, H.M., and Villiere, F.J., Parenterally administered gastrointestinal nematode infective larvae viable after more than 15 years in liquid nitrogen, *Vet. Parasitol.*, 88, 239, 2000.

73. Van Wyk, J.A. and Gerber, H.M., Survival and development of larvae of the common nematodes of ruminants after long-term cryopreservation and investigation of different routes of infestation, *Onderstepoort J. Vet. Res.*, 47, 129, 1980.

74. Van Wyk, J.A., A comparison of the infectivity of cryopreserved versus unfrozen infective larvae of *Haemonchus contortus*, *Trichostrongylus columbriformis*, and *Trichostrongylus axei*: Results of the Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and collaborators from 1977 to present, *Onderstepoort J. Vet. Res.*, 66, 285, 1999.

75. Ramp, T., Eckert, J., and Christen, C., Experience in freeze-drying third-stage larvae of trichostrongylids of ruminants, *Schweizer Archiv für Tierheilkunde*, 128, 79, 1986.

76. Hubert, J. and Kerboeuf, D., A high-efficency technique for the long-term preservation of infective nematode larvae, *Cand. J. Vet. Res.*, 61, 77, 1997.

77. Titoy, G.A. and van Rensburg, L.J., Cryopreservation of third-stage larvae of *Strogylus vulgaris* (large strongyle of horses), *Onderstepoort J. Vet. Res.*, 64, 159, 1997.

78. Mazur, P., Equilibrium, quasi-equilibrium, and nonequilibrium freezing of mammalian embryos, *Cell Biophys.*, 17, 53, 1990.

79. Mahajan, R.K. and Renapurkar, D.M., Cryopreservation of *Angiostrongylus cantonensis* third-stage larvae, *J. Helminthol.*, 67, 233, 1993.

80. Titoy, G.A., An improved technique for the cryopreservation of *Gaigeria pachyscelis* (Sandveld hookworm), *Onderstepoort J. Vet. Res.*, 62, 215, 1995.

81. Titoy, G.A., Cryopreservation of sheathed third-stage larvae of *Nematodirus spathiger*, *Onderstepoort J. Vet. Res.*, 63, 63, 1996.

82. Titoy, G.A., Cryopreservation of sheathed third-stage larvae of *Oesophagostomum radiatum* (nodular worm of cattle), *Onderstepoort J. Vet. Res.*, 64, 157, 1997.

83. Wang, L-C., Chao, D., Yen, C-M., and Chen, E.R., Improvements in the infectivity of cryopreserved third-stage larvae of *Angiostrongylus cantonensis* using a programmable freezer, *Parsitol. Res.*, 85, 151, 1999.

84. Ramp, T., Eckert, J., Gottstein, B., Cryopreservation and long-term in vitro maintenance of second-stage larvae of *Toxocara canis*, *Parsitol. Res.*, 73, 165, 1987.

85. Ham, P.J., James, E.R., and Bianco, A.E., Preliminary studies on the cryopreservation of *Onchocera* microfilariae using a proxy host to assess viability, *Tran. R. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 72, 434, 1978.

86. Schiller, E.L., Turner, V.M., Marroqúin, H.F., and D'Antonio, R., *Tran. R. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 28, 997, 1979.

87. Ham, P.J., James, E.R., and Bianco, A.E., *Onchocerca spp.*: Cryopreservation of microfilariae and subsequent development in the insect host, *Exp. Parasitol.*, 47, 384, 1979.

88. Ham, P.J., Townson, S., James, E.R., and Bianco, A.E., An improved technique for the cryopreservation of *Onchocera* microfilariae, *Parasitol.*, 83, 139, 1981.

89. Owen, D.G. and Anantaraman, M., Successful cryopreservation of *Wuchereria bancrofti* microfilariae, *Trans. R. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 76, 232, 1982.

90. Ham, P.J. and Townson, S., Improved development of *Brugia* microfillariae following cryopreservation in liquid nitrogen using a technique suitable for field conditions, *Trans. R. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 80, 150, 1986.

91. Minjas, J.N. and Townson, H., The successful cryopreservation of microfiliarae with hydoxymethyl starch as cryoprotectant, *Ann. Trop. Med. Parasitol.*, 74, 571, 1980.

92. Lowrie, R.C., Jr., Cryopreservation of the microfiliariae of *Brugia malayi*, *Dirofilaria corynodes,* and *Wuchereria bancrofti*, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 32, 138, 1983.

93. Lok, J.B., Mika-Grieve, M., and Grieve, R.B., Cryopreservation of *Dirofilaria immitis* microfilariae and third-stage larvae, *J. Helminthol.*, 57, 319, 1983.

94. Cesbron, J.Y., Taelman, H., Henry, D., Myelle, L., and Capron, A., Extended cryopreservation of *Loa loa* and *Mansonella perstans* microfilariae from human peripheral blood, *Trans. R. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 80, 563, 1986.

95. Wang, S.H. and Zheng, H.J., Survival and infectivity of *Brugia malayi* microfilariae after cryopreservation, *SE Asian J. Trop. Med. Pub. Health*, 22, 165, 1991.

96. Bartholomay, L.C., Farid, H.A., Ebtesam, El-K., and Christensen, B.M., Short report: A practical technique for the cryopreservation of *Dirofilaria immitis*, *Brugia malayi*, and *Wuchereria bancrofti* microfilariae, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 65, 162, 2001.

97. Ham, P.J. and James, E.R., Successful cryopreservation of *Brugia pahangi* third-stage larvae in liquid nitrogen, *Trans. R. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 77, 815, 1983.

98. Trpis, M., Scales, C.A., and Struble, R.H., Cryopreservation of infective larvae of *Onchocerca vulvulus* (Filorioidae: Onchocercidae, *J. Parasitol.*, 79, 695, 1993.

99. McCall, J.W., Jun, J., and Thompson, P.E., Cryopreservation of infective larvae of *Dipetalonema viteae*, *J. Parasitol.*, 61, 340, 1975.

100. Hentrich, B. and Bose, R., Cryopreservation of *Babesia divergens* from jirds as a live vaccine for cattle, *Int. J. Parasitol.*, 23, 771, 1993.

101. Tagboto, S.K. and Townson, S., *Onchocerca lienalis*: Comparison of techniques for the cryopreservation of microfilariae within skin-snips or free of host tissues, *J. Helminthol.*, 65, 301, 1991.

102. Riga, E. and Webster, J.M., Cryopreservation of the pinewood nematode *Bursaphelenchus* spp., *J. Nematol.*, 23, 438, 1991.

103. Carneiro, R.M.D.G., Martins, I., and Jorge, C.L., Technique for cryopreservation of second-stage juveniles of *Meloidogyne javanica*, *Nematologia Brasileira*, 25, 205, 2001.

104. Smith, B.S., Hodgson-Smith, A. Popiel, I., Minter, D.M., and James, E.R., Cryopreservation of the entomogenous nematode parasite, *Steinernema feltiae* (Neoaplectana carpocapsae), *Cryobiology*, 27, 319, 1990.

105. Lee, S-H., Kim, Y-G., and Han, S-C., Cryopreservation of the entomopathogenic nematode, *Steinernema carpocapsae* Weiser, *Korean J. Appl. Entomol.*, 39, 149, 2000.

106. Sulston, J. and Hodgkin, J., Methods, in *The Nematode C. elegans*, Wood, W.B., Ed., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, 1988, p. 587.

107. Ohba, K., Ishiguro, T., and Hayashi, Y., Freeze–thaw survival of the entomogenous nematodes, *Steinernema feltiae* and *S glaseri* in brief comparison with survival of *Caenorhabditis elegans* and *Aphelenchus avenae*, *Jap. J. Nematol.*, 18, 35, 1989.

108. Ricci, C., Dormancy patterns in rotifers, *Hydrobiologia*, 446/447, 1, 2001.

109. Okamoto, S., Tanaka, M., Kurokura, H., and Kasahara, S., Cryopreservation of parthenogenetic eggs of the rotifer, *Brachionus plicatilis*, *Bull. Jap. Soc. Sci. Fish.*, 53, 2093, 1987.

110. Beddig, S., Berghan, R., and Lubzens, E., Long-term preservation of amictic eggs of the rotifer, *Brachionus plicatilis*, in *Research in Modern Agriculture*, *Special Publication of the European Aquacult Society*, 11, 251, 1990.

111. Hadani, A., Beddig, S., and Lubzens, E., Factors affecting survival of cryopreserved rotifers (*Brachionus plicatilis* O.F. Muller), *Am Zool*, 31, 77A, 1991.

112. Toledo, J.D. and Kurokura, H., Cryopreservation of the euryhaline rotifer *Brachionus plicatilis* embryos, *Aquaculture*, 91, 385, 1990.

113. Balompapueng, M.D., Hagiwara, A., Hagiwara's H., Nozaki, Y., and Hirayama, K., Preservation of *Brachionus plicatilis* O.F. Muller by canning, *Hydrobiologia*, 358, 163, 1997.

114. Olive, P.J.W., Polychaete aquaculture and polychaete science: A mutual synergism, *Hydrobiologia*, 402, 175, 1999.

115. Olive, P.J.W. and Wang, W.B., Cryopreservation of *Nereis virens* (Polychaeta, Annelida) larvae: The mechanism of cryopreservation of a differentiated metazoan, *Cryobiology*, 34, 284, 1997.

116. Setti, M., Zunarlli, V., and Prevedelli, D., Cryoconservation of polychaeta embryos: Preliminary results, in *Proceedings of the 28th Conference of the Italian Society for Marine Biology, Trani, 26-31 May, 1997*, 5, 500, 1998.

117. Wang, W.B. and Olive, P.J.W., Effects of cryopreservation on the ultrastructural anatomy of 3-segment *Nereis virens* larvae (Polychaeta), *Invert. Biol.*, 119, 309, 2000.

118. Renard, P. and Cochrand, J.C., Effect of various cryoprotectants on the Pacific oyster *Crassostera gigas* Tuunberg, Manila clam *Ruditapes phillippinarum* Reeve, and scallop *Pecten maximus* (L.) embryos: Influence of the biochemical and osmotic effects, *Cryo-Lett.*, 10, 169, 1989.

119. Renard, P., Cooling and freezing tolerance in embryos of the Pacific oyster, *Crassostera gigas*: Methanol and sucrose effects, *Aquaculture*, 92, 43, 1991.

120. Chao, N-H., Chiang, C-P., Hsu, H-W., Tsai, C-T., and Lin, T-T., Toxicity tolerance of oyster embryos to selected cryoprotectans, *Aquat. Living Resource*, 7, 99, 1994.

121. Liu, X. and Robinson, A.M., Impact of cryoprotectants dimethyl sulfoxide, ethylene glycol, methanol, glycerol, sucrose, and polyvinylpyrrolidone on oyster (*Crassostera gigas*) embryos before freezing, *J. Shellfish Res.*, 16, 319, 1997.

122. Tompkins, B. and Couturier, C., Toxicity of selected cryoprotectants on trochophore larvae of *Mytilus edulis*, *Bull. Aquacul. Assoc. Can.*, 98–2, 68, 1999.

123. Toledo, J.D., Kurokura, H., and Kasahara, S., Preliminary studies on the cryopreservation of the blue mussel embryos, *Jap. Soc. Sci. Fish*, 55, 1661, 1989.

124. Xue, Q., Cryopreservation of embryos of the scallop, *Chlamys farreri*, in liquid nitrogen, *Mar. Sci./Haiyang Kexue*, 4, 44, 1994.

125. Gwo, J-C., Cryopreservation of oyster (*Crassostrea gigas*) embryos, *Theriogenology*, 43, 1163, 1995.

126. Chao, N-H., Lin, T-T., Chen, Y-J., Hsu, H-W., and Liao, I-C., Cryopreservation of late embryos and early larvae in the oyster and hard clam, *Aquaculture*, 155, 31, 1997.

127. Choi, Y-H. and Chang, Y-J., The influence of cooling rate, developmental stage, and the addition of sugar on the cryopreservation of larvae of the pearl oyster *Pinctada fucata martensii*, *Cryobiology*, 46, 190, 2003.

128. Paniagua-Chavez, C.G. and Tiersch, T.R., Laboratory studies of cryopreservation of sperm and trochophore larvae of the eastern oyster, *Cryobiology*, 43, 211, 2001.

129. Paniagua-Chavez, C.G., Buchanan, J.T., Tiersch, T.R., and Supan, J.E., Advances in the cryopreservation of gametes and larvae of the eastern oyster, *J. Shellfish Res.*, 19, 654, 2000.

130. Tanno, K. Frost resistance in the poplar sawfly, *Trichiocampus populi*: V. Freezing injury at the liquid nitrogen temperature, *Low Temp. Sci. B*, 26, 76, 1968.

131. Moon, I., Fujikawa, S., and Shimada, K., Cryopreservation of *Chymomyza costata* larvae: (Diptera: Drosophilidae) at 196°C with extracellular freezing, *Cryo-Lett.*, 17, 105, 1996.

132. Lee, R.E., Jr., Principles of insect low temperature tolerance, in *Insects at Low Temperature*, Lee, R.E. and Denlinger, D.L., Eds., Chapman and Hall, New York, 1991, p. 17.

133. Lynch, D.V., Lin, T-T., Myers, S.P., Leibo, S.P., MacIntyre, R.J., Pitt, R.E., and Steponkus, P.L., A two-step method for permeabilization of *Drosophila* eggs, *Cryobiology,* 26, 445, 1989.

134. Mazur, P., Cole, K.W., and Mahowald, A.P., Critical factors affecting the permeabilization of *Drosophila* embryos by alkanes, *Cryobiology*, 29, 210, 1992.

135. Nelson, D.R. and Leopold, R.A., Composition of the surface hydrocarbons from the vitelline membranes of dipteran embryos, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.*, 136, 295, 2003.

136. Liu, X.-H., Mazur, P., Gamliel, E., Cole, K.W., and Laughinghouse, A., Effects of beserazide, dechorionation time in hypochlorite, and alkane treatment on the permeability of *Anopheles gambiae* eggs to water and solutes, *Cryobiology*, 43, 341, 2001.

137. Liu, X.-H., Mazur, P., Effects of sugars on the kinetics of drying and on the survival of partially dehydrated larvae of *Anopheles* mosquitos, *J. Insect Physiol.*, 49, 685, 2003.

138. Liu, X.-H., Pan, H., Mazur, P., Permeation and toxicity of ethylene glycol and methanol in larvae of *Anopheles gambiae*, *J. Exp. Biol.*, 206, 2221, 2003.

139. Heacox, A.E., Leopold, R.A., and Brammer, J.D., Survival of housefly embryos cooled in the presence of dimethyl sulfoxide, *Cryo-Lett.*, 6, 305, 1985.

140. Myers, S.P., Lynch, D.V., Knipple, D.C., Leibo, S.P., and Steponkus, P., Low-temperature sensitivity of *Drosophila melanogaster* embryos, *Cryobiology*, 25, 544, 1988.

141. Mazur, P., Schneider, U., and Mahowald, A.P., Characteristics of subzero chilling injury in *Drosophila* embryos, *Cryobiology*, 29, 39–68, 1992.

142. Miles, J.E. and Bale, J.S., Analysis of chilling injury in the biological control agent *Aphidolietes aphidimyza, Cryobiology,* 32, 436, 1995.

143. Myers, S.P., Pitt, R.E., Lynch, D.V., and Steponkus, P., Characterization of intracellular ice formation in *Drosophila melanogaster* embryos, *Cryobiology*, 26, 472, 1989.

144. Steponkus, P.L., Myers, S.P., Lynch, D.V., Gardner, L., Bronshteyn, V., Leibo, S.P., Rall, W.F., Pitt, R.E., Lin, T.-T., and MacIntyre, R.J., Cryopreservation of *Drosophila melanogaster* embryos, *Nature*, 345, 170, 1990.

145. Mazur, P., Cole, K.W., Schreuders, P.D., and Mahowald, A.P., Contributions of cooling and warming rate and developmental stage to the survival of *Drosophila* embryos cooled to 205°C, *Cryobiology,* 30, 45, 1993.

146. Rajamohan, A., Leopold, R.A., and Harris, M., Vitrification of Mexican fruit fly embryos, *Cryobiology,* 45, 247, 2002.

147. Li, G.-H., Chen, Q.-J., and Pang, Y., Cryopreservation of insect embryos in liquid nitrogen, *Entomol. Know.,* 37, 318, 2000.

148. Li, G.-H., Pang, Y., Chen, Q.-J., and Su, Z.-J., Cryopreservation of the beet armyworm eggs, *Entomol. Sinica.*, 8, 124, 2001.

149. Lavens, P. and Sorgeloos, P., The history, present status, and prospects of the availability of *Artemia* cysts for aquaculture, *Aquaculture*, 181, 397, 2000.

150. Lavens, P. and Sorgeloos, P., The cryptobiotic state of *Artemia* cysts, its diapause deactivation and hatching: A review, in *Artemia Research in its Applications, Vol. 3, Ecology, Culturing, Use in Aquaculture*, Sorgeloos, P., Bengtson, D.A., Decleir, W., and Jaspers, E., Eds. Universa, Wetteren, 1987, p. 27.

151. Baust, J.G. and Lawrence, A.L., Ontogenetic variability of chill tolerance in larval *Artemia salina*: 1. Single type cryoprotectants, *Aquaculture*, 20, 305, 1980.

152. Baust, J.G. and Lawrence, A.L., Ontogenetic variability of chill tolerance in larval *Artemia salina*: 2. Dual cryoprotectants, *Aquaculture,* 20, 313, 1980.

153. Liu, X. and Lu, R., Cryopreservation of nauplii *Artemia* spp. and zoea *Eriocheir japonicus hepuensis*, *J. Fish China/Shuichan Xuebao*, 18, 321, 1994.

154. Liu, X. and Lu, R., Cryopreservation of decapsulated *Artemia spp.* embryos, *Acta. Hydrobiol. Sin/Shuisheng Shengwu Xuebao*, 20, 248, 1996.

155. Alfaro, J., Resistencia al congelamiento y criopreservacion de embriones, larvas y semen de organismos acuáticos, *Rev. Invest. Mar.*, 20, 73, 1999.

156. Zhang, L., Liu, X., Zhang, J., Lu, D., Ge, F., and Liu, L., Cryopreservation of embryo and nauplii of *Artemia spp, J. Fish. Sci. China/Zhongguo Shuichan Kexue*, 4, 68, 1997.

157. Zhang, L., Liu, X., Lu, D., Liu, L., Guo, F., Zhang, J., and Chen, S., Damage mechanism of *Artemia spp.* embryos during cryopreservation, *J. Fish. Sci. China/Zhongguo Shuichan Kexue,* 6, 37, 1999.

158. Benzie, J.A.H., Penaeid genetics and biotechnology, *Aquaculture*, 164, 23, 1998.

159. Subramonium, T. and Arun, R., Cryopreservation and aquaculture: A case study with penaeid shrimp larvae, *Curr. Sci.,* 76, 361, 1999.

160. Baust, J.G. and Lawrence, A.L., Viability of penaeid shrimp: *Penaeus sertiferus* larvae frozen to 15 to 30ºC using different cooling procedures, *Cryobiology*, 17, 622, 1980.

161. Newton, S.S. and Subramonium, T., Cryoprotectant toxicity in penaeid prawn embryos, *Cryobiology,* 33, 172, 1996.

162. Gwo, J.-C. and Lin, C.H., Preliminary experiments on the cryopreservation of penaeid shrimp (*Penaeus japonicus*) embryos, nauplii and zoea, *Theriogenology*, 49, 1289, 1998.

163. Arun, R. and Subramonium, T., Effect of freezing rates on the survival of penaeid prawn larvae: A parameter analysis, *Cryo-Lett.*, 18, 359, 1997.

164. Subramaniam, B. and Browdy, C.L., Preliminary observations on cryopreservation of embryos and larvae of the Pacific white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei*, *Aquaculture 2001: Book of Abstracts*, 620, 2001.

165. Ma, M. and Wei, Y., Cryopreservation of embryos and nauplius larvae from *Penaeus orientalis*, *J. Dalian Fish Coll./Dalian Shuichan Xueyuan Xuebao*, 11, 54, 1996.

166. Pillai, M.C. and Clark, W.H., Jr., Hatching envelope formation in shrimp (*Sicyonia ingentis*) ova: Origin and sequential exocytosis of cortical vesicles, *Tissue Cell*, 20, 941, 1988.

167. Robertson, S.M. and Lawrence, A.L., Toxicity of the cryoprotectants glycerol, Me$_2$S0$_4$, ethylene glycol, methanol, sucrose, trehalose, and hypersaline solutions to the embryos and nauplii of some penaeid shrimp, *J. World Aquacult. Soc.*, 18, 142, 1987.

168. Simon, C., Dumont, P., Cuende, F.-X., Diter, A., and Aquacop, Determination of suitable freezing media for cryopreservation of *Penaeus indicus* embryos, *Cryobiology,* 31, 245, 1994.

169. Gakhova, E.N., Korn, O.M., and Butsuk, S.V., Freezing of larvae of *Balanus improvisus* to 196ºC, *Sov J Mar Biol; Biol Moya*, 16, 232, 1991.

170. Anil, A.C., Tulaskar, A.S., Kandeparkar, D.C., and Wagh, A.B., Cryopresrvation of *Balanus amphitrite* nauplii, *Cryobiology*, 34, 131, 1997.

171. Oo, K-M., Cryopreservation of nauplius larvae of the barnacle, *Balanus amphitrite* Darwin, *Fish Sci.*, 64, 857, 1998.

172. Asahina, E. and Takahashi, T., Freezing tolerance in embryos and spermatozoa of the sea urchin, *Cryobiology*, 15, 122, 1978.

173. Asahina, E. and Takahashi, T., Cryopreservation of sea urchin embryos and sperm, *Dev Growth Differ*, 21, 423, 1979.

174. Gakhova, E.N., Krasts, I.V., Naidenko, T.K., Savel'eva, N.A., and Bessonov, B.I., Embryonic development of the sea urchin after low-temperature preservation, *Ontogenez*, 19, 175, 1988.

175. Adams, S.L. Hessian, P.A., and Mladenov, P.V., The potential for cryopreserving larvae of the sea urchin, *Evechinus chloroticus*, *Cryobiology*, 52, 139, 2006.

176. Barros, C., Muller, A., Wood, M.J., and Whittingham, D.G., High survival of sea urchin semen (Tetrapigus niger) pluteus larvae (Locechinus albus) frozen in 1.0M Me$_2$SO$_4$, *Cryobiology*, 33, 646, 1996.

177. Barros, C., Muller, A., Wood, M.J., and Whittingham, D.G., High survival of spermatozoa and pluteus larvae of sea urchins frozen in Me$_2$SO$_4$, *Cryobiology*, 35, 341, 1997.

178. Harvey, B. and Ashwood-Smith, M.J., Cryoprotectant penetration and supercooling in the eggs of salmonid fishes, *Cryobiology*, 19, 29, 1982.

179. Harvey, B., Kelley, R.N., and Ashwood-Smith, M.J., Permeability of intact and dechorionated zebrafish, *Brachydanio rerio*, embryos to glycerol and dimethyl sulfoxide, *Cryobiology*, 20, 432, 1983.

180. Hagedorn, M., Hsu., E.W., Pilatus, U., Wildt, D.E., Rall, W.F., and Blackband, W.F., Magnetic resonance microscopy and spectroscopy reveal kinetics of cryoprotectant permeation in a multicompartmental biological system, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 93, 7454, 1996.

181. Hagedorn, M., Hsu, E., Kleinhans, F.W., and Wildt, D.E., New approaches for studying the permeability of fish embryos: Toward successful cryopreservation, *Cryobiology*, 34, 335, 1997.

182. Hagedorn, M., Kleinhans, F.W., Freitas, R., Liu, J., Hsu, E.W., Wildt, D.E., and Rall, W.F., Water distribution and permeability of zebrafish embryos, *Brachydanio rerio*, *J. Exp. Zool.*, 278, 356, 1997.

183. Cabrita, E., Chereguini, O., Luna, M., de Paz, P., and Herraez, M.P., Effect of different treatments on the chorion permeability to DMSO of turbot embryos (*Scophthalmus maximus*), *Aquaculture*, 221, 593, 2003.

184. Rawson, D.M., Zhang, T., Kalicharan, D., and Jongebloed, W.L., Field emission scanning electron microscopy and transmission electron microscopy studies of the chorion, plasma membrane and syncytial layers of gastrula-stage embryo of the zebrafish, *Brachydanio rerio*: A consideration of the structural and functional relationships with respect to cryoprotectant penetration, *Aquaculture Res*, 31, 325, 2000.

185. Lignot, J-H., Cutler, C.P., Hazon, N., and Cramb, G., Immunolocalisation of aquaporin 3 in the gill and the gastrointestinal tract of the European eel *Anguilla anguilla* (L.), *J. Exp. Biol.*, 205, 2653, 2002.

186. Janik, M., Kleinhans, F.W., and Hagedorn, M., Overcoming a permeability barrier by microinjecting cryoprotectants into zebrafish embryos (*Brachydanio rerio*), *Cryobiology*, 41, 25, 2000.

187. Bart, A.N. and Zohar, Y., Cryopreservation of fish embryos: Current status, *Aquaculture, '98 Book of Abstracts*, 34, 1998.

188. Bart, A.N. and Kyaw, H.A., Survival of zebrafish, *Brachydanio rerio* (Hamilton-Buchanan), embryos after immersion in methanol and exposure to ultrasound with implications to cryopreservation, *Aquaculture Res.*, 34, 609, 2003.

189. Routray, P., Suzki, T., Strussmann, C.A., and Takai, R., Factors affecting the uptake of DMSO by eggs and embryos of medaka, *Oryzias latipes*, *Theriogenology*, 58, 1483, 2002.

190. Edashige, K., Yamaji, Y., Kleinhans, F.W., and Kasai, M., Artificial expression of aquaporin-3 improves the survival of mouse oocytes after cryopreservation, *Biol. Reprod.*, 68, 2003.

191. Hagedorn, M., Lance, S., Fonseca, D., Kleinhans, F., Artimov, D., Fleischer, R., Hoque, A., Hamilton, M., and Pukazhenthis, B., Altering fish embryos with aquaporin-3: An essential step toward successful cryopreservation, *Biol. Reprod.*, 67, 961, 2002.

192. Lance, S.L., Peterson, A.S., and Hagedorn, M., Developmental expression of aquaporin-3 in zebrafish embryos, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol. C. Tox. Pharmacol.*, 138, 251, 2004.

193. Zhang, T. and Rawson, D.M., Studies on chilling sensitivity of zebrafish (*Brachydanio rerio*) embryos, *Cryobiology*, 32, 239, 1995.

194. Dinnyés, A., Urbányi, B., Baranyai, B., and Magyary, I., Chilling sensitivity of carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) embryos at different developmental stages in the presence or absence of cryoprotectants: Work in progress, *Theriogenology*, 50, 1, 1998.

195. Dinnyés, A., Urbányi, B., Baranyai, B., and Magyary, I., Chilling sensitivity of carp (*Cryprinus carpio*) embryos in different stages and the protective effect of sucrose, *Theriogenology*, 396, .

196. Ahammad, M.M., Bhattacharyya, D., and Jana, B.B., The hatching of common carp (*Cyprinus carpio* L.) embryos in response to exposure to different concentration of cryoprotectant at low temperatures, *Cryobiology*, 44, 114, 2002.

197. Ahammad, M.M., Bhattacharyya, D., and Jana, B.B., Effect of different concentrations of cryoprotectants and extender on the hatching of Indian major carp embryos (*Labeo rohita, Catla catla*, and *Cirrhinus mrigala*) stored at low temperature, *Cryobiology,* 37, 318, 1998.

198. Zhang, T., Liu, X.-H., and Rawson, D.M., Effects of methanol and developmental arrest on chilling injury in zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) embryos, *Theriogenology*, 59, 1545, 2003.

199. Hagedorn, M., Kleinhans, F.W., Wildt, D.E., and Rall, W.F., Chill sensitivity and cryoprotectant permeability of dechorionated zebrafish embryos, *Brachydanio rerio*, *Cryobiology*, 34, 251, 1997.

200. Arii, N., Suzuki, T., Takai, R., and Kozima, T.T., Tolerance of fish eggs to dimethyl sulfoxide as the cryoprotectant, *J. Tokyo Univ. Fish*, 79, 121, 1992.

201. Robertson, S.M., Lawrence, A.L., Neill, W.H., Arnold, C.R., and McCarty, G., Toxicity of the cryoprotectants glycerol, DMSO, ethylene glycol, methanol, sucrose and sea salt solutions to the embryos of the Red Drum, *Prog. Fish. Cult.*, 50, 148, 1988.

202. Zhang, X.S., Zhao, L., Hua, T.C., and Zhu, H.Y., A study on the cryopreservation of common carp (*Cryprinus carpio*) embryos, *Cryo-Lett.*, 10, 271, 1989.

203. Zhang, T., Rawson, D.M., and Morris, G.J., Cryopreservation of pre-hatch embryos of zebrafish (*Brachydanio rerio*), *Aquat. Living Resource*, 6, 145, 1993.

204. Liu, K-C., Chou, T-C., and Lin, H-D., Cryosurvival of goldfish embryos after subzero freezing, *Aquat Living Resource*, 6, 63, 1993.

205. Zhang, T. and Rawson, D.M., Feasibility studies on vitrification of intact zebrafish (*Brachydanio rerio*) embryos, *Cryobiology*, 33, 1, 1996.

206. Hagedorn, M., Peterson, A., Mazur, P., and Kleinhans, F.W., High nucleation temperature of zebrafish embryos: Slow freezing is not an option, *Cryobiology,* 49, 181, 2004.

207. Zhang, L., Lu, D., Liu, L., Guo, F., and Zhang, J., Cryopreservation of loach, *Misgurnus anguillicaudatus*, embryos by vitrification, *J. Fish China/Shuichan Xuebao,* 26, 213, 2002.

208. Robles, V., Cabrita, E., Fletcher, G.L., Shears, M.A., King, M.J., and Herraez, M.P., Vitrification assays with embryos from a cold tolerant sub-artic fish species, *Theriogenology*, 64, 1633, 2005.

209. Chen, S.L. and Tian, X.S., Cryopreservation of flounder (Paralichthys Olivaceus) embryos by vitrification, *Theriogenology*, 63, 1207, 2005.

210. Cabrita, E., Robles, V., Chereguini, O., de Paz, P., Anel, L., and Herraéz, M.P., Dimethyl sulfoxide influx in turbot embryos exposed to a vitrification protocol, *Theriogenology*, 60, 463, 2003.

211. Robles, V., Cabrita, E., Real, M., Álvarez, R., and Herráez, M.P., Vitrification of turbot embryos: Preliminary assays, *Cryobiology*, 47, 30, 2003.

212. Liu, X.-H., Zhang, T., and Rawson, D.M., Feasibility of vitrificaition of zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) embryos using methanol, *Cryo-Lett.,* 19, 309, 1998.

213. Cabrita, E., Robles, V., Chereguini, J.C., Wallace, J.C., and Herráez, M.P., Effect of different cryoprotectants and vitrificant solutions on the hatching rate of turbot embryos (*Scophthalmus maximus*), *Cryobiology*, 47, 204, 2003.

214. Suzuki, H., Komada, R., Takai, K., and Kozima, T.T., Relation between toxicity of cryoprotectant Me$_2$SO and its concentration in several fish embryos, *Fish Sci.*, 61, 193, 1995.

215. Harvey, B., Cooling of embryonic cells, isolated blastomeres, and intact embryos of the zebrafish *Brachydanio rerio* to −196ºC, *Cryobiology*, 20, 440, 1983.

216. Yu, R., Hagen, A., and Omholt, S.W., Cryopreservation of totipotent nuclei from honeybee (*Apis mellifera*) embryos by rapid freezing, *Cryobiology*, 35, 41, 1997.

217. Hong, Y., Winkler, C., and Schartl., M., Production of medakafish chimeras from a stable stem cell line, *Proc. Nat'l. Acad. Sci. USA*, 95, 3679, 1998.

218. Takeuchi, Y., Yoshizaki, G., and Takeuchi, T., Generation of live fry from intrperitoneally transplanted primordial germ cells in rainbow trout, *Biol. Reprod*, 69, 1142, 2003.

219. Naito, M., Cryopreservation of avian germline cells and subsequent production of viable offspring, *J. Poultry Sci.*, 40, 1, 2003.

220. Leveroni Calvi, S. and Maisse, G., Cryopreservation of rainbow trout (*Onchorhynchus mykiss*) blastomeres: Influence of embryo stage on postthaw survival, *Cryobiology*, 36, 255, 1998.

221. Leveroni Calvi, S. and Maisse, G., Cryopreservation of carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) blastomeres, *Aquat. Living Res.*, 12, 71, 1999.

222. Strussmann, H., Nakatsugawa, F., Takashima, M., Hasobe, M., Suzuki, T., and Takai, R., Cryopreservation of isolated fish blastomeres: Effects of cell stage, cryoprotectant concentration, and cooling rate on postthawing survival, *Cryobiology*, 39, 252, 1999.

223. Kusuda, S., Teranishi, T., and Nobuhisa, K., Cryopreservation of chum salmon blastomeres by the straw method, *Cryobiology*, 45, 60, 2002.

224. Chelmonska, A.B., Pokorny, P., and Wojciechowski, A., Cryopreservation of chicken blastoderm cells, *Anim. Sci. Papers Rep.*, 15, 73, 1997.

224. Naito, M., Tajima, A., Tagami, T., Yasuda, Y., and Kuwana, T., Preservation of chick primordial germ cells in liquid nitrogen and subsequent production of viable offspring, *J. Reprod. Fertil.*, 102, 321, 1994.

226. Pokorny, P., Obtaining chicken chimeras after injecting cryopreserved blastoderm cells into the subgerminal cavity of recipient embryos, *Anim. Sci. Papers and Rep.*, 20, 55, 2002.

227. Yu, R., Hagen, A., and Omholt, S.W., Biopsied preblastoderm honeybee embryos develop into normal honeybee queens, *Apidologie*, 29, 547, 1998.

228. Mochida, Y., Takemura, Y., Kanda, T., and Horie, Y., Fertilized eggs obtained from transplantation of frozen ovaries and parthenogenesis in combination with artificial insemination of frozen semen of the silkworm, *Bombyx mori*, *Cryobiology*, 46, 153, 2003.

229. Shinbo, H., Survival of larval ovaries and testes frozen in liquid nitrogen in the silkworm *Bombyx mori*, *Cryobiology*, 26, 399, 1969.

11 The Use of Intracellular Protectants in Cell Biopreservation

Jason P. Acker

CONTENTS

11.1   INTRODUCTION

The clinical and commercial need for effective preservation and long-term storage technologies has been the impetus for recent advances in the preservation sciences. As our understanding of hypothermic storage, *in vitro* culture, cryopreservation, and dry storage continues to improve,[1] so does our ability to preserve the functional viability of cells, tissues, and organs and extend the *ex vivo* storage of these biological systems. The rapid development and adoption of cell-based therapeutics and biotechnologies is challenging current dogma and promoting the development of innovative means to protect and preserve biologics.

299

Since the discovery of the protective effects of glycerol[2] and dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO)[3] more than 50 years ago scientists and clinicians have used these agents almost exclusively for the protection of cells and tissues from low-temperature injury. Although these "penetrating" or "permeant" cryoprotectants have been shown to be effective, both are toxic at high concentrations and must be removed before the cells or tissues can be used.[4,5] While other cryoprotectants have been proposed over the years, including nonpermeant polymers and sugars,[6–8] very few have been adopted for use in clinical and/or commercial biopreservation. As the focus of applied biopreservation has moved away from traditional cryopreservation techniques and is focusing more on newer techniques like vitrification, desiccation, and advanced hypothermic storage, the limits of current cell protectants have been made increasingly apparent. A renewed interest in the development of novel cell protectants and methods for cell protection has led to new compounds and new classes of molecules for use in the preservation sciences.

Studies have shown that in the absence of traditional cryoprotectants, comparable levels of cryoprotection can be achieved using low concentrations of intracellular molecules. Recently, low concentrations of intracellular sugars have been shown to be cryoprotective[9,10] and enhance the desiccation tolerance of mammalian cells.[11,12] While traditional permeant cryoprotectants have been used to protect the cell, these recent studies are unique in that naturally nonpermeant molecules were used to enhance the post-thaw or post-rehydration recovery of cells. These "intracellular protectants" challenge our current understanding of the mechanisms of cell injury and protection. Developing our understanding of intracellular protectants may give us new means to test current ideas on cell injury and may provide new ways to protect cells and tissues from the damaging stresses encountered during extended storage. This chapter will review our current understanding of intracellular protectants and the proposed mechanisms of action of these molecules, and will highlight the technical challenges facing the use of intracellular protectants in cell and tissue biopreservation.

11.2 CELL PROTECTANTS

Protecting cells from the physicochemical changes that occur during freezing, thawing, dehydration, and rehydration has focused on the use of permeant and nonpermeant chemical protectants. As there are a number of excellent book chapters[13–17] and review articles[8,18–22] that summarize the current understanding of the fundamental principles of traditional cryoprotection and lyoprotection, only a brief synopsis of this topic will be presented to provide a framework for discussions on the potential effects of intracellular protectants.

The protective effects of permeant, relatively nontoxic protectants such as dimethyl sulfoxide and glycerol have been attributed to both nonspecific colligative effects and solute-specific changes in solution properties and interactions with biomolecules. Lovelock was the first to propose that excessive concentration of intra- and extracellular electrolytes during slow freezing was responsible for cell injury and that permeant cryoprotective agents colligatively reduce the concentration of damaging electrolytes at a given subzero temperature.[23,24] Studies by Mazur and colleagues on the fraction of the intra- and extracellular solution that remains unfrozen during slow freezing provided an alternative perspective on the colligative effects of permeant protectants.[25–28] They proposed that permeant protectants increase the unfrozen intra- and extracellular fraction, thereby reducing the physical and biochemical effects that occur due to close contact of the cells concentrated in the unfrozen fraction,[28] interaction of cells with the encroaching ice,[25,29] and/or damaging concentration of intracellular organelles and biomolecules.[30] Alternatively, Pegg and Diaper have suggested that permeant protectants function to reduce the extent of cell volume change during slow freezing and thawing.[31,32] The magnitude of the cell volume change will be less during freezing when cells are equilibrated with increasing concentrations of permeant protectants. While it has been difficult to experimentally resolve these competing theories, it is clear that the colligative effect of permeant protectants during slow freezing is consistent with the observed protective effect of these molecules.

Solute-specific changes to solution properties and biomolecules can also account for the protective effects of permeant chemicals.[33,34] For example, the viscosity of a freeze-concentrated solution will increase due to the rapid increase in solute concentrations and the absolute reduction in temperature. As the viscosity of the amorphous phase is dependent on the specific solutes (protectants) that are present, at any given subzero temperature, large differences in intra- and extracellular solution viscosities will exist in samples frozen with different protectants.[35] Morris et al. have concluded from their work on the effects of the high viscosities that develop during freezing in glycerol that water diffusion becomes a limiting factor that negatively affects the low-temperature response of cells.[36] The effect of viscosity on intracellular ice formation and intracellular devitrification has also shown that critical solute-specific changes in the physicochemical properties of the solution will contribute to the protective effect of permeant cryoprotectants.[37–39]

In addition to solute-specific effects on solution viscosity, differences in the water binding capacity (solute/solvent interactions) of individual cryoprotectants will impact their effectiveness at depressing the solution freezing point.[34] The ability for different protectants to preferentially interact or become excluded from proteins and phospholipids has also been used to explain the solute-specific effects of permeant (and impermeant) cryoprotectants.[40,41] While numerous other examples exist where solute-specific effects on the physicochemical properties of solutions have been described, the challenge in understanding permeant protectants is to reconcile the colligative/volumetric observations with emerging physicochemical data.

The mechanism(s) of protection for nonpermeant protectants are not as well described as those for permeant protectants. However, one of the major observations of permeant and nonpermeant protectants is that nonpermeant protectants are effective at markedly lower concentrations than those required of permeant protectants. For example, 11.5% w/w (~50 μM) of the impermeant hydroxyethyl starch (HES) has been shown to protect red blood cells during freezing whereas 3–4 M glycerol is required for protection.[42–44] As most of the effective nonpermeable protectants are long-chain polymers, polypeptides, or carbohydrates, it has been suggested that they function to dehydrate the cell prior to freezing, thereby reducing the amount of intracellular water and the probability of intracellular ice formation during rapid cooling.[20,45] Alternatively, the efficiency of impermeant protectants may also be attributed to the effects of these molecules on the physicochemical properties of solutions and their effectiveness at biomolecular stabilization.

Whether permeant or impermeant, one of the major criteria for an effective protectant is that it be nontoxic at physiological temperatures. However, the rapid addition or removal of high concentrations of protectants can generate damaging cell volume fluctuations[46,47] that can be exacerbated by the rapid fluctuations of the intra- and/or extracellular concentration of protectants in unfrozen compartments during freezing and thawing.[23,48–50] Innovative protocols have therefore been developed to minimize protectant toxicity by delaying cell exposure to high protectant concentrations to lower temperatures and to avoid damaging osmotic volume excursions through gradient or stepwise addition and removal processes. Collectively this work on the identification and characterization of permeant and impermeant molecules and their application has led to the current state of clinical and commercial biopreservation.

11.3 INTRACELLULAR PROTECTANTS

The origin of the use of intracellular protectants in biopreservation comes from studies on the adaptive strategies developed in natural systems that survive desiccation and freezing. A variety of plant, insect, invertebrate, and vertebrate species have demonstrated the capacity to accumulate high concentrations of amphiphilic solutes,[51,52] proteins,[52,53] and/or disaccharides[14,54,55] in preparation for or response to severe environments. In 1975 Madin and Crowe reported that the nematode *Aphelenchus avenae* accumulated large amounts of trehalose in response to desiccation.[56] This finding prompted Crowe to actively investigate the mechanism by which trehalose protected cells during desiccation. He found that trehalose could be used to preserve the structure of liposomes

and proteins during freeze-drying.[57,58] However, for trehalose to be maximally effective at protecting liposomes against the damaging effects of desiccation and dry storage it needed to be present on both sides of the membrane.[57] The protective effect of inducing intracellular trehalose expression has subsequently been demonstrated by the successful freeze-drying of naturally desiccation-sensitive bacteria,[59] yeast,[60] and plant cells.[61]

The use of intracellular sugars for the preservation of mammalian cells and tissues was first reported by Beattie and colleagues when they demonstrated the protective effect of intracellular trehalose and dimethyl sulfoxide on the cryopreservation of pancreatic islets.[10] To date, intracellular trehalose has been used to cryopreserve and/or desiccate human and porcine platelets,[12,62,63] fibroblasts,[9] keratinocytes,[9] human[64] and mouse oocytes,[65] kidney cells,[11] hematopoietic[66] and mesenchymal stem cells,[67] and red blood cells.[68]

While the majority of the reports on the use of intracellular protectants in mammalian cell preservation have focused on the use of intracellular sucrose and trehalose, other impermeant substances have been used as intracellular protectants. For example, artificially elevated levels of intracellular potassium have been used to protect red blood cells during freezing and thawing.[46,69] Recently, the formation of innocuous intracellular ice in confluent cell monolayers has also been suggested as a novel "intracellular cryoprotectant."[70,71] Finally, the microinjection of naturally occurring antifreeze proteins or the genes coding for antifreeze proteins into fish oocytes has been used to enhance the hypothermic storage and/or cryopreservation of aquatic species used in aquaculture.[72]

The molecules that are being developed for use as intracellular protectants have, in most cases, been used unsuccessfully in the past as impermeant cryoprotectants. However, when present intracellularly, these normally nonpermeant molecules provide extraordinary protection to cells. As we learn more about the natural systems that employ intracellular protectants in their adaptive survival strategies, we will gain a better appreciation of why these molecules function so effectively when present intracellularly.

11.4   INTRACELLULAR PROTECTANTS: PROPOSED MECHANISMS OF ACTION

The mechanism(s) by which intracellular protectants stabilize cells during cryopreservation and desiccation has not been resolved. As intracellular trehalose and sucrose have been the most actively studied intracellular protectant to date, much of our current understanding has evolved from our elucidation of the protective effects of these sugars. Studies have focused on the interaction of intracellular protectants with biological molecules and supramolecular structures to afford stability,[58,73] the effect of intracellular protectants on the solution properties of the cell cytoplasm,[14,74,75] and the modulating effect that intracellular protectants have on the volumetric response of cells.[76–78] An examination of each of these areas of research will provide some insight into the complex behavior of intracellular protectants and the role these molecules can have in cell and tissue preservation.

11.4.1   BIOMOLECULAR STABILIZATION

It has been proposed that protectants function to stabilize proteins and phospholipids during freezing and drying through preferential exclusion or direct interaction, respectively.[14] Timasheff and colleagues have argued that protective molecules such as trehalose and glycerol stabilize the native conformation of proteins in aqueous solutions by preferentially hydrating denatured, unfolded proteins.[79,80] The "preferential exclusion" of protective molecules from the surface of the native proteins is seen to be more thermodynamically favorable than the exposure of peptide groups that occurs during denaturation.[81] As a result, protective molecules not only prevent protein unfolding, but function to stabilize the native conformation of proteins in solution. Work by Crowe and

colleagues has shown that the preferential exclusion of a wide range of molecules from the surface of lactate dehydrogenase is consistent with the protection afforded by these molecules during freezing and thawing[82] and can be used to explain the temperature-dependent toxicity of cryoprotectants.[40] The protective effects of preferential exclusion of protectants is not limited to proteins as it has been demonstrated that the preferential exclusion of dimethyl sulfoxide can modulate the phase behavior of phospholipids.[83] The stabilizing effect of preferential exclusion of cryoprotectants can account for the diversity of the molecules that confer cryoprotection[14,82] and the broad range of biomolecules that must be targeted for the successful preservation of cells and tissues.

During desiccation and dry storage it has been proposed that protective molecules directly interact with biomolecules to maintain native structure and function.[14,84,85] The removal of bulk water and the water of hydration around proteins and phospholipids destabilizes the molecules and negates any potential thermodynamic benefit of preferential exclusion. Studies on the effects of drying on proteins, liposomes, and natural membranes have shown that protective molecules like trehalose directly bind to and stabilize sites normally occupied by water.[86,87] This "water replacement hypothesis" has been used to explain the reduction in the phase transition temperature of phospholipids and the maintenance of normal protein conformations following extreme desiccation.[84,85] The direct interaction between the protectant and the biomolecules suggests that specific protectants will be more effective than others at stabilizing different biomolecules during desiccation and dry storage. This is demonstrated by the effectiveness of disaccharides over other sugars and polymers at stabilizing dry phospholipids and can be attributed to the unique interaction of these protectants with the phospholipids head group.[88]

Biomolecular stabilization of proteins and phospholipids is consistent with the observation that maximum cellular protection during freezing and desiccation occurs when protectants are present on both sides of the plasma membrane. In a simple model system like liposomes, protective molecules must be able to interact with both the intra- and extraliposomal membrane surfaces to minimize damaging lipid phase transitions. In cellular systems, the ability for protective molecules to physically interact with intra- and extracytoplasmic proteins and phospholipids (and membrane bound organelles) is required if biostabilization is to be achieved. While the complexity and specificity of the interactions that occur between intracellular protectants and biomolecules is an ongoing area of research, developing effective techniques for the intracellular delivery of these protective molecules will be essential if they are to be used in biopreservation.

11.4.2 PHYSICOCHEMICAL EFFECTS OF INTRACELLULAR PROTECTANTS

The effect of intracellular protectants like sucrose and trehalose on intra- and extracellular solution properties and the correlation of these properties with cell preservation has been the subject of intense interest. Studies on intracellular protection have focused on three areas: the vitrification of intra- and extracellular solutions due to the high glass transition temperatures of protectants, the ability for protectants to form crystalline hydrates, and the destructuring effect of protectants on water. Each of these properties has been correlated with the stabilizing effect of intracellular protectants.

The low molecular mobility in amorphous, glassy states has been shown to protect biomolecules from damage during freezing and desiccation.[89–91] Degradation reactions are significantly slower in a glassy state than in aqueous solution,[92] and labile molecules such as proteins can retain their native conformations during storage.[90] Extensive studies on sugars and other protectants have shown that there is a correlation between the temperature at which the transition from liquid to viscous, glassy state (Tg) occurs and the stabilization of biomolecules.[93,94] The ability of low concentrations of sugars and proteins to promote the formation of an intracellular glassy state can contribute to the stability of cells during low temperature and dry storage.

The formation of crystalline hydrates during storage of biologics under nonideal conditions has been proposed as a means of maintaining the high Tg of amorphous sugar solutions.[95] For

example, Crowe et al. have suggested that the crystalline dihydrate structure of trehalose is responsible for the observed maintenance of a high glass transition temperature in dried trehalose solutions exposed to increasing concentrations of water.[21] Crystallized dihydrates of protectant molecules can therefore function to minimize the interaction of the remaining amorphous solution with water, hence maintaining the stability of the vitrified system.

Finally, it has been shown that intracellular protectants like trehalose affect the overall structuring of water in the system. Molecular dynamic simulations of the aqueous properties of trehalose demonstrate that this protective molecule is highly effective at destabilizing water structure,[96–98] which may be due to its large radius of hydration.[99] Branca et al. have proposed that this destructuring of water by trehalose functions to reduce the amount of freezable water, thereby obstructing the crystallization process.[100] By affecting the dynamics of the interaction of water with biomolecules, intracellular protectants may promote vitrification and/or enhance the stabilization of the biomolecules through "preferential exclusion."[14,81]

While the relative importance of each of the observed changes in the physicochemical properties of solutions to cryo- and lyoprotection have not been resolved, it is clear that further research is required. As new intracellular protectants are identified from natural systems or synthetically derived, thorough analysis of the physicochemical properties will be required to better understand the mechanism of protection and hence optimize clinical and commercial application of the protectants.

11.4.3 INTRACELLULAR PROTECTANTS AND CELL VOLUMETRIC RESPONSE

It has been proposed that cell damage during dehydrating events such as freezing and dehydration is a result of the cells dropping below a "minimum critical volume" (MCV).[8,101,102] While the mechanism by which damage occurs when cells undergo excessive cell shrinkage has not been resolved,[23,48–50,103–105] membrane damage has been identified as one of the primary sites of cell injury.[105] We have previously suggested that the presence of intracellular protectants may protect cells during freezing and drying by buffering lethal osmotic fluctuations and changes in cell volume, minimizing damage to intracellular structures and organelles.[106,107]

The idea that intracellular protectants can function to protect cells by modulating the cell volumetric response during dehydrating stresses was first proposed by Meryman in 1971 and subsequently demonstrated by Williams and Shaw in 1980.[8,69] Williams et al. proposed that if cells could be loaded with solutes so that they remained isotonic at higher extracellular osmolality then the cell would be injured at either an absolute electrolyte concentration or a minimum critical volume but not both. By exposing valinomycin-treated human red blood cells to hypertonic (800 mOsm) KCl, Williams et al. showed that cells were able to tolerate exposure to much higher extracellular solutes before lysis occurred. They concluded that "any solute, electrolyte, or nonelectrolyte which can enter the red cell under hypertonic stress will reduce that stress and reduce the severity of hyperosmotic injury."[69]

What Meryman, Williams, and Shaw demonstrated was that cell damage could be mitigated during cell dehydration by artificially reducing the magnitude of the resulting cell volume change by increasing intracellular osmolarity. Other intracellular protectants may function in a similar manner as that observed for intracellular potassium. Work with intracellular trehalose has shown that by modulating the osmolarity of the intracellular solution it is possible to enhance the desiccation tolerance of mammalian cells.[106] Fibroblasts exposed to 0.2 M intra- and extracellular sugar solutions with a total osmolarity of ~300 mOsm/kg and then dried to low residual moisture levels showed improved recovery following rehydration compared to cells exposed to 0.2 M intra- and extracellular sugar solutions that were unmodified (528 mOsm/kg). In this work we hypothesized that the magnitude of the cell volume change and exposure to intracellular solute concentrations would be lower in fibroblasts dried in the "isotonic" sugar solutions than for fibroblasts desiccated

in the "hypertonic" sugar solutions. From this work, we propose that intracellular protectants may function to alter the osmotically inactive fraction of the intracellular compartment and hence reduce the magnitude and rate of water loss from cells during freezing and drying.

It has been shown that sugars can increase the osmotically inactive fraction of cells. In an effort to develop a more rapid method for the quantification of intracellular sugar concentration, we used electronic cell sizing to measure the equilibrium cell volume of mouse fibroblasts loaded with intracellular trehalose.[76] As equilibrium cell volume is dependent on the ratio of intra- and extracellular solute concentrations, we hypothesized that changing the intracellular concentration by adding sugars will alter this balance and establish a new equilibrium cell volume. We observed that cell shrinkage in hypertonic solutions was buffered by the added presence of intracellular trehalose in an amount proportional to the theoretically expected intracellular sugar concentration. In a separate study, the microinjection of 0.1 M trehalose, glucose, or stachyose into mouse oocytes was shown to increase the osmotically inactive volume of the oocyte by 1–2%, which was in agreement with the expected theoretical increase.[78] While further experimentation is required to verify these observations, it would appear that intracellular protectants do affect the osmotically inactive fraction of cells.

Using computer simulations to study the low-temperature response of a human hematopoietic stem cell line, we have examined the effect of intra- and extracellular sugars on the osmotic response of cells and the predicted incidence of cell injury.[77,108] Simulations predicted that trehalose would affect the incidence of cell injury in a concentration-dependent manner, that trehalose would be required on both sides of the membrane for optimal protection, and that the effective concentration for trehalose would be much less than the effective concentration of DMSO. We further found that the predicted conditions for optimal post-thaw recovery of a hematopoietic cell line were in strong agreement with the reported experimental data of Buchanan et al.[66] Our analysis of the cell volume response in the presence of intra- and extracellular trehalose also suggested that the presence of 0.1–0.3 molal intracellular trehalose was very effective at reducing the magnitude of cell shrinkage that occurs during freezing.[77] We have concluded from this theoretical analysis of the effects of intracellular trehalose that intracellular protectants may function to modulate the osmotic response of cells during the early phases of freezing and drying when the cell is neither in a glassy state nor at a point where "water replacement" is required for biomolecular stabilization. Further experimentation is required to develop and test this osmotic mechanism for cell protection by intracellular agents.

11.4.4 Summary of Mechanisms of Protection

Although our understanding of the stabilizing effect of intracellular protectants is evolving, it has been proposed that intracellular protectants such as trehalose function in a similar manner as traditional permeating cryoprotectants.[66,77,109] Intracellular protectants are capable of stabilizing biomolecules, altering the physicochemical properties of the intra- and extracellular solutions, and affecting the osmotic response of cells during freezing and drying. Similarly, these mechanisms have also been attributed to the protective actions of permeant cryoprotectants such as DMSO. The advantage of intracellular protectants such as trehalose has been the fact that lower concentrations of these molecules are required to achieve levels of cryo- and lyoprotection similar to traditional permeant protectants.[64,66] This may be partially attributed to the superior physicochemical properties of the sugars currently being developed as intracellular protectants. As it is clear that multiple mechanisms contribute to the protective effect of intracellular protectants, further research is required to better understand these mechanisms for the clinical and commercial application of these agents to be fully realized.

11.5 LOADING OF PROTECTANTS INTO CELLS

Among the key impediments to using intracellular protectants in the biopreservation of cellular systems has been the inherent impermeability of the plasma membrane to large molecular weight and/or charged molecules. In the absence of specific pathways for the facilitated transport of macromolecules across biomembranes, the phospholipid bilayer, glycocalyx, and cell wall of eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells provide a formidable barrier for the cytoplasmic accumulation of sugars, polymers, and other potentially protective compounds. A number of innovative approaches have been developed over the past 10–15 years to overcome the impermeability of cell membranes and/or facilitate intracellular accumulation of normally impermeable molecules (Figure 11.1). Many of these techniques have been used recently to load intracellular protectants and improve the low-temperature response and/or desiccation tolerance of mammalian cells. These methods are discussed below.

11.5.1 REVERSIBLE TRANSMEMBRANE PORE FORMATION

Membrane channels and pores provide conduits for the physiological and pathological transport of molecules across the lipid bilayer in eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells. The formation of transmembrane channels or pores in mammalian cells has been used as a technique to increase the intracellular accumulation of protective molecules. The three different approaches that have been demonstrated to date include: genetic modification of cells to express nonnative pores, stimulation of innate pores,

Reversible Transmembrane Pores | Endocytosis | Genetic Engineering

Temperature-Induced Permeabilization | Microinjection | Electroporation

Osmotic Shock | Laser Permeabilization | Liposome Delivery
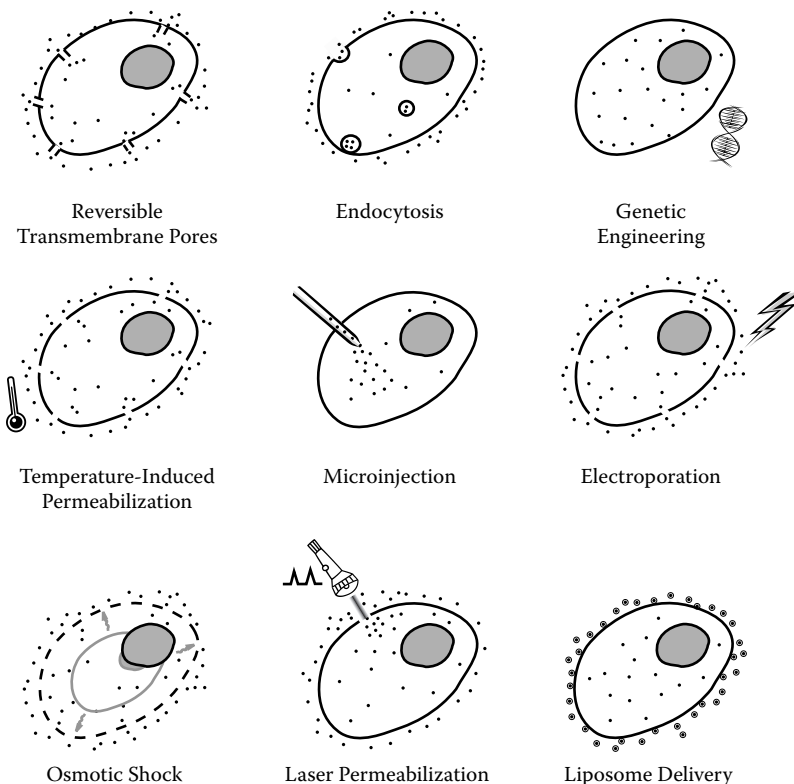
FIGURE 11.1 Schematic representation of the innovative approaches currently being applied or developed to overcome the impermeability of cell membranes and facilitate the intracellular accumulation of normally impermeable molecules.

and extracellular addition of pore-forming proteins. Each of these methods has been shown to be effective at enhancing the cytoplasmic accumulation of protective macromolecules.

Water-channel proteins (aquaporins) have a significant role in regulating the permeability of animal and plant cells.[110,111] While many members of the aquaporin family are highly selective for water transport, aquaporin-3 is one example where cotransport of water and other small molecules has been demonstrated.[112] Through the microinjection of aquaporin mRNA into *Xenopus* oocytes, Preston et al. demonstrated that cell water permeability can be greatly enhanced in cells that do not normally express these proteins.[113] To improve the cryopreservation efficiency of zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) embryos, Hagedorn et al. demonstrated that the microinjection of the aquaporin-3 mRNA resulted in the stable expression of the aquaporin-3 channel and a significant increase in the accumulation of propylene glycol in the yolk of developing zebrafish.[114] Zebrafish embryos expressing aquaporin-3 displayed a 6-fold increase in water permeability and a 2.5-fold increase in the permeability to propylene glycol. As the aquaporin-3 protein expression diminished 4 d after transfection, this method provides for a readily reversible means to introduce protective molecules into cells and tissues.[115] Overcoming the inherent permeability barriers within the developing zebrafish embryos through the induced expression of aquaporin-3 demonstrates that expression of nonnative pores can be used for the intracellular accumulation of protective molecules. As other classes of protein channels and pores are investigated, this technique may develop into a powerful method for the controlled introduction of protective molecules into cells and tissues.

Purinergic receptors are a class of native ion channels involved in cell signaling that are found in neurons, glia, epithelia, bone, muscle, and hematological tissues.[116] Stimulation of intrinsic purinergic receptors using ATP has recently been shown to be useful for the reversible permeabilization and introduction of small water-soluble molecules into mammalian cells.[117,118] Of the seven subtypes of the P2X-purinergic transmembrane cation channels, P2X7 receptors have been shown to slowly dilate in the presence of continuous ATP stimulation.[119,120] By stimulating P2X7 receptors on J774 mouse macrophages with extracellular ATP, Elliott et al. have demonstrated the use of these receptors for the controlled loading of trehalose into mammalian cells.[121] The intracellular accumulation of approximately 100 mM trehalose upon exposure to ATP for 2 h was shown to enhance the desiccation tolerance of mouse macrophages. The stimulation of purinergic receptors is one example of the use of innate pores for the controlled introduction of protective molecules into mammalian cells. Other examples include the use of glucose receptors for the transport of sugar molecules into red blood cells prior to desiccation[122] and for the transport of nonmetabolized glucose into fibroblasts prior to cryopreservation,[123] the use of a trehalose/H^+ symporter for the transport of trehalose in yeast,[14] and the use of the mitochondrial permeability transition pore to load trehalose inside individual mitochondria.[124,125]

Pore-forming toxins produced by virulent bacteria bind to and permeabilize cell membranes resulting in cytolysis.[126] The use of the hemolytic toxin produced from *Staphylococcus aureus* has been another approach that has been used to load trehalose and other sugars into mammalian cells. Genetic modification of the primary sequence of the heptameric α-hemolysin has been used to control the reversible permeabilization of the plasma membrane of mammalian cells.[127,128] Monomers of the genetically modified α-hemolysin, upon introduction into lipid bilayers, form uniform 2 nm diameter, transmembrane pores that can be reversibly opened and closed through the addition and chelation of micromolar concentrations of divalent cations.[128–130] Previous studies on the self-assembly of this genetically modified protein[129] and on the structure of α-hemolysin[131] have resulted in a detailed understanding of the mechanism by which this protein functions to porate mammalian cells. As a monomer, this 293-amino acid polypeptide spontaneously binds to the plasma membrane and forms a heptameric prepore complex with other bound monomers. Membrane insertion follows oligomerization and results in the formation of a functional pore.[132]

Genetically engineered α-hemolysin has been used in the development of techniques for both the cryopreservation[9] and desiccation[106,107] of mammalian cells. Eroglu and coworkers have shown that the introduction of low concentrations of trehalose (0.2 M) using H5 α-hemolysin resulted in

a significant improvement in the post-thaw recovery of rapidly frozen fibroblasts and keratinocytes.[9] Critical to the survival of the porated and frozen cells was the ability to selectively close the pores using zinc ions following the loading of intracellular trehalose. Genetically modified α-hemolysin has also been used effectively to load lyoprotective concentrations of trehalose into fibroblasts with the subsequent demonstration of a high percentage (>75%) of fibroblasts with intact membranes following dehydration and storage for up to 90 d at –20°C.[107] Quantitative measurement of intracellular trehalose concentrations using gas chromatography/mass spectroscopy (GC–MS) has shown that the switchable characteristics of α-hemolysin provide an excellent means to regulate the permeabilization of hepatocytes, fibroblasts, and sperm cells and control the accumulation and removal of intracellular trehalose.[133] As advances continue to be made in the engineering of new, highly selective pore-forming complexes[134] there will be an increasing interest in the use of these agents to shuttle protective molecules across biological membranes.

11.5.2 MICROINJECTION OF CELL PROTECTANTS

Cell microinjection is the process whereby micrometer-sized glass micropipettes are used for the transmembrane delivery of molecules into the cell cytoplasm. This technology is most commonly used for the *in vitro* manipulation of human and nonhuman reproductive cells and tissues but is being increasingly adopted for use in targeted gene therapy and single-cell manipulation. Microinjection is well suited for the loading of high concentrations of large molecules into individual cells. Microinjection has recently been used to overcome the permeability barrier of human and mouse oocytes[64,65,78,135] and zebrafish embryos[136] to nonpermeant cryoprotectants. By carefully controlling the injection conditions, accurate loading of precise amounts of trehalose into mouse oocytes has been demonstrated with no apparent effect on development.[65] The microinjection of small amounts of intracellular trehalose (0.15 M), in the absence of any other cryoprotectant, has been shown to afford significant protection to cryopreserved human oocytes.[64] It has further been shown that there is a progressive reduction of intracellular trehalose concentrations in developing embryos, which provides a convenient means for diluting out the intracellular protectant.[135] Studies on the volumetric behavior of mouse oocytes injected with glucose, trehalose, and stachyose exposed to hypertonic salt solutions demonstrate that microinjection of intracellular sugars can be used to modulate the osmotic response of cells.[78] Microinjecting propylene glycol and DMSO into zebrafish embryos has also been shown to be an effective way to increase the intrayolk concentration of these cryoprotectants; however, these cryoprotectants were unable to protect the embryos during rapid freezing.[136] While microinjection is inherently a very tedious procedure that is difficult to scale up for use with large numbers of cells, for specific applications it is a useful method by which the permeability barrier of biomembranes to protectants can be overcome.

11.5.3 TEMPERATURE-INDUCED MEMBRANE PERMEABILIZATION

Phospholipid bilayers undergo liquid crystalline to gel phase transitions at well-defined temperatures. As not all phospholipids undergo a phase change at exactly the same temperature, lateral phase separation of phospholipids within a biomembrane can occur.[137] A transient increase in the permeability of the plasma membrane to solutes occurs during this thermotropic phase transition.[138] In the context of cryopreservation, this phenomenon is also known as thermal shock due to the temperature-associated colloidal osmotic lysis of sensitive cells that often accompanies this transient permeabilization.[139,140]

Temperature-induced membrane permeabilization has been used to load sugars into mammalian cells prior to their cryopreservation and/or desiccation. One of the first demonstrations of the use of this technique was by Beattie and co-workers, who demonstrated that the intracellular accumulation of radiolabelled trehalose in pancreatic islet cells coincided with a lipid phase transition that occurred between 5 and 9°C.[10] Exposure to 300 mM extracellular trehalose and 10% DMSO during

slow cooling to –40°C was shown to enhance the post-thaw recovery of islet cell function. Other examples of the use of thermotropic lipid phase transitions for transient cell permeabilization include temperature cycling human fibroblasts between 0 and 37°C to increase the uptake of trehalose prior to desiccation;[67] disruption of membrane rafts in human and porcine platelets at 37°C and accumulation of trehalose prior to freeze-drying;[12,63] and the accumulation of approximately 50 mM trehalose in human RBC after 7 h exposure at 37°C.[141] While further work is required to characterize and optimize this loading technique, recent successes using temperature-induced membrane permeabilization to load sugars into mammalian cells have demonstrated the overall utility of this strategy.

11.5.4 EXPRESSION OF INTRACELLULAR PROTECTANTS USING GENETIC ENGINEERING

The genetic engineering of mammalian cells to express foreign genes that can induce the intracellular production of protective molecules has been used to increase the tolerance of cells to the extreme environments encountered during biopreservation. Initially developed as a technique to introduce intracellular sugars into *E. coli*,[142,143] researchers have inserted the genes responsible for the coding of sucrose-6-phosphate synthase[144] and trehalose-6-phosphate synthase[11,145,146] into mammalian cells. These gene products, when expressed in conjunction with a respective phosphatase, function to convert uridine diphosphate glucose (UDP-Glc) into sucrose and trehalose. Accumulation of millimolar concentrations of intracellular sucrose[143] and trehalose[145] have been reported using this genetic engineering approach. As advances in molecular genetics and biotechnology lead to improvements in transfection efficiencies, stability of gene expression, and enhancements to overall production, the utility of genetic engineering for the cytoplasmic accumulation of protective molecules will see more widespread application in biopreservation.

11.5.5 TRANSIENT PERMEABILIZATION THROUGH OSMOTIC SHOCK

Rapid changes in extracellular osmolarity — osmotic shock — have been used to transiently permeabilize mammalian cells and allow for the cytoplasmic accumulation of large molecular weight molecules.[67,147,148] Hypertonically shrunken cells when rapidly exposed to iso- or hypotonic media will become transiently permeabilzed due to the development of a transient osmotic gradient across the membrane.[50,149,150] Historically, osmotic shock has seen use in the transfection of antisense oligonucleotides and DNA into cells,[151,152] and the *in situ* modification of the hemoglobin in human red blood cells.[149,153] As cells can tolerate a significant degree of molecular flux across the membrane before irreversible damage occurs,[50] osmotic shock can be repeated a number of times to maximize the uptake of the molecule of interest. Puhlev et al. showed that transient exposure of human fibroblasts to hyper- and hypotonic solutions containing trehalose and sucrose resulted in the intracellular accumulation of 4.7 nM trehalose/10^6 cells but induced significant cell toxicity.[67] Similarly, by subjecting human Jurkat T-lymphocytes to severe hypotonic solutions, Reuss et al. suggest that activation of volume-sensitive transport pathways allow for the intracellular accumulation of monomeric sugars.[147] While the ability to load high concentrations of protective molecules into cells using osmotic fluctuations has not been resolved, the simplicity of this technique is well-suited for conditions or applications where other permeabilization technologies may be too invasive.

11.5.6 ELECTROPERMEABILIZATION

Applying a transmembrane electric potential can transiently alter the permeability of cell membranes, allowing for the cytoplasmic accumulation of membrane-impermeable molecules. Electropermeabilization (electroporation) is based on the temporary increase in membrane permeability due to the reversible electric breakdown of the plasma membrane upon application of high-intensity electrical pulses of very short duration. When an electric pulse is applied to a plasma membrane,

it has been proposed that formation of hydrophilic pores occurs when the dipoles of the phospholipid molecules are reoriented within the electric field.[154,155] Local Joule heating due to the movement of ions across the membrane further enhances the formation of pores due to thermal phase transitions. This technique has been used successfully for gene transfer,[155,156] cell fusion,[157] and the loading of molecules intracellularly.[154,158,159]

Electropermeabilization is an attractive method for the poration and loading of intracellular protectants into cells. Resealing of the permeabilized membrane following the application of pulsed electric fields occurs via a passive relaxation phenomenon, ensuring the reversibility of electroporation. As low temperatures can be used to slow the closure of the electrical field–induced pores,[158,160,161] a method exists to regulate the intracellular accumulation of protective molecules. In addition, by modulating the ionic strength, field intensity, and field duration, the effective diameter of the pores can be controlled,[158,162–165] allowing for the intracellular accumulation of protectants of various sizes. The development of a continuous-flow electroporation system has demonstrated the capacity to scale up the electropermeabilization process for the handling of large volumes of material.[166]

The intracellular accumulation of sugars in electropermeabilized cells has been shown to occur with only minimal effects on viability. Electropermeabilization of *Eucalyptus gunnii* cells in the presence of fructose and raffinose was shown to result in significant accumulation of the sugars (130 ± 20 mM), which enhanced the cryopreservation of this plant system.[61] Human red blood cells electroporated in the presence of sucrose retained normal cell volume, cell shape, glucose transport, and sodium-potassium pump activity[162] and exhibited normal *in vivo* circulation times.[158] Shirakashi et al. have demonstrated that mouse myeloma cells can be loaded with ~0.1 M trehalose using electropermeabilization and still retain >85% survival.[167] As the fundamentals of electropermeabilization develop[168] and electroporation equipment improves, particularly for use in transdermal drug delivery[169] and gene transfection into single cells,[170] this technique may see broader use in the preservation sciences for the delivery of intracellular protectants.

11.5.7 FLUID-PHASE ENDOCYTOSIS

Fluid-phase endocytosis is a physiological process whereby extracellular fluids and small particles (<200 nm) are internalized into cells via clathrin-mediated and/or non-clathrin-mediated processes.[171] The ingestion of external fluid and solutes is strongly temperature dependent, with optimal efficiency at physiologic temperatures or higher.[63,172,173] Capitalizing on this natural process, Wolkers et al. have shown that millimolar concentrations of trehalose can be loaded into human and porcine platelets by incubating them at 37°C for 4 h.[12,63] With trehalose loading in platelets being time- and temperature-dependent and sensitive to endocytotic inhibitors, it was proposed that fluid-phase endocytosis is likely responsible for the transient permeabilization and loading of this protective molecule.[63] Platelets loaded with trehalose using this method have been shown to survive freeze-drying and, upon stimulation with agonists, respond by forming clots in a manner similar to untreated controls.[12,62] Work presented by Hubel and Darr in 2002 further described the passive loading of up to 100 mM trehalose into human lymphocytes, hepatocytes, and non-hematopoietic stem cells by simple incubation at 37°C for up to 4 h.[174] Oliver et al. examined the loading of millimolar concentrations of trehalose into human mesenchymal stem cells when incubated at 37°C for 24 h and concluded that fluid-phase endocytosis in these cells was likely clathrin dependent.[175] As fluid-phase endocytosis has been shown to result in sufficient cytoplasmic accumulation of trehalose to confer desiccation tolerance, further studies on the application of this method of cell permeabilization for the loading of other intracellular protectants is warranted.
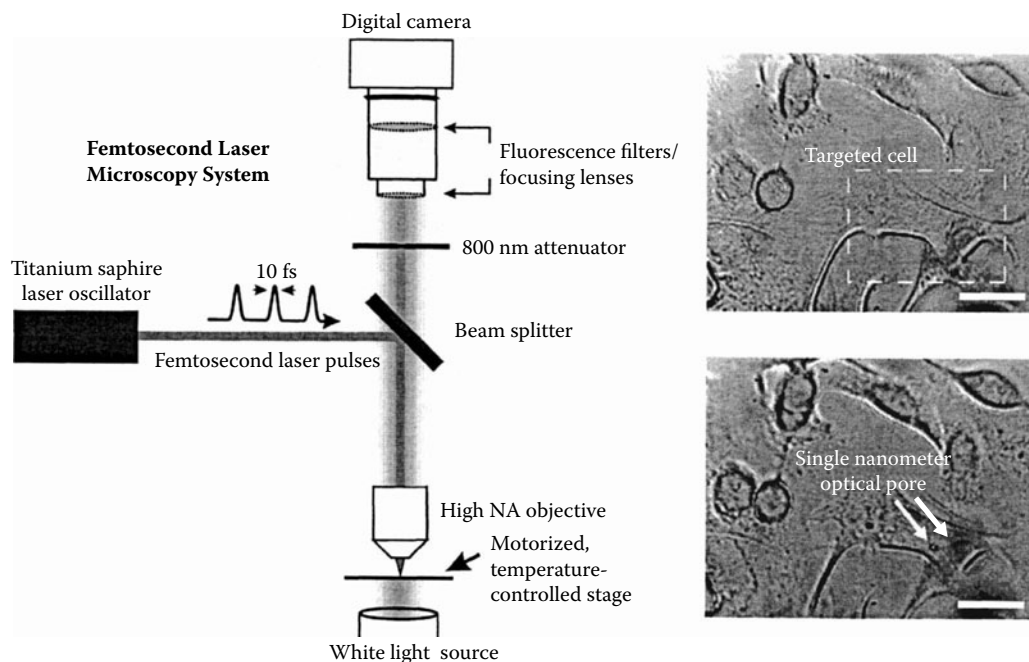
FIGURE 11.2 A custom-designed femtosecond laser microscopy system allows for the precise targeting and formation of nanometer-sized optical pores in living cells. Using this system, Madin Darby Canine Kidney cells have been reversibly permeabilized allowing for the intracellular accumulation of nonpermeant protectants.[176] Scale bar = 50 μm.

11.5.8 LASER PERMEABILIZATION

The application of high-intensity femtosecond (10^{-15} s) lasers for noninvasive reversible permeabilization of living cells has recently been described.[176] The focusing of femtosecond laser pulses produced from a titanium sapphire laser oscillator with a high numerical aperture microscope objective has been used to form precise submicron-sized (800 nm) optical pores in the cell membrane (Figure 11.2). Absorption of femtosecond laser pulses by nonlinear multiphoton absorption and ionization leads to multiphoton electronic excitation,[177] whereby energy is transported to the liberated electrons without thermal diffusion to adjacent cellular material.[178,179] Femtosecond lasers can therefore be used to manipulate biological material with minimal damage from thermal heating.[180–183] Kohli et al. have shown that kidney epithelial cells can be selectively targeted and reversibly permeabilized with a femtosecond laser allowing for rapid cytoplasmic uptake (<0.3 s) of 0.2 M sucrose.[176] Optical permeabilization of the kidney epithelial cells did not significantly damage the cells as evidenced by a >90% cell survival. The contact-free and noninvasive features of laser permeabilization make it an attractive option to other technologies currently being used in the preservation sciences. While the work by Kohli et al. is the first report of the use of femtosecond laser pulses for permeabilizing cells in the presence of cryoprotectants, the future application of this technology in the controlled permeabilization of living cells and tissues is encouraging.

11.5.9 LIPOSOMAL DELIVERY OF INTRACELLULAR PROTECTANTS

Liposomes are self-assembling spherical lipid bilayers that surround an aqueous core.[184] Unilamellar, or single bilayer, liposomes have been used for the delivery of a wide range of molecules into mammalian cells.[185–187] As unilamellar liposomes have been shown to nonspecifically fuse with and

transfer their aqueous contents into human red blood cells (RBC),[188,189] the use of liposomes may be an effective technology for the delivery of impermeable cryoprotective sugars into RBC and other cell types. Preliminary work by my research group has shown that liposomes composed of dipalmityolphosphatidylcholine and cholesterol (70:30 mole ratio) can be used to deliver cryoprotective concentrations of trehalose into human RBC, platelets, and hematopoietic stem cells. Although it appears that liposome delivery of sucrose and trehalose into human RBC does not adversely affect cell integrity or function, further experimentation is required.[190,191] A panel of assays has been developed for the characterization of the sugar-containing liposomes, thereby permitting controlled, reproducible design and manufacturing of the final product.[192] As liposomal delivery of sugars into cells does not require specialized instrumentation and liposomes are extremely biocompatible and FDA-approved for drug delivery,[193] further exploration and development of this technology is warranted.

11.5.10 SUMMARY OF PERMEABILIZATION TECHNIQUES

As movements are made toward the adoption of intracellular protectants in clinical and commercial cell and tissue preservation, the preferred technologies for the cytoplasmic uptake of impermeable protectants will become apparent. The techniques discussed above use physical, chemical, and/or molecular methods to promote the accumulation of intracellular sugars by overcoming the inherent impermeability of mammalian cells to these molecules. Each of the methods discussed above suffers from one or more practical limitations that must be considered when selecting a specific technology. By establishing minimum criteria for the method of intracellular protectant loading, the choice of available technologies for specific applications can be narrowed. First, the process used to accumulate protectants into cells must be able to be regulated and should be completely reversible. A hyperpermeabilized membrane should return back to its natural state in a predicable manner, which, ideally, should be regulated by manipulating the cellular environment. Similarly, the genetic manipulation of cells to produce an intracellular protectant should be switchable so as to prevent the uncontrolled accumulation of gene products. Second, the technology should permit the intracellular accumulation of a diverse range of intracellular protectants with physical and chemical properties. Third, the process must be nonlethal, with minimal disruption to cell physiology and function. Fourth, the technology must be easily scaleable so as to facilitate the accumulation of intracellular protectants in a large population of cells or a tissue in a reasonable time frame. Finally, the technique must be biocompatible and meet criteria for regulatory approval. While not all of these properties can be found in any one technology, the growing list of techniques available for the cytoplasmic loading of impermeable molecules provides the researcher some choice when pursuing the application of intracellular protectants.

11.6 FUTURE OUTLOOK

With the development of methods for the reversible permeabilization of cells, intracellular protectants are emerging as a real solution to the growing clinical and commercial need for more effective preservation and storage technologies. The practical advantages afforded by intracellular protectants are numerous. Effective at lower concentrations and with reduced chemical toxicity, intracellular protectants like trehalose and sucrose may not need to be removed prior to transfusion or transplantation. This would simplify processing and distribution requirements and provide a manageable method for long-distance transportation and remote on-site storage of preserved biologics. In addition, as currently identified intracellular protectants have been shown to exhibit unique physicochemical and biophysical properties that protect cells and biomolecules during a wide range of environmental stresses, they may see use as "universal" protectants for a wide spectrum of cell types from different species preserved using different methods.

Intracellular protectants are emerging as a new class of protectant molecules — a next generation in cell protection. With physicochemical and biophysical properties resembling both traditional permeant and impermeant protectants, intracellular protectants provide us with new avenues to explore in the development of cell preservation technologies. As continued developments are made in techniques used for the accumulation of intracellular molecules, and our understanding of the protective mechanisms of these intracellular agents improves, the clinical and commercial value of this approach to cell preservation will emerge.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

REFERENCES

1. Acker, J.P., Biopreservation of cells and engineered tissues, in *Advances in Biochemical Engineering/Biotechnology*, Lee, K. and Kaplan, D.L., Eds., Springer-Verlag, Berlin, p. 2006.
2. Polge, C., Smith, A.U., and Parkes, A.S., Revival of spermatozoa after vitrification and dehydration at low temperatures, *Nature,* 164, 666, 1949.
3. Lovelock, J.E. and Bishop, M.W.H., Prevention of freezing damage to living cells by dimethyl sulphoxide, *Nature,* 183, 1394, 1959.
4. O'Donnell, J.R., Burnett, A.K., Sheehan, T., Tansey, P., and McDonald, G.A., Safety of dimethylsulfoxide, *Lancet,* 1, 498, 1981.
5. Zambelli, A., Poggi, G., Da Prada, G., Pedrazzoli, P., Cuomo, A., Miotti, D., Perotti, C., Preti, P., and Robustelli della Cuna, G., Clinical toxicity of cryopreserved circulating progenitor cells infusion, *Anticancer Res.,* 18, 4705–4708, 1998.
6. Sputtek, A., Singbartl, G., Langer, R., Schleinzer, W., Heinrich, H.A., and Kühnl, P., Cryopreservation of red blood cells with the non-penetrating cryoprotectant hydroxyethyl starch, *Cryo-Lett.,* 16, 283–288, 1995.
7. Hubalek, Z., Protectants used in the cryopreservation of microorganisms, *Cryobiology,* 46, 205–229, 2003.
8. Meryman, H.T., Cryoprotective agents, *Cryobiology,* 8, 173–183, 1971.
9. Eroglu, A., Russo, M.J., Bieganski, R., Fowler, A., Cheley, S., Bayley, H., and Toner, M., Intracellular trehalose improves the survival of cryopreserved mammalian cells, *Nat. Biotechnol.,* 18, 163–167, 2000.
10. Beattie, G.M., Crowe, J.H., Lopez, A.D., Cirulli, V., Ricordi, C., and Hayek, A., Trehalose: A cryoprotectant that enhances recovery and preserves function of human pancreatic islets after long-term storage, *Diabetes,* 46, 519–523, 1997.
11. Guo, N., Puhlev, I., Brown, D.R., Mansbridge, J., and Levine, F., Trehalose expression confers dessication tolerance on human cells, *Nature Biotechnol.,* 18, 168–171, 2000.
12. Wolkers, W.F., Walker, N.J., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., Human platelets loaded with trehalose survive freeze-drying, *Cryobiology,* 42, 79–87, 2001.
13. Mazur, P., Principles of cryobiology, in *Life in the Frozen State*, Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E.E., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, pp. 3–65.
14. Crowe, J.H., Crowe, L.M., Tablin, F., Wolkers, W.F., Oliver, A.E., and Tsvetkova, N., Stabilization of cells during freeze-drying: The trehalose myth, in *Life in the Frozen State*, Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E.E., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, pp. 581–601.
15. Karlsson, J.O.M. and Toner, M., Cryopreservation, in *Principles of Tissue Engineering,* 2nd ed., Lanza, R.P., Langer, R., and Vacanti, J.P., Eds., Academic Press, New York, 2000, pp. 293–307.

16. Ashwood-Smith, M.J., Mechanisms of cryoprotectant action, in *Temperature and Animal Cells*, Bowler, K. and Fuller, B.J., Eds., The Company of Biologists Limited, Cambridge, 1987, pp. 395–406.

17. Morris, G.J. and Clarke, A., Cells at low temperatures, in *The Effects of Low Temperatures on Biological Systems*, Grout, B.W.W. and Morris, G.J., Eds., Edward Arnold, London, 1987, pp. 72–119.

18. Fuller, B.J., Cryoprotectants: The essential antifreezes to protect life in the frozen state, *Cryo-Lett.,* 25, 375–388, 2004.

19. Pegg, D.E., The history and principles of cryopreservation, *Semin. Reprod. Med.,* 20, 5–13, 2002.

20. Mazur, P., Freezing of living cells: Mechanisms and implications, *Am. J. Physiol.,* 247, C125–C142, 1984.

21. Crowe, J.H., Carpenter, J.F., and Crowe, L.M., The role of vitrification in anhydrobiosis, *Annu. Rev. Physiol.,* 60, 73–103, 1998.

22. Gao, D.Y. and Critser, J.K., Mechanisms of cryoinjury in living cells, *ILAR J.,* 41, 187–196, 2000.

23. Lovelock, J.E., The haemolysis of human red blood cells by freezing and thawing, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 10, 414–426, 1953.

24. Lovelock, J.E., The mechanism of the protective action of glycerol against haemolysis by freezing and thawing, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 11, 28–36, 1953.

25. Mazur, P. and Cole, K.W., Roles of unfrozen fraction, salt concentration, and changes in cell volume in the survival of frozen human erythrocytes, *Cryobiology,* 26, 1–29, 1989.

26. Mazur, P., Rall, W.F., and Rigopoulos, N., Relative contributions of the fraction of unfrozen water and of salt concentration to the survival of slowly frozen human erythrocytes, *Biophys. J.,* 36, 653–675, 1981.

27. Mazur, P. and Rigopoulos, N., Contributions of unfrozen fraction and of salt concentration to the survival of slowly frozen human erythrocytes: Influence of warming rate, *Cryobiology,* 20, 274–289, 1983.

28. Mazur, P. and Cole, K.W., Influence of cell concentration on the contribution of unfrozen fraction and salt concentration to the survival of slowly frozen human erythrocytes, *Cryobiology,* 22, 509–536, 1985.

29. Ishiguro. H. and Rubinsky, B., Mechanical interactions between ice crystals and red blood cells during directional solidification, *Cryobiology,* 31, 483–500, 1994.

30. Levitt, J., A sulfhydryl-disulfide hypothesis of frost injury and resistance in plants, *J. Theor. Biol.,* 3, 355–391, 1962.

31. Pegg, D.E. and Diaper, M.P., The effect of initial tonicity on freeze/thaw injury to human red cells suspended in solutions of sodium chloride, *Cryobiology,* 28, 18–35, 1991.

32. Pegg, D.E. and Diaper, M.P., The "unfrozen fraction" hypothesis of freezing injury to human erythrocytes: A critical examination of the evidence, *Cryobiology,* 26, 30–43, 1989.

33. Taylor, M.J., Physico-chemical principles in low temperature biology, in *The Effects of Low Temperatures on Biological Systems*, Grout, B.W.W. and Morris, G.J., Eds., Edward Arnold Ltd., London, 1987, pp. 3–71.

34. Douzou, P., *Cryobiochemistry: An Introduction*, Academic Press, New York, 1977.

35. Maltini, E. and Anese, M., Evaluation of viscosities of amorphous phases in partially frozen systems by WLF kinetics and glass-transition temperatures, *Food Res. Intern.,* 28, 367–372, 1995.

36. Morris, G.J., Goodrich, Acton E., and Fonseca, F., The high viscosity encountered during freezing in glycerol: Effects on cryopreservation, *Cryobiology*, 2006 [Epub ahead of print].

37. Karlsson, J.O.M., A theoretical model of intracellular devitrification, *Cryobiology,* 42, 154–169, 2001.

38. Karlsson, J.O.M., Cravalho, E.G., Borel Rinkes, I.H.M., Tompkins, R.G., Yarmush, M.L., and Toner, M., Nucleation and growth of ice crystals inside cultured hepatocytes during freezing in the presence of dimethyl sulfoxide, *Biophys. J.,* 65, 2524–2536, 1993.

39. Karlsson, J.O.M., Cravalho, E.G., and Toner, M., A model of diffusion-limited ice growth inside biological cells during freezing, *J. Appl. Phys.,* 75, 4442–4445, 1994.

40. Arakawa, T., Carpenter, J.F., Kita, Y.A., and Crowe, J.H., The basis for toxicity of certain cryoprotectants: A hypothesis, *Cryobiology,* 27, 401–415, 1990.

41. Crowe, J.H., Carpenter, J.F., Crowe, L.M., and Anchordoguy, T.J., Are freezing and dehydration similar stress vectors? A comparison of modes of interaction of stabilizing solutes with biomolecules, *Cryobiology,* 27, 219–231, 1990.

42. Meryman, H.T. and Hornblower, M., A method for freezing and washing red blood cells using a high glycerol concentration, *Transfusion,* 12, 145–156, 1972.

43. Sputtek, A. and Sputtek, R., Cryopreservation in transfusion medicine and hematology, in *Life in the Frozen State*, Benson, E., Fuller, B.J., and Lane, N., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 2004, pp. 483–504.

44. Rowe, A.W., Eyster, E., and Kellner, A., Liquid nitrogen preservation of red blood cells for transfusion: A low glycerol-rapid freeze procedure, *Cryobiology,* 5, 119–128, 1968.

45. McGann, L.E., Differing actions of penetrating and nonpenetrating cryoprotective agents, *Cryobiology,* 15, 382–390, 1978.

46. Meryman, H.T., Osmotic stress as a mechanism of freezing injury, *Cryobiology,* 8, 489–500, 1971.

47. Pegg, D.E., Long-term preservation of cells and tissues: A review, *J. Clin. Path.,* 29, 271–285, 1976.

48. Zade-Oppen, A.M.M., Posthypertonic hemolysis in sodium chloride systems, *Acta Physiol. Scand.,* 73, 341–364, 1968.

49. Steponkus, P.L., Wolfe, J., and Dowgert, M.F., Stresses induced by contraction and expansion during a freeze-thaw cycle: A membrane perspective, in *Effects of Low Temperatures on Biological Membranes*, Morris, G.J. and Clarke, A., Eds., Academic Press, Toronto, 1981, pp. 307–322.

50. Muldrew, K. and McGann, L.E., The osmotic rupture hypothesis of intracellular freezing injury, *Biophys. J.,* 66, 532–541, 1994.

51. Rice-Evans, C.A., Miller, N.J., and Paganga, G., Antioxidant properties of phenolic compounds, *Trends Plant Sci.,* 2, 152–159, 1997.

52. Oliver, A.E., Leprince, O., Wolkers, W.F., Hincha, D.K., Heyer, A.G., and Crowe, J.H., Non-disaccharide-based mechanisms of protection during drying, *Cryobiology,* 43, 151–167, 2001.

53. Blackman, S.A., Obendorf, R.L., and Leopold, A.C., Desiccation tolerance in developing soybean seeds: The role of stress proteins, *Physiol. Plant,* 93, 630–638, 1995.

54. Wharton, D.A., Judge, K.F., and Worland, M.R., Cold acclimation and cryoprotectants in a freezetolerant antarctic nematode, *Panagrolaimus davidi, J. Comp. Physiol.,* 170, 321–327, 2000.

55. Pomeroy, M.K., Siminovitch, D., and Wrightman, F., Seasonal biochemical changes in living bark and needles of red pine (*Pinus resinosa*) in relation to adaptation to freezing, *Can. J. Bot.,* 48, 953–967, 1970.

56. Madin, K.A.C. and Crowe, J., Anhydrobiosis in nematodes: Carbohydrate and lipid metabolism during drying, *J. Exp. Zool.,* 193, 335–342, 1975.

57. Crowe, L.M., Crowe, J.H., Rudolph, A.S., Womersley, C., and Appel, L., Preservation of freeze-dried liposomes by trehalose, *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.,* 242, 240–247, 1985.

58. Carpenter, J.F. and Crowe, J.H., Modes of stabilization of a protein by organic solutes during desiccation, *Cryobiology,* 25, 459–470, 1988.

59. Leslie, S.B., Israeli, E., Lighthart, B., Crowe, J.H., and Crowe, L.M., Trehalose and sucrose protect both membranes and proteins in intact bacteria during drying, *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.,* 61, 3592–3597, 1995.

60. Cerrutti, P., Segovia de Huergo, M., Galvagno, M., Schebor, C., and del Pilar Buera, M., Commercial baker's yeast stability as affected by intracellular content of trehalose, dehydration procedure and the physical properties of external matrices, *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.,* 54, 575–580, 2000.

61. Leborgne, N., Teulieres, C., Travert, S., Rols, M.P., Teissie, J., and Boudet, A.M., Introduction of specific carbohydrates into Eucalyptus gunnii cells increases their freezing tolerance, *Eur. J. Biochem.,* 229, 710–717, 1995.

62. Wolkers, W.F., Walker, N.J., Tamari, Y., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., Towards a clinical application of freeze-dried human platelets, *Cell Preserv. Technol.,* 1, 175–188, 2003.

63. Wolkers, W.F., Looper, S.A., Fontanilla, R.A., Tsvetkova, N.M., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., Temperature dependence of fluid phase endocytosis coincides with membrane properties of pig platelets, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 1612, 154–163, 2003.

64. Eroglu, A., Toner, M., and Toth, T.L., Beneficial effect of microinjected trehalose on the cryosurvival of human oocytes, *Fertil. Steril.,* 77, 152–158, 2002.

65. Eroglu, A., Lawitts, J.A., Toner, M., and Toth, T.L., Quantitative microinjection of trehalose into mouse oocytes and zygotes and its effect on development, *Cryobiology,* 46, 121–134, 2003.

66. Buchanan, S.S., Gross, S.A., Acker, J.P., Toner, M., Carpenter, J.F., and Pyatt, D.W., Cryopreservation of stem cells using trehalose: Evaluation of the method using a human hematopoietic cell line, *Stem Cells Devel.,* 13, 295–305, 2004.

67. Puhlev, I., Guo, N., Brown, D.R., and Levine, F., Desiccation tolerance in human cells, *Cryobiology,* 42, 207–217, 2001.

68. Török, Z., Satpathy, G.R., Banerjee, M., Bali, R., Little, E., Novaes, R., Ly, H.V., Dwyre, D.M., Kheirolomoom, A., Tablin, F., Crowe, J.H., and Tsvetkova, N.M., Preservation of trehalose loaded red blood cells by lyophilization, *Cell Preservation Technol.*, 3, 96–111, 2005.

69. Williams, R.J. and Shaw, S.K., The relationship between cell injury and osmotic volume reduction: II. Red cell lysis correlates with cell volume rather than intracellular salt concentration, *Cryobiology,* 17, 530–539, 1980.

70. Acker, J.P. and McGann, L.E., Innocuous intracellular ice improves survival of frozen cells, *Cell Transplant.,* 11, 563–571, 2002.

71. Acker, J.P. and McGann, L.E., Protective effect of intracellular ice during freezing? *Cryobiology,* 46, 197–202, 2003.

72. Fletcher, G.L., Goddard, S.V., and Wu, Y., Antifreeze proteins and their genes: From basic research to business opportunity, *Chemtech,* 30, 17–28, 1999.

73. Crowe, J.H., Crowe, L.M., Carpenter, J.F., Rudolph, A.S., Wistrom, C.A., Spargo, B.J., and Anchordoguy, T.J., Interactions of sugars with membranes, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 947, 367–384, 1988.

74. Buitink, J., van den Dries, I.J., Hoekstra, F.A., Alberda, M., and Hemminga, M.A., High critical temperature above Tg may contribute to the stability of biological systems, *Biophys. J.,* 79, 1119–1128, 2000.

75. Sun, W.Q. and Leopold, A.C., Cytoplasmic vitrification and survival of anhydrobiotic organisms, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol. A,* 117, 327–333, 1997.

76. Acker, J.P., Fowler, A., and Toner, M., Measurement of sugar transport into mammalian cells using electronic cell sizing, *Cryobiology,* 45, 228, 2002.

77. Scott, K., Ross-Rodriquez, L.U., McGann, L.E., and Acker, J.P., Alternative cryoprotective mechanism for intracellular trehalose: Theoretical validation, *Cryobiology,* 49, 304, 2004.

78. Bhowmick, P., Eroglu, A., Wright, D.L., Toner, M., and Toth, T.L., Osmometric behavior of mouse oocytes in the presence of different intracellular sugars, *Cryobiology,* 45, 183–187, 2002.

79. Gekko, K. and Timasheff, S.N., Mechanism of protein stabilization by glycerol: Preferential hydration in glycerol-water mixtures, *Biochemistry,* 20, 4667–4676, 1981.

80. Arakawa, T. and Timasheff, S.N., Stabilization of protein structure by sugars, *Biochemistry,* 21, 6536–6544, 1982.

81. Xie, G. and Timasheff, S.N., The thermodynamic mechanism of protein stabilization by trehalose, *Biophys. Chem.,* 64, 25–43, 1997.

82. Carpenter, J.F. and Crowe, J.H., The mechanism of cryoprotection of proteins by solutes, *Cryobiology,* 25, 244–255, 1988.

83. Westh, P., Preferential interaction of dimethyl sulfoxide and phosphatidyl choline membranes, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 1664, 217–223, 2004.

84. Crowe, J.H., Crowe, L.M., and Carpenter, J.F., Preserving dry biomaterials: The water replacement hypothesis, Part 1, *Biopharmacology,* 4, 28–33, 1993.

85. Crowe, J.H., Crowe, L.M., and Carpenter, J.F., Preserving dry biomaterials: The water replacement hypothesis, Part 2, *Biopharmacology,* 5, 40–43, 1993.

86. Crowe, J.H., Crowe, L.M., and Chapman, D., Preservation of membranes in anhydrobiotic organisms: The role of trehalose, *Science,* 223, 701–703, 1984.

87. Carpenter, J.F. and Crowe, J.H., An infrared spectroscopic study of the interactions of carbohydrates with dried proteins, *Biochemistry,* 28, 3916–3922, 1989.

88. Anchordoguy, T.J., Rudolph, A.S., Carpenter, J.F., and Crowe, J.H., Modes of interaction of cryoprotectants with membrane phospholipids during freezing, *Cryobiology,* 24, 324–331, 1987.

89. Buitink, J., Claessens, M.M.A.E., Hemminga, M.A., and Hoekstra, F.A., Influence of water content and temperature on molecular mobility and intracellular glasses in seeds and pollen, *Plant Physiol.,* 118, 531–541, 1998.

90. Chang, B.S., Kendrick, B.S., and Carpenter, J.F., Surface-induced denaturation of proteins during freezing and its inhibition by surfactants, *J. Pharm. Sci.,* 85, 1325–1330, 1996.

91. Sun, W.Q., Leopold, A.C., Crowe, L.M., and Crowe, J.H., Stability of dry liposomes in sugar glasses, *Biophys. J.,* 70, 1769–1776, 1996.

92. Roos, Y., Characterization of food polymers using state diagrams, *J. Food Eng.,* 24, 339–360, 1995.

93. Slade, L. and Levine, H., A food polymer science approach to structure-property relationships in aqueous food systems: Non-equilibrium behavior of carbohydrate-water systems, *Adv. Exp. Med. Biol.,* 302, 29–101, 1991.

94. Green, J.L. and Angell, C.A., Phase relations and vitrification in saccharide-water solutions and the trehalose anomaly, *J. Phys. Chem.,* 93, 2880–2882, 1989.

95. Aldous, B.J., Auffret, A.D., and Franks, F., The crystallisation of hydrates from amorphous carbohydrates, *Cryo-Lett.,* 16, 181–186, 1995.

96. Conrad, P.B. and de Pablo, J.J., Computer simulation of the cryoprotectant disaccharide α,α-trehalose in aqueous solution, *J. Phys. Chem. A,* 103, 4049–4055, 1999.

97. Donnamaria, M.C., Howard, E.I., and Grigera, J.R., Interaction of water with α,α-trehalose in solution: Molecular dynamics simulation approach, *J. Chem. Soc. Faraday Trans.,* 90, 2731–2735, 1994.

98. Sakurai, M., Murata, M., Inoue, Y., Hino, A., and Kobayashi, S., Molecular-dynamics study of aqueous solution of trehalose and maltose: Implication for the biological function of trehalose, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.,* 70, 847–858, 1997.

99. Sola-Penna, M. and Meyer-Fernandes, J.R., Stabilization against thermal inactivation promoted by sugars on enzyme structure and function: Why is trehalose more effective than other sugars? *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.,* 360, 10–14, 1998.

100. Branca, C., Magazu, S., Maisano, G., and Migliardo, P., Anomalous cryoprotective effectiveness of trehalose: Raman scattering evidences, *J. Chem. Phys.,* 111, 281–287, 1999.

101. Clegg, J.S., Seitz, P., Seitz, W., and Hazlewood, C.F., Cellular response to extreme water loss: The water-replacement hypothesis, *Cryobiology,* 19, 306–316, 1982.

102. Meryman, H.T., The exceeding of a minimum tolerable cell volume in hypertonic suspension as a cause of freezing injury, in *The Frozen Cell*, Wolstenholme, G.E. and O'Connor, M., Eds., Churchill, London, 1970, pp. 51–64.

103. Mansell, J.L. and Clegg, J.S., Cellular and molecular consequences of reduced cell water content, *Cryobiology,* 20, 591–612, 1983.

104. Griffiths, J.B., Effect of hypertonic stress on mammalian cell lines and its relevance to freeze-thaw injury, *Cryobiology,* 15, 517–529, 1978.

105. Meryman, H.T., Freezing injury and its prevention in living cells, *Annu. Rev. Biophys.,* 3, 341–363, 1974.

106. Acker, J.P., Fowler, A., Lauman, B., Cheley, S., and Toner, M., Survival of desiccated mammalian cells: Beneficial effects of isotonic media, *Cell Preserv. Technol.*, 1, 129–140, 2002.

107. Chen, T., Acker, J.P., Eroglu, A., Cheley, S., Bayley, H., Fowler, A., and Toner, M., Beneficial effect of intracellular trehalose on the membrane integrity of dried mammalian cells, *Cryobiology,* 43, 168–181, 2001.

108. Scott, K.L., Ross-Rodriquez, L.U., McGann, L.E., and Acker, J.P., Trehalose: Mechanisms of cryoprotection, *Cell Preserv. Technol.,* 2, 243–244, 2004.

109. Acker, J.P., Intracellular cryoprotection: A new paradigm? *Cell Preserv. Technol.,* 1, 229, 2003.

110. Verkman, A.S., Van Hoek, A.N., Ma, T., Frigeri, A., Skach, W.R., Mitra, A., Tamarappoo, B.K., and Farinas, J., Water transport across mammalian cell membranes, *Am. J. Physiol.,* 270, C12–C30, 1996.

111. Agre, P., Preston, G.M., Smith, B.L., Jung, J.S., Raina, S., Moon, C., Guggino, W.B., and Nielsen, S., Aquaporin CHIP: The archetypal molecular water channel, *Am. J. Physiol.,* 265, F463–F476, 1993.

112. Ishibashi, K., Sasaki, S., Fushimi, K., Uchida, S., Kuwahara, M., Saito, H., Furukawa, T., Nakajima, K., Yamaguchi, Y., Gogobori, T., and Marumo, F., Molecular cloning and expression of a member of the aquaporin family with permeability to glycerol and urea in addition to water expressed at the basolateral membrane of kidney collecting duct cells, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 91, 6269–6273, 1994.

113. Preston, G.M., Carroll, T.P., Guggino, W.B., and Agre, P., Appearance of water channels in Xenopus oocytes expressing red cell CHIP28 protein, *Science,* 256, 385–387, 1992.

114. Hagedorn, M., Lance, S.L., Fonseca, D.M., Kleinhans, F.W., Artimov, D., Fleischer, R., Hoque, A.T.M.S., Hamilton, M.B., and Pukazhenthi, B.S., Altering fish embryos with aquaporin-3: An essential step toward successful cryopreservation, *Biol. Reprod.,* 67, 961–966, 2002.

115. Lance, S.L., Peterson, A.S., and Hagedorn, M., Developmental expression of aquaporin-3 in zebrafish embryos (Danio rerio), *Comp. Biochem. Phys. C Toxicol. Pharmacol.,* 138, 251–258, 2004.

116. Burnstock, G. and Knight, G.E., Cellular distribution and functions of P2 receptor subtypes in different systems, *Int. Rev. Cytol.,* 240, 31–304, 2004.

117. Steinberg, T.H. and Silverstein, S.C., ATP permeabilization of the plasma membrane, in *Methods in Cell Biology*, Academic Press, New York, 1989, pp. 45–61.

118. North, R.A., The molecular physiology of P2X receptors, *Physiol. Rev.,* 82, 1013–1067, 2002.

119. Wiley, J.S., Gargett, C.E., Zhang, W., Snook, M.B., and Jamieson, G.A., Partial agonists and antagonists reveal a second permeability state of human lymphocyte P2Z/P2X7 channels, *Am. J. Physiol.,* 275, C1224–C1231, 1998.

120. Surprenant, A., Rassendren, F., Kawashima, E., North, R.A., and Buell, G., The cytolytic P2Z receptor for extracellular ATP identified as a P2X receptor (P2X7), *Science,* 272, 735–738, 1996.

121. Elliott, G.D., Liu, X.H., Cusick, J.L., Menze, M., Vincent, J., Witt, T., Haud, S.C., and Toner, M., Trehalose uptake through P2X7 purinergic channels provides dehydration protection, *Cryobiology,* 52: 114–127, 2006.

122. Goodrich, R.P. and Sowemimo-Coker, S.O., Freeze-drying of red blood cells, in *Advances in Low Temperature Biology*, Steponkus, P.L., Ed., JAI Press, London, 1993, pp. 53–99.

123. Sugimachi, K. and Toner, M., Successful cryopreservation of mammalian cells with non-metabolized glucose compounds, *Cryobiology,* 47, 284, 2003.

124. Liu, X-H. and Toner, M., Beneficial effect of intra-matrix trehalose on the inner membrane integrity of desiccated mitochondria, *Cryobiology,* 49, 303, 2004.

125. Liu, X-H., Toner, M., Menze, M.A., and Hand, S.C., Permeabilization of mitochondria in situ, *Cryobiology*, 51, 363–364, 2005.

126. Gilbert, R.J., Pore-forming toxins, *Cell. Mol. Life Sci.,* 59, 832–844, 2002.

127. Bayley, H., Building doors into cells, *Sci. Am.,* 277, 62–67, 1997.

128. Russo, M.J., Bayley, H., and Toner, M., Reversible permeabilization of plasma membranes with an engineered switchable pore, *Nature Biotechnol.,* 15, 278–282, 1997.

129. Walker, B., Kasianowicz, J., Krishnasastry, M., and Bayley, H., A pore-forming protein with a metal-actuated switch, *Protein Eng.,* 7, 655–662, 1994.

130. Bayley, H., Triggers and switches in a self-assembling pore-forming protein, *J. Cell. Biochem.,* 56, 177–182, 1994.

131. Song, L., Hobaugh, M.R., Shustak, C., Cheley, S., Bayley, H., and Gouaux, J.E., Structure of Staphylococcal a-hemolysin, a heptameric transmembrane pore, *Science,* 274, 1859–1866, 1996.

132. Walker, B., Braha, O., Cheley, S., and Bayley, H., An intermediate in the assembly of a pore-forming protein trapped with a genetically-engineered switch, *Chem. Biol.,* 2, 99–105, 1995.

133. Acker, J.P., Lu, X-M., Young, V., Cheley, S., Bayley, H., Fowler, A., and Toner, M., Measurement of trehalose loading of mammalian cells porated with a metal-actuated switchable pore, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.,* 82, 525–532, 2003.

134. Bayley, H. and Jayasinghe, L., Functional engineered channels and pores, *Mol. Membr. Biol.,* 21, 209–220, 2004.

135. Eroglu, A., Elliott, G., Wright, D.L., Toner, M., and Toth, T.L., Progressive elimination of microinjected trehalose during mouse embryonic development, *Reprod. Biomed. Online,* 10, 503–510, 2005.

136. Janik, M., Kleinhans, F.W., and Hagedorn, M., Overcoming a permeability barrier by microinjecting cryoprotectants into zebrafish embryos (*Brachydanio rerio*), *Cryobiology,* 41, 25–34, 2000.

137. Quinn, P.J., A lipid-phase separation model of low-temperature damage to biological membranes, *Cryobiology,* 22, 128–146, 1985.

138. Crowe, J.H., Crowe, L.M., and Hoekstra, F.A., Phase transitions and permeability changes in dry membranes during rehydration, *J. Bioenerg. Biomembr.,* 21, 77–91, 1989.

139. Lovelock, J.E., Haemolysis by thermal shock, *Br. J. Haematol.,* 1, 117–129, 1955.

140. Daw, A., Farrant, J., and Morris, G.J., Membrane leakage of solutes after thermal shock or freezing, *Cryobiology,* 10, 126–133, 1973.

141. Satpathy, G.R., Török, Z., Bali, R., Dwyre, D.M., Little, E., Walker, N.J., Tablin, F., Crowe, J.H., and Tsvetkova, N.M., Loading red blood cells with trehalose: A step towards biostabilization, *Cryobiology,* 49, 123–136, 2004.

142. Kaasen, I., McDougall, J., and Strom, A.R., Analysis of the otsBA operon for osmoregulatory trehalose synthesis in *Escherichia coli* and homolgy of the OtsA and OtsB proteins to the yeast trehalose-6-phosphate synthase/phosphatase complex, *Gene,* 145, 9–266, 1994.

143. Billi, D., Wright, D.H., Helm, R.F., Prickett, T., Potts, M., and Crowe, J.H., Engineering desiccation tolerance in *Escherichia coli, Appl. Environ. Microbiol.,* 66, 1680–1684, 2000.

144. Potts, M., Desiccation tolerance of prokaryotes, *Microbiol. Rev.,* 58, 755–805, 1994.

145. Garcia de Castro, A. and Tunnacliffe, A., Intracellular trehalose improves osmotolerance but not desiccation tolerance in mammalian cells, *FEBS Lett.,* 487, 199–202, 2000.

146. Lao, G., Polayes, D., Xia, J.L., Bloom, F.R., Levine, F., and Mansbridge, J., Overexpression of trehalose synthase and accumulation of intracellular trehalose in 293H and 293FTetR:Hyg cells, *Cryobiology,* 43, 106–113, 2001.

147. Reuss, R., Ludwig, J., Shirakashi, R., Ehrhart, F., Zimmermann, H., Schneider, S., Weber, M.M., Zimmermann, U., Schneider, H., and Sukhorukov, V.L., Intracellular delivery of carbohydrates into mammalian cells through swelling-activated pathways, *J. Membr. Biol.,* 200, 67–81, 2004.

148. Gordon, S.L., Oppenheimer, S.R., Mackay, A.M., Brunnabend, J., Puhlev, I., and Levine, F., Recovery of human mesenchymal stem cells following dehydration and rehydration, *Cryobiology,* 43, 182–187, 2001.

149. Franco, R.S., Barker, R., Novick, S., Weiner, M., and Martelo, O.J., Effect of inositol hexaphosphate on the transient behavior of red cells following a DMSO-induced osmotic pulse, *J. Cell. Physiol.,* 129, 221–229, 1986.

150. Okada, C.Y. and Rechsteiner, M., Introduction of macromolecules into cultured mammalian cells by osmotic lysis of pinocytic vesicles, *Cell,* 29, 33–41, 1982.

151. Ghosh, C. and Iversen, P.L., Intracellular delivery strategies for antisense phosphorodiamidate morpholino oligomers, *Antisense Nucleic Acid Drug Dev.,* 10, 263–274, 2000.

152. Lemoine, J.L., Farley, R., and Huang, L., Mechanism of efficient transfection of the nasal airway epithelium by hypotonic shock, *Gene Ther.,* 12, 1275–1282, 2005.

153. Scott, M.D., Rouyer-Fessard, P., Lubin, B.H., and Beuzard, Y., Entrapment of purified a-hemoglobin chains in normal erythrocytes: A model for B thalassemia, *J. Biol. Chem.,* 265, 17953–17959, 1990.

154. Tsong, T.Y., Electric modification of membrane permeability for drug loading into living cells, *Methods Enzymol.,* 149, 248–259, 1987.

155. Andre, F. and Mir, L.M., DNA electrotransfer: Its principles and an updated review of its therapeutic applications, *Gene Ther.,* 11, S33–S42, 2004.

156. Wong, T-K. and Neumann, E., Electric field–mediated gene transfer, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm.,* 107, 584–587, 1982.

157. Senda, M., Takeda, J., Shunnosuke, A., and Nakamura, T., Induction of cell fusion of plant protoplasts by electrical stimulation, *Plant Cell Physiol.,* 20, 1441–1443, 1979.

158. Kinosita, K. and Tsong, T.Y., Survival of sucrose-loaded erythrocytes in the circulation, *Nature,* 272, 258–260, 1978.

159. Mir, L.M., Banoun, H., and Paoletti, C., Introduction of definite amounts of nonpermeant molecules into living cells after electropermeabilization: Direct access to the cytosol, *Exp. Cell Res.,* 175, 15–25, 1988.

160. Schwister, K. and Deuticke, B., Formation and properties of aqueous leaks induced in human erythrocytes by electrical breakdown, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 816, 332–348, 1985.

161. Krueger, M. and Thom, F., Deformability and stability of erythrocytes in high-frequency electric fields down to subzero temperatures, *Biophys. J.,* 73, 2653–2666, 1997.

162. Kinosita, K. and Tsong, T.Y., Formation and resealing of pores of controlled sizes in human erythrocyte membrane, *Nature,* 268, 438–441, 1977.

163. Zimmermann, U., Pilwat, G., Holzapfel, C., and Rosenheck, K., Electrical hemolysis of human and bovine red blood cells, *J. Membr. Biol.,* 30, 135–152, 1976.

164. Sukhorukov, V.L., Mussauer, H., and Zimmermann, U., The effect of electrical deformation forces on the electropermeabilization of erythrocyte membranes in low- and high-conductivity media, *J. Membr. Biol.,* 163, 235–245, 1998.

165. Djuzenova, C.S., Zimmermann, U., Frank, H., Sukhorukov, V.L., Richter, E., and Fuhr, G., Effect of medium conductivity and composition on the uptake of propidium iodide into electropermeabilized myeloma cells, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 1284, 143–152, 1996.

166. Brüggemann, U., Roux, E.C., Hannig, J., and Nicolau, C., Low-oxygen-affinity red cells produced in a large-volume, continuous-flow electroporation system, *Transfusion,* 35, 478–486, 1995.

167. Shirakashi, R., Köstner, C.M., Müller, K.J., Kürschner, M., Zimmermann, U., and Sukhorukov, V.L., Intracellular delivery of trehalose into mammalian cells by electropermeabilization, *J. Membr. Biol.,* 189, 45–54, 2002.

168. Müller, K.J., Sukhorukov, V.L., and Zimmermann, U., Reversible electropermeabilization of mammalian cells by high-intensity, ultra-short pulses of submicrosecond duration, *J. Membr. Biol.,* 184, 161–170, 2001.
169. Prausnitz, M.R., Mitragotri, S., and Langer, R., Current status and future potential of transfermal drug delivery, *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov.,* 3, 115–124, 2004.
170. Li, S., Electroporation gene therapy: New developments *in vivo* and *in vitro*, *Curr. Gene Ther.,* 4, 309–316, 2004.
171. Johannes, L. and Lamaze, C., Clathrin-dependent or not: Is it still the question? *Traffic,* 3, 443–451, 2002.
172. Wright, K.M. and Oparka, K.J., Uptake of lucifer yellow CH into plant-cell protoplasts: A quantitative assessment of fluid phase endocytosis, *Planta,* 179, 257–264, 1989.
173. Padron, D., Bizeau, M.E., and Hazel, J.R., Is fluid-phase endocytosis conserved in hepatocytes of species acclimated and adapted to different temperatures? *Am. J. Physiol.,* 278, R529–R536, 2000.
174. Hubel, A. and Darr, T.B., Passive loading of trehalose into cells, *Cryobiology,* 45, 227, 2002.
175. Oliver, A.E., Jamil, K., Crowe, J.H., and Tablin, F., Loading human mesenchymal stem cells with trehalose by fluid-phase endocytosis, *Cell Preserv. Technol.,* 2, 35–49, 2004.
176. Kohli, V., Acker, J.P., and Elezzabi, A.Y., Reversible permeabilization using high-intensity femtosecond laser pulses: An application to biopreservation, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 92, 889–899, 2005.
177. Noack, J. and Vogel, A., Laser-induced plasma formation in water at nanosecond to femtosecond time scales: Calculation of thresholds, absorption coefficients, and energy density, *IEEE J. Quantum Elect.,* 33, 1156–1167, 1999.
178. Chichkov, B.N., Momma, C., Nolte, S., Alvensleben, F.V., and Tunnermann, A., Femtosecond, picosecond, and nanosecond laser ablation of solids, *Appl. Phys. A,* 63, 109–115, 1996.
179. Loesel, F.H., Fischer, J.P., Gotz, M.H., Horvath, C., Juhasz, T., Noack, F., Suhm, N., Bille, Non-thermal ablation of neural tissue with femtosecond laser pulses, *Applied Physics B,* 66, 121–128, 1998.
180. Kohli, V., Acker, J.P., and Elezzabi, A.Y., Cell nanosurgery using ultrashort (femtosecond) laser pulses: Applications to membrane surgery and cell isolation, *Lasers. Surg. Med.*, 37, 227–230, 2005.
181. König, K., Riemann, I., and Fritzsche, W., Nanodissection of human chromosomes with near-infrared femtosecond laser pulses, *Opt. Lett.,* 26, 819–821, 2001.
182. Zeira, E., Manevitch, A., Khatchatouriants, A., Pappo, O., Hyam, E., Darash-Yahana, M., Tavor, E., Honigman, A., Lewis, A., and Galun, E., Femtosecond infrared laser: An efficient and safe *in vivo* gene delivery system for prolonged expression, *Mol. Ther.,* 8, 342–350, 2003.
183. Heisterkamp, A., Maxwell, I.Z., Mazur, E., Underwood, J.M., Nickerson, J.A., Kumar, S., and Ingber, D.E., Pulse energy dependence of subcellular dissection by femtosecond laser pulses, *Opt. Express,* 13, 3690–3696, 2005.
184. Bangham, A.D., Lipid bilayers and biomembranes, *Ann. Rev. Biochem.,* 41, 753–776, 1972.
185. Cattel, L., Ceruti, M., and Dosio, F., From conventional to stealth liposomes: A new frontier in cancer chemotherapy, *Tumori,* 89, 237–249, 2003.
186. Derycke, A.S. and de Witte, P.A., Liposomes for photodynamic therapy, *Adv. Drug Deliv. Rev.,* 56, 17–30, 2004.
187. Ulrich, A.S., Biophysical aspects of using liposomes as delivery vehicles, *Biosci. Rep.,* 22, 129–150, 2002.
188. Constantinescu, I., Levin, E., and Gyongyossy-Issa, M., Liposomes and blood cells: A flow cytometric study, *Artif. Cells Blood Substit. Immobil. Biotechnol.,* 31, 395–424, 2003.
189. Sato, Y., Nakajimaya, K., and Suzuki, Y., Interaction of liposomes with human erythrocytes, *Chem. Pharm. Bull.,* 38, 2228–2232, 1990.
190. Lecak, J., Gyongyossy-Issa, M., and Acker, J.P., Liposomal delivery of cryoprotective intracellular disaccharides into human red blood cells, *Cryobiology,* 51, 391, 2005.
191. Lecak, J., Scott, K.L., Gyongyossy-Issa, M., and Acker, J.P., Characterization of a novel permeabilization technique for the intracellular delivery of cryoprotective sugars, *Cryobiology,* 51, 393–394, 2005.
192. Torchilin, V.P., Recent advances with liposomes as pharmaceutical carriers, *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov.,* 4, 145–160, 2005.

12 Thermal Instruments and Devices in Cryobiological Research and Applications

Dayong Gao, Jianping Yu, and Dawei Luo

CONTENTS

12.1 INTRODUCTION

Biological metabolism in living cells dramatically diminishes at low temperatures, a fact that permits the long-term cryopreservation of cells and tissues for either scientific research or medical applications (e.g., blood transfusion, transplantation of cells and organs, artificial insemination, *in vitro* fertilization, etc.). However, there is an apparent contradiction between the purpose of preservation and experimental findings that the cryopreservation process itself can kill cells and tissues. The challenge to cells and tissues during cryopreservation is not their ability to endure storage at very low temperatures (below –80°C); rather it is the potential lethal factors existing in the four major cryopreservation procedures; i.e., the addition of cryoprotective agents (CPAs) to cells and tissues before cooling, the cooling process (to a low temperature for storage), the warming process (after storage at low temperatures), and the removal of the CPAs from the cells and tissues after warming. These potential lethal factors include at least the following:

1. Potential chemical toxicity of CPAs to cells
2. Severe cell osmotic volume change during the addition and removal of CPAs as well as during the cooling and warming processes
3. Intracellular ice formation during the cooling and its potential growth (i.e., recrystallization) during the warming
4. Devitrificaton (e.g., water in a glass state changes into crystal state during the slow warming process)
5. Thermal stress caused by nonuniform cooling and warming
6. Harmful free radical formation
7. Other factors not currently understood (e.g., "cold shock," "chilling injury," etc.)

The tolerance limit to each of these lethal factors is cell/tissue-type dependent.

Scientifically, to predict optimal conditions for cell cryopreservation, one needs to know fundamental cryobiological characteristics and properties of the given cell type, such as the cell's osmotically inactive volume, cell membrane permeability to water and cryoprotective agents, and associated activation energies, CPA toxicity, osmotic volume change limits, phase change diagrams of CPA solutions, thermal properties of cell suspensions or tissues, intracellular ice formation dynamics, vitrification/devitrification temperatures, and so on. After obtaining the optimal cryopreservation conditions by research (as discussed in the previous chapters), one also needs to develop equipment and devices that can be used practically to achieve and control those optimal conditions for cryopreservation and banking of large cell and tissue samples. During the past decades, numerous instruments, devices, and equipment have been developed for use in the fundamental cryobiology research and/or cryopreservation practices; some of those important and commonly used thermal instruments or devices and their technical considerations/principles are introduced in this chapter.

12.2 INSTRUMENTS AND DEVICES IN CRYOBIOLOGY RESEARCH

12.2.1 Cryomicroscopy

Cryomicroscopy — a technique of dynamic, micron-scale, visual investigation of cooling/warming processes at low temperatures — provides a very graphic and dramatic view of the phase change process and its effect on cells such as intracellular ice formation, re-crystallization, and cell volume changes during different cooling and warming processes. Most frequently, cryomicroscopy is accomplished by mounting a specially designed stage ("cryostage") onto a light microscope, on

which a sample of interest (e.g., biological cells and tissues) may be placed and subjected to a controlled alteration in the thermal environment. The dynamic response of the sample is followed in real time by direct observation through the microscope. Thus, a main consideration in cryomicroscope development is (a) to appropriately design and fabricate the cryostage providing a cooling/warming condition; (b) to prepare the specimen so a clear image is maintained throughout the protocol of interest (e.g., a specific cooling/warming process); (c) to measure and control the temperature change (during the cooling or warming) in the cryostage and sample; and (d) to collect and record experimental data and images.

The experimental technique of cryomicroscopy has been plied for more than 140 years since Julius Sachs discussed his observations of ice crystal formation during freezing and alterations of the cell wall upon thawing in leaf sections in 1860.[1] Ken Diller made a new milestone in the early 1970s using the emerging technology of microelectronics[2] and developed a computer-controlled cryostage that allowed the use of sophisticated cooling and warming protocols. This section will discuss the system developed by Diller and Cravalho,[2] then the major issues in the design of a cryostage.

12.2.1.1   Diller's Cryomicroscopy: An Overview

Figure 12.1 shows schematically the mechanism and structure of cryomicroscope system for visual and photographic observation of the freezing and thawing process in biological cells. The various cooling rates of the system are obtained by cooling the system at a constant rate with a steady flow of refrigerant fluid through the device while the warming is achieved by simultaneously dissipating a variable rate of electrical energy in a resistance heater, which is immersed in the fluid stream and in thermal communication with the samples.
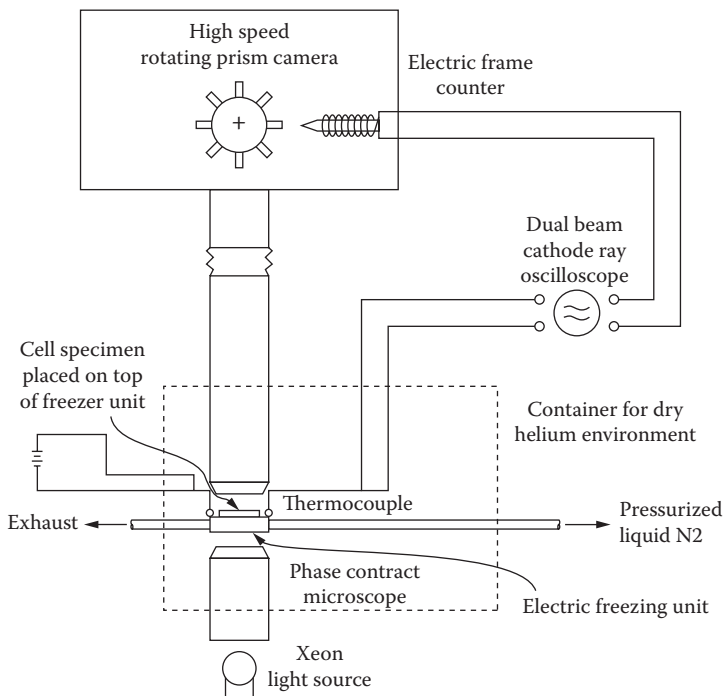
FIGURE 12.1 Cryomicroscopy system developed by Diller and Cravalho[2] (Redrawn from Diller and Cravalho, 1970[2]).
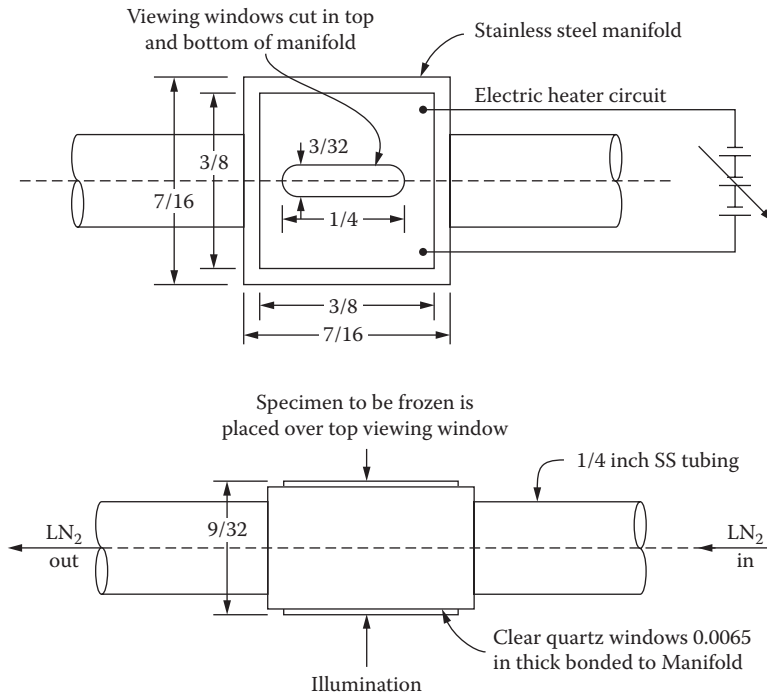
FIGURE 12.2 Freezing and thawing stage microscope (Redrawn from Diller and Cravalho, 1970[2]).

The specific design of the thermodynamic system is shown schematically in Figure 12.2 (Diller and Cravalho, 1970).[2] The system consists of a stainless steel chamber (made from a sheet 0.020 in. thick) with an area of 0.4375 in.[2] with refrigerant inlet and outlet tubes. The opening in the top and bottom faces of the chamber are fitted with quartz windows 0.007 in. thick and sealed with epoxy. These windows are actually quartz cover slips cut to fit the chamber. A small deflector mounted on the bottom face of the chamber at the inlet tube directs the inlet refrigerant stream against the bottom side of the top window to enhance the convective heat transfer. There are two primary considerations in the design of the chamber:

1. The dimensions of the chamber are critical since it is necessary to minimize the thermal mass of the system in order to achieve the higher cooling and warming rates.
2. The height of the chamber must be such that the working distance of the light microscope condenser is not exceeded.

The chamber assembly is mounted in a phenolic block attached to a standard Leitz traversing mechanism with two degrees of freedom in the horizontal plane. The low thermal conductivity of the phenolic block serves to isolate thermally the chamber assembly from the body of the microscope. The complete unit is mounted on a standard stage base and attached to a light microscope (Diller and Cravalho, 1970).[2]

The specimen is viewed with a phase contrast 63X, 0.90–NA, Neofluar Zeiss dry objective with a working distance of 0.12 mm. A dry objective was selected instead of an oil immersion objective in order to minimize the thermal mass of the specimen and to avoid the phase change that would occur in the immersion oil at the lowest temperature. With this objective, maximum useful total magnification is limited by resolution consideration to approximately 1000X. The objective, chamber assembly, and phase contrast condenser are enclosed in transparent plastic housing in which a slight positive pressure of dry helium and nitrogen gas is maintained in order
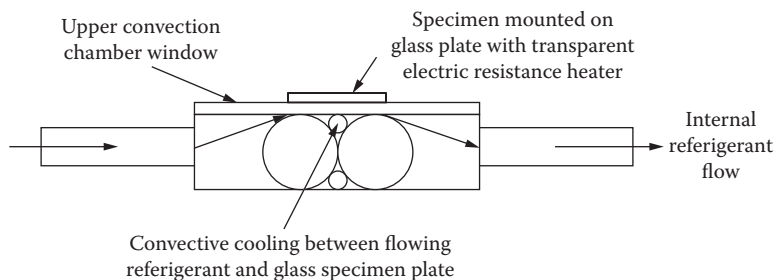
FIGURE 12.3 Principle of convection cooled cryostage.[2]

to prevent the condensation of water vapor on the specimen and to reduce the thermal contact resistance between the specimen and the refrigerant chamber. The viewing end of the microscope is fitted with an 8X eyepiece and a camera (for example, a 35–mm or Polaroid or digital camera or video camera for recording). A specially designed feedback control system is employed in conjunction with the cryomicroscopy to achieve a wide variety of cooling and warming rates and storage and thawing temperatures in the cell specimen.

12.2.1.2 Various Cryostage Designs

Basically, there are three kinds of cryostage in the literatures, including heat convection cryostage, heat conduction cryostage, and directional cooling cryostage. The convection stage was first developed by Diller and Cravalho[2] in their microscope design. The convection cryostage directs the flow of refrigerant (usually liquid nitrogen) through an inner chamber in the stage, via intake and exhaust manifolds, directly onto the underside of the upper chamber plate on which the specimen is mounted. Conduction affects heat loss through the plate — usually fabricated of glass, quartz, or sapphire — to the bottom surface, where it is convected to the flowing refrigerant as shown in Figure 12.3. The stage is shown in cross-section normal to the optical axis of the microscope to illustrate the lateral and vertical flow paths of heat from the specimen to a circulating refrigerant fluid.

Longer working-distance optical components are required for convection stages because the convection stages have a much larger thickness along the optical path due to the necessity of manifolding the refrigerant flow directly through the viewing portion of the stage. In general, convection cryostages cannot achieve high cooling rates because the interface for convective heat transfer to the refrigerant at the underside of the specimen mounting plate is much more fragile mechanically than the interface through a copper manifold on a conduction stage. Therefore, lower refrigerant flow rates at more moderate temperatures are usually used with a convection stage. Lateral temperature gradients on the specimen plate are minimized by designing the refrigerant flow to wash the under-surface to enhance the uniformity of the convective heat transfer. Because the entire specimen volume is maintained in a more nearly isothermal state, it is possible to produce repeatable supercooled conditions, which can be very useful for studying the osmotic properties of specimens when exposed to controlled ice nucleation and the resulting concentrated extracellular solutes at a constant temperature.[2]

McGrath, Cravalho, and Huggins[3] initially implemented the heat conduction cryostage. A conduction stage operates by directing the flow of refrigerant through a manifold mounted peripherally on the stage; the specimen mounting area is coupled to the manifold by a copper plate through which heat flows laterally (as shown in Figure 12.4). The required thickness of the stage along the optical path is greatly reduced by removing heat via conduction to a remote location, where it can be transferred by convection to the refrigerant; a large range of cooling rates can be produced by directing very cold refrigerant at high flow rates through the stage.

Specimen mounted on
glass plate with transparent
electric resistance heater

External
referigerant
flow

External
referigerant
flow

Conductive cooling from specimen to
referigerant through copper specimen plate
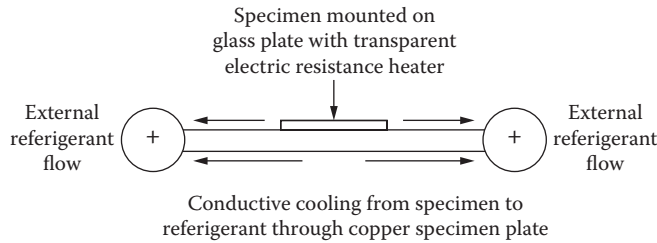
FIGURE 12.4 Conduction cooled cryostage.[3]

Conduction cryostages are quite versatile in their performance characteristics; however, they need very large temperature gradients to effect their operation because the lateral conduction process requires a relatively large temperature gradient normal to the optical path. This arrangement normally precludes the possibility of investigating thermal protocols involving any significant degree of extracellular supercooling because ice will be nucleated in the peripheral regions of the specimen where the temperature is much lower than at the viewing site. Also, the large lateral temperature gradient makes accurate measurement and control of the actual specimen temperature more difficult.[3]

In the convection cryostages, the temperature of the sample and the stage are uniform in space. The advantage of such a design is that the physical phenomenon in a certain cell can be observed continuously in time and correlated to the thermal history of the sample. However, the freezing in a large biological sample (e.g., in a tissue) is usually not uniform in space. In addition, the freezing process is directional and in the direction of the temperature gradients. It is necessary to observe the directional freezing process of large biological samples under a cryomicroscope. The conduction cryostage suggests a possibility for cryomicroscopy in which the growth rate of ice could be controlled and the interface tracked under the microscope. Rubinsky and Ikeda[4] have developed such a directional solidification cryostage in which large samples of biological materials can be frozen in a predetermined direction with a constant controlled cooling rate. In this apparatus the stage is driven mechanically across the microscope field of view between a heat sink and source, establishing a constant temperature gradient appropriate to continuous observation of the phase boundary.

Figure 12.5 shows the schematic of the directional solidification cryostage. There are two constant-temperature bases maintained at different but constant temperatures; the temperature of one base (T_H) is above the change of phase temperature for the material to be frozen, whereas the temperature of the other base (T_C) is below that temperature. There is a glass substrate (microslide) on the bases, and a thin layer of the material to be solidified, covered by another thin glass coverslip, on top of the substrate. The temperature distribution between T_H and T_C in the microslide is assumed to be linear during directional solidification. The heat is extracted from the material on the glass substrate (microslide) while moving the microslide at a constant velocity (V) through the constant temperature profile imposed by the freezing stage. Several design constraints must be satisfied to have a linear temperature distribution in the microslide configuration.[4] To ensure that the temperature throughout the thickness of the microslide configuration is uniform and that the temperature of the microslide at hot ends of the gap between the two bases edge is equal to the temperature of the bases (T_H and T_C), the specific Biot number for the microslide based on the thickness of the microslide must be less than one. This is expressed by

$$\left(10^{-2}\right)Bi = \frac{h \cdot \delta_m}{k_m} << 1$$

where Bi is the Biot number and h is the heat transfer coefficient between the outer surface of the microslide and the environment. The thermal conductivity of the glass microslide is k_m and the
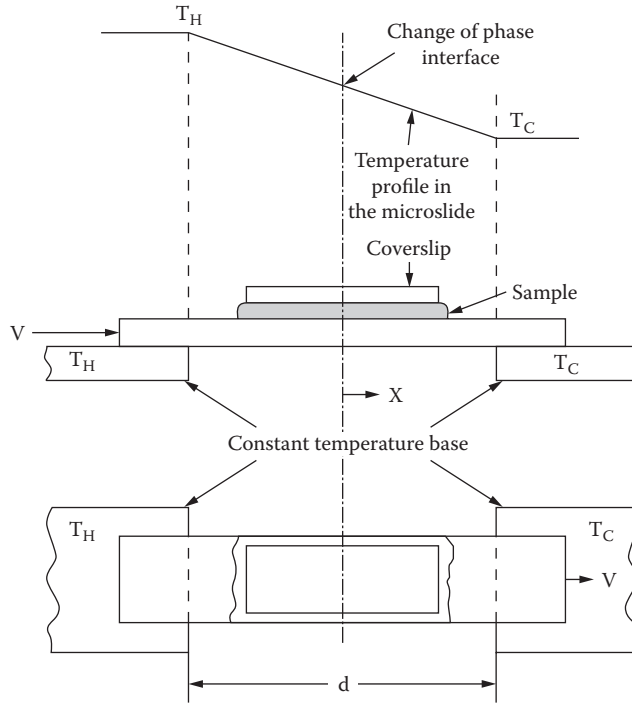
FIGURE 12.5 Design schematic for directional solidification (redrawn from Rubinsky and Ikeda[4]).

thickness of the microslide is δ_m. The values in parentheses next to the dimensionless numbers are typical of the dimensionless numbers in the system used in this work. It is also assumed that the thermal contact resistance between the copper plate and the glass substrate is negligibly small.

The temperature distribution in the microslide configuration is assumed to be linear between T_H and T_C, when the microslide moves continuously at a constant velocity, V, if heat transfer by conduction through the glass microslide is much larger than (a) the heat transfer required for the freezing of the specimen, (b) the heat transferred by forced convention due to the displacement of the microslide, (c) the heat transfer to the surrounding environment if (d) the thickness of the microslide configuration is uniform in the axial (x) direction and if (e) the thermal contact resistance between the glass substrate and the copper plate does not significantly increase with velocity. Requirements (a) through (d) can be described by the expressions:[4]

(a) $\quad \left(4 \times 10^4\right) \dfrac{\delta_m}{\delta_{\text{sec}}} \cdot \dfrac{k_m\left(T_h - T_c\right)}{\rho_s \cdot L_s \cdot V \cdot d} \gg 1$

(b) $\quad \left(10^{-2}\right) \dfrac{V \cdot d}{\alpha_m} \ll 1$

(c) $\quad (18.9) \left| \dfrac{\delta_m}{\delta_{\text{sec}}} \cdot \dfrac{k_m \cdot \delta_m\left(T_h - T_c\right)}{2h \cdot d^2\left(T_e - T_c\right)} \right| \gg 1; \quad \dfrac{Q}{\delta_m k\left(T_h - T_c\right)} \ll 1$

(d) $\quad \left(10^{+2}\right) \dfrac{\delta_m}{\delta_s} \gg 1; \quad \left(10^{+1}\right) \dfrac{\delta_m}{\delta_{co}} \gg 1.$
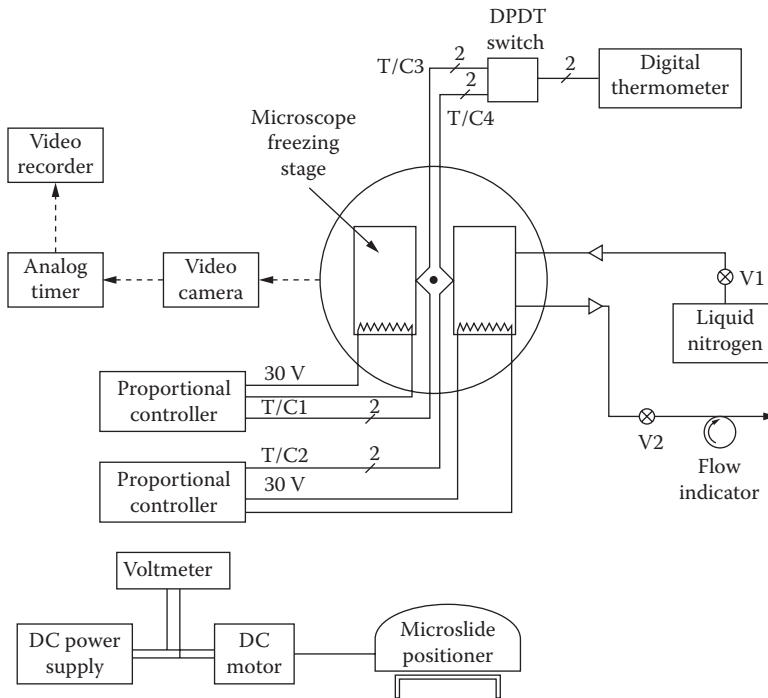
FIGURE 12.6 Schematic of the cryomicroscope stage (Redrawn after Rubinsky and Ikeda[4]).

where k_m (in W/m.K), α_m (in m^2/sec), and δ_m (in m) are the thermal conductivity, thermal diffusivity, and thickness of the microslide, respectively; T_e (in K) is the temperature of the environment; L_s (in J), ρ_s (in kg/m^3), and δ_s (in m) are the latent heat, density, and thickness of the sample to be frozen, respectively; V is the velocity of the microslide (in m/sec); d is the distance between the edges of the high- and low-temperature bases (in m); and Q is the power dissipation of the microscope light (in W).

Figure 12.6 shows a schematic of the cryomicroscope system developed by Rubinsky and Ikeda.[4] The functions of each unit in the stage are discussed in their original publication.[4]

The directional solidification principle was also used to develop a cooling machine.[5] Experimental results show that the developed cooling machine is a useful and practical tool to achieve controlled cooling rates in the straws (with samples) during the cryopreservation process. It is also reliable and inexpensive and may be used for indoor or outdoor cryopreservation practices.

12.2.2 DEVICES AND INSTRUMENTS TO DETERMINE/MEASURE CELL VOLUME CHANGE

Measurement of cell volume change under a given environmental-osmotic change is indispensable for the determination of cell membrane permeability to water and CPAs and associated activation energy, which are important cryobiological parameters for defining the optimal condition for addition and removal of CPAs in cells and predicting optimal cooling conditions for cell cryopreservation.[6,7,8] Some techniques and devices used for measuring the cell volume change in cryobiology research include a microdiffusion chamber, micropipette perfusion, a microperfusion chamber, and the Coulter counter technique, which are introduced in the sections that follow.
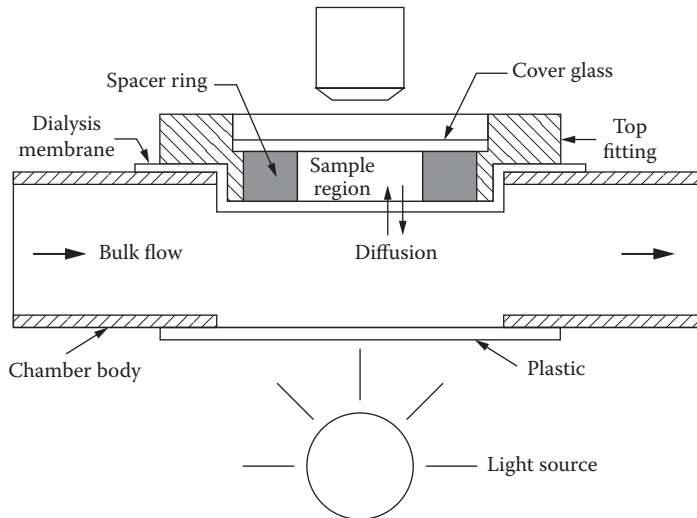
FIGURE 12.7 Schematic drawing of the microdiffusion chamber (redrawn from McGrath[6]).

12.2.2.1 Microdiffusion Chamber

McGrath[6] developed a microdiffusion chamber that allows directional observation of the dynamic osmotic response of individual cells in microvolume suspensions. With the microdiffusion chamber, it is possible to continuously observe cell volume change when the extracellular chemical composition and osmolality changes.

Figure 12.7 provides a schematic of the microdiffusion chamber. A microcell chamber is created with a spacer ring (approximately 1 mm thick) between a top coverglass and a thin dialysis membrane. A small amount (a few microliters) of cell suspension is placed in the chamber as a thin layer between the top coverglass and the dialysis membrane. The basic principle of the device is as follows.[6] A sample of cell suspension is placed in the chamber and a solution isotonic with this sample solution is placed in the bulk flow region under the dialysis member. The cells can be observed by focusing the microscope, and specific cells of interest can also been identified by lateral scanning. Initiation of an experiment occurs when the fluid in the bulk region is replaced rapidly by a new solution of interest. The flow must be rapid enough and must be allowed to continue throughout the experiment to ensure minimizing response time. Mass transfer across the membrane will establish a new extracellular solution within the sample region, and the cells respond to this change in a chemical and osmotic environment. The cells do not move during the time the extracellular solution is replaced, and individual cells may be observed through the process. A digital or video camera records the cell response and volume change.

According to McGrath,[6] the dialysis membrane used in the diffusion chamber should:

1. Be optically clear to allow visualization of the cellular response
2. Allow passage of all molecules that may be of interest to include in the extracellular solution of the cells
3. Have mechanical strength so that it is easily handled

12.2.2.2 Micropipette Perfusion

Gao et al. (1994)[9] developed the micropipette perfusion technique to determine membrane transport properties of mammalian oocytes. Figure 12.8 shows the schematic diagram of the technique. Micropipettes with an eight- to ten-μm diameter tip opening were made of 1.2–mm glass capillary
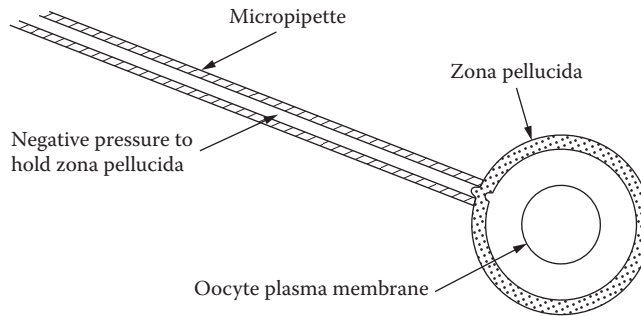
FIGURE 12.8 Schematic diagram showing a micropipette with an 8–10 μm tip opening used to apply negative pressure and hold only the zona pellucida of an oocyte (Gao et al., 1994).

tubes using a Needle/Pipette Puller (David Kope Instruments, Tujunga, CA) and Microforge MF-1 (Technical Products International Inc., St. Louis, MO). The micropipette is used to apply a negative pressure to hold only the zona pellucida of an oocyte; the zona pellucida is a relatively thick, translucent, protein matrix that surrounds the plasma membrane of fully grown mammalian oocytes. The zona pellucida is highly porous and does not serve as a permeability barrier even to very large macromolecules or viruses.[10] The oocyte is then directly perfused with 1 mL prepared anisosmotic solution with or without CPAs. The temperature of the cell suspension during the perfusion process is controlled by a temperature control device (Temperature controller 1221; Frank E. Fryer Co., Scientific Instruments, Chicago, IL). The dimensional changes of the oocyte before, during, and after perfusion are observed using an inverted Nikon microscope (Nikon, Inc., Garden City, NY) at a magnification of 200X and recorded by a video camera until osmotic equilibrium is achieved.

12.2.2.3 Microperfusion Chamber

A microperfusion chamber was developed to measure kinetic cell volume changes under various extracellular conditions and to quantitatively determine cell membrane transport properties.[11] This device eliminates modeling ambiguities and limitations inherent in the use of the microdiffusion chamber (i.e., more complex mathematical modeling and mass transfer limitation of the dialysis membrane) and the micropipette perfusion technique (limited to oocytes with zona pellucida).

To measure cell volume changes as a function of time, four technical requirements must be satisfied if light microscopy is used:

1. The change of the extracellular condition must be feasible, rapid, and controllable.
2. The cell must be held at a fixed location under the microscope during the change of the extracellular medium (otherwise, the cell could be out of focus under the microscope or disappear entirely from the microscopic optical field).
3. The cell response (volume change) to the change of extracellular condition must be measurable and resolvable (in time and space).
4. The temperature of the cell suspension must be controllable.

The microperfusion chamber technique was designed to meet all these requirements. The design and structure of the microperfusion chamber system is shown in Figure 12.9, including a microperfusion chamber, a temperature controller, and a Hamilton syringe. During the experiments, a cell suspension with one or more cells is first loaded at the solution inlet and then aspirated into the chamber cavity (height: 2 mm; diameter: 1 mm; volume: 1.6 μL) using the Hamilton syringe. With continued aspiration, part of the cell suspension solution moves out of the chamber, but the cell or cells remain on the transparent porous membrane at the bottom of the cavity (polycarbonate screen

(a)

(b)
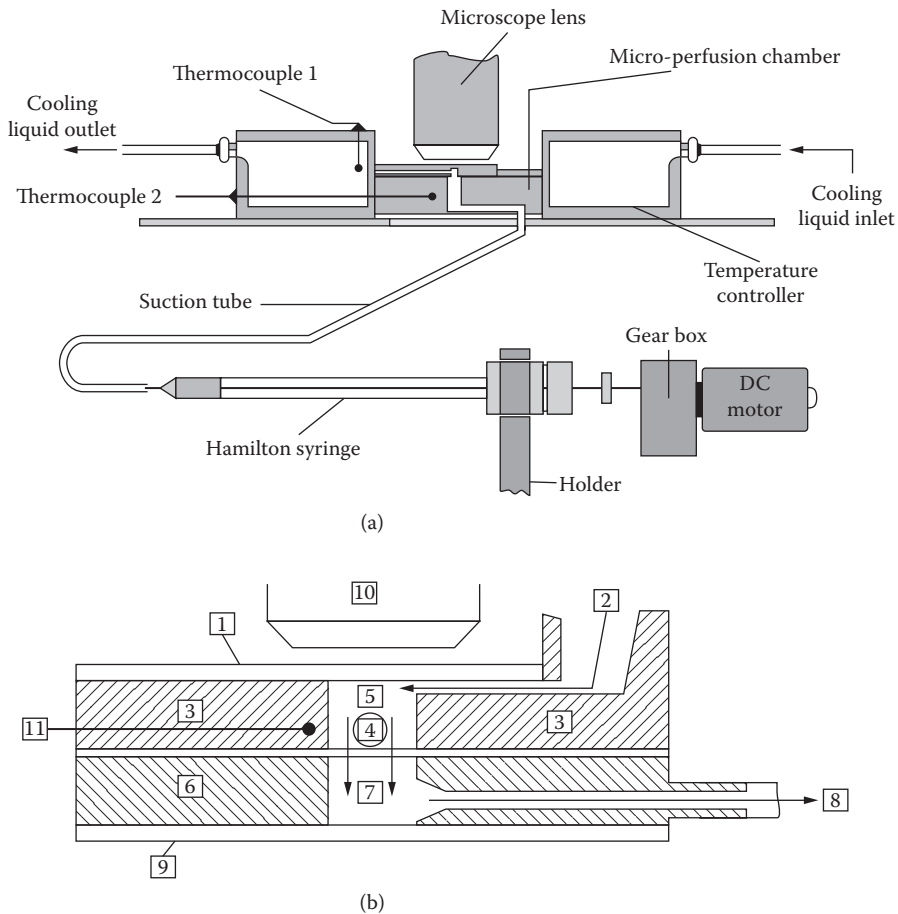
FIGURE 12.9 Schematic diagram showing (a) the setup of the microperfusion chamber system and (b) the structure of the microperfusion chamber. 1: glass slide; 2: inlet of the perfusion solution: 3: upper metal body of the chamber, 4: a cell; 5: the chamber cavity/space; 6: lower metal body of the chamber, 7: transparent porous membrane; 8: outlet of the perfusion solution; 9: glass slide; 10: microscopic lens; 11: thermocouple.

membrane: thickness: 10 μm; pore diameter: 3 μm; pore density: 2×10^6 pores/cm^5). A perfusion medium (an isotonic solution with or without CPAs) is then loaded at the solution inlet and made to pass the cell or cells by aspiration. The perfusion flow rate is controlled using the Hamilton syringe and by adjusting the rpm of a DC motor connected with the Hamilton syringe (Figure 12.9a). The total volume of the medium used to perfuse the cell(s) can be measured by reading the scales on the Hamilton syringe. Based on the Hamilton syringe reading, the original isotonic solution in the perfusion chamber cavity (1.6 μL) was quickly replaced by the new perfusion medium within 0.5 s. The small size of the chamber cavity and downward flow of the perfusion medium immobilizes the cells in the chamber during the perfusion process. The cells are continuously perfused for another 30 s. Over 90 μL of the perfusion medium runs through the cells during the perfusion. Before, during, and after the process, a video camera records the history of cell volume changes until the cells achieve osmotic equilibrium.

    The perfusion chamber and cell suspension in the chamber cavity can be cooled (or heated) using a temperature controller (Figure 12.9a) to reach an equilibrium temperature. Precooled or heated water is pumped through the jacket of the temperature controller to keep a constant temperature in the microperfusion chamber during the experiment. The prepared perfusion media are precooled or heated in a temperature-controlled methanol bath to reach the same temperature as

the perfusion chamber. A precooled/preheated perfusion media is then loaded in the perfusion chamber and used to perfuse the cells. During the experiment, copper-constantan thermocouples are used to monitor the temperature variation of the perfusion medium and the temperature change of the microperfusion chamber.

The microperfusion chamber method has the following major advantages:

1. The extracellular condition(s) can be readily changed by perfusing a single cell or group of cells with a prepared medium; cells can be reperfused with a different medium to study the response of the same cell to different osmotic conditions.
2. The short mixing time of cells and perfusion medium allows for accurate control of the extracellular osmolality and ensures accuracy of the corresponding mathematical formulation (modeling).
3. The technique is widely applicable to the study of the cell osmotic response and determination of cell membrane transport properties.

12.2.2.4 The Coulter Counter Technique

The Coulter counter — the most widely used method for counting and sizing microscopic particles suspended in a fluid — is based on the Coulter principle, which was first discovered by Wallace Coulter.[49]

The Coulter principle, also called the "sensing zone" principle (Figure 12.10), states that cells are poor electrical conductors compared with saline solution. When we draw the cells (particles), suspended with a weak electrolyte solution, through a small aperture separating two electrodes between which an electric current flows, the voltage applied across the aperture will create a "sensing zone." As each particle passes through the "sensing zone," it displaces its own volume of conducting liquid, momentarily increasing the impedance of the aperture. This change in impedance produces a tiny but proportional current flow into an amplifier that converts the current fluctuation into a voltage pulse large enough to measure accurately. The Electric Sensing Zone principle states that the amplitude of this pulse is directly proportional to the volume of the particle that produced it.
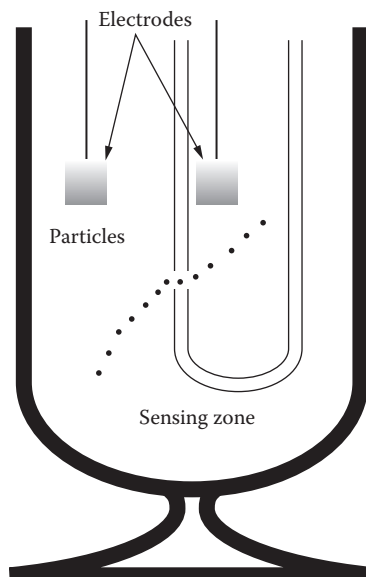
FIGURE 12.10 The Coulter principle.

Scaling these pulse heights in volume units enables a size distribution to be acquired and displayed. In addition, if a metering device is used to draw a known volume of the particle suspension through the aperture, a count of the number of pulses will yield the concentration of particles in the sample. McGann, et al.[12] have further developed this technique to measure the dynamic cell volume change (for spherical or irregular cell shapes) and to determine cell membrane permeability.[13]

12.2.3 Devices for Determination of Thermal Properties

With the recent advances in cell and tissue cryopreservation, knowledge of thermal properties of biomaterials is becoming increasingly important for modeling and numerical calculation to optimize cryopreservation conditions. In this section, a group of thermal analysis techniques and devices are introduced, which have been used (a) to directly determine the important thermal properties of a cell suspension, a tissue, or a CPA solution (e.g., phase diagram, thermal conductivity, vitrification/devitrification temperatures), or (b) to determine indirectly the cell dehydration during the cooling process.

12.2.3.1 Differential Thermal Analysis (DTA)

The basic components of a differential thermal analysis (DTA) device are shown in Figure 12.11. The principle of the DTA technique resumes to heating (or cooling) a test sample (S) and an inert reference (R) under identical conditions while measuring the temperature difference between S and R.

The differential temperature is then plotted against time or temperature. Chemical, physical, and structural changes in the sample S lead to the absorption (endothermal event) or evolution of heat (exothermal event) relative to R. If the response of two inert samples submitted to an applied heat-treatment program is not identical, differential temperatures arise as well. Therefore, DTA can also be used to study thermal properties and phase changes which do not necessarily lead to a change in enthalpy.

A typical DTA curve is illustrated in Figure 12.12. Three types of transitions are illustrated: (I) second-order phase transition in which a change in the horizontal baseline is detected; (II) an endothermic curve peak caused by a melting or a fusion; and (III) an exothermic curve peak caused by a crystalline phase change (freezing).

12.2.3.2 Differential Scanning Calorimetry (DSC)

The Differential Scanning Calorimetry was first introduced in 1960s. Unlike DTA instruments, which measure a temperature difference in a twin sample configuration with a common heater,
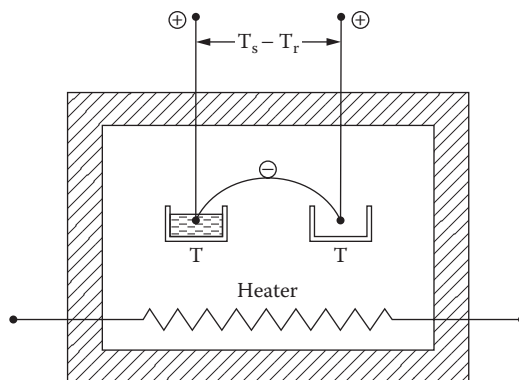
FIGURE 12.11 Schematic illustration of a basic DTA system.
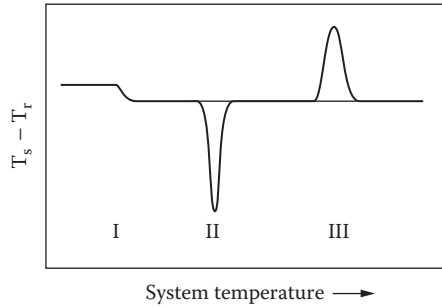
FIGURE 12.12 Typical DTA curves.

DSC measures the change of the difference in the heat flow rate to the sample and to a reference sample while they are subjected to a controlled temperature program.

Differential scanning calorimetry (DSC) monitors heat effects associated with phase transitions and chemical reactions as a function of temperature. In a DSC the difference in heat flow to the sample and a reference at the same temperature is recorded as a function of temperature. The reference is an inert material such as alumina, or just an empty aluminum pan. The temperature of both the sample and reference are changed at a constant rate. Two types of DSC systems are commonly in use: power-compensation DSC (Figure 12.13) and heat-flux DSC (Figure 12.14).

Power-compensation DSC. The specimen (TS) and reference (TR) temperatures are controlled independently using separate (identical) ovens (as shown in Figure 12.3). The temperature difference between the sample and reference is maintained to zero by varying the power input to the two furnaces. This energy is then a measure of the enthalpy or heat capacity changes in the test specimen S (relative to the reference R).

Heat-flux DSC. The test specimen S and reference material R (usually an empty sample pan + lid) are enclosed in the same furnace together with a metallic block with high thermal conductivity that ensures a good heat-flow path between S and R (as shown in Figure 12.14). The enthalpy or heat capacity changes in the specimen S lead to temperature differences relative to R. This results in a certain heat flow between S and R, however small compared to those in DTA, because of the good thermal contact between S and R. The temperature difference ΔT between S and R is recorded and further related to the enthalpy change in the specimen using calibration experiments.
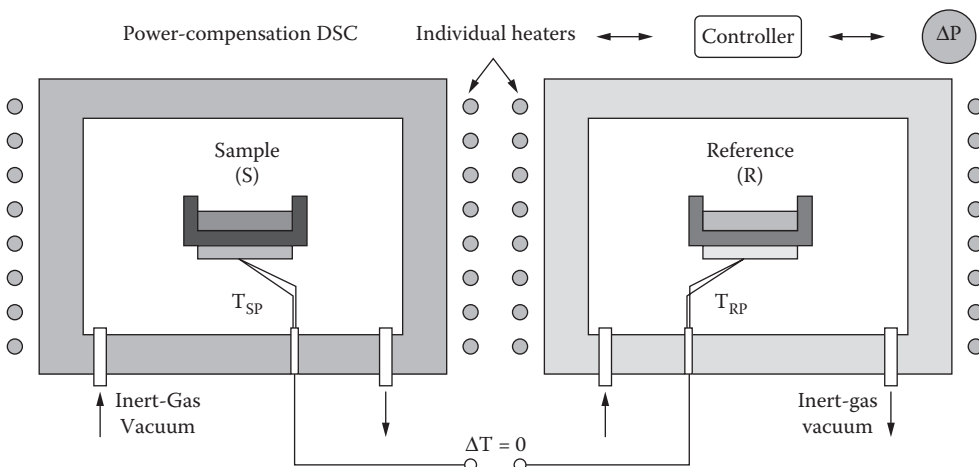
FIGURE 12.13 Power-compensation DSC.
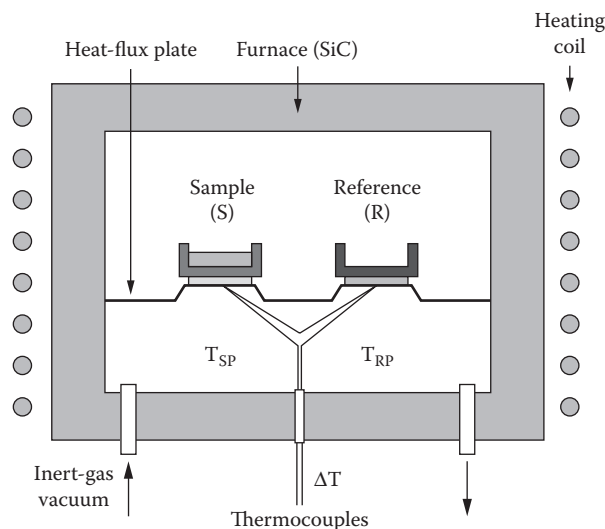
FIGURE 12.14 Main components of a typical heat-flux DSC.

The heat-flux DSC system is thus a slightly-modified DTA system: the only important difference is the good heat-flow path between the specimen and reference crucibles.

Modes of operation. DSCs are generally operated by a controlled program, which changes the temperature in time. Usually, there are two kinds of operation modes: constant heating rate (this is the classical DSC operating mode), and the variable heating rate.

12.2.3.2.1 Constant Heating Rate

The controlled program follows the time law:

$$T(t) = T_0 + \beta_0 \cdot t \tag{12.1}$$

where T_0 is the starting temperature of the run and β_0 the heating or cooling (negative) rate. In other words the temperature changes linearly in time. With common DSCs heating rates up to 150 K/min^{-1} (power compensated DSC: 500 K min^{-1}) can be reached. The cooling rates are lower (<150 K/min^{-1}), because the transport of heat out of the sample needs time (a compensation is not possible).

In the isothermal mode the heating rate (β_0 in Equation 12.1) is zero, i.e., the temperature T_0 is kept constant. Consequently, if no transitions or reactions take place in the sample, there is no heat exchanged with the sample and the heat flow rate should read zero. This is in practice not the case, as all DSCs are not perfectly symmetrical and the heat exchange of the sample and reference sample with the surroundings is somewhat different. This results in a non-zero heat flow rate even in the isothermal case. One reason to perform isothermal measurements in a DSC is to measure and check this asymmetry. Isotherms are used for calculation of heat flow rate corrections due to asymmetries; they are included before and after scanning sections in the case of precise heat capacity measurements. Another reason to perform isothermal measurements is to determine the latent heat of phase transitions taking place in the sample at a certain temperature. Of course, the baseline (the isotherm obtained without processes of the sample) must be subtracted from the measured curve to get the true reaction heat flow rate.

In the scanning mode the temperature changes linearly in time. Every material needs a certain heat to be warmed up and the heat flow rate is proportional to the heating rate:

$$\Phi_{Cp} = C_p \cdot \frac{dT}{dt} \qquad (12.2)$$

with *Cp* as the proportionality factor. In a DSC the differential heat flow rate depends on the differential heat capacity and heating rate. Generally the measured heat flow rate in scanning mode is never zero and is made up of three parts:

$$\Phi(T, t) = \Phi_0(T) + \Phi_{Cp}(T) + \Phi_r(T, t) \qquad (12.3)$$

The first term on the right hand side is caused by the unavoidable asymmetry of the DSC; the second term is caused by the difference in heat capacity of sample and reference sample; and the third term is the heat flow contribution from a transition (latent heat) occurring in the sample. The first two parts define the "baseline," and the third part defines the "peak" of the measured curve. In the case of total symmetry and absence of processes, only the sample heat capacity causes a signal and can be determined from it. Scanning is the most used mode of operation with DSCs.

12.2.3.2.2 *Variable Heating Rate (Modulates Temperature)*
In the case of a variable heating rate, a certain modulation term is added to the linear part of the temperature-time function. The periodic (harmonic, i.e., sinusoidal) is the simplest and most used modulation type. Equation 12.1 reads:

$$T(t) = T_0 + \beta_0 \cdot t + T_A \cdot \sin(\omega t) \qquad (12.4)$$

in which T_A is the amplitude and ω the angular frequency of the modulation. Together with β_0, the "underlying" heating rate, there are three parameters that can be chosen freely within certain limits. This influences the heating rate, which follows from Equation 12.4 as:

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \beta_0 + T_A \cdot \omega \cdot \cos(\omega t) \qquad (12.5)$$

This kind of operation mode, used in the MTDSC (modulated temperature DSC), is covered in a detailed discussion by Hohne et al.[14]

12.2.3.2.3 *Applications of Differential Scanning Calorimetry*
Determination of the temperature and the transition enthalpy of phase transitions. Differential scanning calorimetry, used to study changes in enthalpy as a material is heated and cooled, accurately determines the temperatures of thermal events such as the freezing and melting points. The thermal capacity and latent heats liberated or consumed during phase changes can also be accurately determined.

Determination of the glass transition and the devitrification temperature. DSC has been the most widely used technique in the determination of glass transition temperature. In this case, a heat capacity step prior to the melting endotherm is seen to define T_g. Levine and Slade[15] originally located the glass transition temperature in the middle of the main heat capacity step. A second suggestion has been to define T_g as the beginning or middle of a smaller heat capacity change, often seen at a lower temperature,[16] which may be associated with the beginning of mobility changes.

Regardless of how the glass transition is modeled, it is well known that there is a "step" in heat capacity, C_p, at this transition with no heat accompanying it. Hence, the phenomenon is similar to a thermodynamic second-order transition, but it is not a thermodynamic transition because it depends on time. The value of the glass transition temperature usually decreases by 2 to 3°C per
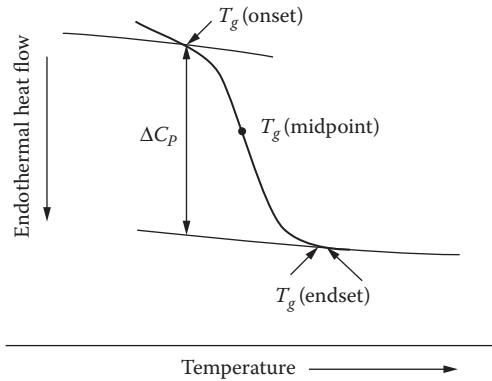
FIGURE 12.15 Determination of glass transition temperature, T_g, and change in heat capacity, ΔC_p, that occurs over the glass transition temperature range from DSC thermogram.

decade decrease in cooling rate. A recorded T_g corresponds only to a glass formed via a specific cooling history. In addition, T_g is not only influenced by how rapidly the material is cooled but also, if measured during a heating experiment, it is also affected by the heating rate. Fortunately, by following a few simple rules, DSC measurements of C_p will give T_g values that characterize the state of the glass and are relatively independent of instrumental parameters.

The glass transition occurs over a temperature range of 10 to 30°C. There are three T_g values in the thermograms as shown in Figure 12.15; both the onset and midpoint temperature of the glass transition are commonly referred to as T_g.[17]

Devitrification is a phenomenon of ice crystallization during the warming of a vitrified solution.[18] Luyet, and colleagues carried out the first experimental investigation of the warming behavior of vitrified aqueous solutions.[19,20] These workers used differential thermal analysis to detect the enthalpy changes associated with the various transitions and identified the different events which take place. When the solution was wholly amorphous before warming and when warming was not fast enough to avoid ice formation, Baudot and Boutron[21] observed (Figure 12.16) first the glass transition, then the devitrification peak corresponding to ice formation on warming, and finally the nonisothermal peak corresponding to ice melting. Here T_d refers to the devitrification temperature.

Measurement of cell volume change and water transport properties during cooling process. A technique using a differential scanning calorimeter (DSC) to determine dynamic and quantitative water permeability of cell membrane during freezing was first developed by Devireddy et al.[22,23,24]
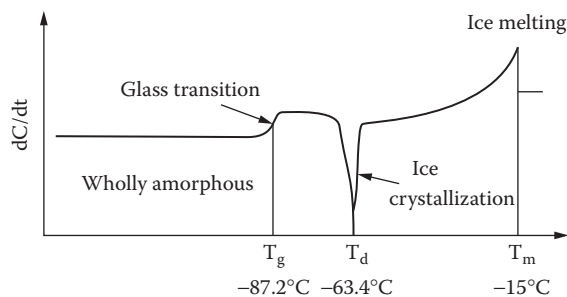
FIGURE 12.16 Thermogram on warming an aqueous solution with 45% (w/w) diethylformamide at 5°C/min after quenching (cooling at 320°C/min).

The first cell model system investigated was a nonattached spherical lymphocyte (Epstein–Barr virus transformed, EBVT) human cell line.[22] Data from the technique show that the initial heat release of a prenucleated sample containing osmotically active cells in the media is greater than the final heat release of an identical sample of osmotically inactive or lysed cells in the media. The total integrated magnitude of this difference, Δq_{dsc}, was found to be proportional to the cytocrit and hence also to the supercooled water volume in the sample. Further, the normalized fractional integrated heat release difference as a function of temperature, $\Delta q(T)_{dsc}/\Delta q_{dsc}$, was shown to correlate with the amount of supercooled cellular water that had exosmosed from the cell as a function of subzero temperature at constant cooling rates of 5, 10, and 20°C/min.

Water transport across a cell membrane during freezing in the presence of extracellular ice was modeled thermodynamically[25,26] as K-K equation

$$\frac{dV}{dT} = \frac{L_p A_c RT}{B v_w}\left[\ln\frac{(V - V_b)}{(V - V_b) + \phi_s n_s v_w} - \frac{\Delta H_f}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_R} - \frac{1}{T}\right)\right] \tag{12.6}$$

in which L_p, the plasma cell membrane permeability to water, is defined as

$$L_p = L_{pg}\exp\left(-\frac{E_{LP}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T} - \frac{1}{T_R}\right)\right) \tag{12.7}$$

and in which V is the cell volume, T is the absolute temperature, L_{pg} is the permeability of the membrane to water at a reference temperature $(T_R = 273.15$ K), E_{Lp} is the apparent activation energy for the permeability process, R is the gas constant, B is the constant cooling rate, A_c is the effective membrane surface area for water transport, v_w is the partial molar volume of water, and n_s is the number of moles of solutes in the cell as calculated from initial cell osmolarity and the total osmotically active cell water volume $(V_0 - V_b)$, in which V_b is the osmotically inactive cell volume, $\phi_s = 2$ is the disassociation constant for salt in water, and ΔH_f is the latent heat of fusion for water and is assumed to be constant in the temperature range of interest (0 to –20°C) as 335 mJ/mg.

The cell volume change as a function of temperature can be written as:[22]

$$V(T) = V_0 - \frac{\Delta q(T)_{dsc}}{\Delta q_{dsc}}(V_0 - V_b) \tag{12.8}$$

Equation 12.8 is used to generate the cell volume changes from the experimentally measured DSC heat release data in the subsequent analysis. By fitting Equations 12.6 and 12.7 to the data generated from Equation 12.8, the permeability of the cell membrane to water can be estimated.[22]

Several important limitations of the technique are that it requires *a priori* knowledge of geometric parameters such as the surface area, initial volume, and osmotically inactive cell volume and that the technique alone cannot determine whether the heat released from supercooled cellular water is due to dehydration or intracellular ice formation. These limitations were addressed by cryomicroscopy in the study.

As indicated, Devireddy et al.[22] did pioneer work in determining water transport properties (cell volumetric change) during the cooling process using DSC. In their DSC experimental design, at least three cooling processes need to be performed for a given cell sample: first, a slow cooling process is used to obtain the extracellular water latent heat release histogram (assuming that no IIF occurs at the slow cooling process). After thawing, the second rapid cooling process is used (and may be repeated if needed) to introduce intracellular ice formation (IIF) breaking plasma membranes of all cells in the sample. Right after thawing, the third cooling process (at the same

cooling rate as that in the first cooling process) is performed to obtain the total water latent heat release histogram. The histogram difference between the first and third cooling processes is then used to determine the intracellular water volume change history during the first slow cooling process. This approach has two potential limitations.[27] First, since the controlled cooling rate in a DSC machine is limited, the highest cooling rate provided by DSC may not be fast enough to ensure IIF to destroy all cells during the second cooling process. Second, for some cell types like human red blood cells, the broken membranes of the cells (ghosts) that are damaged by the second cooling process can be self-resealed during the thawing process before the third cooling process. Based on the original theoretical and experimental research work of Devireddy et al.,[22] Luo et al.[27] developed a modified method using DSC to determine cell volume change during the slow cooling process without the need for a second or third cooling process, i.e., only one cooling process is needed for a given cell sample. However, more cell samples with different cytocrits are needed in this method.

It is assumed that intracellular ice formation does not occur at slow cooling rates; intracellular water diffusing out of cells will freeze extracellularly as soon as it mixes into extracellular media during the freezing process; and all components in the cell suspension (including solution and cells) have the same density. Under these assumptions, the total latent heat release (per unit mass of cell suspension) from the start of the freezing to any final temperature during the freezing process can be described as follows:[22]

$$q_f = a\left[\frac{V_0 - V_f}{V_0}\right] \cdot \Delta H_f + \left[1 - a\right]q_{ecf} \tag{12.9}$$

in which q_f is the total latent heat release per unit mass of cell suspension at any final or ending temperature during the freezing process caused by the freezing of extracellular water (including the original extracellular water as well as water diffused out of cells); q_{ecf} is the total heat release (per unit mass of cell suspension) resulting from the freezing of water which is originally in extracellular media (not including water diffused out of cells during the freezing process); a is the cytocrit of cell suspension; V_f is the final cell volume; V_0 is the cell volume at the originally isotonic condition before freezing; and ΔH_f is the fusion heat of the unit mass of pure water.

Equation 12.9 can be transformed into the following form:[27]

$$q_f = \left\{\left[\frac{V_0 - V_f}{V_0}\right] \cdot \Delta H_f - q_{ecf}\right\} \cdot a + q_{ecf} \tag{12.10}$$
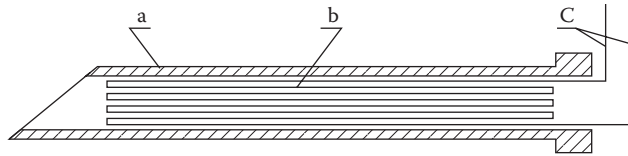
or

$$q_f = K_f \cdot a + B_f \tag{12.11}$$

Where

$$K_f = \left[\frac{V_0 - V_f}{V_0}\right] \cdot \Delta H_f - q_{ecf}, \text{ and } B_f = q_{ecf} \tag{12.12}$$

From the expression of K_f and B_f in Equation 12.11, the following equation can be further derived to calculate cell volume at any final/ending temperature:

$$V_f = V_0\left[1 - \frac{K_f + B_f}{\Delta H_f}\right] \tag{12.13}$$

FIGURE 12.17 Schematic of Fine Needle Sensor Structure. a: stainless steel sheath b: copper wire c: two leads connecting regulation voltage.

Equation 12.10 or 12.11 reveal that q_f is a linear function of a. After experimentally (with DSC) measuring q_f released from each of cell suspensions with different cytocrit a, slope K_f and intercept B_f in Equation 12.11 can be determined by linearly fitting Equation 12.11 with experimental data. If these two determined values (K_f and B_f) are substituted into Equation 12.13, one can determine $V_f(T)$.

12.2.3.3 Determination of Thermal Conductivity: Minimum Invasive Techniques and Devices

An understanding of thermal conductivity of living biomaterials (cell suspension, tissues, and organs) is indispensable for designing and controlling the optimal cooling and warming conditions to prevent cryoinjury and thermal-stress-induced fracture in frozen tissues. Two practical and minimally invasive (to reduce mechanical damage to living tissues and organs) techniques and devices — the fine needle and tiny spherical thermistor methods — are introduced in the sections that follow.

12.2.3.3.1 Fine Needle Method

A fine needle probe has been developed to determine the thermal conductivity of cryopreserved tissues and cell suspensions with cryoprotectants.[28] Figure 12.17 shows a schematic of the fine needle probe, which is constructed by inserting twenty strands of copper wire with electrical insulation coating (diameter: 0.02 mm, total length: 500 mm) into a fine stainless steel needle (gage: 19, inner diameter: 0.3 mm, outer diameter: 0.6 mm). The copper wire serves as both a heating unit and an electrical resistance thermometer.

In this experiment, the fine needle probe is inserted into a cryopreservation medium or a soft tissue at room temperature. The medium or the soft tissue is then cooled to different low temperatures (freezing occurs when temperature is below the freezing point). At a fixed temperature (after thermal equilibrium), a regulated voltage is supplied to the wire. Electrical resistance of the wire, R, changes with the wire temperature change. The data of R, which is proportional to the average temperature of the wire, is measured and recorded, and then the thermal conductivity of the sample is determined by the change of R as a linear function of logarithmic time interval using the "hot wire" model and equations. The relative error of the measurement is estimated to be ± 3 percent.

The measuring principle of the fine needle probe is described briefly here, and detailed information can be found in the literature.[29] Ideally, a fine needle probe is an infinitely long cylindrical heat source embedded in an infinite homogeneous medium. By applying the Laplace transformation on the controlling equations and the boundary conditions, the solutions can be simplified and the thermal conductivity of measured medium can be determined by:

$$\lambda = \left(\frac{q}{4\pi}\right) \bigg/ \left(\frac{dT_w}{d(\ln \tau)}\right) \tag{12.14}$$

After derivation and mathematical transformation, the relation between λ and measured R and τ can be known as
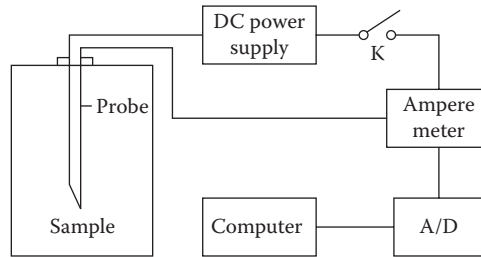
FIGURE 12.18 Schematic diagram of the measuring system.

$$\lambda = \frac{U^2 \beta}{4\pi L} \Bigg/ \left(\frac{dR}{d(\ln \tau)} \right) = A \Bigg/ \left(\frac{dR}{d(\ln \tau)} \right) \tag{12.15}$$

in which U and L is the heating voltage, R is the electrical resistance of copper wire, β is the ratio of R change against temperature change, τ is the heating time, U and L is the length of copper wire, and A is the sensor calibration constant.

The measuring system is schematized in Figure 12.18. When the switch (K) is on, a regulation voltage (U and L) is supplied to the circuit. The Ampere meter will get the current value (I) at a predetermined time interval (τ). At the same time, it feeds the collected data into the computer. According to R=U/I, the copper wire's electrical resistance versus logarithmic τ can be calculated. Using the least square method, the tangent of R against logarithmic τ can be determined, and then the thermal conductivity of medium can be calculated from Equation 12.15.

The fine needle sensor can be used to measure thermal conductivity of biological tissues and cryoprotective solutions at low temperature with relative error less than 3 percent. The advantages of the fine needle sensor are high accuracy, simplicity (timesaving and user-friendly), wide applicability, and minimum invasive nature for the tissues/organs/cell suspensions.

12.2.3.3.2 Tiny Spherical Thermistor

Zhang et al.[30] developed the tiny spherical thermistor technique to determine the thermal conductivity of biomaterials over a wide temperature range by using a tiny thermistor 0.3 to 0.5 mm in diameter. Inserting the thermistor into the tissues is minimally invasive and does not cause significant tissue or cell damage. The thermal conductivity of the medium can be calculated by the temperature rise of the thermistor and the electrical power applied.

Based on the theoretical model as described by Zhang et al.,[30] the temperature rise of the thermistor (θ_P) and the measured medium (θ_m) in steady state can be described by the following equations:

$$\nabla^2 \theta_P + \frac{P}{V_P} \cdot \frac{1}{k_P} = 0 \quad \text{when } r \leq a \tag{12.16a}$$

$$\nabla^2 \theta_m = 0 \quad \text{when } r > a \tag{12.16b}$$

$$\theta_P = \theta_m \quad \text{when } r = a \tag{12.17a}$$

$$k_P \frac{\partial \theta_P}{\partial r} = k_m \frac{\partial \theta_m}{\partial r} \quad \text{when } r = a \tag{12.17b}$$

$$\frac{\partial \theta_P}{\partial r} = 0 \quad \text{when } r = 0 \tag{12.17c}$$

$$\theta_m = 0 \quad \text{when } r \to \infty \tag{12.17d}$$

in which r is the radial coordinate measured from the center of the thermistor, k_m and k_P are thermal conductivities of the measured medium and the thermistor, respectively; a is the radius and V_P is the volume of the thermistor; and P is the power applied. The solutions of the question above are:

$$\theta_P = \frac{P}{4\pi k_m} \left[\frac{1}{2a^3} \frac{k_m}{k_p} \left(a^2 - r^2 \right) + \frac{1}{a} \right] \tag{12.18}$$

$$\theta_m = \frac{P}{4\pi k_m} \frac{1}{r} \tag{12.19}$$

Because actual temperature measured is the average value in the whole volume of the thermistor, the temperature rise of the thermistor (ΔT) is:

$$\Delta T = \frac{1}{V_P} \int_0^a 4\pi r^2 \theta_P dr = \frac{P}{4\pi a} \left(\frac{1}{k_m} + \frac{1}{5k_P} \right) \tag{12.20}$$

or

$$\frac{1}{k_m} = 4\pi a \frac{\Delta T}{P} - \frac{1}{5k_P} \tag{12.21}$$

Obviously, if a and k_p of the thermistor are known, the thermal conductivity of the measured medium can be determined from Equation 12.21 by measuring ΔT and P.

Figure 12.19 shows the structure of the detector. A tiny spherical thermistor, 0.3–0.5 mm in diameter, is fitted on one side of a stainless steel tube, 0.6 mm in outer diameter, by epoxy resins, and two leads of the thermistor go through the tube.

The circuit for the measurement is given in Figure 12.20, where R_p is resistance of the thermistor, R_s is an adjustable precision resistor, and V_C is a DC voltage regulator. The thermistor is first used
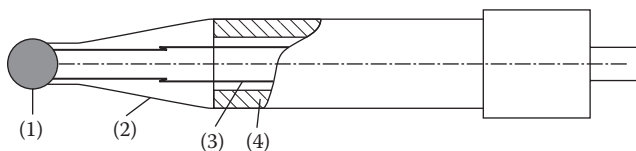
FIGURE 12.19 Structure of the detector: (1) thermistor, (2) epoxy resins, (3) leads, and (4) stainless steel tub.
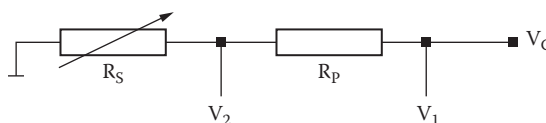
FIGURE 12.20 Schematic of the measurement circuit.

passively to sense the temperature of the measured medium and is then self-heated. When voltages (V_1 and V_2) reach steady state, the resistance of thermistor and the power supplied can be calculated:

$$R_P = (V_1 - V_2)R_s/V_2 \tag{12.22}$$

$$P = (V_1 - V_2)V_2/R_s \tag{12.23}$$

The variations in thermistor resistance with temperature can be described as follows:

$$R_P = R_{P0} \exp\left[\beta\left(\frac{1}{T} - \frac{1}{T_0}\right)\right] \tag{12.24}$$

in which T and T_0 are temperature values corresponding to resistance of the thermistor R_P and R_{P0}, respectively, and β is the coefficient of the thermistor. From Equation 12.24, we can get the temperature rise ($\Delta T = T - T_0$) of the thermistor:

$$\Delta T = \frac{TT_0}{\beta} \ln\left(\frac{R_{P0}}{R_P}\right) \tag{12.25}$$

In experiments, if the temperature rise ΔT is controlled to less than 3K, Equation 12.35 can be approximated as:

$$\Delta T \approx \frac{T_0^2}{\beta} \ln\left(\frac{R_{P0}}{R_P}\right) \tag{12.26}$$

The resistance, power applied, and temperature of the thermistor change with the time during self-heating in experiments. The measurement recording will be stopped if the voltage change is observed to be less than 10 μV/s, which means the temperature change of the thermistor is less than 0.0014K/s. Generally speaking, it takes 30–90 s to reach the steady state and to complete the experiment.

To get an accurate result, some parameters — such as the coefficient of the thermistor (β) radius (a), and thermal conductivity (k_p) of the thermistor — need to be calibrated, and detailed information about how to do the calibration can be found in Zhang et al.[30] Based on the determined values of β, a, and k_p, thermal conductivity of a medium/sample can be determined by measuring $\Delta T/P$ of the thermistor.

12.3 THERMAL INSTRUMENT AND DEVICES IN BOTH RESEARCH AND CRYOPRESERVATION PRACTICE

12.3.1 COOLING/WARMING INSTRUMENTS AND DEVICES

The cooling and warming rates have a great impact on the cryosurvival of living cells and tissues. Methods and devices have been developed to control the cooling and warming conditions in cryobiological research and applications.

12.3.1.1 General Design Consideration

There are several important factors to consider in designing biological cooling units. For example, the number and shape of the samples to be cooled simultaneously determine the range of acceptable

volumes and geometries for the cooling chamber. Other important factors include the required cooling rates, the temperature range through which the samples must be cooled, and the required accuracy of temperature control. Besides, practical considerations are also important: the choice of refrigerant may be influenced by the intended storage temperature and is certainly influenced by the availability and cost of the various alternatives, and the range of intended cooling profiles has very important implications for the choice of programming system. The following discussion is from the work and study of Pegg et al.[31]

12.3.1.1.1 Operating Temperature Range

The most difficult and dangerous temperature range for the cryopreservation of biomedical materials is from ambient temperature down to –60°C, which might represent a reasonable lower limit for controlled cooling. It was expected that any device must provide control to –60°C and preferably to –80°C. It is better if the temperature range can be controlled from room temperature to –196°C (liquid nitrogen).

12.3.1.1.2 Accuracy of Temperature Control

The required accuracy of temperature control is debatable; both cooling rate and absolute temperature must be considered. The available experimental investigation on the effect of cooling rate on survival indicates that cell survival would not usually be affected by changes in rate of the order of 20 percent or even more.[31] However, we cannot find any studies of the effect of small changes of cooling rate with well-controlled linear cooling; it seems reasonable to accept the control accuracy to be within ±5 percent.

The accuracy of absolute temperature control is sometimes of great importance, but in other circumstances it is much less critical. For example, in experiments involving the progressive increase in cryoprotectant concentration during cooling so as to maintain an unfrozen medium, temperature control should be within ±0.2°C. Also, if it is desired to change the cooling rate at a predetermined temperature, absolute accuracy is important; however if, as is more usual, cooling is to be continued to the lower temperature limit at a single rate, then the absolute temperature of any sample at a particular time will be unimportant. Thus, it is impossible to lay down a single requirement for the tolerance on absolute temperature control; however, ±0.2°C may be required for critical purposes.[31]

The liberation of latent heat during the freezing of water is another aspect of temperature control that must be considered; the demonstration that prolongation of the postfreezing plateau may result in decreased cell survival implies that this heat should be removed as expeditiously as possible.

12.3.1.1.3 The Refrigerant

The cooling rate required for cryobiology may be as high as tens of degrees per minute, so the compression-expansion cycle refrigerators and Peltier effect coolers are ruled out because of the low rates of heat-pumping obtainable. The most readily available and inexpensive refrigerants are solid carbon dioxide (or dry ice) and liquid nitrogen; both are capable of providing temperature control down to –60°C. The sublimation point of carbon dioxide at 1 atm (–78.5°C) is too close to −60°C to provide an adequate potential for fast cooling as the lower temperature limit is approached. Liquid nitrogen, on the other hand, with a boiling point of –195.8°C (at 1 atm) is very suitable. However, solid carbon dioxide has a great advantage: its very large latent heat of vaporization (214 kcal/liter, as compared with 38.6 kcal/liter for nitrogen), makes it an extremely efficient cold sink.

Either refrigerant (dry ice or liquid nitrogen) would be acceptable for cooling a specimen to a low temperature, but liquid nitrogen is needed for faster cooling rates and lower temperatures.

12.3.1.1.4 Heat-Exchange Media

Cooling devices in current use employ either liquid cooling baths or gas-filled cooling chambers. Liquids are particularly attractive as heat transfer media due to their high specific heat compared to gases. For example, ethanol has a specific heat of 2.29 J/g°C, about three times the heat capacity of nitrogen gas in terms of weight but approximately 2000× the heat capacity in terms of volume. Therefore, liquids are preferred for applications requiring the highest accuracy of temperature control. However, liquids have some disadvantages: ethanol becomes viscous when the temperature of the system decreases, it cannot be used much below –100°C, and it eventually freezes at –117.3°C. Wet samples are sometimes a disadvantage, particularly if they are to be stored in liquid nitrogen, since the ethanol freezes, causing the samples to adhere. It was concluded that an alcohol bath cooling unit would be valuable for accurate temperature control and for minimizing the latent heat effect, but a gas-phase cooler would have practical advantages for less critical control.[31]

12.3.1.2 Cooling Devices: Examples

12.3.1.2.1 Ethanol Bath Cooling Unit

The ethanol bath cooling unit was first reported by Pegg et al.[31] Figure 12.21 illustrates the principle of the apparatus. Samples are placed in a cooling bath with the dimension of 1.5 cm × 20 cm × 18 cm, containing 4 liters of ethanol. The forced injection of air from an inlet at the base continuously stirs the bath, and the air being taken from the gas space above the bath minimizes heat input. In an adjacent section of the apparatus, ethanol is cooled to –75°C by percolation over solid carbon dioxide fragments (10–15kg) contained in a perforated metal canister measuring 20 cm × 20 cm × 35 cm deep. Cooled ethanol collects in a two-liter sump which contains a submerged gear pump (Crown type MG 2); driven at 460 rpm, this pump will deliver an unrestricted flow of 4 liters per minute and will develop a pressure (at zero flow) of 110 psi with ethanol at –70°C. A wire gauze filter of 50 mesh stainless steel protects the pump intake. A 0~100 psi pressure gauge monitors the pump output pressure, which is 20 psi in normal operation; pipe blockage or pump failure can he diagnosed from the gauge indication. Coolant from the pump flows to a T-piece, which is connected to two solenoid valves that operate in flip-flop on command from the control equipment. One valve directs the ethanol to the solid carbon dioxide chamber and
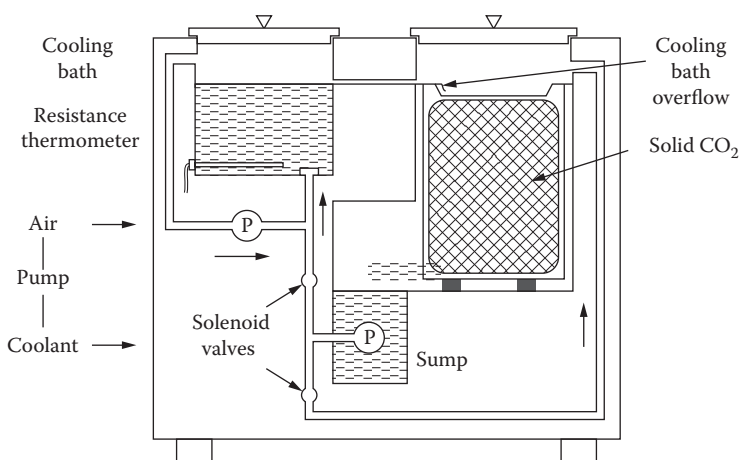
FIGURE 12.21 Schematic diagram of the ethanol bath cooling apparatus. Ethanol, cooled by percolation over the solid carbon dioxide in the right-hand compartment, is pumped into the caroling bath whenever the temperature controller causes the upper solenoid valve to open. Surplus ethanol from the cooling bath is recooled and returned to the pump. (Redrawn from Pegg et al., 1973).

then to the sump. The second valve directs the ethanol to the cooling bath, which it enters at the base mixed with the air injection. Excess ethanol from the cooling bath overflows into the carbon dioxide chamber where it is recooled and returned to the sump. The shape and position of the coolant inlet nozzle and the resistance thermometer connected to the control unit were found to be critical. It was necessary to mix the injected air with the coolant and to provide multiple injection ports in order to achieve maximum uniformity of temperature throughout the bath; it was also essential to position the control thermometer within 1 cm of one of the injection ports to prevent temperature undershoot. With these refinements a temperature regulation of ±0.2°C, measured with a thermometer having a response time of 0.2 sec, was obtained.

12.3.1.2.2 *Microprocessor-Controlled Rate Controller*

Cell or tissue suspensions cooled or warmed at predetermined optimal rates are usually desirable. There are many commercial cooling and warming devices that will meet this requirement. In many of these devices, a cold gas (e.g., liquid nitrogen gas) is used as a coolant and a warm gas (e.g., nitrogen gas or air heated by an electrical heater) is used as a heating source, both of which can be injected through electromagnetic valves into a chamber containing cell or tissue samples in order to achieve the desired temperature and cooling or warming rate in the chamber or inside the samples. Temperature sensors are placed in the chamber and/or samples to monitor the process.

The microprocessor-controlled rate controller first developed by Baartz and Brock (1979) is introduced here as an example. Figure 12.22 presents a diagram of the microprocessor-controlled constant-rate cooling system.[32] The microprocessor is introduced into the system so that the signal generated by a copper–constantan thermocouple, which is placed in a reference sample of the cell suspensions to be frozen, is continuously compared with a preset cooling rate; a positive or negative deflection of 0.017°C or more from that rate is compensated for by control of the solenoid valves in the freezing chamber.

A stainless steel cylindrical inner chamber, 37 cm high and 31 cm I.D. (internal diameter), was positioned over a 16-cm-high cylindrical base, which enclosed the air fan (3400 rpm) and three N_2 vapor inlets (Figure 12.22). Three 3/8-in. cryogenic solenoid valves at the base of the inner chamber regulate the flow of LN (liquid nitrogen) vapors. The base of the inner chamber is wire mesh, and a test-tube rack rests on that to hold the sample vials clipped in canes. Near the base of the inner
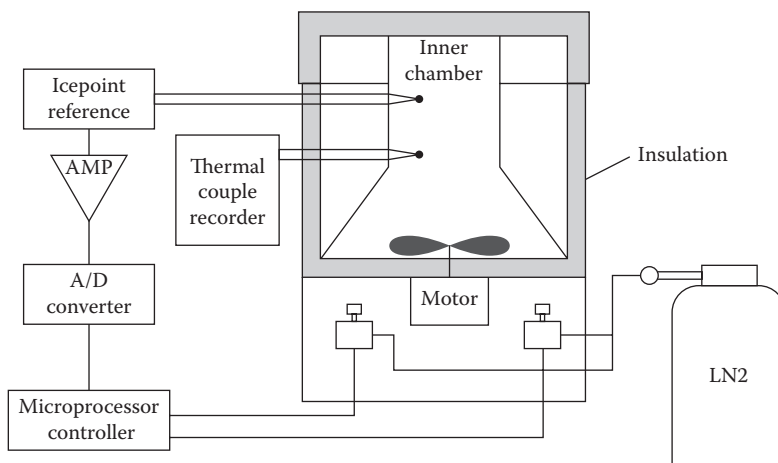
FIGURE 12.22 Diagram of the cooling system shows the inlets for liquid N_2 vapor at the base of the inner cooling chamber. Thermocouple probes from the reference sample lead to the recorder and to the rate control unit (Redrawn after Baartz, G. and Brock, A.M., A microprocessor-controlled rate controller for use in cryopreservation, *Cryobiology,* 16, 497–505, 1979.)[32]

chamber, four metal deflectors were attached to its walls at approximately equal distances from each other. The two copper–constantan thermocouple wires enter at the base of the outer chamber and are led over the top of the inner chamber to the reference sample. The interior of the outer chamber is 40.5 cm by 54.5 cm high. The closed lid of the outer chamber rests close to the top of the cylindrical inner chamber to minimize loss of N_2 vapors. The refrigerant was supplied by a liquid nitrogen cylinder pressurized to 22 psi.

The thermocouple probes were positioned diagonally so that they entered the glass bottle containing the reference sample at the center of the cap and the tips terminated at the side of the base of the bottle. The thermocouples were brazed to temperature-conducting thin metal rods extending the entire length of the bottle. Placing the thermocouples diagonally against the lower edge of the bottle serves a twofold purpose: it eliminates the chamber temperature sensor and it records the average temperature of the cell suspension from the center to the periphery of the bottle. The actual temperature of the reference sample is also monitored and recorded.

12.3.2 Freeze-Drying Technology and Lyophilizer

Lyophilization (freeze-drying) is one of the potential ideal approaches for long-term preservation of biological cells and tissues. Freeze-drying has some apparent advantages over the traditional cryopreservation methods:

1. Freeze-dried cells can be stored at room temperature for an extended period of time, resulting in a low cost without the need for a cooling facility or liquid nitrogen.
2. Freeze-dried cells have a low mass that can be readily shipped and transported.
3. Freeze-dried cells can be reconstituted by rehydration at the point of use, which is convenient and important to meet increased and urgent needs of these blood cells.

Lyophilization has been successfully used in pharmaceutical protein formulations,[33] as well as in biological cells.[34,35,36,37] The process, generally attributed to Rey,[38] is called lyophilization because of the porous nature of the dried product and its "lyophil" characteristic to rapidly reabsorb the solvent and restore the substance to its original state. In its simplest form, lyophilization is defined as a stabilizing process in which the substance is first frozen and then the quantity of the solvent is reduced first by sublimation (primary drying) and then by desorption (secondary drying) to values that will no longer support biological growth or chemical reactions. Lyophilization is a multistep operation in which each step is critical.

For the preservation of a biological product, a freeze-drying operation includes[38] sample preparation, a freezing process, a sublimation process or primary drying, the desorption process or secondary drying, and final treatment.

12.3.2.1 General Description of the Lyophilization Steps

12.3.2.1.1 Sample Preparation

During preparation, the sample (cells) is collected and washed with an isotonic physiological solution (e.g., phosphate buffered saline), and then resuspended in a solution with lyoprotective agents (LPA), which are chemicals used for preventing cells from injury during the lyophilization process.

The biological cells or tissues may exhibit significant degradation and loss of activity during the freeze-drying process. The lyoprotective agents are selected for different cells and tissues types. The following are commonly used lyoprotective agents: sugars such as sucrose, trehalose, glucose; polyhydric alcohols such as polyethylene glycol (PEG), ethylene glycol, and glycerol; polar and aprotic solvents such as dimethyl sulphoxide (DMSO) and dimethyl formamide (DMF); and

macromolecules and polymers such as bovine serum albumin (BSA), dextran, polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP), and others such as salts and amines.

12.3.2.1.2 Freezing

The next step is the freezing process, which is critical for the survival of the cells and tissues. The goal of the freezing process is to separate the solvent from the solutes. For an aqueous system, the water will form ice crystals, and solutes will be confined to the interstitial regions among the ice crystals. Two main factors need to be considered — the temperature necessary to freeze completely the cell and tissue solution (formulation), which will be dependent on the nature of the solvent and other constituents that comprise the formulation, and the freezing rate, which is a very important parameter in the freezing procedure. The process can be slow or rapid. In general, slow cooling rates lead to large ice crystals, a tendency toward maximally concentrated solutes in the non-ice phase, and may allow incompatibilities between solutes to manifest as phase separation. Higher cooling rates tend to increase the rates of nucleation and crystal growth, promoting a finer subdivision of ice and an increased ice surface area. Faster cooling rates also tend to create metastable or nonequilibrium states, resulting in greater quantities of unfrozen water and promoting glass formation. The various cooling procedures employed include contact with a cold surface, immersion in a cold bath, direction of spraying into liquid nitrogen, and utilization of liquified gases. The temperature range is also widely distributed from several degrees below zero to liquid nitrogen temperature (–196°C). Optimal cooling conditions need to be defined to prevent cryoinjury to cells during the freezing process. Freezing may be performed in an external freezing unit or on the shelves of the freeze-dryer (Figure 12.23a). An example of the frozen ice-product matrix is shown in Figure 12.23b.

12.3.2.1.3 Primary Drying

Primary drying is a process in which the water (in the state of ice crystal or glass) is removed by the sublimation. The pressure in the freeze-dryer is reduced by the vacuum system, and heat is applied to the sample formulation to initiate sublimation. The sublimating solvent vapors pass through the opening in the closure, and as the sublimation of the ice crystals proceeds, the ice-gas interface recedes through the cake (Figure 12.23c).

Completion of the primary drying process occurs when all of the ice crystals have been removed from the formulation, and the volume occupied by the resulting cake is equivalent to that of the frozen matrix.

12.3.2.1.4 Secondary Drying

In the secondary or final drying phase, the point is to reduce the residual moisture content in the product as much as necessary to ensure a permanently storable state of the product. At the completion of primary drying (Figure 12.23d), some water will still be adsorbed onto the surface of the cake. This moisture may constitute, depending on the temperature and the nature of the constituents composing the cake, 5–10% weight/weight of the dried product. In many cases, such moisture values may be too high, and the final product may not have the desired stability. The desired stability is obtained by reducing the moisture content in the product by desorbing the moisture from the cake without reducing the volume of the interstitial cake. The final desorption of the remaining water is usually accomplished by increasing the temperature of the product and reducing the partial pressure of water vapor in the container.

12.3.2.1.5 Storage and Reconstitution

After lyophilization, a formulation must be protected from the environment. In most cases, the formulation in the container is sealed by a stoppering mechanism contained in the freeze-dryer, which depresses the closure into the container (Figure 12.23e). The stoppering of the closure into the container temporarily protects the final product from the environment. Upon completion of the stoppering of the containers, the product can be safely removed from the freeze-dryer, and the
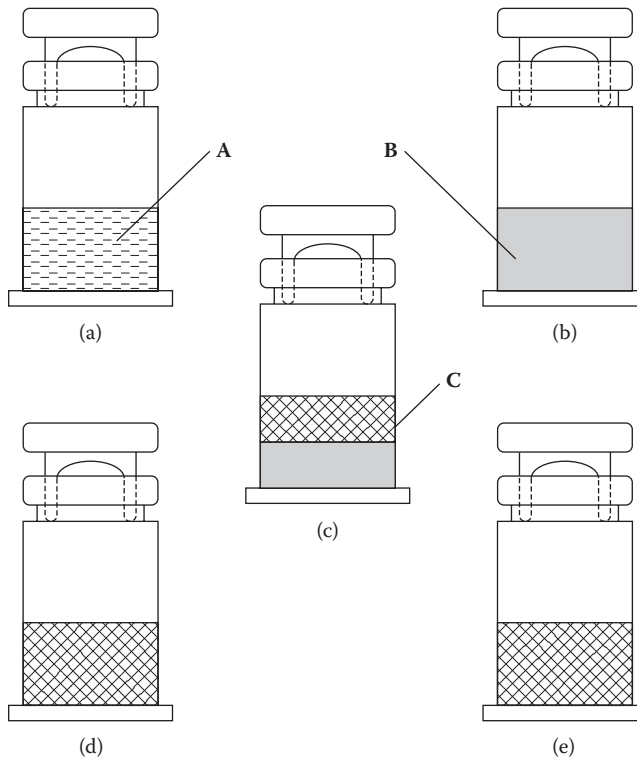
FIGURE 12.23 Lyophilization in Glass Containers. (a) shows a fill volume of a liquid formulation, denoted by region defined by "A," in a glass container with a lyophilization closure positioned for the drying process; (b) the frozen ice-product matrix of the formulation is signified by the region "B"; (c) illustrates the primary drying process, and the interstitial cake portion is denoted by region "C"; (d) shows the completion of secondary drying; (e) illustrates the final product with the closure in its stopper position (redrawn from Thomas, A. J., 1999[50]).

stopper can be crimped sealed with a metal or colored plastic cap to provide a permanent seal for the product.

The final step after lyophilization is the rehydration or reconstitution process. Usually, the sample can be rehydrated at normal temperature. In most cases, rehydration is performed by addition of an exact amount of aqueous solution (reconstitution buffer solution) that was previously extracted from the system during lyophilizations. Because of the highly porous structure of the freeze-dried products, rehydration is very fast and complete.

12.3.2.2 Freeze-Drying Equipment

The following is a brief, general description of the essential components and their functions in a freeze-dryer. The general layout of a freeze-dryer is given in Figure 12.24.

12.3.2.2.1 The Freeze-Drying Chamber

The freeze-drying chamber serves two main functions: it provides a safe environment for the product during the entire lyophilization process and provides the necessary temperatures and pressures to conduct each step of the lyophilization process.

The freeze-drying chamber (K), as illustrated in Figure 12.24, is a metal vessel, generally constructed from stainless steel. The chamber door is either fabricated from metal, such as stainless steel, or from clear plastic. Figure 12.24 shows that access to the chamber is by means of a metal
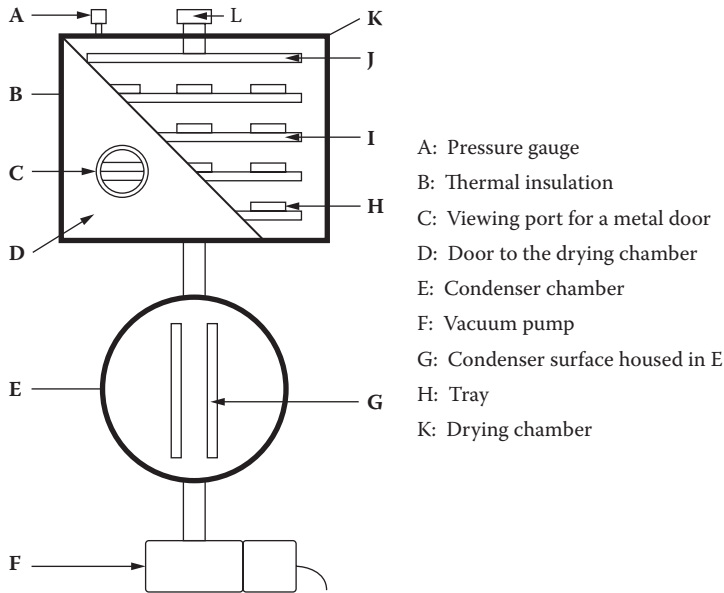
FIGURE 12.24 A general layout of a freeze-drying machine (redrawn from Thomas, A. J., 1999[50]).

door (D) containing a glass viewing port (C). The door is fitted with an elastomer gasket (not shown) to form a vacuum seal with the drying chamber.

The drying chamber contains usable shelves (I) and an unusable shelf (J). The trays (H) containing the product, either in bulk or in glass containers, are loaded onto the usable shelves; the unusable shelf (J) serves as a radiation shield for the top shelf. All of the shelves are of a hollow construction that permits the serpentine flow of heat-transfer fluid. The heat-transfer fluid can be chilled to freeze the product or heated to provide the necessary energy for the primary and secondary drying processes.

The drying chamber also contains a pressure gauge (A) and is equipped with an insulation covering (B) over the entire chamber surface to prevent heat transfer to the shelves (I) and the trays (H) during the drying process.

12.3.2.2.2 The Condenser Chamber

The main function of the condenser chamber is to house the condenser surfaces for the removal of water vapor from the gases that pass from the drying chamber. For the condenser plates to be effective, their operating temperatures must be a minimum of 20°C lower than the product temperature during the primary drying process. Unlike the shelves of the dryer, which are chilled by a heat-transfer fluid, the condenser surfaces are generally refrigerated by direct expansion of a refrigerant.

Figure 12.24 illustrates an external condenser system in which the condenser surfaces (G) are housed in a separate insulated condenser chamber (E). In some dryers, the condenser surfaces are housed in the drying chamber and are referred to as internal condensers.

12.3.2.2.3 The Vacuum Pumping System

The vacuum pumping system, in conjunction with the condenser system, provides the necessary pressures for conducting the primary and secondary drying processes. Typical mechanical vacuum pumps used in freeze-dryers are oil lubricated; however, oil-free mechanical pumping systems are available. The vacuum pump (F) as shown in Figure 12.24 compresses the noncondensable gases that pass through the condenser chamber (E) and discharges these gases directly into the atmosphere.

12.3.3 Uniform and Rapid Electromagnetic (EM) Heating

As mentioned, the lethal factors induced from the cooling and warming processes cause the major cryoinjury to cells during cryopreservation.[7,8] Both cooling and warming rates are critical to the survival of cryopreserved cells or organs.[39] In order to prevent cell damage during the cooling process, vitrification — the absence of any ice in intra- and extracellular solutions — has been proposed as a feasible method.[40] If cells and tissues can survive cooling to low temperatures, they still have to face challenges caused by warming and thawing. Currently, most cryopreserved cells and tissues are warmed by the conventional heat-convection method (e.g., warming in a hot gas or stirred liquid bath at room temperatures). Due to the low thermal conductivity and high specific heat of biological materials, this convective warming regime can only make a slow and nonuniform heating process (especially for the relatively large cell suspensions or tissues), which causes lethal intracellular ice-recrystallization, devitrification, and thermal stress and fracture in the samples and tissues. A rapid and uniform heating is desired for the optimal warming to prevent cell and tissue damage. Electromagnetic (EM) heating, in which heat is generated volumetrically,[41] seems to be one practical approach to reach both rapid and uniform heating. However, the microwave (multimode) heating currently used in residential and industrial applications is causing "hot spots" in the heating materials in an uncontrolled fashion, and hence cannot be directly applied to heat-cryopreserved biomaterials. The single-mode microwave technology has proven useful to control and ensure a rapid and uniform heating.

The early report of Guttman et al.,[42] using EM to rewarm cryopreserved organs, has shown some success in thawing canine kidneys in a microwave oven, which works at frequency of 2450 MHz. However, their results could not be repeated by Pegg et al.[43] The major problem of using this frequency is that the penetration depth is not large enough to produce a uniform heating pattern. EM waves at lower frequencies can penetrate more deeply. Ruggera and Fahy[44] reported using a resonant helical coil applicator operating at 20–30 MHz to heat a frozen cryoprotectant solution rapidly and uniformly. Rachman et al.[45] introduced a UHF (ultra-high frequency) rewarming system, which was used to investigate the warming rate and uniformity of a rabbit kidney phantom. They designed a cylindrical resonant cavity, which can be excited in the TE111 and TM010 modes at about 434 MHz. A variable frequency synthesized source was applied to track the change of resonant frequency during heating. Some preliminary results of the warming rate and temperature field in the phantom were presented. Robinson et al. further developed the single mode EM heating system.[46] In their study, three fundamental modes of a cylindrical cavity are excited to provide an electric field at the center. The frequencies used are 432, 434, and 438 MHz. Maximum warming rates achieved were over 10°C/second (600°C/minute), and the final spatial temperature differences in the sample were less than 20°C.

A brief introduction of microwave heating theory will be described in this chapter, followed by a discussion of the importance of dielectric properties of biomaterial in the design of an EM warming system. Finally, a typical design of a microwave rewarming system will be presented.

12.3.3.1 Microwave Heating Theory

Water is a major component of cells, typically forming between 70 and 95 percent of the mass of the cell. The water molecule is a polar molecule, which means it has one positively charged side and one negatively charged side. If a water molecule is placed in an electric field, it will tend to align itself along the direction of the external fields. The microwave is a form of electromagnetic radiation, which means it has oscillating magnetic and electric fields. The changing electric field of the microwave radiation causes the water molecules to rotate. As the electric field in the wave alternates rapidly, the water molecules vibrate back and forth in an attempt to follow the changing electric field. This will create frictions between molecules and cause the heat generation.

The electrical behavior of materials subjected to an electromagnetic field is characterized by the following parameters: permittivity (ε), permeability (μ), and conductivity (σ_e). Permittivity describes the interaction of the material with an electric field, and permeability describes the interaction with the magnetic field. The electric conductivity is related to the permittivity and characterizes free-electron conductive properties. Since biological materials are usually nonmagnetic material with low conductivity; they may be characterized in terms of permittivity, which is composed of a real part (ε', dielectric constant) and an imaginary part (ε'', dielectric loss factor):

$$\varepsilon = \varepsilon' - j\varepsilon'' \tag{12.27}$$

while

$$j = \sqrt{-1}$$

or

$$\varepsilon = \varepsilon_0(\varepsilon_r' - j\varepsilon_{eff}'') \tag{12.28}$$

While ε_0 is the permittivity of free space, ε_r' is the relative dielectric constant, and ε_{eff}'' is the effective relative dielectric loss factor.

Dielectric constant is considered the material's capability for storing energy when exposed to an electric field, whereas dielectric loss factor is seen as the capability of a material for dissipating energy in the form of heat. When a biological tissue is subject to an EM field, the local volumetric heating rate or the density of microwave power deposition Φ is given by

$$\Phi = \omega\varepsilon_0\varepsilon_{eff}''|E|^2 \tag{12.29}$$

in which E is the electric field strength, which can vary significantly with position.

The heat transfer equation within the biomaterial subjected to EM heating is given by

$$\rho C \frac{dT}{dt} = \Phi + k\nabla^2 T \tag{12.30}$$

in which T is the temperature, ρ is the density, C is the specific heat capacity, and k is the thermal conductivity. For rapid warming, the second term in this equation may be ignored since $\Phi \gg k\nabla^2 T$, so the warming rate can be estimated by

$$B = \frac{dT}{dt} \approx \frac{\Phi}{\rho C} \tag{12.31}$$

12.3.3.2 Dielectric Properties of Biomaterials

Dielectric properties of biological materials are important for the results of EM warming. Conventional techniques of measuring dielectric properties of materials have been applied to biological materials. Open-ended coaxial probe (OECP) methods have been used for noninvasive measurements of the complex permittivity of cryoprotectant agents at different frequencies over a wide temperature range.[47,48] Typically, in this method, a system that employs a signal source, reflectometery, and a network analyzer are utilized. The network analyzer measures complex impedance of the terminal probe. These data are used to compute the dielectric properties of the material.

The resonant cavity perturbation method has long been used for dielectric properties measurements. Robinson et al. applied this method to the determination of dielectric properties of biomaterials.[46,51] It has been shown that when a workpiece is placed at the center of the resonant cavity, the changes of resonant frequency f_r and quality factor Q of the cavity are related to the relative permittivity ε_r and conductivity σ of the workpiece. The following equations can be written[46] as

$$\Delta f = f_r - f_0 = k_1 \cdot \frac{(\varepsilon_r - 1)}{(\varepsilon_r + 2)} \tag{12.32}$$

$$\Delta(Q^{-1}) = \frac{1}{Q} - \frac{1}{Q_0} = k_2 \cdot \frac{\sigma}{(\varepsilon_r + 2)^2} \tag{12.33}$$

in which f_0 and Q_0 are the resonant frequency and quality factor of the empty resonant cavity, and k_1 and k_2 are constants, which can be determined by suing several reference liquids with known dielectric properties (ε_r and σ). Once k_1 and k_2 are determined, the dielectric properties of the workpiece can be obtained by the following equations:

$$\varepsilon_r = \frac{k_1 + 2\Delta f}{k_1 - \Delta f} \tag{12.34}$$

$$\sigma = \frac{1}{k_2} \left(\frac{3k_1}{k_1 - \Delta f} \right)^2 \cdot \Delta(Q^{-1}) \tag{12.35}$$

12.3.3.3 Design of EM Warming System

Many factors must be considered for successful EM thawing of cryopreserved tissues. In addition to dielectric properties of preserved biomaterials, frequency and the input power level control method must also be taken into account. Robinson et al. developed an EM warming system based on a resonant cavity, and very good thawing results have been achieved.[46] The maximum warming rates are over 10°C/second, and the final spatial temperature differences are less than 20°C.

Figure 12.25 illustrates the major components of an EM heating system. It can be divided into four subsystems: a microwave subsystem, a cavity subsystem, a thermal subsystem, and a cooling subsystem.

A microwave subsystem provides microwave power, which is finally delivered to the cavity. As shown in Figure 12.25, the power source consists of a RF signal generator and a power amplifier. The signal generator provides the required EM wave, which is then amplified by a solid state power amplifier. The frequency of the generator is set to a resonant value according to the dimension of the cavity and the required EM mode. Transmitted and reflected powers are obtained from a power meter on the directional coupler between the power amplifier and the cavity. A dry dummy load is connected to the coupler as a safeguard to the system.

In cavity and cooling subsystems, a rectangular or circular resonant cavity (commonly made of copper or aluminum) can be used as the applicator. The dimension of the cavity is determined from the required EM mode and the frequency of the input microwave.

The thermal subsystem mainly consists of temperature sensors, which are used to measure the temperature profiles in the sample during warming process. Thermal couples may not be used here for the influence of electromagnetic field. Usually fluoptic and fiber-optical thermometers can be used to measure temperature changes. Several thermometers are used to monitor the temperature change at different locations inside the sample.
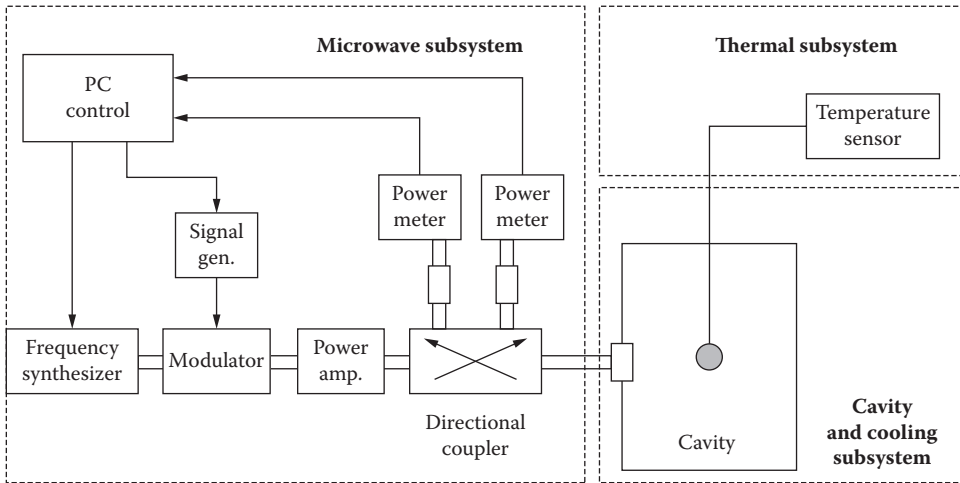
FIGURE 12.25 Major components of an EM heating system.

12.4 SUMMARY

This chapter has introduced some of the useful thermal instruments used in cryobiology research and applications with a brief review of their principles and potential applications. Cryobiology research and applications are highly engaged with growing science and technology. More and more researchers and scientists have joined the cryobiology research field, and it is impossible to cover all the works relating to the subject in this chapter due to the limitation of the contents and our knowledge. It is our sincere hope that this chapter will provide our reader with the information required.

REFERENCES

1. Sachs, J., Krystallbildungen bei dem Gefrieren and Veranderung der Zellhaute bei dem Aufthauen saftiger Pflanzentheile. Berichte fiber die Verhandlungen der koniglich sachsischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Leipzig, *Mathematisch-Physische Classe,* 12, 1–50, 1860.
2. Diller, K.R. and Cravalho, E.G., A cryomicroscope for the study of freezing and thawing processes in biological cells, *Cryobiology,* 7, 191–199, 1970.
3. McGrath, J.J., Cravalho, E.G., and Huggins, C.E., An experimental comparison of intracellular ice formation and freeze–thaw survival of Hela S-3 cells, *Cryobiology,* 12**,** 540–550, 1975.
4. Rubinsky, B. and Ikeda, M., A cryomicroscope using directional solidification for the controlled freezing of biological material, *Cryobiology,* 22, 55–68, 1985.
5. Gao, D.Y., Watson, P., He, L.Q., Yu, J.P., and Crister, J.K, Development of a directional solidification device for cell cryopreservation, *Cell Preserv. Technol.,* 1, 231–238, 2002.
6. McGrath, J.J., A microscope diffusion chamber for the determination of the equilibrium and non-equilibrium osmotic response of individual cells, *J. Microsc.,* 139, 249–263, 1985.
7. Mazur, P., Kinetics of water loss from cells at subzero temperatures and the likelihood of intracellular freezing, *J. Gen. Physiol.,* 47**,** 347–369, 1963.
8. Mazur, P., Cryobiology: The freezing of biological systems, *Science,* 168, 939–949, 1970.
9. Gao, D.Y., McGrath, J.J., Tao, J., Benson, C.T., Crister, E.S., and Crister, J.K., Membrane transport properties of mammalian oocytes: A micropipette perfusion technique, *J. Reprod. Fertil.*, 102, 385–392, 1994.
10. Bleil, J.D. and Wassarman, P.M., Structure and function of the zona pellucida identification and characterization of the proteins of the mouse oocyte's zona pellucida, *Dev. Biol.,* 76, 185–202, 1980.

11. Gao, D.Y., Benson, C.T., Liu, C., McGrath, J.J., Crister, E.S., Crister, J.K., Development of a novel microperfusion chamber for determination of cell membrane transport properties, *Biophys. J.,* 71, 443–450, 1996.

12. McGann, L.E., Turner, A.R., and Turc, J., Microcomputer interface for rapid measurements of average volume using an electronic particle counter, *Med. Biol. Eng. Comput.,* 20, 117–120.

13. Liu, C., Benson, C.T., Gao, D.Y., Haag, B.W., McGann, L.E., and Crister, J.K., Water permeability and its activation energy for individual hamster pancreatic islet cells, *Cryobiology,* 32, 493–502, 1995.

14. Hohne, G., Hemminger, W., and Flammersheim, H.J., *Differential Scanning Calorimetry: An Introduction for Practitioners*, Springer Verlag, Berlin, 2003.

15. Levine, H. and Slade, L., A polymer physicochemical approach to the study of commercial starch hydrolysis products (SHPs), *Carbohydr. Polym.,* 6, 213–244, 1986.

16. Roos, Y.H. and Karel, M., Water and molecular weight effects on glass transitions in amorphous carbohydrates and carbohydrate solutions, *J. Food Sci.,* 56, 1676–1681, 1991.

17. Roos, Y.H., *Phase Transitions in Foods*, Academic Press, San Diego, 1995.

18. MacFarlane, D.R., Physical aspects of vitrification in aqueous solutions, *Cryobiology,* 24, 181–195, 1987.

19. Luyet B. and Rapatz, G., Devitrification of aqueous solution, *Bull. Amer. Phys. Soc.,* 2, 342, 1957.

20. Luyet B. and Rapatz, G., Patterns of ice formation in some aqueous solution, *Biodynamica,* 8, 342, 1–68, 1958.

21. Baudot, A. and Boutron, P., Glass-forming tendency and stability of aqueous solutions of diethylformamide and dimethylformamide, *Cryobiology,* 37(3), 187–199, 1998.

22. Devireddy, R.V., Raha, D., and Bischof, J.C., Measurement of water transport during freezing in cell suspensions using a differential scanning calorimeter, *Cryobiology,* 36, 124–155, 1998.

23. Devireddy, R.V., Swanlund, D.J., Roberts, K.P., and Bischof, J.C., Subzero water permeability parameters of mouse spermatozoa in the presence of extracellular ice and cryoprotective agents, *Biol. Reprod.,* 61, 764–775, 1999.

24. Devireddy, R.V., Swanlund, D.J., Roberts, K.P., Pryor, J.L., and Bischof, J.C., The effect of extracellular ice and cryoprotective agents on the water permeability parameters of human sperm plasma membrane during freezing, *Hum. Reprod.,* 15(5), 1125–1135, 2000.

25. Levin, R.L., Cravalho, E.G., and Huggins, C.G., A membrane model describing the effect of temperature on the water conductivity of erythrocyte membranes at subzero temperatures, *Cryobiology,* 13, 415–429, 1976.

26. Mazur, P., Freezing of living cells: Mechanisms and implications, *Am. J. Physiol.,* 247, C125–C142, 1984.

27. Luo, D.W., Han, X., He, L., Cui, X.D., Cheng, S.X., Lu, C.C., Liu, J.H., and Gao, D.Y., A modified differential scanning calorimetry for the determination of cell volumetric change during the freezing process, *Cryo-Lett.,* 23, 229–236, 2002.

28. Cheng, S.X., Jiang,Y.F., and Liang, X.G., A tiny heat probe for measuring the thermal conductivities of non-rigid materials, *Meas. Sci. Technol.,* 5, 1330–1344, 1994.

29. Takegoshi, E., Imura, S., Hirasawa,Y., and Takenaka, T., A method for measuring thermal conductivity of solids using the transient hot-wire, *Trans. Japan. Soc. Mech. Eng.,* B47, 1307–16 (in Japanese), 1981.

30. Zhang, H.F., Cheng, S.X., He, L.Q., Zhang, A.L., Zheng, Y., and Gao, D.Y., Determination of thermal conductivity of biomaterials in the temperature range 233–313 K using a tiny detector made of a self-heated thermistor, *Cell Preserv. Technol.,* 1(2), 141–147, 2002.

31. Pegg, D.E., Hayes, A.R., and Kingston, R.E., Cooling equipment for use in cryopreservation, *Cryobiology,* 10, 271–281, 1973.

32. Baartz, G. and Brock, A.M., A microprocessor-controlled rate controller for use in cryopreservation, *Cryobiology,* 16, 497–505, 1979.

33. Wang, W., Lyophilization and development of solid protein pharmaceuticals, *In. J. Pharm.,* 203(1–2), 1–60, 2000.

34. Wolkers, W.F., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., From anhydrobiosis to freeze-drying of eukaryotic cells, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol. A-Mol. Integr. Physiol.,* 131(3), 535–43, 2002.

35. Wolkers, W.F., Walker, N.J., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., Human platelets loaded with trehalose survive freeze-drying, *Cryobiology,* 42(2), 79–87, 2001.

36. Rindler, L., Luneberger, S., Schwindke, P., Heschel, I., and Rau, G., Freeze-drying of red blood cells at ultra-low temperatures, *Cryobiology,* 38**,** 2–15, 1999.

37. Tan, C.S., Van Ingen, C.W., Talsma, H., van Miltenburg, J.C., Steffensen, C.L., Vlug, A., and Stalpers, J.A, Freeze-drying of fungi: Influence of composition and glass transition temperature of the protectant, *Cryobiology,* 32**,** 60–67, 1995.

38. Rey, L. and May, J.C., *Freeze-Drying/Lyophilization of Pharmaceutical and Biological Products*, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1999.

39. Jacobsen, I.A., Pegg, D.E., Starklint, H., Chemnitz, J., Hunt, C., Barfort, P., and Diaper, M.P., Effect of cooling and warming rate on glycerolized rabbit kidneys, *Cryobiology,* 21, 637–653, 1984.

40. Fahy, G.M., MacFarlane, D.R., Angell, C.A., and Meryman, H.T., Vitrification as an approach to cryopreservation, *Cryobiology,* 21, 407–426, 1984.

41. Bai, X., Pegg, D.E., Evans, S., and Penfold, J.D.J., "Analysis of electromagnetic heating patterns inside a cryopreserved organ," *J. Biomed. Eng.*, 14, 459–466, 1992.

42. Guttman, F.M., Lizin, J., Robitaille, P., Blanchard, H., and Turgeon Knaack, C., Survival of canine kidneys after treatment with dimethylsulfoxide, freezing at –80°C, and thawing by microwave illumination, *Cryobiology,* 14, 559–567, 1977.

43. Pegg, D.E., Green, C.J., and Walter, C.A., Attempted canine renal cryopreservation using dimethyl sulphoxide, helium perfusion, and microwave thawing, *Cryobiology,* 15, 618–626, 1978.

44. Ruggera, P.S. and Fahy, G.M., "Rapid and uniform electromagnetic heating of aqueous cryoprotectant solutions from cryogenic temperatures," *Cryobiology*, 27, 465–478, 1990.

45. Rachman, M.J., Evans, S., and Pegg, D.E., Experimental results on the rewarming of a cryopreserved organ phantom in a UHF field, *J. Biomed. Eng.*, 14, 397–403, 1992.

46. Robinson, M.P. and Pegg, D.E., Rapid electromagnetic warming of cells and tissues, *IEEE T Bio-Med. Eng.,* 46, 1413–1425, 1999.

47. Michelson, S.C. and Evans, S., Dielectric properties of supercooled cryoprotectant agents, *Phys. Med. Biol.,* 41, 2053–2066, 1996.

48. Evans, S. and Azeman, A., Radiofrequency and microwave dielectric properties of aqueous cryoprotectant agents: Dimethyl sulphoxide and 2, 3–butanediol, *Phys. Med. Biol.*, 43, 2817–2829, 1998.

49. Coulter, W., Means for counting particles suspended in a fluid Coulter Principle, US Patent Number 2,656,508, 1953.

50. Jennings, T.A., *Lyophilization: Introduction and Basic Principles*, Interpharm Press, Denver, 1999.

51. Robinson, M.P., Wustenman, M.C., Wang, L., and Pegg, D.E., Electromagnetic re-warming of cryopreserved tissues: Effect of choice of cryoprotectant and sample shape on uniform of heating, *Phys. Med. Biol.*, 47, 2311–2325, 2002.

FURTHER READING

Allen T., *Particle Size Measurement*, Chapman and Hall, London, 1990.

Bai, X., Pegg, D.E., Evans, S., and Penfold, J.D.J., Analysis of electromagnetic heating patterns inside a cryopreserved organ, *J. Biomed. Eng*., 14, 459–466, 1992.

Cosman, M.D., Toner, M., Kandel, J., and Cravalho, E.G., An integrated cryomicroscopy system. *Cryo-Lett.,* 10, 17–38, 1989.

Crister, J.K., Huse-Benda, A.R., Aaker, D.V., Arneson, B.W., and Ball, G.D., Cryopreservation of human spermatozoa: I. Effects of holding procedure and seeding on motility, fertilizability, and acrosome reaction, *Fertil. Steril.,* 47, 656–663, 1987.

Crister, J.K., Huse-Benda, A.R., Aaker, D.V., Arneson, B.W., and Ball, G.D., Cryopreservation of human spermatozoa: III. The effects of cryoprotectants on motility, *Fertil. Steril.,* 50, 314–320, 1988.

Diller, K.R., Quantitative low-temperature optical microscopy of biological systems, *J. Microsc.,* 126, 9–28, 1982.

Diller, K.R., Cryomicroscopy, in *Low Temperature Biotechnology: Emerging Applications and Engineering Contributions*, ASME, New York, 1998.

Gao, D.Y., McGrath, J.J., Tao, J., Benson, C.T., Crister, E.S., and Crister, J.K., Membrane transport properties of mammalian oocytes: A micropipette perfusion technique, *J. Reprod. Fertil.,* 102, 385–292, 1994.

Bryant, G., DSC measurement of cell suspension during successive freezing runs: Implication for the mechanisms of intracellular ice formation, *Cryobiology*, 32, 114–128, 1995.

Oetjen, G.-W., *Freeze-Drying*, Wiley-VCH, New York, 1999.

Ishiguro, H. and Rubinsky, S., Mechanical interactions between ice crystals and red blood cells during directional solidification, *Cryobiology*, 31, 183–500, 1994,

Jacobsen, I.A., Pegg, D.E., Starklint, H., Chemnitz, J., Hunt, C., Barfort, P., and Diaper, M.P., Effect of cooling and warming rate on glycerolized rabbit kidneys, *Cryobiology*, 21, 637–653, 1994.

Koch, M., Evans, A.G.R., and Brunnschweiler, A., Design and fabrication of a micromachined Coulter counter, *J. Micromech. Microeng*., 9, 159–161, 1999.

Korber, C.H., English, S., and Rau, G., Intracellular ice formation: Cryomicroscopical observation and calorimetric measurement, *J. Microsc.,* 161, 313–325, 1991.

Kober, C., Scheiwe, M., and Wollhover, K., A cryomicroscope for the analysis of solute polarization during freezing, *Cryobiology,* 21, 68–80, 1984.

Kristiansen, J., Leakage of a trapped fluorescent marker from liposomes: Effects of eutectic crystallization of NaCl and internal freezing, *Cryobiology,* 29, 575–584, 1992.

Kristiansen, J. and Hvidt, A., Lipid bilayers at subzero temperatures studied by differential scanning calorimetry, *Cryo-Lett.,* 11, 137–142, 1990.

Kristiansen, J. and Westh, P., Freezing behavior of multilamellar vesicles in 0.9% sodium chloride, *Cryo-Lett.,* 12, 167–176, 1991.

Leibo, S.P., McGrath, J.J., and Cravalho, E.G., Microscopic observation of intracellular ice formation in unfertilized mouse ova as a function of cooling rate, *Cryobiology,* 15, 257–271, 1978.

McGrath, J.J., Membrane transport properties, in *Low Temperature Biotechnology: Emerging Applications and Engineering Contributions,* McGrath, J.J. and Diller, K.R., Eds., *ASME BED* 10, HTD 98, 273–330, 1998.

McGrath, J.J. and Sherban, K.D., Determination of the temperature dependence of biomembrane-passive transport using a microdiffusion chamber, in *Bioheat Transfer — Applications in Hyperthermia, Emerging Horizons in Instrumentation and Modeling,* Roemer, R.B., McGrath, J.J, and Bowman, H.F, Eds., American Society of Mechanical Engineers, New York, *Heat Transfer Division* (126) and *Biomedical Engineering Division* (12), 137–142, 1989.

McGrath, J.J., Hunter, J.E., Bernard, A., Fuller, B.J., and Shaw, R.W., On the use of microdiffusion chamber methods to determine the coupled transport of water and cryoprotective agents across biological membranes, in *Macroscopic and Microscopic Heat and Mass Transfer in Biomedical Engineering,* Diller, K.R. and Shitzer, A., Eds. Elsevier Press, Amsterdam, 1992a, pp. 302–326.

McGrath, J.J., Gao, D.Y., Benson, C., Crister, E.S., and Crister, J.K., Coupled transport across the murine oocyte plasma membrane: Water and cryoprotective agents, in *Topics in Heat Transfer* HTD-Vol. 206–2, Toner, M., et al., Eds., ASME Press, New York, 1992b, pp. 1–14.

McNaughton, J.L. and Mortimer, C.T., Differential scanning calorimetry, *IRS Phys. Chem. Ser.* 2, 10, 2–41, 1975.

Myers, S.P., Pitt, R.E., Lynch, D.V., and Steponkus, P.L., Characterization of intracellular ice formation in drosophila melanogaster embryos, *Cryobiology,* 26, 472–484, 1989.

Rasmussen, D.H., Macaulay, M.N., and MacKenzie, A.P., Supercooling and nucleation of ice in single cells, *Cryobiology,* 12, 328–339, 1975.

Ross, K.D., Differential scanning calorimetry of non-freezable water in solute-macromolecule-water systems, *J. Food Sci*., 43, 1812–1815, 1978.

Ruggera, P.S. and Fahy, G.M., Rapid and uniform electromagnetic heating of aqueous cryoprotectant solutions from cryogenic temperatures, *Cryobiology,* 27, 465–478, 1990.

Schwartz, G.J. and Diller, K.R., Design and fabrication of simple, versatile cryomicroscope stage, *Cryobiology,* 19, 529–538, 1982.

Shabana, M. and McGrath, J.J., Cryomicroscope investigation and thermodynamic modeling of the freezing of unfertilized hamster ova, *Cryobiology,* 25, 338–354, 1988.

Steponkus, P.L., Dowgert, M.F., Ferguson, J.R., and Levin, R.L., Cryomicroscopy of isolated plant protoplasts, *Cryobiology,* 21, 209–233, 1984.

Toner, M., Cravalho, E.G., Karel, M., and Armant, D.R., Cryomicroscopic analysis of intracellular ice formation during freezing of mouse oocytes without cryoadditives, *Cryobiology,* 28, 55–71, 1991.

13 Solid Mechanics Aspects of Cryobiology

Yoed Rabin and Paul S. Steif

CONTENTS

13.1   INTRODUCTION

Since the advent of transplantation science, cryopreservation has been recognized as a highly desirable method for facilitating the availability of the highest quality material. This goal has been achieved in some cellular systems, but extrapolation to organized tissues and organs is fraught with additional problems that are only recently being addressed. Application of the principles of cryobiology to the growing needs of the emerging tissue-engineering field has produced a need for greater understanding of the fundamentals of low-temperature preservation as they apply to three-dimensional multicellular tissues. Extrapolation of recent advances in the vitrification (glass formation) of tissues to scaled-up specimens of clinical relevance cannot be achieved easily by empirical approaches, partly due to the frequent formation of fractures at various levels. An understanding of this potentially destructive outcome of thermo-mechanical stresses, which is inherent in the cryopreservation of complex biological systems, is crucial for the development of improved methods of cryogenic storage. Similar devastating effects are evident from cryopreservation applications in the food industry, agriculture, and from the clinical application of cryosurgery.

359

The presence of fractures has been evident since the first efforts to freeze biological materials. Research to observe fractures and possibly eliminate their formation has been primarily empirical. This will not, however, lead to the level of control that effective commercialization of cryopreservation requires. In order to reduce the likelihood of fracturing, one should aim to predict the likelihood of fracture in future cases, which could involve a variety of cryogenic conditions – not merely explain cases that are presently observable. The long-term goal must be to develop the knowledge to prescribe a cryopreservation protocol for a specific tissue type and shape that will not lead to fracturing before any experiments are conducted to preserve that tissue. Unfortunately, there are a vast number of tissue types, shapes, cryoprotectants, and cooling protocols, and there is a low probability of observing the presence or absence of fracture in some cases and, based on that, interpolating or extrapolating to predict the likelihood of fracturing in other cases . Thus, success demands an approach typical of engineering: to discover the mechanisms by which fracture occurs, to represent those mechanisms with mathematical models, and then to make predictions for cases of interest by solving the mathematical model for that case.

Beyond reviewing earlier empirical observations of fracture, this chapter focuses on research efforts that support the mechanistic approach of mathematically predicting the tendency for fracture. Such an approach draws on the methods developed to address fracture and mechanical failure of engineering materials, including both experimental methods for measuring material properties of interest and methods of mathematical formulation and analysis. To be relevant to cryopreservation, both experimental methods and mathematical formulations need to be modified and applied to frozen tissues.

Section 2 of this chapter addresses the physical quantities and properties that are known to be relevant to the fracture of engineering materials and necessary to predict fracture in tissues. This section explains relevant terminology in a way that is accessible to the nonengineer. Next, Section 13.1 reviews observations of cracking in cryobiology. Following this, the prime material properties governing fracture, namely thermal expansion and the stress-strain response, are addressed in Sections 13.2 and 13.3. Finally, Section 13.4 reviews efforts to use such properties to formulate and solve mathematical models for fracture formation.

13.2   ENGINEERING CONCEPTS

In this section, we seek to acquaint the reader with a number of relevant ideas from solid mechanics. With solid mechanics, we have a single set of concepts with which to describe the deformation and tendency for fracture in virtually all solid materials.[1] In fact, this set of concepts can be generalized to encompass both solid and fluid substances. This generalization becomes necessary when one treats materials that vitrify upon cooling. Except for a few comments, however, we will focus on the deformation of solid materials. Moreover, the ideas of solid mechanics are conveyed with minimal mathematical formalism.

The focus on solid substances here is based on cryobiology's interest in tissues that are cooled substantially below room temperature. Whereas bone is clearly solid at room temperature, most soft tissues are difficult to categorize as solid or fluid under this condition; even apparent fluids such as blood are not pure simple fluids, as they contain deforming solid blood cells. Some of these tissues might recover some of their original shape after deformation, which is a typical solid property; however, when soft tissues are frozen, they can become much more solid, just like ice. Hence, it is typical to refer to the unfrozen region as fluid-like, particularly in circumstances of crystallization, in which there is a rapid transition to a much stiffer solid state. This means that the unfrozen material cannot sustain stresses; it is noted that fluids can sustain stresses but at a high flow rate that are irrelevant to cryopreservation or cryosurgery. So, for the present purposes, a crystallized or solidified phase with stress, as well as an unfrozen, fluid-like phase with no stress, can exist. This view ceases to be acceptable in the case of vitrification, in which the material

gradually transitions from being fluid-like to solid-like over a large temperature range. Actually, the viscosity rises continuously with cooling, from low viscosity values at which the material is fluid-like to high viscosity values at which the material is solid-like.

13.2.1 WHAT IS STRESS TO AN ENGINEER?

Balancing forces that are applied to materials produce stress. One familiar example of balancing forces is pressurization. Pressurization occurs when a chunk of material of fixed mass is placed in a chamber, and the pressure in the surrounding air in the container is raised (the resulting stress-state is referred to as "hydrostatic pressure"). The forces press on the material equally in all directions. A second example is when an elongated, slender chunk of material (a wire, for example) is pulled in tension (the resulting stress-state is referred to as "uniaxial tension"). In the simple examples considered here the forces are transmitted equally to every element within the body.

Engineers depict these internal forces by drawing a cube from within the material with the forces exerted upon it by its neighbors. The forces of hydrostatic pressure act inwardly, exerting pressure on all faces of the cube (Figure 13.1(a)); in the case of uniaxial tension, the forces act outwardly on only two opposite faces, pulling the cube apart (Figure 13.1(b)). The pressure is hydrostatic because it acts equally in all directions (on all faces); the tension is uniaxial because it acts in only one direction. When forces are applied to bodies in more complex ways, the forces on the different faces of a cube can have different values.

The effect of the internal forces is dependent on the area over which they act. The same tension applied to two wires of different diameters will have a more severe effect on the wire with the smaller diameter; thus, when deformation or fracture is a concern, it is not force, but force acting per unit area, or stress (σ), which is of interest. We measure stress or pressure in Pascals (Newtons per square meter) or psi (pounds per square inch); 101,325 Pascals, or 14.7 psi, equals one standard atmosphere of pressure (Atm).

If a fluid remains stationary, the only stress state it can withstand is hydrostatic pressure; thus, the unfrozen, fluid-like tissue phase can withstand hydrostatic stress but not other stress states. While hydrostatic pressure reduces the size of a cube, the shape is preserved. By contrast, uniaxial tension distorts the shape of the cube, making it longer in some directions and shorter in others. A different combination of forces on the cube surfaces leads to "shear stresses," which act tangentially on surfaces rather than perpendicularly (Figure 13.1(c)). Shear stresses produce a distortion similar to the upper cards in a deck of cards sliding relative to the lower cards. Stresses that distort the shape of a cube are collectively termed deviatoric stresses; a general set of stresses on the cube can always be decomposed in a hydrostatic part and a deviatoric part.
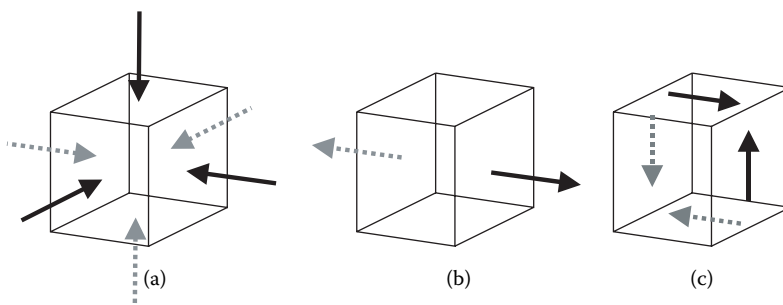
FIGURE 13.1 Imaginary elemental cubes taken from within a stressed body, displaying forces exerted by neighboring elements, for different states of stress: (a) hydrostatic pressure, (b) uniaxial tension, and (c) pure shear.

13.2.2 WHAT IS STRAIN TO AN ENGINEER?

When forces are applied to a material, they change its shape and size. The strain — the ratio of elongation to initial length — is a relative measurement, or percentage, and therefore has no units. If tension is applied to an artery, for example, not only does it lengthen, but also its diameter decreases. We say that the axial strain (along the length) is tensile or positive, whereas the corresponding transverse strain (along the diameter) is compressive or negative. Engineers often need to track the strains in different directions; they do so by envisioning the change in shape of a small region within a body, which is initially cubic prior to the application of forces. In general, when forces are applied to the body, the cube lengthens or shortens along the edges (these are called "normal strains"); the edges, which were originally perpendicular, may no longer be perpendicular (these are called "shear strains," and are quantified according to the change in the angle of edges).

The simple case of hydrostatic pressure produces a change in size, but not in shape: the cube remains a cube, just slightly smaller. This slightly smaller volume occupied by the same mass is also recognized as an increase in density. The water at the bottom of a stagnant pool, where the pressure is slightly above atmospheric has a slightly greater density than the water at the top. In the context of cryobiology, it has been hypothesized (with no experimental evidence) that merely hydrostatic pressure is not lethal, at least until some hydrostatic pressure threshold measured in hundreds of Atms. One can justify this hypothesis based on the idea that the material may shrink under hydrostatic pressure, but its shape remains unchanged. As discussed, uniaxial tension and shear stress, or any deviatoric stress, produce shape changes.

13.2.3 THE RELATION BETWEEN STRESS AND STRAIN

The relation between the pressure and density, which is associated with the material compressibility, must be generalized to cases in which the stress is not hydrostatic and the strains correspond to changes in shape as well as size. This is referred to as the stress-strain relation. The relation between stress and strain can be complicated or simple depending on the material and on the stress level.

The strain and stress are proportional to one another for nearly all solid materials (including frozen biomaterials) subjected to sufficiently small stresses; this is termed "linear elastic behavior." In other words, if the tension on an elastic wire is doubled, the strain of the wire is doubled. The proportionality between the stress and the strain is referred to as the "Young's modulus" or "elastic modulus," (E):

$$\sigma = E\varepsilon \tag{13.1}$$

in which σ is the stress and ε is the strain. Indeed, the Young's modulus is often measured by applying tension to a slender body and measuring the changes in length. This modulus, together with another measured property related to the transverse contraction under axial tension, can be used to relate the stress and strain in stress states more complex than uniaxial tension and hydrostatic pressure.

A material is elastic whenever it regains its initial shape immediately after the forces on it are removed. Generally, the linear elastic behavior described in Equation 13.1 is a special case of elasticity behavior; however, nonlinear forms of elasticity are not of interest in cryobiology. When the stresses become excessive, any material will either cease to be linearly elastic or will fracture. In this chapter, we discuss only one type of departure from linear elastic behavior: plasticity. A plastically deformed material does not return to initial shape. A common experience with this phenomenon is the case of a steel paper clip. If the clip is bent a small amount, it deforms elastically, but if there is sufficient bending, the deformation becomes permanent or plastic. Plastic deformations

indicate changes in the internal structure of the material. In the context of cryobiology, these deformations may damage single cells as well as the extracellular matrix.

The deformation begins to become permanent when the stress reaches a critical value, termed the "yield stress." Elastic deformations are generally associated with small, reversible departures of the atoms about their equilibrium positions. The macroscopic origins of plastic deformation vary greatly depending on the material. Plasticity in metals is commonly associated with "dislocations," the motion of defects in the crystalline structure. An example of plastic deformation in a frozen tissue, subjected to axial compression, is given in Section 13.3.3 of this chapter. In that case, subsequent examination showed that the plastic deformation was brought on by small scale cracking — again deformation beyond that associated with small, reversible departures of the atoms about their equilibrium positions.

Fracture, or cracking, is a phenomenon more familiar in the case of tensile stresses. The precise conditions for the formation of fractures are not well understood, although they are typically associated with tensile stresses exceeding some critical value. For some materials, the material will fail suddenly at some stress level without prior plastic deformations; the fracture stress of such "brittle" materials is defined as the value of stress at which cracking occurred. This is often an imprecise procedure, because local imperfections in the material can cause the stresses to be higher than the nominal estimate based on the force divided by the area, particularly in materials prone to failure without plastic deformation. In addition to using a critical tensile stress (which is found empirically) to predict fracture, there is a second approach referred to as "fracture mechanics," which focuses on the conditions of stress under which a preexisting crack (usually of substantial length) will extend. Fracture mechanics requires even more complex empirical testing.

13.2.4 EFFECTS OF TEMPERATURE: THERMAL STRAIN

Changes in temperature bring about very modest changes in the elastic modulus and more significant changes in the yield stress (at least in the case of metals, for which material properties are far more available than in the case of frozen tissues). The tensile stress at which cracking occurs in a brittle material does not seem to be particularly sensitive to temperature; however, the effect of temperature on mass density is critical to the development of stresses. Except for the anomalous behavior of aqueous solutions around the freezing point, raising the temperature lowers the density of substances. This is also referred to as "thermal expansion" because a given amount of material occupies a larger volume as the temperature increases. When a given material occupies a different volume, it is defined as "strain"; when strain results from thermal expansion, it is referred to as "thermal strain." Section 3.2 presents measurements of thermal strain as a function of temperature and the coefficient of thermal expansion, which is the rate of change of thermal strain with temperature.

When temperature changes induce thermal strains, it is customary to designate the strains brought about by stresses as elastic strains (assuming the deformation is elastic and not plastic or something else). Elastic strains are due to the application of forces or equivalently stresses, and thermal strains are due to changes in temperature. These strains are additive in the sense that a temperature increase causes the same amount of elongation, regardless of the magnitude of stress present; the thermal expansion is in addition to any elongation caused by the stress. This assumption of additivity, which is borne out by experiments, is critical to all efforts to predict cracking induced by temperature changes.

But why do temperature changes cause cracking? Cracking requires stress, but the direct effect of temperature changes is thermal strains, not stresses. Temperature changes indirectly cause stresses only if their thermal strains are prevented from occurring. A simple example is when a blood vessel to be cryopreserved is fixed at its two ends to a stiff metal frame, which prevents relative motion at both ends. Lower the temperature and the blood vessel at this lower temperature would prefer to be shorter. The metal frame, however, contracts less as the temperature is decreased because the thermal expansion of metals is about one fifth of that of ice. The difference in tendency to contract

causes tensile stress in the blood vessel, which negates some of the tissue's thermal strain, making the tissue's net contraction equal to that of the frame. At the same time, the contracting blood vessel exerts forces on the metal frame, although these forces have negligible effect on the deformation of the frame, presuming it is much stiffer.

Thus, thermal strains on their own (caused by temperature changes) have no detrimental effect on the tissue. Rather, when thermal strains are impeded and elastic strains and stresses result, damage can occur. The damage due to these stresses is the same as if the stresses were produced by directly applying forces at constant temperature. This justified the study of Rabin et al.[2,3] in which the effect of thermally induced stresses were simulated by applying external compressive loads to frozen tissues at cryogenic temperatures. (See Section 13.3.3 for results and discussion.)

Of course, those who cryopreserve have learned not to restrain the tissue from moving during cryopreservation; yet, the opportunities for stress are still present under most practical scenarios for cooling tissue. Because a finite amount of time is necessary for heat to flow from the core of a tissue specimen to its surface, the temperatures at the inside will be higher than the temperatures outside during cooling. Temperature differences, which tend to be greater when the cooling rate is higher, cause thermal strains, which vary inside the specimen. A general spatial distribution of thermal strains corresponds to either overlap or separation of material that cannot occur physically. Thus, like restraints, such spatial variation in the thermal strain also gives rise to elastic strains as well as stresses.

The previous discussion is sufficient for understanding stress development when a material crystallizes (solidifies) within a relatively narrow temperature range, which is typical of freezing of biological solutions. However, additional concepts are necessary to understand the case of vitrifying tissues. In that case, stresses can produce other strains — viscous or fluid-like — in addition to elastic strains. The relation between stress and the viscous strains is related to viscosity, which increases over many orders of magnitude as the temperature decreases from room temperature to the glass transition temperature. Still, the same concept continues to hold: spatially varying thermal strains cannot exist alone; they induce additional strains and stresses, which could cause fracture. However, in the case of vitrifying tissues, the relations between the additional strains and the stresses are no longer elastic, but much more complex.

13.3 EXPERIMENTAL INVESTIGATIONS

13.3.1 PHENOMENOLOGICAL STUDIES

Fracture formation can be classified with respect to the typical length of fracture. In the context of this chapter, the term "macro-fractures" is used to classify cases with fractures of the same size of the specimen itself, for example, the fractures developed in an ice cube in a soft drink cup. The term "micro-fractures" is used to classify cases with fracture orders smaller than the specimen itself, for example, fractures across a blood vessel in an organ.

13.3.1.1 Macro-Fractures

Following Luyet and Gehenio's prediction[4] that vitrification would ultimately be successfully applied to cryopreservation, Kroener and Luyet[5] studied the formation of cracks during vitrification of glycerol solutions in 10 m vials and the disappearance of cracking during rewarming. In their short report, Kroener and Luyet[5] speculated on the conditions under which fractures are likely to occur but did not explain the reason for fracturing. Following a similar line of research, Fahy et al.[6] studied the formation of fractures in propylene glycol solution and in much larger containers of up to 1.5 liter. Fahy et al. compared fracturing events with differential scanning calorimetry (DSC) and thermal histories in an effort to identify problems in the vitrification of large samples. They speculated that fractures can be prevented in large vitrifying systems, if carefully handled.

Fahy, et al. performed their experiments on homogenous solutions; however, additional solid mechanics effects are associated with an inhomogeneous domain, for example an immersed tissue specimen in a container filled with a cryoprotectant. These effects pertain to stress concentrations due to geometric irregularities in the vitrifying domain or in tissue itself, which is a composite material.

Blood vessels have received a great deal of attention with respect to macro-fracture formation in the context of cryopreservation. Pegg at al.[7] performed an empirical investigation seeking the conditions under which macro-fractures occur in vascular tissues during cryopreservation and developed a protocol that prevents fracturing. In this study, the common carotid artery of the rabbit was subjected to a cryopreservation protocol that was optimized for retention of *in vitro* function and cytological structure. It involved a stepwise addition and subsequent removal of DMSO using a protocol that avoids osmotic injury and minimizes osmotic action. With controlled cooling, specimens were stored at –180°C and rewarmed rapidly. With an initial fracturing rate of 75 percent of all specimens, the cooling and rewarming conditions were systematically varied to determine when the fractures occurred in the cooling/storage/warming process. They found that fractures occurred as the temperature range of –150°C to –120°C was traversed during the rewarming phase. Note that the so-called eutectic glass transition temperature of DMSO solution is around –123°C, and some abnormal behavior of thermal expansion is expected upon glass transition.[8] Pegg et al.[7] succeeded in preventing fracturing when the warming rate in the temperature range of –180°C (storage temperature) and –100°C was reduced to less than 50°C/min. Subsequent rapid warming was carried out in a water bath set to 37°C.

In order to prevent fracturing during vitrification, it is widely accepted today that a two step cooling protocol is required, with rapid cooling down to about 30°C above the glass transition temperature, a low cooling rate down to the storage temperature, and a storage temperature of a few degrees above the glass transition temperature. It is also widely accepted that a two step warming protocol is required, with a slow warming rate up to about 30°C above the glass transition temperature, followed by rapid warming.[9,10,11] The reasons are likely to be related to the ability of the material to relax stresses more readily in temperatures farther from the glass transition when the viscosity is low, hence, the tolerance for the higher temperature gradients that come with rapid cooling rates.

13.3.1.2 Micro-Fractures

Structural damage at the cellular level can be triggered by either localized stress driven by, for example, crystal growth, or by macroscopic stresses, driven by the cumulative effect of constrained thermal contraction, but which are further raised by local microstructural inhomogeneities.

Cryomicroscopy is frequently used to study the effects of crystal formation at the cellular level. Cryomicroscopy applications have been reported for more than four decades, based on two major temperature controlling techniques: (i) by time-control of a cryostage possessing a uniform temperature distribution[12,13,14] and (ii) by sliding a sample carrying microslide between two temperature-controlled bases at a controlled velocity (also known as a "directional solidification stage").[15,16,17]

Crystal formation may trigger several injury sequences, which are customarily classified with respect to the initial site of ice crystal nucleation: intracellular freezing, which is associated with the thermodynamic effect of super cooling, or extracellular freezing, which is associated with the "solution effect." This classification has been proposed by Mazur et al[18] and is widely known as "the two-factor hypothesis of freezing injury." The cryobiology literature is filled with alternative explanations for this hypothesis and supportive experimental observations. Explanations are mostly related to electro-chemical forces across the cell membrane, membrane properties, toxicity effects, DNA rupture, and membrane shrinkage; however, the mechanical stress effects of ice formation on single cells are not widely appreciated. On a directional solidification stage, Rubinsky and Ikeda[17] demonstrated that single cells may be trapped between ice dendrites extending from the

freezing front. Rubinsky and Ikeda suggested that, as the freezing front progresses and the dendrites thicken, significant shear stresses may be exerted on the cell membrane, leading eventually to cell death. Using a directional solidification stage, Ishiguro and Rubinsky[19] further studied the mechanical interaction between ice crystals and red blood cells. Rubinsky and his coworkers conducted their studies on cell suspensions and not on a cellular matrix, in which additional intracellular forces are expected to take place.

Thom and Matthes[20] developed a cryomicroscopy technique to study the deformation of the cell membrane at low temperatures. Thom[21] further studied the elastic deformability of the erythrocyte membrane. However, standard measurement techniques of mechanical stresses at the cellular level are not yet available, even with recent developments in micro electro-mechanical systems (MEMS). It appears obvious that the formation of crystals, especially with sharp, moving edges, can be quite devastating to the cell membrane. There may be a need for more quantitative studies of solid mechanics effects at the cellular level in order to fully understand the cell death process.

13.3.1.3 Freeze-Dry Fractures

Freeze-drying is the process of dehydration of biomaterials in two steps: freezing and drying under vacuum conditions. In this process, the frozen solution undergoes sublimation, changing phase directly from solid to gas, without passing through a liquid phase. In addition, the biomaterial structure has the potential of maintaining its original size and shape with minimal cell rupture. In the course of freeze-drying experiments on aqueous solutions of various substances that had been frozen rapidly to form spherulites, Menz and Luyet[22] observed that the freeze-dried material may fracture in various ways. Menz and Luyet conducted a study to describe the patterns of the fracture lines, to examine the conditions under which cracking occurs, and to investigate the significance of this phenomenon in the context of freeze-drying. This study was performed on 35 percent solution of bovine albumin and 30 percent solutions of gelatin, sucrose, dextrose, and polyvinyl pyrrolidone (PVP). In their study, Menz and Luyet immersed the specimen in a –60ºC isopentane bath and dried the ice at –40ºC in vacuum conditions. They found that fracturing occurred during the drying phase only, while freezing alone did not create any fracturing in these particular conditions. Compared with the other tested solutions, the PVP solution showed only minor fracturing, whereas the gelatin solution was found free of fractures. Microscopic examination revealed that, regardless of the actual fracture shape, fractures develop most frequently at the center of the spherulites, radiating outwards. Another frequent fracture site is the point at which three adjacent spherulites meet, which may lead to complete separation between adjacent spherulites. Figure 13.2 includes photos of fractured spherulites in a freeze-dried albumin film. Thicker samples tended to form more complex fracture systems. Menz and Luyet speculated on the causes for fracturing during their diagnostic study, but did not support their speculations with a solid mechanics analysis.

### 13.3.1.4 Fracture Formation during Cryosurgery

Fracture formation also has a significant effect in the context of cryosurgery, in which the objective in cryosurgery is controlled destruction of biological tissues by freezing. Although counterintuitive, the devastating effect of fracture formation during cryosurgery is not a favorable outcome of the procedure; fracture formation during cryosurgery may cause damage to the vascular system, leading to excessive bleeding. Damage to major blood vessels in the vicinity of the cryosurgery site may also produce an indirect effect on distant regions. Fracture formation may damage other body passageways, such as bile ducts in liver cryosurgery or the urethra in prostate cryosurgery, which can lead to postcryosurgery complications. The effect of fracture formation during cryosurgery has been overlooked for many decades. The authors of this chapter speculate that fractures were
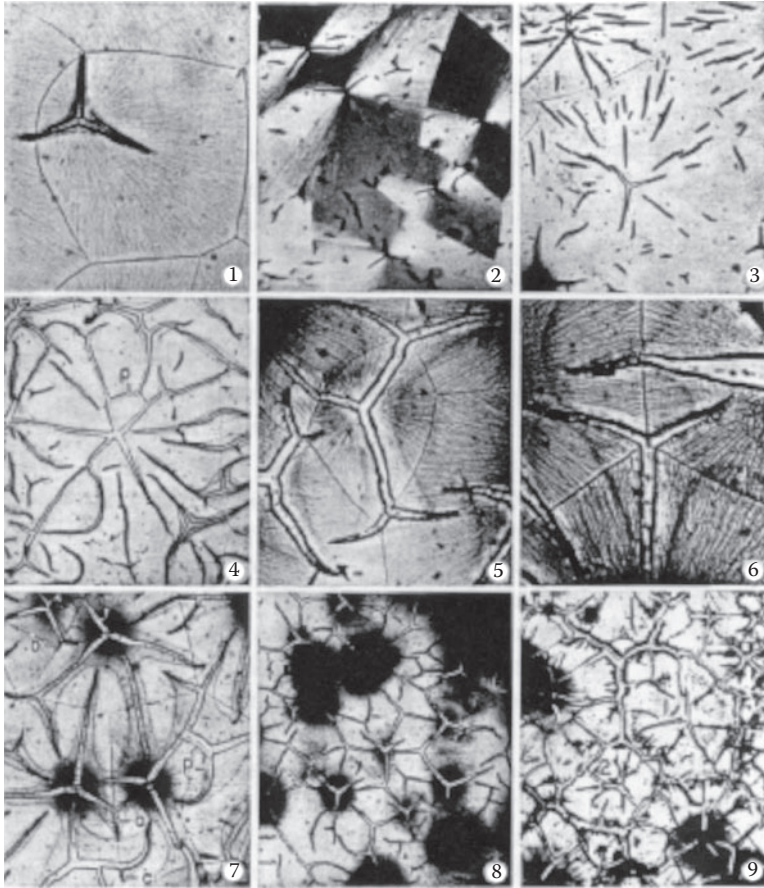
FIGURE 13.2 Photographs of fractured spherulites in freeze-dried albumin. Photo 2 was taken through polarized light. Magnifications: (1) 300X, (2) 55X, (3) 45X, (4) 45X, (5) 200X, (6) 300X, (7) 45X, (8) 45X, (9) 20X. (Reprinted from Menz and Luyet, 1965.[22])

frequently misidentified as merely tearing due to mishandling of histological preparations rather than as the result of real mechanical effects.

In order to study the effects of fracture formation during cryosurgery and as a part of a larger project to study the mechanical response of tissues in cryogenic temperatures,[2] Rabin et al. [3] investigated the response of frozen cylindrical samples of tissues to compressive stresses. Histological observations indicated that linear fractures, which appear to have no preferred orientation, develop due to mechanical stresses in excess of the level at which deformations become permanent (Figure 13.3). These fractures accumulate until final failure of the frozen tissue, during which the tissue sample collapses to rubble. An interaction between fracture formation and irregularities in the frozen medium was suggested based on histological observations and concepts from solid mechanics. Blood vessels and bile ducts are significant sources for such irregularities in a tissue as homogeneous as the liver. These irregularities may lead to initiation of fractures or, on the other hand, may arrest fracture propagation (Figure 13.4).
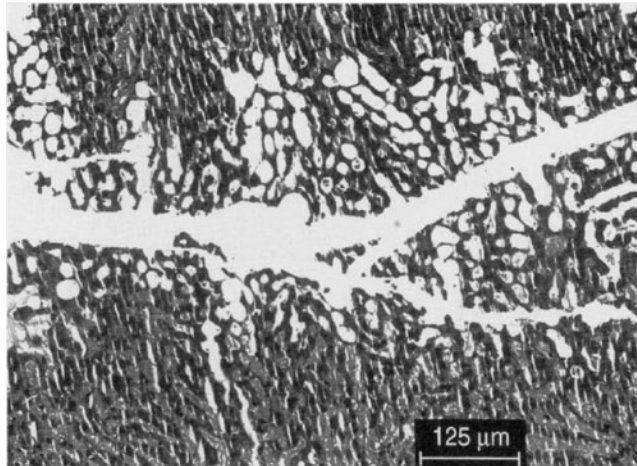
FIGURE 13.3 High power magnification of a macro fracture in rabbit liver specimen. The large empty spaces between cells along the cracks indicate loss of cells, integrity and retention of the intracellular solution after the formation of the adjacent crack and the subsequent thawing. (Rabin, Y. et al., Gross damage accumulation in frozen rabbit liver due to mechanical stress at cryogenic temperatures. *Cryobiology*, 34, 394–405, 1997. With permission from Elsevier.)
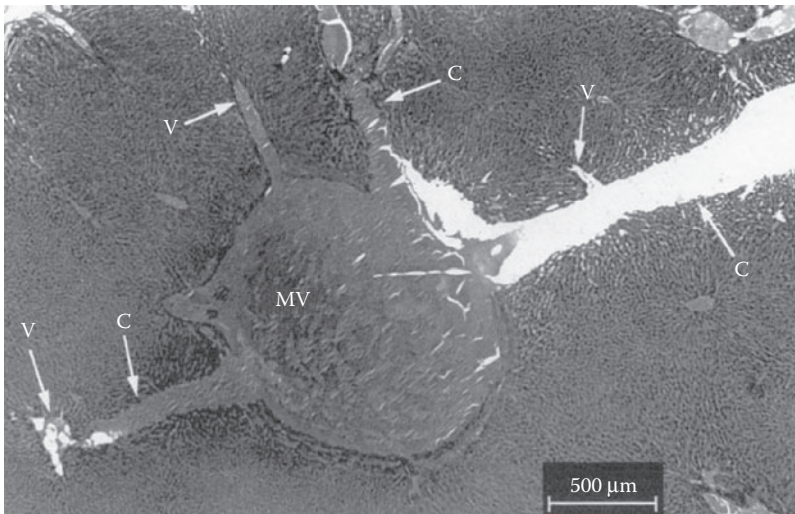
FIGURE 13.4 Crack (C) in a rabbit liver specimen, formed in the vicinity of a major blood vessel (MV), which represents a substantial irregularity in the frozen medium. Cracks or damage in materials tend to initiate in regions of inhomogeneity, where the stresses tend to be higher. Such irregularities may also arrest the propagating crack. Cracks and blood vessels can be easily distinguished: the crack surfaces consist of fractured cells, while the blood vessels' walls are smooth and darker. (Rabin, Y. et al., Gross damage accumulation in frozen rabbit liver due to mechanical stress at cryogenic temperatures. *Cryobiology*, 34, 394–405, 1997. With permission from Elsevier.)

13.3.2 THERMAL EXPANSION OF BIOMATERIALS

13.3.2.1 Crystallization

At least nine different solid phases of ice are known to exist.[23] Some phases can be formed by cooling of liquid water at different pressures, whereas the path to other phases is achieved either by changing the pressure or the temperature of other phases of ice. The freezing temperature of pure water starts at 0ºC at 1 Atm and decreases linearly with the increase in pressure, down to –20ºC at 1700 Atm. Then, the freezing temperature increases almost linearly up to 100ºC at the enormous pressure of 23,000 Atm. The freezing temperature continues to increase up to at least 440°C at hydrostatic pressures of the order of 200,000 Atm.[24] This effect has been well appreciated in the context of cryobiology, at least up to mildly elevated pressures of 1000 Atm,[25] but its application is not used in cryobiology today. Ice I is the ice phase likely to form when cooling water from normal room temperature and pressure down to the liquid nitrogen boiling temperature (–196ºC). Ice I is likely to form when room pressure is elevated up to ~1700 Atm. Hence, ice I is the relevant phase of ice for current cryobiology applications.

A dramatic effect of volume change is associated with crystal formation during water freezing. At standard conditions, pure water expands by 9.05 percent by volume upon crystallization. This dramatic volume increase is an abnormal phenomenon specific to water.[26] The fact that liquid water is denser ("heavier") than ice is one of the most significant life-supporting phenomena on earth, protecting deep oceans from eternal freezing. In comparison, when mechanically free to contract, ice shrinks by about 2 percent when cooled in the solid state from 0ºC to –196ºC. Clearly, by virtue of their different magnitudes, the effect of volume changes upon crystallization overwhelms other thermal expansion effects when they coexist.[2]

Literature data indicates a variation of up 2 percent in thermal expansion along distinct directions in a single ice crystal.[27,28,23] In a different study,[29] the thermal expansion of single ice crystals was found to differ by up to 10 in comparison with polycrystalline samples of pure water, in the temperature range of –196°C to 0°C. Fukusako presented a summary of thermal expansion of pure water ice, snow, and sea ice,[30] with the outstanding observation that, despite its high solute concentration, the thermal expansion of sea ice is similar to that of pure water ice. For engineering applications, the thermal expansion of pure water can be conveniently approximated as a linear function between the values of 9×10^{-6} °C^{-1} at –196ºC, and 53×10^{-6} °C^{-1} at 0ºC.[30] Table 13.1 presents a summary of thermal expansion data of ice and various biological tissues.

It should be pointed out, however, that volume expansion does not always lead to mechanical stresses. For example, in a freezing process around a single cryosurgical probe, which can be categorized as an outwards freezing problem, the volume expansion upon solidification is not expected to contribute to mechanical stress; rather, the newly solidified material merely "pushes away" the unfrozen surrounding material. In such cases (reflective of a single probe cryosurgery), the spatially varying thermal expansion (or contraction) within the frozen region is the driving mechanism for mechanical stresses. By contrast, in an inwards freezing problem with, for example, an ice cube, the large volume expansion due to phase change can be quite devastating. This expansion occurs in the interior liquid, "blowing out" the surrounded solid ice walls. Section 13.4 of this chapter reviews mathematical solutions for such cases.

Using thermal expansion of pure water as a reference, Rabin et al.[31] investigated the thermal expansion of various soft biological tissues and bones (Figure 13.5). The mechanical instrument developed for this purpose was capable of simulating cooling conditions relevant to cryopreservation.[31] In broad terms, the results of this study supported the commonly applied hypothesis that the thermal expansion of soft biological tissues is similar to that of water ice, in the cryogenic temperature range of –196°C to 0°C. The thermal expansion of muscle and liver tissues was found to be greater than the thermal expansion of ice by up to about 30 percent. The thermal strain, rather than the thermal expansion coefficient, is the driving mechanism of tissue destruction; the thermal

TABLE 13.1

Compiled Coefficients of Best-Fit Polynomial Approximation for Thermal Expansion of Various Materials: $\beta = a_0 + a_1T + a_2T^2 + a_3T^3$ °C^{-1}

Material	a_0	a_1	a_2	a_3	Temperature Range*, °C	Reference
Pure water ice	5.264×10^{-5}	4.207×10^{-8}	-1.893×10^{-9}	-3.771×10^{-12}	–200<T<0^S	Jakob and Erk, 1928[29]
Pure water ice	5.630×10^{-5}	2.528×10^{-7}	–	–	–200<T<0^S	Powell, 1958[27]
Pure water ice	5.548×10^{-5}	3.603×10^{-7}	1.788×10^{-9}	6.614×10^{-12}	–200<T<–30^S	Dantel, 1962[28]
Pure water ice	5.300×10^{-5}	2.240×10^{-7}	–	–	–196<T<0^S	Fukusako, 1990[30]
Bovine muscle	7.225×10^{-5}	3.834×10^{-7}	2.340×10^{-10}	–	–180<T<–30^S	Rabin et. al., 1998[31]
Chicken muscle	6.649×10^{-5}	3.438×10^{-7}	2.785×10^{-10}	–	–180<T<–10^S	Rabin et. al., 1998[31]
Rabbit muscle	6.224×10^{-5}	2.744×10^{-7}	-3.639×10^{-11}	–	–180<T<–20^S	Rabin et. al., 1998[31]
Rabbit muscle permeated with 2M DMSO	5.109×10^{-6}	-1.749×10^{-6}	-1.799×10^{-8}	-4.820×10^{-11}	–180<T<–30^P	Rabin et. al., 1998[31]
Rabbit muscle permeated with 2M glycerol	3.840×10^{-6}	-6.774×10^{-7}	-3.591×10^{-9}	–	–180<T<–20^P	Rabin et. al., 1998[31]
Rabbit bone	2.622×10^{-5}	2.052×10^{-7}	6.231×10^{-10}	–	–180<T<–10^S	Rabin et. al., 1998[31]
Pig liver	7.323×10^{-5}	4.344×10^{-7}	6.105×10^{-10}	–	–180<T<–10^S	Rabin et. al., 1998[31]
Pig liver perfused with 2M DMSO	1.668×10^{-5} 1.239×10^{-4}	-3.414×10^{-8} 9.954×10^{-7}	– 1.970×10^{-9}	– –	–95<T<–20^L –180<T<–100^S	Rabin et. al., 1998[31]
2.2M Propylene glycol	5.831×10^{-5}	3.353×10^{-6}	–	–	–4.1<T<20^L	Plitz et. al., 2004[35]
3M Propylene glycol	8.470×10^{-5}	2.906×10^{-6}	–	–	–6.6<T<20^L	Plitz et. al., 2004[35]
3.1M Formamide	8.494×10^{-5}	2.667×10^{-6}	–	–	–3.4<T<20^L	Plitz et. al., 2004[35]
3.1M DMSO	9.557×10^{-5}	1.865×10^{-6}	–	–	–7.7<T<20^L	Plitz et. al., 2004[35]
6.0M DMSO	1.981×10^{-4}	4.592×10^{-7}	–	–	–36.2<T<20^L	Plitz et. al., 2004[35]
7.05M DMSO	2.021×10^{-4}	-1.956×10^{-7}	–	–	–89.1<T<20^L	Plitz et. al., 2004[35]
8.4M DMSO	2.383×10^{-4}	-2.028×10^{-7}	–	–	–95.6<T<20^L	Plitz et. al., 2004[35]
DP6	1.922×10^{-4}	8.193×10^{-7}	–	–	–29.8<T<20^L	Plitz et. al., 2004[35]
VS55	1.956×10^{-4}	1.895×10^{-7}	–	–	–40.3<T<20^L	Plitz et. al., 2004[35]

* The letters L and S refer to liquid and solid phases of state, while P refers to partial solidification in the temperature range of interest

strain is the integral (cumulative effect) of the thermal expansion coefficient over a temperature range. Taking into account the full scale of the cryogenic temperature range under investigation, the thermal strain in liver was found to be up to 30 percent higher than that of ice. Muscle samples showed thermal strain values higher than in ice but lower than in the liver samples. Bone tissue, on the other hand, displayed thermal strains equal to about 33 percent of that of ice over the same temperature range. To complete the picture, tissue samples were dried in a controlled manner, and a water content in the range of 74 percent to 79 percent was measured in the muscle and liver specimens. The relatively high water content supports the general similarity in thermal expansion of water and of liver and muscle tissues; however, it is unexpected that the additional nonaqueous content — that is, the extracellular matrix — would lead muscle to expand *more* than water. Clearly, the expansions of liquid with and without the extracellular matrix are distinct and remain to be explained.
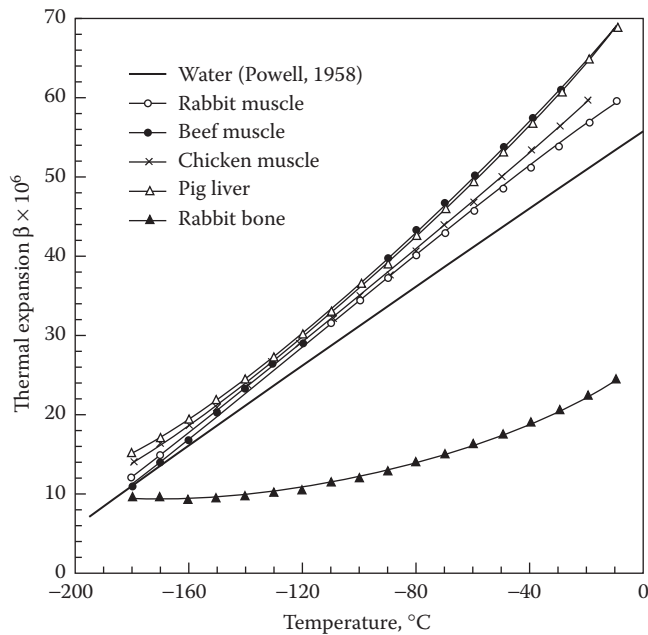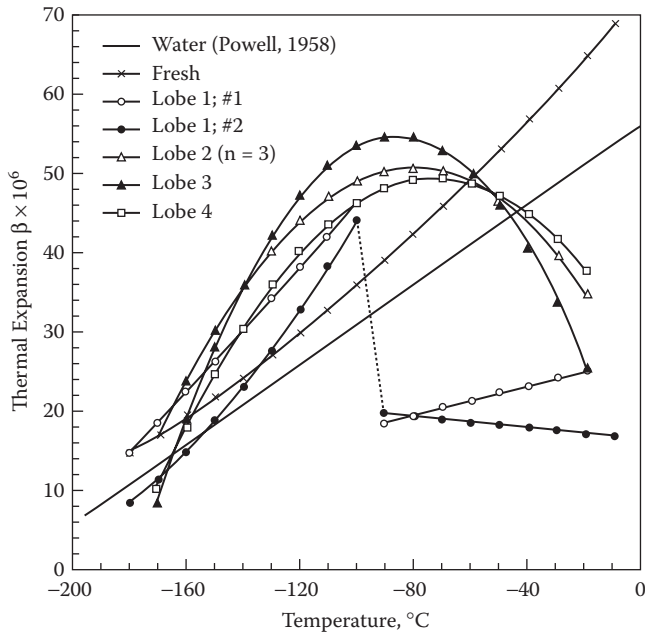
FIGURE 13.5 Thermal expansion coefficient of crystallized biological tissues. (Rabin, Y., Taylor, M.J., and Wolmark, N., Thermal expansion measurements of frozen biological tissues at cryogenic temperatures, *ASME J. Biomech. Eng.*, 120(2), 259–266, 1998. With permission.)

13.3.2.2 Vitrification

In the process of vitrification, the dramatic effect of expansion upon freezing is prevented because ice crystallization is suppressed. Vitrification is an inherently unstable process, affected primarily by the cooling rate, the rewarming rate, and the absolute pressure.[32,33] Whereas the cooling and rewarming rate effects have been discussed in detail in the literature, the pressure effect has not been well evaluated. In broad terms, the tendency to vitrify increases with the pressure, at least up to 1,700 Atm.[34] Fahy et al. [25] speculated that pressures of up to 1,000 Atm may be tolerable to living tissues, especially in the presence of specific protective agents, which tend to act as "baro-protectors." However, experimental support for this effect remains limited.

Kroener and Luyet [8] were the first to report on thermal expansion behavior during vitrification in the context of cryobiology, in a study that focused on thermal expansion of aqueous solutions of glycerol. They observed that the rate of change of thermal expansion with temperature changes dramatically near the glass transition temperature and speculated that "the abrupt change observed, in one direction during cooling, and in another direction during rewarming, may result in considerable mechanical disturbance in biological material subject to vitrification." However, mathematical models to include this effect in continuum mechanics were not yet available.

In order to provide insight into the thermal expansion of cryoprotective agents, Rabin et al.[31] perfused a pig liver with 2M DMSO in PBS and measured the thermal expansion coefficient at a relatively low cooling rate of 5ºC/min. These conditions are typical to classical cryopreservation, although liver cryopreservation is not yet feasible. The technique of *in situ* liver perfusion ensured efficient replacement of the biofluids with cryoprotectants. Results of this study showed variation in the thermal expansion of specimens taken from different lobes of the same liver (Figure 13.6), which is likely to be related to the achievable local distribution of DMSO in the liver. Specimens from one lobe of the liver showed a dramatic volume change around –95ºC, which is likely to be related to the coexistence of vitrified and crystalline phases of DMSO in the specific concentrations

FIGURE 13.6 Thermal expansion coefficient of pig liver perfused with DMSO; lobe designation: (1) small left lobe, (2) large left lobe, (3) large right lobe, (4) small right lobe. (Rabin, Y. and Steif, P.S., Thermal stress modeling in cryosurgery, *Int. J. Solids Struc.* 37, 2363–2375, 2000. With permission.)

and thermal conditions. Comparable results were also found in muscle specimens permeated with glycerin and DMSO. In summary, the relatively low concentrations of DMSO and glycerin used in this study changed dramatically the thermal expansion behavior of the tissue relative to unpermeated muscle tissue. Note that complete vitrification (complete suppression of ice crystallization) is likely not to be accomplished in 2M DMSO at a cooling rate of 5°C/min. (For comparison, see Plitz et al., 2004.[35])

Although thermal expansion measurements of solid materials can be done directly by connecting a linear motion sensor to the specimen,[31] comparable measurements in vitrifying materials are not achievable. In particular, it is challenging to measure thermal expansion during vitrification, when the material behaves as a liquid, but its viscosity elevates very rapidly with decrease in temperature. Rabin and Bell[36] developed a device for indirect thermal expansion measurements at the upper part of the cryogenic temperature range, during which viscosity of the vitrifying material is not too high (<~2000 Poise). This device is based on an enclosure filled with a liquid sample and a known quantity of air. The measured parameter is the air pressure as the enclosure cools down, and the inferred parameter is the thermal expansion of the liquid sample that drives the corresponding pressure change.

Thermal expansion data for DMSO solutions, which are the basis for many cryoprotectant cocktails, are available in the literature;[37,38,39] however, these data correspond to relatively high cryogenic temperatures, well above the freezing point, where the viscosity value is very low (<~6 Poise). By contrast, the device designed by Rabin and Bell[36] can simulate conditions in which the cooling rate is high enough to permit vitrification and avoid devitrification while allowing thermal expansion measurements at higher viscosity.

Rabin and Bell[40] studied the thermal expansion of the cryoprotectant cocktails VS55 and DP6, both containing DMSO as a primary cryoprotectant. The dramatic volume change associated with crystallization at low cooling rates was demonstrated for various thermal histories. Figure 13.7 shows the thermal strain along the process of cooling and subsequent rewarming of a VS55 sample;
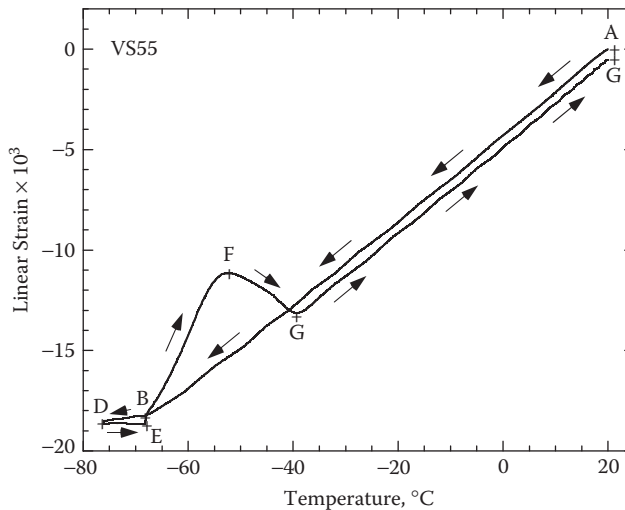
FIGURE 13.7 Thermal strain as a function of temperature of the cryoprotectant cocktail VS55, subject to an average cooling rate of 2.3ºC/min followed by a rewarming rate of 1.4ºC/min. (Reprinted from Rabin and Bell, 2003b, Thermal expansion measurements of cryoprotective agents. Part II: Measurements of DP6 and VS55, and comparison with DMSO, *Cryobiology*, 46(3), 264–270, 2003b. With permission from Elsevier.)

the average cooling rate was 2.3ºC/min, and the average rewarming rate was 1.4ºC/min. During cooling (segment A–B) the material behaves like a viscous fluid, well below the melting point (G). This cooling rate significantly suppresses crystallization of VS55, down to at least –67ºC. At the beginning of rewarming, however, crystals start to form immediately, as evident by the rapid increase in strain (segment E–F). Crystal melting follows (segment F–G), and the material resumes a liquid-like state above the melting point. The process of crystal formation during rewarming is known as either recrystallization, which is the growth of small existing ice crystals, or devitrification, which is the formation of ice crystals around nucleation sources. The distinction between recrystallization and devitrification is not always clear in the literature. It is also impossible to distinguish recrystallization from devitrification based on the experimental observations by Rabin and Bell.[40] In any event, the rewarming rate in these experiments was too low to prevent either one of the effects or both.

In an effort to map the effect of the thermal expansion of the ingredients on the cryoprotectant cocktail, Plitz et al.[35] focused their study on the ingredients of the cocktails DP6 and VS55. Table 13.1 summarizes the thermal expansion data of various cryoprotectants. Using a Differential Scanning Calorimetric device (DSC), Plitz et al.[35] verified the thermal events of crystallization against thermal expansion measurements; very good agreement was found in the identification of the upper boundary of melting. It is noted that the internal energy changes sensed by the DSC and the thermal expansion changes sensed by the new device for thermal expansion measurements are directly related,[23] which means that vitrification can be verified either through DSC analysis or through thermal expansion analysis. However, the thermal expansion device, which is capable of measuring volume changes in the order of micro-liters, is far more sensitive than a typical DSC device.

13.3.3 STRESS-STRAIN MEASUREMENTS OF FROZEN TISSUES

There are at least two different objectives in measuring the stress-strain relationship in the context of cryobiology, one relevant to room temperature after tissue recovery from cryogenic storage and the other relevant to the cryogenic protocol. Stress-strain measurements at room temperature after tissue recovery from cryogenic storage are an implicit way of measuring the accumulated

effect of structural damage during the cryogenic protocol. Accumulated tissue damage may be related to effects of stress at low temperatures; fracture formation and plasticity effects are examples. Accumulated tissue damage may also be related to other injury at the cellular level, which after thawing leads to degradation of the cellular matrix and tissue structure. For such purposes, stress-strain measurements should be taken well after thawing to include any post traumatic effects of exposure to low temperatures. Stress-strain analysis post-cryopreservation is more of a diagnostic tool, but it is very limited as a tool for explaining phenomena governing destruction and injury. Measurements of the mechanical properties post-cryopreservation are more common in vascular studies such as those by Vesely et al.,[41] Rosset et al.,[42] Pukacki et al. 2000,[43] and Bujan et al.;[44] however, similar studies have reported on other tissues such as skin[45] and bones.[46] The instrumentation required for strain-stress measurements at room temperature is quite standard in the engineering sense; the major difficulty is in gripping the tissue samples. Another significant difficulty is in preparing specimens in simple geometries adequate for compatible engineering analysis.

Stress-strain measurements made under appropriate cryogenic conditions are relevant to events that take place during the cryogenic protocol itself. Such measurements serve as the basis for mathematical modeling of the mechanical behavior of the material, which ultimately predicts structural damage or fracture due to excessive stresses in particular cryogenic conditions. One can identify two classes of stress-strain studies relevant to cryogenic protocols. In the first class of studies, one tries to determine the response of the frozen tissue to the application of known stresses, usually under conditions of constant temperature; both the resulting strain and tendency to fracture are of interest. Like thermal expansion behavior, these observations are ingredients in predicting stress and fracture under a chosen temperature protocol. In the second class, one exposes tissue of some shape and under some conditions to a temperature protocol. One observes the tendency for fracture and tries to relate those observations to the predictions derived from calculations (analytical or computer-based) using data obtained in the first class of studies.

Gao et al.[47] studied fracture phenomena in an isotonic salt solution during freezing and their elimination using glycerol. The experimental apparatus designed for this study had the shape of a cylindrical brass tube with strain gauges connected to its wall. Special windows were prepared in the container base to observe fracturing. Ternary solutions (glycerol-water-NaCl) were tested in a glycerol concentration range of 0 to 1M and subject to a low cooling rate of about 0.1°C/min down to –40°C. Fracture events were observed either visually, by removing the container base, or indirectly, through sudden changes in the strain in the container wall. Gao et al. observed darker rings in the frozen material, which they related to the strain relief events at the container wall. Gao et al. also found some correlation between these fracturing observations and the earlier computer simulation results of Lin et al.[48] However, Gao et al. performed the study for a limited range of parameters, and the strains in the freezing medium were not measured directly. There was no analysis of the stress distribution, nor inferences of the corresponding strength of the material.

Rabin et al.[2] conducted an experimental study of the mechanical response of frozen soft biological tissues to applied compressive stresses. Table 13.2 presents the results of compression tests on rabbit liver, kidney, and brain, as well as literature data on sea ice and single ice crystals. As illustrated in Figure 13.8, after an initial roughly linear elastic portion there was a series of sudden stress drops at constant strain, each followed by a linear increase of stress with strain to the next drop. This phenomenon, attributed to the accumulation of micro-fractures, broadly resembles plastic deformation and thus provides support for simple elastic–perfectly plastic models invoked in theoretical studies. Figures 13.3 and 13.4 present the histological examination of similar tissue samples.

Zhang et al.[49] performed an experimental study of the mechanical behavior of frozen arteries at low temperatures using a Dynamic Mechanical Analyzer in tension. They found that the frozen artery shows a kind of elastic-plasticity in the temperature range of –20°C to –40°C. The plastic

TABLE 13.2

Experimental Data of Elastic Modulus and Strength Single Ice Crystals, Sea Ice, and Soft Biological Tissues in Compression in the Solid State

Material	Elastic Modulus (mean ± STD) GPa	Yield Strength (mean ± STD) MPa	Maximal Strength (mean ± STD) MPa	Reference
Single Ice Crystal	13–18.5	–	–	Helmreich, 1969[62]
Single Ice Crystal	2.8–17.5	–	–	Dantel, 1969[63]
Sea Ice	3–100	7.9–12.2	–	Weeks and Assur 1967[64]
Sea Ice	–	0.75–3.31	–	Christensen, 1986[65]
Rabbit Liver	14.8 ± 4.5	–	53.5 ± 9.1	Rabin et. al., 1996[2]
Rabbit Kidney	22.9 ± 4.6	–	132.2 ± 35.1	Rabin et. al., 1996[2]
Rabbit Brain	9.5 ± 1.7	–	29.6 ± 6.1	Rabin et. al., 1996[2]

Source: (Reprinted from Rabin et al., 1996,[2] with permission from Elsevier.)
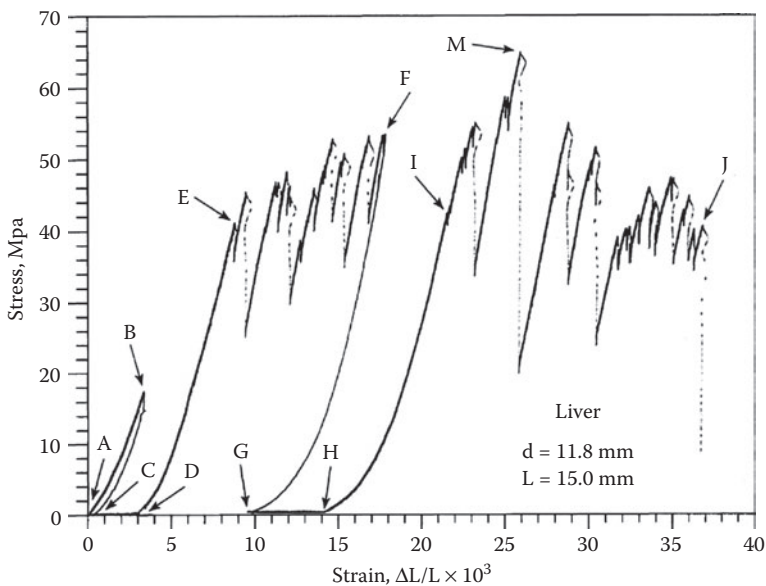
FIGURE 13.8 Stress-strain relationship during three cycles of compression testing, on a rabbit liver specimen at liquid nitrogen boiling temperature (–196°C). Section A–C represents the first loading cycle, entirely in the linear-elastic regime. Section D–G represents a second loading cycle, with the formation of a series of fractures between points E and F. Loading and unloading in the second cycle appears to follow roughly linear-elastic behavior. Section H–J represents a third loading cycle with a sample crushing to ruble at point J. (Rabin, Y. et al., An experimental study of the mechanical response of frozen biological tissues at cryogenic temperatures, *Cryobiology*, 33, 472–482, 1996. With permission from Elsevier.)

behavior disappeared with the decrease in temperature, and the artery behaved as a brittle-elastic material at –120°C. Similar observations were made in the axial and circumferential directions of the artery. In the presence of cryoprotectants, Zhang et al.[49] indicated that the artery becomes softer, and they speculated that this softening effect should help prevent fracturing.

13.4   MATHEMATICAL MODELING

Boley and Weiner (1960) provided a summary of classical closed-form solutions of thermo-mechanical stress problems in solids.[50] These classical solutions rest on four principal assumptions: (a) the temperature distribution can be determined independently of the deformation of the solid; (b) the entire domain is solid with constant mechanical properties; (c) all deformations are small; and (d) the material may be modeled as an elastic solid. Due to the complexity of such problems, solutions are given for simplified cases in one-dimensional configurations. Boley and Weiner[51] also suggested a solution for the case of an elastic–perfectly plastic (rather than purely elastic) material, which could be used to simulate the pseudo elastic–perfectly plastic behavior observed by Rabin et al.[2]

Rubinsky et al.[52] were the first to adopt the classical solutions collected by Boley and Weiner[50] to cryobiology problems, and many followed in the following two decades. For example, Gao et al.[47] and Lin et al.[53] used the results of similar mathematical solutions to explain experimental observations of fracture formation in water solutions; Rabin and Steif[54] used a similar solution to predict fracture formation during cryosurgery; and Hua et al.[55] used a numerical technique based on a similar model to predict fractures during cryopreservation of blood vessels. Unfortunately, cryobiology problems could not be properly captured by the mathematical solutions adopted from Boley and Weiner,[50] which did not take into account: (1) the sudden volume expansion associated with freezing at the freezing front, and (2) the fact that the region over which the material is solid and capable of sustaining stresses changes as time progresses, due to the *moving* freezing front. The neglect of a discussion of the effect of volume expansion upon freezing was questioned by Thom et al.[56] and addressed by Gao et al.,[47] but a mathematical model to correct these inconsistencies was not offered.

Parametric studies based on the classical solutions were also inconsistent with experimental observations: in cryopreservation applications, severe fractures often occur at the early stages of thawing and not, as commonly expected, during freezing.[57] Comparable observations were made in the context of cryosurgery when performing routine cryoprobe testing in saline: cracking more often occurs at the beginning of the rewarming phase, immediately after the cryogen supply is shut off (Rabin, personal observations). These inconsistencies prompted Rabin and Steif[58] to reexamine the assumptions underlying the models of tissue freezing and to offer an alternative model for thermo-mechanical stress that accounted for the moving freezing front. In particular, Rabin and Steif argued that any volume-preserving strain that occurs while the material is still in the liquid state cannot produce stress; therefore, material that has just solidified at an expanding freezing front must start with zero stress. It is noted that, while the zero stress condition at the freezing front has been well appreciated by workers in the area of metal solidification and casting,[51,59] it has been overlooked by researchers in the area of cryobiology.

Rabin and Steif [58] proposed a mathematical model that takes into account both the condition of zero stress at the freezing front and the dramatic volume change associated with freezing. Supported by experimental observations,[1,3] Rabin and Steif developed closed-form solutions for an elastic-perfectly plastic material in two simplified spherical cases: (1) an inward freezing problem, simulative of classical cryopreservation,[58] and (2) an outward freezing problem, simulative of cryosurgery.[60] Based on parametric studies using physical properties similar to water, the outstanding observation in both cases is that thawing is not the inverse of freezing in terms of stress and strain distributions. In fact, the frozen material strains continuously during freezing and subsequent thawing, which runs counter to the expectation that the level of strain should be reduced with rewarming. Indeed rewarming does not "undo" freezing in the solid mechanics sense.

Of course, the liquid phase can sustain hydrostatic pressure if the liquid is contained. Indeed, this is what happens in the inward freezing problem (the cryopreservation case), in which unfrozen material (liquid) is trapped within a solid spherical shell. The large volume increase due to freezing of the inner confined liquid results in enormous hydrostatic pressures in the liquid and
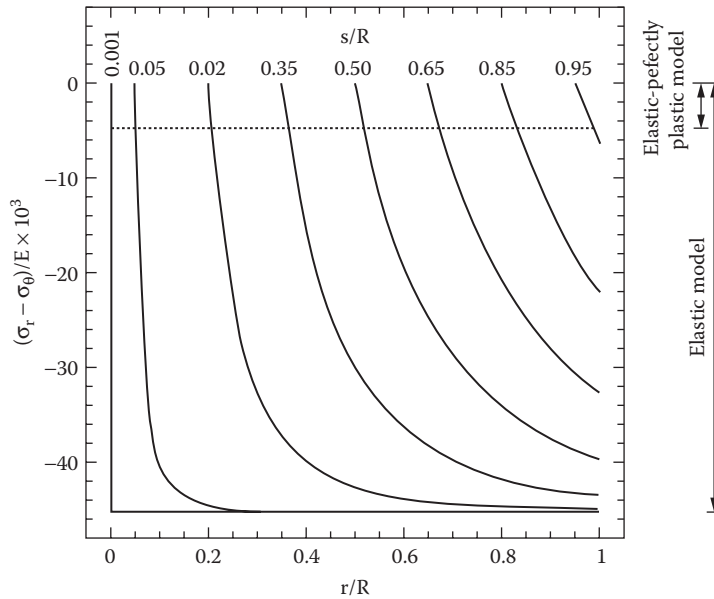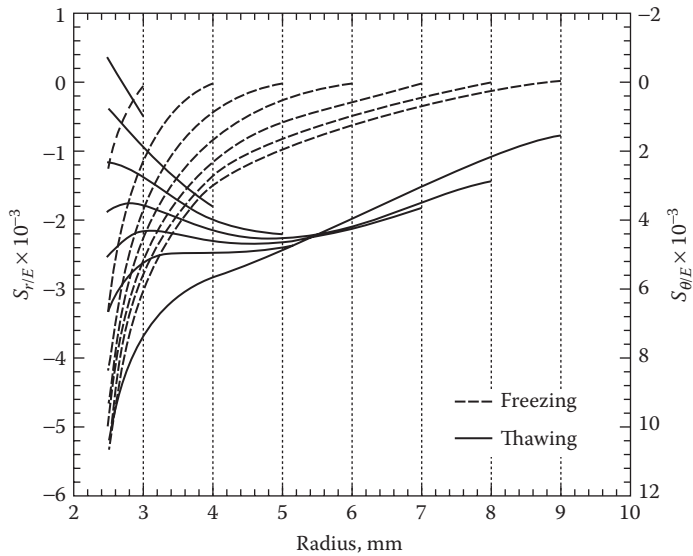
FIGURE 13.9 Calculated deviatoric stress distribution during inward freezing in a sphere simulative of a cryopreservation protocol; where s is the freezing front and R is the sphere radius. The dashed line represents the extreme deviatoric stress in the case of an elastic–perfectly plastic model and a yield strain of 0.005. (Rabin, Y. and Steif, P.S., Thermal stresses in a freezing sphere and its application to cryobiology, *ASME J. Appl. Mech.*, 65(2), 328–333, 1998.)

circumferential stresses in the shell, potentially producing fractures. Figure 13.9 presents the deviatoric stress (the total stress minus the hydrostatic pressure) distribution in an inward freezing problem, in which a yield strain of 0.005 is presumed for the frozen material.[58] In this case, it was found that the effect of volume changes associated with ice formation is expected to overwhelm the effects associated with constrained contraction in the solid domain (for example, the linear thermal expansion effect). Another interesting observation is that the elevated hydrostatic pressure at the core of the sphere is expected to depress the freezing point, an effect bounded by the –20°C isotherm, as discussed at the beginning of Section 13.3.2.

In the cryosurgery case,[60] results show that the stress distribution during the rewarming stage is very different than that during cooling (Figure 13.10). In the vicinity of the cryoprobe during cooling, very high stresses are found, which are likely to reach the strength of the material. Extremely high strain rates are found on the outer surface of the frozen domain at the initiation of the rewarming stage. Furthermore, it is shown that significant stresses remain in the frozen region during rewarming, even when the temperature distribution becomes almost uniform, equal to the phase transition temperature. The stress distributions are qualitatively consistent with experimental observations of limited cracking at the cryoprobe surface during cooling and large scale cracking at the initiation of the rewarming stage.

While there are a limited number of closed-form solutions for thermo-mechanical stress problems with phase change, it is possible, in principle, to devise finite element methods to solve such problems. For example, Dennis et al.[61] used finite elements methods to "design" a cryopreservation protocol that minimized thermo-mechanical stress. Protocol design was achieved by a sequence of finite element-based thermo-mechanical stress simulations featuring varying temperature histories at the container wall. After an initial guess for a thermal history for the first simulation, a special computer code automatically varied the thermal history for the next simulation until it found an

FIGURE 13.10 Calculated deviatoric stress during freezing and subsequent thawing in an outward freezing problem, at various time instants of the simulated cryosurgical procedure. The solidus front advances in 1 mm increments between every two consecutive time instants. (Rabin, Y. and Steif, P.S., Thermal stress modeling in cryosurgery, *Int. J. Solids Struc.* 37, 2363–2375, 2000. With permission from Elsevier.)

optimum thermal history, producing thermo-mechanical stresses nowhere exceeding a prespecified critical level at any time during the cryogenic protocol.

Using finite elements can be very challenging for such problems. One needs to be concerned about convergence of the solution as the number of elements is increased and the dependence on the particular arrangement of elements in the mesh. Additional numerical challenges will need to be faced in the case of vitrifying tissues, in which case the viscosity varies by orders of magnitude over the relevant temperature range. These difficulties require careful attention to verification with the exact solutions listed possibly serving as references for comparison. The beauty of closed-form solutions is that they offer simultaneous insight for a wide range of parameters, whereas finite elements can only give numerical results for a specific problem. On the other hand, with finite elements one can generate solutions to a virtually endless number of complex configurations and materials. It should be common practice to verify finite elements codes against closed-form solutions in particular cases in order to gain an acceptable level of confidence in the use of the specific computer code. A combination of various solution methods is likely to provide the engineering tools necessary to predict and ultimately control the thermo-mechanical stresses during cryopreservation.

13.5 SUMMARY

Cryopreservation technologies represent a potential long-term minimally damaging method to preserve both native and engineered tissues. One of the key factors that hinders the widespread use of recent developments in cryopreservation technology to bulky specimens is the phenomenon of fracture formation. An understanding of this potentially destructive outcome of thermo-mechanical stresses, inherent in the cryopreservation of complex biological systems, is crucial for the development of improved methods of cryogenic storage. Similar devastating effects are evident from cryopreservation applications in the food industry, agriculture, and the clinical application of cryosurgery.

Although fractures have been empirically observed, effective control of them will require a predictive methodology. Cryobiology must adapt the mechanistic approaches, which have successfully used mathematical models to predict fracture in engineering materials.

Essentially, fracture is a consequence of nonuniform thermal expansions of cryopreserved tissues. Such nonuniformities induce internal forces (stresses), which can cause fractures. A mechanistic approach to fracture prediction requires calculations of stress. Besides mathematical methods of analysis, data on the thermal expansion of tissues and on the deformation of tissues subject to simple states of mechanical stress are necessary to calculating stresses during cryopreservation protocols. This chapter has reviewed efforts on these fronts.

Recent studies have demonstrated that an alternative approach to cryopreservation involving vitrification that avoids the hazards of ice formation leads to markedly improved tissue products in terms of structure and function. Additional complexities, only alluded to in this chapter, must be confronted if one contemplates the prediction of stresses and fracture in vitrifying tissues. These complexities are associated with characterizing the deformation of tissue subject to mechanical stress, given that vitrifying tissues are neither fully solid nor fully fluid over a significant temperature range of more than 100ºC. These future developments will lead to the full realization of the effective preservation of large tissue specimens of clinical relevance.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

REFERENCES

1. Gere, J.G., *Mechanics of Materials*, 6th ed., Brooks/Cole, Belmont, CA, 2004.
2. Rabin, Y., Steif, P.S., Taylor, M.J., Julian, T.B., Wolmark, N., An experimental study of the mechanical response of frozen biological tissues at cryogenic temperatures, *Cryobiology*, 33, 472-482, 1996.
3. Rabin, Y., Olson, P., Taylor, M.J., Steif, P.S., Julian, T.B., Wolmark, N., Gross damage accumulation in frozen rabbit liver due to mechanical stress at cryogenic temperatures. *Cryobiology*, 34, 394-405, 1997.
4. Luyet, B.J., The vitrification of organic colloids and of protoplasm, *Biodynamical,* (29), 1-14, 1937.
5. Kroener, C. and Luyet, B.J., Formation of cracks during the vitrification of glycerol solutions and disappearance of the cracks during rewarming, *Biodynamica*, 10(201), 47-52, 1966b.
6. Fahy, G.M., Saur, J., and Williams, R.J., Physical problems with the vitrification of large biological systems, *Cryobiology*, 27, 492-510, 1990.
7. Pegg, D.E., Wusteman, M.C., Boylan, S., Fractures in cryopreserved elastic arteries. *Cryobiology*, 34(2), 183-192, 1997.
8. Kroener, C. and Luyet, B.J., Discontinuous change in expansion coefficient at the glass transition temperature in aqueous solutions of glycerol, *Biodynamica*, 10(200), 41-45, 1966a.
9. Taylor, M.J., Song, Y.C., Khirabadi, B.S., Lightfoot, F.G., Brockbank, K.G.M., Vitrification fulfills its promise as an approach to reducing freeze-induced injury in a multicellular tissue, in *Advances in Heat and Mass Transfer in Biotechnology*, HTD-363/BED-44, 93-102, ASME Press, Nashville, TN, 1999.
10. Song, Y.C., Khirabadi, B.S., Lightfoot, F.G., Brockbank, K.G.M., and Taylor, M.J. Vitreous cryopreservation maintains the function of vascular grafts, *Nature Biotech*. 18, 296-299, 2000.
11. Taylor, M.J., Song, Y.C., and Brockbank, K.G.M., *Vitrification in Tissue Preservation: New Developments,* in *Life in the Frozen State*, Fuller, B.J., Lane, N., and Benson, E.E., Eds., CRC Press, New York, 2004.
12. Luyet, B.J. and Rapatz, G., An automatically regulated refrigeration system for small laboratory equipment and a microscope cooling stage, *Biodynamica*, 7(154), 337-345, 1975.
13. Diller, K.R. and Cravalho, E.G., A microscope for the study of freezing and thawing processes in biological cells, *Cryobiology*, 7, 191-199, 1971.

14. Cosman, M.D., Toner, M., Kandel J., and Cravalho, E.G., An integrated cryomicroscopy system, *Cryo-Lett.*, 10, 17-38, 1989.
15. Brower, W.E., Freund, M.J., Baudino, M.D., and Ringwald, C., An hypothesis for survival of spermatozoa via encapsulation during plane front freezing, *Cryobiology*, 18, 277-291, 1981.
16. Korber, C.H., Scheiwe, M.W., and Wollhover, K., Solute polarization during planar freezing of aqueous solutions, *J. Heat Mass Trans.*, 26, 1241-1253, 1983.
17. Rubinsky, B. and Ikeda, M., A microscope using directional solidification for the controlled freezing of biological material, *Cryobiology*, 22, 55-68, 1985.
18. Mazur, P., Leibo, S.P., Chu, E.H.Y., A two-factor hypothesis of freezing injury, *Exp. Cell Res.*, 71, 345-355, 1972.
19. Ishiguro, H. and Rubinsky, B., Mechanical interaction between ice crystals and red blood cells during directional solidification, *Cryobiology*, 31, 483-500, 1994.
20. Thom, F. and Matthes, G., Deformation of the cell membrane at low temperatures. I: A cryomicroscopical technique, *Cryo-Lett.*, 9, 300-307, 1988.
21. Thom, F., Deformation of the cell membrane at low temperatures. II: Elastical deformability of the erythrocyte membrane, *Cryo-Lett.*, 9, 308-315, 1988.
22. Menz, J.L. and Luyet, B.J., A study of the lines of fracture observed in the freeze-drying of aqueous solutions crystallized into spherulites, *Biodynamica*, 191, 265-275, 1965.
23. Fletcher, N.H., *The Chemical Physics of Ice*, Cambridge University Press, London, 1970.
24. Fei, Y., Mao, H., and Hemley, R.J., Thermal expensivity, balk modulus, and melting curve of H_2O-ice VII to 20GPa, *J. Chem. Phys.*, 99(7), 5369-5373, 1993.
25. Fahy, G.M., MacFarlane, D.R., Angell, C.A., Meryman, H.T., Vitrification as an approach to cryopreservation, *Cryobiology*, 21, 407-426, 1984
26. Vedamuthu, M., Singh, S., and Robinson, G.W., Properties of liquid water: origin of the density anomalies, *J. Phys. Chem.*, 98(9), 2222-2230, 1994.
27. Powell, R., Thermal conductivity and expansion coefficients of water and ice, *Adv. Phys.*, 7, 276-297, 1958.
28. Dantel, G., Wärmedehnung von H_2O- und D_2O-einkristallen, *Z. Phys.* 166, 115-118, 1962.
29. Jakob, M. and Erk, S., Wärmedehnung des eises zwischen 0 und -253°. *Z. Ges. Kälte-Ind.*, 35, 125-130, 1928.
30. Fukusako, S., Thermophysical properties of ice, snow, and sea ice, *Int. J. Thermophysics*, 11(2), 353-372, 1990.
31. Rabin, Y., Taylor, M.J., and Wolmark, N., Thermal expansion measurements of frozen biological tissues at cryogenic temperatures, *ASME J. Biomech. Eng.*, 120(2), 259-266, 1998.
32. Angell, C.A. and Choi. Y., Crystallization and vitrification in aqueous systems, *J. Microscopy*, 141(3), 251-261, 1986.
33. MacFarlane, D.R., Physical aspects of vitrification in aqueous solutions, *Cryobiology*, 24, 181-195, 1987.
34. MacFarlane, D.R., Angell, C.A., Fahy, G.M., Homogeneous nucleation and glass formation in cryoprotective systems at high pressures, *Cryo-Lett.*, 2, 353-358, 1981.
35. Plitz, J., Rabin, Y., and Walsh, J., The effect of thermal expansion of ingredients on the cocktails VS55 and DP6, *Cell Preserv. Technol.*, 2(3), 215-226, 2004.
36. Rabin, Y. and Bell E., Thermal expansion measurements of cryoprotective agents. Part I: A new experimental apparatus, *Cryobiology*, 46(3), 254-263, 2003a.
37. Schichman, S.A. and Amey, R.L., Viscosity and local liquid structure in dimethyl sulphoxide-water mixtures, *J. Phys. Chem.*, 75(1), 98-102, 1971.
38. Steinbrecher, M., Dimethyl sulphoxide as a component of single and multiphase systems, in *Dimethyl Sulphoxide*, Martin, D., and Hauthal, M.G., Eds., Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., England, 1975.
39. Archer, G.P., Kennedy, C.J., and Pegg, D.E., Determination of the volume changes associated with freezing solutions of Dimethyl Sulphoxide, *Cryo-Lett.*, 17, 3-6, 1996.
40. Rabin, Y. and Bell E., Thermal expansion measurements of cryoprotective agents. Part II: Measurements of DP6 and VS55, and comparison with DMSO, *Cryobiology*, 46(3), 264-270, 2003b.
41. Vesely, I., Gonzalea-Lavin, L., Graf, D., and Boughner, D., Mechanical testing of cryopreserved aortic allografts; comparison with xenografts and fresh tissue, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.*, 99(1), 119-123, 1990.

42. Rosset, E., Friggi, A., Novakovitch, G., Rolland, P.H., Rieu, R., Pellissier, J.F., Magnan, P.E., Branchereau, A., Effects of cryopreservation on the viscoelastic properties of human arteries, *Ann. Vasc. Surg.*, 10(3), 262-272, 1996.

43. Pukacki, F., Jankowski, T., Gabriel, M., Oszkinis, G., Krasinski, Z., Zapalski, S., The mechanical properties of fresh cryopreserved arterial homografts, *Eur. J. Vasc. Endovasc. Surg.* 20(1), 21-24, 2000.

44. Bujan, J., Pascual, G., Gracia-Honduvilla, N., Gimeno, M.J., Jurado, F., Carrera-San Martin, A., Bellon J.M., Rapid thawing increases the fragility of cryopreserved arterial wall, *Eur. J. Vasc. Endovasc. Surg.* 20(1), 13-20, 2000.

45. Foutz, T.L., Stone, E.A., Abrams, C.F., Jr., Effects of freezing on mechanical properties of rat skin, *Am. J. Vet. Res.*, 53(5), 788792, 1992.

46. Wohl, G., Goplen, G., Ford, J., Novak, K., Hurtig, M., McPherson, R., McGann, L., Schachar, N., Zernicke ,R.F., Mechanical integrity of subchondral bone in osteochondral autografts and allografts, *Can. J. Surg.*, 41(3), 228-233, 1998.

47. Gao, D.Y., Lin, S., Watson, P.F., and Crister, J.K., Fracture phenomena in an isotonic salt solution during freezing and their elimination using glycerol, *Cryobiology*, 32, 270-284, 1995.

48. Lin, S. and Gao, D.Y., Thermal stress related to cryoinjury of biological cells in freezing preservation, in *Heat Transfer with Phase Change*, Habib, I.S., and Dallman, R.J., Eds., HTD-114, pp. 21-27, ASME Press, New York, 1989.

49. Zhang, A., Cheng, S., Lei, D., He, L., Luo, D., Gao, D., An experimental study of the mechanical behavior of frozen arteries at low temperatures, *Cryo-Lett.*, 23(6), 389-396, 2002.

50. Boley, B.A. and Weiner, J.H., *Theory of Thermal Stresses*, Wiley, New York, 1960.

51. Boley, B.A. and Weiner, J.H., Elasto-plastic thermal stress in a solidifying body, *J. Mech. Phys. Solids*, 11, 145-154, 1963.

52. Rubinsky, B., Cravalho, E.G., and Mikic, B., Thermal stress in frozen organs, *Cryobiology*, 17, 66-73, 1980.

53. Lin, S., Gao, D.Y., and Yu, X.C., Thermal stress induced by water solidification in a cylindrical tube, *ASME J. Heat Trans.*, 112, 1079-1082, 1990.

54. Rabin, Y. and Steif, P.S., Analysis of thermal stresses around cryosurgical probe, *Cryobiology*, 33, 276-290, 1996.

55. Hua, Z., Xu, H., Zhou, G., Liu, J., Huang, H., Ding, W., Analysis of thermal stress and fracture during cryopreservation of blood vessel, *Sci. China Ser. E.*, 44(2), 158-163, 2001.

56. Thom, F., Matthes, G., Richter, E., and Hackensellner, H.A., The ductility of mammalian tissue in dependence on the deformation temperature, *Cryo-Lett.*, 4, 341-348, 1983.

57. Pegg, D.E., Problems in the cryopreservation of tissues and organs, *Cryobiology*, 33(6), 658-659, 1996.

58. Rabin, Y. and Steif, P.S., Thermal stresses in a freezing sphere and its application to cryobiology, *ASME J. Appl. Mech.*, 65(2), 328-333, 1998.

59. Zabaras, N., Ruan, Y., and Richmond, O., On the calculation of deformations and stresses during axially symmetric solidification, *ASME J. Appl. Mech.*, 58, 865-871, 1991.

60. Rabin, Y. and Steif, P.S., Thermal stress modeling in cryosurgery, *Int. J. Solids Struc.* 37, 2363-2375, 2000.

61. Dennis, B.H., Dulikravich, G.S., and Rabin, Y., Optimization of organ freezing protocols with specified allowable thermal stress levels, in *Proc. IMECE*, HTD-368/BED-47, 33-48, ASME Press, Orlando, 2000.

62. Helmreich, D., Elastic anomalies of ice at low temperatures, in *Physics of Ice*, Riehl, N., Bullemer, B., and Engelhardt, H., Eds., Plenum Press, New York, 1969, pp. 231-238.

63. Dantel, G., Elastic moduli of ice, in *Physics of Ice*, Riehl, N., Bullemer, B., and Engelhardt, H., Eds., Plenum Press, New York, 1969, pp. 223- 230.

64. Weeks, W. and Assur, A., *The Mechanical Properties of Sea Ice*, Cold Regions Research & Engineering Laboratory, U.S. Army, Hanover, New Hampshire, 1967.

65. Christensen, F.T., Sea ice strength measurements from the inner Danish waters in early 1985, in *Ice Technology*, Murthy, T.K.S., Connor, J.J., and Brebbia, C.A., Eds., Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1986.

14 Stabilization of Mammalian Cells in the Dry State

*John H. Crowe, Lois M. Crowe, Willem Wolkers,
Nelly M. Tsvetkova, Ann E. Oliver, Zsolt Torok,
Azadeh Kheirolomoom, Jeffrey Norris, Gyana Satpathy,
Xiaocui Ma, Minke Tang, Joong-Hyuck Auh, Shijun Zhu,
Mitali Banerjee, Resmi Ravindran, Chad Leidy,
Josette Ricker, Kamran Jamil, Naomi Walker, Sheri Looper,
Joe Russell, Erika Fisk, Rachna Bali, Dana Clutter,
Denis Dwyre, and Fern Tablin*

CONTENTS

Stabilization of cells by freeze-drying has been one of the major goals of cryobiology for decades, but success has been limited mainly to prokaryotes.[1–5] The first reports of preserving mammalian cells — red blood cells[6,7] — in a dry state soon led to controversy,[8,9] which resulted in the consensus that freeze-drying of mammalian cells was probably not possible. However, with the development of new technologies[10–13] and the application of molecular techniques,[14,15] this field has taken on a

new life. In fact, several reports suggest that freeze-dried human platelets are nearly ready for clinical trials.[15–19]

Most of the current investigations have flowed out of studies of the biochemistry of organisms that naturally survive drying in nature. Many, but not all, such organisms synthesize large quantities of disaccharides (trehalose or sucrose) in preparation for drying. These sugars are not necessarily required for survival of drying, but studies on their role in stabilizing biological materials have led to at least a rudimentary understanding of the physical requirements for stabilization during drying.[20] We will attempt to show in this chapter that this understanding may lead to development of technology for preserving mammalian cells in the dry state.

14.1 TREHALOSE PRODUCTION AND STRESS

The vast majority of investigations in this field use trehalose as a protective molecule. This sugar is accumulated at high concentrations — as much as 20% of the dry weight — by many organisms capable of surviving complete dehydration, spread across many major taxa in all kingdoms.[20] For example, baker's yeast cells, which have been the subject of the most intensive investigation, do not survive drying in the log phase of growth and do not contain significant amounts of trehalose; however, in the stationary phase they accumulate the sugar and may then be dried successfully.[21] Until recently, trehalose was thought to be a storage sugar in these cells, and the survival in the dry state was believed to be related to its delivery of a ready energy source for repair functions during rehydration. Evidence is accumulating that trehalose production may be a universal stress response in yeasts; it can even prevent damage from environmental insults such as ethanol production during fermentation in yeasts.[22–26] In fact, overproduction of trehalose in some yeast strains by increasing synthesis[27,28] and decreasing degradation[29] is being used to increase ethanol tolerance and thus to boost industrial ethanol production. Along the same lines, trehalose has been shown to inhibit toxic effects of toluene in a bacterium.[30] Trehalose production may be a more widespread stress response than previously appreciated; the analogue of trehalose in higher plants has been thought to be sucrose,[31] but recent reports show that several higher plants or their symbionts produce trehalose in response to drought stress. [32–36] Furthermore, several reports show that plants into which the genes for trehalose synthesis were introduced show increased resistance to drought stress.[37,38]

14.2 TREHALOSE AND STRESS PROTEINS

Trehalose is synthesized after heat shock in yeasts,[39] apparently conferring general stress protection to the cells.[40–42] This effect is so pronounced that trehalose was initially thought to be an analog of heat-shock proteins in yeasts.[39] Subsequently, researchers have found trehalose is produced in combination with stress proteins.[43–45] The synergy appears to confer resistance to multiple stresses, including dehydration,[46–49] but the nature of the synergy remains unclear.[51,52] Similarly, Clegg and colleagues show that in cysts of the brine shrimp *Artemia,* trehalose is produced in response to heat shock,[53] along with a small stress protein.[54] The trehalose seems to influence molecular chaperone activity by the stress protein, according to Viner and Clegg's data, but it is possible that the stress proteins themselves may be involved in stabilizing membranes and proteins in the dry state; Sales et al.[55] produced some evidence that a small stress protein in yeasts, located at the plasma membrane, appears to be involved in protection against dehydration damage and ethanol stress — properties similar to those observed for trehalose. In further support of this proposition, Török et al. [56] demonstrated that a small stress protein, hsp17, stabilizes membranes during heat stress by direct interaction with the bilayer. The mechanism of stabilization is unknown. Hill and colleagues[57] discovered a protein, which they called water stress protein, produced in large quantities by the dehydration-tolerant alga *Nostoc*, but its function is unknown, a common problem in this field. Possibly the best-studied stress proteins related to dehydration resistance are the family known

as dehydrins, found in both higher[58–60] and lower[61] plants. These proteins were first described in relation to dehydration resistance,[59,60] but subsequently have been shown to be produced in response to chilling,[58] freezing,[62,63] wounding,[63] osmotic stress,[64] and chemical insults.[65] Despite intensive study, functions of these proteins in response to all these stresses are still unclear. It seems likely that dehydrins might be produced along with sugars (sucrose or trehalose) in stressed plants, particularly because drought tolerance and sucrose production are strongly influenced by the plant hormone abscisic acid.[66] Dehydrin production is similarly stimulated by abscisic acid (ABA).[67]

The majority of this chapter concentrates on trehalose; however, we believe that stress proteins will ultimately be a part of the effort at stabilizing cells in the dry state, and we will present evidence that this is the case.

14.3 TREHALOSE AND BIOSTABILITY

Beginning in the early 1980s, the authors established that biomolecules and molecular assemblages such as membranes and proteins can be stabilized in the dry state in the presence of trehalose. When scientists compared trehalose with other sugars, trehalose appeared to be clearly superior (reviewed in reference 68). Since that time, an astonishing array of applications for trehalose have been reported (summarized in Table 14.1), ranging from stabilization of vaccines and liposomes to hypothermic storage of human organs;[84] other studies suggest that it might even be efficacious in treatment of dry-eye syndrome[97] or dry skin.[106] Trehalose is prominently listed as an ingredient in cosmetics (reviewed in reference 116). Apparently, trehalose's reputation for inhibiting oxidation of fatty acids *in vitro* that might be related to body odor is the only basis for its use in cosmetics.[116] Trehalose has been shown by several groups to suppress free radical damage;[107] protect against anoxia;[108,109] inhibit dental caries;[110] stabilize the flavor in foods;[111] and inhibit bone resorption in ovariectomized mice,[112] apparently by suppressing osteoclast differentiation.[113] Because it may suppress osteoclast differentiation, scientists suggest that trehalose might be used to treat osteoporosis in humans. More recently, Tanaka et al.[114] reported that trehalose could be used to inhibit the protein aggregation associated with Huntington's disease *in vivo* in a rat model for this disease. That report led to an unorthodox clinical trial in humans.[115]

At least half the applications listed in Table 14.1 deal with fully hydrated cells; thus the solution properties of trehalose are particularly relevant. Since we are concerned principally with dry cells here, we point out in passing the development of a considerable body of evidence on solution properties of this molecule.[49,117–123] Among the most intriguing are findings that the hydrated radius of trehalose is anomalously large — at least 2.5 times that of the other sugars tested.[49] This would seem to be in good agreement with the report of Lin and Timasheff[124] that, unlike other sugars, trehalose is totally excluded from the hydration shell of the proteins studied. This effect would, in turn, presumably maximize the stabilization of proteins by the preferential exclusion mechanism,[125,126] a possibility that warrants further investigation. In fact, it seems possible that many of the properties reported for trehalose for stabilization of biomaterials in bulk water or during freezing (cf. Table 14.1) might be related to this apparent anomaly.

14.4 DOES TREHALOSE HAVE SPECIAL PROPERTIES FOR PRESERVING BIOMATERIALS?

We recently reviewed the history of this field[84] and provide only a brief summary of the key observations. The first model membrane investigated was sarcoplasmic reticulum, isolated from lobster muscle (reviewed in reference 68). When some of the authors compared the ability of a variety of sugars to preserve the SR during drying, we found that trehalose was, without question, superior to all other sugars tested. Some years later, however, we obtained evidence that these SR membranes have a mechanism for translocating trehalose across the bilayer. We suggest that other

TABLE 14.1
Some Novel Applications for Trehalose

Application	Treatment	References
Enzymes and other proteins	f,ad,fd,sd	69–76
Vaccines and antibodies	f,fd,ad	77–80
Nanoparticles	fd,sd	81–83
Membranes	fd,f	84–87
Liposomes	fd	88–91
DNA and DNA-lipid complexes	fd	92–94
Nucleated mammalian cells	ad,f	14,15,96–98
Mammalian blood cells	f,fd	6,7,18,99,100
Mammalian organs	hs	101–105
Treatment of:		
Dry-eye syndrome		97
Dry skin		106
Dental caries		110
Huntington's disease		114,115
Osteoporosis		112,113
Cosmetics		116
Foods		111

Abbreviations: f (freezing), ad (air drying), fd (freeze-drying), sd (spray dried), hs (hypothermic storage).

Note: In most of these studies other sugars or polymers were tested as well as trehalose. This is by no means a complete list, but represents only a sampling of what is being done in this field.

sugars such as sucrose might preserve the membranes at concentrations similar to those seen with trehalose if they had access to the aqueous interior.

Initial studies with liposomes from the mid-1980s (reviewed in reference 88) were performed with a phospholipid with low T_m. When the liposomes were freeze dried with trehalose and rehydrated, the vesicles were observed to be intact, and nearly 100% of the trapped solute was retained. Studies found that stabilization of these liposomes and other vesicles prepared from low–melting point lipids had two requirements (summarized in Figure 14.1): inhibition of fusion between the dry vesicles and depression of T_m in the dry state. In the hydrated state, T_m for egg PC is about –1°C and rises to about +70°C when it is dried without trehalose. In the presence of trehalose, T_m is depressed in the dry state to –20°C. Thus, the lipid is maintained in liquid crystalline phase in the dry state, and no phase transitions are observed during rehydration. The significance of this phase transition during rehydration is that, when phospholipids pass through such transitions, the bilayer becomes transiently leaky. (The physical basis for this leakiness has recently been investigated in some detail by Hays et al.[127]) These effects were reported first for trehalose (reviewed in reference 88). When we compared the effects of other sugars and polymers on the preservation, we found that, with vesicles made from lipids with low T_m, trehalose appeared to be significantly superior to the best of the additives tested. Oligosaccharides larger than trisaccharides did not work at all. Other sugars, particularly disaccharides, did provide good stabilization of egg PC vesicles in the dry state, but much higher concentrations than trehalose were required, at least according to initial reports. However, as freeze-drying technology improved, the differences between disaccharides tended to disappear. Nevertheless, the observation that trehalose was significantly more effective at low concentrations under suboptimal conditions for freeze-drying requires explanation, which we provide later.
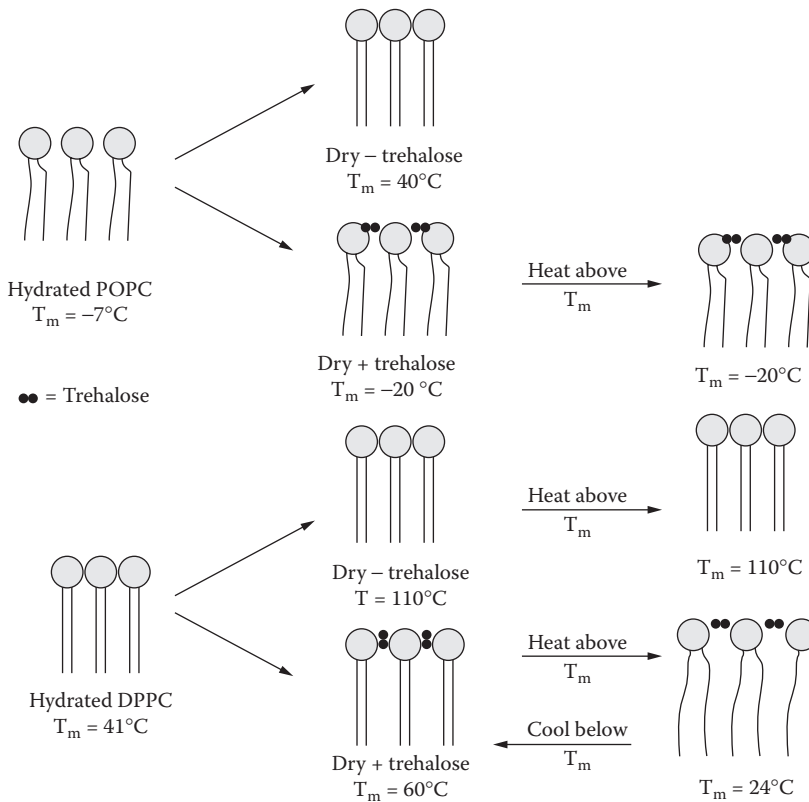
FIGURE 14.1 Summary of the requirements for stabilization of membrane vesicles during drying. Top: Lipids with low T_m. Bottom: Lipids with high T_m.

At first it appeared that the ability to preserve liposomes in the dry state was restricted to disaccharides. Subsequently, we found this is not the case. For example, DPPC is a lipid with saturated acyl chains and thus an elevated T_m (41°C). When it is dried without trehalose, T_m rises to about 110°C; with trehalose present, T_m rises to about 65°C (reviewed in reference 20). Thus, DPPC is in gel phase at all stages of the freeze-drying and rehydration process, and one would expect that inhibition of fusion might be sufficient for the stabilization. In other words, any inert solute that would separate the vesicles in the dry state and thus prevent aggregation and fusion should stabilize the dry vesicles (Figure 14.1). That appears to be the case; a high molecular weight (450,000) HES has no effect on T_m in dry DPPC, but preserves the vesicles, nevertheless.

14.5 AN EXAMPLE OF STABILIZATION OF COMPLEX STRUCTURES: MEMBRANE DOMAINS

14.5.1 EFFECTS ON PHASE TRANSITIONS IN LIPID MIXTURES

Phase separation is segregation of membrane components in the plane of the bilayer. Although several forces are involved, one of the main driving forces is the hydrophobic mismatch, which arises from a difference in membrane thickness between two species within a bilayer, such as a protein and a lipid or a lipid and a lipid.[128,129] The differences in thickness lead to exposure of hydrophobic residues to water (Figure 14.2) and, consequently, to a decrease in entropy of the system resulting from ordering of the water; such phase separations are known to occur in native membranes during drying.[68] Thus, the assembly of components of similar thickness into relatively
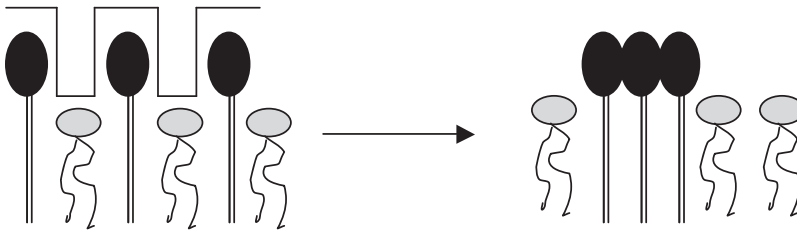
FIGURE 14.2 A membrane bilayer formed by a binary mixture of lipids, with one component in the gel phase (gray), and one component in the liquid-crystalline phase (black). The differences in acyl chain length lead to exposure of the chains to water, resulting in phase separation.
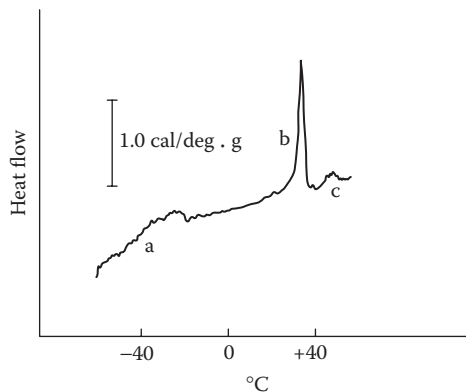

FIGURE 14.3 DSC data for a freeze-dried mixture of POPC and PS (9:1). a: mixed phase PS and POPC, dominated by PS; b: mixed phase POPC and PS, dominated by POPC; completely phase separated POPC.

homogeneous domains is entropically driven. Water contributes the net increase in entropy driving the process.

Consider the consequences of such an event for a binary mixture of lipids that is almost ideally mixed at room temperature. The data shown in Figure 14.3 were obtained from a binary mixture of POPC and PS (9:1) prepared as MLVs and dried without sugar additive.[130] The three melting endotherms were assigned to incompletely phase separated PS (a), incompletely phase separated POPC (b), and completely phase separated POPC (c). When the same mixture was freeze-dried with trehalose, transition c disappeared at low concentrations of trehalose. With the addition of more trehalose, the enthalpy of the transition a increased, at the expense of the transition (b). The interpretation placed on these findings is that the PS is so fluid that its T_m is little affected by dehydration, while T_m for POPC rises during dehydration, leading to phase separation. Addition of trehalose drives down T_m for POPC during dehydration, thus maintaining the pair in a single mixed phase, summarized in Figure 14.4.

14.5.2 MAINTENANCE OF DOMAINS IN THE DRY STATE

Phase-separated domains in lipid bilayers are assuming a central position in membrane biology (see 131 for a recent review). The mechanism of the phase separation is reasonably well understood,[128,129,132–133] and evidence is rapidly accumulating that these domains, known as "rafts," are required for many membrane-mediated cellular processes. Thus, stabilizing them is essential for cellular preservation. The addition of fluorescent dyes that partition preferentially into ordered domains allows the rafts to be visualized in intact cells, particularly if they are aggregated by
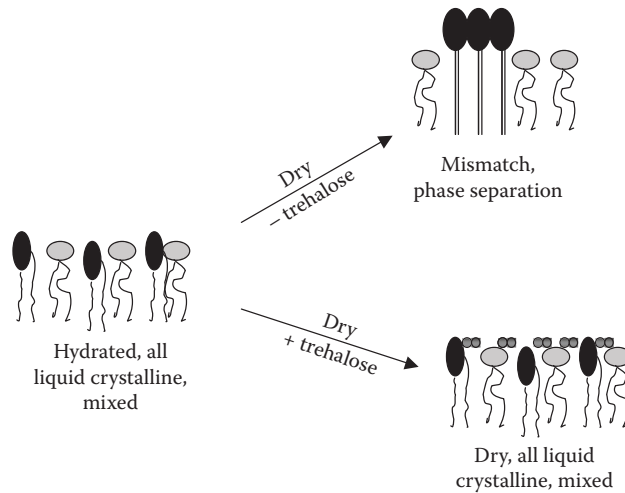
FIGURE 14.4 Hypothesis for the mechanism by which trehalose inhibits phase separation in membranes during drying.

exposure to low temperatures (Figure 14.5). After freeze-drying with trehalose and rehydrating, the platelets behaved similarly; that is, reversible aggregation of domains enriched in the dye was seen during chilling. One might ask whether these aggregates are an artifact of the chilling. Spectroscopic evidence suggests otherwise; when lipid phase transitions were measured in these platelets using FTIR, the data in Figure 14.5 were obtained, shown here as first derivatives of the CH_2 melting curves. Two clear transitions are seen in fresh platelets chilled from 40°C to 0°C. The upper one, centered on about 30°C, has been assigned to the raft domains (reviewed in reference 131). This transition is present without prior chilling, indicating that rafts are indeed phase-separated domains in these membranes. When the platelets were freeze-dried with trehalose (by methods to be described later) the two transitions clearly persist in the rehydrated platelets (Figure 14.5). But if the platelets are freeze-dried without trehalose, the two domains are disrupted, and additional phase separation is observed. Thus, trehalose appears to be capable of preserving the domain structure in these membranes.

We have investigated the mechanism by which the domains in native membranes are preserved using freeze-dried liposomes composed of a binary mixture that mimics the platelet membranes as a model. DLPC ($T_m = 0$°C) and DSPC ($T_m = 50$°C) are well known to undergo complete phase separation in the fully hydrated state.[132,133] When these liposomes were dried, the two lipids remained in two phases, but they are mixed phases rather than pure DLPC and DSPC; the left-hand one (Figure 14.6) is apparently a mixture of mostly DLPC, while the right-hand one (Figure 14.6) is mostly DSPC. In samples dried with trehalose, by contrast, the DLPC transition is depressed to about –20°C (Figure 14.6, inset), while the DSPC transition increases by about 10°C and becomes more cooperative, suggesting that it is more like pure DSPC. Thus, the phase separation — and the domain structure — are maintained by the trehalose in the dry state. Other pairs of lipids that phase-separate when fully hydrated give similar results.

We propose that trehalose maintains phase separation in this mixture of lipids in the dry state by the following mechanism. The DLPC fraction, with its low T_m in the hydrated state, might be expected to behave like the unsaturated lipids described earlier, in that T_m in the dry state is reduced to a minimal and stable value immediately after drying with trehalose regardless of the thermal history. That appears to be the case. The DSPC fraction, by contrast, would be expected to behave like DPPC. DSPC is in gel phase in the hydrated state at room temperature, and it remains in gel phase when it is dried with trehalose. In other words, we are proposing that by maintaining one of the lipids in liquid crystalline phase during drying and the other in gel phase, trehalose maintains
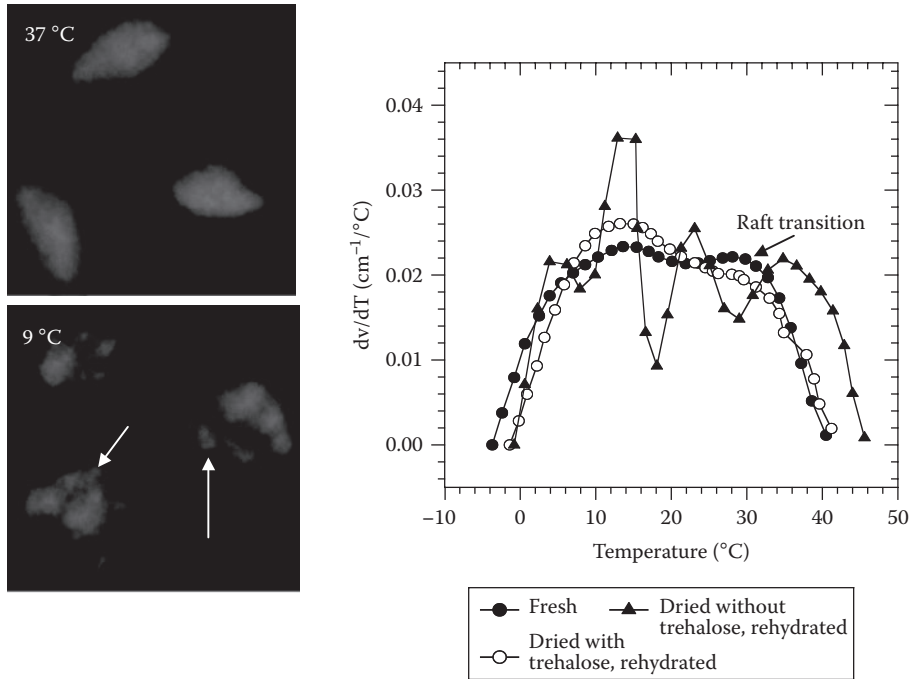
FIGURE 14.5 Left: Human platelets were stained with a fluorescent dye diI-18, which partitions into ordered domains. At physiological temperature the staining is uniform, but when the platelets were chilled aggregates appeared (arrows). Adapted from 143. Right: Lipid phase transitions in human platelets were measured with FTIR, shown here as first derivatives of the CH_2 melting curves. In fresh platelets or platelets freeze-dried with trehalose and rehydrated, two transitions are seen. The one at higher temperature has been assigned to rafts. In platelets freeze-dried without trehalose and rehydrated, the two transitions are clearly disrupted.
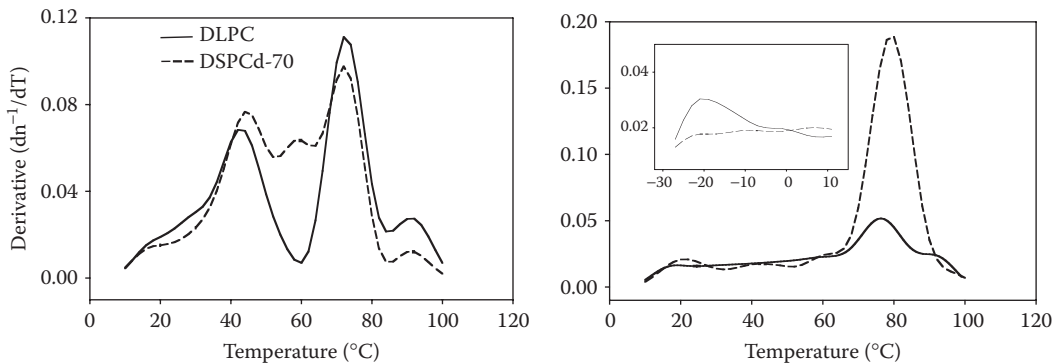
FIGURE 14.6 Changes in the wave number of the CH_2 symmetric stretch and CD_2 asymmetric stretch as a function of temperature during heating of DLPC:DSPCd-70 1:1 mixtures, air-dried in the absence (left) and presence (right) of trehalose (5:1 sugar:lipid); first derivative CH_2 (solid lines); and first derivative CD_2 (dashed lines). Low-temperature wave number versus temperature plot of air-dried DLPC/DSPCd-70 in the presence of trehalose (right, inset).

the phase separation (Figure 14.7). We suggest that this is the fundamental mechanism by which trehalose maintains phase separated domains in dry membranes. Furthermore, although there are lingering doubts about whether or not phase separated domains in native membranes are real[134,135]
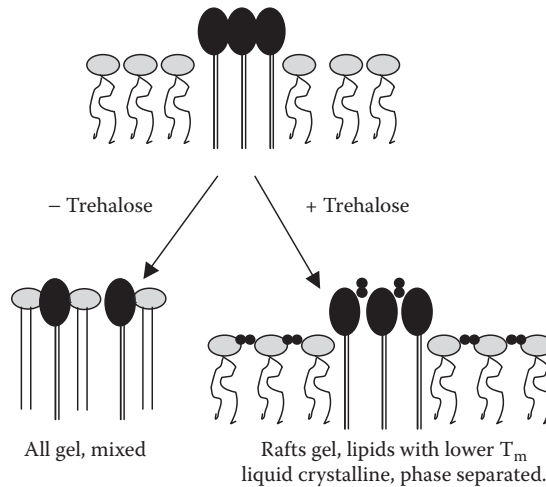
FIGURE 14.7 An hypothesis for the mechanism by which trehalose stabilizes microdomains in dry liposomes. Phase separation in the hydrated state is driven by hydrophobic mismatch (cf. Figure 14.2). If the liposomes are dried without trehalose both lipids in the pair enter gel phase and mix. In liposomes dried with trehalose, the more-fluid lipid has a depressed T_m in the dry state, while T_m for the gel-phase lipid is affected to a less extent (cf. Figure 14.1). As a result, the lipid pair is maintained in phase states similar to those seen in the presence of water. In addition, formation of a glass by dry trehalose almost certainly affects lateral mobility and thus inhibits mixing.[131]

or artifacts,[136–138] abundant evidence suggests that these domains, known as "rafts," are involved in such processes as signaling,[139] endocytosis,[140] and viral assembly, among others.[141,142] Clearly, preservation of this domain structure is a requirement for stabilizing native membranes and intact cells[143] and the rafts are maintained intact when the platelets are dried with trehalose.[131] We propose that the mechanism of stabilization is similar to that described here for pure lipid systems.

Stabilization of domain structure in membranes during drying is probably not restricted to trehalose since other sugars have similar effects on membranes. So the question can be asked again: Does trehalose have any special properties in this regard? In fact, there are numerous pathways to achieve the same stabilization.

14.6 THERE IS MORE THAN ONE WAY TO THE SAME END

Although the occurrence of trehalose at high concentrations is common in anhydrobiotic animals, some of these animals have very small amounts of trehalose[144,145] or none at all.[146–148] It is tempting to construe these findings as evidence against a role for sugars in anhydrobiosis; however, we suggest that it is not the sugars *per se* that are of interest in this regard, but rather the physical principles of the requirements for stabilization. There are multiple ways to achieve such stabilization. First, HES alone will not stabilize dry membrane vesicles composed of lipids with low T_m, but a combination of a low molecular weight sugar such as glucose and HES can be effective.[149] The apparent mechanism is glucose, which depresses T_m in the dry lipid but has little effect on inhibiting fusion, except at extremely high concentrations. On the other hand, the polymer has no effect on the phase transition but does inhibit fusion. Thus, the combination of the two meets both requirements, while neither alone does so.[149] It seems likely that such combinations of molecules might be found in anhydrobiotes in nature. Second, a glycan isolated from the desiccation tolerant alga *Nostoc* apparently works in conjunction with oligosaccharides.[57] Similarly, certain proteins have been shown to affect the phase state of the sugars and either enhance stabilization or are required for it (reviewed in reference 150). Third, Hincha et al.[151] have shown that fructans from

desiccation-tolerant higher plants will both inhibit fusion and reduce T_m in dry phospholipids such as egg PC. The mechanism behind this effect is still unclear. Vereyken et al.[152] provided evidence that the interaction is similar to that shown by sugars, but it is also specific to fructans and not shown by other polymers. In a related study, Hincha et al.[153] reported that a series of raffinose family oligosaccharides are all capable of stabilizing dry liposomes. Fourth, Hincha and Hagemann[154] studied effects of other compatible solutes on stabilization of liposomes by sugars. This approach is in its earliest stages, but those authors found that some compatible solutes improve the stabilization in the presence of sugars, suggesting that the solutes might decrease the amount of sugar required *in vivo*. Fifth, Hoekstra and Golovina[155] reported that amphiphiles that are free in the cytoplasm in fully hydrated cells of anhydrobiotes apparently insert into membranes during dehydration. The role of this phenomenon in stabilization is uncertain, but presumably the amphiphiles alter the order of the acyl chains. Popova and Hincha[156] have shown that this is the case for a model, amphiphiles, tryptophan, and that the interaction depends on the lipid composition. This latter finding suggests that the protective molecules themselves may vary depending on lipid composition. Further evidence for this proposition appears in Oliver et al.[157] Sixth, Goodrich et al.[158] found that disaccharides tethered to the bilayer surface by a flexible linker esterified to cholesterol have an effect on membrane stability similar to that seen in the free sugar. Such molecules could provide stability in anhydrobiotes, although this has not yet been reported.

To summarize, there are many ways to achieve stability. Once an understanding of the physical requirements for preservation was achieved in these studies, it became apparent that many routes can lead to the same end. Carpenter and colleagues have made similar observations on the stability of dry proteins and reached similar conclusions.[159–161]

14.7   TREHALOSE HAS UNUSUAL PROPERTIES

14.7.1   *Survival under Suboptimal Conditions*

We implied that trehalose works well for freeze-drying liposomes under less-than-optimal conditions. The same applies for storage under conditions that would normally degrade the biomaterial. Leslie et al.[3] reported that bacteria freeze-dried in the presence of trehalose showed remarkably high survival immediately after freeze-drying. Furthermore, they found that the bacteria freeze-dried with trehalose retained high viability even after long exposure to moist air. By contrast, when the bacteria were freeze-dried with sucrose they showed lower initial survival, and when they were exposed to moist air viability deceased rapidly. More recently, Esteves et al.[80] reported that when immunoconjugates were freeze-dried with trehalose or other disaccharides all the sugars provided reasonable levels of preservation. However, when the dry samples were stored at high relative humidities and temperatures, those dried with trehalose were stable for much longer than those dried with other sugars. This finding is of some considerable significance since there is a need for shipping immunoconjugates, vaccines, antisera, and the like to locales where they would be exposed to high temperatures and humidities as soon as they are exposed to air.

14.7.2   *Glass Transitions and Stability*

Using liposomes as a model, we attempted to find a mechanism for long-term stability in the presence of trehalose. As in the case of bacteria and immunoconjugates, the dry liposomes exposed to increased relative humidity rapidly leaked their contents when they were dried with sucrose, but not when they were dried with trehalose.[162,163] The liposomes underwent extensive fusion in the moist air when dried with sucrose, but not with trehalose.

When it is dried, trehalose, along with many other sugars, forms a glass that undergoes a transition from a highly viscous fluid to a highly mobile system when it is heated above a characteristic temperature, Tg, which increases sharply as dehydration progresses, yielding a state
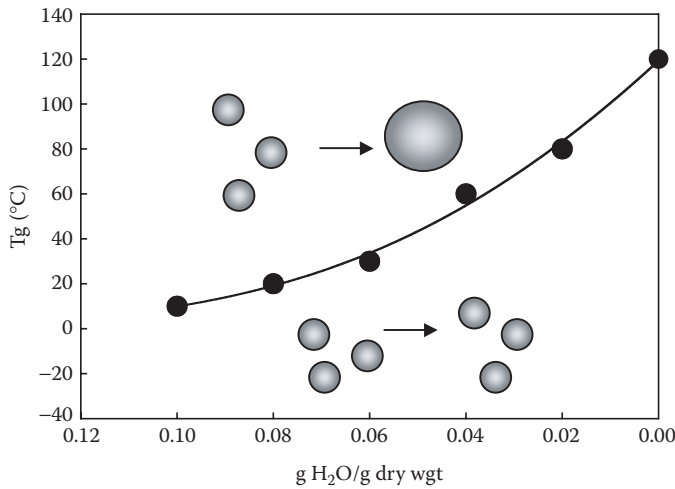
FIGURE 14.8 Effects of the glass transition temperature on inhibition of aggregation and fusion of liposomes at the indicated water contents.

diagram (Figure 14.8). It has become widely accepted that stability of dry materials in which close approach of surfaces must be prevented requires that the material remain below the curve for the state diagram, i.e., it must be maintained in the glassy state. Above the curve the mobility of the system increases, while below it the materials are held in a relatively rigid matrix (Figure 14.8). For instance, heating a sample containing liposomes above Tg results in increased mobility to the point at which fusion occurs in the concentrated solution. Brief excursions above the curve are not necessarily damaging, since the surface-to-surface interaction has a kinetic component. Because of this kinetic component, there is a lot of confusion in the literature concerning whether the glassy state is even required for stabilization.

T_g for trehalose is much higher than that for sucrose (Figure 14.9), a finding first reported by Green and Angell[164] and extended by several groups.[162,165–168] As a result, one would expect that addition of small amounts of water to sucrose by adsorption in moist air would decrease T_g to
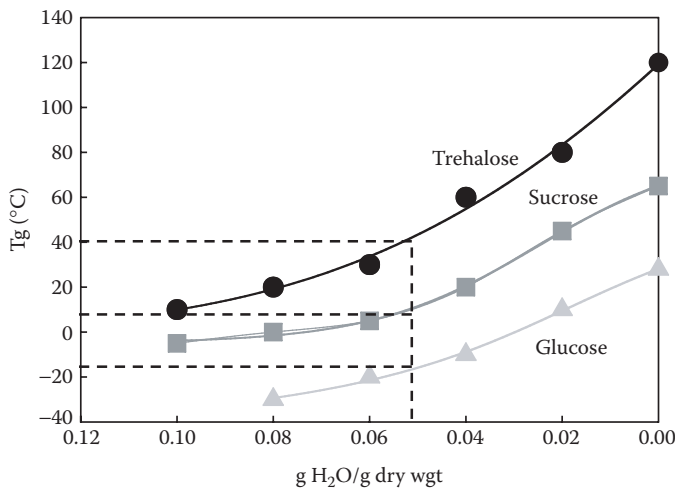
FIGURE 14.9 Comparison between glass transition temperatures in trehalose, sucrose, and glucose at the indicated water contents. The reference lines show values for T_g at about 5% water content.

below the storage temperature, while at the same water content T_g for trehalose would be above the storage temperature. Indeed, at water contents around 5%, T_g for trehalose is about 40°C, while that for sucrose is about 15°C. T_g for glucose at a similar water content is about –10°C (Figure 14.9). One would predict that at such water contents trehalose would be the only one of these three sugars that would stabilize the sample, and this appears to be the case. This would seem to provide an explanation for the superior stability of, for example, the immunoconjugates stored in sucrose or trehalose. We stress, however, that the elevated T_g seen in trehalose is not anomalous; indeed, trehalose lies at the end of a continuum of sugars that show increasing T_g,[162] although the basis for this effect is not understood.

14.7.3 NONENZYMATIC BROWNING AND STABILITY OF THE GLYCOSIDIC BOND

The Maillard (browning) reaction between reducing sugars and proteins in the dry state has often been invoked as a major source of damage,[169] and the fact that both sucrose and trehalose are nonreducing sugars may partially explain why they are the natural products accumulated by anhydrobiotic organisms. However, the glycosidic bonds linking the monomers in sucrose and trehalose have very different susceptibilities to hydrolysis (reviewed in reference 170,171). For instance, the activation energy for acid hydrolysis in aqueous solution is nearly twice that that for other disaccharides.[172] Whereas O'Brien[170] and subsequently Schebor et al.[171] incubated a freeze-dried model system (albumin, with the addition of lysine) with sucrose, trehalose, and glucose at relative humidities in excess of 20%, the rate of browning seen with sucrose approached that of glucose — as much as 2,000 times faster than that with trehalose — although they observed a distinct lag in the onset of browning (Figure 14.10). Schebor et al. found that a peak in the appearance of monosaccharides occurs prior to the onset of browning, after which free monosaccharides decline, coincidentally with the onset of browning. These observations strongly suggest that the browning seen with sucrose — but not with trehalose — is due to hydrolysis of the glycosidic bond during storage. The glassy state is undoubtedly related to these effects; if the samples are stored at very low humidities, only minimal amounts of hydrolysis and subsequent browning were seen in the sucrose preparations.[170,171]

14.8 PRESERVATION OF LIVING CELLS IN THE DRY STATE

14.8.1 LOADING TREHALOSE INTO THE CYTOSOL

Clearly, trehalose must be introduced into the cytoplasm of a cell if it is to be effective at stabilizing intracellular proteins and membranes during dehydration. Previous efforts that centered around this fundamental problem involving molecular engineering have not been particularly successful.[14,15,173–178] However, Wolkers et al.[18] made the surprising discovery that when human blood platelets are placed in the presence of modest amounts of trehalose, they take it up by fluid-phase endocytosis, and the intact sugar ends up in the cytoplasm. Wolkers et al. were able to show only indirectly that trehalose is in the cytoplasm, but subsequent studies have demonstrated that this is so. Oliver et al.[179] have followed the fate of the sugar once it enters the endocytotic pathway in a stem cell using fluorescence microscopy; the results are summarized in Figure 14.11. The fluorescence initially appears in vesicles, but with time it becomes diffuse, suggesting that the sugar is released into the cytoplasm, although the mechanism of release is not entirely clear. The endocytotic vesicles progress through the normal pathway to lysosomes. It is well established that low molecular weight compounds such as glucose readily cross the lysosomal membrane into the cytoplasm,[180] but there is very little evidence concerning the fate of disaccharides in lysosomes. Lloyd[180] showed that incubation of cells in sucrose led to persistent vesiculation, suggesting that, apparently unlike trehalose, sucrose is retained in the lysosomes. This seems surprising because even though lysosomes lack invertase[180] and thus cannot break the glycosidic bond in sucrose enzymatically, the
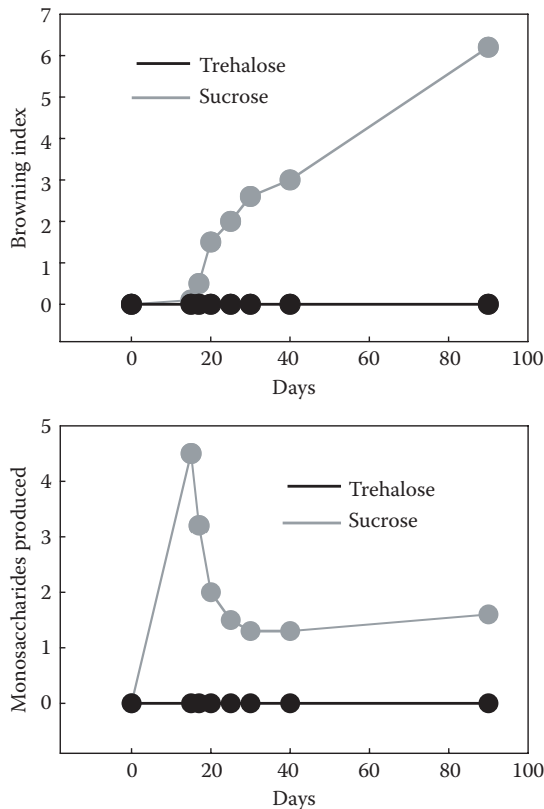
FIGURE 14.10 Browning of dry proteins (top) and release of monosaccharides by trehalose and sucrose during storage (bottom).

glycosidic bond in sucrose should be hydrolyzed at the pH known to occur in lysosomes, while that of trehalose should not. Thus, if anything, one would expect that the sucrose, broken down into component glucose and fructose, should cross the lysosomal membrane into the cytosol by means of the glucose carrier, while the still-intact trehalose should be retained. This matter is unresolved, but we suspect that the lysosomal pH itself might lead to leakage; when liposomes loaded with a polar fluorescent marker about the same size as trehalose were subjected to lysosomal pH, the marker leaked across the bilayer into the external medium.[127] We suggest that the pH gradient across the lysosomal membrane might lead to leakage of trehalose and other low–molecular weight molecules into the cytosol. At any rate, we have found that trehalose can be introduced into the cytoplasm of every cell we have tested as long as the cell has a functional fluid-phase endocytotic pathway.

14.8.2 FREEZE-DRYING TREHALOSE-LOADED CELLS: PLATELETS

We have recently reported successful freeze-drying of platelets, with a detailed discussion of the procedure, which results in survival exceeding 90%[18] We started this project at the invitation of the United States Department of Defense, where there is an obvious need for platelets for use in severe trauma cases. At present, platelets are stored in blood banks for a maximum of three to five days by Federal regulation, after which they are discarded. Furthermore, the platelets are stored at room temperature; they cannot even be refrigerated without rendering them useless therapeutically, a phenomenon for which we have provided an explanation.[181–185] There is a chronic shortage of platelets in hospitals, and field hospitals operated by the military rarely have access to platelets at
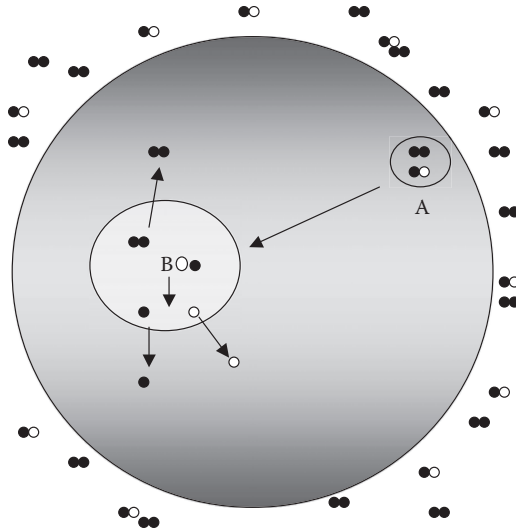
FIGURE 14.11 Proposed mechanism for loading disaccharides into cell, based on data in reference 179. Trehalose (solid double dots, representing two glucose monomers) and sucrose (open and solid mixed dots, representing glucose and fructose monomers) enter the cell by fluid phase endocytosis (A) and are passed down the lysosomal pathway (B). We suggest that the stability of the glycosidic bond in trehalose will permit trehalose to survive at lysosomal pH, but that sucrose might be hydrolyzed. We further propose that trehalose, sucrose, glucose, and fructose will all leak into the cytoplasm due to the known effects of pH on permeability of phospholipid bilayers.[127]

all. Thus, prolonging the shelf life of platelets would be a valuable contribution. There are several properties associated with freeze-dried platelets. The dry platelets are stable for at least two years when stored at room temperature, under vacuum; during that time we have seen no loss of platelets.[19] The freeze-dried, rehydrated cells respond to normal platelet agonists including thrombin (Figure 14.12), ADP, collagen, and ristocetin in the presence of plasma proteins and physiological levels
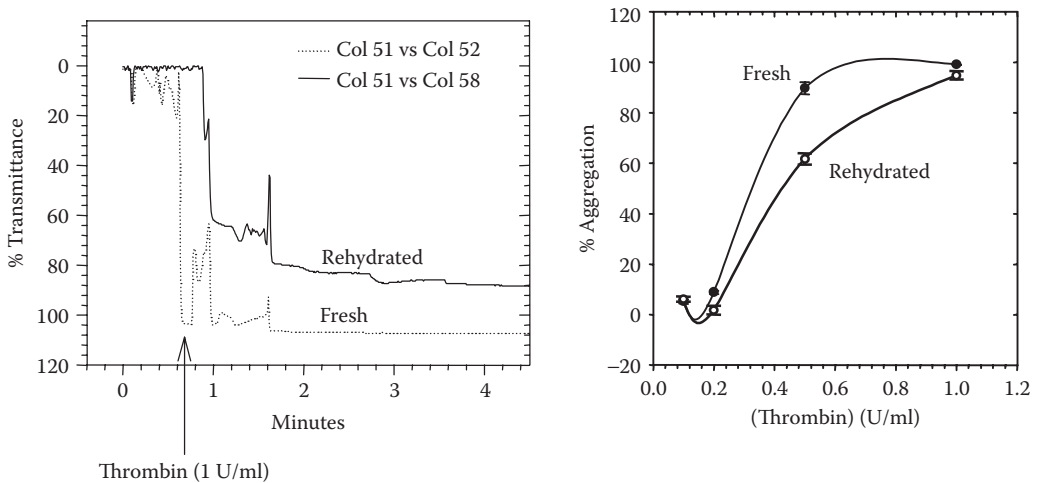
FIGURE 14.12 Physiological response to thrombin in fresh and rehydrated platelets. Left: aggregometry tracing, showing the fresh and rehydrated platelets having a similar response to thrombin. Right: effect of thrombin concentration on aggregation.

of calcium.[19] Studies on the morphology of the trehalose-loaded, freeze-dried, and rehydrated platelets show that they are affected by the drying, but are morphologically similar to fresh platelets. When they were dried without trehalose, on the other hand, most of the platelets disintegrated during the rehydration event; however, of the small number that were left, most had fused with adjacent cells to form an insoluble clump. We have extended the freeze-drying to mouse and pig platelets as animal models for *in vivo* testing,[186,187] which is underway. Results thus far show that freeze-dried and rehydrated mouse platelets circulate in mice about 50% as long as fresh ones.

The rehydrated platelets are far from perfect; nevertheless, they show surprisingly good regulation of key elements of cellular physiology such as intracellular pH (Tang et al., in preparation) and calcium.[188] For instance, when fresh platelets are challenged with thrombin, they show an increase in $[Ca_i]$ that is dose dependent.[188] The rehydrated platelets show a similar response, although it is strongly attenuated. Nevertheless, the increase in $[Ca_i]$ appears to be sufficient to trigger morphological and physiological changes necessary for coagulation.[188] Furthermore, the rehydrated platelets bind fibrinogen in the presence of thrombin at a dose-dependent rate similar to that seen in fresh platelets,[188] a requirement for clot formation.

14.8.3 *Freeze-Drying Trehalose-Loaded Cells: Red Blood Cells*

Preservation of RBCs by freeze-drying has received a lot of attention in the scientific literature,[6–9] and two lyophilization methods have been reported.[189,190] In these inventions, the cells are incubated in a buffer containing glucose and biopolymers such as polyvinylpirrolidone (PVP), dextran, or hydroxyethylstarch (HES) prior to freezing. Goodrich et al.[6] and Sowemimo-Coker et al.[7] reported that the lyophilized RBCs exhibited moisture contents between 25 and 30%, although they showed normal metabolic and rheological properties. More recently, Bakaltcheva et al.[10,191] proposed a method for red cell preservation based on reversible cross-linking in combination with CO treatment before freeze-drying, along with a related method for viral inactivation.[192] Despite the potential of these latter techniques, questions regarding possible toxicity of the cross-linker and/or reducing agents raise concerns about the applicability of this procedure, at least in its current stage of development. Yu et al.[13] showed that RBCs freeze-dried in a mixture of glucose and PVP showed remarkably low hemolysis. This appears to be a promising procedure, but at this point only hemolysis has been measured, so the state of the hemoglobin, metabolites, etc., is uncertain. Furthermore, since glucose is a reducing sugar, the Maillard reaction, which leads to denaturation of the hemoglobin, would be expected to proceed in these samples. Yu et al.[13] did not report residual water contents, but if the values are in the range of those in Goodrich et al.,[189] who also used glucose, the Maillard reaction will be a serious problem — one that could be obviated by using trehalose instead.

As a first step toward developing a method for stabilizing red blood cells during freeze-drying, we developed a simple method for loading them with trehalose. Unlike platelets and nucleated cells, red blood cells do not normally have a system for endocytosis, so alternative methods were required. Wolkers et al.[193] reported that red blood cell membranes show two distinct lipid phase transitions, one centered on about 14°C, and a second one at about 34°C. The higher transition, as one might expect, showed an elevated fluidity, which presumably would result in increased permeability. Subsequently, Satpathy et al.[194] found that when the RBCs were incubated in high concentrations of trehalose (>500 mM) at temperatures above 30°C, the cytoplasmic concentrations reached levels as high as 80 mM trehalose over a period of several hours. With careful adjustment of the loading parameters, cells loaded with trehalose with acceptable levels of hemolysis and metabolites were obtained. Török et al.[195] have freeze-dried these trehalose-loaded cells in a formulation of hydroxyethyl starch, human serum albumin, and trehalose to residual water contents of 2 and 4%.

We can summarize the properties of the rehydrated cells as follows. Rehydration of the freeze-dried erythrocytes resulted in about 60% survival, based on the percent hemolysis. Freeze-drying
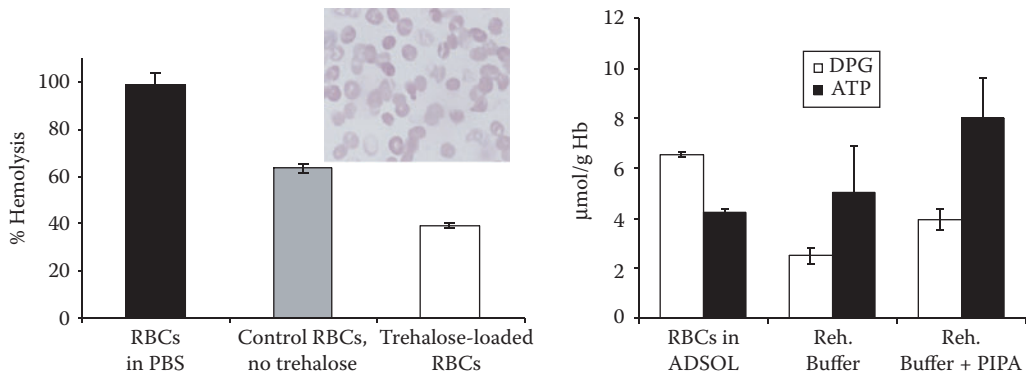
FIGURE 14.13 Left: Percent hemolysis in freeze-dried RBCs. RBCs were freeze-dried either in PBS, in freeze-drying buffer without trehalose loading, or they were loaded with trehalose and freeze-dried in the standard lyophilization buffer. All the samples were rehydrated at 37°C. Inset: rehydrated red blood cells previously loaded with trehalose and freeze-dried with trehalose. Right: Metabolites (DPG and ATP) in fresh RBCs in ADSOL and after freeze-drying and rehydration. The rehydrated cells show loss of DPG but normal ATP levels. When they were placed in PIPA, a commonly used recovery medium, the rehydrated cells synthesize DPG and ATP.

the unloaded cells with the freeze-drying buffer decreased hemolysis significantly, but loading with trehalose reduced it even further (Figure 14.13). The surviving cells have reduced levels of ATP and DPG following rehydration, but they can resynthesize these metabolites when they are provided appropriate substrates. The rehydrated cells are biconcave disks, morphologically similar to the fresh cells (Figure 14.13) and have low levels of methemoglobin. Biochemical analyses showed that the activities of superoxide dismutase, catalase, and acetylcholine esterase in freeze-dried RBCs are similar to those of fresh RBCs. Secondary structure of hemoglobin, measured by FTIR, is similar to that of fresh hemoglobin. Trehalose loading is required to achieve the stabilization of hemoglobin. Optimal survival was obtained when the cells were rehydrated at temperatures >30°C. This effect is counterintuitive, but it is well known from studies on anhydrobiotes and has been explained by studies on phase properties of membrane lipids;[196,197] however, an alternative but not mutually exclusive hypothesis has been proposed.[198]

14.8.4 *FREEZE-DRYING TREHALOSE-LOADED CELLS: NUCLEATED CELLS*

Platelets and red blood cells are admittedly specialized cells or cellular fragments, so it seemed likely at the outset that the single variation of adding trehalose might not be sufficient to stabilize more complex living cells. Indeed, this appears to be the case. Ma et al.[98] have recently found that when 293 cells were dried without prior loading with trehalose by the fluid-phase endocytosis they all died at fairly high water contents (Figure 14.13). When they were loaded with trehalose survival was extended considerably, but the cells nevertheless died when water content was reduced below about 0.3 g H_2O/g dry wgt (Figure 14.14). Thus, we have initiated studies on effects of stress proteins on improving survival of nucleated cells at lower water contents and settled on p26, a small α-crystallin stress protein from desiccation-tolerant Artemia cysts, discovered by Clegg and colleagues.[54,199] In *Artemia*, p26 protects against many different stresses.[203–206] In addition, p26 has been shown to protect synergistically with trehalose *in vitro* conditions[54] or when loaded artificially into mammalian cells.[207] Along the same lines, Singer and Lindquist[47,48] showed that trehalose acts synergistically with heat shock proteins in protein folding.

Sun et al.[205] isolated and cloned the gene for this protein, used it to transfect 293 cells, and generously supplied us with the transfected cells. To our surprise, this protein significantly improved
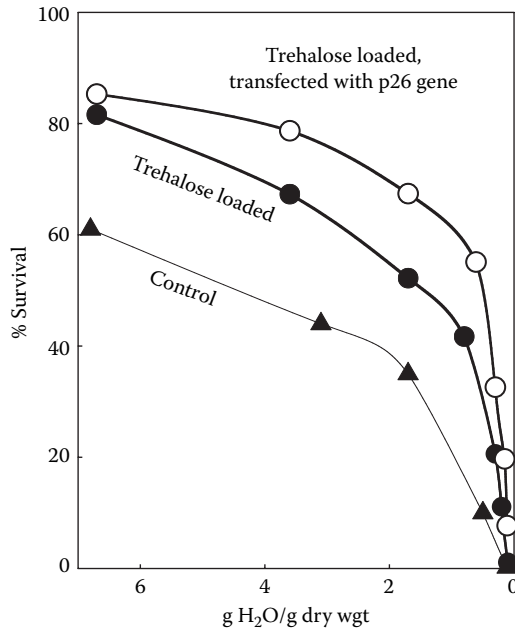
FIGURE 14.14 Effects of progressive drying on survival of 293H cells under the indicated conditions.

the survival to low water contents (Figure 14.14), even though the levels of expression have been very low — much less than that reported by Collins and Clegg for Artemia cysts.[207] The protein alone does nothing to improve survival; trehalose is required as well, and the two appear to act synergistically. The effects of expression of this gene become even more pronounced in the time following rehydration; the cells expressing p26 showed a tenfold increase in colony growth over those without the protein. Metabolism, expressed in terms of Alamar Blue reduction, improved at least fivefold compared with cells dried with trehalose alone (Figure 14.15).
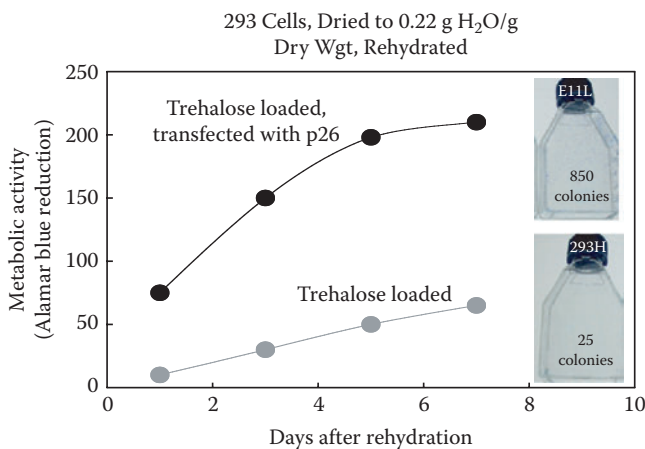
FIGURE 14.15 Metabolic activity, measured by Alamar Blue reduction, in 293H cells placed in culture media for the indicated periods after rehydration. Inset: colony counts in trehalose-loaded cells (bottom) and cells transfected with the p26 gene and trehalose-loaded 2 days after rehydration.

14.8.5 The Role of p26 in Stabilizing Dry Nucleated Cells

One hypothesis is that p26 participates in modulating the structure of the sugar glass, as suggested from the findings of Wolkers et al.[208] and Buitink and Leprince.[150] However, the expression levels are so low in this case that we doubt that the protein would have much effect on the glass. We favor instead the catalytic-like functions ascribed to stress proteins. A possible role for heat shock proteins in the protection of mammalian cells during dehydration stress has not been addressed, but there are indications from other organisms implicating HSPs in this regard. For instance, a drought-resistant form of maize expresses a 45 kDa HSP that is not found in drought-sensitive lines.[209] Further, crossing the drought-resistant and sensitive lines led to F2 plants in which tolerance to soil drying was associated with expression of the 45 kDa HSP.[210] In addition, the flesh fly *Sarcophaga crassipalpis* expresses two inducible HSPs (HSP23 and HSP70) during dehydration of nondiapausing pupae.[210] In diapausing pupae, these proteins are already highly expressed, and desiccation does not cause a further increase in expression. Such pupae do not survive complete dehydration, but Browne et al.[211] recently reported the existence of a family of hydrophilic proteins in the nematode *Aphelenchus avenae* (a favorite model for studies on anhydrobiosis for more than 30 years [cf. 212, 213] that is similar to the well-known LEA proteins from plants, which have been thought to be involved in dehydration tolerance).[214–219] The functions of these LEA proteins in this regard remain far from clear — even controversial[220] — but Goyal et al.[221] have shown that the LEA-like protein from *Aphelenchus* undergoes a transition from an unfolded state to a folded state during dehydration. Apparently, the folded protein, which is predominantly α-helical, becomes fibrillar during the dehydration. Since it is present at such high concentrations (80–300 mg/mL cytoplasm), the authors speculate that the proteins might form a glass on their own or in conjunction with trehalose, which is known to be present in this anhydrobiotic nematode.[213] These fascinating results are almost certain to be useful in stabilization of mammalian cells, even though work on these proteins has just begun.

The most important mechanism by which heat shock proteins protect cells from various stresses has traditionally been considered the protein chaperone function, assisting nascent and misfolded proteins to gain their proper folded configuration.[222,223] However, in anhydrobiotic organisms there is good evidence for participation of LEA proteins in glass formation,[168] and it has been suggested that such proteins may protect cellular structures from the effects of water loss by retention of water, sequestration of ions, and direct protection of other proteins or membranes.[217–219] The evidence for these latter suggestions is very tentative, as Wise and Tunnacliffe have pointed out.[224] The same workers have recently shown that LEA proteins inhibit protein aggregation during drying,[225] a finding that seems to be consistent with the suggestion that they may participate in glass formation.

An association of stress proteins with membranes has more recently been described, including work from our laboratory.[226–229] In fact, the "membrane trigger" hypothesis suggests that the membrane may serve as an indicator, sensing the initial stress and leading to the expression of heat shock proteins within the cell.[230,231] Finally, in addition to the protein and membrane effects, heat shock proteins have also been implicated in the inhibition of apoptosis[232–233] and oxidative damage.[207,235–237] In fact, we already have some evidence that apoptosis is a major problem in rehydrated nucleated cells (Zhu et al., in preparation), so this seems to be a reasonable hypothesis to pursue first.

14.9 SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Under ideal drying and storage conditions, trehalose is probably no more effective than other oligosaccharides at preserving biomaterials. However, under suboptimal conditions it can be very effective and is thus still a preferred excipient. Growing evidence suggests that additional modifications to the cellular milieu will probably be required if we are to achieve a stable, freeze-dried mammalian cell, including expression of stress proteins, as reported here, and administration of

antioxidants and inhibitors of enzyme activity, as described elsewhere.[238,239] Thus, we have come full circle over the past decades on the requirements for stabilization of cells in the dry state; 34 years ago, we suggested that survival of living cells in the dry state is a complex phenomenon that is likely to involve multiple adaptations.[240] The studies on living cells summarized here indicate that the original viewpoint on this matter[240] is most likely the correct one.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

REFERENCES

1. Conrad, P.B., Miller, D.P., Cielenski, P.R., and De Pablo, J.J., Stabilization and preservation of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* in saccharide matrices, *Cryobiology,* 41, 17, 2000.
2. Leslie, S.B., Teter, S.A., Crowe, L.M., and Crowe, J.H., Trehalose suppresses phase transitions in dry yeast, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 7, 1192, 1994.
3. Leslie, S.B., Israeli, E., Lighthart, B., Crowe, J.H., and Crowe, L.M., Trehalose and sucrose protect both membranes and proteins in intact bacteria during drying, *Econ. Env. Microbiol.* 61, 3592, 1995.
4. Malik, K.A. and Lang, E., Successful preservation of *Campylobacteraceae* and related bacteria by liquid-drying under anaerobic conditions, *J. Microbiol. Methods,* 25, 37, 1996.
5. Lodato, P., Segovia de Huergo, M., and Buera, M.P., Viability and thermal stability of a strain of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* freeze-dried in different sugar and polymer matrices. *Appl. Microbiol. Biotech.,* 52, 215, 1999.
6. Goodrich, R.P., Sowemimo-Coker, S.O., Zerez, C.R., and Tanaka, K.R., Preservation of metabolic activity in lyophilized human erythrocytes, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., U.S.,* 89, 967, 1992.
7. Sowemimo-Coker, S.O., Goodrich, R.P., Zerez, C.R., and Tanaka, K.R., Refrigerated storage of lyophilized and rehydrated, lyophilized human red cells, *Transfusion,* 33, 322, 1993.
8. Franks, F., Freeze-dried blood: Reality or confidence trick? *Cryo-Lett.* 17, 1, 1996.
9. Spieles, G., Heschel, I., and Rau, G., An attempt to recover viable human red blood cells after freeze-drying, *Cryo-Lett.,* 17, 43, 1996.
10. Bakaltcheva, I., Leslie, S., MacDonald, V., Spargo, B., and Rudolph, A., Reversible cross-linking and CO treatment as an approach in red cell stabilization, *Cryobiology,* 40, 343, 2000.
11. Rindler, V., Heschel, I., and Rau, G., Freeze-drying of red blood cells: How useful are freeze/thaw experiments for optimization of the cooling rate? *Cryobiology* 39, 228, 1999.
12. Rindler, V., Lüneberger, S., Schwindke, P., Heschel, I., and Rau, G., Freeze-drying of red blood cells at ultra-low temperatures, *Cryobiology,* 38, 2, 1999.
13. Yu, J., Liu, J.H., Pu, L.Q., Cui, X., Wang, C., Ouyang, S.L., and Gao, D., Freeze-drying of human red blood cells: Influence of carbohydrates and their concentrations, *Cell Preserv. Technol.,* 2, 270, 2004.
14. Eroglu, A., Russo, M.J., Bieganski, R., Fowler, A., Cheley, S., Bayley, H., and Toner, M., Intracellular trehalose improves the survival of cryopreserved mammalian cells, *Nat. Biotechnol.,* 18, 163, 2000.
15. Guo, N., Puhlev, I., Brown, D.R., Mansbridge, J., and Levine, F., Trehalose expression confers desiccation tolerance on human cells, *Nat. Biotechnol.,* 18, 168, 2000.
16. Bode, A.P., Read, M.S., Summaria, L., and Lust, R.M., Lyophilized platelets: Nearing clinical trials, *Platelets,* 8, 436, 1997.
17. Fischer, T.H., Merricks, E.P., and Bode, A.P., Thrombus formation with rehydrated, lyophilized platelets, *Hematology,* 7, 359, 2002.
18. Wolkers, W.F., Walker, N.J., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., Human platelets loaded with trehalose survive freeze-drying, *Cryobiology,* 4, 79, 2001.
19. Wolkers, W.F., Walker, N.J., Tamari, Y., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., Towards a clinical application of freeze-dried human platelets, *Cell Preserv. Technol.,* 1, 175, 2003.
20. Crowe, J.H., Carpenter, J.F., and Crowe, L.M., The role of vitrification in anhydrobiosis, *Annu. Rev. Physiol.,* 6, 73, 1998.

21. Argüelles, J.C., Physiological roles of trehalose in bacteria and yeasts: A comparative analysis, *Arch. Microbiol.,* 174, 217, 2000.

22. Gimeno-Alcañiz, J.V., Pérez-Ortín, J.E., and Matallana, E., Differential pattern of trehalose accumulation in wine yeast strains during the microvinification process, *Biotechnol. Lett.,* 21, 271, 1999.

23. Lucero, P., Penalver, E., Moreno, E., and Lagunas, R., Internal trehalose protects endocytosis from inhibition by ethanol in Saccharomyces cerevisiae, *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.,* 66, 4456, 2000.

24. Mansure, J.J., Panek, A.D., Crowe, L.M., and Crowe, J.H., Trehalose inhibits ethanol effects on intact yeast cells and liposomes, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta Bio-Membr.,* 1191, 309, 1994.

25. Mansure, J.J., Souza, R.C., and Panek, A.D., Trehalose metabolism in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* during alcoholic fermentation, *Biotechnol. Lett.,* 19, 1201, 1997.

26. Sharma, S.C., A possible role of trehalose in osmotolerance and ethanol tolerance in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *FEMS Microbiol. Lett.,* 152, 11, 1997.

27. Kaasen, I., McDougall, J., and Strom, A.R., Analysis of the otsBA operon for osmoregulatory trehalose synthesis in Escherichia coli and homology of the OtsA and OtsB proteins to the yeast trehalose-6-phosphate synthase/phosphatase complex, *Gene,* 145, 9, 1994.

28. Soto, T., Fernández, J., Vicente-Soler, J. Cansado, J., and Gacto, M., Accumulation of trehalose by overexpression of tps1, coding for trehalose-6-phosphate synthase, causes increased resistance to multiple stresses in the fission yeast *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*, *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.,* 65, 2020, 1999.

29. Reinders, A., Romano, I., Wiemken, A., and De Virgilio, C., The thermophilic yeast *Hansenula polymorpha* does not require trehalose synthesis for growth at high temperatures but does for normal acquisition of thermotolerance, *J. Bacteriol.,* 181, 4665, 1999.

30. Joo, W.H., Shin, Y.S., Lee, Y., Park, S.M., Jeong, Y.K., Seo, J.Y., and Park, J.U., Intracellular changes of trehalose content in toluene tolerant *Pseudomonas sp* BCNU 171 after exposure to toluene, *Biotechnol. Lett.,* 22, 1021, 2000.

31. Hoekstra, F.A., Wolkers, W.F., Buitink, J., Golovina, E.A., Crowe, J.H., and Crowe, L.M., Membrane stabilization in the dry state, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.,* [A] 117A, 335, 1997.

32. Farías-Rodríguez, R., Mellor, R.B., Arias, C., and Peña-Cabriales, J.J., The accumulation of trehalose in nodules of several cultivars of common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris*) and its correlation with resistance to drought stress, *Physiol. Plant.,* 102, 353, 1998.

33. Ghasempour, H.R., Gaff, D.F., Williams, R.P.W., and Gianello, R.D., Contents of sugars in leaves of drying desiccation-tolerant flowering plants, particularly grasses, *Plant Growth Regul.,* 24, 185, 1998.

34. Goddijn, J.M. and Van Dun, K., Trehalose metabolism in plants, *Trends Plant Sci.,* 4, 315, 1999.

35. Goddijn, O.J.M., Verwoerd, T.C., Voogd, E., Krutwagen, P.W.H.H., De Graaf, P.T.H.M., Poels, J., Van Dun, K., Ponstein, A.S., Damm, B., and Pen, J., Inhibition of trehalase activity enhances trehalose accumulation in transgenic plants, *Plant Physiol.,* 113, 181, 1997.

36. Luchi, S., Kobayashi, M., Taji, T., Naramoto, M., Seki, M., Kato, T., Tabata, S., Kakubari, Y., Yamaguchi-Shinozaki, K., and Shinozaki, K., Regulation of drought tolerance by gene manipulation of 9-*cis-epoxycarotenoid dioxygenase*, a key enzyme in abscisic acid biosynthesis in *Arabidopsis*, *Plant J.,* 27, 325, 2001.

37. Pilon-Smits, E.A.H., Terry, N., Sears, T., Kim, H., Zayed, A., Hwang, S., Van Dun, K., Voogd, E., Verwoerd, T.C., Krutwagen, R.W.H.H., and Goddijn, O.J.M., Trehalose-producing transgenic tobacco plants show improved growth performance under drought stress, *J. Plant Physiol.,* 152, 525, 1998.

38. Garg, A.K., Kim, J.K., Owens, T.G., Ranwala, A.P., Choi, Y.D., Kochian, L.V., and Wu, R.J., Trehalose accumulation in rice plants confers high tolerance levels to different abiotic stresses, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.,* 99, 15898, 2002.

39. Hottiger, T., De Virgilio, C., Bell, W., Boller, T., and Wiemken, A., The 70-kilodalton heat-shock proteins of the SSA subfamily negatively modulate heat-shock-induced accumulation of trehalose and promote recovery from heat stress in the yeast, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *Eur. J. Biochem.,* 210, 125, 1992.

40. Benaroudj, N., Lee, D.H., and Goldberg, A.L., Trehalose accumulation during cellular stress protects cells and cellular proteins from damage by oxygen radicals, *J. Biol. Chem.,* 276, 24261, 2001.

41. Thieringer, H.A., Jones, P.G., and Inouye, M., Cold shock and adaptation, *Bioessays,* 20, 49, 1998.

42. Diamant, S., Eliahu, N., Rosenthal, D., and Goloubinoff, P., Chemical chaperones regulate molecular chaperones *in vitro* and in cells under combined salt and heat stresses, *J. Biol. Chem.,* 276, 39586, 2001.

43. De Virgilio, C., Hottiger, T., Dominguez, J., Boller, T., and Wiemken, A., The role of trehalose synthesis for the acquisition of thermotolerance in yeast: I. Genetic evidence that trehalose is a thermoprotectant, *Eur. J. Biochem.,* 219, 179, 1994.

44. Elliott, B., Haltiwanger, R.S., and Futcher, B., Synergy between trehalose and Hsp104 for thermotolerance in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *Genetics,* 144, 923, 1996.

45. Reinders, A., Romano, I., Wiemken, A., and De Virgilio, C., The thermophilic yeast *Hansenula polymorpha* does not require trehalose synthesis for growth at high temperatures but does for normal acquisition of thermotolerance, *J. Bacteriol.,* 181, 4665, 1999.

46. Ribeiro, M.J.S., Leao, L.S.C., Morais, P.B., Rosa, C.A., and Panek, A.D., Trehalose accumulation by tropical yeast strains submitted to stress conditions, *Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek,* 75, 245, 1999.

47. Singer, M.A. and Lindquist, S., Thermotolerance in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*: The Yin and Yang of trehalose, *Trends Biotech.,* 1, 460, 1998.

48. Singer, M.A. and Lindquist, S., Multiple effects of trehalose on protein folding *in vitro* and *in vivo*, *Mol. Cell,* 1, 639, 1998.

49. Sola-Penna, M. and Meyer-Fernandes, J.R., Stabilization against thermal inactivation promoted by sugars on enzyme structure and function: Why is trehalose more effective than other sugars? *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.,* 360, 10, 1998.

50. Lee, D.H. and Goldberg, A.L., Proteasome inhibitors cause induction of heat-shock proteins and trehalose, which together confer thermotolerance in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *Mol. Cell. Biol.,* 18, 30, 1998.

51. Trotter, E.W., Kao, C.M.-F., Berenfeld, L., Botstein, D., Petsko, G.A., and Gray, J.V., Misfolded proteins are competent to mediate a subset of the responses to heat shock in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *J. Biol. Chem.,* 277, 44817, 2002.

52. Simola, M., Hänninen, A.L., Stranius, S.-M., and Makarow, M., Trehalose is required for conformational repair of heat-denatured proteins in the yeast endoplasmic reticulum but not for maintenance of membrane traffic functions after severe heat stress, *Mol. Microbiol.,* 37, 42, 2000.

53. Clegg, J.S. and Jackson, S.A., Aerobic heat shock activates trehalose synthesis in embryos of *Artemia franciscana*, *FEBS Lett.,* 303, 45, 1992.

54. Viner, R. and Clegg, J.S., Influence of trehalose on molecular chaperone activity of p26, a small heat shock/α crystalline protein, *Cell Stress Chaper.,* 6, 126, 2001.

55. Sales, K., Brandt, W., Rumbak, E., and Lindsey, G., The LEA-like protein HSP 12 in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* has a plasma membrane location and protects membranes against desiccation and ethanol-induced stress, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta Bio-Membr.,* 1463, 267, 2000.

56. Török, Z., Goloubinoff, P., Horváth, I., Tsvetkova, N.M., Glatz, A., Balogh, G., Varvasovszki, V., Dmtry, L.A., Vierling, E., Crowe, J.H., and Vígh, L., HSP17 is an amphitropic protein that stabilizes heat-stressed membranes and binds denatured proteins for subsequent chaperone-mediated refolding, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.,* 98, 3098, 2001.

57. Hill, D.R., Keenan, T.W., Helm, R.F., Potts, M., Crowe, L.M., and Crowe, J.H., Extracellular polysaccharide of Nostoc commune (Cyanobacteria) inhibits fusion of membrane vesicles during desiccation, *J. Appl. Phycol.,* 9, 237, 1997.

58. Close, T.J., Dehydrins: A commonality in the response of plants to dehydration and low temperature, *Physiol. Plant.,* 100, 291, 1997.

59. Close, T.J., Dehydrins: Emergence of a biochemical role of a family of plant dehydration proteins, *Physiol. Plant.,* 97, 795, 1996.

60. Volaire, F., Conejero, G., and Lelievre, F., Drought survival and dehydration tolerance in *Dactylis glomerata* and *Poa bulbosa*, *Aust. J. Plant Physiol.,* 28, 743, 2001.

61. Li, R., Barawley, S.H., and Close, T.J., Dehydrin-like proteins in fucoid algae, *Phycologia,* 36 (4 Suppl. 4), 62, 1997.

62. Wisniewski, M., Webb, R., Balsamo, R., Close, T.J., Yu, X.-M., and Griffith, M., Purification, immunolocalization, cryoprotective, and antifreeze activity of PCA60: A dehydrin from peach (*Prunus persica*), *Physiol. Plant.,* 105, 600, 1999.

63. Richard, S., Morency, M.-J., Drevet, C., Jouanin, L., and Seguin, A., Isolation and characterization of a dehydrin gene from white spruce induced upon wounding, drought, and cold stresses, *Plant Mol. Biol.,* 43, 1, 2000.

64. Tabaei-Aghdaei, S.R., Harrison, P., and Pearce, R.S., Expression of dehydration-stress-related genes in the crowns of wheatgrass species (*Lophopyrum elongatum* (Host) A. Love and *Agropyron desertorum* (Fisch. ex Link.) Schult.) having contrasting acclimation to salt, cold, and drought, *Plant Cell Environ.,* 23, 561, 2000.

65. Crowe, A.U, Han, B., Kermode, A.R., Bendell-Young, L.I., and Plant, A.L., Effects of oil sands effluent on cattail and clover: Photosynthesis and the level of stress proteins, *Environ. Pollut.,* 113, 311, 2001.

66. DeIuchi, S., Kobayashi, M., Taji, T., Naramoto, M., Seki, M., Kato, T., Tabata, S., Kakubari, Y., Yamaguchi-Shinozaki, K., and Shinozaki, K., Regulation of drought tolerance by gene manipulation of 9-cis-epoxycarotenoid dioxygenase, a key enzyme in abscisic acid biosynthesis in *Arabidopsis*, *Plant J.,* 27, 325, 2001.

67. Chao, W.S., Gu, Y.-Q., Pautot, V., Bray, E.A., and Walling, L.L., Leucine aminopeptidase RNAs, proteins, and activities increase in response to water deficit, salinity, and the wound signals systemin, methyl jasmonate, and abscisic acid, *Plant Physiol.,* 120, 979, 1999.

68. Crowe, J.H., Crowe, L.M., Carpenter, J.F., and Aurell Wistrom, C., Stabilization of dry phospholipid bilayers and proteins by sugars, *Biochem. J.,* 242, 1, 1987.

69. Adler, M. and Lee, G., Stability and surface activity of lactate dehydrogenase in spray-dried trehalose, *J. Pharm. Sci.,* 88, 199, 1999.

70. Baptista, R.P., Cabral, J.M.S., and. Melo, E.P., Trehalose delays the reversible but not the irreversible thermal denaturation of cutinase, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.,* 70, 699, 2000.

71. Cardona, O.S., Schebor, C., Buera, M.P., Karel, M., and Chirife, J., Thermal stability of invertase in reduced-moisture amorphous matrices in relation to glassy state and trehalose crystallization, *J. Food Sci.,* 62, 105, 1997.

72. Carninci, P., Nishiyama, Y., Westover, A., Itoh, M., Nagaoka, S., Sasaki, N., Okazaki, Y., Muramatsu, M., and Hayashizaki, Y., Thermostabilization and thermoactivation of thermolabile enzymes by trehalose and its application for the synthesis of full-length cDNA, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.,* 95, 520, 1998.

73. Heller, M.C., Carpenter, J.F., and Randolph, T.W., Protein formulation and lyophilization cycle design: Prevention of damage due to freeze-concentration induced phase separation, *Biotech. Bioeng.,* 63, 166, 1999.

74. Kreilgaard, L., Frokjaer, S., Flink, J.M., Randolph, T.W., and Carpenter, J.F., Effects of additives on the stability of *Humicola lanuginosa* lipase during freeze-drying and storage in the dried solid, *J. Pharm. Sci.,* 88, 281, 1999.

75. Murray, B.S. and Liang, H.J., Enhancement of the foaming properties of protein dried in the presence of trehalose, J. *Agric. Food Chem.,* 47, 4984, 1999.

76. Uritani, M., Takai, M., and Yoshinaga, K., Protective effect of disaccharides on restriction endonucleases during drying under vacuum, *J. Biochem.* (Tokyo), 117, 774, 1995.

77. Arya, S.C., Stabilization of vaccines: To be or not to be, *Vaccine,* 19, 595, 2000.

78. Dráber, P., Dráberová, E., and Nováková, M., Stability of monoclonal IgM antibodies freeze-dried in the presence of trehalose, *J. Immunol. Meth.,* 181, 37, 1995.

79. Edelstein, C., Hinman, J., Marcovina, S., and Scanu, A.M., Properties of human free apolipoprotein(a) and lipoprotein(a) after either freezing or lyophilization in the presence and absence of cryopreservatives, *Anal. Biochem.,* 288, 201, 2001.

80. Esteves, M.I., Quintilio, W., Sato, R.A., Raw, I., De Araujo, P.S., and Da Costa, M.H.B., Stabilisation of immunoconjugates by trehalose, *Biotechnol. Lett.,* 22, 417, 2000.

81. Cavalli, R., Caputo, O., Carlotti, M.E., Trotta, M., Scarnecchia, C., and Gasco, M.R., Sterilization and freeze-drying of drug-free and drug-loaded solid lipid nanoparticles, *Int. J. Pharm.,* 148, 47, 1997.

82. De Jaeghere, E., Allémann, J.C., Leroux, W., Stevels, J. Feijen, E., Doelker, R., and Gurny, R., Formulation and lyoprotection of poly(lactic acid-co-ethylene oxide) nanoparticles: Influence on physical stability and *in vitro* cell uptake, *Pharm. Res.,* 16, 859, 1999.

83. Schwarz, C. and Mehnert, W., Freeze-drying of drug-free and drug-loaded solid lipid nanoparticles (SLN), *Int. J. Pharm.,* 157, 171, 1997.

84. Crowe, J.H., Crowe, L.M., Oliver, A.E., Tsvetkova, N.M., Wolkers, W.F., and Tablin, F., The trehalose myth revisited: Introduction to a symposium on stabilization of cells in the dry state, *Cryobiology,* 43, 89, 2001.

85. Felix, C.C., Moreira, M.S., Oliveira, M., Sola-Penna, J., Meyer-Fernandes, R., Scofano, H.M., and Ferreira-Pereira, A., Protection against thermal denaturation by trehalose on the plasma membrane H$^+$-ATPase from yeast: Synergetic effect between trehalose and phospholipid environment, *Eur. J. Biochem.,* 266, 660, 1999.

86. Gerencser, G.A., Cryoprotection of *Aplysia* gut basolateral membranes by trehalose, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.*[A], 108A, 53, 1994.

87. Sampedro, J.G., Cortés, P., Muñoz-Clares, R.A. Fernández, A., and Uribe, S., Thermal inactivation of the plasma membrane H$^+$-ATPase from *Kluyveromyces lactis*: Protection by trehalose, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta Protein Struct. Mol. Enzymol.,* 1544, 64, 2001.

88. Crowe, J.H. and Crowe, L.M., Preservation of liposomes by freeze-drying, in *Liposome Technology*, 2nd ed., Gregoriadis, G., Ed., CRC Press, 1992.

89. Harrigan, P.R., Madden, T.D., and Cullis, P.R., Protection of liposomes during dehydration or freezing, *Chem. Phys. Lipids,* 52, 39, 1990.

90. Kim, C.K., Chung, H.S., Lee, M.K., Choi, L.N., and Kim, M.H., Development of dried liposomes containing β-galactosidase for the digestion of lactose in milk, *Int. J. Pharm.,* 183, 185, 1999.

91. Van Winden, E.C.A., Zhang, W., and Crommelin, D.J.A., Effect of freezing rate on the stability of liposomes during freeze-drying and rehydration, *Pharm. Res.,* 14, 1151, 1997.

92. Anchordoquy, T.J., Carpenter, J.F., and Kroll, D.J., Maintenance of transfection rates and physical characterization of lipid/DNA complexes after freeze-drying and rehydration, *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.,* 348, 199, 1997.

93. Li, B., Li, S., Tan, Y.D., Stolz, D.B., Watkins, S.C., Block, L.H., and Huang, L., Lyophilization of cationic lipid-protamine-DNA (LPD) complexes, *J. Pharm. Sci.,* 89, 355, 2000.

94. Yoshinaga, K., Yoshioka, H., Kurosaki, H., Hirasawa, M., Uritani, M., and Hasegawa, K. Protection by trehalose of DNA from radiation damage, *Biosci .Biotechnol. Biochem.,* 61, 160, 1997.

95. Beattie, G.M., Crowe, J.H., Lopez, A.D., Cirulli, V., Ricordi, C., and Hayek, A., Trehalose: A cryoprotectant that enhances recovery and preserves function of human pancreatic islets after long-term storage, *Diabetes* 46, 519, 1997.

96. De Castro, A.G. and Tunnacliffe, A., Intracellular trehalose improves osmotolerance but not desiccation tolerance in mammalian cells, *FEBS Lett.* 487, 199–202, 2000.

97. Matsuo, T., Trehalose protects corneal epithelial cells from death by drying, *Br. J. Ophthalmol.,* 85, 610, 2001.

98. Ma, X., Jamil, K., MacRae, T.H., Clegg, J.S., Russell, J.M., Villeneuve, T.S., Euloth, M., Sun, Y., Crowe, J.H., Tablin, F., and Oliver, A.E., A small stress protein acts synergistically with trehalose to confer desiccation tolerance on mammalian cells, *Cell Preservation Technol.,* in press.

99. Boutron, P. and Peyridieu, J.-F., Reduction in toxicity for red blood cells in buffered solutions containing high concentrations of 2,3-butanediol by trehalose, sucrose, sorbitol, or mannitol, *Cryobiology,* 31, 367, 1994.

100. Pellerin-Mendes, C., Million, L., Marchand-Arvier, M., Labrude, P.P., and Vigneron, C., *In vitro* study of the protective effect of trehalose and dextran during freezing of human red blood cells in liquid nitrogen, *Cryobiology,* 35, 173, 1997.

101. Bando, T., Liu, C.J., Kosaka, S., Yokomise, H., Inui, K., Yagi, K., Hitomi, S., and Wada, H., Twenty-hour canine lung preservation using newly developed solutions containing trehalose, *Transplant. Proc.,* 26, 871, 1994.

102. Bando, T., Kosaka, S., Liu, C., Hirai, T., Hirata, T., Yokomise, H., Yagi, K., Inui, K., Hitomi, S., and Wada, H., Effects of newly developed solutions containing trehalose on twenty-hour canine lung preservation, *J. Thorac. Card. Surg.,* 108, 92, 1994.

103. Hirata, T., Yokomise, H., Fukuse, T., Muro, K., Ono, N., Inui, K., Hitomi, S., and Wada, H., Successful 12-hour lung preservation with trehalose, *Transplant. Proc.,* 25, 1597, 1993.

104. Kitahara, A.K., Suzuki, Y., Zhan, C.W., Wada, H., and Nishimura, Y., Preservation of skin free-flap using trehalose, *J. Surg. Res.,* 62, 130, 1996.

105. Yokomise, H., Inui, K., Wada, H., Hasegawa, S., Ohno, N., and Hitomi, S., Reliable cryopreservation of trachea for one month in a new trehalose solution, *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.,* 110, 382, 1995.

106. Norcia, M.A., Compositions and methods for wound management, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office 1232, 424, 2000.

107. Benaroudj, N., Lee, D.H., and Goldberg, A.L., Trehalose accumulation during cellular stress protects cells and cellular proteins from damage by oxygen radicals, *J. Biol.. Chem.,* 276, 24261, 2001.
108. Chen, Q. and Haddad, G.G., Role of trehalose phosphate synthase and trehalose during hypoxia: From flies to mammals, *J. Exp. Biol.,* 207, 3125, 2004.
109. Chen, Q., Enbo, N., Behar, K.L., Xu, T., and Haddad, G.G., Role of trehalose phosphate synthase in anoxia tolerance and development in *Drosophila melanogaster, J. Biol. Chem.,* 277, 3274, 2002.
110. Neta T., Takada, K., and Hirasawa, M., Low-cariogenicity of trehalose as a substrate, *Dent.,* 2, 571, 2000.
111. Komes, D., Lovri, T., Kovaevi Gani, K., and Gracin, L., Study of trehalose addition on aroma retention in dehydrated strawberry puree, *Food Technol. Biotechnol.,* 41, 111, 2003.
112. Nishizaki, Y., Yoshizane, C., Toshimori, Y., Arai, N., Akamatsu, S., Hanaya, T., Arai, S., Ikeda, M., and Kurimoto, M., Disaccharide-trehalose inhibits bone resorption in ovariectomized mice, *Nutr. Res.,* 20, 653, 2000.
113. Yoshizane, C., Arai, N., Arai, C., Yamamoto, M., Nishizaki, Y., Hanaya, T., Arai, S., Ikeda, M., and Kurimoto, M., Trehalose suppresses osteoclast differentiation in ovariectomized mice: Correlation with decreased *in vitro* interleukin-6 production by bone marrow cells, *Nutr. Res.,* 20, 1485, 2000.
114. Tanaka, M., Machida, Y., Niu, S., Ikeda, T., Jana, N.R., Doi, H., Kurosawa, M., Nekooki, M., and Nukina, N., Trehalose alleviates polyglutamine-mediated pathology in a mouse model of Huntington disease, *Nat. Med.,* 10,148, 2004.
115. Couzin, J., Huntington's disease: Unorthodox clinical trials meld science and care, *Science* 304, 816, 2004.
116. Higashiyama, T., Novel functions and applications of trehalose, *Pure Appl. Chem.,* 74, 1263, 2002.
117. Ballone, P., Marchi, M., Branca, C., and Magazú, S., Structural and vibrational properties of trehalose: A density functional study, *J. Phys. Chem.,* B 104, 6313, 2000.
118. Batta, G. and Kövér, K.E.., Heteronuclear coupling constants of hydroxyl protons in a water solution of oligosaccharides: Trehalose and sucrose, *Carbohydr. Res.,* 320, 267, 1999.
119. Conrad, B. and De Pablo, J.J.. Computer simulation of the cryoprotectant disaccharide α,α-trehalose in aqueous solution, *J. Phys. Chem.,* A 103, 4049, 1999.
120. Sum, A.K., Faller, R., and de Pablo, J.J., Molecular simulation study of phospholipid bilayers and insights of the interactions with disaccharides, *Biophys. J.*, 85, 2830, 2003.
121. Kacuráková, M. and Mathlouthi, M., FTIR and laser-Raman spectra of oligosaccharides in water: Characterization of the glycosidic bond, *Carbohydr. Res.,* 284, 145, 1996.
122. Liu, Q., Schmidt, R.K., Teo, B., Karplus, P.A., and Brady, J.W., Molecular dynamics studies of the hydration of α,α-trehalose, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.,* 119, 7851, 1997.
123. Poveda, A., Vicent, C., Penadés, S., and Jiménez-Barbero, J., NMR experiments for the detection of NOEs and scalar coupling constants between equivalent protons in trehalose-containing molecules, *Carbohydr. Res.,* 301, 5, 1997.
124. Lin, T.Y. and Timasheff, S.N., On the role of surface tension in the stabilization of globular proteins, *Protein Sci.,* 5, 372, 1996.
125. Timasheff, S.N., Control of protein stability and reactions by weakly interacting cosolvents: The simplicity of the complicated, in *Advances in Protein Chemistry; Linkage Thermodynamics of Macromolecular Interactions,* Di Cera, E., Ed., Academic Press, San Diego, p. 92, 2001.
126. Xie, G. and Timasheff, S.N., The thermodynamic mechanism of protein stabilization by trehalose, *Biophys. Chem.,* 64, 25, 1997.
127. Hays, L.M., Crowe, J.H., Wolkers, W., and Rudenko, S., Factors affecting leakage of trapped solutes from phospholipid vesicles during thermotropic phase transitions, *Cryobiology,* 42, 88, 2001.
128. Gil, T., Ipsen, J.H., Mouritsen, O.G., Sabra, M.C., Sperotto, M.M., and Zuckermann, M.J., Theoretical analysis of protein organization in lipid membranes, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 1376, 245, 1998.
129. Killian, J.A., Hydrophobic mismatch between proteins and lipids in membranes, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 137, 401, 1998.
130. Crowe, L.M., Womersley, C., Crowe, J.H., Reid, D., Appel, L., and Rudolph, A., Prevention of fusion and leakage in freeze-dried liposomes by carbohydrates, *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta,* 861, 131, 1986.

131. Leidy, C., Gousset, K., Ricker, J.V., Wolkers, W.F., Tsvetkova, N.M., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., Lipid phase behavior and stabilization of domains in membranes of platelets, *Cell Biochem. Biophys,* 40, 123, 2004.

132. Mabrey, S. and Sturtevant, J.M., Investigation of phase transitions of lipids and lipid mixtures by sensitivity differential scanning calorimetry, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.,* 73, 3862, 1976.

133. Mabrey, S., Mateo, P.L., and Sturtevant, J.M., High-sensitivity scanning calorimetric study of mixtures of cholesterol with dimyristoyl- and dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholines, *Biochemistry,* 17, 2464, 1978.

134. Brown, D.A., Seeing is believing: Visualization of rafts in model membranes, *Proc Nat. Acad. Sci.,* 98, 10517, 2001.

135. Simons, K. and Ikonen, E., How cells handle cholesterol, *Science,* 290, 1721, 2000.

136. Horejsi, V., Membrane rafts in immunoreceptor signaling: New doubts, new proofs? *Trends Immunol.,* 23, 562, 2002.

137. Shogomori H. and Brown D.A., Use of detergents to study membrane rafts: The good, the bad, and the ugly, *Biol. Chem.* 384, 1259, 2003.

138. Heerklotz, H., Triton promotes domain formation in lipid raft mixtures, *Biophys. J.,* 83, 2693, 2002.

139. Draber, P. and Draberova, L., Lipid rafts in mast cell signaling, *Mol. Immunol.,* 38, 1247, 2002.

140. Fuki, I.V., Meyer, M.E., and Williams, K.J., Transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains of syndecan mediate a multi-step endocytic pathway involving detergent-insoluble membrane rafts, *Biochem. J.,* 351, 607, 2001.

141. Ono, A. and Freed, E.O., Plasma membrane rafts play a critical role in HIV-1 assembly and release, *Proc. Natl. Academ. Sci.,* 98, 13925, 2001.

142. Vincent, S., Gerlier, D., and Manié, S.N., Measles virus assembly within membrane rafts, *J. Virology,* 74, 9911, 2000.

143. Gousset, K., Tsvetkova, N.M., Crowe, J.H., and Tablin, F., Important role of raft aggregation in the signaling events of cold-induced platelet activation, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 1660, 7, 2004.

144. Womersley, C., Dehydration survival and anhydrobiotic potential of entomopathogenic nematodes, in *Entomopathogenic Nematodes in Biological Control*, Gaugler, R. and Kaya, H.K., Eds., CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1990, p. 117.

145. Westh, P. and Ramlbv, H., Trehalose accumulation in the tardigrade Adorybiotus coronifer during anhydrobiosis, *J. Exp. Zool.,* 258, 303, 1991.

146. Lapinski, J. and Tunnacliffe, A., Anhydrobiosis without trehalose in bdelloid rotifers, *FEBS Lett.,* 553, 387, 2003.

147. Tunnacliffe, A. and Lapinski, J., Resurrecting Van Leeuwenhoek's rotifers: a reappraisal of the role of disaccharides in anhydrobiosis, *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond.,* B 358, 1755, 2003.

148. Caprioli, M., Katholm, A.K., Melone, G., Ramløv, H., Ricci, C., and Santo, N., Trehalose in desiccated rotifers: A comparison between a bdelloid and a monogonont species, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.,* A 139, 527, 2004.

149. Crowe, J.H., Oliver, A.E, Hoekstra, F.A, and Crowe, L.M., Stabilization of dry membranes by mixtures of hydroxyethyl starch and glucose: The role of vitrification, *Cryobiology,* 3, 20, 1997.

150. Buitink, J. and Leprince, O., Glass formation in plant anhydrobiotes: Survival in the dry state, *Cryobiology,* 48, 215, 2004.

151. Hincha, D.K., Hellwege, E.M., Meyer, A.G., and Crowe, J.H., Plant fructans stabilize phosphatidyl-choline liposomes during freeze-drying, *Eur. J. Biochem.,* 267, 535, 2000.

152. Vereyken, I.J., Chupin, V., Hoekstra, F.A., Smeekens, S.C.M., and de Kruijff, B., The effect of fructan on membrane lipid organization and dynamics in the dry state, *Biophys. J.,* 84, 3759, 2003.

153. Hincha, D.K., Zuther, E., and Heyer, A.G., The preservation of liposomes by raffinose family oli-gosaccharides during drying is mediated by effects on fusion and lipid phase transitions, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 1612, 172, 2003.

154. Hincha, D.K. and Hagemann, M., Stabilization of model membranes during drying by compatible solutes involved in the stress tolerance of plants and microorganisms, *Biochem. J.,* 383, 277, 2004.

155. Hoekstra, F.A. and Golovina, E.A., The role of amphiphiles, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.,* 131A, 527, 2002.

156. Popova, A.V. and Hincha, D.K., Specific interactions of tryptophan with phosphatidylcholine and digalactosyldiacylglycerol in pure and mixed bilayers in the dry and hydrated state, *Chem Phys. Lipids.,* 132, 171, 2004.

157. Oliver, A.E., Hincha, D.K., Tsvetkova, N.M., Vigh, L., and Crowe, J.H., The effect of arbutin on membrane integrity during drying is mediated by stabilization of the lamellar phase in the presence of nonbilayer-forming lipids, *Chem. Phys. Lipids,* 111, 37, 2001.

158. Goodrich, R.P., Crowe, J.H., Crowe, L.M., and Baldeschwieler. J.D., Alteration in membrane surfaces induced by attachment of carbohydrates, *Biochemistry,* 30, 2313, 1991.

159. Allison, S.D., Manning, M.C., Randolph, T.W., Middleton, K., Davis, A., and Carpenter, J.F., Optimization of storage stability of lyophilized actin using combinations of disaccharides and dextran, *J. Pharm. Sci.,* 89, 199, 2000.

160. Anchordoquy, T.J., Izutsu, K.I., Randolph, T.W., and Carpenter, J.F., Maintenance of quaternary structure in the frozen state stabilizes lactate dehydrogenase during freeze-drying, *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.,* 390, 35, 2000.

161. Heller, M.C., Carpenter, J.F., and Randolph, T.W., Protein formulation and lyophilization cycle design: Prevention of damage due to freeze-concentration induced phase separation, *Biotech. Bioeng.,* 63, 166, 1999.

162. Crowe, L.M., Reid, D.S., and Crowe, J.H., Is trehalose special for preserving dry biomaterials? *Biophys. J.,* 71, 2087, 1996.

163. Sun, W.Q., Leopold, A.C., Crowe, L.M., and Crowe, J.H., Stability of dry liposomes in sugar glasses, *Biophys. J.,* 70, 1769, 1996.

164. Green, J.L. and Angell, C.A., Phase relations and vitrification in saccharide-water solutions and the trehalose anomaly, *J. Phys. Chem.,* 93, 2880, 1989.

165. Chen, T., Fowler, A., and Toner, M., Literature review: Supplemented phase diagram of the trehalose–water binary mixture, *Cryobiology,* 40, 277, 2000.

166. Miller, D.P., Anderson, R.E., and De Pablo, J.J., Stabilization of lactate dehydrogenase following freeze-thawing and vacuum-drying in the presence of trehalose and borate, *Pharma. Res.,* 5, 1215, 1998.

167. Wolkers, W.F., Oldenhof, H., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., Preservation of dried liposomes in the presence of sugar and phosphate, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 1661, 125, 2004.

168. Wolkers, W.F., Oliver, A.E., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., A Fourier-transform infrared spectroscopy study of sugar glasses, *Carbohydr. Res.,* 339, 1077, 2004.

169. Li, S., Patapoff, T.W., Overcashier, D., Hsu, C., Nguyen, T.H., and Borchardt, R.T., Effects of reducing sugars on the chemical stability of human relaxin in the lyophilized state, *J. Pharm. Sci.,* 85, 873, 1996.

170. O'Brien, J., Stability of trehalose, sucrose and glucose to nonenzymatic browning in model systems, *J. Food Sci.,* 61, 679, 1996.

171. Schebor, C., Burin, L., del Pilar Bueras, M., and Chirife, J., Stability to hydrolysis and browning of trehalose, sucrose and raffinose in low-moisture systems in relation to their use as protectants of dry biomaterials, *Lebensm.-Wiss. u.-Technol.,* 32, 481, 1999.

172. BeMiller, J.N., Acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of glycosides, *Adv. Car. Chem.,* 22, 25, 1967.

173. Tunnacliffe, A., García de Castro, A., and Manzanera, M., Anhydrobiotic engineering of bacterial and mammalian cells: Is intracellular trehalose sufficient? *Cryobiology,* 43, 124, 2001.

174. Chen, T., Acker, J.P., Eroglu, A., Cheley, S., Bayley, H., Fowler, A., and Toner, M., Beneficial effect of intracellular trehalose on the membrane integrity of dried mammalian cells, *Cryobiology,* 43, 168, 2001.

175. Gordon, S.L., Oppenheimer, S.R., Mackay, A.M., Brunnabend, J., Puhlev, I., and Levine, F., Recovery of human mesenchymal stem cells following dehydration and rehydration, *Cryobiology,* 43, 182, 2001.

176. Hoekstra, F.A., Golovina, E.A., Tetteroo, F.A.A., and Wolkers, W.F., Induction of desiccation tolerance in plant somatic embryos: How exclusive is the protective role of sugars? *Cryobiology,* 43, 140, 2001.

177. Lao, G., Polayes, D., Xia, J.L., Bloom, F.R., Levine, F., and Mansbridge, J., Overexpression of trehalose synthase and accumulation of intracellular trehalose in 293H and 293FTetR:Hyg cells, *Cryobiology,* 43, 106, 2001.

178. Garcia de Castro, A., Tunnacliffe A., Intracellular trehalose improves osmotolerance but not desiccation tolerance in mammalian cells, *FEBS Lett.,* 487, 199, 2000.

179. Oliver, A.E., Jamil, K., Crowe, J.H., and Tablin, F., Loading human mesenchymal stem cells with trehalose by fluid-phase endocytosis, *Cell Preservation Tech.,* 2, 35, 2004.

180. Lloyd, J.B., Lysosome membrane permeability: Implications for drug delivery, *Adv. Drug Deliver. Rev.,* 41, 189, 2000.

181. Tablin, F., Oliver, A.E., Walker, N.J., Crowe, L.M., and Crowe, J.H., Membrane phase transitions of intact human platelets: Correlation with cold-induced activation, *J. Cell. Physiol.,* 168, 305, 1996.

182. Tablin, F. Wolkers, W.F., Walker, N.J., Oliver, A.E., Tsvetkova, N.M., Crowe, L.M., and Crowe, J.H., Membrane reorganization during chilling: Implications for long term storage, *Cryobiology,* 43, 114, 2001.

183. Oliver, A.E., Tablin, F., Walker, N.J., and Crowe, J.H. The internal calcium concentration of human platelets increases during chilling, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 1416, 349, 1999.

184. Crowe, J.H., Tablin, F., Tsvetkova, N.M., Oliver, A.E., Walker, N.J., and Crowe, L.M., Are lipid phase transitions responsible for chilling damage in human platelets? *Cryobiology,* 38, 180, 1999.

185. Crowe, J.H., Tablin, F., Wolkers, W.F., Gousset, K., Tsvetkova, N.M., and Ricker, J., Stabilization of membranes in human platelets freeze-dried with trehalose, *Chem. Phys. Lipids,* 122, 41, 2003.

186. Wolkers, W.F., Looper, S.A., McKiernan, A.E., Tsvetkova, N.M., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., Membrane and protein properties of freeze-dried mouse platelets, *Mol. Mem. Biol.,* 19, 201, 2002.

187. Wolkers, W.F., Looper, S.A., Fontanilla, R.A., Tsvetkova, N.M., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., Temperature dependence of fluid phase endocytosis coincides with membrane properties of pig platelets, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 1612, 154, 2003.

188. Auh, J.-H., Wolkers, W.F., Looper, S.A., Walker, N.J., Crowe, J.H., and Tablin, F., Calcium mobilization in freeze-dried human platelets, *Cell Preservation Tech.,* 2, 180, 2004.

189. Goodrich, R.P., Williams, C.M., Franco, R.S., and Weiner, M., Lyophilization of red blood cells, U.S. Patent 4,874,690, 1989.

190. Spargo, B.J., Rudolph, A.S., Byeong, C.S., and Groel, T.R., Freeze dried red blood cells, U.S. Patent 5,690,963, 1997.

191. Bakaltcheva, I.B., Rudolph, A.S., Spargo, B.J., Leslie, S.B., and Groel, T.R., Shape stabilized erythrocytes, U.S. Patent 6,436,705, 2002.

192. Bakaltcheva, I.B., Rudolph, A.S., Spargo, B.J., Leslie, S.B., and Groel, T.R., Applications of reversible crosslinking and co-treatment in stabilization and viral inactivations of erythrocytes, U.S. Patent 6,358,678, 2002.

193. Wolkers, W.F., Crowe, L.M., Tsvetkova, N.M., Tablin, F., and Crowe, J.H., *In situ* assessment of erythrocyte membrane properties during cold storage, *Mol. Mem. Biol.,* 19, 59. 2002.

194. Satpathy, G., Török, Z., Bali, R., Dwyre, D.M., Little, E., Walker, N.J., Tablin, F., Crowe, J.H., and Tsvetkova, N.M., Loading red blood cells with trehalose: A step towards biostabilization, *Cryobiology,* 49, 123, 2004.

195. Török, Z., Satpathy, G., Banerjee, M., Bali, R., Little, E., Novaes, R., Ly, H.V., Dwyre, D.M., Kheirolomoom, A., Tablin, F., Crowe, J.H., and Tsvetkova, N.M., Preservation of trehalose loaded red blood cells by lyophilization, *Cell Preserv. Tech.,* submitted.

196. Crowe, J.H., Hoekstra, F.A., and Crowe, L.M., Membrane phase transitions are responsible for imbibitional damage in dry pollen, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.,* 86, 520, 1989.

197. Hoekstra, F.A., Crowe, J.H., and Crowe, L.M., Germination and ion leakage are linked with phase transitions of membrane lipids during imbibition of *Typha latifolia*, *Plant Physiol.,* 84, 29, 1992.

198. Hoekstra, F.A., Golovina, E.A., Van Aelst, A.C., and Hemminga, M.A., Imbibitional leakage from anhydrobiotes revisited, *Plant Cell Environ.,* 22, 1121, 1999.

199. Clegg, J.S., Jackson, S.A., and Warner, A.H., Extensive intracellular translocations of a major protein accompany anoxia in embryos of *Artemia franciscana*, *Exp. Cell Res.,* 212, 77, 1994.

200. Liang P., Amons, R., Clegg, J.S., and MacRae, T.H., Purification, structure and *in vitro* molecular-chaperone activity of *Artemia* p26, a small heat-shock/alpha-crystallin protein, *Eur. J. Biochem.,* 243, 225, 1997.

201. Liang, P., Amons, R., Clegg, J.S., and MacRae, T.H., Molecular characterization of a small heat shock/alpha-crystallin protein in encysted *Artemia* embryos, *J. Biol. Chem.,* 272, 19051, 1997.

202. Liang, P. and MacRae, T.H., The synthesis of a small heat shock/α-crystallin protein in *Artemia* and its relationship to stress tolerance during development, *Devel. Biol.,* 207, 445, 1999.

203. MacRae, T.H., Molecular chaperones, stress resistance, and development in *Artemia franciscana*, *Semin. Cell Dev. Biol.,* 14, 251, 2003.

204. Willsie, J.K. and Clegg, J.S., Nuclear p26, a small heat-shock/α-crystallin protein, and its relationship to stress resistance in *Artemia franciscana* embryos, *J. Exp. Biol.,* 204, 2339, 2001.

205. Sun, Y., Mansour, M., Crack, J.A., Gass, G.L., and MacRae, T.H., Oligomerization, chaperone activity, and nuclear localization of p26, a small heat shock protein from *Artemia franciscana*, *J. Biol. Chem.,* 279, 39999, 2004.

206. Day, R.M., Gupta, J.S., and MacRae, T.H., A small heat shock/alpha-crystallin protein from encysted *Artemia* embryos suppresses tubulin denaturation, *Cell Stress Chaper.,* 8, 183, 2003.

207. Collins, C.H. and Clegg, J.S., A small heat-shock protein, p26, from the crustacean *Artemia* protects mammalian cells (Cos-1) against oxidative damage, *Cell Biol. Intl.,* 28, 449, 2004.

208. Wolkers, W.F., McCready, S., Brandt, W., Lindsey, G.G., and Hoekstra, F.A., Isolation and characterization of a D-7 LEA protein from pollen that stabilizes glasses *in vitro*, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta,* 1544, 196, 2001.

209. Ristic, Z., Williams, G., Yang, G., Martin, B., and Fullerton, S., Dehydration, damage to cellular membranes, and heat-shock proteins in maize hybrids from different climates, *J. Plant Physiol.,* 149, 424, 1996.

210. Ristic, Z., Williams, G., Yang, G., Martin, B., and Fullerton, S., Evidence of association between specific heat-shock protein(s) and the drought and heat tolerance phenotype in maize, *J. Plant Physiol.,* 153, 497, 1998.

211. Browne, J.A., Dolan, K.M., Tyson, T., Goyal, K., Tunnacliffe, A., and Burnell, A.M., Dehydration-specific induction of hydrophilic protein genes in the anhydrobiotic nematode *Aphelenchus avenae*, *Eukaryot. Cell,* 3, 966, 2004.

212. Crowe, J.H. and Madin, K.A.C., Anhydrobiosis in nematodes: Evaporative water loss and survival, *J. Exp. Zool.,* 193, 323–333, 1975.

213. Madin, K.A.C. and Crowe, J.H., Anhydrobiosis in nematodes: Carbohydrate and lipid metabolism during dehydration., *J. Exp. Zool.,* 193, 335, 1975.

214. Bray, E.A., Molecular responses to water deficit., *Plant Physiol.,* 103, 1035, 1993.

215. Ingram, J. and Bartels, D., The molecular basis of dehydration tolerance in plants, *Ann. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.,* 47, 377, 1996.

216. Cuming, A.C., LEA proteins, in *Seed Proteins*, Shewry, P.R. and Casey, R., Eds., Kluwer Academic, Amsterdam, 1999, p. 753.

217. Bray, E.A., Bailey-Serres, J., and Weretilnyk, E., Responses to abiotic stress, in *Biochemistry and Molecular Biology of Plants*, Buchanan, B.B., Gruissem, W., and Jones, R.L., Eds., American Society of Plant Physiologists, Washington, D.C., 2000, p. 1158.

218. Baker, J., Steele, C., and Dure, L., III, Sequence and characterization of 6 lea proteins and their genes from cotton, *Plant Mol. Biol.,* 11, 277, 1988.

219. Dure, L., III, Crouch, M., Harada, J., Ho, T.-H.D., Mundy, J., Quatrano, R., Thomas, T., and Sung, Z.R., Common amino acid sequence domains among the lea proteins of higher plants, *Plant Mol. Biol.,* 12, 475, 1989.

220. Wise, M., LEAping to conclusions: A computational reanalysis of late embryogenesis abundant proteins and their possible roles, *BMC Bioinformatics,* 4, 52, 2003.

221. Goyal, K., Tisi, L., Basran, A., Browne, J., Burnell, A., Zurdo, J., and Tunnacliffe, A., Transition from natively unfolded to folded state induced by desiccation in an anhydrobiotic nematode protein, *J. Biol. Chem.,* 278, 12977, 2003.

222. Hartl, F.U. and Hayer-Hart, L.M., Molecular chaperones in the cytosol: From nascent chain to folded protein, *Science,* 295, 1852, 2002.

223. Barral, J.M., Broadley, S.A., Schaffar, G., and Hartl, F.U., Roles of molecular chaperones in protein misfolding diseases, *Sem. Cell Devel. Biol.,* 15, 17, 2004.

224. Wise, M.J. and Tunnacliffe, A., POPP the question: What do LEA proteins do? *Trends Plant Sci.,* 9, 13, 2004.

225. Goyal, K., Walton, L.J., and Tunnacliffe, A., LEA proteins prevent protein aggregation due to water stress, *Biochem. J. Immediate Publication,* manuscript BJ20041931, 4 January 2005.

226. Trent, J.D., Kagawa, H.K., Paavola, C.D., McMillan, R.A., Howard, J., Jahnke, L., Lavin, C., Embaye, T., and Henze, C.E., Intracellular localization of a group II chaperonin indicates a membrane-related function, *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.,* 100, 15589, 2003.

227. Torok, Z., Tsvetkova, N.M., Balogh, G., Horvath, I., Nagy, E., Penzes, Z., Hargitai, J., Bensaude, O., Csermely, P., Crowe, J.H., Maresca, B., and Vigh, L., Heat shock protein coinducers with no effect on protein denaturation specifically modulate the membrane lipid phase, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.,* 100, 3131, 2003.
228. Torok, Z., Goloubinoff, P., Horvath, I., Tsvetkova, N.M., Glatz, A., Balogh, G., Varvasovszki, V., Los, D.A., Vierling, E., Crowe, J.H., and Vigh, L., Synechocystis HSP17 is an amphitropic protein that stabilizes heat-stressed membranes and binds denatured proteins for subsequent chaperone-mediated refolding, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.,* 98, 3098, 2001.
229. Tsvetkova, N.M., Horvath, I., Torok, A., Wolkers, W.F., Balogi, Z., Shigapova, N., Crowe, L.M., Tablin, F., Vierling, E., Crowe, J.H., and Vigh, L., Small heat-shock proteins regulate membrane lipid polymorphism, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.,* 99, 13504, 2002.
230. Vigh, L., Maresca, B. and Harwood, J.L., Does the membrane's physical state control the expression of heat shock and other genes? *Trends Bio. Sci.,* 23, 369, 1998.
231. Horvath, I., Glatz, A., Varvasovszki, V., Torok, A., Pali, T., Balogh, G., Kovacs, E., Nadasdi, L., Benko, S., Joo, F., and Vigh, L., Membrane physical state controls the signaling mechanism of the heat shock response in Synechocystis PCC 6803: Identification of hsp17 as a "fluidity gene," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.,* 95, 3513, 1998.
232. Beere, H.M. and Green, D.R., Stress management: Heat shock protein-70 and the regulation of apoptosis, *Trends Cell Biol.,* 11, 6, 2001.
233. Concannon, C.G., Gorman, A.M., and Samali, A., On the role of Hsp27 in regulating apoptosis, *Apoptosis,* 8, 61, 2003.
234. Samali, A. and Orrenius, S., Heat shock proteins: Regulators of stress response and apoptosis, *Cell Stress Chaperones.,* 3, 228, 1998.
235. Downs, C.A., Jones, L.R., and Heckathorn, S.A., Evidence for a novel set of small heat-shock proteins that associates with the mitochondria of murine PC12 cells and protects NADH:ubiquinone oxidoreductase from heat and oxidative stress, *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.,* 365, 344, 1999.
236. Gill, R.R., Gbur, C.J., Jr., Fisher, B.J., Hess, M.L., Fowler, A.A., III, Kukreja, R.C., and Sholley, M.M., Heat shock provides delayed protection against oxidative injury in cultured human umbilical nein endothelial cells, *J. Molec. Cell. Cardiol.,* 30, 2739–2749, 1998.
237. Park, Y.M., Han, M.-Y., Blackburn, R.V., and Lee, Y.J., Overexpression of HSP25 reduces the level of TNFalpha-induced oxidative DNA damage biomarker, 8-hydroxy-2'-deoxyguanosine, in L929 cells, *J. Cell. Physiol.,* 174, 27, 1998.
238. Crowe, J.H., Oliver, A.E., and Tablin, F., Is there a single biochemical adaptation to anhydrobiosis? *Integr. Comp. Biol.,* 42, 497, 2002.
239. Oliver, A.E., Hincha, D.K., and Crowe, J.H., Looking beyond sugars: The role of amphiphilic solutes in preventing adventitious reactions in anhydrobiotes at low water contents, *Comp. Biochem. Physiol.,* 131A, 515, 2002.
240. Crowe, J.H., Anhydrobiosis: An unsolved problem, *Am. Nat.,* 105, 563, 1971.